



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

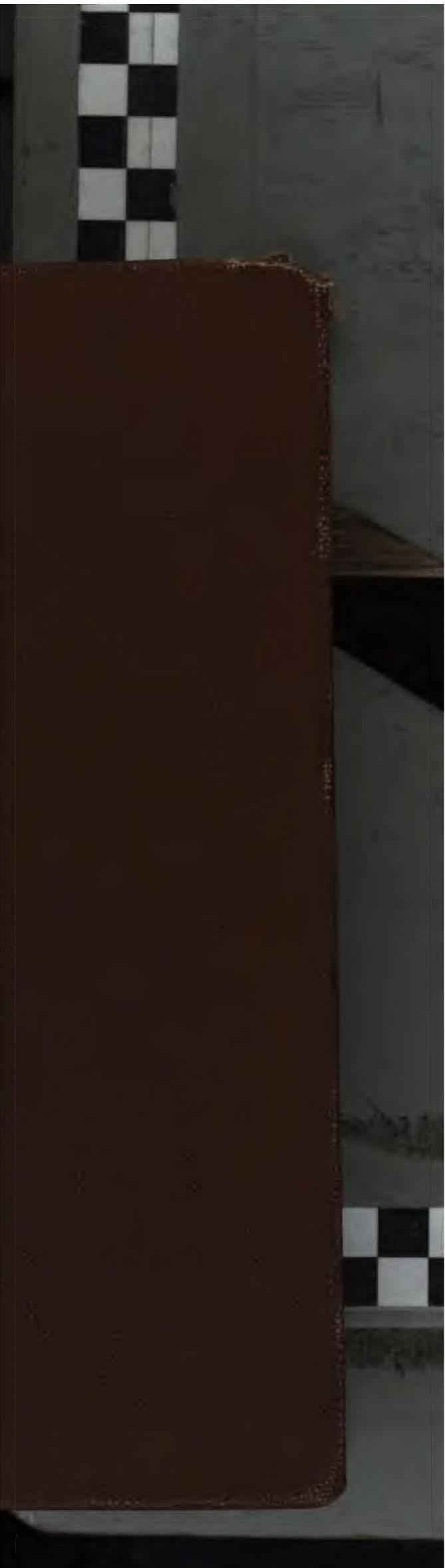
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

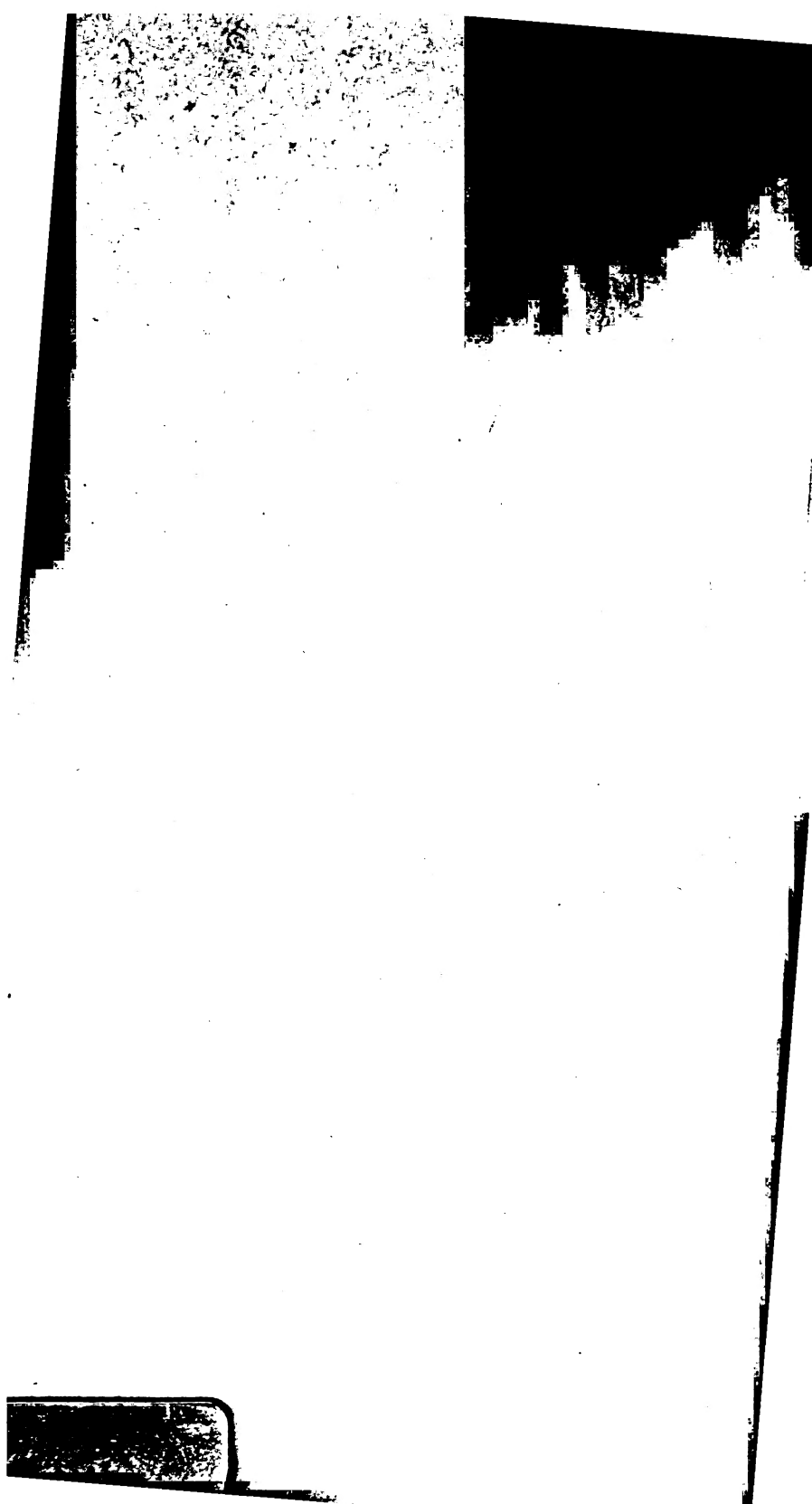
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

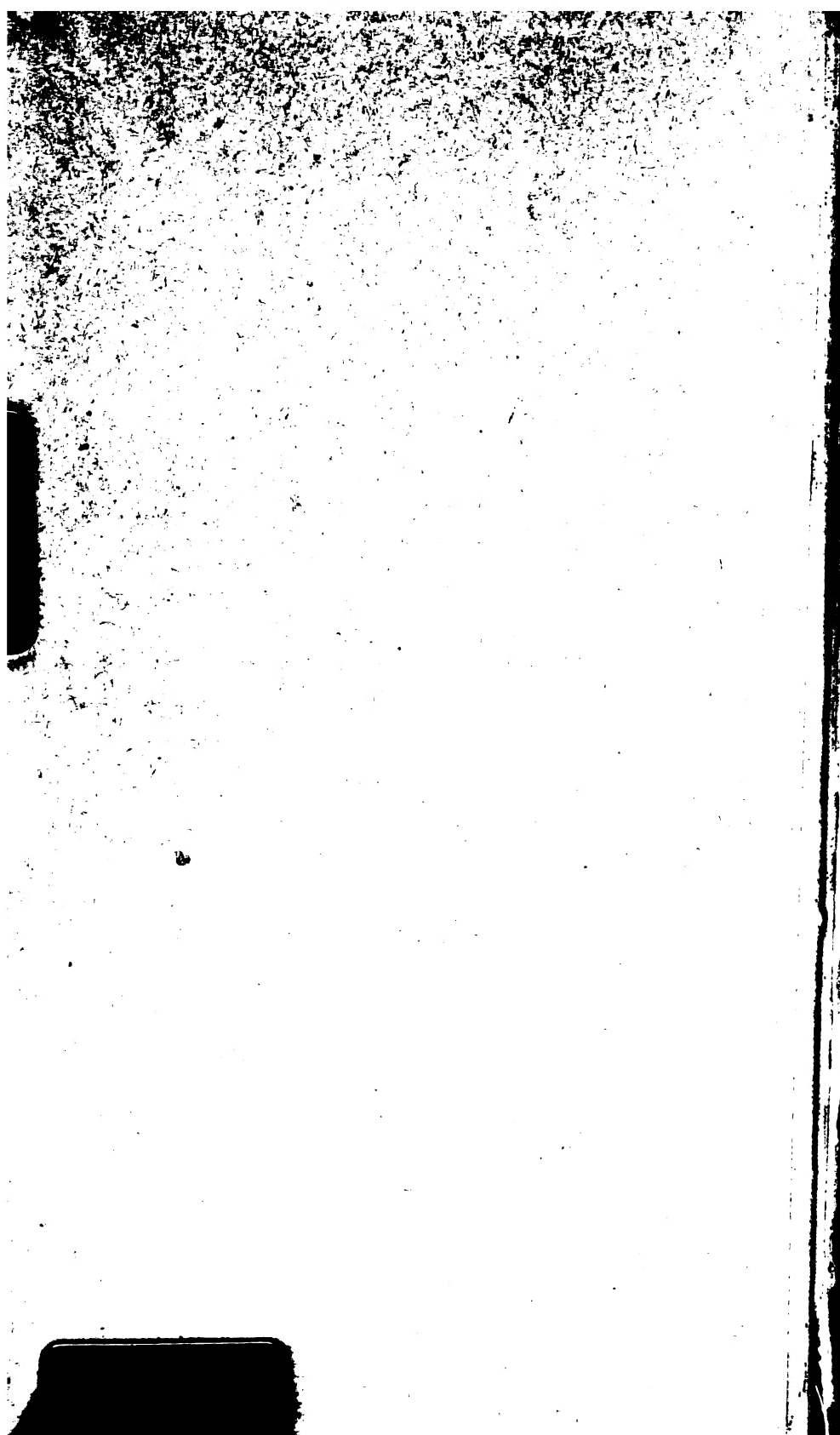
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>







Laymon  
NEK



Layamon's  
NEK









**LAȜAMONS BRUT,**  
**OR**  
**CHRONICLE OF BRITAIN;**  
**A POETICAL SEMI-SAXON PARAPHRASE**  
**OF**  
**THE BRUT OF WACE.**

**NOW FIRST PUBLISHED FROM THE  
COTTONIAN MANUSCRIPTS IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM;**

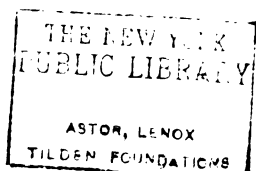
**ACCOMPANIED BY  
A LITERAL TRANSLATION, NOTES, AND A GRAMMATICAL GLOSSARY.**

**By SIR FREDERIC MADDEN, K.H.,  
KEEPER OF THE MSS. IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM.**

**VOL. II.**



**LONDON:**  
**PUBLISHED BY THE SOCIETY OF ANTIQUARIES OF LONDON.**  
**1847.**



PRINTED BY  
RICHARD AND JOHN E. TAYLOR,  
RED LION COURT, FLEET STREET.

ALERE FLAMMAM.



# LAȜAMONS BRUT,

## OR

### CHRONICLE OF BRITAIN.

---

[v. 10230—10241.]

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

**L**uces þe leod-king? [f. 58. c. 1.]

leouuede wel longe.

twa and feowerti wintre?

mid muchere<sup>1</sup> winne.

her wes mete her wes drænc?

men þer of dræmden.

her wef unimete fare? [c. 2.]

a þiffere folc riche.

þif<sup>2</sup> heo gunnen driuen?

& forȝeten to fwiðe.

10 fo þat hii for-ȝeten?

þat heom tæhte þe hehȝe mon? þat tehte ham þe biſſop Baſan<sup>3</sup>.

þe gode biſcop Dunian.

Two and fourti winter? [f. 50<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]

liuede Luces here.

here was mete and dringe?

and inoh of alle bliffe.

'Luces the sovereign lived well long;' two and forty winters 'with much joy [lived Luces here]; here was meat, 'here was [and] drink,—'men thereof rejoiced [and enow of all bliss]; 'here was fare without measure among this rich folk. Thus they gan to drive,' 'and forgot too soon [so that they forgot] what the 'noble man [bishop Fagan] taught them, 'the good

<sup>1</sup> muchelere? muchele?

<sup>2</sup> þus?

<sup>3</sup> Fagan?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

&amp; Fagan hif iuære ⁊

þe while þe heo weorē here.

Inne griðe þurh alle þīg ⁊

wunede Luces þe king.

þat cō þe ilke dæi ⁊

þat þe kīg dæd læi.

leof him wes grið and ræd ⁊

inne Gleochæstre he wes dæd.

þær hehȝe Bruttes ⁊

þene kīg bureden.

10

þa wes þe weorlde swa uorðiuaren ⁊ So was þe worle forþ ivare ⁊

seoððen ure drihte wes iboren.

fuppe vre drihte was ibore.

an hūdreð ȝere and fixti ⁊

an hundred ȝer and fixti ⁊

þa þe kīg fah to grunde.

þo þe king deide.

Seoððen Luces king wes dæd ⁊

her wunede a fwiðe strong red.

ne bi-læfde he her neouðer ⁊

Ne bilefde Luces þe king ⁊

suster ne broðe<sup>1</sup>.

broþer foster ⁊ ne no cun.

ne quene ne næh cun ⁊

þat miht hif cund ⁊

þe his caðel mihte heoldē.

20

after him habbe.

To Rome comen tiðende ⁊

**T**O Rome come tidinge ⁊

of Luces þan kinge.

of Luces þan kinge.

hu þe king wæs hære dæd ⁊

hou þe king was here dead ⁊

bishop Dunian, and Fagan, his companion, the while that they were here.' In 'peace [weal and good life] through all things dwelt [lived] 'Luces' the king, until that day came, that the king lay dead,—'peace and counsel were dear to him';—in Gloucester 'he was dead; there' *the* 'noble' Britons 'buried the king [laid him]. The world was 'then' so forth advanced since our Lord was born, an hundred years and sixty, when the king 'fell to ground [died]. 'After Luces the king was dead, here dwelt a most evil hap'; 'he left here neither [Luces the king left not] sister 'nor' brother, 'nor queen,' nor 'nigh [any] kinsman, who might 'hold [have] his possessions [after him]. To Rome came tidings of Luces the king, how the king was

<sup>1</sup> brother?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xlii.

& i þisse londe naf na ræd.  
 Heo makeden heore uerde ⁊  
 and fenden to þissen ærde.  
 Seuarus wes heore hære-toȝe ⁊  
 inne Rome he wes ibore.  
 þe ferde wes swiðe strōg ⁊  
 þeo comen heo to þisse lond.  
 Seuarius wende anan ⁊  
 to hæbbene þifne kinedom.  
 ah Bruttes weoren biſie ⁊ 10  
 & ofte hine a-bæileden. [f. 58<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 ofte heo him wið fuhten ⁊  
 a feole cunne wiſen.  
 Seuarus hine biðodte ⁊  
 whet he don miðte.  
 in his herede he makede grið ⁊  
 & lette awæi þat vniriht.  
 þat na man ne wurðe swa wod ⁊  
 ne witte bi-dæled.  
 þat in his hirede breke grið ⁊ 20  
 vppe leome & uppe lif.  
 of nauere nane þiȝe ⁊  
 þat come to his cleopinge.  
 þiſ iſeȝen Bruttes ⁊  
 þe weoren swiðe biſie.

in þisse londe naf no read.  
 Hii makede hire ferde ⁊  
 and fende to þisse erþe.  
 Seuarus was oner ȝam icore ⁊  
 ine Rome he was ibore.  
 þe ferde was swiþe strong ⁊  
 þat com to þisse lond.  
 Seuare wende anon ⁊  
 habbe þifne kinedom.  
 ac Bruttes weren kene ⁊  
 and faſte him wiþ-ſtode.  
 oft heo him wið fuhten ⁊  
 a feole cunne wiſen.  
 Seuare hine bi-þohte ⁊  
 wat he don mihte.  
 he held ſo god griþ ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 eche childe he wolde ſpeke wiþ.

Seuarius.

*Anno gratie*  
*c<sup>o</sup>c<sup>o</sup>. iiij<sup>to</sup>.*  
*Romanorum*  
*. xxi<sup>us</sup>. Se-*  
*uarius Brit-*  
*taniam ſoſ-*  
*ſuto cinxit, a*  
*mare uſque*  
*ad mare, per*  
*c. xxxii.*  
*milia paſſu-*  
*[u]m, et*  
*Eboraci*  
*obiit; cui*  
*Antonius,*  
*cognomento*  
*Caracalla,*  
*ſilius ſuus*  
*ſuccedens,*  
*regnauit*  
*annis*  
*vii<sup>tem</sup>.*

here dead, 'and' in this land was no counsel. They made their host, and sent to this land; Severus was 'their leader [over them chosen],—in Rome he was born. The army was most strong; 'when they [that] came to this land, Severus weened anon to have this kingdom, but *the* Britons were 'busy [keen], and 'oft him harmed [fast him withstood]; 'oft they fought with him, in many kind of wise.' Severus bethought him what he might do; 'in his host he made peace [he held peace so good, he would speak with each child], 'and did away the wrong,—that no man should be so wild, nor *so* void of wit, that in his host should break *the* peace, upon *pain* of limb and upon life, of ever any thing that should come to his call.' *The Britons*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

þat Seuarus in his hirede ⁊  
 hæfde hehliche grið.  
 & mong heom feoluē ⁊  
 vnimete seorȝen.  
 Bruttes fiȝē to-gæderes ⁊  
 fulle seoue þuſēd.  
 & ſpeken Seuarium wið ⁊  
 & ȝirden<sup>1</sup> his hiresdes grið.  
 & he heom ȝette ⁊  
 & ȝef ȝiues swiðe gode. 10  
 þa wes Seuar<sup>2</sup> hired ⁊  
 selcuðliche iſtroned.  
 alle þe ær weoren buen ⁊  
 he heom ſette bi-neoðen.  
 & muchele luue heold wið ⁊  
 alle þat ȝirnden his grið.  
 He uærde to Lunden ⁊  
 & heo hine vnder-fengē.  
 he uerde þurh þiſ kinelond ⁊  
 & ſette hit i his aȝere hond. 20  
 & æuere heo fluȝen him bi-uoren ⁊  
 þe his feond weoren.  
 Swa fwide<sup>3</sup> he heom hænde ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat he was god louerd to his.  
 and a-mong ȝam feolue ⁊  
 was onimete care.  
 Hii wenden heom to-gadere ⁊  
 folle seoue þouſend.  
 and ſpeken þan king wiþ ⁊  
 & ȝeorden<sup>2</sup> his griþ.  
 and he ȝam ſone ⁊  
 ȝaf ȝeftes ſwiþe gode. 10  
 þo wes Seuarus heap ⁊  
 mochel ibolded.  
 þaie þat her weore a-boue ⁊  
 he ham ſette bi-neoþe.  
 and mochel loſue held wiþ ⁊  
 alle þat ȝeornde his griþ.  
 He verde to Londene ⁊  
 and hii hine onderfenge.  
 he verde þorh al þis kinelond ⁊  
 and ſette hit on his owe hond. 20  
 and euere hii flouen him bi-fore ⁊  
 þat nolde him abouwe.

saw this, who were most busy, that 'Severus in his host had perfect peace [he was good lord to his *men*], and among themselves [was] 'sorrow [care] unmeet. 'The Britons [They] assembled together, full seven thousand, and spake with 'Severus [the king], and yearned his 'hosts' peace; and he 'it granted them, and' gave [them soon] gifts most good. Then was Severus host 'wonderfully strengthened [much emboldened]; 'all [those] that ere were above, he set them beneath, and much love held with all that yearned his peace. He marched to London, and they received him; he proceeded through [all] this kingdom, and set it in his own hand; and ever they fled before him, who 'were his enemies [would not submit to

<sup>1</sup> ȝirnden ?<sup>2</sup> ȝeorden ?<sup>3</sup> fwide ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat heo fluwē ouer Hunbre.

heo fluȝē forð rihtes ʹ [c. 2.]

þat heo comen to þā Peohtes.

&amp; heo heom vnder-fēgen ʹ

&amp; nomen heom to iuarē.

Heo makeden enne hehne cniht ʹ

heore here-toȝe forð riht.

fæier cniht and hēde ʹ

Fulgenes wes ihaten.

he heom scolde læden ʹ 10

& he heon<sup>2</sup> sculde ræden.

Enne ende of Scotlonde ʹ

nom Fulgenes to his honde.

þe ende him wes deore ʹ

he hæhte Dæire.

Sæuarus frō Scotte wærð<sup>3</sup> ʹseoððe<sup>4</sup> aȝen wēde.

&amp; his folc lædde ʹ

in to Lundene.

& Fulgenes vt of Scotlen<sup>5</sup> ʹ 20

muchel scaðe makede.

He leop in to Brutlond ʹ

mid muchele balu ræffen.

Hii flowen forþ rihtes ʹ

þat i<sup>1</sup> comen to þan Peutef.

and hii heom onderfenge ʹ

and nemen heom to ivere.

Hii makede Fulgenus þe cniht ʹ

hire kine-louerd.

On hende of Scotlonde ʹ

nam Fulgenus an honde.

*Dæire.*

Seuarus fram þat norþ ʹ

suþ aȝe wende.

and his folk ladde ʹ

in to Londene.

and Fulgenus vt of Scotlond ʹ

mochel harm makede.

Heo<sup>6</sup> leop in to Brutlond ʹand mani harmes<sup>7</sup>.

him]. 'So much he reduced them, that they fled over *the* Humber;' they fled forth-right until they came to the Peohtes, and they them received, and took them for companions. They made 'a noble [Fulgenes the] knight their 'leader [chief] 'forth-right, a fair knight and comely, *who* was named Fulgenes; he *it was* should lead them, and he *it was* should counsel them.' One end of Scotland Fulgenes took in 'his' hand; 'the end was dear to him,—it hight Dæire.' Severus from 'Scotland-ward [the north] marched back south, and led his folk into London; and Fulgenes out of Scotland made much harm. He leapt into Britain, 'with mickle baleful onset

<sup>1</sup> hii?<sup>2</sup> R. heom.<sup>3</sup> -ward?<sup>4</sup> soð? Cf. vv. 10691, 10761.<sup>5</sup> Scotten? Scotlond?<sup>6</sup> He?<sup>7</sup> harmes wrohte?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

æhte he nom men he floh ⁊

he duden feorȝen inoht<sup>1</sup>.

&amp; þuſ he uerde longe ⁊

inne Scotlonde.

þis iherde Seuarus ⁊

þe ine Rome wes kæifere.

and seoððen hider al þa lond ⁊

ſtod an his aȝere heond.

þe kæiifere ſende his ſeonde ⁊

ȝeod feole londe.

lette him to beoden ⁊

swa monie of weorcmonnen.

þat he lette mankien<sup>3</sup> ænne dic ⁊

þe wæf wunderliche deop.

muche æd fwiðe ſtronge ⁊

biſides Scotlonde.

from ſæ to ſæ eode þæs dich ⁊

ælche oðere vnlich. [[f. 59. c. 1.] alle oþer onilich.

þe<sup>4</sup> vfenen he makede ſcid wal ⁊

wunder ane cræftie.

seoððen he fette cnihtes ⁊

to witen hit dæies &amp; nihtes.

and þus he verde longe ⁊

ine Scotlōde.

þis ihorde Seuarus ⁊ [f. 51. c. 1.]

þat in Rome was kaiſere.

and ſuþþe here al þat lond ⁊

ſtod on his owe hond.

þe kaiſer ſende his ſonde ⁊

ȝeond fale le<sup>2</sup> kinelondes.

and mani ſtrong worcman ⁊

come to þā kinge.

þe lette ȝam maki ane dich ſtrang ⁊

ſwiþe deap and ſwiþe lang.

fram ſée to ſée ȝeode þe dich ⁊

þar vppon he makede ſid wal ⁊

ſwiþe craftie.

þare he fette cnihtes ⁊

to witien dai and nihtes.

[and many harms *wrought*]; 'goods he took, men he slew, he did sorrow enow;' and thus he fared long in Scotland. Severus heard this,—who was emperor of Rome, and afterwards all the land 'hither [here] stood in his own hand;—the emperor sent his messengers over many 'lands, and caused so many of workmen to be summoned to him, that he caused a dike to be made, that was wonderfully deep, [kingdoms, and many strong workmen came to the king; he caused them to make a strong dike, very deep and very long,] 'mickle, and very strong, beside Scotland';—from sea to sea went the dike, 'each [all] other unlike! Thereupon he made a broad wall, 'one wondrous [exceeding] crafty; 'afterwards [there] he set knights to guard 'it' day and night, so that never Peoht nor 'ever any' other man 'there-

<sup>1</sup> inoh?<sup>2</sup> Sic.<sup>3</sup> makien?<sup>4</sup> þer?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þ neu <sup>9</sup> e Poht þer ouer ne com :	þat neuere Peut ne oþer man :
ne næuere nan oðer mon.	þar after ne com.
bute wha swa waldē ȝernen grið :	mid none ginne :
& spæken þan kæisere wið.	bote for harm a-winne.
& wunien forð here :	
mid Seuaere þan kæisere.	
þat iherde Fulgenes :	þis ihorde Fulgenus :
þat þis weorc iuorðed wes.	þat þes dich was imaked þus.
þat he into þisse londe ne mihte :	þat he to londe þisse <sup>1</sup> :
ne dæies ne nihtes.	10 daies no nihtes.
Nufte he þa nænne ræd :	Nufte he þo nanne read :
þe him æuere þuhte god.	þat him euere þoht god.
he cleopede alle his dringches :	he cleope al his folk :
þat heo comen to huftinge.	þat hii come to speche.
heore kinge to ræden :	hire kīg to rede :
of his muchele neode.	of his mochele neode.
Heo him rædden to faren :	Hii raden hin <sup>2</sup> to vare :
riht into Cife.	riht in to Scice.
færlīche he þider com :	cwicliche he þider com :
& fæire wes under-fon.	20 and fair he was onderfon.
He spac wið þan Peohtes :	þe king spac wiþ þan Peutes :
& swa muchel heom bi-hæhte.	and moche ȝam bi-hehte.
þat heo gædereden in þan ærde :	þat he gadere in þan erþ :

over [thereafter] might come, 'except whoso would yearn peace, and speak with the emperor, and dwell *thenceforth* here with Severus the emperor [with no stratagem, but for to gain harm]. Fulgenes heard 'that [this], that this 'work [dike] was 'completed [made], *so* that he might not *come* 'in' to this land, by day nor night. He knew not then any counsel that ever seemed good to him; he called all his 'thanes [folk], that they should come to 'husting [conference], to counsel their king, in his mickle need. They advised him to fare right into Scythia; quickly he came thither, and fair [he] was received. 'He [The king] spake with the Peohtes, and 'so' much promised them, that 'they [he] gathered in the country *a* mickle

<sup>1</sup> to þisse londe ne mihte?<sup>2</sup> him?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mucle ſcip-ferde.  
 & ferden bi ſæ ſtronde ⁊  
 into þiſſe londe.  
 He uerde riht to Euerwicke ⁊  
 Brutten þutte ſellic.  
 þa burh he anan bilæi ⁊  
 mid baldere ſtrengðe.  
 Seoððen he dude to witen ⁊  
 þurh worde & þurh writen.  
 alle his freōden ⁊ 10  
 þe weoren in þiſſen londe.  
 þat heo ſcolden wel don ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 & alle comen him to.  
 he heom wolden mucle wele ⁊  
 & wurðſcipe itæchen.  
 & æuere to hiſ liue ⁊  
 heo ſculden beon him leoue.  
 þis iherden Bruttes ⁊  
 þer fore heo weoren balde.  
 & wēden from Seuere ⁊ 20  
 þan Romænifce kæifere.  
 moni þuſend Bruttes ⁊  
 Fulge[nes]. to Fulgenes.  
 & he heō faire on-feng ⁊  
 & mucle feoh bihæhte.

mochel ſip-ferde.  
 and wende bi ſéé ſtronde ⁊  
 into þiſſe londe.  
 He verde riht to Euerwich ⁊  
 Bruttes þohte ſellich.  
 þe borh he a-nan bi-lai ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 mid baldere ſtrengþe.  
 Suppe he dude to iwite ⁊  
 boþe bi word and bi write.  
 alle his frendes ⁊  
 þat were in þiſſe londe.  
 þat hii folden wel don ⁊  
 and alle comen him to.  
  
 and euere to his lifue ⁊  
 he ȝam wolde loſuie.  
 þis ihorde Bruttus ⁊  
  
 an come to Fulgenus.  
 and he ȝam faire onderfeng ⁊  
 and mochel feo bi-hehte.

ship-army, and passed by *the* sea-strand into this land. He marched right to York,—to *the* Britons *it* seemed strange,—the burgh he anon besieged with bold strength. Afterwards he caused to be informed, 'through [both by] word and 'through [by] writ, all his friends that were in this land, that they should do well, and all to him come; 'he would *do* them much weal, and honor bestow,' and ever in his life 'they should be to him dear [he would love them]. *The* Britons heard this, 'therefore they were bold;' and 'many thousand Britons' 'went [came] 'from Severus, the Romanish emperor,' to Fulgenes; and he received them fair, and much

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat iherde Sæuarus :  
 þat Fugenes<sup>2</sup> dude þus.  
 he sōnede uerde :  
 of folke of þiffē ærde.  
 he uufde<sup>3</sup> touwærd Euerwic :  
 to his fæi-fiðe.  
 þa he to Euerwic com :  
 Fulgenes hī wef aforen on.  
 heo bigunnen fehten :  
 feondliche swiþe.  
 a ba hælue þer ful :  
 folc unimete.  
 Sæuare þer wes of-flæȝe :  
 & feole his Romwæren.  
 Fulgenes wes iwunde :  
 wunderliche fære.  
 þat i þan þridde dæie :  
 he farne dæd þolede.  
 Of Sæueres dæðe :  
 Bruttus þer demden.  
 sæiden heom bi-tweonen :  
 þa þat tir ahten.  
 Seuarus wes god cniht :

þat ihorde Seuarus<sup>1</sup> :  
 þat Fulgenus dude þus.  
 he fomnede ferde :  
 and to Euerwich wende.  
 þo he þider com :  
 Fulgenus was aforon.  
 hii bi-gonne to fihte :  
 10 starliche swiþe.  
 þar was Seuare of-flaȝe :  
 and moche of hi<sup>4</sup> folke.  
 Fulgenus was iwounded :  
 þat he sone deide.  
 20

wealth promised. Severus heard that, that Fulgenes did thus ; he assembled *his* host 'of *the* folk of this land,' [and] 'he' marched 'toward [to] York, 'to his *own* destruction.' When he came 'to York [thither], Fulgenes was before 'him'; they began to fight most 'fiercely [strongly]; 'on both sides there fell folk without number.' There was Severus slain, and 'many [much] of his 'Romans [folk]. Fulgenes was wounded 'wondrously sore,' so that 'in the third day' he 'suffered sore death [soon died]. 'Of Severus death *the* Britons there judged; those who possessed authority said them between: "Severus was good knight, and he held (ruled) us

<sup>1</sup> *Written at first Fulgenus, but afterwards expuncted.*<sup>2</sup> uufde ?<sup>3</sup> *R. Fulgenes.*<sup>4</sup> *R. his.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

&amp; he heold us fwiðe riht.

þæ while þe we hī walden herē ⁊

ær we turnden to Fulgene.

þurh heore vuele ræde ⁊

beien heo beoð dædde.

Bruttef nemen Seuar ⁊

Nime we Sæuaruffes lic ⁊

for þat he ȝam lofuede.

& ledewe hit into Eouuerwic. <sup>[f. 59<sup>b</sup> c. 1.]</sup> and ladde hine to Euerwich ⁊

&amp; þær we hit sculleð bi-burien ⁊ and þære hine burede.

mid muchelere blisse.

&amp; forð ȝelden þa duȝeðe ⁊ 10

þe he us dude whilen.

Al weoren þa dæden ⁊

al se heo idemden.

Sæuarus bi-lefde here tweien **S** Euare hadde twai sonef ⁊  
funen ⁊

þus hæhten heore nomen.

foch were hire names.

[B]afian. þe ældere hehte Bafiā ⁊

þe eldre hehte Bafian ⁊

[Ge]zan. þe ȝungere hæhte Gezan.

þe ȝeongre Gefan.

þe beiene heo weoren ibroðerē ⁊ þeos weren broþers ⁊

ah noht of are moder.

and noht of one moder.

Bafianes moder ⁊

20 Bafian his moder was Brut ⁊

wes of Brut-lōdes ærd.

&amp; Gezanes moder ⁊

Gefanes Romain icud.

of Romanisce monnen.

Bʷttes nomen Bafian ⁊

Bruttef neme Bafian ⁊

most right, the while that we would serve him, before we turned to Fulgenes; through their evil counsel they both are dead!' 'Take we Severus's body, and carry we it into [The Britons took Severus, because that he loved them, and carried him to] York, and there 'we shall bury it, [him buried.] 'with much bliss, and for-yeild (repay) the good, that he whilom did to us.' The deeds (proceedings) were all as they determined.' Severus 'left here [had] two sons,—thus hight [such were] their names; the elder hight Basian, the younger 'hight' Gezan. 'The both they [These] were brothers, but not of one mother. 'Basians [Basian his] mother was 'of Britains land [a Briton], 'and' Gezans 'mother' 'of Romanish men

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& bitahten him þifne kinedom.  
 & þa Romanifce men ⁊  
 to kige makede Gezan.  
 Bruttes weoren bifie ⁊  
 & Bafian heo luueden.  
 & þa Romanifce men ⁊  
 luueden swiþe Gezan.  
 þær aras muchel ballu ⁊  
 bi-twenen þiffen broðeren.  
 heo nomen here uerdē ⁊ 10  
 & comen to ftal fehte.  
 and þer þe king Bafian ⁊  
 sloh his broðer Gezan.  
 & þat Romanifce folc ⁊  
 fleh of þiffen londe.  
 at<sup>1</sup> monie þer weoren ifalled ⁊  
 i þan muchele fehte.  
 I piſſe londewes a ȝung mon ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 vnder þon kinge Bafian.  
 Carrais wes ihaten hiſ nome ⁊ 20  
 þes wes a fellich gume.  
 His fader wes an unſtrong cniht ⁊  
 ah þe fune wes ſwiðe ſturne.

and bi-tahte him þiffne kinedom.  
 and þe Romanifſſe men ⁊  
 to kinge makede Gefan.  
 þus aroſ muche wo ⁊  
 bi-twixte þe broþers.  
 hii gaderede verde ⁊ [f. 51<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 and comen to fihte.  
 and þar þe king Baſan ⁊  
 floh his broþer Gefan.  
 and þe Romanifſſe folk ⁊  
 fleh of piſſe londe.  
 and manie þar were of-flawe ⁊  
 in þan mochele fihte.  
 In þis lond was a man ⁊  
 onder þan kinge Baſan.  
 Carais was i-hote ⁊

Carrais.

[a noble Roman]. *The Britons took Baſian, and delivered him this kingdom; and the Romanish men made Gezan king. 'The Britons were busy, and Baſian they loved, and the Romanish men loved greatly Gezan.' 'There [Thus] aroſe much 'ſtrife between theſe [woe betwixt the] brothers; they 'took their [gathered] forces, and came to battle; and there the king Baſian ſlew his brother Gezan, and the Romanish folk fled from this land; 'but [and] many were there 'ſlled [ſlain] in the mickle fight. In this land was a 'young' man, under the king Baſian; 'his name was called [he was named] Carrais,—'this was a ſubtle man! His father was a low perſon,' 'but the ſon was [a knight] moſt ſtern; 'that was the buſieſt man*

<sup>1</sup> Ac?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat wes þe biſegæſte mon ⁊  
 þe wunede inne Bruttene.  
 of nane quike mōne ⁊  
 næuedede he care nænne.  
 wa wes him þurh alle þing ⁊  
 þat Baſian wes Bruttene king.  
 Baſian wes griðful kīg ⁊  
 & Carrais ne likede hit naþig.  
 þa a þan ilke time ⁊  
 verden bi ſæ rime. 10  
 vtlāzen to iwitē ⁊  
 fulle fixti ſcīpen.  
 Carraiſ hīe biðohte ⁊  
 of ane hindere cræfte.  
 þat he wolde fone ⁊  
 faren into Rome.  
 Forð he i-uufde ⁊  
 & in to Rome ferde.  
 & ſpac wið þane kœifere ⁊  
 & wið þā Romanifce here. 20  
 & þuſ ſeide Carrais ⁊  
 he wes swike fuliwis.  
 Hæil ſeo þu Cyrian ⁊  
 þe king þe græteð Baſian.  
 and dæð þe ful wel to witen ⁊

of none cwike manne ⁊  
 nadde he care nanne.  
 wo was him þorh alle þing ⁊  
 þat Baſian was here king.  
 þo in þan ilke time ⁊  
 verde bi ſée rime. 10  
 vt-lawes to iwite ⁊  
 folle fixti ſipes.  
 Carais hine bi-þohte ⁊  
 of one luper crafte.  
 þat he wolde fone ⁊  
 wenden to Rome.  
 and ſpeke wiþ þan kaiſere ⁊  
 and wiþ Romaniffe here. 20  
 and þuſ ſaide Carais ⁊  
 he was ſwike foliwis.  
 Hail beo þou Cirian ⁊  
 þe king þe greteþ Baſan.  
 an ſeggeþ mid fore ⁊

that dwelt in Britain! Of no man alive had he any care; woe was he through all things, that Basian was king of Britain [here]. 'Basian was peaceful king, and Carrais nothing liked it.' Then in the same time fared by the sea coast outlaws (pirates), to wit,—full sixty ships. Carrais be-thought him of a 'subtle [wicked] craft, that he would soon proceed to Rome. 'Forth he went, and into Rome came,' and spake with the emperor, and with 'the' Romanish army; and thus said Carrais,—he was deceiver full surely! "Hail be thou, Cyrian! The king Basian thee greeteth, and doth thee full well to wit, both by word and by writ

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ba bi worden & bi writē.	þat he nele na more.
þat ne mæi he þe no mare fenden ⁊	vt of Brutlonde ⁊
þ galuel <sup>1</sup> of Bruttlonde.	eni feo þe fende.
for twien he haueð bigunnen ⁊	for twie hif fondefman ⁊
to fenden hit bi his monnen.	in féé haueþ bi-raifed.
i fæ heo funden vtlazē ⁊	[(f. 60. c. 1.)]
& habbeoð alle his men if lazen.	
& iræued al þat gærfume ⁊	
þe scolde þe to cume.	
þa vt-lazes beoð fwa stronge ⁊	10 Vtlawes beoþ fo strong ⁊
bi watere & bi londe.	bi watere an bi londe.
þ ne mæi na man ouer fæ uaren ⁊	þat no man ne mai fare ⁊
bute mid fwiðe mucle care.	bote ȝif he wolde habbe care.
Ah ȝif þi wille weore ⁊	Ac ȝif þin wille were ⁊
þ þu woldest me ihere.	þat þou woldest me lene.
& bi-tachen me þine writen ⁊	twelfe of þine fipes ⁊
& fenden <sup>2</sup> me twælf scipen.	and þin owene writes.
& hælden me to munde ⁊	
a þire aȝere hond.	
into fæ ic wolde faren ⁊	20 in to féé ich wolde fare ⁊
& flæn alle þa ut-lazen.	and flean þai vtlawes.
& þi gael þe fende ⁊	and þi feo þe fende ⁊
ut of Brutlonde.	vt of Brutlonde.

[sayeth with sorrow], that he 'may [will] no more send thee 'the tribute of [any fee out of] Britain; for twice 'he hath began to send it by his men; in *the* sea they found outlaws, and all his men *they* have slain; and robbed all the treasure, that should to thee come [his messenger in *the* sea hath been robbed]. 'The' outlaws are so strong, by water and by land, that no man may pass 'over sea,' unless 'with very much [he will have] care. But if thy will were, that thou wouldst 'me hear, and deliver me thy writs, and send me twelve ships [lend me twelve of thy ships, and thine own writs], 'and hold me in protection, in thine own hand,' to *the* sea I would go, and slay 'all' the outlaws, and send thee thy 'tribute [fee]

<sup>1</sup> R. gael.<sup>2</sup> lenden?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

For ich æm ennes cnihtes sune ⁊ for ich ham on eorles fone ⁊ [c. 2.]	
& cun ich habbe iwide ⁊	and cun ich habbe wide.
haueð mi fader bi þære sæ ⁊	
castel swiþe sæle.	
& cnihtes inowe ⁊	
& men unifoȝe.	
alle heo wulleð to me draȝen ⁊	alle hii wollep to me drawe ⁊
to quellen þa ut-laȝen.	forte cwelle þeos vtlawes.
& þus ich wulle þurh mire hond ⁊	and þus ich wolle þorh min hond ⁊
witen þi feht <sup>1</sup> & þi lond.	10 wite þi feo an þi lond.
¶ þis ihærde Cýrian ⁊	þis ihorde þe kaiſer ⁊
fpeken þene swikeful mō.	and him paide swiþe wel.
& al he ȝette him ⁊	
þat he him to ȝirde <sup>2</sup> .	
writen he him bi-tehten ⁊	writes him bi-tahte ⁊
& wapnen him aræhte.	and wepne him a-rahte.
& forð hine fenden ⁊	and forþ hine gan fende ⁊
touward þiffen londe.	into þiffe londe.
Forð he ferde Cairais ⁊	Forþ verde Carais ⁊
þ he com to France.	20 þat he com to France.
æuere his writen he vnfeold ⁊	euere he his writes onfeold ⁊
þer he forð ferde.	aſe he forþ wende.
& feiden al þan monnen ⁊ [c. 2.]	

Cyrian.

out of Britain. For I am 'a knights [an earls] son, and kindred I have wide; 'my father hath by the sea a castle most good, and knights enow, and men in plenty'; all they will draw to me, [for] to kill 'the [these] outlaws; and thus I will through my hand guard thy fee and thy land.'" 'Cyrian [The emperor] heard 'the deceitful man speak' this, and 'all he to him granted, that he of him asked [*it pleased him most well*]; writs 'he' promised him, and weapons delivered to him, and forth 'sent [gan send] him 'toward [into] this land. Forth Carrais 'he' fared, until he came to France; ever his writs he unfolded, 'where [as] he forth passed, 'and said to all the men

<sup>1</sup> feh?<sup>2</sup> ȝirnde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiiii.

what he i Rome hæhde biwunnen.

&amp; folc hī wende ⁊

an æuerælche ende.

Carrais com to sæ ⁊

mid felcuðe uolke.

he hafde to iueren ⁊

fif hundred rideren.

&amp; folc he hafde a foten ⁊

muchel and vnnimete.

Al þa scipen bi sæ strōde ⁊ 10

he nom to his honde.

he uerde forð in sæ ⁊

uereden hine vðen.

&amp; he fone bi-com ⁊

ī to Brutlonde ⁊

&amp; anan bigō rēuinge ⁊

uppen Bafian þene kinge.

Carrais nom his sonde ⁊

&amp; sende ȝeond þisse londe.

bad ælcne ȝungne mon ⁊ 20

þe weorces nalde ȝeomen.

&amp; æuere ælcne ut-læȝe ⁊

þe his lond hadde bi-boȝen.

&amp; auerælcne cnihtes sune ⁊

þ his main wolde cuðen.

and folk him to wende ⁊

on euereche ende.

Carais com to fée ⁊

mid mochelere folke.

he hadde to iveren ⁊

fif hundred rideres.

and folk he hadde a fote ⁊

moche and onimete.

Al þe fipes bi þe stronde ⁊

he nom to his owe honde.

and fone he com ⁊

in to þisse londe.

and anon makede reuing ⁊

vppe Bafian þan kinge.

Carais fende his sonde ⁊

ȝeond alle þisse lond.

and bad alle þe vtlawef ⁊

þat pais wolde habbe.

and alle þe cnihtene fones ⁊

Carra[is].

what he had in Rome obtained'; and folk came to him on every part. Carrais came to *the* sea, with 'wondrous [mickle] folk; he had for companions five hundred riders, and folk he had on foot much and without number. All the ships by 'sea [the] strand he took in his [own] hand; 'he proceeded forth on *the* sea, *the* waves conveyed him,' and soon he 'arrived [came] into 'Britain [this land], and anon 'began [made] ravage upon Basian the king. Carrais 'took his messengers, and sent [sent his messengers] over [all] this land, [and] bade 'each young man who would not heed work, and' 'every outlaw [all the outlaws] who 'had come to his land [peace would have], and 'every knights son [all the knights sons

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and ælcne wiðerfulne mon :

þe god wolde biwinnen.

þat hī to scolden comen :

for golde ād gæirfume.

þas weoren cuðe :

wunder ane wide.

&amp; þa wiðerwarde :

fumne uerde.

heo comen to Carrais :

þritti þufend fuliwis.

&amp; heo uorð iwenden :

bi þan sæ stronde.

Heo rupten heo ræfden :

noht heo ne bi-læfden.

castles heo [nomen :] [l.60. c.1.]

Bruttes heo flozen.

monie heo forbarnden :

aðele Bruttus.

heo uerden norh heo uerden æft : hii verden west : hii verden eft :

al þat lond heo makeden west. 20 al þat lond hii makede west.

heo ferden into Scotlon :

þer heo scaðe worhten.

&amp; aȝan to þisse londe :

þas leoden heo for-uerden.

þat wolde habbe garifome.

þat hii to him folde come :

and habbe ȝiftes gode.

þar wende to Carais :

10 þritti þufend foliwis.

and he forþ wende :

bi þan féé stronde.

Hii rupten hii ræfden :

noht hii ne blefden.

castles hii nemen :

Bruttef hii flowen. [l.52. c.1.]

'who his strength would prove, and each valiant man,' who 'goods [treasure] would 'win [have], that [they] should to him come, 'for gold and for treasure [and have good gifts]. 'These *words* were made known wonderfully wide, and the factious assembled forces'; 'they [There] came to Carrais thirty thousand full certainly, and 'they [he] marched forth by the sea strand. They robbed, they ravaged, nought they left; castles they took, *the* Britons they slew; 'many noble Britons they burnt!' They fared 'north [west], they fared east, all the land they made waste; they marched into Scotland, where they wrought harm, and 'back [eft] to this land, [and] 'these [the] people 'they' 'destroyed [slew]. He 'took [sent]

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. x111.

He nō ænne bifine<sup>1</sup> mon :  
 & fende to Brutten.  
 & þas word heō sæde :  
 þe Carrais heom fēde.  
 Carrais þe fstronge :  
 wunieð inne comela.  
 & fend hei<sup>2</sup> bi-halues :  
 & grætet wel Bruttes.  
 3e buð godliche gum :  
 & ich eow wulle griðien. 10  
 & freofcipe eow 3iuen :  
 & freoðfcipe halden.  
 3if 3e on eowre cuððe :  
 king me wulleð makien.  
 & Bruttus andfwereden :  
 for<sup>4</sup> heo weoren aðele men.  
 & feiden þurh alle þing :  
 þat heo nalden swiken heore king.  
 for næuere quicne mon :  
 swiken þene king Bafian. 20  
 & þis word a3æn com :  
 to Carrais þon fstronge.  
 Carrais hine bi-þohte :

He fende one man :  
 into Brutlonde.  
 and feide þat Caraif :  
  
 wonede in comelan foliwif.  
  
 3if 3e me wollep come to :  
 10 ich ou wolle griþie.  
  
 and 3e on our<sup>3</sup> cuppe :  
 king me wollep makie.  
 And Bruttes anfwereðe :  
 afe men trewe.  
 þat hii nolde hire king :  
 bi-fwike for no þing.  
  
 And þis word a-3ein com :  
 to Carais þan fstronge.  
 and he hine bi-þohte :

a 'busy' man, 'and sent' 'to *the* Britons [into Britain], and 'these words' said 'to them' that Carrais 'sent them; "Carrais the strong" 'dwelleth [dwelt] in tent (?) [full truly], 'and sendeth here apart, and greeteth well *the* Britons.'—'Ye are goodly men, and [If ye will come to me] I will you free, 'and freedom give you, and friendship hold,' if ye in your country will make me king." And *the* Britons answered, 'for they were noble [as true] men, 'and said through all things' that they would not [for any thing] betray their king; 'for never *any* man alive, *would they* betray the king Basian.' And this word came back to Carrais the strong, [and] 'Carrais [he]

<sup>1</sup> wifne? Cf. v. 11872.<sup>2</sup> her?<sup>3</sup> 3oure?<sup>4</sup> Written at first forð, but ð expuncted.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

whæt he don mæhte.  
 bi twam wittre cnihten ⁊  
 he sende to þā Pohtes.  
 þa Pohtes weoren on londe ⁊  
 next Bafiane þan kinge.  
 To heom com þa sode<sup>1</sup> ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 from Carrais þon stronge.  
 & muchel heom bi-hæhte ⁊  
 of worliche æhte.  
 þa Pohtes weoren uuele ⁊ 10  
 he<sup>2</sup> leofeden heore aðele.  
 heo sworen forð rihtes ⁊  
 & treoðen heo plihten.  
 þat heo wolden Bafian ⁊  
 inne fehte bi-fwiken.  
 þis word com to Carrais ⁊  
 þa wes he glad ful iwis.  
 forð riht he nom his sonde ⁊  
 & sende to þan kinge.  
 & feide him forð rihtes ⁊ 20  
 þat wið him he wolde fehte.  
 buten he him wolde rumen ⁊  
 & bi-læuen þæs riche.

wat he don mihte.  
 he sende tweie cnihtes ⁊  
 forþ to þe Peutef.  
  
 and moche ȝam bi-hehte ⁊  
 of worliche gode.  
 þe Peutes a-non riþtes ⁊  
  
 treuþe him plihte.  
 þat hii wolde bi-fwike ⁊  
 þane king in his riche.  
 þo þis com to Caraif ⁊  
 he was glad foliwis.  
 he sende his sonde ⁊  
 forþ to þā kinge.  
 and feide him forþ riht ⁊  
 þat wiþ him he wolde fihte.  
 bote he wolde fleoð ⁊  
 vt of þis riche.

bethought him, what he might do; he sent 'by' two 'wise' knights [forth] to the Peohtes;—the Peohtes were in *the* land next (nearest) to Basian the king. To them came the messengers from Carrais the strong, and promised them much of worldly goods. The Peohtes 'were evil,—they losed their honor;—they swore' 'forth-right' [anon right] 'and' 'truth' 'they' [to him] plighted, that they would betray Basian [the king] in 'fight' [his realm]. 'This word [When this] came to Carrais, 'then' was he glad full certainly; he 'took forth-right' [sent forth] his messengers, 'and sent' to the king, and said to him forth-right, that with him he would fight, unless he would 'depart, and leave [flee out of] this realm. Then said 'the' king Basian,

<sup>1</sup> R. sonde.<sup>2</sup> heo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii

þa feide þe king Bafian ⁊  
 ær ih¹ wulle dæd beon.  
 Wið innen seouen nihte ⁊  
 heo comen to þan fihte.  
 bi-foren þere burh Eouerwic ⁊  
 þat feht wes swiðe storlic.  
 þa heo scolden bezst fehten ⁊  
 þa flužen al þa Pohtes.  
 & heo Bafiā þe king ⁊  
 mid alle bilæfdē. 10  
 & Carrais him on þrong ⁊  
 and mid spere him of-stong.  
 Bruttes heo fložen ⁊  
 & moni hundred þer nomen.  
 þa stod al þis lond ⁊  
 a Carraif aȝere hond.  
 þa nom he al þa Peohtes ⁊  
 & fende in to Scotte.  
 & ȝif heō þere muchel lōd ⁊  
 inne Scot-londen. 20  
 & heore cun wunede þære ⁊  
 seoððen auere mare.  
 þis word com to Rome ⁊  
 her æfter ful fone. [f. 61. c. 1.]

þo feide king Bafian ⁊  
 her ich wolle dead beon.  
 Wiþ þan souenihte ⁊  
 he com to þan fihte.  
 bi-fore þe borh of Euerwich ⁊  
 þat fiht was swiþe storlich. [c. 2.]  
 þo hii solde beste fihte ⁊  
 þo flowen þe Peutes.  
 and hire king Bafian ⁊  
 bi-lefde al one. 10  
 and Carais to þrong ⁊  
 and mid on spere hine stong.  
 Bruttes hii flowen ⁊  
 and mani hundred nemen.  
 þo stod al þis lond ⁊  
 in Carais hond.  
 þo nam he alle þe Peutes ⁊  
 and fende to Scottes.  
 and ȝef þam þare mochel londe ⁊  
 in Scot-leode ⁊ 20

þes word com to Rome ⁊  
 wel swiþe fone.

"I will be dead first!" Within 'seven nights they [the se'nnight he] came to the fight, before the burgh [of] York,—the fight was most sturdy! When they should fight best, then fled 'all' the Peohtes, and 'they' left 'withall [alone] Basian 'the [their] king; and Carrais pressed towards 'him,' and with [a] spear him pierced. *The* Britons they slew, and many hundred 'there' captured. Then stood all this land in Carrais 'own' hand; then took he all the Peohtes, and sent 'into Scotland [to *the* Scots], and gave them there much land in Scotland; 'and their kin dwelt there afterwards evermore.' This word came to Rome, 'hereafter' 'full [exceeding] soon, how

¹ ich?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

hu Carrais hæfde iuaren ⁊  
 & Basian þene king of-flæȝen.  
 Heo somneden twa ferdan ⁊  
 of Romanisfe ærden.  
 & nomen tweien eorles ⁊  
 þe weoren swiðe aðele.

*Allec.*

Allec hæhte þe an ⁊  
 wes wis & strong mon.  
 þe oðer wes icleoƿed þus ⁊

*Liuius  
Gallus.*

Liuius Gall⁹.  
 Heo ferdan of<sup>1</sup> Rome ⁊  
 & to þisse londe comen.

þ̃ heo bicomē ⁊  
 to Carrais þan kinge.  
 Carrais heo of-floȝen ⁊  
 his cnihtes heo nomen.  
 þus þa Romanisfe mē ⁊  
 ræfden to leoden.

& Allec nom to his honde ⁊  
 muchel of þisse londe.  
 þat⁹ ȝet þer weoren Buttus ⁊  
 monie bi-hælues.  
 þe castles heolden stronge ⁊  
 burhȝes brade & longe.

ou Carais hadde ivare ⁊  
 and þane king of-flawe.  
 Hii somnede twei ferdas ⁊  
 of Romanisfe erpe.  
 and fende twie eorles ⁊

10 Allec and Liuius Gallus.  
 Hi verden vt of Rome ⁊  
 to þisse londe hii come.

Carais hii of-flowen ⁊  
 his cnihtes hii nomen.

and Allec nam to his hond ⁊  
 20 mochel of þis lond.  
 þe ȝet þar were Bruttes ⁊  
 mani bi-halues.  
 þat castles heolde stronge ⁊  
 borewes brode and longe.

Carrais had acted, and slain 'Basian' the king. They assembled two hosts of Romanish land, and 'took [sent] two earls, 'who were most noble.' Allec 'hight the one, *who* was a man wise and strong'; 'the other was called thus, [and] Livius Gallus. They marched 'from [out of] Rome, 'and' to this land [they] came; 'so that they came up to Carrais the king;' Carrais they slew, his knights they captured. 'Thus the Romanish men attacked *the* people,' and Allec took in his hand much of this land. The yet there were many Britons apart, who held strong castles, *and* burghs broad and long. They caused *messengers* speedily to go southward into Cornwall,

<sup>1</sup> *Written at first ut.*<sup>2</sup> *pe?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Heo lætten hiȝēdliche varen ⁊  
 seoð into Cornwalen.  
 æfter Asclepidiot ⁊  
 þe wes i Cornwale duc ⁊  
 he cō an hiȝenge ⁊  
 & heo hine heouen to kinge.  
 þa somneden Bruttuf ⁊  
 sele þeines.  
 hehte<sup>1</sup> alle þa cnihtes ⁊  
 cumen to þan kinge. 10  
 and æuerælcne ohte mon:  
 biwīnen his aðelen.  
 heo budē heore uerde ⁊  
 uppe niðinges bærde.  
 þa wes Allec þe king ⁊  
 iliðē in to Lunden.  
 & Bruttene kīg ⁊  
 sone him bæh æfter.  
 Hit wef an anne hæhȝe dæie ⁊  
 halȝedē leoden. 20  
 wes Allec þe king ⁊  
 in are temple. [c. 2.]  
 in Lundenne ⁊  
 mid his Rom-leoden.

**H**I lette hiȝendliche vare ⁊  
 sup in to Cornwale.  
 hafter Esclepidiot ⁊  
 þat wef in Cornwale duck.  
 he com an hiȝenge ⁊  
 and hii makede hine to kinge ⁊

þo somnede he alle þe cnihtes ⁊  
 for come to him feolue.

and he bannede his ferde ⁊  
 of alle þis erþe.  
 and wende to Londene ⁊  
 þar Allec þo wonede.

after Asclepidiot, who was in Cornwall duke;—he came in haste, and they 'raised [made] him to *be* king. Then assembled *the* Britons, [he] 'good thanes!—bade' all the knights [for] to come to 'the king [himself], 'and every brave man to win his honor;' 'they [and he] summoned 'their [his] forces, 'upon *pain of* nithings gesture\*. [from all this land,] 'Then was Allec the king gone into London, [and went to London; there Allec then dwelt.] 'and *the* British king soon went after him. It was on a high-day (festival); *the* people made sacrifice; Allec the king was in a temple in London, with his Rome-folk.' Then heard [Allec] the king 'mickle [very

<sup>1</sup> hehten ?

\* See Notes.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þa iherde þe king ⁊

mucle ludinge.

in Lundene ⁊

ftureden þa leoden.

Allec hī ut leop ⁊

&amp; his wepnen he igrap.

&amp; al his Rom-leoden ⁊

þa i Lunðene<sup>1</sup> weoren.

&amp; comen ut of þere burh ⁊

&amp; ifeȝen heom bi-hæluen. 10

ifeȝen heom bi-fiden ⁊

fillic heom þuhte.

wha hæfde al þa mon-uerede ⁊

þidere ifende ⁊

Buttes heom buȝe to ⁊

mid bittere ræfen.

Allec heo floȝen ⁊

muche folc heo nomen.

&amp; sum ð uæfte bæh ⁊

in to þere burh<sup>3</sup> ⁊

&amp; þe eorl Liuius ⁊

in to Lundenne flæh.

lette luken þa ȝeten ⁊

þo ihorde Allec þe king ⁊ [f. 52<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]

fwiȝe moche luding.

Allec him vp leop ⁊

and his wepne igrop.

and al his Romleode ⁊

þat in Londene were.

and wend ham vt ⁊

and wonder fiht ifehȝe.

Bruttes heom refde to ⁊

mid fwiȝe gode wille.

Allec hii flowen ⁊

mochel folk inomē<sup>2</sup>.

20

And þe eorl Linus<sup>4</sup> ⁊

fleoȝ in to borwe.

letten louke þe ȝates ⁊

much] noise;—‘the people stirred in London.’ Allec him ‘out [up] leapt, and his weapon ‘he’ grasped, and all his Rome-folk, that in London were; and *they* ‘came [marched them] out ‘of the burgh,’ and saw ‘them (the Britons) aside, [a marvellous sight.] ‘saw them beside; strange *it* seemed to them who had all the host thither sent!’ *The Britons* ‘advanced [rushed] towards them with bitter ‘onset [most good will]; Allec they slew, much folk they captured, ‘and some quickly retreated into the burgh.’ And the earl Lucius fled into ‘London [*the* burgh]; caused the

<sup>1</sup> R. Lundene.<sup>2</sup> hii nomen?<sup>3</sup> Written at first burh fleh, but the last word expuncted by the same hand.<sup>4</sup> R. Liuius.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& him feolf læð to walle.  
and Bruttes þa þurȝen ⁊  
gunnen biriden.

and fīde to walle.  
and Bruttes Londone ⁊  
gonne bi-ride.

& bi-leien þa burh ⁊  
wel mid þe<sup>1</sup> bezften.

And Esclepidiot ⁊  
þat was cniht fwiȝe god.  
fende his sonde ⁊  
in to Scotlonde.

þe king Asclepidiot ⁊  
þe wes cniht swiðe god.  
sende his sonde ⁊  
in to Scotlonde.

in to Muriane ⁊

10 in to Moraine ⁊

æfter mon-weore<sup>2</sup>.

after man-ferde.

& æc in to wes<sup>3</sup> Wales ⁊

and eke in to Wales ⁊

æfter Wæl-Brutten.

after Walfe-Bruttes.

& swa he lette sone uaren ⁊

soð in to Cornwalen.

hæhte<sup>4</sup> ælcne mon of þan ærd ⁊

and hin to his owe erp ⁊

þe hæfde on his chinne bærd.

þat ech man þat hadde beord.

uppe leome & vppē lif ⁊

vppe lime and vppe lif ⁊

to Lundene liðen.

to Londene wende.

Inne feouē nihte ⁊

20 And alle hii come ⁊

ifomned heo weoren.

in lutele time.

heo heolden to walle ⁊

and refde to walle ⁊

mid wunderliche strēȝðe.

in euereche halue.

gates to be locked, and 'himself' went to *the* wall; and the Britons gan ride round 'the burgh [London], 'and besieged the burgh well with the best.' 'The king [And] Asclepidiot, who was knight most good, sent his messengers into Scotland, into Moray, after forces, and eke into Wales, after Welsh-Britons. And 'so he caused *others* soon to go southward' into 'Cornwall [his own country]; 'ordered [that] each man 'of the land' that had beard 'on his chin,' upon *pain of* limb and upon life to proceed to London. 'In seven nights assembled they were; they [And they all came in little time, and] assaulted *the* walls 'with wondrous strength [on

<sup>1</sup> þe is interlined.<sup>2</sup> mon-weorede?<sup>3</sup> Redundant?<sup>4</sup> The last three letters of hæhte are sup. ras.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& Liuius Gall<sup>9</sup> ⁊  
 goðliche werede. [f. 61<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 Bruttes a þan ende ⁊  
 breken þa walles.  
 & iwenden binnen ⁊  
 þa wes þa burh bi-wunnen.  
 & Liuius Gallus ⁊  
 gæinde to anne castle.  
 & þer binen him ræfde ⁊  
 mid his Romanisce uolke. 10  
 & Bruttene king ⁊  
 bæh to þæn castle.  
 & lætte to læpen ⁊  
 alle þa Brut-leoden.  
 þa ifæh Liuius Gallus ⁊  
 ƿ his help wef fwiðe wac.  
 þa leonede he ouer wal ⁊  
 & lude gon cleopien.  
 Aſclepidiot þene king ⁊  
 þu ært fwiðe keene. 20  
 ich wullen þe ſpeken wið ⁊  
 & ƿirne þe liues grið.  
 þat þu mid griðe me leten uaren ⁊  
 forð touward Rome.

and Liuiuf Gallus ⁊  
 wel hine werede.  
 Bruttes a þan ende ⁊  
 þe walles to-breke.  
 and in hii wende ⁊  
 þo waf þe borh awonne.  
 And Liuiuf Gallus ⁊  
 wende to þan castle.  
  
 and Bruttes leope to ⁊  
 on euerече fide.  
  
 Liuius ƿeornde griþ ⁊  
 and þane king wolde ſpekē wiþ.  
 þo ſo ſeide Liuius ⁊  
 Let me hine wende þus.

every side]; and Livius Gallus 'goodly [well him] defended. *The* Britons at the end brake the walls, and 'within [in they] went;—then was the burgh won. And Livius Gallus retreated to 'a [the] castle, 'and there within he rushed, with his Romanish folk'; and *the* British king marched to the castle, and caused all the British-folk to assault *it* [the Britons assaulted *it* on every side]. 'When Livius Gallus saw, that his help was very weak; then leaned he over *the* wall, and loud gan to call to Asclepidiot the king: "Thou art most keen," 'I would speak with thee, and yearn of thee grace of life; that thou let me depart with peace forth toward Rome, and with me my people [Livius yearned peace, and would speak with the king; then thus said Livius: Let me hence depart thus, with the same folk]

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& mid me mine leoden ⁊  
 þe ȝet beoð an liue.  
 & ich þe wulle swerien ⁊  
 vppen mine sweorde.  
 þat nulle ic nauere mare ⁊  
 aȝen cumen here.  
 Aſclepidiot iherde þat ⁊  
 þeos word him þuhte god.  
 & al hī iȝette ⁊  
 þat Gallus þer ȝerde<sup>1</sup>.  
 Of þan caſtle heo ut foren ⁊  
 & aðef heo ſworen.  
 & ſwa heo gunnen wenden ⁊  
 uorð ut of London.  
 þa com Scottene king ⁊  
 ſcriðē to hirede.  
 & imætte Gallus ⁊  
 & his gumen alle.  
 Sone cleopede Columban ⁊  
 þe wes Scottene king.  
 Whar beo ȝe mine gumen ⁊  
 vt of Galwæiða.  
 whar beo ȝe mine men ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

mid þā ilke folke ⁊  
 þat ich habbe ȝet a-lifue.  
 and ich þe wolle ſwe[rie ⁊]  
 vppen mine ſwerde. [c. 2.]  
 þat nelle ich neuere more ⁊  
 aȝein comen here.  
 þo faide Eſclepidiot ⁊  
 þis he wel mot.

10

Of þan caſtle hii fore ⁊  
 and oþes him ſwore.  
 and ſo hii gonne wende ⁊  
 vt of þiffe londe.  
 þo com Scottene king ⁊  
 Eſclepidiot to helpe.  
 imette wiþ Liuius ⁊  
 and mid al his folke.  
 Sone cleopede Columban ⁊  
 20 þat was Scottene king.  
 Ware beo ȝeo mine cnihtes ⁊  
 fleap alle forþ rihtes.

20

that yet 'are [I have] alive. And I will swear to thee, upon my sword, that I will never more again come here." Asclepidiot 'heard that, these words him seemed good; and all *he* him granted, that Gallus there asked [then said, this he well might *do*]. From the castle they 'out' went, and oaths 'they [to him] swore, and so they gan depart 'forth' out of 'London [this land]. Then came *the* king of Scots 'marching to *the* host [to *the* help of Asclepidiot], 'and' met [with] Gallus, and [with] all his 'men [folk]. Soon called Columban,—who was king of Scots: "Where be ye, my 'men [knights] 'out of Galloway? where be ye, my men out of Moray? where be ye, my Scots? Follow me beside. Here

<sup>1</sup> ȝerde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ut of Mureine.

whar beo ȝe mine Scottes? [c. 2.]

scriðeð me biſide.

her we ſculleð wel whreken?

ure wines deore.

&amp; ure uulle iuan?

fallen to þā grunde.

ȝif þe king Aſclipidiot?

þe is cniht ſwiðe god.

haueð heom ſpeken wið? 10

&amp; iȝefuen heð liues grið.

nes ich noht þere?

ne nan of mine iuaren<sup>1</sup>.ne we hit nulleð<sup>2</sup> halden?

for ure freōð heo habbeoð aqualde.

Heo leiden heom bi-tweonen?

heore ſperen longe.

&amp; ladlichen ſwiðe?

feolē Rom-leoden.

&amp; Gallus heo nomē?

&amp; þat hafd him of-floȝen.

&amp; wurpen hine in ænne broc?

þe þer heom bi ſtod.

&amp; al þæt wal heo brohten?

þoh hii griþ habbe?

nas ich noht at þe reade.

Hii name ſweordes ſtrange?

and hire ſperes longe.

fo þat loþliche ſwiþe?

fulle Romleode.

20 And Liuius hii neme?

and þat hefd of-swipte.

and worpen him in one broc?

þat þar bi ſtod.

we shall well avenge our dear friends, and fell our full foes to the ground! 'If the king Asclepidiot, who is knight most good, hath spoken with them, and given them lifes grace, yet I was not there, [Slay *them* all forth-right, though they have grace *of life*; for I was not at the counsel.]" 'nor any of my comrades, nor will we it hold, for our friends they have slaughtered.'" They laid between them [took strong swords and] their long spears, 'and [so that *they*] most hostilely felled *the* Rome-folk. And 'Gallus [Livius] they captured, and smote off 'from him' the head, and cast him in a brook that there by 'them' stood, 'and all the dead they brought into

<sup>1</sup> iueren?<sup>2</sup> Written originally wulleð, but corrected by the same hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

in to þan broke.

þer Gallus i þan broke ⁊

at grunde waf bi-buried.

þa wes þas þeode ⁊

iclanfed of Rom-leode.

and Bruttes þan broke ⁊

nome bi-tæhtē.

for Gallus wes iflaȝen þer bi ⁊

hæhte hine nemni Galli.

&amp; a þere Ænglifce boc ⁊ 10

he is ihatē Wale-broc.

Nu ich habbe þe iraht ⁊

hu he hauede þene nome icaht.

for nu and auere mare ⁊

is þe nome þere.

þa wes king Afclepidiot ⁊

þe wes cniht swiðe god.

fulle ten ȝere ⁊

mid Brutten heo luuuede here.

seoððen his ende bicom ⁊ 20

þat was uuele idon.

þ he sculden swa raðe ⁊ [f. 62. c. 1.]

uaren of piſſen lif-daȝen.

for he wes swiðe læfful ⁊

þo was þeos þeode ⁊

iclanfed of Romleode.

Bruttes þane broc ⁊

Galli cleopede.

for þat Liuius Gallus ⁊

was þar on i-pult þus.

and [a] þe Engleſſe boc ⁊

he his ihote Welebroc.

*Galli.**Walebroc.*

nou and euere more ⁊

þe name ſtondeþ þare.

þo waf king Efclepidiot ⁊

þat was cniht fwiðe god.

fulle ten ȝere ⁊

mid Bruttes he wonede here.

þo com his ende ⁊

þat he folde wende.

*Afclepidiot.*

the brook;—there Gallus in the brook at *the* bottom was buried.' Then was this nation cleansed from *the* Rome-folk, and *the* Britons 'gave a name to the brook; because Gallus was slain thereby (near), bade it be named Galli [called the brook Galli, because that Livius Gallus was therein thus cast], and in the English books it is named Wal-brook. 'Now I have informed thee, how it had acquired the name, for' now and evermore the name 'is [standeth] there. Then was Asclepidiot king, who was knight most good; full ten years he 'lived [dwelt] here with *the* Britons; then came his end,—'that was evilly done,' that he should depart 'so soon from this life-day!—all *the* Britons loved him, because he was most just.' 'In



MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

	alle Brut luueden.	hii-fmite <sup>1</sup> he was in fihte ⁊
<i>Rex Coel.</i>	I Glouchæstre wes an eorl ⁊	mid on of Coel his cnihtes.
	of aðelene moncunne.	
	þe alre hæheste iborne mon ⁊	
	þe wunede inne Bruttene.	
<i>Coel.</i>	Coel wes ihaten ⁊	þeos ilke Coel <sup>2</sup> ⁊
	hæht of þan Brutten.	
	he wæs if Gloief cūne ⁊	was of Gloi his cunne ⁊
	þe Glochæstre ahte.	þat hahte Gloucestre. [f. 53. c. 1.]
	swa þat mid alle heore mihte ⁊ 10	
	heo comen to ane fihte.	
	Coel eorl i þan fihte stod ⁊	
	& floh þene king Afclepidiot.	
	Imong þiffen imonge ⁊	Amag <sup>3</sup> þiffe motinge ⁊
	com reouðe to þiffe londe.	come opere tidinge.
	swa þat þe kæifere Dioclician ⁊	so þat þe kaifer Dioclecian ⁊
	sende to þiffe londe Maximian.	fende hider Maximian.
	hider he com faren ⁊	
	mid muchelere ferde.	
	þa he com to londe ⁊ 20	þo he com to Londene ⁊
	Coel he uunde.	Coel þar he funde.
	mid compe hæfde biuunnen ⁊	mid fihte he hadde awonne ⁊
	þat he king wæs him feolue.	þat he was king of londe.

Gloucester was an earl of noble race, the highest born man of all that dwelt in Britain; *he* was named Coel, highest of the Britons, he was of Gloies kindred, who possessed Gloucester; so that with all their might they came to a fight; Coel *the* earl stood in the fight, and slew the king Asclepidiot. [he was smitten in fight by one of Coel his knights; this same Coel was of his kin who possessed Gloucester.] Among (during) this business came 'sorrow to this land [other tidings], so that the emperor Dioclesian sent 'to this land [hither] Maximian;—'hither he arrived with a great army.' When he came to 'land [London], he found Coel [there]; with 'combat [fight he] had won that he was *become* king 'himself [of *the* land]. Coel

<sup>1</sup> i-fmite ?<sup>2</sup> A line apparently is wanting.<sup>3</sup> Amang ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Coel and Maximen ⁊  
 cuðliche spekē.  
 & freondſcipe makeden ⁊  
 i-uaftened mid treoðen.  
 þa feide Maximien ⁊  
 mi broðer Dioclician.  
 haueð me al þa londs ⁊  
 bitaht a mire honde.  
 bi-twixe Mutgiu & Scotlonde ⁊  
 þat ic heo<sup>1</sup> ſcal þurh ſcriðen. 10  
 & alle þa ilke men for-don ⁊  
 þat luuieð þene criſtindom.  
 þa wes wa Coel ⁊  
 þe king wæs on Bruttene.  
 þat iſæhtneffe<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 mid treoðe hafde iſemed.  
 Coel heold hine ſtille ⁊ [c.2.]  
 & Maxinien<sup>3</sup> dude his wille.  
 elcne criſtine mon ⁊  
 at þan hefde he bi-nom. 20  
 & þa wið-ſaken wolde criſtindom ⁊  
 he dude his markē him on.  
 þuſ ferde Maximien ⁊  
 he martrede ſeint<sup>4</sup> Alban.

Coel and Máximien ⁊  
 frendes bi-comen.  
 þo feide Maximian ⁊  
 mi broþer Dioclecian.  
 haueþ me alle þe londs ⁊  
 bi-tahte on mine honde.  
 bi-twixe Montagu and Scotlond ⁊  
 þat ich hii ſal þorh ride.  
 and alle þe men for-don ⁊  
 þat loſuieþ þane criſtendom.  
 þo was wo Coel ⁊  
 king of Bruttayne.  
 þat he ſahtneffe ⁊  
 mid ſware hadde iſaftned.  
 Coel heold hine ſtille ⁊  
 and Maximien dude his wille.  
 echne criſtene man ⁊  
 þat hefd him bi-nom.  
 and ȝif he wolde heþene beo ⁊  
 þanne mihte he libbe.  
 þuſ ferde Maxiniā<sup>3</sup> ⁊  
 he martrede ſeint Albon.

*Diocli-  
 anus cum  
 Maximiano  
 imperauit  
 xx<sup>11</sup> annis,  
 ex quibus  
 posteriori-  
 bus ix. annis  
 inceſſubili-  
 ter crudeliſ-  
 ſime eccle-*

and Maximian 'spake familiarly [became friends], 'and made friendship fastened with troth.' Then said Maximian: "My brother Dioclesian hath delivered me in mine hand all the lands betwixt 'Muntgiu [Montagu] and Scotland, that I shall through them 'pass [ride], and slay all 'those [the] men that love the Christendom. Then was Coel woe, 'who was' king of Britain, that [he] had fastened amity with 'troth [oath]. Coel held him still, and Maximian did his will; each Christian man 'he' took off [him] the head, and 'whoso would forsake Christendom, he put his mark on him [if he would be heathen, then might he live]. Thus fared Maximian,—

<sup>1</sup> heom?<sup>2</sup> he ſæhtneffe?<sup>3</sup> R. Maximien, Maximian.<sup>4</sup> R. ſeint.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

*siam dei  
persecuti  
funt. Sub  
[h]ac perse-  
cutione  
sanctus  
Mauricius  
cum sociis  
suis & sanc-  
tus Julianus  
& sancta  
Basilissa,  
cum fere  
x<sup>cem</sup> mili-  
bus marti-  
ris. & mille  
virginibus  
coronati  
funt; quo  
tempore  
sanctus  
Georgius  
martiriza-  
tus est. Ea  
tempestate  
Sanctus  
Albanus in  
Anglia,  
Sanctus  
Vincencius  
in Iffpan-  
nia, Sancta  
Margareta  
in Antigia,  
Sanctus  
Pantaleon  
in Nicome-  
dea, passi  
funt.*

& feint Julien and feit Aaron ⁊  
& tweien ancrift<sup>1</sup> of Kærlion.  
Næs nan<sup>2</sup> biscop næs nan clærk ⁊  
ne cniht neore he swa sterc.  
bute he wid-foke<sup>3</sup> cristindō ⁊  
þat he nes anan fordon.  
þa þis wes al idon ⁊  
þa uerde forð Maximian.  
& Coel bi-læfde ⁊  
king inne Bruttene. 10  
þes king hæfuede enne dohter ⁊  
þe wes him fwiðe deore.  
& he al þis kinelond ⁊  
bitahte þan maidene an hond.  
for næfde he nan oðer child ⁊  
þe mihte ipiffen londe beō king.  
þ mæide hehte Elene ⁊  
seoððen heo wes quene.  
i þan londe of Jerusalem ⁊  
leoden to bliffen. 20  
þis maiden wes wel itæht ⁊  
on bocken heo cuðe godne cræft.  
& wunede in þisse londe ⁊

and feint Julien [and feint] Aaron ⁊  
and tweie ancreos of Cairlion.  
Nas no bissop naf no cleorc ⁊  
ne cniht nere he so starc.  
bote he for-foke cristendom ⁊  
þat he nas a-non for-don.  
þo þis was al idon ⁊  
þo ferde forþ Maximian.  
and Coel bi-lefde ⁊  
king a þissere erþe.  
þeos king hadde ane dohter ⁊  
þat was him fwiþe deore.  
and he al þis kinelond ⁊ [c. 2.]  
bi-cwaþ þat maide an hond.  
for nadde he no cnaue ⁊  
þat mihte þat lond habbe.  
þat mayde hehte Elejne ⁊  
suþþe ȝeo waf cwene.  
in þan lond of Jerusalem ⁊  
leode to bliffe. 20  
þat maide was wel itaht ⁊  
ine boke godne craft.  
and wonede in þisse londe ⁊

he martyred saint Alban, and saint Julian, and saint Aaron, and two an-chorites of Cærleon. *There* was no bishop, *there* was no clerk, nor knight—were he *ever* so strong, that he was not anon slain, unless he forsook Christendom. When this was all done, then marched forth Maximian, and left Coel king in 'Britain [this land]. This king had a daughter, who was to him very dear, and he 'delivered [bequeathed] to the 'maiden [maid] in hand all this kingdom; for he had no 'other child [boy], that might 'in this land be king [the land have]. The maid hight Helen,—subsequently she was queen in the land of Jerusalem, to *the* bliss of *the* people. 'This maiden [The maid] was well instructed, in books 'she knew' good craft, and dwelt

<sup>1</sup> ancrif?<sup>2</sup> man *pr.* m.<sup>3</sup> wið-foke?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

mid hire fader stronge.

mid hire fader stronge.

Her æfter fone ⁊

þar after fone ⁊

þat word com to Rome.

þat word com to Rome.

þat Coel hæfden iquald ⁊

þat Coel adde icwelled ⁊

Asclepidiot þene king.

Eſclepidiot þane king.

þa weorē Rom-leoden ⁊

þo were Romleode ⁊

bliðe on heore mode.

bliþe on hire mode.

for he hæfde an his dægen ⁊

for þat he hadde ifleþe ⁊

muchel of heore cūne iflaþen.

moche of hire cunne.

þet ne com Maximien ⁊ [f. 62<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]

þet nas Maximan ⁊

neuere to Rome aþen.

11 noht icome to Rome aþein.

þa nom Dioclicien ⁊

þo nam Dioclecian ⁊

æne eorl<sup>1</sup> wel idon.

on eorl wel idon.

þat wes þe ræhþeſte mon ⁊

he was þe boldeſte man ⁊

þe wuden<sup>2</sup> inne Rome.

þat wonede ine Rome.

&amp; hæfde moni lond ⁊

ilæid under his hond.

nas na mā in his dægen ⁊

nas no man in his daiþe ⁊

þ̅ durſten him derf makien.

þat dorſte him derf makie.

þe kæiſere hine ſende ⁊

20 þe kaiſer hine ſende ⁊

into þiſſen londe.

in to þiſſen ærde ⁊

mid vnimete uærde.

mid onimete ferde.

Suſtance<sup>3</sup> hehte þe eorl ⁊

Conſtance hehte þe eorl ⁊

in this land with her strong father. Soon 'hereafter [thereafter] the  
came to Rome, that Coel had killed Asclepidiot the king. Then were  
Rome-folk blithe in their mood, because [that] he had 'in his day'  
much (many) of their kin. Yet Maximian 'never came [was not come  
Rome again. Then took Dioclesian a brave earl, 'who [he] was the b  
est man that dwelt in Rome; 'and had laid (subdued) many lands u  
his hand'; was *there* no man in his day that durst make *himself* ha  
'The emperor sent him 'into this land, into this country,' with innum  
ble host. Custance hight the earl; 'noblest of all knights [knight

<sup>1</sup> R. eorl.<sup>2</sup> wunede?<sup>3</sup> R. Cuſtanc

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

æðeleſt alre cnihtē.  
 Þis iherde Coel ⁊  
 þ̃ icumen wæs Cuſtance.  
 adræd he wes ſwiðe ⁊  
 of hiſ aḡene liue.  
 he nom forð rihtes ⁊  
 ſix wiſe cnihtes.  
 to C<sup>u</sup>ſtance heō fende ⁊  
 & wilcumede hine to lōde.  
 & he ſeolf him woldē ſpecken wið ⁊ and he wolde come and ſpeke him  
 3ef he him wolden 3ifuen grið. 11 3ef he wolde 3eue him griþ.  
 & Cuſtance him fende æfter ⁊ And Cuſtance him fende after ⁊  
 þat he come mid twalf cnihten. come mid twalf cnihtef.  
 to-ſomne heo comen ⁊ to-gadere hii comen ⁊  
 to-gædere heo ſpeken ſone. and ſehte iworþen ſone. [£53<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 þa queð þe kin<sup>1</sup> Coel ⁊  
 Cuſtance luſt me nu wel.  
 ich fugge þe þurh alle þing ⁊  
 ich floh Aſclepidiot þene king.  
 þe hæfde þurh hiſ wiðer-laȝen ⁊ 20  
 muchel of þine cunne of-flaȝen.  
 & mid ſtrengðeeowat-haldē wolde ⁊  
 þ̃ gael of þiſſen londe.

cniht mid þan beſte.  
 þis ihorde Coel ⁊  
 þat icome was Conſtance her.  
 adred he was ſwiþe ⁊  
 of hiſ owene lifue.  
 he nam forþrihtes ⁊  
 fix wiſe cnihtef.  
 and to Conſtance fende ⁊  
 and wilcumede hine tolonde. [wiþ ⁊  
 and he wolde come and ſpeke him  
 3ef he wolde 3eue him griþ.  
 And Cuſtance him fende after ⁊  
 come mid twalf cnihtef.  
 to-gadere hii comen ⁊  
 and ſehte iworþen ſone. [£53<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]

the beſt]! Coel heard this, that Cuſtance was come [here]; adread he was  
 greatly, for his own life; he took forth-right ſix wiſe knights, [and] ſent  
 'them' to Cuſtance, and welcomed him to land; and ſaid that he 'himſelf'  
 would [come and] ſpeak with him, if he would give him peace. And  
 Cuſtance ſent after him, 'that he ſhould come [to come] with twelve  
 knights; together they came, 'together they ſpake [and became reconciled]  
 ſoon. 'Then quoth the king Coel: "Cuſtance, liſten now well to me. I  
 ſay thee through all things that I ſlew Aſclepidiot the king, who had  
 through hiſ evil laws ſlain much of thy kin, and would from you with  
 ſtrength withhold the tribute of this land; and much ſhame he did you,—

<sup>1</sup> king?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& muchelne scome he eow dude :  
 þe ræðer he dæd þolede.  
 for ich wes an of þan hæhste :  
 þ̅ fwoe eow herfumnefce. [c.2.]  
 to Romen þat we sculden senden :  
 þ̅ gael of þissen londe.  
 þaf aððes þe king bræc :  
 þer fore he if nu dæd.  
 Ah a-fwike wit vnker fihthes :  
 & lokien we to þan rihten. 10  
 & ich wullen halden to :  
 & halden þe for hærre.  
 & beon þe ful liðe :  
 & halden þe for lauerd.  
 & ælche ȝere þe fendē :  
 þat gael of Brutlonde.  
 þa answere Custāce :  
 riche mon & swiðe bald.  
 Coel þu ært wis mon :  
 & wiðdom þe folleweð. 20  
 Beo nu godful kīg :  
 & gumene þu beo lauerd².  
 & al ich þe ȝette :  
 swa þu hit ȝirneft.

þo feide Custance :  
 to Coel þan kinke¹.  
 Coel þou art wifman :  
 and wiðdom þe folweþ.  
 Beo nou god king :  
 and of þif londe louerd.

the sooner he suffered death! For I was one of the highest that swore to you obedience, that we should send to Rome the tribute of this land. These oaths the king brake,—therefore is he now dead. But cease we our fight, and look we to the right, and I will submit, and hold thee for master, and be to thee full obedient, and hold thee for lord, and each year send thee the tribute of Britain.” Then ‘answered [said] Custance,—‘noble man, and most bold [to Coel the king]: “Coel, thou art a wise man, and wisdom followeth thee. Be now a good king, and ‘be thou’ lord of ‘men [this land]; ‘and all I grant thee as thou it yearnest,’ and I will with

¹ R. kinge.

² lauer, *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& ich wulle mid monſcipe ⁊  
 þine monradene on-ſon.  
 for þu uſ dedeſt<sup>2</sup> monſcipe and god ⁊  
 þa þu floȝe Aſclepidiot.  
 Mid muchelere wurſcipe ⁊  
 sæht heo iwurðen.

mid muchelere bliſce ⁊  
 heo wuneden in burȝen.  
 Ah neſ hit buten ane while ⁊  
 þ̅ per com an oðer time. 10  
 neoren noht feouwertī dāȝen ⁊  
 allunȝe iuæreden.

þat Coel þe king ⁊  
 ſeoc lai an comlen.  
 hiſ hæfde ſwiðe oc ⁊  
 & þe king wes wunderliche ſeoc.  
 Seouen niht & ænne dæi ⁊  
 þe kīȝ ſwiðe ſeoc lai.  
 hiht heold hine bi þan ribben ⁊

þat ne mihte he na leng libben. 20

& he cleopede him to ⁊  
 riचे hiſ þeines.

þat heohim ſculden ræden ⁊ [l. 63. c. 1.] for to him reade ⁊  
 at ſwulchere neode.

anc<sup>1</sup> ich wolle mid manſipe ⁊  
 þi manradene onderfange.

Mid mochele bliſſe ⁊  
 hii wonede ine borwe.  
 Ac naſ hit bote ane wile ⁊  
 þat com an oþer time.

þat Coel þe king ⁊  
 ſeac was in comelan.

Souenihȝ and on dai ⁊  
 þe king ſwiþe ſeac lai.

and he cleopede him to ⁊  
 alle hiſ wiſe cnihtes.

at ſochere neode.

honor thy homage receive, 'for thou didst to us honor and good, when thou slewest Asclepidiot.' With much worship they became friends, 'with much bliss they dwelt in *the* burgh. But it was not but a while, that 'there' came another time (change of events); 'forty days were not wholly passed,' that Coel the king 'lay [was] sick in tent(?); 'his head ached greatly, and the king was wondrously sick.' Seven nights and one day the king lay very sick; 'it held him by the ribs, *so* that he might no longer live;' and he called to him 'his noble thanes, that they should [all his wise knights, for to] counsel him at such need, how he might dispose of Helen his daughter.

<sup>1</sup> R. and.<sup>2</sup> An o is written above the first e, by second hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

hu he mihte dihten ⁊  
 Ælene his dohter.  
 þa heo hafden<sup>1</sup> al ifeid ⁊  
 þ̅wes þ̅e utemæste rað<sup>2</sup>.  
 þat heo ȝeue Ælene ⁊  
 Cuſtance to are quene.  
 & al his kineliche lond ⁊  
 fette in Cuſtances hond.  
 & Coel hī dude ſwa ⁊  
 þe king wes inne B<sup>u</sup>ttene. 10  
 þa nes þ̅er nan oðer ræd ⁊  
 bute Coel king iwarð dæd.  
 & Cuſtance hauede Ælene ⁊  
 biwedded to quene.  
 þet wes þa wiſeſte wiſman ⁊  
 þa wunede a B<sup>u</sup>ttene.  
 Cuſtance hauede his quene ⁊  
 a child heom wes imene.  
 þa þat child wes iboren ⁊  
 God ſulf hit hauede icoren. 20  
 þ̅er fore wes al bliðe ⁊  
 þat wunede inne Bruttene.  
 þa comen to-ſomne ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. x111.

hou he mihte dihte ⁊  
 Eleýne his dohter.  
 And hii him radde alle ⁊  
 in boure and in halle.  
 þat he hire ȝefue ⁊  
 Cuſtance to cwene.  
 and al his kineworþe lond ⁊  
 fette Cuſtance an hond.  
 and Coel al dude ⁊  
 afe hii him radde.  
 þo nas þ̅ar non oþer read ⁊  
 bote þ̅e king iwarþ dead.  
 and Cuſtance adde Eleýne ⁊  
 bi-wedded to cwene.  
 þat was þ̅e wiſeſt womman ⁊  
 þat wonede in londe.  
 Cuſtance adde bi his cwene ⁊  
 a child ſwiþe ſcene.

'When they had all said (spoken), that was the final counsel [And they all counselled him, in bower and in hall], that he should give 'Helen [her] to Custance for 'a' queen, and all his royal land set in Custances hand; and Coel 'he' did 'so,—'who was king in Britain [all as they advised him]. Then was there no other lot, but *that* 'Coel [the] king should die; and Custance had Helen wedded for queen, who was the wisest woman that dwelt in 'Britain [land]. Custance had [by] his queen, a child 'was in common to them [most fair]. 'When the child was born, God *himself* had chosen it, therefore was all *folk* blithe, that dwelt in Britain. Then came together world-prosperous men: they found the child *a* name most fair; they loved

<sup>1</sup> R. hafden.<sup>2</sup> ræd?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. x111.

weorld-feli men.

heo fūden þat child ⁊

nome swiðe hende.

heo luueden his licame ⁊

&amp; ȝeuen him his fader nome.

Cuſtaz<sup>1</sup> hæhte þe kīg ⁊*Coſtantin.* & Coſtantin<sup>2</sup> hæhte þat child.

þe lef wes on heorten ⁊

alle B<sup>u</sup>tlonden.

his moder Eleue ⁊

10

wæs þiffes londes quene.

þat child wæx and wel iþæh ⁊

Godes mildce him wes neh.

Bruttes him weoren liðe ⁊

&amp; he hom luuede swiðe.

heoweoren his moder cunnes men ⁊

icomen heo wes of Brutten.

&amp; Cuſtanz his fader ⁊

[c. 2.]

inne Rome wes i-uofſtred.

al þat þet child mid æȝen iſæh ⁊

al hit to bæh.

21

þeo þ child wes uorð iuæred ⁊

&amp; wes of twealf ȝere.

Cuſtance hehte þe king ⁊

and þat child Coſtantin.

þat leof was on erþe ⁊

alle Brut-leode.

þe child wex and wel iþeh ⁊

and Bruttes him lofuede ſwiþe.

<sup>3</sup>his moder was a Brut.

[c. 2.]

and Coſtance his fader ⁊

in Rome was i-voſtred.

al þat þe child iſeh ⁊

al hit him to beh.

þo þat child was ⁊

of fulle twealf ȝere.

his body, and gave him his fathers name.' Custance hight the king, and Constantine 'hight' the child, who was dear in 'heart [land] to all 'Britain [Britons];—'his mother Helen was queen of this land.' The child waxed, and well throve; 'Gods favor was nigh him; *the* Britons were obedient to him,' and 'he [the Britons] loved 'them [him] exceedingly. 'They were his mothers kinsmen; 'she was born of Britons [his mother was a Briton], and Custance, his father, was fostered in Rome. All that the child saw 'with eyes,' all it submitted [to him]. When the child was 'forth advanced in age, and was' of [full] twelve years, *there* was 'no man in this land [none

<sup>1</sup> R. Cuſtanz.<sup>2</sup> Coſtantin *pr. m.*<sup>3</sup> One line, if not two, is here deficient.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

nes na man i þis ærd ⁊	naƿ non of his helde ⁊
þ̅ weore of heortē swa hærd.	þat hadde þe ilke mihte.
þene Costantin wes wrað ⁊	wane he were wroþ ⁊
ne durften na mon speken him wið.	ne dorste no man speke him wiþ.
& þenne he wes bliðe ⁊	
he wes uule liðe.	
Swiðe he luuede <sup>1</sup> alcne cniht ⁊	moeche he lofde echne cniht ⁊
þe wæs leof to dem riht.	þat lofde for to segge riht.
& his Bruttisce cun ⁊	
swiðe hie bihoȝeden.	10
& his Romanisce cun ⁊	
wurðliche him radde.	
þa þat child wes of þrittene <sup>2</sup> ȝere ⁊	þo he was of þrittene ȝere ⁊
þa iwærð his fader vnueren.	þo iwarþ his fader onviere.
þat wes þe utenesten <sup>3</sup> ræd ⁊	þat was þe latemiste read ⁊
þat Custance þe kig iwærð dæd.	þat Custance iwarþ dead.
& Bruttus nome þat child ⁊	And Bruttes an hiȝeng ⁊
& makeden heom þer of anne king.	makede Constantin king.
& Costantin þe ȝunge king ⁊	and Constantin heold þis lond ⁊
mid wiðdome heold þis lond.	20 in his owene hond.
swulc he weore an æld ⁊	alfe he were of heolde ⁊
kingen alre baldest.	king alre boldest.
þa wes a þen ilke time ⁊	þo was in þan dome ⁊

Anno  
g[racie]  
.ccc.

of his age] that 'was of heart so hardy [had the same might]. When 'Constantin [he] was wrath, durst no man speak with him; and when he was blithe, he was full mild. Much he loved each knight who 'was lief to judge [loved for to say] right, 'and his British kin greatly him honored, and his Romanish kin worthily him counselled.' When 'the child [he] was of thirteen years, then became his father sick;—that was the final lot, that Custance the king should die. And *the* Britons 'took the child, and made them thereof a [quickly made Constantin] king; and Constantin, 'the young king,' held this land 'with wisdom [in his own hand], as if he were of age a king boldest of all! Then was in the 'same time [realm] an emperor 'in

<sup>1</sup> The letters *de* are interlined.<sup>2</sup> The letters *ne* are interlined.<sup>3</sup> *R.* utemesten.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

a kæifere inne Rome.

an kaifer at Rome.

*Max[enz].* he wes ihæten Maxenz ʒ

he was ihote [M]axenz ʒ

þe wurfe hine luuede.

þe feōd hine lofuede.

þ̅ wes þe forcuððeſte mon ʒ

þat was þe forcouþeſt man ʒ

þe quic wes on lue.

þat cwick were on erþe.

Al Rome he fordude ʒ

Al Rome he for-dude ʒ

þurh his muchele miſbode.

þorh his mochele miſbode.

alle þa heȝe men ʒ

alle þe eȝe men ʒ

þe<sup>1</sup> he hatede to dæðe.

he hatede to deaþe.

&amp; alle þa hæne ʒ

10

mið<sup>2</sup> harme he igrætte.

þer weoren monie i Rome ʒ

riche & wel idone. [f. 63<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]

þe bi-læfden al þat leoden ʒ

so þat þorh his ſconde ʒ

&amp; fluȝen of þan londe.

manie floȝe of þan londe.

for þan ſcamen &amp; for þan biſemare ʒ for þan ſame and þe biſmare ʒ

þe heom dude þe kæifere.

þat heom dude þe kaifer.

&amp; comen to þiſſen londe ʒ

an comen to þiſſe lond ʒ

to Coſtāſtine<sup>3</sup> þā kinge.

to Conſtantine þan kinge.

&amp; menden to him heore ſær ʒ 20 and menden hir for ʒ

&amp; heore forh-ſiðes.

ou hii ilore hadde.

&amp; þan vnimete ſcome ʒ

and of þan onimete ſame ʒ

&amp; þenne muche grome.

and of þan mochele grame.

[at] Rome; he was named Maxenz,—the 'Worse [Fiend] loved him!—who was the wickedest man that was 'quick in life [alive on earth]. All Rome he destroyed through his mickle ill-rule; all the noble men he hated to death, 'and all the poor with harm he greeted.' 'There were many in Rome, rich and brave, who left all the 'folk, and [so that through his wickedness many] fled from the land, for (on account of) the shame and 'for' the disgrace that the emperor did to them, and came to this land, to Constantin the king, and told 'him' their grief, 'and their sorrowful haps [how they had been injured], and [of] the unmeet shame, and [of] the mickle injury

<sup>1</sup> *Redundant?*<sup>2</sup> *mid?*<sup>3</sup> *R. Coſtātine.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þe Maxenz heom hæuede idon ⁊	þat Maxenz heom hadde idon ⁊ [f.54.c.1.]
& idriuē of heore lōde.	an of hire londe i-dreue.
For nuften heo nenne king ⁊	For nuften hii to wā mene ⁊
þe heo mihten to kennen.	
swa heo mihten to Costantine ⁊	
for he wes of heore cunne.	bote to hire cunne.
ȝeorne heo hine beden ⁊	ȝeorne hii him beode ⁊
þat he heom fcoldeŋ ræden.	þat he ȝam folde reade.
hu heo mihten awrækē ⁊	
heore wanfiðes.	10
vppe Maxenze ⁊	
þe heore monscipe hæfde auællēd.	
Swa longe heo ræd ȝeornden ⁊	
þat he heom ræd ȝette.	
þat he wolde riden ⁊	
wið ræiȝere strengðe.	
forð in to Rome ⁊	
& þa riche biwinnen.	
& wreken heom on Maxenz ⁊	
þe his cun hæfde i-scæd.	20 Constantin bi-ȝohte ⁊
& Costanti þe king gode ⁊	wat he don mihte.
gaderede uærde.	he gaderede ferde ⁊
vnimete folc ⁊	of manian erþe.
mōianes cunnes.	
þe king gon to ridē ⁊	þe king gan to ride ⁊

that Maxenz had done them, and driven from their land. For they knew 'no king [not to whom to speak] 'that they might make *it* known to, as they might to Constantin,' 'for he was of [except to] their kin. Earnestly they prayed him that he should them advise, 'how they might avenge their calamities upon Maxenz, who had laid low their honor. So long they yearned counsel, that he granted them counsel,—that he would ride with bold strength forth into Rome, and conquer the realm, and avenge them on Maxenz, who had injured his kin.' 'And Constantin the good king [Constantin bethought *him* what he might do; he] gathered *an* army, 'innumerable folk' of many a 'kind [land];—the king gan to ride toward

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

touward Rom-leoden.

toward Romleode.

þat he cō to Rome ⁊

þat he com to Rome ⁊

mid ræjere strengðe.

mid rehere strengþe.

þe king wes swiðe god cniht ⁊

þe king was swiþe god cniht ⁊

&amp; he ȝarkede his fiht.

and he ȝarkede his fiht.

&amp; he Maxenz of-sloh ⁊

and he Maxēz of-sloh ⁊

þer wes blisse inoh.

þar was wele i-noh.

þa weoren Rom-leoden ⁊

bliðen on heore þeoden.

þa wes Costati þe king ⁊

[c. 2.]

þo was Constantin þe king ⁊

kæisere of Rome.

11

kaifer of Rome.

[cwene.

and þer wes Elene þe halie quene ⁊

and þar was Eleýne ⁊ þe holie

&amp; hire þreo æmmes.

and hire þreo heames ⁊

þe ældeste hæhte Leonin ⁊

þat þus were i-hote.

Trahern &amp; Marī.

Traharn Marin and Leonin ⁊

þe eorles weoren wel idone ⁊

þeos were eorles wel idon.

Costantin heom bitæhte Rome.

Constantin ȝam bi-tahte ⁊

to ræden þa leden ⁊

al Romleode.

to dihten þere þeoden.

&amp; þa læuedi Ælene ⁊

20

And Eleýne þe leafdi ⁊

þa halie quene.

to Jerufalem wende.

to Jerufalem wende ⁊

mid richere genge.

and spæc wiþ holde ⁊

&amp; spæc wid' þā elde ⁊

Traher.  
Marin.

*the* Rome-folk, so that he came to Rome with fierce strength. The king was knight most good, and he made ready his fight, and he slew Maxenz,—there was 'bliss [weal] enow!—' then were *the* Rome-folk blithe in their land.' Then was Constantin the king emperor of Rome; and there was Helen, the holy queen, and her three uncles; 'the eldest hight Leonin,—Trahern, and Marin [that thus were named, Traharn, Marin, and Leonin];—'the [these] earls were brave! Constantin delivered to them 'Rome [all *the* Rome-folk], 'to counsel the people, *and* to govern the nation.' And the lady Helen, 'the holy queen,' went to Jerusalem 'with a rich retinue,' and spake with 'the' elders of the Jews that were bold; 'and she promised

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

of þan Judean þe weoren balde. of Jues þan<sup>1</sup> weren bolde.  
& heo heom bihehte ⁊

swiðe mucle<sup>2</sup> æhte.

þat heo hire scolden ræden ⁊  
to vinden þa rode.

þe Crist ure lauerd ⁊

alifden on þes middelærd.

þeo Judeus heo sohten ⁊

& þere quene heo itæhten.

þa wes heo swa bliðe ⁊ 10

swa heo nes neuere ær on liue.

& heo vele ȝere ⁊

purh þan<sup>3</sup> wunede<sup>4</sup> þere.

þe while hire æm Leonin ⁊

wes in Rome mid Costantin.

Of þan broðeren he wes ældest ⁊

of wiðdome alre selest.

nomen þa Romwifen ⁊

& wiman him ȝeuen.

of þan hehste cunne ⁊ 20

of Romanisce monnen.

þa wifman wes biwedded ⁊

& Leonin heo hæfde to his bedde, an hi-ladd to his bedde.

and hii hire gonne reade ⁊

þat finde heo folde þe rode.

þat Crist vre lou<sup>2</sup>d ⁊

þar on was i-ftonge.

þo Judas hire sohte ⁊

and þe cwene bi-tahte.

þo was ȝeo so blipe ⁊

fo ȝeo nas neuere on liue.

an ȝeo fale ȝer ⁊

mid þan rode wonede þar.

þe wile Leonyn hire heam ⁊

in Romawas mid Constantin. [c. 2.]

Of þan broþers he waf eldest ⁊

and wifest and selest.

nemen þe wife of Rome ⁊

and wimman him ȝefue.

of þan heheste cunne ⁊

of Romanisse manne.

þe womman was i-wedded ⁊

*Anno gracie  
ccc. ii.  
Eusebius  
papa fedit  
viii.  
mens. Sub  
huius tem-  
pore inuen-  
ta est cruz  
domini, v.  
Nonas Mai.*

them very much wealth,' 'that they should [and they gan] counsel her 'to [that she should] find the Rood, 'on which [that] Christ our Lord 'redeemed this middle-earth [was pierced thereon]. The Jews sought it, and delivered 'it' to the queen. Then was she so blithe, as she never was 'ere' in life, and she many years dwelt there 'by [with] the Rood, the while her uncle, Leonin, was in Rome with Constantin. Of the brothers he was eldest, 'of wisdom best of all [and wisest and best]; the wise men of Rome took and gave him a wife of the highest kin of Romanish men. The woman was wedded, and 'Leonin had her [led] to his bed; he did as

<sup>1</sup> þat?

<sup>2</sup> þan rode?

<sup>2</sup> Or mucche; the MS. is doubtful.

<sup>4</sup> The letters de are interlined.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

he dude alfe hit is wune ⁊

he dude afe hit his wone ⁊

he streonede hire on enne fone.

on hire he strene one fone.

þa þat child wes iboren ⁊

þa funden heo him hehne nome.

heo hehten hine forð riht anan ⁊

þat child was ihote ⁊

þene hæȝe Maximian.

Maximian þe gode.

&amp; Coſtantin þe king ⁊

[f. 64. c. 1.]

and Coſtantin þe king ⁊

luuede ſwiðe þat child.

þat child louede þorh alle þing.

þus hit ferde þære ⁊

þus hit eode þære ⁊

wurſ hit ferde here.

10 worfe hit ferde here.

þa wes inne Walſce londe ⁊

þo was in Walſe lōd ⁊

*Octaves.*

a duc þe wes ſwiðe ſtrong.

a duck þat was ſwiþe ſtrong.

Octaues he hehte ⁊

Octaues he hehte ⁊

he wes of hæȝe cūne.

he was of hæȝe cunne.

he cleopede to Brutlonde ⁊

þ hit wes his icunde.

&amp; al þat þe sæ bi-gæð ⁊

Octaues wes ſwide<sup>1</sup> mah.

he nom muclele uærde ⁊

&amp; wenden ȝeond þiſſen ærde. 20

ærſt he floh þæ eorles ⁊

&amp; þrallede þæ chærles.

he heomelede þa reuen ⁊

nalde he mænne<sup>2</sup> bi-lefuen.

it is usage, he begat on her a son. \*When the child was born, then found they for him a noble name; 'they called him forth-right anon [the child was named] Maximian the 'noble [good]; and Constantin the king loved the child 'greatly [through all things];—thus it fared there, *but* worse it fared here. Then was in Welsh-land a duke who was most strong; Octaves he hight, he was of noble kin; 'he claimed Britain, that it was his territory, and all that the sea surroundeth. Octaves was most valiant; he took a great host, and marched over this land; first he slew the earls, and enslaved the churls; he humbled the reeves, none would he leave';—

<sup>1</sup> ſwide?<sup>2</sup> mænne?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

al þif kineliche lond ⁊  
 Octauus nom to his hond.  
 þis word com to Coſtantin ⁊  
 in Rome þer he wunede in.  
 hu Octauus hauede idon ⁊  
 hiſ folc iſlaȝen and ihon.  
 Særi wes þa Coſtantin ⁊  
 & forhful ā heorte. [men ⁊ and forhfulle on heorte.  
 for he ne mihte<sup>1</sup> nanes weies cu- for he ne mihte none weies come ⁊  
 to þiffere kineriche. 10 to þiſſe kineriche.  
 for he hauede al Rome-lond ⁊  
 þe ſtod an his aȝere hond.  
 & his moder Elene ⁊  
 him haſde iſend æfter.  
 þa nom he Traher hiſ æm ⁊  
 & tæhte hine to rade.  
 & þis lond him bi-tahte ⁊  
 biwinnen ȝef he hit mahte.  
 for him feolf Coſtanti ⁊  
 ne com he nauere mare her i. 20  
 Ah he nom folc & æhte ⁊  
 & Traher bi-tehte.  
 mid mucheleſ uerde ⁊ [c. 2.] bi-tahte him mochele ferde ⁊  
 ſende hine to þiſſen ærde. for lede to þiſſe erþe.

al þis kinelōd ⁊  
 Octaues nam to his honde.  
 þis word com to Coſtantin ⁊  
 in Rome þar he wonede in.  
 ou Octaues adde idon ⁊  
 hiſ folk i-flaȝe and an-hon.  
 Sori was þo Coſtantin ⁊  
 and forhfulle on heorte.  
 for he ne mihte none weies come ⁊  
 to þiſſe kineriche.  
 for he hadde al Rome-lond ⁊  
 þat ſtod in hiſ owē hond.  
 and hiſ moder Eleȝne ⁊  
 he hadde iſende after.  
 þo nam he hiſ moder heam ⁊  
 Trahern ihote.  
 and þis lond him bi-tahte ⁊  
 awinnet of<sup>2</sup> he mihte.

all this 'kingly land [kingdom] Octaves took in his hand. This word came to Constantin, in Rome wherein he dwelt, how Octaves had done, his folk slain and hung. Sorry was then Constantin, and sorrowful in heart, because he might *in* no wise come to this kingdom; for he had all Rome-land, which stood in his own hand, and his mother Helen 'him [he] had sent after. Then took he 'Trahern his [his mothers] uncle, [named Trahern,] 'and betook him to counsel,' and delivered him this land, if he it might win;— 'for Constantin himself never more came he herein. But he took folk and wealth, and 'delivered 'to Trahern [him], 'with' a great force; 'sent

<sup>1</sup> This word is added in the margin by a later hand.<sup>2</sup> awinne hit ȝif?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

&amp; for he wes his moder æm ⁊

ȝef he mihte Octauus flæn.

&amp; he mihte swa wel don ⁊

halde him seolf þifne dō.

Traher forð wende ⁊

toward þiffen londe.

mid ferde mid þan mæste ⁊

he com to Portchæstre.

þa Bruttes weoren swiðe whæte ⁊

&amp; heolden fæsten heore ȝæte. 10

&amp; Traher heom fæht wið ⁊ [grið. þe Brut in þan þrid dai ⁊

& þæne þridde dæi heo ȝerden<sup>1</sup> griþ of him beode.

&amp; Traher ferde binnen ⁊

and Traharn wende wiþ ine ⁊

&amp; Portchæstre wes biwunne.

þus was þe borh a-wonne.

&amp; þonnene he gon wende ⁊

And þanene he gan wende ⁊

riht to Winchæstre.

into Winchestre.

&amp; Octauus wes icumen bi-uoren ⁊ and Octauef was icome bi-vore ⁊

in to þære burhȝe.

into þære borwe.

to-gædere heo comen ⁊

to-gadere hii comen ⁊

heo fæhten &amp; floȝen.

20 hii fohte hii flowen.

þ flæht ne mihte ⁊

na mare beon i fihte.

He ifæh his muchelne lure ⁊

Traharn ifeh his mochele lure ⁊

him [for to lead] to this land; 'and for he was his mothers uncle, if he might slay Octaves, and he might do so well,—to hold himself this realm.' Trahern forth proceeded 'toward [into] this land; with an army 'with' the most (greatest) he came to Portchester. The Britons 'were exceeding brave, and held fast their gates, and Trahern fought with them, and' [in] the third day 'they' 'yearned [prayed] peace [of him]; and Trahern marched within, 'and Portchester [thus was the burgh] won. And thence he gan proceed 'right to [into] Winchester; and Octaves was come before into the burgh. Together they came; they fought 'and [they] slew, 'so that no greater slaughter might be in fight'! 'He [Trahern] saw his

<sup>1</sup> ȝerden ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

&amp; nom him oðerne cure.

&amp; ferde bi nihte ⁊

to' pære fæ rihte.

Ær Bruttes hit mihtē iwihtē ⁊

his ferde wes al ifcīpen.

&amp; forð heo gunnen wenden ⁊

i Scot-londe.

&amp; [he al Scotlond ⁊]

iwon to his aȝere hōd.

&amp; he wende ouer Humbre ⁊ 10

mid hæhȝere strēgðe.

&amp; in þiffere Bruttene ⁊

burȝes he awefte.

Octaus þ iherde ⁊

þe king wes an ærde.

&amp; he mid his folke ⁊

þiderward fufde.

to-gadere heo comen ⁊ [l. 64<sup>b</sup>.c.1.] to-gadere hii comen ⁊

&amp; fuhtē ful fone.

Nu hæfde Traher ⁊

swiðe muchel folc þer.

Scottes &amp; Peohtes ⁊

&amp; Romanifce cnihtes.

and wende awe<sup>1</sup> bi nihte.

into Scotlonde ⁊

mid his ferde stronge.

and he al Scotlond ⁊

wan to his owene hond.

and he wende ouer Humbre ⁊

mid reȝere strengþe.

Octaues þis ihorde ⁊

and him to-ȝeines wende.

20 Nou hadde Traharn ⁊

moche folk igadered.

of Scottes of Peutef ⁊

of Romanifce cnihtef.

great loss, 'and took him another choice,' and departed [away] by night 'right to the sea. Ere *the* Britons might know it, his host was all shipped, and forth they gan proceed' into Scotland [with his strong army], and [he all Scotland] won to his own hand; and he passed over *the* Humber with great strength, 'and he ravaged *the* burghs in this Britain.' Octaves heard 'that [this], 'who was king in *the* land,' and 'he with his folk thitherward marched [advanced against him];—together they came, and fought 'full [well] soon. Now Trahern had 'very' much folk 'there [assembled, of] Scots, 'and [of] Peohtes, 'and [of] Romanish knights. 'Trahern fought

<sup>1</sup> aweī?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Traher feht wið Octaues :

&amp; he hine fone ouercō.

Scottes huuen up muchelne ræm : Traharn his folk remede :

&amp; Octaues folc nam flē.

and þe oþ<sup>9</sup> gonne to fleonde.

&amp; Romanisce beornes :

floȝen þa Bruttes.

þa wes Octaues wa :

&amp; he wende to þere sæ.

Octaues wende to þar féé :

bi þere sæ stronde :

þer he scipen funde.

10 þar he sip funde.

in to þane scipen he lað :

he and þritti cnihtes :

&amp; in to Norwæiȝe he draf.

to Norwei wende.

nafde he of his fihte :

bute an &amp; þritti cnihtes.

&amp; alle þa oðere weoren inomen : and alle þe oþer weren inome :

&amp; Traheres men bi-cumen.

and Traharn his men bi-come.

&amp; fiftene þufend iflæȝen :

and fiftene þufend iflawe :

&amp; idon of heore lif-daȝen.

and idon of lif-daiȝe.

þa wes in Norweoȝe ærd :

þo waf in Norweie his erp :

[Com]pert. a king þe hæhte Compert. 20 a king þat hehte Compert.

Octaues him spæc wið :

&amp; ȝernde mildeliche his grið.

&amp; feide him hu Traher :

Octaues him tolde ou Traharn :

mid teóne hine hauede iflæmed. hine hadde iflemid.

with Octaves, and he soon overcame him'; *the* Scots raised up a great shout [Trahern his folk shouted], and 'Octaves folk took flight [the others gan to flee]; 'and *the* Romanish men slew the Britons. Then was Octaves woe, and 'he [Octaves] proceeded to the sea, 'by the sea strand' there he found a ship; 'into the ship he went, and into Norway he drove [he and thirty knights went to Norway]. 'He had but one and thirty knights out of his fight,' and all the others were captured, and became Traherns [Trahern his] men, and fifteen thousand *were* alain, and deprived of 'their' life-day. Then was in 'Norwegian [Norway his] land a king that hight Compert. Octaves 'spake with him, and mildly asked his favor, and 'said [told] to him how Trahern 'with injury' had banished him:—"And if thou

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& ȝif þu me wult wlstē ⁊  
 mid muchele þine ferdē.  
 þat ich maȝen aȝæn cumē ⁊  
 to mine kineriche.  
 ich þe wulle luuiē ⁊  
 & halden þe for lauērd.  
 mid sæhte & mid fibbe ⁊  
 þa while þ̅ ich libbe.  
 & after mine dæiȝen ⁊  
 mine duȝeðe þe bi-tachen. 10  
 þa ænswærede Compert ⁊  
 þe king wes of þā ærd. [c. 2.]  
 þu sælt in þisse ȝere ⁊  
 beon mid me hære.  
 & deornliche fende ⁊  
 in to Brutlonde.  
 mid weorden and mid writen ⁊  
 bi monnen þe heom cunnen witen.  
 & fenden þine fonden ⁊  
 to þine bezste freonden. 20  
 bi-hæten seoluer & gold ⁊  
 mucl el æhte & lond.  
 ȝif ai mon mihte Traher king ⁊  
 tuhten to dæðe. [lace ⁊ bringe to deaþe.  
 mid drenche oðer mid dweomer-  
 oðer mid steles bite.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

And ȝef þou me woldest helpe ⁊  
 to winne mine riche. [c. 2.]  
 ich þe wolde lofue ⁊  
 euere in mine lifue.  
 and þe for louerd holde ⁊  
 wile þat ich libbe.  
 þo anwerede Compert ⁊  
 þat king was of þilke erþ.  
 þou salt al þis ȝer ⁊  
 beo mid me her.  
 an deorneliche fende ⁊  
 in to Brutlonde.

'wilt [wouldst] me help 'with thy powerful army, that I may again come'  
 to [win] my kingdom, I will thee love [ever in my life], and hold thee for  
 lord 'with amity and with peace, the' while that I live; and after my  
 day, deliver to thee my people.'" Then answered Compert, who was king  
 of 'the [that] land: "Thou shalt 'in [all] this year be with me here, and  
 send secretly into Britain, 'with word and with writ, by men that can  
 understand them; and send thy messengers to thy best friends, promise  
 silver and gold, much wealth and land'; if any man might bring 'Trahern  
 the king to death 'with draught (poison), or with magic, or with steels

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. x111.

oðer mid æie crafte ⁊  
 bi-winnen him his mahte.  
 þēne mihtes þu aȝen faren ⁊  
 mucle þe laffe weoren þi kare.  
 þēne wlle i<sup>1</sup> þe aȝan bringen ⁊  
 & makið þe to kingē.

Al dude Octaues ⁊

Al dude Octaues ⁊

Compertes lare.

Compert his lore.

sende his fōde ⁊

in to þisse londe.

10

þurh þan ilke crafte ⁊

þe Compert king hī tæhte.

&amp; Traher wes on Bruttene ⁊

king swiðe bliðe.

næfde he of Octaue ⁊

caræ næuer nane.

na mare þeh he næf iboren ⁊

oðer i watere forloren.

Traher wes i Lundene ⁊

bliðe mid his leoden.

20

fulle feouen nihte ⁊

bliðe mid his cnihten.

þa wes i Kent an eorl ⁊

Ine Kent was on eorl ⁊

Aldolf i-haten.

Eldol ihote.

*Aldolf.*

bite (wound), or with any craft deprive him of his might, then mightest thou return,—much the less were thy care,—then would I thee back bring, and make thee king.’’ Octaves did all ‘Comperts [Compert his] instruction; ‘he sent his messengers into this land through the same craft that king Compert taught him. And Trahern was in Britain king most blithe; he had never any care of Octaves, no more than if he were not born, or in water destroyed (drowned)! Trahern was in London, blithe with his people; full seven nights blithe with his knights. Then’ was in Kent an earl, named

<sup>1</sup> ich?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

feond he wes þes kinges ⁊	he lofde lute þis kinge ⁊
for Octaues þingē.	for Octaues his þinge.
ofte he ferde to þan kinge ⁊	ofte he verde to þan kinge ⁊
& hernede <sup>1</sup> tiðinge.	hercnie tidinge.
Chæpmen bunden heore ware ⁊	þo feide me him ware ⁊
þa wolde þe king faren.	þat þe king wolde vare.
Aldolf ferde him bi-foren: [£65.c.1.]	Eldol wende him bi-vore ⁊
mid feower hundred cnihten.	mid fif hundred cnihtef.
& leop ut of ane wude ⁊	and leop ut of one wode ⁊
wunder wel iwepned.	10 wonder wel iwepnid.
Traher king he þer fond ⁊	Traharn king he þar fond ⁊
& mid spere hine stong.	and mid on spere hine þorh stong.
& hif muchele uerde ⁊	and alle his men ⁊
fette to fleonde.	fette to flende.
& Aldolf heom after droh ⁊	and Eldol after droh ⁊
and muchel folc he þer of-floh.	and mochel folk he þere floh.
& seððen he uerde in to Kent ⁊	And suppe he wende into Kent ⁊
in to ane stronge castle.	in to one castle.
& fende an hizenge ⁊	and fende an hizenge ⁊
after Octaue þan kinge.	20 after Octaues þan kinge.
& he anan cō ⁊	And he an hizenge ⁊
to þiffere kineriche.	com to his riche.
to kinge he wes vnder-fon ⁊	to king he was onder-fon ⁊

Aldolf; 'enemy he was of the [he loved little this] king, on account of Octaves [his] affair; oft he went to the king, 'and hearkened [to hearken] tidings. 'Chapmen bound their ware; then [Then said men to him where that] would the king fare. Aldolf went before him with 'four [five] hundred knights, and leapt out of a wood, wondrously well weaponed. Trahern *the* king he there found, and with [a] spear pierced him [through]; and 'his great host [all his men] set to flight. And Aldolf pursued after 'them,' and much folk he there slew; and afterwards he marched into Kent, into a 'strong' castle, and sent speedily after Octaves the king. And he 'anon [in haste] came 'this kingdom [his realm]; he was received as king,—'then [that]

<sup>1</sup> hercnede ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa þuhte hit hin wes<sup>1</sup> idon.  
 Heo<sup>2</sup> ferde ȝeond þas þeoden ⁊  
 & floh þa Romleoden.  
 þa hæhne & þa riche ⁊  
 alle heo<sup>2</sup> floh iliche.  
 whar swa he mihte hine kēnen ⁊  
 ne læuede he nauer ænne.  
 & twa & twēti ȝere ⁊  
 he wuneden feoððen here.  
 inne griðe & inne friðe ⁊      10  
 mid freond-scipe of Brutten.  
 þa þe he wes wel ald mon ⁊  
 þa com him uuel on.  
 þ̅̅̅ vuel hine heold stronge ⁊  
 ah he þreowede longe.  
 þe king hine bi-ðohte ⁊  
 what he don mihte.  
 whā he mihte bi-tæchen ⁊  
 al his kineriche.  
 and al his duȝeðe ⁊      20  
 æft<sup>3</sup> his dæie.  
 Mid carte he for to Lundene ⁊  
 & fette his huftige.  
 eorles þer comen ⁊

þat him þohte wel idon.  
 He verde oueral þeos þeode ⁊  
 and floh þe Romleode.  
 þe pore and þe riche ⁊      [f. 55. c. 1.]  
 alle he floh iliche.  
 ware so he mihte eni kenne ⁊  
 ne lefde he neuere anne.  
 and two and twenti ȝere ⁊  
 he wonede suppe here.  
 þo he was wel hold man ⁊  
 þo com him vuel an.  
 hit heolde hine so strong ⁊  
 þat he ne mihte libbe longe.  
 þe kng<sup>3</sup> hine bi-þohte ⁊  
 wat he don mihte.  
 wan he mihte bi-take ⁊  
 al his kineriche.  
 He lette cleopie his heȝe men ⁊  
 to one grete speche.

seemed 'it' to him well done. He passed over [all] this land, and slew the Rome-folk; the poor and the rich, all he slew alike; *wheresoever* he might 'him [any] ken, he left never one. And two and twenty years he afterwards dwelt here, 'in peace and in quietness, with friendship of *the* Britons.' When 'that' he was *a* well old man, then came on him sickness; 'the sickness [it] held him [so] strongly, 'but he suffered [that he might not live] long. The king bethought him what he might do; to whom he might deliver all his kingdom, 'and all his people, after his day.' 'With *a* cart he went to London, and set his husting [He caused his noble men to be called to a

<sup>1</sup> him wel?<sup>2</sup> he?<sup>3</sup> R. king.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

riche &amp; wel idone.

&amp; alle þa wifē :

þe wuneden on Bruttene. [c.2.]

þa þe king heom hauede ifæid : þo þe king hadde i-feid :

&amp; bæd heom ræden him ræd. he bad ȝam reade him read.

whæm he mihte bi-tæche : wan he mihte bi-take :

al his kine-riche. al his kineriche.

for nefde he nenne fune : for he nadde bote one dohter :

þe his land mihte halden.

ne child bute ane dohter : 10

þe him wes swiðe deore.

þat he lofuede deore.

&amp; hire he wolde bi-tachē :

and hire he wolde bi-take :

al his kineriche.

al his kine-riche.

&amp; ȝefuen hire lāuerd :

and ȝefue hire louerd :

þene hæhste mon of þis ærd.

þan beste of þis erþ.

Summe him ræden a-nan :

Somme him radde on<sup>1</sup> :

þat he heo ȝeuen þan eorl Conan. þat he hire ȝefue eorl Conan.

he wes wif and riche :

him heo he mihte bitæche.

oðere þer weoren :

20 oþer þar weren :

þe þif nalden ihæren.

þat þis nolde i-heren.

I Cornwale wes an eorl god :

In Cornwale was an eorl gods :

þe wes ihaten Cradoc.

he was i-hote Cradoc.

he stod up i þan huftige :

he stod vp a-non riht :

*Cra[doe].*

great conference]; 'there came earls, rich and brave, and all the wise *men* that dwelt in Britain.' When the king had said 'to them,' and [he] bade them advise him counsel, to whom he might give all his kingdom; for he had 'no son, who might hold his land, nor child' but a daughter, 'who was to him most [that he loved] dear; and on her he would bestow all his kingdom, and give her *for* lord (husband), the 'highest man [best] of this land. Some him counselled anon, that he should give her to 'the' earl Conan; he was wise and rich, to him he might deliver her; others there were, who would not this hear. In Cornwall was an earl good, 'who [he] was named Cradoc; he stood up 'in the husting [anon right], and 'thus spake

<sup>1</sup> anon ?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and þus spæc wið þan kinge.  
 Hercne me Octaue ⁊  
 hercne me kinelauerd.  
 no here ich nenne godne ræd ⁊  
 þe þe ȝet beo ifæd.  
 ȝif þu bi-tacheft Conan ⁊  
 þine kineriche.  
 þat word comeð sone ⁊  
 vorð into Rome.

*Helena.*

For nu is Ælene ⁊  
 Jerufalem quene.

*Coſtan[tin].*

& þe king Coſtanti ⁊  
 & alle his cnihtes mid him.  
 & dæd hiſ þe riche Leonin ⁊  
 & his broðer Mari.  
 & Maximien þe ȝunge cniht ⁊  
 i Rome haldeð muchel fiht.  
 & Traher i þiſſe londe ⁊  
 mid ſpere wes of-ftungen.  
 & ælche dæi inne Rome ⁊ [f. 65<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]

Maxinien þe wel idone. 21  
 haldeð swiðe muchel iwin ⁊  
 wið Gracien & wið Valantin.  
 & Coſtanti þe king ⁊  
 of us ne þencheð naðing.

and þeof word faide.  
 Hercne me min louerd ⁊  
 ne ihere ich nanne godne read.  
 ȝef þou bi-takeſt Conan ⁊  
 þine kineriche.  
 þat word comeþ ſone ⁊  
 forþ in to Rome.

10

For nou his Eleyne ⁊  
 Jerufalem hiſ cwene.

and þe king Coſtanti ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 and alle his cnihtes mid him.  
 and dead hiſ þe riche Leonin ⁊  
 and hiſ broþ<sup>9</sup> Marin.  
 and Maximian þe ȝonge cniht ⁊  
 in Rome holdeþ ſtrong fiht.

and Coſtanti þe king ⁊  
 of vs ne þencheþ no þing.

with the king [said these words]: "Hearken to me, 'Octaves, hearken to me,' 'sovereign [my lord]; I hear no good counsel 'that yet is said to thee'. If thou givest to Conan thy kingdom, the tidings will come soon forth into Rome; for now is Helen 'of Jerusalem [Jerusalem his] queen; and the king Constantin, and all his knights with him; and dead is the powerful Leonin, and his brother Marin; and Maximian, the young knight, in Rome holdeth 'mickle [strong] fight, 'and Trahern in this land was slain with spear. And each day in Rome Maximian the brave maintaineth very great contest with Gracien and with Valantin'; and Constantin the king of us thinketh nothing, and thus are we of Britain 'of friends [clean]

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& þus we beoð of Bruttene ⁊  
 freonden biræued.  
 Bute þu wifliche bitæche ⁊  
 þine kineriche.  
 wulleð Romleode ⁊  
 cumen to þiffere þeode.  
 & for-uaren v̅f mid fehte ⁊  
 & ure freoð wallen<sup>1</sup>.  
 & maken vnfæhte ⁊  
 & binimē us ure irihten. 10  
 þenne þu beoſt forð faren ⁊  
 ne beon we næuere buten caren.  
 Ah fend into Rome ⁊  
 æfter Maximien þā wel idone.  
 he is fwiðe hende gume ⁊  
 & he wes Leonines fone.  
 his fader wes Ælenen æm ⁊  
 he is of aðele cunne.  
 & ȝif him þine dohter ⁊  
 þa þe is fwiðe deore. 20  
 & make hie to kinge ⁊  
 & þine dohter to q̅ne.  
 þenne maȝe we libben ⁊  
 mid fæhte & mid fibben.

and þus we beoþ of Bruttes ⁊  
 clene bi-reued.  
 Bote þou wifliche bi-take ⁊  
 þine kineriche.  
 wollep Romleode ⁊  
 come to þiffe. . . . .  
 and for-fare vs mid fihte ⁊  
 and houre freondeſ falle.  
 wan þou hart forþ fare ⁊  
 ne we<sup>2</sup> ham wiþ-ſtonde.  
 Ac fende into Rome ⁊  
 after Maximian wel idon.  
 he his fwiþe riche gome ⁊  
 and he his Leonines fone.  
 his fader was Eleýne heam ⁊  
 of Bruttene cunde<sup>3</sup>.  
 and ȝef him hine dohter ⁊  
 þat þe his swiþe deore. 20  
 and make hine to kinge ⁊  
 þi dohter to cwene.  
 þanne mawe we libbe ⁊  
 mid fehte and mid fibbe.

bereaved. Except thou wisely bestowest thy kingdom, the Rome-folk will come to this country, and destroy us with fight, and fell our friends, 'and make strife, and take from us our right'; when thou art dead, we 'shall never be without care [shall not be able to withstand them]. But send into Rome, after Maximian 'the' brave; he is a man most 'fair [powerful], and he 'was [is] Leonins son; his father was Helens uncle, 'he is of noble [of British] race. And give him thy daughter, who is to thee most dear, and make him king, 'and' thy daughter queen; then may we live

<sup>1</sup> iwallen?<sup>2</sup> ne mawe we?<sup>3</sup> *Written at first kinge cunde, but the former word expuncted.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& a to ure liue ⁊  
 witen ure leoden.  
 mid winne & mid wurðscipe ⁊  
 mid muchele wiſdome.  
 þa aras Conan ⁊  
 & ſtoð biuorē þan kinge.  
 he wes wunderliche wrað ⁊  
 for þeos ſpeche him wes lað.  
 he ſpæc aȝen Cradoc ⁊  
 alfe he hine wolde fordon. 10  
 Ah ne rohte næuere Cradoc ⁊  
 of al þat Conan eorl ſpæc. [c. 2.]  
 for al þat huſtinge ⁊  
 þe wes biuoren þan kinge.  
 bi-luueden Cradockes ræd ⁊  
 for heo iſeȝen þat hit wes neod.  
 þu<sup>1</sup> cleopede Octaues ⁊  
 Brutlōndes lauerd.  
 Hail feo þu Caradoc<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 herfore þu ſcælt habben ⁊  
 wurhſcipe muchele.  
 Læ me Mauric þinne ſune ⁊  
 þe is a fwiðe wiſ gume.

and euere to vre lifue ⁊  
 witie oure freondes.  
 mid winne and mid worfiþe ⁊  
 and mid wiſdome.  
 þo aros Conan ⁊  
 and ſtoð to-vore þan kinge.  
 he was wonderliche wroþ ⁊  
 for þeos ſpeche him was loþ.  
 Ac ne rohte neuere Cradoc ⁊  
 of Conanes wraþþe.  
 for alle lofde Cradokes read ⁊  
 for hit was wiſliche iſeid.  
 þo cleopede Octaues ⁊  
 king of Brutayne. [f. 55<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 Hail beo þou Cradoc ⁊  
 20 wel beo þou Cradoc.  
 her vore þou ſalt habbe ⁊  
 worfiþe heȝe.  
 Lean me Mauric þine ſone ⁊  
 þat [is] a fwiþe wiſ gome.

with amity and with friendship, and ever in our lives defend our 'people  
 [friends] with joy and with worship, [and] with 'much' wisdom." Then  
 arose Conan, and stood before the king; he was wondrously wrath, for  
 this speech was hateful to him; 'he spake against Cradoc as if he would  
 him destroy.' But Cradoc recked never of 'all that earl Conan spake  
 [Conans wrath]; for all 'the husting that was before the king' approved  
 Cradocs counsel, for 'they saw that it was need [it was wisely said].  
 Then called Octaves, 'Britains lord [king of Britain]: "Hail be thou,  
 Cradoc! [Well be thou, Cradoc!] Herefore thou shalt have 'great [high]  
 worship. Lend me Maurice thy son, who is a man most wise, to go in

<sup>1</sup> þa?<sup>2</sup> A line is here deficient.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

to uarē a mire neode ⁊  
 in to Rom-þeode.  
 æfter Maximiane ⁊  
 þane richen & þane kene.  
 þæt he cume swiðe ⁊  
 þe while þe ich beo on liue.  
 And ich him wulle bitæchen ⁊  
 mine kine-riche.  
 and mine dohter Orien ⁊  
 to habben to quene. 10  
 & ic wulle Maurike ⁊  
 mede bi-tæchen.  
 ich ȝeue him Norrhūberlond ⁊  
 here mid mire aȝere hond.  
 þis ich him bitæchen ⁊  
 of mine kine-riche.  
 wið þan þe he me brige ⁊  
 Maximien þæ hende.  
 Al fwa þe king ȝirde<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 Mauric hit him ȝette. 20  
 he ferde uord<sup>2</sup> rihtes ⁊  
 mid þreom wiſe cnihtes.  
 þ he com to Rome ⁊  
 to Maximiene.  
 þer wes muchel vnfrið ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

to wende in mine neode ⁊  
 touward Romleode.  
 after Maximian ⁊  
 þe riche and þe kene man.  
 þæt he come ſwiþe ⁊  
 wile ich ham a-lifue.  
 And ich him wolle bi-teche ⁊  
 mine kineriche.  
 . . . mine dohter Oriene ⁊  
 to habbe to cwene.  
 And ich wolle Mauric ⁊  
 mede bi-take.  
 ich him ȝefue Norþhumberlond ⁊  
 here mid min owe hond.  
 wiþ þan þat he me brige ⁊  
 Maximian þan hende.  
 Mauric verde vorþ riht ⁊  
 mid þreo wiſe cnihtes.  
 forte þat he come ⁊  
 to Maximian to Rome.

*Oriene.*

my need 'into [toward] Rome-land, after Maximian, the rich and the keen [man], that he come quickly, 'the' while 'that' I 'be [am] alive. And I will deliver to him my kingdom, and my daughter Oriene to have for queen. And I will bestow reward on Maurice; I give him Northumberland here with mine own hand; 'this I bestow on him *out* of my kingdom,' on condition that he bring me Maximian the fair." 'All as the king desired Maurice it granted him'; 'he [Maurice] proceeded forth-right with three wise knights until [that] he came to Maximian at Rome. 'There was mickle strife; in

<sup>1</sup> ȝirde ?<sup>2</sup> uorð ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

in al þā londe nas na grið.

ah midvnfriðeþerwesmuchelwin:þar was fiht an lutel<sup>1</sup> win' [tin.  
mid Gracien & mid Ualantin. bi-twixte him Gracien and Valen-

heo duden Maximiene'.

hii dude Maximian'.

vnimete teone<sup>2</sup>.

onimete teone.

[nome'.

muchel lond heo hæfden binomē'moche lond hii hadde hine bi-  
ære þider come Maurich þe gume.þo com Mauric þe gome.

Sone fwa Maximiane i-fæh' [f. 66. Sone so Maximian ifeh'.

swa he him to bæh.

he to hī beh.

&amp; fæire hine igrætte'.

10

mid guðfulle worden.

&amp; he iradliche'.

lædde hine to ræde.

&amp; he þus spæc'.

and he þus spæc'.

wunderliche feire.

wonderliche faire.

Hercne Maximian'.

Hercne me Maximian'.

þu ært of muche cunne.

þou hart of mochele cunne.

þu weore Elene æmes fune'.

of hæhþe cunne þu ært icumen.

Ær ich hider uore'.

20

Er ich hider verde'.

nis hit nawhit ȝære.

nis hit noht ȝære.

Octaues ure king'.

i Lundene heold his husting.

Octauef heold his speche<sup>3</sup>.

all the land was no peace, but with strife' there was [fight and] great conflict 'with [betwixt him] Gracien and 'with' Valentin. They did to Maximian injury unmeet; much land they had taken [from him] 'ere [when] the man Maurice 'thither' came. So soon as Maximian saw *him*, he came to him, 'and greeted him fair with goodly words; and he (Maurice) prudently led him to counsel,' and he thus spake wondrously fair: "Hearken [to me], Maximian, thou art of great race; 'thou wert Helens uncles son, of noble lineage thou art come.' Ere I hither came,—it is 'no whit [not] of yore,—Octaves, 'our king, in London' held his 'husting [conference];

<sup>1</sup> mochel?<sup>2</sup> The last two letters of teone are by second hand sup. ras.<sup>3</sup> A line is here wanting.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þ̅ huftinge wes god ⁊

hit wes witene-imot.

vnhæle &amp; ælde ⁊

hæueð þene king vnbalded.

þer wes moni cniht god ⁊

&amp; þe king heom æxede ræd.

wham he mihte bitæchen ⁊

his dohter &amp; his riche.

&amp; alle his doȝeðe ⁊

æfter his dæie.

þreo eorles anan ⁊

icure þe eorl Canaan<sup>1</sup>.

þat me sculde him Brutlond ⁊

bitachen al on his hond.

&amp; þa fæire Oriene ⁊

þes kinges dohter to q̅ne.

Conanes eorldom ⁊

Kent is ihaten.

&amp; mi fader if an icorren eorl ⁊

Cornwalen lauerd.

he is ihaten Caradoc ⁊

he is of þine cunne.

&amp; ich hatte Mauric ⁊

þe mæste of his childeren.

þa heo hæfden a-nan ⁊

for vneale and heolde ⁊

haueþ hine on-balded.

þar was mani cniht god ⁊

and [þe] king am axede read.

wam he mihte bi-take ⁊

his dohter and his riche. [c. 2.]

and alle his folk ⁊

10 after his daie.

þreo eorles anon ⁊

chofe þan eorl Conan.

'the husting was good, it was a meeting of councillors,' [for] sickness and age hath enfeebled 'the king [him]. There was many a good knight; and the king asked counsel of them, on whom he might bestow his daughter and his realm, and all his folk after his day. Three earls anon chose the earl Conan; 'that Britain should be delivered to him all in his hand, and the fair Oriene, the king's daughter, for queen. Conans earldom is named Kent.' And my father 'is a chosen earl, lord of Cornwall; he is named' Cradoc; 'he is of thy kindred; and I hight Maurice, the eldest of his children. When they had anon thus chosen Conan, then leapt up my father

<sup>1</sup> R. Conaan.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þus icoren Conan.  
 þa lep mi fader up ⁊  
 swulc hit an liun weore.  
 & wið-feide þene cure ⁊                      þane read wiþ-ftod.  
 bi-foren ure kinge.  
 þer wes swiðe muchel dune ⁊ [c.2.]  
 þeines þer dremden.  
 & mi fader Caredoc ⁊                      and Cradoc makede lust ⁊  
 makede lust & þus spæc.                      and to þan king spac þus.  
 While wes Elene ⁊                      10  
 Custances quene.  
 Ælene hæfde enne æm ⁊  
 þe æðele wes on londe.  
 he wes i-haten Leonin ⁊  
 uorð he ferde mid Costantin.  
 Traher hæhte his broðer ⁊  
 & Marin þe oðer.  
 T<sup>a</sup>her i þiffen londe ⁊  
 wes iflæȝen mid worng<sup>1</sup>.  
 Conanes fader hine floh ⁊                      20  
 þat wes swiðe muchel woh.  
 for her<sup>2</sup> king wende ⁊  
 þat heo weoren ifreonde.  
 Lusteð wel B<sup>a</sup>tt<sup>e</sup>s ⁊                      Lusteþ wel Bruttus ⁊  
 þe her beoð bi-hælues.                      þat her beoþ bi-haluef.

as if it were a lion, and' opposed the 'choice [counsel], 'before our king. There was exceeding great din; thanes there clamored'; and 'my father' Cradoc made silence, and thus spake [to the king]: "'Awhile was Helen Custances queen; Helen had an uncle, who was noble in land; he was named Leonin, forth he fared with Constantin. Trahern hight his brother, and Marin the other. Trahern in this land was slain with wrong; Conans father slew him,—that was very great injury, for Trahern *the* king weened that they were friends.' Listen well, Britons, that are here beside.

<sup>1</sup> wronge?<sup>2</sup> Traher?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

Leonī hadde ænne sune ⁊  
 & inne Rome he wunēð.  
 Maximien he hatte ⁊  
 of þan aðele cunne.  
 Sēde we to Rome ⁊  
 & haten hine cumen fone.  
 & in ure huftige ⁊  
 hæhuen hine to kinge.  
 & þa feire Oriene ⁊  
 bithæchen him to q̄ne. 10  
 þenne mæzen we libben ⁊  
 mid sæhten & mid fibben.  
 þus spæc mi fader Caradoc ⁊  
 biforn þan folke.  
 þa andfwerede þe king ⁊  
 hit wes him swiðe iqueme.  
 & alle his beornen ⁊  
 þe wunieð on Brutenc.  
 bute Conaan wes swiðe wræð ⁊  
 for þe cure him wes læð. 20  
 Cleope nu to ræde ⁊  
 þine rædjiuen gode.  
 & sæie me her of andfwere ⁊  
 for nu to marwen ich wulle faren.  
 þa wef Maximien ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Leonin hafde ane fone ⁊  
 and in Rome he woneþ.  
 Maximian hi-hote ⁊  
 of Bruttene cunne.  
 To þe ich ham ifend ⁊  
 þorþ hire alre read.  
 þat þou come to him ⁊  
 æd he þe wole make king.  
 and his dohter Oriene ⁊  
 to habbe to cwene.

Maxi-  
m[ien].

Leonin had a son, and in Rome he dwelleth; 'he hight [named] Maximian; of 'the noble [British] race. 'Send we to Rome, and pray him to come soon, and in our husting raise him to *be* king, and the fair [To thee I am sent through counsel of them all, that thou shouldest come to him, and he will make thee king, and his daughter] Oriene 'bestow on him [to have] for queen; 'then may we live with amity and with friendship." Thus spake my father Cradoc before the folk. Then answered the king; it was most pleasing to him, and to all his men that dwell in Britain; but Conan was very wrath, for the choice to him was odious. Call now to counsel thy good councillors, and say me here of answer, for now to-morrow I will



MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

for þisse wordeswide<sup>1</sup> fæin. [f. 66<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.] for þisse worde swiþe fain.

he cleope his rædʒiuen ⁊

he cleopede to reade ⁊

&amp; eoden to rune.

alle his wife.

þe ræd wes sone iræd ⁊

þe read was sone irad ⁊

al swa Mauric hit bad.

for do þat Mauric hine bad.

Stille iwende fone ⁊

Stille he wende fone ⁊

Maximien of Rome.

Maximian of Rome.

i þan seouen nihte ⁊

in þan fouenihte ⁊

mid alle his cnihten.

mid alle his cnihtes.

wenden þa Rō-leoden ⁊

10

þat he wolde to heore vn-neode.

þ he wolden fehten ⁊ [cnihtes<sup>2</sup>.

aȝan Valentin &amp; Gracian mid his

for a heo weoren auaren<sup>3</sup> ⁊

of Maximian &amp; of his hiſde.

Ah anan heo<sup>4</sup> wende ⁊

Ac anon he wende ⁊

toward þiffen londe.

toward þisse londe.

&amp; fwa he gon liðen ⁊

and so he gon liþe ⁊

into Londene.

into Londene.

fair-lac he gon brige ⁊

20

fair-lock he gan bringe ⁊

Octaue þan kinge.

Octaues þan kinge.

& þe king him for<sup>5</sup> ȝef ⁊

and þe king þar vore him ȝaf ⁊

depart.”” Then was Maximian most glad for these tidings; he called [all] his ‘councillors [wise men] ‘and went’ to counsel; the counsel was soon advised all as [for to do what] Maurice ‘it [him] prayed. Secretly [he] went soon, Maximian, *out* of Rome; *within* the se’nnight with all his knights; ‘the Rome-folk weened that he would *go* to their harm, that he would fight against Valentin and Gracien with his knights, for ever they were afraid (?) of Maximian and of his troops.’ But anon he proceeded toward this land, and so he arrived in London; presents he gan bring to Octaves the king, and the king him [therefore] gave his daughter for queen.

<sup>1</sup> swiðe?<sup>2</sup> These three last words are, apparently, superfluous, and repeated from a previous line. A plummet mark in the margin of the MS. shows there is some error here.<sup>3</sup> auared?<sup>4</sup> he?<sup>5</sup> Some attempt has been made to erase this word.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

his dohter to quene.

his dohter to cwene.

þa wes king Maximien ⁊

þo was king Maximian ⁊

hit þuhte Bruttes i-don wel.

hit þohte Bruttes wel idon.

And Conaan eorl mid wraððen ⁊

And Conan eorl mid wreþþe ⁊

wende to Scotten.

wende to Scottes.

&amp; monie Scottes him buȝen to ⁊

and he þare ⁊

&amp; ane burh bigūnen.

ane borh makede.

næs þa in al þan ende ⁊

burh al swa hende.

þa þeo burh wef al imaked ⁊ 10

mid muchelere strengðe.

he sette hire æne nome ⁊

æft<sup>9</sup> him seoluen.

ofte he ræd hire þurh &amp; þurh ⁊

hofte he rod þorh ⁊

&amp; hehte heo Cuninges-burh.

and hehte hine Conanes-borh. [f.56.c.1.]

nu and æuere mare ⁊

nou and euere more ⁊

þe nome stondeð þere.

þe name stondeþ þere.

Conaan ladde ferde ⁊

Conan ladde ferde ⁊

in þan norð ærde.

in þan norþ ende.

he hatede Maximien ⁊

20 he hatete Maximian ⁊

þat abohte mom<sup>i</sup> mon.

þat a-bohte mani man.

þa wise men of þisse londe ⁊ [c.2.]

þe wife of þisse londe ⁊

þe luueden þas leoden.

makeden huftinge ⁊

makede paifinge.

Then was Maximian king; it seemed to the Britons done well. And earl Conan with wrath went to *the* Scots; 'and many Scots came to him,' and 'began [he there made] a burgh; 'in all the world then was not *a* burgh so fair! When the burgh was all made, with much strength, he set on it a name after himself'; oft he rode 'it through and' through, and named it Conans-burgh; now and evermore the name standeth there. Conan led *an* army into the north country; he hated Maximian,—that many *a* man bought *dear*! The wise 'men' of this land, 'who loved this people,' made '*a* husting [peace] 'betwixt Conan and the king'; 'there they became [and

<sup>1</sup> *R. moni.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiii.

bitwexen Conaan &amp; þan kinge.

þer heo iwurðen sæhte ⁊

&amp; þer heo iwurðen somme.

& makede<sup>1</sup> i þiffen londe grið ⁊

god mid þan bezfte.

&amp; þe king him bihæhte a-nan ⁊

to makiene riche mon.

swa he dude feoððen ⁊

þet abohte moni mon.

mid grþe<sup>2</sup> he wuneden here ⁊ 10

fulle fif ȝere.

þa hefde Maximien ⁊

gærfume vninete<sup>3</sup>.

for he næfde of his londe ⁊

na gauel ifende to Rome.

þa þe fif ȝer weoren agan ⁊

þa fæide Maximian.

þ he wolde ouer fæ uaren ⁊

&amp; fehten wið þan Frenscen.

&amp; ȝif he þere mihte spedē ⁊ 20

toward Rome he wolde riden.

to wreken his teone ⁊

on Gracien and on Valentin.

and makede heom ifehte ⁊

and cuſte wel ilome.

And þe king him bi-hehte a-non ⁊

to maki him a riche man.

mid griþe hii wonede here ⁊

folle fif ȝere.

þo hadde Maximian ⁊

onime<sup>4</sup> garifom.

for he nadde of his londe ⁊

no feo ifend to Rome.

þo þe fif ȝer were a-gon ⁊

þo feide Maximian.

þat he wolde ouer ſée ⁊

and fihte wiþ þan Frence.

and ȝif he þare mihte ſpede ⁊

to Rome he wolde ride.

to wreken his teone ⁊

of Valentin and Gracien.

made them] reconciled, and 'there they became friends [kissed well often], 'and made peace in this land, good with the best.' And the king promised him anon to make [him a] rich man; 'so he did afterwards,—that many a man bought *dear*!'—with peace 'he [they] dwelt here full five years. Then had Maximian immense treasure, for he had of his land no 'tribute [fee] sent to Rome. When the five years were gone, then said Maximian, that he would 'pass' over sea, and fight with the French; and if he there might speed, to 'ward' Rome he would ride, to avenge his wrongs on Gracien and 'on' Valentin, 'who had done to him many injuries in Rome.' Thus

<sup>1</sup> The last two letters of makede are interlined.<sup>2</sup> R. vnimete.<sup>3</sup> R. griðe.<sup>4</sup> R. onimete.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þe monie him hæfdē idone ⁊  
teonen inne Rome.

þus spæc Maximien ⁊  
uor him wes to murie.  
for þis lond wes þa swiðe god ⁊  
& he hit hæfde al vnder fot.  
& him ne stod æie to naþing ⁊  
for dæd wes Octaues þe kīg.  
Maximien bæd ferde ⁊

feorliche store.

þe king hafde kene men ⁊

&amp; vnimete gærfume.

forð he gon wenden ⁊

ut of þissen londen.

forð he gon liðen ⁊

ut of þissen leoden. [clond ⁊

he makede him feluen muchel he makede him feolf mochel to  
ne iſæh he nauere æft þis lond. ne come he neuere her a-ȝein.

Ouer sæ he wende ⁊

and wel com to londe. [t. 67. c. 1.] and wel com to londe. [c. 2.]

[in ane londe] fwiðe riche ⁊ 21

þe hehte Armoriche.

þa ſcipen urnen a ðen lond ⁊

þat folc wenden uppe ſtrond.

þus spæc Maximian ⁊  
for him was to murie.

for þis lond was ſo god ⁊

and he hit hal<sup>1</sup> onder fot.

and him ne stod eye of no þing ⁊

for dead was Octaues þe king.

Maximian bad ferde ⁊

10 wonderliche store.

þe king hadde kene men ⁊

and onimete garifome.

forþ he gan wende ⁊

vt of þisse londe.

[don ⁊

Ouer ſée he wende ⁊

in one londe fwiþe riche ⁊

þat þo hehte Armoriche.

spake Maximian, for he was too merry, because this land was 'then most [so] good, and he 'had [held] it 'all' under foot, and he stood in awe of nothing, for dead was Octaves the king. Maximian summoned an army, wondrously strong; the king had keen men, and immense treasure; forth he gan proceed out of this land, 'forth he gan pass out of this country';—he made for himself much 'disgrace [to do], he never 'eft saw this land [again came here]! Over sea he went, and came well to land, [in a land] most rich, that hight Armoriche. 'The ships run on the land; the folk went upon *the* strand'; they began a castle good with the best; they

<sup>1</sup> hald? hadde hal?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

heo bigunnen ænne castel ⁊  
 god mid þā bæzsten.  
 heo riden ȝeond þæn leode ⁊  
 & nomen þer muchele prude.  
 heo funden herre-feng inoh ⁊  
 & lædden to heore ferde.  
 & æc heo nomen wummen ⁊  
 wunder ane monie.  
 & duden þat heo wolden ⁊  
 ȝeond Ærmoriche londe. 10  
*Humbald.* þis iherde Humbald ⁊  
 þe wes wes<sup>2</sup> lauerd i þa lond.  
 hu þe king Mæximien ⁊  
 amerde his riche.  
 Humbald fende fonde ⁊  
 ȝeond al þan londen.  
 þer he æine freond hæfde ⁊  
 þe him helpen wolde.  
 & þohte þat he wælde ⁊  
 heom driuen of his londe. 20  
 Heo comen bi dæie lihte ⁊  
 to ane stronge fihte.  
 Bruttes heom ou<sup>3</sup>comen ⁊  
 & Humbald heo floȝen. [ȝen ⁊ and Humbald hii flowen.  
 & fiftene þufende þer weoren ifla- and fiftene þufend ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Hii bi-gonne anne castel ⁊  
 god mid þan beste.  
 hii reoden ȝeond þe leode ⁊  
 and neme mochel prude.  
 and eke hii nemen wifmen ⁊  
 wonderliche manie.  
 and dude wat iwolde<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 oueral þan londe.  
**p**Is ihorde Humbald ⁊  
 þat was þare louerd.  
 hou þe king Maximian ⁊  
 a-morde his riche.  
 Humbald fende fonde ⁊  
 oueral his kinelonde.  
 þar he enȝ freond hadde ⁊  
 þat him helpe wolde.  
 and þohte þat he wolde ⁊  
 him driue of his londe.  
 Hii comē bi dai lihte ⁊  
 to one strange fihte.  
 Bruttes heom ouercomen ⁊  
 and Humbald hii flowen.  
 and fiftene þufend ⁊

rode over the country, and took 'there' much booty; 'they found spoil  
 enow, and led to their host'; and eke they seized 'a wonder [wondrously]  
 many women, and did what they would 'over Armoriche [all the] land.  
 Humbald heard this, who was lord 'in the land [there], how the king  
 Maximian ravaged his realm. Humbald sent messengers over all 'the land  
 [his kingdom], where he had any friend that would him help, and thought  
 that he would drive 'them [him] from his land. They came by day-light  
 to a strong fight; *the* Britons overcame them, and Humbald they slew;

<sup>1</sup> hii wolde?<sup>2</sup> Sic MS.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& idon of lif-dæȝen.		þar weren of-flaȝe.
þa þis feht wes idon ⁊		þo þis fiht was idon ⁊
þa wende Maximien.		þo wende Maximian aȝein.
aȝen in to herberȝe ⁊		to his herborewe ⁊
to reſten hine ſeolue.		to reſte him ſeolue.
A marȝen þa hit dæi wes ⁊		A morwe þo hit dai waſ ⁊
duȝeðen heom gereden.		
heo wenden to þere heȝe burh ⁊		
þe Nāſtes <sup>1</sup> iſ ihaten.		to Nantes he wende.
ne fundē heo þer inne ⁊	10	ne funde <sup>2</sup> þar ine ⁊
noht of mōncunne.		noht of mankunne.
þe heom wið wolde ſtonden ⁊		þe him wolde wiȝ-ſtonde.
& þa burh heolden.		
al hit wæs awæi ifloȝen ⁊		ac alle hii were awei iflowe ⁊
and of þan londe iboȝen. [c.2.]		and of þan londe itowe.
buten a lute wiſmen ⁊		bote ane ſeue wiſmen ⁊
þe weoren þer wið innen.		þat were þar wiȝ ine.
þa burh nom Maximien ⁊		þe borh nam Maximian ⁊
& ſette mid hiſ mōnnen.		and dude þar on hiſ men.
þeo cleopede Maximien ⁊	20	þo cleopede Maximian ⁊
to þan eorle Conaan.		to þā eorl Conan.
Conaan þu ært god cniht ⁊		Conan þou hart godcniht ⁊ [156 <sup>b</sup> .c.1.]
þu hæfueſt <sup>3</sup> ihalden wel mi fiht ⁊		þou hæueſt iholde wel mi fiht.

and fifteen thousand there were slain, 'and deprived of life-day.' When this fight was done, then went Maximian back 'into [to his] quarters, to rest himself. On the morrow when it was day, 'the people made them ready'; 'they marched to the noble burgh that is named Nantes [to Nantes he marched]; 'they' found therein nought of mankind that would withstand 'them [him], 'and hold the burgh,' [but] all 'it was [they were] away flown, and from the land departed, except a few women who were there within. Maximian took the burgh, and 'set with [placed therein] his men; then called Maximian to the earl Conan: "Conan, thou art good knight, thou hast maintained well my fight, 'and' I will bestow on thee much re-

<sup>1</sup> Nantes?<sup>2</sup> funde he?<sup>3</sup> hæhuest *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& ich þe wulle mede ⁊  
 muchele bitæche.  
 for þu hæfuest<sup>2</sup> al Brutlōd ⁊  
 i þire aȝere hond.  
 ȝif ich hit nere ⁊  
 þu weore king þere.  
 and þe eorl Caredoc ⁊  
 þe is of mine cunne.  
 ȝet hit mai ilimpe ⁊  
 hit is þe an vnðonke. 10  
 Ah loke wulche wæstres<sup>4</sup> ⁊  
 & wunliche londes.  
 whulche wurðliche wude ⁊  
 whulche wilde deores.  
 whul<sup>5</sup> liðe londe ⁊  
 on to libbenne.  
 þis lond hehten Armoriche ⁊  
 þis ich þe bitæche.  
 & muchele mare her to ⁊  
 ȝif ich hit mæi ifo. 20  
 her of þu scalt beð king ⁊  
 & þas riche aȝen.  
 Vt ich wullen driuen ⁊  
 al þat ich finde on liue.  
 ȝungen and alde ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ich þe wolle mede ⁊  
 mochel bi-the<sup>1</sup>.  
 for þou haddeſt al Butlond<sup>3</sup> ⁊  
 in þin owene hond.  
 ȝef ich hit nere ⁊  
 þou were king þere.  
  
 Ac loke woche wateres ⁊  
 and woche riche londes.  
 woche faire wodes ⁊  
  
 ine for to wonie.  
 þis lond hette Armoriche ⁊  
 þis ich þe bi-teche.  
 and mochel mo þer to ⁊  
 ȝef ich mote libbe. 20  
 her of þou ſalt beo king ⁊  
 and þeof riche oȝe.  
 Vt ich wolle driue ⁊  
 al þat ich finde a-lifue.  
 ȝonge and holde ⁊

ward; for thou haddeſt all Britain in thine own hand; if I were it not, thou wouldſt be king there; 'and yet it may pertain to the earl Cradoc, who is of my kin,—it is to thee displeasing.'—But look what waters, and 'fair [what rich] lands; what 'noble [fair] woods, 'what wild deer; what pleasant land 'to live in [for to dwell in]! This land hight Armoriche; this I beſtow on thee, and much more 'hereto [thereto], if I 'it may get [may live]; hereof thou ſhalt be king, and this realm poſſeſs. Out I will drive all that I find alive, young and old, out of this land; 'and whoſo I

<sup>1</sup> bi-teche?    <sup>2</sup> hæfdeſt?    <sup>3</sup> R. Brutlond.    <sup>4</sup> wætres?    <sup>5</sup> whulche?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

vt of þisse londe.

vt of þisse londe.

and wulcne swa ich mai here ifon ⁊

i þan stude he beoð fordon.

&amp; fende ich wulle to Aðionærd ⁊ And fende ich wolle to Yþenard ⁊

þe is min æzene stiward.

þat his min owe stiward.

eorl he is treowe ⁊

for æuer<sup>1</sup> he is að-neowe.

for hī ich habbe wel bi-tæht ⁊

Brutlōd to witene.

& he me fla<sup>2</sup> senden ⁊

10 þat he me fal fende ⁊

in to þisse londe.

into þisse londe.

wapmen and wifmen ⁊

of wel feole cræften.

cnihtes & þeines ⁊ [f. 67<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]

&amp; al heore sweines.

fixti hundred cnihtē ⁊

sixti hundred cnihtes ⁊

þe gode beon to fihten.

þat gode beon to fihte.

ten hundred þeines ⁊

ten hundred þeines ⁊

seoue þusend sweines.

sceoue þusend sweines.

seoue þusend burh-mē ⁊

20 sceoue þusend borhmē ⁊

þe sæle beon on æhte.

þat riche beoþ and wife.

þritti þusend wifmen ⁊

þritti þusend wifmen ⁊

þe wel beon ifūden.

þat wel beon ifunde.

þenne þis folc bið hider icumen ⁊ Wane þis folk his hider icome ⁊

& heo<sup>3</sup> stude habbeð inumen. and habbeþ hire stude inome.

here may take, on the spot he shall be slain.' And send I will to 'Athionard [Ythenard], who is mine own steward,—'earl he is true, for ever he is ready; for to him I have well delivered Britain, to guard it,'—and [that] he shall send to me, into this land, 'men and women of well many crafts; knights and thanes, and all their swains;' sixty hundred knights, who are good in fight; ten hundred thanes; seven thousand swains; seven thousand burghers, who are 'good in wealth [rich and wise]; thirty thousand women, who are well found (of good condition). When this folk is

<sup>1</sup> æue, *pr. m.*<sup>2</sup> fcal?<sup>3</sup> heore?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þenne bið al þis fæire lond ⁊  
 ifet Brutten an hond.  
 æfter þine leoden ⁊  
 bi-tæche heom name.  
<sup>1</sup> Brutlond þat laffe.  
 Nu and auere mare ⁊  
 þe nom stondeð þere.  
 & þus Armoriche nome ⁊  
 niðer wæs auællad.  
 swa þat næuere mare ⁊ 10  
 ne bið he aræred.  
 Conaan þeof ȝeue afeng ⁊  
 & iwræð<sup>4</sup> þeos kinges freond.  
 mid muchelere wurðscipe ⁊  
 & wel heo hit heolden.  
 And þe king fende ⁊  
 in to þisse londe.  
 & hæhte Aðionard ⁊  
 þe biwufte Brutlondes ærd.  
 þat he him fwiðe fende ⁊ 20  
 þ̆ folc of Brutlonde.  
 & folc of ælche cræfte ⁊  
 fundri scipen bitæhte.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þan his al þis faire lond ⁊  
 ifet Bruttes an hond.  
 hafter ȝam mid iwisse ⁊  
 cleope hit Brutlond þe laffe.  
 Nou and euere more ⁊  
 þe name stondeþ þare.  
 and þus Armorichest name ⁊  
 adun was a-falled. [c. 2.]  
 so þat neuere more ⁊ 10  
 ne worþet<sup>2</sup> arered.  
 Conan þeos ȝeft onderfend<sup>3</sup> ⁊  
 and iwarþ þis kinges freōd.  
 And þe king fende ⁊  
 in to þisse londe.  
 and hehte Ȝpenard ⁊  
 Brutlondes stiward.  
 and<sup>5</sup> he him fwiþe fende ⁊ 20  
 þat folk þat he ȝornde.

hither arrived, and hath taken their abode, then shall all this fair land be set in *the* hand of Britons; after 'thy people give them name [them surely call it] Britain the Less.'" Now and evermore the name standeth there; and thus Armoriches name was cast down, so that never more it shall be raised. Conan received this gift, and became this kings friend, 'with much honor, and well they it held.' And the king sent into this land, and bade Athionard, 'who had charge of Britains land [Britains steward], that he should send quickly to him the folk 'of Britain [that he desired]; 'and to folk of each craft should deliver sundry ships, and among

<sup>1</sup> A line, apparently, is wanting here.<sup>3</sup> onderfeng?<sup>4</sup> iwarð?<sup>2</sup> worþe hit?<sup>5</sup> þat?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& mong þan wifmonnen ⁊  
 wepmon næuer enne.  
 buten þa feoluen scipmē ⁊  
 þe heom scullen læden.

Al eoden þeos ræd ⁊  
 swa þe king hæfde ifeid.  
 & Conaan þer heold to ⁊  
 mid hægere strengðe.  
 & þe kīg ferde ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 uorð toward France. 10  
 & bi-ȝæt al þ̅ kine-lond ⁊  
 & sette hit on his aȝere hond.  
 & þeðne he gon liðen ⁊  
 in to Lohernne.  
 al þat lond he bi-ȝæt ⁊  
 swa he dude Liueine æc.  
 swa he gon liðe ⁊  
 in to Lombardie.  
 al þat lond he bi-ȝæt ⁊  
 þær wes Caradoc dæd. 20  
 þa hauede Mauric his sunne ⁊  
 sorȝen inowe.

nes þer nan oðer ræd ⁊

buten þe Mavric iwærð dæd.

To Rome wende Maximian ⁊

uppe Valentin & vppen Gracien.

Al ȝeode þes read ⁊  
 afe þe king hadde ifed.  
 and Conan þar to heold ⁊  
 mid heȝere strengþe.  
 And þe king wende forþ ⁊  
 in toward France.  
 and bi-ȝet al þat kinelond ⁊  
 to his owene hond.  
 and þanene he gan wende ⁊  
 into Loherenne.  
 and al þat lond he bi-ȝet ⁊  
 so he dude Loueine heck.  
 so he gan wende ⁊  
 in to Lombardie.  
 al þat lond he bi-ȝeat ⁊  
 þar was Cradoc dead.  
 so fori was his sone ⁊

þat he deiȝede eke.

To Rome wende Maximian ⁊

vppe Valentin and Gracien.

the women never one man, except the selfsame shipmen who should conduct them.' This counsel all proceeded as the king had said, and Conan held thereto with great strength. And the king went forth [in] toward France, and won all the kingdom, 'and set it' in his own hand; and thence he gan march into Lorraine, [and] all the land he obtained, as he did also Lovaine; so he gan proceed into Lombardy; all the land he conquered,—there was Cradoc dead; 'then had Maurice his son sorrow enow; there was no other hap but that Maurice should die [so sore was his son, that he died also]! To Rome went Maximian, upon (against) Valentin

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

i fehte he nō þene oðer ⁊  
 þa ȝirnde grið þa oðer.  
 cnihtes heo weoren hende ⁊  
 þe king heom dude i bende.  
 & he anan sone ⁊  
 ahnede hī al Rome.  
 þ̅ word com to Conaan ⁊  
 hu iuaren hæfde Maximian.  
 & þ̅ Caradoc wes dæd ⁊  
 inne Lūbardie.  
 & al fwa Mauric his sune ⁊  
 for muchele farineffe.  
 þa nom<sup>2</sup> þe eorl Conaan ⁊  
 ænne fwiðe wifne mon.  
 & fende to þiffen londe ⁊  
*Adionard.* to Adionard þā stronge.  
 þe wes stiward fwiðe bifi ⁊  
 inne þiffi<sup>3</sup> Bruttene.  
 To Adionard me brohten writ ⁊  
 þ̅ dæd wes his broðer.  
 Caradoc þe mære ⁊  
 & Mauric his fune deore.  
 þa næfde Caradoc i þis ærd ⁊  
 broðer bute Adionard.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ine fihte hii<sup>1</sup> neme þan oþer ⁊  
 þo ȝeornde griþ þe oþer.  
 cnihtes hii weren hende ⁊  
 þe king ham dude in bende.  
 and he anon sone ⁊  
 ohnede al Rome.  
 þat word com to Conan ⁊  
 ou ifare hadde Maximian.  
 and þat Cradoc was dead ⁊  
 and his sone Mauric eck.  
 þo nam þe eorl Conan ⁊  
 ane fwiþe wifne man.  
 and fende to þiffe londe ⁊ [f. 57. c. 1.]  
 to Ýþenard þan stronge.  
 To Ýþenard me brohte writ ⁊  
 þat dead was his broþer ⁊  
 Cradoc þe more ⁊  
 and Mauric his sone deore.  
 þo nadde Cradoc in þis erþ ⁊  
 broþer bote Ýþenarþ.

and 'upon' Gracien; in fight he captured the one, then yearned the other peace. Knights they were fair; the king placed them in bonds, and he anon soon obtained 'to him' all Rome. The word came to Conan, how Maximian had fared; and that Cradoc was dead 'in Lumbardy,' and 'also [eke] his son Maurice, 'for much sorrow.' Then took the earl Conan an exceeding wise man, and sent to this land, to Athionard the strong, 'who was steward most busy in this Britain.' To Athionard men brought writ, that dead was his brother Cradoc the great, and Maurice his son dear;—then had Cradoc in this land no brother but Athionard; and he

<sup>1</sup> he?<sup>2</sup> inom *pr. m.*, but i *erased*.<sup>3</sup> þiffe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& he forð riht nom an hif hond ⁊	and he forþriht nom ⁊
al Caradokef lond.	[[t.68. c.1.] al Cradoc his lond.
þa iherden þa Frence men ⁊	þo ihorde þe Frence men ⁊
þ at Rome wes Maximien.	þat at Rome waf Maximian.
& Cradoc wes dæd ⁊	and Cradoc was dead ⁊
þa nomen þa Frence ænne ræd.	þo nemen hii anne read.
þat heo wolden flæme ⁊	þat hii wolde Conan ⁊
Conaan þene kene.	driue vt of londe.
vt of þan londe ⁊	
þe Maximian him ȝæf an honde.	
þe is bi-halues France ⁊	11
& Bruttaine is ihaten <sup>1</sup> .	
& Conaan ne ȝifde na grið ⁊	And Conan ne ȝeornde no griþ ⁊
ah feſtliche heom feht wið.	ac faſtliche ham faht wiþ.
& wel he makede his caſtles ⁊	and wel he makede his caſtles ⁊
treowe & ſwiðe uæfte.	treuliche and faſte.
& alle his beornen he wes leof ⁊	and alle hine lofuede ⁊
þe comen of þiſſen londe.	þat come of þiſſe londe.
For alle he hæfde þa cnihtes ⁊	For alle he hadde þe cnihtes ⁊
þe Maximien hī bi-hehte.	20 þat Maximian hine bi-hehte.
& ec þa eorles ⁊	and eke þe eorles ⁊
& þa ſweines & þa cheorles.	þe ſweines and þe cheorles.
& alle þa burh-men ⁊	and alle þe borh-men ⁊
þa him bi-hehte Maximien.	þat him bi-hahte Maximian.

forth-right took 'in his hand' all 'Cradocs [Cradoc his] land. When the Frenchmen heard that Maximian was at Rome, and Cradoc was dead, then took 'the French [they] a counsel, that they would drive Conan 'the keen' out of 'the' land 'that Maximian gave him in hand, that is beside France, and is named Bretagne.' And Conan asked not any peace, but fought with them stoutly; and well he made his castles, 'true [truely] and 'most' fast; and 'to all his men he was dear [all loved him], that came from this land. For he had all the knights that Maximian promised him, and eke the earls, 'and' the swains and the churls, and all the burghers that Maxi-

<sup>1</sup> bi-haten, *pr. m.*, but *b* erased.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Wifmen neuede he noht feole ⁊	Wimmen nafde <sup>1</sup> noht fale ⁊
buten fiftene hundred.	bote fiftene hūdred.
for wifmen nolden noht liðen ⁊	for þe wifmen nolde noht wende ⁊
vt of þiffen londe.	vt of þiffe londe.
buten þe eorl Adionard ⁊	bote þe eorl Ȝþenard ⁊
þe wes þe hæhste i þis ærd.	þat was þe strengeft in þif erþ.
walde heore borh beon ⁊ [bi-teon.	wolde hire borh beon ⁊
þat heo scolden heore while wel	þat hii folde hire wile wel bi-teon.
þa hæhuede Adionard ⁊	to þan eorle Ȝþenard.
æenne dohter swiðe deore. 10	ane dohter swiþe deore.
heo hæfde al þat hære-word ⁊	3eo hadde al þat here-word ⁊ [c. 2.]
of þan maidenē of þif ærd.	of alle þe maydene.
þeo wimman wes on fele ⁊	þe womman was feale ⁊
heo hæhte Vrsele.	3eo hehte Vrfele.
Conaan fende to þif ærd ⁊	Conan fende to þis erþ ⁊
to þan eorle Adionærd.	þo hadde Ȝþenard ⁊
& bed þat he him 3eue ⁊	and [bede] þat he him 3efue ⁊
his dohter to quene.	his dohter to cwene.
Adionard 3æf andfwere ⁊	Ȝþenard 3ef anwere ⁊
wurðſcipe habbe he þer fore. [c. 2.]	worþipe habbe <sup>2</sup> þar vore.
Monſcipe habbe Conaan ⁊ 20	
þat he mire dohter wel on.	
nu to dæi a feouen nihten ⁊	Nou to dai a feoueniht ⁊
ich heofenden him bi mine cnihten.	ich hire fende foþ riht.

Vrfele.

mian promised him. Women had he not many, but (only) fifteen hundred, for [the] women would not go out of this land, unless the earl Athionard, who was the 'highest [strongest] in this land, would be their surety, that they should their time well employ. Then had Athionard a daughter very dear; of [all] the maidens 'of this land' she had (bore away) all the fame; the woman was fortunate; she hight Ursele. Conan sent to this country, to the earl Athionard, and bade that he should give him his daughter for queen. Athionard gave answer,—worship have he therefore!—" 'Honor have Conan, that he well grants to my daughter!' Now to-day a se'nnight

<sup>1</sup> nafde he ?<sup>2</sup> habbe he ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& alle þa wimmen ⁊	and alle þe wifmen ⁊
þe him ȝef mi lauerd Maximien.	þat him ȝef Maximian.
þider heo scullen liðen ⁊	þider hii folde wende ⁊
ȝif heo wulleð libben.	ȝef hii wolde libbe ⁊
oðer ich heom wullen alle for-don ⁊	oþer ich ȝeom alle wolle for-don ⁊
& bi þan tittē an-hon.	and bi þan týttes for-hon.
þa ȝarkede Adionard ⁊	þo ȝarkede Iþenard ⁊
þiffes londes lauerd.	þat was þeos londes stiward.
his dohter Urfæle ⁊	his dohter Vrfele ⁊
þe wimman wes wel fæle.	10 þat was a maide sele.
he þohte heo to fende ⁊	he þohte here to fende ⁊
ou <sup>9</sup> fæ strames.	ouer féé stremes.
in to Bruttaine lode ⁊	into Brutaines londe ⁊
to Conaan þan stronge.	to Conan þan stronge.
þa iherden þa wimmen ⁊	þo ihorde þe wifmē ⁊
wide ȝeond þas Bruttene.	oueral þan londe.
þat me wolde senden ⁊	þat me wolde fende ⁊
Vrfeine <sup>1</sup> to <sup>2</sup> þan londe.	Vrfele of londe.
hire comen to inoȝe ⁊	hire come to i-nowe.
monie & vnifoȝe.	20 manie an onifoȝe.
þ̅ wolden mid here uarē ⁊	þat wolde mid hire fare ⁊
to þan kinge Conaane.	to þan kinge Conane.
fwiðe feole heo bi-fohte ⁊	fwiþe fale hire bi-fohte ⁊
ma þeone heo rohten.	mo þane ȝeo rohte.

Vrfele[*e*].

I will send her 'to him 'by my knights [right sooth], and all the women that 'my lord' Maximian gave him; thither they shall go, if they 'will [would] live, or *else* I will kill them all, and hang up by the-teats!' Then Athionard, 'lord of this land [who was this lands steward], made ready his daughter Ursele, who was 'woman [a maid] 'well' good; he thought to send over sea streams into Bretagnes land, to Conan the strong. When the women heard 'wide over this Britain [over all the land], that men would send Ursele from 'the' land, enow came to her, many and numerous, who would go with her to the king Conan; very many besought her, more than she cared

<sup>1</sup> R. Vrsele.<sup>2</sup> of?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þa þe dæi wes icumen ⁊  
 þe Adionard hafde inumen.  
 þ̅ forð scolde uaren ⁊  
 þat mæiden Vrefele.  
 þa hafden to iwiten ⁊  
 feouen and twenti ſcepen.  
 alle heo weoren ifunde ⁊  
 i þere burh of Lunden.  
 Inne þere Temefe ⁊  
 heo teuhten heore feiles. 10  
 wind heo hæfden wunfum ⁊  
 weder mid þan bezften.  
 & heo feiledē forð ⁊  
 þ̅ inne fæ heo comen.  
 þa vmbe ſtunde ⁊  
 ne fæȝe heo noht of londe. [£68<sup>b</sup>. c.1.]  
 þa araſ heom a wind ⁊  
 a þere wiðer ſide.  
 ſwurken vnder funnen ⁊  
 sweorte weolcnen. 20  
 hæȝel & ræin þer aræs ⁊  
 þe hit i-feh him agras.  
 vðen þer urnē.  
 tunes<sup>1</sup> ſwulche þer burnen.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þo þe dai was icome ⁊  
 þat Yþenard adde inome.  
 þat forþ folde fare ⁊  
 þat maide Vrfele.  
 ȝeo hadde to iwite ⁊  
 ſceouene and twenti fipes.  
 alle hii weren ifunde ⁊  
 in þare borh of Londene.  
 In þare Temefe ⁊  
 hii drowen vp feiles. 10  
 wýnd hii hafde wonſō ⁊  
 weder mid þan beſte. [£57<sup>b</sup>. c.1.]  
 and hii feileden ⁊  
 forte hii to fée come.  
 þo bi on lutel ſtunde ⁊  
 ne fehȝe hii noht of londe.  
 þo aros heom a wind ⁊  
 in þare wiþer ſide ⁊  
 þirkede vnder ſonne ⁊  
 20 þuſtrede þe wolkne.  
 reýn and hawel þar a-ros ⁊  
 þat hit iſeh fore a-grof.  
 waȝeſ þar arne ⁊  
 ſtreme þar vrne.

for. When the day was come that Athionard had taken (appointed), that the 'maiden [maid] Ursele should forth proceed, 'then' had [she] to wit seven and twenty ships; they were all safe in the burgh of London. In the Thames they drew [up] 'their' sails; wind they had fair, weather with the best; and they sailed 'forth,' until they came 'in [to] the sea; then after [a little] while, they saw nought of land. Then arose to them a wind on the contrary side; 'swart clouds [the welkin] darkened [and blackened] under the sun; hail and rain there arose,—whoso it saw, became [sorely] alarmed;—the waves there ran 'as if towns there were burning

<sup>1</sup> The two first letters of this word are on an erasure. Cf. v. 4577. vol. i. p. 195.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

bordes þer breken :  
 vimmen<sup>1</sup> gūnen wepen.  
 Þa scipen þa urnen bi-uoren :  
 twelue þer weoren for-loren.  
 þa oðere weoren al to-driuen :  
 & forð mid þere sæ iliðen.  
 nes þer na steores-mon :  
 þat æuere aht cuðe þer on.  
 Nes næuere na mon iboren :  
 ne of nane londe icoren. 10  
 þ̃ hæleð weore swa stærce :  
 ne swa hærd iheorted.  
 þe iherde þefne weop :  
 & þisne wunderliche ræm.  
 & cleopien<sup>2</sup> to þan halhzen :  
 mid hæhþere steuene.  
 þ̃ his heorte neore særi :  
 for þan vnumete forhzen.  
 Seoððen þis world wes astald :  
 & monnen an honde ifælde. 20  
 ne com nauere wurfe hap :  
 to nane wummānē.  
 Summe þe scipen wundē :

bordes þar breken :  
 wimmen þar wepen.  
 Þe fipes þat vrne bi-vore :  
 twcalfe þar were for-lore.  
 nas þar no steresmā :  
 þat er ohte couþe.  
 Nas neuere no man ibore :  
 ne in none londe icore. 10  
 þat i-horde þane cri :  
 hou hii gradde to þan halwes.  
 þat his heorte ne mihte beo fori :  
 for þane deolfulle cri.  
 Somme of þaie fipes :

[*the* streams there flowed]; boards there brake; *the* women 'gan [there] weep. Of the ships that ran before, twelve there were lost; 'the others were all driven in pieces, and carried forth by the sea'; there was no steersman that 'therein' aught ever could *help*. Never was 'there' any man born, nor 'of [in] any land chosen, 'who were champion so stark, or so hard hearted,' who should have heard 'this weeping, and this wondrous shout, and calling [the cry, how they called] to the Saints 'with high voice,' that his heart 'were not [might not be] sorry for the 'measureless sorrow [doleful cry]! 'Since this world was made, and given to men in hand, never came worse hap to any women!' Some of the ships rode 'forth' with the storm,—full

<sup>1</sup> *summen, pr. m.*<sup>2</sup> *cleopung?*



MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

forð mid þan wederen.  
 fulle fiftene ⁊  
 i þan ane wes Oriene<sup>1</sup>.  
 þe sæ wes wunder ane wod ⁊  
 and ladliche iwræððed.  
 & þa scipen<sup>3</sup>  
 i þere wildere sæ ⁊  
 æuere norð forð riht ⁊  
 þreo dæies & þreo niht.  
 þa weoren ut of Norweiȝen ⁊ 10  
 tweien eorles iuarē.  
 Mælgam & Wanis ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 heo weoren kene ful iwis.  
 of Denemarke & of Norweiȝe ⁊  
 heo weoren iqueðen vt-læȝen.  
 & heo ferden bi sæ fiden ⁊  
 vnimete wide.  
 Heo i-cneowen wel a þan wolcnē ⁊  
 þaƿ wederes cuſtes.  
 heo droȝen to ane ait-londe ⁊ 20  
 þer heo leoðe hafueden.  
 Wanis wes in Hungrie ⁊  
 þer he harm worhte.

*Melga.  
Wanis.*

wonde mid þan wedere.  
 fulle feftene ⁊  
 þan<sup>2</sup> on was Vrfele.  
 þe fee was wonderliche wod ⁊  
 and þe féé wrappede.  
 and þe féé<sup>4</sup> walkede ⁊  
 in þare féé wilde.  
 euere norþ forþriht ⁊  
 þreo daies and þreo nihit.  
 þo weren of Noreweie ⁊  
 eorles ivaren tweie.  
 Melga an Wanis ⁊  
 hii weren kene foliwis.  
 hii were vtlæȝet<sup>5</sup> beie ⁊  
 in Denemarche and Noreweie.  
 and hii ferde bi þare fide<sup>6</sup> ⁊  
 onimete wide.  
 Hii cneowe bi þe wolkne ⁊  
 þeos wederef cuſtes.  
 and droȝen to on ȝllond ⁊  
 þar hii liope hadde. [c. 2.]  
 Wanis was in Hongri ⁊  
 þar he harm wrohte.

fifteen;—in the one was Ursele;—the sea was wondrously wild, and 'bitterly [the sea] enraged, and the ships [labored] in the wild sea, ever northward forth-right, three days and three nights. Then had gone two earls 'out of [from] Norway, Melga and Wanis,—they were keen full certainly;—'of [in] Denmark and Norway they were outlaws 'declared [both], and they proceeded by [the] sea-side, widely without bounds. They knew 'well' 'in [by] the welkin this weathers (storms) indications; 'they [and] drew to an island, where they had refuge. Wanis was (had been) in Hungary, where he harm wrought; Melga was in Scythia, where he made

<sup>1</sup> Urfele?<sup>2</sup> in þan?<sup>3</sup> A word seems to be deficient.<sup>4</sup> fipes?<sup>5</sup> vtlæȝes?<sup>6</sup> þare féé fide?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Mælgas wes inne Scife :  
 þer he scaðe makede.  
 þat he ne mihte i þan londe :  
 na lengere at-stonde.  
 & of Norweiȝe iflemed :  
 þer heo fiht þoleden.  
 & inne sǣ heo weoren iuaren :  
 uulle feoue ȝeren.  
 & sƿa heo leien i þan æit-londe :  
 & ifeȝen þat weder stronge. 10  
 ifeȝen scipen an & an :  
 while ma while nan.  
 þeonne feowere þenne fiue :  
 fellic heom þuhten a þiffē liue.  
 whæt weoren þa ȝemere scipen :  
 þa ȝeond þa sǣ weolkē.  
 þe wind gon<sup>1</sup> aliðen :  
 & þat weder leoðede.  
 & Wanis ifǣh i þere sǣ :  
 þa scipen wandrien. 20  
 & þus spæc þere :  
 wið Malgan his iuere.  
 Forð wit nu fƿuðe :  
 & after heom bliue.

Melga was in Scice :  
 þar he scape makede.  
 and þus in see hii weren iware :  
 fulle foue ȝere.  
 and so hii leie in þat ȝllond :  
 and ifehȝe þat weder strōg.  
 Hii sehe fipes on and on :  
 wile mo wile non.  
 þan foure þan fifue :  
 wonder heom þohte in þisse lifue.  
 wat weren þe ilke fipes :  
 þat þus in sǣe walkede.  
 þe wið gan a-legge :  
 an þat weder softi.  
 and Melga seide þare :  
 to his iwere.  
 Vare we nou blifue :  
 hafter heom fwiþe.

scathe; so that he might not in the land any longer remain; and driven from Norway, where they sustained a battle; and [thus] on *the* sea they had fared full seven years; and so they lay in the island, and saw the strong storm. [They] saw *the* ships *by* one and one—awhile more, awhile none,—then four, then five,—wonder *it* seemed to them in this life, what 'the wretched [those] ships were, that [thus] 'over the [on *the*] sea tossed! The wind gan to abate, and the weather 'assuaged [to soften]; 'and Wanis saw the ships wandering in the sea,' and 'thus spake there with [Melga said there to] 'Melga' his companion: "Go we now soon, 'and' after

<sup>1</sup> gon?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

mid gode fiftene ſcipen ⁊

faren we heom æfter.

mid ure bezſten cnihten ⁊

þe gode beon to fihten.

&amp; leten ælle ure oðere ſcipen ⁊

ure herberwe bi-witen. [f. 69. c. 1.]

for þiſ is ſum riche king ⁊

rædes bi-dæled.

þe wolde mid his folke ⁊

uaren to ſumme londe.

&amp; haueð þeos wið &amp; þeos weder ⁊

a wiðer him i-ſtonde.

þ̃ wa is him aliue ⁊

nuwe<sup>2</sup> him to bliue.

&amp; ȝif hit wule Appolin ⁊

þat iſ deore lauerd min.

þat we maȝen mid fihte ⁊

biwinnen hine &amp; his cnihtes.

&amp; heo ne beð of ure laȝen ⁊

we ſcullen him dō of lif-dæȝen. 20

&amp; ſwa we ſcullen nimen a hond ⁊

heore ſeoluer &amp; heore gold.

&amp; faren to ure inne ⁊

&amp; ȝeolpen for þere winne.

mid oure beſte cnihtes ⁊

þat gode beon to fihte.

for þiſ<sup>1</sup> ſom riche king ⁊

reades bi-dealed.

þat wolde mid hiſ folk ⁊

faren to ſomme londe.

and haueþ þiſ wind and þiſ weder ⁊

a wiþer him i-ſtonde.

þat wo hiſ ham a-lifue.

wende we to bliue.

For ȝeſ hit wole Appolin ⁊

þe hiſ deore louerd min.

them quickly! 'With fifteen good ships fare we after them,' with our best knights, that are good in fight, 'and let all our other ships guard our harbour'; for this 'is' some rich king, void of counsel, who would with his folk proceed to some land, and hath encountered this wind and this weather adverse to him, so that woe 'he is [they are] alive! Go we to 'him' quickly! 'And [For] if Appolin wills it, who is my lord dear, 'that we may with fight conquer him and his knights, and they be not of our law, we shall deprive him of life-day, and so' we shall take 'in hand [from them] their silver and their gold; and come to our inn (place of refuge), and boast 'for

<sup>1</sup> þiſ is ?<sup>2</sup> wende we ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Forð heo wenden mid flode :	Forþ iwende <sup>1</sup> mid flode :
fiftene scipē gode.	[3en : fiftene fipes gode.
þe strengeste þe weoren a þan dæ-	þe strengest þat weren in þat daze :
& fulled mid vt-laȝen.	ifulled mid vtlaȝef.
& a-nan of-token fif scipē :	and of-toke fif fipes :
of wimmonnen afulled.	of wifmen ifulled.
Seolcuð heom þuhte :	Wonder heom þohte : [f. 58. c. 1.]
what hit beð mahte.	wat hit beon mihte.
& heo cleopeden heom ð :	and hii cleopede him <sup>2</sup> on :
nes þer nan ændfwere.	10 ac anfwere naf þar nō.
for al weoren þa wimmen :	for alle were þe wifmen :
awald to þan deðe.	a-wild to þan deaþe.
To heom heo droȝen :	To heð idrowen <sup>3</sup> :
and þaf fif scipen nomen.	and þeos fipes nomen.
and furðer heo iwenden :	and forþere hii wēde :
& niȝene heo iuengen.	and niȝe fipes onderfēȝe.
and heo mid þan feowertene scipen :	and hii mid þane fourtene fipes :
ferden to þā londe.	ferde to londe.
Seoððen þis worlde wef aſtald :	Suppe þef worle was aſtald :
nes hit neowhær itald.	20 nas hit nohwere itald.
on fonge no on ſpelle :	
ne miðte hit na mon telle.	
þ weoren æi wimman :	þat eueren eni wifmen :

[of] the booty!" Forth they went with *the* flood, fifteen ships good; the strongest that were in that day, 'and' filled with outlaws; and 'anon' overtook five ships filled with women. 'Strange [Wonder] *it* seemed to them, what it might be; and they called to them, [but] answer was there none, for all the women were destroyed to the death. To them they drew, and these 'five' ships took; and further they went, and nine [ships] 'they' captured, and they with the fourteen ships returned to 'the' land. Since this world was made, was it nowhere told 'in song nor in story, nor might any man tell it,' that [ever] any women 'were' so 'wretchedly [ruefully] treated,

<sup>1</sup> hii wende?<sup>2</sup> ham?<sup>3</sup> hii drowen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiiii.

swa wræcchelichē atoʒene. [c. 2.] fo reuliche a-towen.

ne swa reoliche ⁊

inne sæ for-radde.

Melga nom Oriene<sup>1</sup> ⁊

þa scolden beon quene.

&amp; scome hire bi-hedde ⁊

&amp; ladde heo to his bedde.

þa þe heðene mon ⁊

hæfuede on hire hif wille idō.

heʒæf heo his his<sup>2</sup> hired-mōnē sone ⁊

to makien to heore.

&amp; sūme heo heom falden ⁊

for feoluer for gold.

&amp; monie &amp; vnifoʒe ⁊

heo þer of-floʒen.

&amp; summe heo heð drēgte ⁊

in þere sæ deope.

&amp; sūme heo godd wið-foken ⁊

&amp; to haðenescipe token.

&amp; þus heo weoren for-radde ⁊ 20

mid reowðe þan mæste.

Melga and Wanis ⁊

ihurden fuggē ful iwis.

þat þas Bruttene ⁊

Melga nam Vrfele ⁊

þat folde beō cwene.

and fame hire hedde ⁊

and nom hire to his bedde.

And alle þe oþer men ⁊

chose of þif wifmen.

and somme hii adreinte ⁊

in þare féé deope.

and somme god for-foke ⁊

and to heþensipe toke.

and þus hii were for-rad ⁊

mid reuþe þan meste.

Melga and Wanis ⁊

ihorde segge foliwis.

þat þeos Brutaine ⁊

‘nor so piteously in *the* sea betrayed.’ Melga took Ursele, that should be queen, and offered her shame, and ‘led [took] her to his bed; ‘when the heathen man had done on her his will, he gave her to his followers soon, to make as whore.’ And ‘some they them sold for silver *and* for gold, and many and innumerable there they slew [all the other men chose of these women]; and some they ‘them’ drowned in the deep sea, and some ‘they’ forsook God, and took to heathendom. And thus they were betrayed with sorrow the most! Melga and Wanis heard say full truly, that this Britain was

<sup>1</sup> Urfele?<sup>2</sup> Sic MS.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

wes of cnihte bi-dæled.

was cnihtes bi-reifed.

for Conaan hauede swiðe monie ⁊ for Conan hadde manie ⁊

ilæd to Armoriche.

ilad to Armoriche.

&amp; Maximien ladde to Rome ⁊

and Maximian to Rome ⁊

monie &amp; wel idone.

manie wel idone.

swa wes þis kinelond ⁊

an so was al þis kinelond ⁊

of folke swiðe vnstrong.

of folke swiþe onstrong.

Melga &amp; Wanis ⁊

Melga and Wanis ⁊

iwenden in to Scotten.

iwende into Scottes.

þ̃ lond heo þurh arnden ⁊

10 þat lond iþorh<sup>1</sup> harnde ⁊

&amp; herjeden &amp; barnden.

and floze and barnde.

þa ahte heo nomen ⁊

þ̃ folc heo of-flozen.

&amp; swa heo wenden hiderward ⁊

and so hii wende hiderward ⁊

ouer þere Humber.

hermes heo worhten ⁊

and hene lond makeden.

and pore lond makede.

þis iherden Bruttes ⁊

þis ihorde Bruttes ⁊

[c.2.]

and weoren þer fore særi<sup>2</sup>.

and were swiþe sori.

heore fonde heo mo<sup>3</sup>m<sup>3</sup> sone ⁊

20 heore fonde hii fende fone ⁊

&amp; fenden touward Rome.

forþ toward Rome.

Heo grættæn Maximian ⁊

Hii grette Maximian ⁊

and talden him of Melgan. [f 69<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.] and tolde him of Melga.

&amp; of Wanis his iuere ⁊

and of Wanes his iwere ⁊

bereaved of knights; for Conan had led 'very' many to Armoriche, and Maximian 'had led' to Rome many 'and' brave; [and] so was [all] this kingdom of folk most weak. Melga and Wanis proceeded to *the* Scots; the land they through-ran, and 'harried [slew] and burnt, 'the wealth they took, the folk they slew'; and so they marched hitherward 'over the Humber, harms they wrought,' and made *the* land poor. This heard *the* Britons, and were 'therefore [most] sorry; their messengers they 'took [sent forth] soon, 'and sent' toward Rome. They greeted Maximian, and told him of Melga, and of Wanis his companion, what they did here,

<sup>1</sup> hii þorh?<sup>2</sup> sære *pr. m.*<sup>3</sup> nomen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

whet heo duden hef.  
 & beden hine heom ræden ⁊  
 oðer ælles heo weoren dæde.  
 Maximien wef sari ⁊  
 for fwulche tiðende.  
 & anā dude ut of bende ⁊  
 Gracien þene hende.  
 anan swa he him to cō ⁊  
 þus he cleopede him on.  
 Gracien bicum mi mon ⁊ 10  
 & þu fcelt feoððen wel don.  
 & ich þe wullē fenden ⁊  
 in to Brutlonde.  
 ich wulle al þat kinelond ⁊  
 bi-techē þe a þire hond.  
 & þu fcalt beon mi stiward ⁊  
 swa wes þe eorl Adionard.  
 & ȝif þu wult wel don ⁊  
 ich wulle þe makien riche mon.  
 and driuen of mire þeoden ⁊ 20  
 vncuðe leoden.  
 þa andfwerede Gracien ⁊  
 mid griðfulle worden.  
 Al ich wulle wurchen ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

wat hii duden here.  
 and beden him ȝam reade ⁊  
 oþer elles iweren<sup>1</sup> deade.  
 Maximian was fori ⁊  
 for foche tidinge.  
 and anon dude vt of bende ⁊  
 Gracien þe hende.  
 10 Graciē bl-com mi man ⁊  
 and þou falt fwiþe wel don.  
 and ich þe wolle fende ⁊  
 into Brutlonde.  
 and here al þat kinelond ⁊  
 ich bi-take in þine hond.  
 and þou falt beo mi stiward ⁊  
 afe was þe eorl Yþenard.  
 And ȝef þou wolt wel don ⁊  
 ich wolle maki þe riche man.  
 and drif of mine þeode ⁊ 20  
 oncouþe leode.  
 þo anfwerede Gracien ⁊  
 mid godfolle worde.  
 Al ich wolle werechen ⁊

and prayed him to counsel them, or else they should die. Maximian was sorry for such tidings, and anon released Gracien the fair out of bonds. 'Anon as he came to him, thus he called to him: "Gracien, become my man, and thou shalt 'then' do [most] well; and I will thee send into Britain, [and here] all the kingdom I 'will' give 'to thee' in thine hand, and thou shalt be my steward, as the earl Athionard was. And if thou wilt do well, I will make thee rich man, and drive from my country foreign people." Then answered Gracien with 'peaceful [goodly] words: "All I will

<sup>1</sup> hii weren?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

after þine willen.  
 liðen wuder swa þu wult ⁊  
 & halden þe for lauerd.  
 þe aðes weoren ifworene ⁊  
 & æft heo weoren for-lofne.  
 Maximien þe keifere ⁊  
 bæd swiðe muchelne here.  
 & he chæf of þan iwihte ⁊  
 ten þufend cnihten.  
 & makede Graciē ⁊  
 gumene ælder.  
 & swa heo gunnen wenden ⁊  
 ī to þiffen londe.  
 & her he fæht ful iwis ⁊  
 wið Melga & wið Wanis.  
 þ̅ wes swiðe wel idon ⁊  
 þ̅ he heo<sup>1</sup> æt compe ouer-com.  
 & draf heom ouer sæ ftronde ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 in to Ýrlonde.  
 & feoððen ferde ȝeond þif lond ⁊  
 swa him wef alre leofueft.  
 & þe kæifere Maximien ⁊  
 inne Rome wes hæh mon.

10

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

after þine wille.  
 wende woder þat þou wolt ⁊  
 and holde þe for louerd.  
 þe oþes weren ifwore ⁊  
 and hefte hii were for-lore.  
 Maximian þe kaifere ⁊  
 gaderede moche here.  
 and ten þufend cnihtes ⁊  
 tock Gracien forþrihtes.

And Gracien wende ⁊  
 into þiffe londe.  
 and here he ouer-com ⁊  
 Melga an Wanes fon.

and drof heom ouer fée ftronde ⁊  
 in to Ýrlonde.

And þe kaifer Maximian ⁊  
 in Rome was heh mā.

work after thy will; go 'whereso [whither that] thou wilt, and hold thee for lord." The oaths were sworn, and eft they were broken! Maximian the emperor gathered 'very' great host, and 'he chose of the brave [Gracien took forth-right] ten thousand knights, 'and made Gracien *their* chief-tain.' And 'so they gan proceed [Gracien proceeded] into this land, and here 'he fought full surely with [soon overcame] Melga and 'with' Wanis; —'that was done most well, that he in combat should overcome them!' —and drove them over sea-strand into Ireland; 'and afterwards marched over this land as to him was liefest of all.' And the emperor Maximian in Rome was high (chief) man, and [he] had Valentin inclosed 'well' fast

<sup>1</sup> heom?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& hæuede Valentin wel uafte.  
bi-clufed in ane caſtle.

and he hadde Valentin faſte :  
bi-clufed in an caſtle.

þa hafuede<sup>1</sup> Valentin & Gracien :  
inne Rome muchel cun.

þo hadde Valentin and Gracien :  
in Rome hadde<sup>2</sup> mochel cun. [L.S. cl.]

& iſeȝen þene enne broðer :  
iðæled from þen oðer.

and iſehȝen þan anne broþer :  
iðæled frā þan oþer.

Heo fenden heore fonde :  
in to Puille londe.

Hii fende hire fonde :  
into Poillonde.

& heo fenden to Gradie :

þan duc of Lumbardie.

10 into Alemaine and Lombardie :

& in to Alemaine :

to aðelen þan folke.

and in to feole londe :

and oþer mani londes.

þæ læien þer abeoten.

& beden of heore ærde :

and gaderede ferde :

alle gaderen værde.

of manian erþe.

& to ane iſette dæie ſone :

and to one iſet dai ſone :

cumen abeotē Rome.

come aboute Rome.

& wreken uppen Maximien :

and wreken vppe Maximian :

Valentin & Gratien.

20 Valentin and Gracien.

Her of n<sup>e</sup>te na þing :

Her of noht nuſte :

Maximiē þe riche king.

Maximian þe riche.

ah he wunede inne Rome :

in a caſtle. Then (at that time) had Valentin and Gracien much kindred in Rome, and *they* ſaw the one brother ſeparated from the other. They ſent their meſſengers into Puille-land (Apulia?), 'and they ſent' 'to Gradie, the duke of Lumbardy, and into Alemaine [into Alemaine (Germany) and Lombardy], 'to the noble folk,' and 'into many [many other] lands, 'that lay thereabout'; and 'bade all to gather forces from their country [gathered forces from many a country], and at a ſet day ſoon to come about Rome, and avenge Valentin and Gracien upon Maximian. Maximian the rich 'king' knew nothing hereof, 'but he dwelt in Rome with much ſplendor.

<sup>1</sup> A ſecond hand has ſtruck out the letters ue, and ſubſtituted e above for a.

<sup>2</sup> Redundant ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

mid muchele riche-dōme.

Vmbe lutle virfte ⁊

þa comen þa uerden.

al abeoten Rome ⁊

riden feouen kinges.

heo to-brekē Rome wal ⁊

& eoden in ou<sup>9</sup> al.

Rome burh heo nomē ⁊

&amp; Maximien heo floȝen.

&amp; duden vt Valentin ⁊

&amp; alle his iueren mid him. [f. 70. c. 1.]

of þan stronge castle ⁊

&amp; keifer hine makede.

&amp; nomen heore fōde ⁊

&amp; fenden to þisse londe.

&amp; fenden Gracien word ⁊

whæt þer wes iwurðen.

&amp; Gracien forð riht anan ⁊

ahnedede þisne kinedom.

þisne kinedom haueden Gracien ⁊

þe ær ahte Maximien.

&amp; Valentin of Rome ⁊

ahte þa riche.

þus riht þurh swulne ræd ⁊

wes Maximien dæd.

þare come foue kinges ⁊

and breke Rome walles.

and þane borh nemen ⁊

and Maximian of-floȝen.

10 and dude vt Valentin ⁊

and alle his veref mid him.

of þan stronge castle ⁊

and kaifer hine makede.

And nemen hire sonde ⁊

and fende to þisse londe.

and fende Gracien word ⁊

hou hit was iworþe.

And Gracien forþriht anon ⁊

ohnede þisne kinedom.

and Valentin þe riche ⁊

hadde al Rome.

þus riht þorh sochne read ⁊

was Maximian dead.

After a little time, then came the host; all about Rome 'rode [there came] seven kings; [and] 'they' brake Rome walls and 'marched in over all,' 'Rome-burgh [the burgh] 'they' took, and Maximian 'they' slew, and released Valentin, and all his companions with him, from the strong castle, and made him emperor. And took their messengers and sent to this land, and sent Gracien word 'what there [how it] was done. And Gracien forth-right anon possessed this kingdom; 'this kingdom had Gracien, that ere had Maximian'; and Valentin [the rich] 'possessed the realm of [had all] Rome. Thus right through such counsel was Maximian dead, and Gracien

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

and Gracien wes king her :  
 þat wes cuð wel iwar.  
 Wið innen ane ȝere :  
 nes þer first na mare.  
 iwarð<sup>2</sup> þe kig Gracien :  
 gumene forcuðest.  
 al he for-uerde þis lond :  
 þa leoden him weoren laðe.  
 þa riche he for-uerde :  
 þa wræcche he drof of eorde. 10  
 ne durfte þa riche þeines :  
 nowhær him cumen to-ȝeines.  
 ah alle heo hine fluzen :  
 and alle heo hine bibuȝe.  
 þa weoren in Æst Ængle :  
 æðele ibofne cheorles.  
 twene ibroðeren :  
 itwinnes heo weoren.  
 þe oðer hehte Eðelbald :  
 & þe oðer Ælfwald. 20  
 Heo isehȝen on feole studen :  
 hou þe kig þis lond fordude.  
 þas cheorles heom bi-pohten :

*Ethelbald.**Alfwald.*

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and Gracien was king her :  
 þat was cuþ wel iwar.  
 Wip<sup>1</sup> one ȝere :  
 nas þar forst na more.  
 iwarþ þe king Gracien :  
 manne for-coupest.  
 al he for-ferde þis lond :  
 and alle hi hatede.

**P**O were in Est Engeland :  
 twei bolde cheorles.  
 broþeres hii were :  
 of one beor-time.  
 þe on hehte Eþelbald :  
 þe oþer Alfwald. 20  
 Hii isehȝen in eche stude : [c. 2]  
 hou þe king þis lond for-dude.  
 þeos cheorles heom bi-pohte :

was king here,—that was known every where. Within a year,—there was no more (longer) space,—the king Gracien became most wicked of men ; he destroyed all this land, ‘the people were hateful to him [and all him hated] ; ‘the rich he destroyed, the poor he drove from land ; the rich thanes durst not anywhere come against him, but all they fled *from* him, and all they avoided him.’ Then were in ‘East-Ængle [East-England] two ‘brothers’ noble-born [bold] churls, ‘twins [brothers] they were [of one birth] ; the one hight Ethelbald, ‘and’ the other Ælfwald. They saw in ‘many places [each place] how the king destroyed this land. These churls bethought

<sup>1</sup> Wip ine?<sup>2</sup> iwarð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

whæt heo don mihtē.	wat he <sup>1</sup> don mihte.
& speken heom ful stille ⁊	and speken wel stille ⁊
þ þene king heo walden quellē.	þa hii hine wolde a-cwelle.
& fēden in Æst Ængle ⁊ [c. 2.]	
wide ȝeond þan londe.	
& sumnede on ærde ⁊	Hii gaderede to-gaderes ⁊
feouen hundred cheorles.	soue hundred cheorles.
& feiden þurh alle þig ⁊	and feide þorh alle þing ⁊
þ heo walden bi-sechen þene king.	þat hii wolde seche þane king.
& bidden hine mildce ⁊	10 and bidde him milce ⁊
þurh þene milde godd.	þorþ þane god milde.
þ he þurh his mihte ⁊	þat he þorh his mihte ⁊
heolde heom to rihte.	heolde ham to rihte.
Ah Ælfwald & his bōðer ⁊	Ac Alfwalf <sup>2</sup> and his broþer ⁊
al heo þuhten oðer.	al hii þohte an oþer.
heo uerden swiðe warliche ⁊	
mid wūfūme ladeſ.	
& ælc bær an honde ⁊	ech bar on his honde ⁊
æne faȝel stronge.	ane staf stronge.
and biſiden heo gunnen heongē ⁊	and bi-side honge ⁊
cniues swiðe longe.	21 cnifes swiþe longe.
vnder heore barme ⁊	
to ſcilden heom wið hærmme.	

them what they might do, and spake 'them' 'full [well] still; that 'the king [him] they would kill; 'and sent to East-Ængle, wide over the land, and' 'assembled in *the* country [They gathered together] seven hundred churls, and said through all things that they would seek the king, and ask his grace, through God the mild, that he through his might should hold them in right. But Ælfwald and his brother they thought all another *thing*; 'they fared most warily with winsome looks, and' each bare in [his] hand a strong staf, and by *their* sides 'they gan hang [hung] very long knives, 'under their bosom, to shield them from harm'; and so they 'forth'

<sup>1</sup> hii?<sup>2</sup> R. Alfwald.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& fwa heo forð ferdene  
alle i-funde.

& vmben are mile  
heo ræstē ane while.

& au<sup>2</sup> ælcne hired-gume  
feire heo igrættē.

& mildeliche þurh alle þing  
fræinedē whær weoren þe king.

& hiredmen heom tahtē  
whær heo hine finden mæhten.  
whær he wes ī anne wude  
in ane wilderne.

æfter ane bare  
he hine a-bohte ful fære.

þa cheorles wenden to þan wuden  
& warliche heð hudden.  
alle bute tweien

toward þan kige heo weoren beien.  
and iuunden þene kig

þær he wes an flæting.  
& him to cleopeden

quickere stæuene.  
Hiderward lauerd king

and so iwende<sup>1</sup> one mile  
and reſte one wile.

and euere amag<sup>2</sup> oþer þing  
hii axede ware were þe king.

And hiredmen heom tahte  
ware hii hine finde mihte.

war he huntede in on wode  
in an wilderne.

huntede one wilde bor  
þat he boht wel for.

þe cheorles wende to þan wode  
and warliche heom hudde.

al bote tweie

þat to þan king wende.

And hii funde þane king

20 þær he was an hontýng.

and hii him cleopede

mid fwiþe loude ſtemne.

Com hider louerd king

proceeded 'all in safety, and after' a mile 'they [and] rested a while. And 'every courtier they greeted fair, and' 'mildly through all [ever among other] things [they] asked where the king was. And *the* courtiers taught them where they might find him, where he 'was [hunted] in a wood, in a wilderness, 'after [hunted] a 'wild' boar,—he bought 'him full [that well] sore! The churls went to the wood, and warily hid them, all except two;— 'toward the king they were both [that to the king proceeded]. And [they] found the king where he was a-hunting; and [they] called to him with 'quick [very loud] voice: [Come] hither' ward,' lord king, [and] we will to

<sup>1</sup> hii wende ?<sup>2</sup> amang ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

we þe wulleð cuðen a wunderlic and we þe wolleþ teche.  
þing. [£ 70<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]

of ane fwulche bare :  
þe her is bi-halues.  
vnder ane berhȝe :  
þer he burh hafueð i-chosen.  
ne iherde we næuere on liue :  
tellen of fwulche swine.

ȝif þu þider wult riden :  
þer he þe abideð.  
þer fore wes þe king glad : 10  
& þiderwærd wes swiðe ræd.  
& þa cheorles him biuoren :  
beien to-gædere.  
þa cheorles up þreowē :  
þene king heo icneowen.  
& heo hine niðer setten :  
& al hine to-heowen.  
þus Gracien þe king :  
for ut an flæting.  
Sone hit wes ouer al ifeid : 20  
þat þe luðere king wes dæd.  
þa weoren inne Bruttene :  
bliffen inowe.

of one wilde bore :  
þat her his bi-fide.  
vnder one borewe :  
þar he him restep. [£ 59. c. 1.]

ȝef þou þider wolt ride :  
þar he þe abideþ.  
Her fore was þe king glad :  
and þiderwardes he rod.  
and þe cheorles him bi-fore :  
beine to-gadere.  
þe cheorles vp þreuwen :  
þā king icnewen<sup>1</sup>.  
and hine adun þreuwe :  
ad<sup>2</sup> al hine to-hewe.  
þus Gracien þe king :  
vt wende an hontige.  
Sone hit was ouer al ifeid :  
þat þe luþer king was dead.  
þo was gladniffe :  
ifiȝe to londe.

thee 'make known [teach] a wondrous thing,' of 'such a [a wild] boar, that here is aside under a mount, where he 'hath chosen *his* lair [he him resteth];—'never heard we tell alive of such a swine!'—if thou wilt thither ride, where he abideth thee." The king was 'therefore [herefore] glad, and 'thitherward was ready [thitherwards he rode]; and the churls before him, both together. The churls started up, the king they knew, and 'they' threw him down, and hewed him all in pieces. Thus Gracien the king went out a-hunting! Soon it was over all said, that the wicked king was dead; then 'were in Britain blisses enow [was gladness come to land],

<sup>1</sup> hii cnewen ?<sup>2</sup> R. and.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xxi.

ah fone þer æfter :  
 sorȝen heō weoren ȝiueðen.  
 þa wes æuer ælc cheorl :  
 al fwa bald alfe an eorl.  
 & alle þa gadeliges :  
 alfe heo weoren funen kinges.  
 Þis word com to wel iwhare :  
 hu þe king wes iuaren.  
 comen fæ-liðende men :  
 uorð into Irlonde. 10  
 & funden þer ful iwis :  
 Melga & Wanis.  
 & talden heom tiðende :  
 al of þiffen londe.  
 hu hit al wes iuaren :  
 & þ cheorles næfdē name kare.  
 & hefden al þis kine-lond :  
 ifet a cheorlene hond.  
 þa weoren glade ful iwis :  
 Melga & Wanis. 20  
 & feiden þ heo walden :  
 toward þiffen londe. [c. 2.]  
 Mid muchelere uerde :  
 heo comen to þiffen ærde.

Wanis.

ac fone þer hafter :  
 forhþe was riue.  
 þo was eche cheorl :  
 fo bolde fo an eorl.  
 and alle þe gadelinges :  
 afe hit were kinges.  
 Comē men foliwis :  
 to Melga and Wanis.  
 and ȝam tidinge tolde :  
 al of þiffe londe.  
 ou hit al was iware :  
 and þe cheorles nadde none care :  
 and was al þat kinelond :  
 hii-fette in cheorlene hond.  
 þo weren glade foliwis :  
 Melga and Wanis. 30  
 and feide þat hii wolde :  
 toward þiffe londe.  
 Mid mochele ferde :  
 icome<sup>1</sup> to þif erpe.

but soon thereafter 'sorrows were given to them [sorrow was rife]! Then was 'every [each] churl as bold as an earl, and all the gadelings as 'if they [it] were 'sons of' kings! 'This word came every where, how the king had fared. Seafaring' men came 'forth into Ireland and found there' full truly [to] Melga and Wanis, and told them tidings all of this land, how it all was done; and that *the* churls had no care, and 'had [was] set all 'this [the] kingdom in churlish hand. Then were glad full certainly Melga and Wanis, and said that they would go toward this land.

<sup>1</sup> hii come?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiiii.

heo hæfden of Gutlonde ⁊  
 ut-lazen stronge.  
 of Neorewæi & of Denemarke ⁊  
 men swiðe starke.  
 & of Yrlonde ⁊  
 Gillemaur þene stronge.  
 of Scottene heo hafðe ⁊  
 alle þa hæhstē.  
 & of Galeweoðe ⁊  
 gumen swiðe kene. 10  
 & swa heo gunnen wenden ⁊  
 ut to Norðhūberlond.  
 ahten heo nomen ⁊  
 folc heo þer floʒen.  
 castles heo arardē ⁊  
 & ahneden þa arde.  
 þa burhʒen heo nomen ⁊  
 & al þ̃ heo neh comē.  
 þa ifeʒen Bruttes ⁊  
 þ̃ balu wes on lōde. 20  
 nuften heo nænne ræd ⁊  
 heo wenden alle wurðen dæd.  
 Sondē heo nomen fone ⁊

hii hadde of Gutlond ⁊  
 vtlazes swiþe strong.  
 of Denemarche and of Noreweie ⁊  
 men swiþe kene.  
 and of Yrlonde ⁊  
 Gillomaur þan stronge.  
  
 And so hii gonne wende ⁊  
 in to þan norþ ende.  
 hii barnden hii flowen ⁊ [c. 2.]  
  
 borwes hii nomen.  
  
 þo ifehʒen Bruttes ⁊  
 þat wo was in londe.  
 nadde hii nadne<sup>1</sup> read ⁊  
 hii wende alle beo dead.  
 Sonde hii neme fone ⁊

With a great army they came to this country; they had of Gothland  
 outlaws [most] strong, of Norway and of Denmark men most 'bold  
 [keen], and of Ireland Gillemaur the strong; 'of Scotland they had all  
 the highest, and of Galloway men most keen.' And so they gan wend 'out  
 [in] to 'Northumberland; goods they took, folk there [the north end; they  
 burnt] they slew; 'castles they areared, and took possessaion of the land;  
 the' boroughs they seized, 'and all that they came nigh.' When *the* Britons  
 saw that 'bale [woe] was in *the* land, they 'knew [had] no counsel, they  
 weened all to be dead. Messengers they took soon, and sent 'toward [to]

<sup>1</sup> R. nanne.



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& senden toward Rome.  
 & beden heore are ⁊  
 þa & auere mære.  
 ȝif heo heom wolde helpen ⁊  
 to hæȝere neode.  
 a to heore liue ⁊  
 heo walden heom<sup>2</sup> liðe.  
 & luue to heom halden ⁊  
 ȝif heo heom helpen wolden.  
 Þis word wes ifend ⁊  
 bi write fwiðe deore<sup>3</sup>.  
 & þat writ wes irad ⁊  
 imæg<sup>4</sup> þan Rom-leden.  
 þa speken fone ⁊  
 þæ wiffeste of Rome.  
 Bi vſelen iwurhten ⁊  
 ſculden we heom to wenden.  
 for Gratien heo floȝen ⁊  
 his men heo for-foren.  
 & neoðeles we heom ſcullen fendē ⁊  
 ferde of þiſſen ærde.  
 of þiſſen ænde ⁊  
 ænne ælpi verde.

and fende to Rome.  
 and beden hire ore ⁊  
 þo and euere more<sup>1</sup>.  
 ȝef hii ȝam wolde helpe ⁊  
 to þan ilke neode.  
 and euere wil hii lifde ⁊  
 lofue ȝam hi wolde.  
 10 Þis word was ifende ⁊  
 bi writ fwiþe deorne.  
 and þat writ was irad ⁊  
 a-mang Romleode.  
 þo ſpekē fone ⁊  
 þe wiſeft of Rome.  
 Mid luper wille ⁊  
 folde we ȝam helpe.  
 Gracien iflowe<sup>5</sup> ⁊  
 and of houre men inowe.  
 21 cnihtes i-nowe.

Rome, and prayed their favor, then and evermore, if they would them help at 'great [that] need, [and] ever 'in their lives [while they lived] they would 'be obedient to [love] them, 'and love to them hold, if they them would help.' This word was sent by a writ most secret, and the writ was read among 'the' Rome-folk. Then spake soon the wisest of Rome: "'By evil desert [With ill will] should we 'go to [help] them, 'for' Gracien they slew, [and] 'his [of our] men 'they destroyed [enow]. And nevertheless we shall send them 'forces of this land, [knights enow.'" a little troop of this country."

<sup>1</sup> In the MS. the words *beden hire hore* are written by negligence a second time, after more.

<sup>2</sup> beon heom ?

<sup>3</sup> deorne ?

<sup>4</sup> imæg ?

<sup>5</sup> hii flowe ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Vt heo fendē of Rome ⁊  
cnihtes wel idone.

fif and twenti hundred ⁊ [£ 71. c. 1.]  
comen in to Lūden.

& buden al þa ferde ⁊  
of Brutlondef ærde.

& ferden forð ful iwīs ⁊  
to Melga & Wanis.

& heo fehten heom wið ⁊

& floȝen heore uerde.

& heo fulf mid ærhscipe ⁊  
arndē to heolde.

& letten flæn heore folc ⁊  
heore vnimete uerde.

& heo seolf liðden forð ⁊  
biuoren Scotlonde.

& Febus heom æfter ⁊  
mid hif Romanisce cnihten.

ah heo ne mihten for nane þīgen ⁊ ac he ne mihte for noþing ⁊  
Melgan iuiden.

& heo bi-gunnen feorlic ⁊  
ane swiðe deope dich.

& þer ouen on ouer al ⁊

Vt hii fende of Rome ⁊  
cnihtef wel idone.

fif and twenti hundred ⁊  
come to Londene.

and gadere al þe ferde ⁊  
of Brutlondef erþe.

and verden forþ foliwis ⁊  
to Melga and to Wanis.

and hii fohten heom wiþ ⁊

10 and flowen hire ferde.

and hii mid harþfipe ⁊

to þan wode flowe.

and lette flean hire folk ⁊  
in euerече fife<sup>1</sup>.

and hii flowe forþ ⁊

bi norþe Scotlonde.

and Phebus him<sup>2</sup> hafter ⁊

mid Romanisse cnihtes.

20 Melga i-finde.

And hii bi-gonne verlich ⁊

anne swiþe deope dich. [£ 59<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]

and þar vp on oueral ⁊

*Febus.*

They sent out of Rome brave knights; five and twenty hundred came 'in' to London, and gathered all the host of Britains land, and marched forth full surely to Melga and [to] Wanis; and they fought with them, and slew their forces; and they '*themselves*' with difficulty fled to 'hold [the wood]; and caused their folk to be slain, 'their innumerable host [on every side]. And they '*themselves*' 'proceeded [fled] forth 'before [by north of] Scotland, and Febus after them, with 'his' Romanish knights, —but 'they [he] might not for any thing find Melga. And they began quickly a ditch exceeding deep, and thereupon over all a 'strong' stone

<sup>1</sup> fide?<sup>2</sup> ham?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

sænne strongne stanene wal.	one stonene wal.
bi þere sæ stronde ⁊	bi þare féé stronde ⁊
bi-fide Scotlonde.	bifides Scotlond.
þer weoren æuere iwuned ⁊	þar were euere iwoned ⁊
þe vt-laȝen to londen cumen.	vtlawes to londe come.
& seoððe heo heom dihten ⁊	and suppe he hit dihte ⁊
to bi-witen þa dich mid cnihten.	to witie hine mid cnihtes.
þa dic & þa wal weoren ȝare ⁊	þe dich and þe wal weren ȝare ⁊
þa næfde Bruttes nane kare.	þo nadde Bruttes nanne care.
aȝan heo gūnen wenden ⁊	10 aȝen hii gonne wende ⁊
to þare burh of Lāden.	to þare borh of Londene.
& Febus of Rome ⁊	And Phebus of Rome ⁊
huftinge bad fone.	heold þar speche fone.
þer com moni riche mō ⁊	þar com mani riche eorl ⁊
to þan huftinge anan.	
moni cniht moni eorl ⁊	
moni þein mōi cheorl.	mani cniht mani cheorl.
moni riche burh-mon ⁊	mani riche borh-man ⁊
þer wende beon bliðe anan.	þat wende beo bliþe anon.
þa forhfulle weoren an heortē ⁊	þat sorþfolle eoden ⁊
ær þe dæi weoren agan.	her þe dai a-gon were.
Febus þe feire cniht ⁊	Phebus þe faire cniht ⁊
lette beoden his ferde uorð riht.	bed his ferde forþriht.
þ heo comen to huftinge ⁊	

wall by the sea-strand beside Scotland, where 'the' outlaws were ever accustomed to come to *the* land. And afterwards 'they [he] prepared 'them [it] to guard 'the ditch [it] with knights. 'The ditch and the wall were ready (completed), then had *the* Britons no care; back they gan wend to the burgh of London. And Febus of Rome 'assembled a husting [held there a conference] soon; there came many a rich 'man [earl] 'to the husting anon'; many knight, 'many earl, many thane,' many churl, many rich burgher 'there [that] weened to be blithe anon, who 'were in heart [departed] sorrowful ere the day were passed. Febus the fair knight 'caused his host to be assembled [bade his host] forth-right, 'so that they should come to husting with all their troops; and the swains at

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

mid alle heore þringe.

&amp; þa sweines at hærbewē : [c. 2.]

letten heore horf<sup>1</sup> wel ʒærwen.

&amp; makien þa heorf al fwa ʒare : make hire hors alle ʒare :

fwa heo sculden forð faren. afe hii folde anon vare.

&amp; al þat folc duden þuf :

fwa hit hæhte Febus.

&amp; fwa heo gunnen wenden :

to heore huftinge.

þa þat folc wes al icumen : 10

&amp; ælc hif stude hafde inomen.

þa hehte me luften :

inne Lundene.

þa stod him up Febus :

þe riche cniht and feide þuf.

Lufteð me nu Bruttes :

þe her beoð bihaluf.

ich habbe eow to fuggen :

foð word of Rome.

ʒe uf fende sonde :

in to ure londe.

of þare forhʒe ful iwis :

þe eow duden Melgan &amp; Wanis. þat ou dude Melga and Wanis.

þo stod vp Phebus :

þe riche cniht and faide þus.

Lufteþ me nou me<sup>2</sup> Bruttes :

þat here beoþ bi-halues.

20 ʒeo vs fende sonde :

in to Rome londe.

of þane wo foliwis :

*their* quarters to cause their horses (?) to be well prepared ; and ' to make 'the [their] horses all 'as' ready, as *if* they should 'forth [anon] march. 'And all the folk did thus as Febus commanded it, and so they gan proceed to their husting. When the folk was all come, and each had taken his place, then silence was commanded in London.' Then stood 'him' up Febus, the rich knight, and said thus : "Listen to me now, Britons, that here are beside ; 'I have to say to you sooth words from Rome.' Ye sent us messengers into 'our [Rome] land, of the 'sorrow [woe] full truly that Melga and Wanis did to you. 'And I with my army came to this country,'

<sup>1</sup> *Sic MS.*<sup>2</sup> *Redundant.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& ich mid mire ferde :  
com to þissen ærde.

& ich habbe eower iuā :  
iualled to þan grunde.  
& iflemed ut of ærde :  
Melgan buten uærde.

Nu we mazen to ȝere :  
careles wunien here.  
of þare ilke uerde :

þe iflaȝen if on ærde.

10

ȝe uf habbeð ofte imaked wrað : Ac ȝe vs habbeþ ofteimaked wroþ :  
þer uore inne Rome ȝe beoð lað. þar fore in Rome ȝe beoþ loþ.  
for ofte ȝe uf habbeð at-halden : for ofte ȝeo habbeþ at-holde : [c. 2.]  
þat gauel of þissen londe.

& æc we<sup>1</sup> habbeoð ufele idon :  
iflæȝe þene king Gracien.

& ofte ȝe uf bi-hateð :  
treoðe to halden.

& æuere a þan ænde :  
ȝe wakieð an hōde.

20

We habbeð for eower luuē :  
ilofed ure leoden.

cnihtes i þissen londe :  
an hundred þufende.

seoððen Juliuf Cefar : [f71<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]

and ich habbe ȝoure fon :  
afulled to þan grunde.  
and iflemid vt of erþe :  
Melga boutte ferde.

Nou we mæȝe to ȝere :  
careles wonie here.

þat feo of oure londe.

and eke ȝe habbeþ vuel idon :  
iflaȝe þane kīg Gracien.

and ofte ȝe vf bi-hotep :  
treuþe to holde.

ac euere a þan ende :  
ȝeo wakieþ an honde.

We habbeþ for oure loue :  
ilore of vre leode.

cnihtes in þisse londe :  
an hundred þufend<sup>2</sup>.

and I have felled your foes to the ground, and driven out of *the* land Melga, without *his* host. Now may we at present dwell here careless 'of that host which is slain in *the* land.' [But] ye have oft made us wrath, therefore in Rome ye are odious! For oft ye have withheld from us the 'tribute [fee] of 'this [your] land, and eke ye have done evil,—slain the king Gracien; and oft ye promise us to hold troth, 'and [but] ever in the end ye weaken in hand (break pledge). We have for your love lost [of] our people, a hun-

<sup>1</sup> ȝe?<sup>2</sup> R. þufend.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xliii.

ærfst biċō her.

ah swa we ibiden are ⁊

nulle we no mare.

ah we wulleð fone ⁊

uaren in to Rome.

&amp; bi-tachē eow þif kine-lond ⁊

&amp; haldeð hit on eowre hond.

& brukeð hit mid vnne<sup>1</sup> ⁊

for nulle we nauere mare ⁊

aȝan comen here.

10

We habbeð of þisse londe ⁊

ihaued monie þufend punde.

þa we habbeð her bi-foht ⁊

ah heo beoð ful ðeore aboht.

we beoð ofte hider ifaren ⁊

mid wandreðe &amp; mid fare.

&amp; nu ȝe maȝen wel don ⁊

biſecheð eow wepnen a-nan.

&amp; werieð eow feoluē ⁊

wið vncuðe leoden.

Neoren eower ælderen ⁊

aðelene cæppen.

heðne to Rome al þ lond ⁊

ac fo ic ibide ore ⁊

nolle we fo na more.

ac we wollep fone ⁊

wende aȝen to Rome.

and bi-take ȝou þis kinelond ⁊

to ȝoure owene hond.

and broukep hit wel euere ⁊

for vs ne ſe ȝeo neuere.

werieþ nou ȝou feolue :

wiþ oncoupe leode.

Nere ȝoure heldre ⁊

ſtaleworþe cnihtes.

hinene to Rome ⁊

dred thousand knights in this land 'since Julius Cæsar first arrived here.' But as 'we [I] pray for grace we will [so] no more! But we will soon go 'unto [back to] Rome, and deliver you this kingdom; 'and hold *ye* it' in your [own] hand, and possess it 'with joy [well ever], for 'we will never more again come here [us ye see *nevermore*]. 'We have had of this land many thousand pounds, that we have here acquired, but they are full dear bought, *for* oft we are (have) hither come, with trouble and with sorrow. And now ye may do well; procure to you weapons anon, and 'defend [now] yourselves against foreign folk. Were not your ancestors 'noble fellows

<sup>1</sup> The first letter of vnne is *sup. ras.* R. wunne, as in f. 140. c. 1. A line is also here wanting.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

stod on heore aȝere hond.  
 & al þat lond þat heo iſeȝen ⁊  
 fone heo hit bi-wunne.  
 al heo hit biwunnen ⁊  
 mid heore ahte wæpnen.  
 Ah makieð in eowre londe ⁊  
 caſtles ſwiðe ſtronge.  
 and werieð eowre þeode ⁊  
 wið vncuðe leode.

& wunieð her hal and hæil ⁊ 10  
 & habbeð alle godne dæie.  
 þa þeos word weoren [iſæid] ⁊  
 þa wes her a ſtrōȝ ræd.  
 næs nauere þe mon iboren ⁊  
 inne nare burhȝe.  
 þe auere mihte tellen ⁊  
 þurh nane ſpellen.  
 of þere muchele ſærinæſſe ⁊  
 þa iſiȝen wes to folke.  
 þa weoren inne Lundenne ⁊ 20  
 laðliche iberen. [c. 2.]  
 þer wes wop ⁊ þer wes rop ⁊

stod at hire dome.  
 al þat hii i-ſeh of lond ⁊  
 hii wonne to hire oȝe hond.  
 al þiſ hi bi-wonne ⁊  
 mid hire main ſtronge.  
 wonieþ here niht an dai ⁊  
 and nou ich wolle fare min way.  
 þo þeos wordes weren iſeid ⁊  
 þo was þar a ſtron<sup>1</sup> read.  
 nas neuere þe man ibore ⁊  
 in none borewe.  
 þat al mihte [telle] ⁊  
 mid worde no mid ſpelle.  
 half þe ſoriniffe ⁊  
 þat i-ſeȝe waf to londe.  
 þar was wop þar was cri ⁊

[strong knights]? hence to Rome 'all the land' stood 'in [at] their 'own hand [will]; 'and' all 'the [of] land that they saw, 'soon' they won 'it' [to their own hand]; all they 'it [this] won with their 'brave weapons [strong might]. 'But make *ye* in your land castles very strong, and defend your country against foreign folk; and' dwell here 'whole and hale [night and day], and 'have *ye* all good day! [now I will go my way].'' When these words were said, then was 'here [there] an evil chance; never was the man born in any burgh, that 'ever [all] might tell, 'through any [with word nor with] story, 'of the great [half the] sorrow that was come on *the* 'folk [land]! 'Then were in London dreadful cries'; there was weeping, there was 'lament [cry], and sorrow 'unmeet [too much], 'when

<sup>1</sup> strong?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& reoðen vñimete.  
 þa þeo Rom-leoden ⁊  
 riden toward ſcipene.  
 & Bruttes bilafde ⁊  
 inne þiſſe londe.  
 mid vñimete reoðe ⁊  
 ne cuðe heo ræd nænne.  
 þas tiðinde ful iwis ⁊  
 iherde Melga & Wanis.  
 heo hefden ane verde ⁊  
 of vñimete folke.  
 & heo gunnen wenden ⁊  
 in to Norh-hūberlond.  
 ȝeōnd þ̅ lond heo arnden ⁊  
 and floȝen & barnden.  
 & ſwa heo forð wenden ⁊  
 þat heo comen to þan walle.  
 þeo þa Rom-leoden ⁊  
 hæfden aræred.  
 Bruttes weoren wið innen ⁊ 20  
 mid ſwiðe feole monnen.  
 & Melga wið vten ⁊  
 & ȝeorne wes abutē.  
 hu he mihte aȝeinnen ⁊  
 þ̅ he weorē binnen<sup>2</sup>.

and roupe to fale.

þes tidinge foliwis ⁊  
 hi-horde Melga and Wanis.  
 10 hii [hadde] hane ferde ⁊  
 of onimete folke. [f. 60. c. 1.]  
 and hii gonne wende ⁊  
 into Norphumberlonde.  
 oueral hii arde<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 and flowen and barnde.  
 and ſo hii forþ wende ⁊  
 þat hii comen to þan walle.  
 þat þe Romleode ⁊  
 hadde þar arered.  
 Bruttes were wiþ ine ⁊ 20  
 mid ſwiþe fale māne.  
 and Melga wiþ houte ⁊  
 and ȝeorne was a-boute.  
 hou he mihte a-winne ⁊  
 þat he were wiþ ine.

Melga.  
Wanis.

the Rome-folk rode toward *their* ships, and left *the* Britons in this land, with sorrow unmeet;—they knew no counsel! Melga and Wanis heard these tidings full certainly; they had an army of innumerable folk, and they gan wend into Northumberland; over [all] ‘the land’ they ran, and slew and burnt, and so they forth proceeded until they came to the wall that the Rome-folk had [there] areared. *The* Britons were within, with very many men, and Melga without, and earnestly was about how he might win *so* that he were within. They ‘rushed to the wall, *the* bold thanes’;

<sup>1</sup> arnde?<sup>2</sup> R. binnen.



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Heo ræfden to þan walle ⁊  
ræiȝe þeines.

forned alle þa uerde ⁊

feole cunnen ærde.

þa dich wes fwiðe wid & deop ⁊

& þa ferde to-leop.

& Bruttes weoren igærede ⁊

& þene wal weoreden.

heo scuten in ⁊ heo scuten ut ⁊

scalkes þer feollen.

arwen fluȝen ouer wal ⁊

al abuten ouer al.

swa picke wes heore uæræ ⁊

swulc hit hæȝel wæren. [B<sup>u</sup>ttes ⁊

þat for þa arewen ne mihte þa þar fore ne mihte Bruttuf ⁊

ȝemen manes<sup>2</sup> fihtes.

ah a-dun of þan walle ⁊

iwendē heo alle.

& fetten to fleme ⁊

feondliche fwide<sup>3</sup>. [c. 72. c. 1.]

& þa oðer breken þane wal ⁊ 21

& eoden binnen ouer al.

& after heo droȝen ⁊

Hii gaderede al þe ferde ⁊

of mani cunnes erþe.

þe dich was fwiþe wid and deop ⁊

and þe ferde to-leop.

And Bruttus weren igadered ⁊

and þane wal werede.

hii foten in hii foten vt ⁊

mani man þar folle.

harwe floȝe oueral ⁊

al abou<sup>1</sup> þe wal.

hii fette to fleonde ⁊

feondeliche fwiþe.

And þe oþer breken þane wal :

and eoden in oueral.

and after droȝen ⁊

gathered all the force of many kind of land;—the ditch was very wide and deep, and the host *toward it* leapt. And *the* Britons were 'prepared [gathered], and defended the wall; they shot in, they shot out,—'men [many a man] there fell,—*the* arrows flew over *the* wall [all] all about 'over all [the wall]; 'so thick was their flight, as if it were hail,' *so* that for the arrows [therefore] 'the' Britons might not 'maintain any fight [guard their wall], 'but down from the wall they all went, and' [they] began to flee exceeding quickly. And the others brake the wall, and passed 'with'in over all, and after 'they' pursued, and 'greatly them [many there]

<sup>1</sup> aboute ?<sup>2</sup> nanes ?<sup>3</sup> fwide ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

<p> &amp; swuðe heom floȝen.  heo floȝen þer muchel wunder ⁊  twa &amp; fifti hundred.  al of Brutten seoluē ⁊  wið uten þan Scotten.  &amp; wið utten þan Dænscæn ⁊  þa inne þere dic bi-læfdan.  þus iþæh þif kinelōd ⁊  a þere Bruttene hond.  Whæren Bruttes ⁊  cnihtes icorene.  ah nu heo weoren alle ⁊  fwiðe for-lorene.  ne beoþ heo neuere hæȝe ⁊  buten heo hælp habben.  of oðere moncunne ⁊  for heo seolf ne cunne.  þus ferde ful iwif ⁊  Melga &amp; Wanif.  þa Bruttes of Lundene ⁊  to Rome sende sone.  bedē heom fwiðe cumen ⁊  &amp; don alse heo ær weoren iwuned.  þat heo arædde þis lond ⁊ </p>	<p> and mani þar of-floȝen.  and floȝe þare mochel wonder ⁊  two an twenti hundred.  al of seolue Bruttes ⁊  wiþ houte þe Scottes.  and wiþ houte Denfe ⁊  þat in þan dich leie.  þus i-þeh þif kinelond ⁊  ine Bruttene hond.  10 Wile were Bruttus ⁊  icnowe gode cnihtes.  ac nou hii beoþ wel neh :  a-falle to þan grunde. [c. 2.]  þat ne worþ hii neuere hehere ⁊  bote hii help habbe.  of oþer mancunne ⁊  for heom seolf noht ne conne.  þus ferde foliwis ⁊  Melga and Wanis.  20 þe Bruttes of Londene ⁊  to Rome sende sonde.  and beden swiþe come ⁊  and do alse hii were iwoned.  þat hii a-redde þif lond ⁊ </p>
--	---

slew; 'they [and] slew there great wonder,—two and 'fifty [twenty] hundred, all of *the* Britons *themselves*, without the Scots, and without the Danes, who in the ditch 'remained [lay]. Thus throve this kingdom in 'the' Britons hands. [Whilom] *the* Britons were 'chosen [known good] knights, but now they 'were all greatly deteriorated; [are well nigh fallen to the ground, *so that*] they never will 'be high [become higher], unless they have help of other men, for 'they' *of* [them]selves can not [aught]!—Thus fared full truly Melga and Wanis. The Britons of London sent 'soon [messengers] to Rome, [and] bade them come quickly, and do as they 'ere' were accustomed, that they should rule this land, and take

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& nomen hit al to heore hond.	and neme hit to hire owe hond.
for heom heo hit vðē.	
bet þane þan vncuðen.	
þa ȝeuen heo þuf anfwære.	þo ȝefuen hii soch anfwære.
Nulle we nauere þider faren.	Nolle we neuere þider fare.
to þolien þat fwuc <sup>1</sup> & þ iwin.	
aȝen þat heðene cun.	
for þat if goddes wiðer-fake.	
Wanif ihaten.	
& Melgan his iuere.	10
nulle we nauere cumen þere.	
þ if al þe ende.	þat his al þe ende.
nulle we þuder wende.	nolle we þider wende.
an oðer halue we habbeoð.	
mare þene we mazen an-hebben.	
Nes þer nā oðer andfwere.	Nas þar non oþer anfwere.
& þas sondēgunnē aȝen faren. [c. 2.]	þe sondes gonne aȝen fare.
¶ þa heo aȝan comen.	þo hii aȝen come.
þa Bruttas from Rome.	þe Bruttus fram Rome.
þa tiðinde talden.	20 þe tidinges tolde.
þe Romleoden heom falden.	þat hii ham helpe nolde.
þa wes Lundene folc.	þo was Londen folc.
mid forȝen ibunden.	mid moche wo ibunde.

it 'all' to their [own] hand, 'for they would grant it to them better (rather) than to the strangers.' Then gave they 'thus [such] answer: "We will never go thither 'to endure the toil and the conflict against the heathen race,—for that *man* is Gods enemy named Wanis, and Melga his companion,—we will never come there'; that is all the end (conclusion), we will not thither go; 'on *another* side we have more than we may up-hold.'" Was there no other answer, 'and' 'these [the] messengers gan return. When they came back, the Britons from Rome, *they* told the tidings that 'the Rome-folk gave them [they would not them help];—then was 'London

<sup>1</sup> fwinc?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa wes þer an ærchebiſcop ⁊  
 þat wes hali mon igod<sup>1</sup>.  
 & mid godde ſwiðe hæh ⁊  
 Guencelin ihatē.  
 He ſende his ſonde ⁊  
 ȝeond alle Brutlonde.  
 æfter alle þan clæreken ⁊  
 þe godes lare cuðen.  
 alle þaie ihade gumen ⁊  
 hiȝendliche him to comen. 10  
 & heo ful ſone ⁊  
 to Lundene comen.  
 þuſ Guencelin heom ſpæc wið ⁊  
 Mid uſ wunien godes grið.  
 þat if on lati ful iwiſ ⁊  
 þat me ſæið Pax vob.  
 & heo heo<sup>3</sup> him ſeiden forn to ⁊  
 Et cum ſpū tuo.  
 þa bi-gon he lar-ſpæl ⁊  
 & of gode ſpæc ſwide<sup>4</sup> wel. 20  
 A þan daȝen þat<sup>5</sup> ſeit<sup>6</sup> Pauwel ⁊  
 weſ þe ærchebiſcop ſtol.

þo was þar an archebiſſop ⁊  
 þat was holy man and god.  
 and mid god ſwiþe heh ⁊  
 Gwenselin i-hote.  
 He ſende his ſonde ⁊  
 oueral Brutlonde.  
 after alle þe clerekes ⁊  
 þat godes lore couþe.  
 alle þe hodede gomes ⁊  
 hiȝenliche to him come.  
 and hii fol ſone ⁊  
 to londe<sup>2</sup> come.  
 þuſ Gwencelin heom ſpac wiþ ⁊  
 Mid vs wonie godes griþ.  
 þo bi-gan he lorſpel ⁊  
 and heð likede ſwiþe wel.  
 In þan daiȝe at ſeint Poul ⁊  
 was þe archebiſſopes ſtolle.

Guen-  
[celin].

[Londons] folk with 'sorrow [much woe] bound! Then was there an arch-bishop, who was a holy man and good, and most high with God, named Guencelin. He sent his messengers over all Britain, after all the clerks that knew Gods lore, all the hooded men, speedily to come to him; and they full soon to London came. Thus spake Guencelin with them: "With us dwell Gods grace!"—that is in Latin full truly what men say "Pax vobis!" And they said again to him, "Et cum spiritu tuo!" Then began he a discourse, and 'of good spake [it liked to them] most well. In those days

<sup>1</sup> & god?<sup>2</sup> Londene?<sup>3</sup> Redundant?<sup>4</sup> ſwiðe?<sup>5</sup> Written at first þant, but n expuncted. R. at?<sup>6</sup> R. ſeint.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

&amp; wel feole ȝere ⁊

þe ærchebiſcopes weoren þere.

ah seoððen þa feit Auſtin com ⁊ ac ſuppe ſeint Auſtin com ⁊

hit wes to Cantuare-buri idon. he was to Cantelburi idon. [f. 60<sup>v</sup>. c. 1.]

Nu ſeide Guencelin ⁊

Nou ſeide Gwencelin ⁊

þa wes þa heolie mon.

þat was þe holie man.

Luſteð lauerdindes<sup>1</sup> ⁊

Luſteþ louerdlinges ⁊

of ure tiðendef.

of houre tidinges.

þa þes hædene mon ⁊

lo<sup>2</sup> þif heþene man ⁊

þe if ihatē Melgan.

10 þat his ihote Melga.

&amp; Wanif &amp; heore uerde ⁊

and Wanis his i-vere ⁊

habbeð ibroht to þifſen ærde.

habbeþ ibrohte to þif erþe.

&amp; wulleð þefne criſtindom ⁊

and wollep þifne criſtendom ⁊

al for-faren &amp; for-don.

wollep<sup>3</sup> for-fare and for-don.

&amp; ich wulle habben leue ⁊

And ich wolle habbe lefue ⁊

forð ich wulle liðen.

hinene to wende.

& ouer ſæ wenden ⁊ [f. 72<sup>v</sup>. c. 1.]

to ſūne hæȝe kinge.

to ſomme hehȝe kinge ⁊

&amp; bidde þane hæȝe king ⁊

þat hæ<sup>4</sup> uf hælpen þurh alle þing. and ſeche helpinge.

&amp; ȝif ich mai iuīden ⁊

21 And ȝef ich mai ifinde ⁊

to ſpeken wið ſwulche kinge.

to ſpeke wiþ ſoche king.

þenne wulle ich wel fain ⁊

þan wolle ich wel fain ⁊

the archbishops stool was 'then' at Saint Pauls, 'and well many years the archbishops were there,' but since 'that' Saint Austin came, it was removed to Canterbury. Now said Guencelin, who was the holy man: "Listen, lordings, of our tidings, that this heathen man who is named Melga, and Wanis 'and their host [his comrade] have brought to this land, and will 'all' destroy and annul this Christendom. And I will have (take) leave; 'forth I will go [hence to depart], 'and over sea pass' to some high king, 'and pray the high king,' 'that he help us through all things [and seek help]. And if I may find to speak with such king, then

<sup>1</sup> laueringes?<sup>2</sup> þat?<sup>3</sup> Redundant.<sup>4</sup> R. he.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

cumen hidere aȝæin.  
 oðer allef næuere mare :  
 nulle ich cummen here.  
 & ȝe bidden for me :  
 on eower bare cneowen.  
 & habbeð alle godne dæi :  
 cumē ich wulle ȝif ich mai.  
 þa wes þat folc færi :  
 & forhful on heorte.  
 ne biden nauere Brutware : 10  
 an heore liue fwulche care.  
 Forð wende Guencelin :  
 & his clærkes mid him.  
 riht forð to þere sæ :  
 þær heom sæl þuhten.  
 Scipen heo þer funden :  
 & fone in wenden.  
 & heo ful fone :  
 ou<sup>9</sup> sæ comen.  
 in to Bruttaine : 20  
 þer foren heo weoren faine.  
 þa þe king Maximien :  
 ȝæf þan eorle Conaan.  
 ah dæd wef þa Maximien :  
 swa wes þe kīg Conaan.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

come hider a-ȝein.  
 oþer elles neuere more :  
 nelle ich comen here.  
 And ȝeo bidde for me :  
 vppe ȝoure bare cnouwes.  
 and habbeþ alle godne dai :  
 ich wolle come wane ich mai.  
 þo was þat folk fori :  
 and forþfolle on heorte.  
 nadden hii neuere here :  
 fo mochel care.  
 Forþ wende Gwencelin :  
 and his clerkes mid him.  
 riht to þare féé :  
 þar heom beſt þohte.  
 Sipes hii funden :  
 and ouer féé comē.  
 into Brutaine : 20  
 þat Conan hadde wile.

will I well fain come hither again, or else nevermore will I come here. And pray ye for me 'on [upon] your bare knees; and have *ye* all good day, I will come *back* 'if [when] I may.' Then was the folk sorry, and sorrowful in heart; 'the Britons [they] never had 'in their lives such [ere so much] care! Forth went Guencelin, and his clerks with him, right 'forth' to the sea,—where *it* seemed best to them. Ships 'there' they found, and 'soon in went, and they full soon' over sea came into Bretagne,—'therefore they were fain,'—that 'the king Maximian gave the earl Conan [Conan awhile had], 'but dead was then Maximian, so was the king Conan.' But

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

<p>[Aldro]ein. Ah Aldroein hæhte his fune ⁊          þe wes of Conaan icumen.          Brutaine þ̅ lond ⁊          he hafde al in his hond.          Armoriche hæhte þat lond ⁊          ah þene nome hit losede an hond.          Androgien<sup>2</sup> wes þer king ⁊          vnder him wes moni hæh dring. and hadde mani herdling.          Guencelin to þan kinge com ⁊ [c. 2.] Gwencelin to þan king come ⁊          &amp; he hine lette wel a-fon. [fot ⁊ and he lette hine faire vnder-fon.          þe ærchebiscop feol to þes kinges þar þe archebissop ⁊ [c. 2.]          &amp; bæd hine biðenche uppen godd. fulle to þis kinges fot.          Lauer<sup>3</sup> king Aldroein ⁊ 13 and feide louerd Aldroim ⁊          ofte þe wurðe godd fæin. ofte þe worþe god fain. [fone ⁊          Iþench þ̅ þu weore Conaanes fune ⁊ Bi-þenche þat þou were Conanes          of B<sup>u</sup>tten þu ert al icumen. al of Bruttes icome.          ich æm icumen to speken þe wið ⁊ and ich ham icome to þeode ⁊          &amp; ȝeornnen þe liues grið. for oure mochele neode.          In to ure londe beoð icumen ⁊ þar beoþ to oure londe icome ⁊          twæine hæþene gumen. tweie heþene gomes.          Melga &amp; Wanis ⁊ 20 Melga and Wanis ⁊          muchel ufel heo doh us. mochel wo hii doþ vs.</p>	<p>Ac Aldroim heh<sup>1</sup> hehte his fone ⁊          þat was of Conan icome.          he hadde þo Brutaines lond ⁊          al in his owe hond.          Aldroim was þare king ⁊          and hadde mani herdling.          to þan king come ⁊          he hine faire vnder-fon.          þe archebissop ⁊ [c. 2.]          fot to þis kinges          and feide louerd Aldroim ⁊          oft worþe god fain.          Bi-þenche þat þou were Conanes          of Bruttes icome.          and ich ham icome to þeode ⁊          for oure mochele neode.          þar beoþ to oure londe icome ⁊          tweie heþene gomes.          Melga and Wanis ⁊          mochel wo hii doþ vs.</p>
--	--

his son hight Aldroein, who was of Conan begotten; he had [then] 'Bretagne the [Bertagnes] land all in his [own] hand. 'Armoriche hight the land, but the name it lost in hand.' Aldroein was there king; 'under him was [and had] many 'noble thane [subjects]. Guencelin came to the king, and he caused him to be 'well [fairly] received; [there] the archbishop fell to 'the [this] kings feet, and 'prayed him to think upon God [said]: "Lord 'king,' Aldroein, oft may God be gracious to thee! Bethink that thou wert Conans son, of Britons 'thou art' all descended. [And] I am come to 'speak with thee, and yearn of thee grace of life [*thy* land, for our great need]. 'In 'to our land [there] are come two heathen men, Melga and Wanis; much 'evil [woe] they do to us. They have of our land all

<sup>1</sup> Redundant.<sup>2</sup> R. Aldroein.<sup>3</sup> Lauerd?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

heo habbeoð of ure londe ⁊	hii habbeþ of oure londe ⁊
al þene norð ende.	al þane norþ ende.
& fwiðe we beoð auæred ⁊	and we beoþ aþrad fore ⁊
þ heo nu nabben mare.	leste he <sup>1</sup> habbe nou more.
& ȝet heo þenchgð ufele don ⁊	And hii þencheþ mochel vuel don ⁊
to fallen þæne cristindom.	to falle þane cristendom.
& turne to heðeneffe ⁊	and teorne to heþenniffe ⁊
þa hæȝe & þa læffe.	þe more and þe laffe.
For þi fader nom of Brutlonde ⁊	For þi fader nam al þe strengþe ⁊
alle þa cnihtes stronge. 10	of Brutlond.
& moni þusend ladde to Rome ⁊	and mani þusend ladde ⁊
Maximien þe wel idone.	Maximian to Rome.
& nu liggeð of-flaȝen ⁊	and nou liggeþ of-flaȝe ⁊
þa heo bilæfden an ure dāȝen.	þat hii blefde bi hire dāȝe.
& þus is Brutlondes ærd ⁊	and þus his Brutlond ⁊
of folke biðælæd.	of cnihtes bi-reiſed.
Sonde we fende to Rome ⁊	Sonde we fende to Rome ⁊
& bedē þ heo comen.	and bede þat hii comen.
and heo uf habbeoð worð <sup>2</sup> ifend ⁊	and hii anſwerede wordes fore ⁊
bi vre fond-monnen. 20	
þat we don þ bezfte þat we muȝen ⁊	
for nulleð heo nauer mare cumen. þathii nolleþ þat lond helpe na more.	

the north end, and 'greatly [sorely] we are 'afraid that [adread lest] they now should have more. And 'yet' they think [much] evil to do, to destroy the Christendom, and turn to heathendom the 'high [greater] and the less. For thy father took all the 'strong knights [strength] of Britain, and Maximian 'the brave' led many thousands to Rome, and now lie slain what they left 'in our [by their] days; and thus is 'Britains land [Britain] of 'folk [knights] bereaved. Messengers we sent to Rome, and prayed that they should come; and they 'have sent word to us [answered sore words] 'by our messengers,' that 'we should do the best that we might, for' they would 'never more come [no more help the land]; but 'order [bid]

<sup>1</sup> hii?<sup>2</sup> word?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ah hateð us bi-winnen ⁊	ac biddeþ vs a-winne ⁊	
hælp ȝif we cunnen.	help ȝef we conne.	
& habbeð iqueðen us scere ⁊	and habbeþ icweþe vs scere ⁊	
nu & auere mare.	nou and euere more.	
Ah wel mæi dō hu hit ga ⁊ [f. 73. c. 1.]	Ac wel mai don ou hit go ⁊	
for wræcches we beoð æuere ma.	for wrecches we beoþ euere mo.	
Whilen weoren Bruttes ⁊	Wile weren Bruttes ⁊	
þa bezste men of londe.	þe best mē on lond.	[f. 61. c. 1.]
al þ̃ heo bigunnen ⁊	al þat hi bi-gonne ⁊	
al heo hit biwūnen.	10 al hii hit a-wonne.	
Nu heo beoð ouercumen ⁊	Nou beoþ hii ouercome ⁊	
æiðer iflaȝen & inomen.	and iflawe and inome.	
& awæi ivaren mid Maximian ⁊		
& mid þi uader Conaan.		
þ̃ miſ¹ þer bileued wel neh nan ⁊	þat nis þar bi-leſſed non ⁊	
þ̃ auere beo æi tale on.	þat euere eni tale beo on.	
Ah þu ært of uſ cunne ⁊	Ac þou har of houre cunne ⁊	
of us naue þu nane ſūne.		
help us nu for þu miht ⁊	helpes nou mid winne.	
ællas we habbeoð muchel pliht.		
þus ſpæc þe ærchebiſcop ⁊	21 þus ſpac þe archebiſſop ⁊	
þ̃ Aldroein king hit vnder-ftod.	þat Aldroim king hit vnderftod.	
þe king gon ſiche fare ⁊	and he gan fike fore ⁊	

us to obtain help if we can ; and have declared us quit now and evermore. But well may do (*it is sufficient ?*) how *so* it goes, for wretches we are evermore ! Awhile were Britons the best men 'of [on] land ; all that they began, they it all won. Now they are overcome, 'either [and] slain, and captured, 'and away departed with Maximian, and with thy father Conan,' *so* that there is not left 'well nigh' one, that ever should be of any estimation. But thou art of our kin ; 'of us thou hast no fault ;' help 'us' now, 'for thou mightest [with joy], 'else we have mickle danger.' " Thus spake the archbishop, *so* that Aldroein *the* king understood it ; [and] 'the king [he] gan sorely to sigh, [*so* that there] tears 'gan to' glide 'from him,' and

¹ R. niſ.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

him gunnen glide teores.	þat þar glide teres.
& urnen his æȝene :	and vrenen his eȝene :
þat his hired-men hit ifeȝen.	þat al hit i-feȝe.
þa ȝæf þe king andfwære :	þo ȝaf þe king answere :
& wið Guencelin he spæc þus þeȝ. and wiþ Gwencelin spæc þus þare.	
Ich eow wulle helpen :	Ich ou wole helpe :
mid hæȝere strēȝðe.	mid heȝere strengþe.
ich þe wullen bitæchen :	ich þe wolle bi-take :
two þufend cnihtes.	two þoufend cnihtes.
þat scullen beon þa bezfte :	þat sullen beo þe beste :
þæ wunieð inne Brutene.	þat wonieþ in londe.
& Coſtātin minne broðer :	and Constantin mine broþer :
swulcne nat ich nænne oðer.	foch not ich non oþer.
swa wid swa if þes dæi liht :	
nat ich nenne betere cnihte.	not ich nanne betere cniht :
ne nat ich a wærlde riche :	in þiſſe worle riche.
cniht his iliche.	
makieð hine lauerd :	makeþ hine louerd :
ouer al Brutlondes ærd.	of al Brutlondes erþ.
þa axede Aldroein þe king :	þo cleopede Aldroim þe king :
his deore broðe <sup>1</sup> Coſtantin.	his leofue broþer Constantin.
& he forð rihtes :	and he forþrihtes :
bitahte him þa cnihtes.	bi-tock him þeos cnihtes.
Forð ferde Coſtantin :	Forþ wende Constantin :

Coſtan[tin].

his eyes ran, so that 'his courtiers [all] saw it. Then gave the king answer, and with Guencelin 'he' spake thus there : "I will help you with great strength ; I will deliver to thee two thousand knights, that shall be the best that dwell in 'Britain [land], and Constantin my brother,—I know not such another ; 'as wide as is this daylight,' I know not any better knight, 'nor know I' in [this] worlds realm 'knight his like (equal)';—make ye him lord 'over [of] all Britains land." Then 'asked [called] Aldroein the king his dear brother Constantin, and he forth-right delivered him 'the [these] knights. Forth went Constantin, and the archbishop with him ;

<sup>1</sup> R. broðere.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& þe ærchebiscop mid him.	and þe archebissop mid him.
& þe king him seolf walde uaren ⁊	and þe king him seolf wolde fare ⁊
ah¹ of Frenscē monnen he hæfde ac of þe Frence he hadde care.	
Hiderward wende ⁊	[kare. Hider ward wende ⁊
Costantin þe hende.	Constantin þe ende.
and al his uerde ifund ⁊	and alle his mid i-funde ⁊
at Totteneis heo cōen a lond.	at Totenas comen a lond.
þeder² com þe ohte mō ⁊	þider come þeos cnihtes ⁊
wælla wel wes he ibon.	alle wel idiht.
& mid him twa þufend cnihten ⁊	
swulche na king ne æhte.	11 Forþ hii gonne wende ⁊
Forð heo gunnen liðen ⁊	into Londene.
in to Lundenne.	[c. 2.] and fende after cnihtes ⁊
and senden æfter cnihtē ⁊	ouer al þan londe.
Ʒeōd þ̅ kineriche.	and euerēch oht man ⁊
and æuerælc oht mon ⁊	hiženliche come a-non.
þ̅ hiženliche come anan.	þat ihorde Bruttus ⁊
þet iherde Bruttes ⁊	þar hii wonede in puttes.
þer heo wuneden i þan puttes.	in eorþe and in stockes ⁊
inne eorðē & inne stockes ⁊	20 hii hudde ham afe brockes.
heo hudedenn³ heō alfe brockes.	
i wude i wilderne ⁊	
inne hæðe & inne uærne.	
þ̅ ne mihte wel neh na man ⁊	þat ne mihte wel neh no mā ⁊

and the king himself would go (have gone), but of [the] French 'men' he had care (anxiety). Hitherward proceeded Constantin the fair, and all his 'host' in safety; at Totnes 'they' came ashore; thither came the 'bold man,—well was he brave!—and with him two thousand knights such as no king possessed [these knights, all well dight]. Forth they gan march into London, and sent after knights over [all] the 'kingdom [land], and every brave man, 'that' speedily 'he should come [to come] anon. The Britons heard that, where they dwelt in 'the' pits; in earth and in stocks they hid them as (like) badgers, 'in wood and in wilderness, in heath and in fern,' so

¹ & *pr. m.*² þeoder *pr. m.*³ huddeden *pr. m.*, but *d expuncted*.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

nenne Brut iuinden.		nanne Brut finde.
buten heo weoren in castle ⁊		bote he were in castle ⁊
oðer y burhȝe iclufed uafte.		bi-clufed fwiȝe fafte.
ȝat <sup>1</sup> heo iherden of ȝiffen worde ⁊		ȝo hii horde ȝis word ⁊
ȝ Costanti wef an ærde.		ȝat Constantin was in eorȝ.
ȝa comen ut of munten ⁊		ȝo com ȝar vt of wilderne :
moni ȝufend monnē.		mani ȝufend manne.
heo leopen ut of ȝan wuden ⁊		
swulc hit deor weoren.		
Liðen toward Lundenne ⁊	10	Wende toward Londene ⁊
moni hundred ȝufend.		mani ȝufend manne.
bi ftraten & bi waldē ⁊		
al hit forð hælden.		
& ȝa æhte wifmen ⁊	[[l. 73 <sup>b</sup> . c. 1.]	and stilleworȝe wifmen ⁊
wæpmōnef claðes duden heom on.		wepmenne cloȝef dude heom on.
& heo forð wenden ⁊		and alle forȝ geinde ⁊
toward ȝere uerde.		toward ȝare ferde.
ȝa i fæh ȝe eorl Costantin ⁊		ȝo i-feh ȝe eorl Constantin ⁊
al ȝis folc cumen to him.		al ȝis folk come to him.
ȝa wes he fwa bliðe ⁊	20	ȝo was he fo bliȝe ⁊
fwa he nes næuer ær an liue.		fo he nas neuere on lifue.
Forð heo nomen heore wæi ⁊		Forȝ hii nemen hire wai ⁊
twa niht & enne dæi.		two niht and one dai.

that well nigh no man might find any Briton, except 'they [he] were in castle 'or in burgh' inclosed [most] fast. When they heard 'of' this word, that Constantin was in *the* land, then came out of *the* mounts [wilderness] many thousand men; 'they leapt out of the wood as if it were deer.' Many 'hundred' thousand [men] marched toward London, 'by street and by weald all it forth pressed;' and 'the brave [peaceful] women put on them mens clothes, and 'they [all] forth journeyed toward the army. When the earl Constantin saw all this folk come to him, then was he so blithe as he was never 'ere' in life. Forth they took their way two nights and a day,

<sup>1</sup> ȝa?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þ heo comen ful iwis :  
 to Melga & Wanif.  
 To-gadere heo ræfden :  
 mid ræȝe strengðe.  
 fuhten feodliche<sup>1</sup> :  
 feollen þa uæie.  
 ær þe dæi weorðe agan :  
 iflaȝen wes Wanif & Melgan.  
 & Peohtes inowe :  
 & Scottes vnifohȝe. 10  
 Denſce & Norenifce :  
 Galewaȝes & Irreifce.  
 þa while þat þe dæi wes liht :  
 ilæfte auere þis flæht.  
 þa com hit to þan æuen-time :  
 þa cleopeden þe æorl Coſtantin.  
 & bad þa wæi-wit<sup>9</sup>e :  
 for-ærnen þa wat<sup>9</sup>es.  
 and ſnelle men toward þære ſe :  
 þet þer heom ſculden fechen. 20  
 þe mon þe iſeȝen þat gomen :  
 hu forð gengden þa quenen.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat hii come foliwis :  
 þar was Melga and Wanis.  
 To-gadere hii refde :  
 mid reȝere strengþe.  
 her þe dai was agon :  
 iflaȝe was Melgan and Wanis.  
 and Peutes inowe :  
 and Scottes onnifowe.  
 Denſe and Norweniſſe.  
 Galeweies and Yriſſe.  
 þe wile þat þe dai waſ liht :  
 euere ilaſte þat fiht.  
 þo hit com to þan eue-time :  
 þo faide þe eorl Coſtantin.  
 þat wei-wittie :  
 hernde to þe wateres.  
 and ſnelle men to þe ſée : [t. 61<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 for to heom kepe.  
 þe man þe iſehȝe þe game :  
 ou forþ geinde þe cwenes.

so that they came full truly 'to [where was] Melga and Wanis. Together they rushed with stern strength, 'fought fiercely,—the fated fell!' Ere the day 'were [was] gone, slain was Wanis and Melgan, and Peohtes enow, and Scots without number, Danes and Norwegians, Galloways and Irish. The while that the day was light lasted ever 'this slaughter [the fight]. When it came to the eventime, then 'called [said] the earl Coſtantin, 'and bade' that guides should ride to the waters, and active men 'toward [to] the sea, 'that should seek them there [for to guard them]. The man that saw (should have seen) the game, how the women forth marched over woods and 'over' fields, 'over hills and over dales [towns

<sup>1</sup> feondliche?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ȝeond wudes & ȝend feldes ⁊  
 ȝeond hulles & ȝeond heldes.  
 whær fwa heo funden ⁊  
 æine mon at-wūden.  
 þe weore mid Melga ⁊  
 þan hæðene kinga.  
 þa quenen lude loȝen ⁊  
 & al hine to-droȝen.  
 & beden for þere feole ⁊  
 þ hire neuere sæl nere. 10  
 þus þa Bruttifce quenen ⁊  
 moni þufend aq̃lden. [c. 2.]  
 & þuf heo areden þæfne kinedon<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 of Wanis & of Melgan.  
 & Coſtantin þe ohte ⁊  
 ferde to Selechæſtre.  
 & heold his huſtinge ⁊  
 of alle his Brut þringen.  
 alle þa Bruttēs ⁊  
 buȝen to þan mote. 20  
 & nomen Coſtantin aȝeling ⁊  
 and makeden hine Bruttene kīg.  
 muchel wes þa murðe ⁊

ȝeond wodes and feldes ⁊  
 tounes and teldes.  
 war ſo ifunde<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 eni man at-wonde.  
 þat were mid Melga ⁊  
 þan heþene kinge.  
 þe cwenes loude lowe ⁊  
 and al hine drowe.  
 þus þe Bruttēsfe cwenes ⁊  
 mani þufend cwelde.  
 and þus hii aredde þifne kinedom ⁊  
 of Wanis and of Melgan.  
 And Coſtātin þe hahte ⁊  
 wende to Cireceſtre.  
 hand heold þar his ſpeche ⁊  
 mid holde his Bruttēs.  
 Bruttēf nemen þeos aþeling ⁊  
 and makede Coſtantin king.  
 moche was þo þe murþe ⁊

and coverts], wheresoever they found any man escaped, that were with Melga, the heathen king, the women loud laughed, and tore him all in pieces, 'and prayed for the soul, that never should good be to it.' Thus the British women killed many thousands, and thus they freed this kingdom of Wanis and of Melga. And Constantin the brave marched to 'Silchester [Cirencester], and held [there] his 'husting [conference] 'of all his British thanes [with his bold Britons], 'all the' Britons 'came to the meeting, and' took 'Constantin *the* [this] noble, and made 'him [Constantin] king 'of Britain',—much was [then] the mirth that was among men.

<sup>1</sup> hii funde ?<sup>2</sup> R. kinedom.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

*Costanz.**Aurelius.*

þ̅ wæs a mancunne.  
 & feoððen heo him ȝefuen wif.  
 wunder ane hende.  
 i-boren of þan hæsten.  
 of Bruttene þan alre bezsten.  
 Of þiffen hæȝe wiue.  
 Costantin hæfuede.  
 ine þiffere leode.  
 þreo sunen lutle.  
 Hæfde þe ærefte fune.  
 wel neh hif fader nome.  
 Costantin hæhte þe king.  
 Costanz hæhte þat child.  
 þa þis child wes iwxen.  
 þ̅ hit cuðe riden.  
 þa lette hif fader hit munekien.  
 þurh luðere mōnene ræde.  
 & þ̅ child munec wes.  
 inne Winchæstre.  
 Aft<sup>9</sup> him wes iboren an oðer.  
 þe wes þe midleste broðer.  
 he wes ihaten Aureli<sup>9</sup>.  
 his to-nome hæhte Ambrofi<sup>9</sup>.  
 þa wes alre last iboren.

þat was mid mancunne.  
 And hii him ȝeuen a wif.  
 þat was swiþe hende.  
 ibore of þan heheft.  
 of al Brutleode.  
 Bi þiffere wifue.  
 Constantin hadde.  
 þreo fones lutle.  
 ine þiffe londe.  
 10 Hadde the ereft sone.  
 wel neh þe fader name.  
 Constantin hehte þe king.  
 and þe child Constance.  
 þo þat child waf iwox.  
 þat hit couþe ride.  
 þo lette his fader hine monaki.  
 þorh luþer mannes lore.  
 and þat child monek was.  
 in Winchestre.  
 20 After him was an oþer.  
 þat was þe middel broþer.  
 he was ihote Aurelius.  
 his toname was Ambrosius.  
 þo was alre laste ibore.

[c.2.]

And 'afterwards' they gave him [a] wife, 'one wondrous [that was exceeding] fair, born of the highest, of 'Britain the best of all [all Britons]. By this 'noble' wife Constantin had in this land three little sons. The first son had well nigh 'his [the] fathers name; Constantin hight the king, 'Constance hight the child [and the child Constance]. When this child was waxed, that it could ride, then his father caused 'it [him] to be made a monk, through counsel of wicked men; and the child was a monk in Winchester. After him was born another, who was the middle brother; he was named Aurelius, his surname 'hight [was] Ambrosius. Then was last of all born a child that was well 'chosen [disposed]; he was named

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

a child þat wes wel icoren.  
 he wes ihaten Vther ⁊  
 his aðelen weore store.  
 he wes þe ȝungeſte broðer ⁊  
 ah he leouede lēgere þane þa oðere.

Guencelin þe ærchebiſcop ⁊  
 þe toward gode wef ful god.  
 he bi-wuſte þa twa childere ⁊  
 for luue of þan kinge.

Ah wale þat heore fader ⁊ [l. 74. c. 1.]  
 na lengere ne moſte libben. 11  
 for he hafde gode laȝen ⁊  
 þa while þe he luuede.  
 ah he nes king here ⁊  
 buten twælf ȝere.

& feoððen wæs þæ king dæd ⁊  
 hercne nu þurh wulcne ræd.

He hafde in his huſe ænne Poht ⁊  
 hende cniht and fwi<sup>2</sup> aht.

he uerde mid þan kinge ⁊ 20  
 & mid alle his dringē.

nanes weies oðer ⁊  
 bute al ſwa hiſ b<sup>o</sup>ðer.

a child þat was wel itowe.  
 he was ihote Vter ⁊  
 his dedes weren gode.

*Vther.*

Gwencelin þe archebiſſop ⁊  
 þat toward god was ſwiþe god.  
 bi-wuſte þeos children ⁊  
 for leue<sup>1</sup> of þan kinge.

Ac wolawo þat hire fader ⁊  
 no lengere ne moſte libbe.  
 for he hadde gode lawes ⁊  
 þe wile þat he liſuede.  
 ac he nas king here ⁊  
 bote twealf ȝere.

and þo was þe king dead ⁊  
 hercene nou þorh woche read.

He hadde in his houſe one Peut ⁊  
 a cniht ſwiþe kene.

mid þan king he nas non oþer ⁊  
 bote afe hit were his broþer.

Uther, his 'virtues [deeds] were 'strong [good]; 'he was the youngest brother, but he lived longer than the others.' Guencelin the archbishop, who toward God was 'full [most] good, 'he' took charge of 'the two [these] children, for love of the king. But alas! that their father might live no longer!—for he had good laws the while that he lived; but he was king here but twelve years, and then was the king dead,—hearken now through what chance. He had in his house a Peoht, 'fair knight and most brave [a knight most keen]; he 'fared [was] with the king, 'and with all his thanes by' no other 'wise' but as [it were] his brother. Then became

<sup>1</sup> loue?<sup>2</sup> ſwiþe?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa iwarð he swa riche :  
 al his iferen vnliche.  
 þa þohtē he to swiken :  
 Costantin þene richen.  
 he com biuoren þan kinge :  
 & feol an his cneowen.  
 & þus leh<sup>1</sup> þa leod-swike :  
 biuoren his lauerd<sup>2</sup>.

Cadai.

Lauer<sup>3</sup> king cū uorð riht :  
 & spec wið Cadai þine cniht. 10  
 & ic þe wulle tællē :  
 of uncuðe spællen.  
 swulc þu næuere ære :  
 an ærde ne herdest.  
 þa aras þe king Costanti :  
 & eode forð ut mid him.  
 ah wale þat hit nuften :  
 Costantines cnihtes.  
 Heo eoden swa longe forð ward :  
 þat heo comē in ænne orchærd. 20  
 þa feide þa swike þere :  
 lauerd beon wit hef.  
 þe swike fet adun :

þo iwarþ he so riche :  
 alle oþer oniliche.  
 þo þohte he to swike :  
 þane king in his riche.  
 he com bi-fore þan kinge :  
 and ful on his cnowes.

Louerd king forþ riht :  
 spec wiþ Cadai þine cniht.  
 and ich þe wolle telle :  
 of oncouþe spelles.  
 soch þou neuere er :  
 an erþe ne hordest.  
 þo aros þe king Constantin :  
 and eode forþ mid him.  
 ac walawo þat hit nufte :  
 Constantin his cnihtes.  
 So lond<sup>4</sup> hii eode forþward :  
 þat hii come in on horechard.  
 þe<sup>5</sup> feide þe swike þare :  
 louerd beo wer<sup>6</sup> ere. [f. 62. c. l.]  
 þe swike sat adun :

he so potent, to all 'his companions [others] unlike; then thought he to betray 'Constantin the powerful [the king in his realm]. He came before the king, and fell on his knees, 'and thus lied the traitor before his lord : ' " Lord king, 'come' forth-right, 'and' speak with Cadai thy knight, and I will thee tell of strange speeches, such *as* thou never ere on earth heardest." Then arose the king Constantin, and went forth 'out' with him. But alas! that 'Constantins [Constantin his] kinights knew it not! They proceeded so long forward that they came in an orchard. Then said the traitor there : " Lord, be we here." The traitor sat down, as *if* he would

<sup>1</sup> leoh *pr. m.*, but o *erased*.<sup>4</sup> long?<sup>2</sup> lauer *pr. m.*<sup>5</sup> þo?<sup>3</sup> Lauerd?<sup>6</sup> we?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

alfe he wolde holdē run.  
 & he bah to þan kinge ⁊  
 alfe mon dæð of runige.  
 He igrap ænne cnif fwiðe long ⁊  
 & þene kig þer mid of-ftong. [c. 2.]  
 in to þere heorte ⁊  
 & he hī feolf at-fterte.  
 þer þe king dæd læi ⁊  
 & þe fwike fleh awæi.  
 þat word com to herede ⁊ 10  
 hu þe king iuaren-hafde ⁊  
 þa wef muchel reoðe ⁊  
 & rumed<sup>1</sup> to folke.  
 þa weoren Bruttes ⁊  
 bifie an þonke.  
 heo n<sup>9</sup>ten þurh nane þinge ⁊  
 whet heo mihten to kinge.  
 for þas kinges funen tweien ⁊  
 lutlen heo weoren beien.  
 Ambrosie cuðe vnneðe ⁊ 20  
 riden an horfe.  
 & Vther his broðer ⁊  
 þa ȝet fæc hif moder.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

alfe he wolde run.  
 and beh to þan kinge ⁊  
 afe man deþ rouning.  
 He igrop ane knif wel long ⁊  
 þe king þar mid he of-ftong.  
 in to þare heorte ⁊  
 and him feolf atstorte.  
 þar þe king dead lai ⁊  
 and þe fwike fleþ awai.  
 þat word coman sone ⁊ 10  
 ou þe king ivare hadde.  
 þo was mochel roupe ⁊  
 ifalle to folke.  
 þo nufte Bruttus þorh noþing ⁊  
 wat hii mihte do after king.  
 for þeos kinges sones beiene<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 lutle weren beiene.  
 Ambrosie cuþ oneþe ⁊ 20  
 ride vppe horfe.  
 and Vther his broþer ⁊  
 þe ȝet foc his moder.

'hold secret discourse [whisper], and 'he' approached to the king, as a man doth 'in' whispering. He grasped a knife 'very [well] long, 'and' the king therewith [he] pierced into the heart; and 'he' himself escaped, —there the king dead lay, and the traitor fled away. The tidings came 'to court [soon], how the king had fared; then was mickle sorrow 'spread [fallen] to the folk. Then 'were' the Britons 'busy in thought, they' knew not through anything what they might 'have for [do after a] king, for 'the [this] kings two sons, little 'they' were both. Ambrosie could scarcely ride 'on [upon] horse, and Uther, his brother, the yet (still) sucked his mother;

<sup>1</sup> irumed?<sup>2</sup> tweien?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& Coſtance þe aldeſte ⁊  
 wef i Winchæſtre.  
 munec claðes he hauede an ⁊  
 alſe an of his iueren.  
 þa comen to Lundene ⁊  
 al þiſ leodiſce folc.  
 to heore huſtinge ⁊  
 & to ræden heð of kinge.  
 wulche weiſ heo mihten don ⁊  
 & heu heo mihtē taken on. 10  
 & wulc an of þiſſen children ⁊  
 heo mihtē habben to kinge.  
 þa curen þaſ leoden ⁊  
 Aureliæn Ambrofiā.  
 to habben to kinge ouer heð¹.  
 þ iherde Uortiger ⁊  
 3æp mō & ſwið² war.  
 imong þan eorlen he ſtod ⁊  
 & faſtliche hit wið-ſoc.  
 & he þuſ ſæide ⁊ 20  
 soð þæh hit nære.  
 Ich eow wulle ræden ⁊  
 ræd mid þan bezſten.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and þe heldeſte monek was ⁊  
 ine Wincheſtre.  
 þo comen to Londene ⁊  
 alle þeoſ Bruttes.  
 to one ſpekig ⁊  
 for reade 3am of kinge.  
 woche weiſes hii mihte don ⁊  
 and ou hii mihte taken on.  
 and woche of þiſſe childrene ⁊  
 hii mihte maken to king.  
 þo choſen þeoſ leoden ⁊  
 Aurelia Ambroſie to abbe to kinge.  
 þat ihorde Vortiger ⁊  
 3ep man and ſwiþe war.  
 amag³ þeoſ eorles he ſtod ⁊  
 and faſteliche wiþ-ſock.  
 and þuſ ſaide ⁊ 20  
 ſoþ þoh hit neore.  
 Ich ou wolle reade ⁊  
 read mid þan beſte.

and 'Constance' the eldest was [monk] in Winchester; 'monks clothes he had on, as one of his companions.' Then came to London all 'this land-folk [these Britons], to 'their husting [a conference], 'and [for] to advise them of a king, what wise they might do, and how they might take on, and which 'one' of these children they might 'have [make] for king. Then chose this people Aurelie Ambrosie, to have for king 'over them.' That heard Vortiger, a crafty man and most wary; among 'the [these] earls he stood, and firmly withstood 'it,' and 'he' thus said,—sooth though it were not: "I will advise you counsel with the best; abide a fortnight, and come 'we'

¹ A line here seems wanting.

² swiðe?

³ amang?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

abideð feouwertene niht: [L. 74 <sup>b</sup> . c. 1.]	abideþ fourtene niht: [c. 2.]
& cumen we æft her riht.	and comeþ eft hider riht.
& ich eow wullen fuggen:ʹ	and ich ou wolle segge:ʹ
foðdere <sup>1</sup> wordes.	soþere wordes.
þat mideowere ʒenen ʒe scullen ifeo:ʹ	þat mid ʒoure ehene ʒeo folle ifeo:ʹ
& eowre while wel bi-teon.	and ʒoure wile wel beo teo <sup>2</sup> .
þif ilke we scullen ibiden:ʹ	þis ilke we folle abide:ʹ
& to ure londe þa while riden.	and to oure homes ride.
& halden grið & halden vrið:ʹ	
freoliche on ærde.	
Al duden þat hird:ʹ	Alle dude þat folk:ʹ
fwa Uortiger demde.	fo Vortiger demde.
& he him seolf wende:ʹ	and he him seolf wende:ʹ
al fe he walde to his londe.	al so he wolde of londe.
& turnde riht þene wæi:ʹ	and tornde riht þane way:ʹ
þe in to Wichæstre lai.	þat touward Winchestre lai.
Vortiger hafde Walisc lond:ʹ	Vortiger hadde Walf lond:ʹ
þ haluendæl an his hond.	haluendæl in his hond.
feouwertu cnihtes gode:ʹ	fourti cnihtes gode:ʹ
he hauede on his hirede.	he hadde to i-vere.
He wende to Winchæstre:ʹ	He wende to Winchestre:ʹ
þer he Costanz funde.	þar he Constance wiste.
& spæc wið þæne abbod:ʹ	and bad leue of þe abbod:ʹ

eft right 'here [hither], and I will say to you sooth words, so that with your eyes ye shall see, and your while well bestow; this same *time* we shall abide, and to our 'land [homes] 'the while' ride, 'and hold amity and hold peace, freely in land.' " All the folk did as Vortiger deemed; and he himself went as if he would go 'to his [from] land, and turned right the way that 'into [toward] Winchester lay. Vortiger had Welshland 'the' half-part in his hand; forty knights good he had 'in his retinue [for companions]. He proceeded to Winchester, where he 'found [knew] Constance, and 'spake with [asked leave of] the abbot 'who governed the monastery where

<sup>1</sup> foððere?<sup>2</sup> be-teo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xlii.

þe þat mūfter biwat.  
 þer Coſtanz wes munec ⁊  
 þas kinges ſune of Bruttene.  
 He wende in to þan munefstre ⁊  
 mid mildere ſpeche.  
 he ſæide þat he wolde ⁊  
 ſpeken wið Coſtance. for ſpeke mid þan childe.  
 þe abbed hit him uðe ⁊  
 & he hine ladde to ſpæc-huſe.  
 þus ſpæc Vortiger ⁊ 10 þus ſpac Vortiger ⁊  
 wið þene munec þa þær. wiþ þan childe þo þer.  
 Cuſtanz hærcne minne ræd ⁊ Conſtance hercne mine read ⁊  
 for nu if þi fader dæd. nou his þi fader dead.  
 þer is Ambroſie þi broðer ⁊ þar his Aurelie þi broþer ⁊  
 & Vther þe oðer. and Vther þe oþer.  
 Nu habbeð þa ælde ⁊ Nou habbeþ alle Bruttes ⁊  
 þa aðeleſte an londe.  
 icorē Aurilien ⁊ [c. 2.] Aurelie hii-chofe to kinge.  
 his to-nome if Abroſien.  
 ȝif heo mazen þurh alle þig ⁊ 20  
 heo wulleð makien hine king.  
 & Vðer þi broðer ⁊  
 ſukeð ȝet his moder.  
 Ah ic heom habbe wið-ſæid ⁊ Ac ich ham habbe wiþ-fed ⁊

Constance was monk, the kings son of Britain. He went into the monastery with mild speech; he said that he would' [for to] speak with 'Constance [the child]. 'The abbot granted it to him, and he led him to *the* speech-house.' Thus spake Vortiger with the 'monk [child] then there: "Constance, hearken my counsel, 'for' now is thy father dead. There is 'Ambrosie [Aurelie] thy brother, and Uther the other. Now have 'the elders [all *the* Britons], 'the noblest in land,' chosen Aurelie,—'his surname is Ambrosie,—if they may through all things they will make him' [for] king; 'and Uther, thy brother, yet sucketh his mother.' But I have opposed them, and think to 'forsake [withsay], for I have been steward of all

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& for-fake þenche.  
 for ich habben ibeon stiward :  
 of al Brutlōdes ærd.  
 & eorl ich æm riche :  
 mine iueren vnliche.  
 & ich habbe Walfce lond :  
 haluēdæl in mire hond.  
 mare ich habbe ane :  
 þane þa oðere al clæne.  
 Ich æm icome to þe :  
 for monne leofueft ært tu me.  
 3if þu wult me fwærie aðes :  
 ich wulle don of þe þas claðes.  
 3if þu wult æchen mi lond :  
 & þin ræd don in mire hond.  
 & makien me þinne stiward :  
 ouer al Brutlondes ærd.  
 & þurh mine ræde :  
 don al þine dæde.  
 & þu wulle me an hōd plihte :  
 þ̃ ich hit ſcal al dihte.  
 ich þe wulle þurh alle þing :  
 makien Brutlondes kig.  
 þes munec ſæt wel ſtille :  
 þa ſpæche him eode an wille.

and wiþſegge þenche.  
 for ich habbe i-beo stiward :  
 of al Brutlondes erp.  
 and eorl ich ham riche :  
 mine veref onliche.  
  
 more ich habbe one :  
 þane þe oþer alle cleane.  
 Ich ham icome to þe :  
 for manne lefueft hart þou me.  
 3ef þou me wolt ſwerie oþes :  
 ich wolde don of þes cloþes. [f.62<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 3ef þou wolt eche mi lond :  
 and þi read do in mine hond.  
 and makie me þin stiward :  
 of al Brutlondef erp.  
  
 and wolt me an hond plihte :  
 þat ich hit al ſal dihte.  
 ich þe wolle þorh alle þing :  
 makie Brutlondef king.  
 þis monek was wel ſtille :  
 þeos ſpeche him eode at wille.

Britains land, and earl I am potent, unlike to my companions, 'and I have Welshland half-part in my hand'; more I have alone than the others all clean. I am come to thee, for dearest of men thou art to me; if thou wilt swear to me oaths, I will take off 'thee' these clothes, if thou wilt increase my land, and thy counsel place in my hand, and make me thy steward 'over [of] all Britains land, 'and through my counsel do all thy deeds,' and if 'thou' wilt pledge me in hand, that I shall rule it all, I will through all things make thee Britains king." This monk 'sate [was] well still, 'the [this] speech went to him at (at his) will. Then answered

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiiii.

þa andfwarede þe munec ⁊	þo anfwereðe þe monek ⁊
mid muchelere lifte.	mid fwiþe gode wille.
Wel wurðe þe Vortiger ⁊	Wel worþe þe Vortiger ⁊
þat þu ært icumen her.	þat þou epere come her.
ʒif auere mare cumeð þæ dæi ⁊	ʒef euere more come þe dai ⁊
þ ich king beon mæi.	þat ich king beon mai.
al mi ræd & al mi lond ⁊	al mi read and mi lond ⁊
ich wulle don i þire hond. [L 75. c. 1.]	ich wolle don in þine hond.
& al þat þu wult don ⁊	
mine men hit scullen vnder-uon.	
& aðes ich þe fwerie ⁊	11 and ich þe wolle fwerie ⁊
þat þis ich wulle uorien.	þat ich þe fwiþe neolle.
þuſ feide þe munec ⁊	þuſ faide þe monek ⁊
he murnede fwiðe.	he mornede fwiþe.
hu hit al weore ⁊	ou hit allef were ⁊
þat he <sup>1</sup> munec neore.	monek þat he nere.
for him weorē blake claðes ⁊	for him were blake cloþes ⁊
wunder ane laðe.	wonderliche loþe.
Vortiger [wes] ʒæp <sup>2</sup> & war ⁊	Vortiger was ʒep and war ⁊
þat he cuðe <sup>3</sup> wel iwar.	20 þat he tahte wel þar.
he nom ane cape ⁊	he nam one cloke ⁊
of his ane cnihte.	of his one cnihte.
on þene munec he heo dude ⁊	and on þe monek he hire dude ⁊

the monk with 'much delight [exceeding good will]: "Well worth thee, Vortiger, that thou 'art come [ever came] here; if evermore cometh the day that I may be king, all my counsel and 'all' my land I will place in thine hand, 'and all that thou wilt do, my men shall accept it.' And 'oaths' I [will] swear to thee, that 'this I will further [I will not deceive thee]." Thus said the monk; he mourned greatly how else it were, that he were monk; for to him were black clothes wondrously odious. Vortiger was crafty and wary,—that he 'made known everywhere [well shewed there],—he took a 'cape [cloak] of a knight of his, [and] on the monk he

<sup>1</sup> This word is inserted by a later hand.<sup>2</sup> wæp *pr. m.*<sup>3</sup> cuðde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& ladde hine ut of þan stude.	and ladde hine vt in þe stude.
he nom ænne fwein anan ⁊	and nam one fwein a-non ⁊
and þa blake claðes dude him on.	and þe blake cloþes dude him on.
& heold rune wið þane fwæin ⁊	and heold roun wiþ þe fwein ⁊
swulc hit þe munec weore.	alfe hit þe monek were.
Munekes eoden vpward ⁊	Monekes eoden vpward ⁊
munekes eoden dunward.	monekes eodes <sup>1</sup> dunward.
ifeȝe <sup>2</sup> bi þan weien ⁊	hii fehen bi þe wowes ⁊
þane fwein mid munec claðen.	þe fwein mid monekes cloþes.
þe hod <sup>3</sup> hongede adun ⁊	
10 alfe he hudde his crune.	
wende æche oðer ⁊	alle hii wende ⁊
þat hit weoren <sup>4</sup> heore broðer.	þat hit hire broþer were. [c. 2.]
þe þer sæt swa sære ⁊	þat alle þan dai-lihte ⁊
i þa spæc-huse.	fete in spec-huse.
a þan dæi-lihte ⁊	
imong alle þan cnihten.	
Heo comen to heore abbode ⁊	þe monekes eode to hire abbod ⁊
& hine gretten þurh gode.	and hine grette þorh god.
Lauerd benedicite ⁊	20 Louerd benedicite ⁊
we beoð icumen biuoren þe.	we beoþ icome to-vore þe.
for fellic uf þuncheð ⁊	for wonder vs þincheþ ⁊

put it, and led him out of the place; 'he [and] took a swain anon, and the black clothes put on him, and held secret discourse with the swain, as *if* it were the monk. Monks passed upward, monks passed downward; they saw by the 'way [walls] the swain with monks clothes; 'the hood hunged down as *if* he hid his crown'; 'each one [they all] weened that it were their brother, who 'there' sate 'so sorry' in 'the' speech-house, 'in [all] the daylight, 'among all the knights.' 'They came [The monks went] to their abbot, and greeted him in *Gods name*: "Lord, benedicite, we are come before thee, for 'strange [wonder] *it* seemeth to us what Vortiger thinketh in

<sup>1</sup> R. eoden.<sup>2</sup> *Inserted in the margin by a later hand.*<sup>3</sup> heo fejen?<sup>4</sup> n is struck out sec. m.



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

whet Vortiger þencheð.	wat Vortiger þencheþ.
in ure spæc-huse ⁊	in vre spec-house ⁊
þer he spel haldeð.	þare he spel holdeþ.
þurh ut þefne dæi ⁊	[[c. 2.] þorh vt þifne dai ⁊
na munec þer in cumen ne maie.	no monek þare ine come ne mai.
buten Coftanz ane ⁊	
& þa cnihtes al clanc.	
sære we adredeð ⁊	sore we a-dredeþ ⁊
þat heo him mif-ræden.	þat he him mif-reade.
þa anfwereðe þe abbed ⁊	10 þo anfwereðe þe abbod ⁊
Næi ac heo him radeð god.	Nai ac he redeþ him god.
biddeð hine haldē his hod ⁊	biddeþ hine holde his hod ⁊
for nu is his fader dæd.	for nou his his fader dead.
Vortiger þer abed ⁊	Vortiger þa . abod ⁊
þe while Coftance awæi rad.	wile Constance awai rod.
Vortiger up araf ⁊	Vortiger forþrihtes ⁊
of þan mūstere vt lað.	
& alle his cnihtes ⁊	mid alle his cnihtes.
ut wenden ford <sup>1</sup> rihtes.	vt wende a-non ⁊
Munekes þer urnen þider anan ⁊	and monekes Constance sohten.
wenden to uinde Coftance.	
þa ifezen heo þa claðes ⁊	þo ifschzen hii þe cloþes ⁊
liggen bi þan wazes.	ligge bi þe woves.

our speech-house, where he holdeth discourse; throughout this day no monk may come therein, 'except Constance alone, and the knights all clean.' Sore we dread, that 'they [he] him 'miscounsel [miscounsels].'' Then answered the abbot; "Nay, but 'they counsel [he counselleth] him good; 'they bid [he biddeth] him hold his hood (holy order), for now is his father dead.' Vortiger there abode 'the' while Constance away rode. Vortiger 'up arose, from the monastery departed' 'and [with] all his knights out went [anon] forth-right. [And] the monks 'there ran thither anon, they weened to find [sought] Constance; when they saw the clothes lie by the walls, then each

<sup>1</sup> forð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þa ælcā to oðer ⁊	þo ech to oþer ⁊
mænden of heore broðer.	inende hire broþer.
þe abbed an horſe leap ⁊	þe abbod vppe his horſe leap ⁊
& æfter Uortiger rad.	and after Vortiger rod.
& ſone gon of-ærne ⁊	and ſone gan of-herne ⁊
þe eorl Uortigerne.	þane eorl Vortigerne.
þuſ ſeide þe abbed ⁊	þuſ ſpac þe abbod ⁊
to Vortigerne þer he rad.	to Vortiger þar he rod.
Seie me þu wode cniht ⁊	Sai me þou wode cniht ⁊
whi deſt þu ſwa muchel vnriht.	10 wi deſt þou ſo moche onriht.
þu bi-nineſt <sup>1</sup> us ure broðer ⁊	þat bi-nemeſt vs houre broþer ⁊
let hine & nim þene oðer.	bi-lef and nim on oþer.
nim Ābroſie þat child ⁊	nim Aurelie þorh alle þing ⁊
& make of him ænne king.	and make þar of anne king.
& newrað þu noht Sæint Benediht.	newraþþe þou noht ſeint Benediht ⁊
ne do þu him nā vnriht.	ne do þou him non onriht. [f. 63. c. 1.]
þiſ iherde Uortige <sup>2</sup> ⁊	þiſ ihorde Vortiger ⁊
he wes ȝep & ſwiðe iwar.	he was ȝep and ſwiþe war.
ſone he aȝan com ⁊	ſone he aȝein com ⁊
& þe abbed he nom.	20 ād þan abbod he nom.
& ſwor bi his hōdē ⁊	and ſwor bi his honde ⁊
þat he hine wolde an-hongē. [f. 75 <sup>b</sup> c. 1.]	þat he hine wolde an-honge.
buten he him plihte ⁊	bote he wolde onhodi ⁊

to other lamented their brother. The abbot leapt 'on [upon his] horse, and after Vortiger rode, and soon gan overtake the earl Vortiger. Thus 'said [spake] the abbot to Vortiger where he rode: "Say me, thou mad knight, why dost thou so great wrong? 'Thou [that] takest from us our brother;—leave 'him,' and take 'the other [another]. Take 'Ambrosie the child [Aurelie, through all things], and make 'of him [thereof] a king, 'and' anger thou not Saint Benedict, nor do thou to him any wrong!" Vortiger heard this,—he was crafty and very wary;—soon he came back, and the abbot he took, and swore by his hand, that he would him hang, unless 'he

<sup>1</sup> R. bi-nimeft.<sup>2</sup> R. Vortiger.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þ he wolden vorð rihtes.

vnhadien Coftanz ⁊

þas kinges fone of þif londe.

&amp; for fwulchere neode ⁊

he sculden beð kīg of þiffere þeode. he solde be king of þeode.

þe abbed ne durfte nan oðer ⁊

þe abbod ne dorste non oþer ⁊

þar he vnhadede his broðer.

þar he on-hodede his broþ⁹.

&amp; þat child ⁊ ef þan abbode an hond ⁊ and þe child ⁊ af þe abbod an hond ⁊

twenti fulhene lond.

twente folzene lond.

&amp; feoððen heo liðeden forð ⁊ 10

and suppe hii wende forþ ⁊

in to Lūdēne.

into Londene.

Vortiger þe hæȝe ⁊

Vortiger anon rihtes ⁊

for-bad his hired-monnen.

for-bead alle his cnihtes.

þet heo nane manne ne tælden ⁊

þat non of ȝam ne tolde ⁊

whæt heo hæfden on anwolde.

wat he hadde on anwolde.

Vortiger i Lundene læi ⁊

Vortiger ine Londene lai ⁊

þ com þe ilke iſete dæi.

forte com þe ilke i-fette dai.

þat sculden to huftinge cumen ⁊

þat solde to ſpeche come ⁊

þa cnihtes of þiffen londe.

þe cnihtes of þif lode.

To þan dæie heo comen ⁊ 20

To þan daie come ⁊

monie &amp; vniuoȝe.

manie and onifoȝe.

heo redden heo runden ⁊

hii radden hii rouneden ⁊

ræiȝe þa beornes.

riche þes beornes.

þat Ambrofie heo wolden habben ⁊ þat hii wolde Aurelie ⁊

him pledged, that 'he would 'forth-right' unhood 'Constance' the kings son of 'this' land, and for such need he should be king of 'this' country. The abbot durst no other; there he unhooded his brother, and the child gave the abbot in hand twenty ploughlands; and afterwards they proceeded forth into London. Vortiger 'the high [anon right] forbade 'his attendants [all his knights], that 'they to no man [none of them] should tell, what 'they [he] had in design. Vortiger lay in London, until the same set (appointed) day came, that the knights of this land should come to 'husting [conference]. At the day 'they' came, many and numerous; they counselled, they communed, 'the stern [these powerful] warriors, that they would have 'Ambrosie [Au-

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& to kinge hæbben.	habbe to kinge.
for Vther wes to lutel ⁊	
þa ȝet he moſte ſuken.	
& munec wes Coſtanz ⁊	
þe ældeſt wes of heð.	
& heo nalden for nane þīge ⁊	
munec makie <sup>1</sup> to kinge.	
þis iherde Vortige <sup>2</sup> ⁊	þis ihorde Vortiger ⁊
þe wes ȝæp [&] ſwuðe iwar.	he was wiſ and ſwiþe war.
& an uotē leop ⁊	10 and an fot leop ⁊
ſwulc hit an liun weore.	alſe hit a lȝon were.
Nuſten þa Bruttes na whon ⁊ [c.2.]nuſte þar non ⁊	
whæt Vortiger hæfde idon.	wat Vortiger hadde idon.
he hæfde in ane bure ⁊	
Coſtanz þene deore.	
wel ibaððed & iſcrud ⁊	
& ſeoððen mid twælf cnihten ihud.	
þa ſpæc þuſ Vortiger ⁊	þo ſpac Vortiger ⁊
he wes of ȝæpſcipe war.	þat was ȝep an war.
Luſteð lauerd þīges ⁊	20 Luſteþ louerdlinges ⁊
þe while þe ich ſpeke of kinges.	þe wile ich ſpeke of kinges.
Ich wes i Winchæſtre ⁊	Ich was ine Wincheſtre ⁊
þer ich wel ſpedde.	þar ich wel ſpedde.
ich ſpæc wið þene abbed ⁊	ich ſpac wiþ þan abbod ⁊

relie], ‘and raise’ for king; ‘for Uther was too little,—the yet he suck,—and Constance was monk, who was eldest of them; and they not for anything make a monk king.’ Vortiger heard this, ‘who [he] crafty and most wary, and leapt on foot as if it were a lion. None ‘Britons’ [there] knew what Vortiger had done. ‘He had in a ch Constance the dear, well bathed and clothed, and afterwards hid with knights.’ Then ‘thus’ spake Vortiger,—‘he [who] was ‘of craft [and] wary: “Listen, lordings, the while ‘that’ I speak of kings. in Winchester, where I well sped; I spake with the abbot, who is

<sup>1</sup> R. makien.<sup>2</sup> R. Vortiger.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

þat is hali man i god<sup>1</sup>.  
 & seiden him þa neode ⁊  
 þe icumen if to þiffere þeode.  
 of Costantines dæðe ⁊  
 þer fore him is vnnedē.  
 & of Costance þan childe ⁊  
 þe he hæfde ihalden.  
 & ich bad hine for gode ⁊  
 don þat child of hade.  
 & for swulchere neode ⁊      10  
 king he scolde beon on þeode.  
 & þe abbed nom his ræd ⁊  
 & dude al þat ich hine bed.  
 & here ich habbe his munekef ⁊  
 þe gode beoð and mære.  
 þat sculleð witneffe beren ⁊  
 eowe alle biuoren.  
 Leo wær here if þat ilke child ⁊  
 makiē we her of enne king.  
 & her ich halde crune ⁊      20  
 þa þer to bi-houeð.  
 & þat þis wule wið-fuggen ⁊  
 he hit scal abuggē.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat his holi man and god.  
 and tolde him þe neode ⁊      [c. 2.]  
 þat icome waf to þeode.  
 of Constātines deape ⁊  
 þat him fore a-þohte.  
  
 And ich him bad for lofue of god ⁊  
 don Constance of his hod.  
 and for soche neode ⁊  
 king he solde beo of þeode.  
 And þe abbod nam his read ⁊  
 and dude al þat ich hine bad.  
 and here ich habbe his monekes ⁊  
 for segge þat soþe.  
  
 Lo war his þe child ȝong ⁊  
 make we þar of one king.  
 and here ich holde croune ⁊  
 þat þar to bi-houeþ.  
 and þe þis wole wiþ-fegge ⁊  
 he hit fal a-bugge.

man and good, and 'said [told] him the need that 'is [was] come to 'this' nation by Constantins death,—'therefore he is uneasy [that seemed to him sore],—'and of Constance the child, that he had holden.' And I bade him for [love of] God, to take off 'the child's [Constance his] hood, and for such need he should be king 'in [of] the country. And the abbot took his counsel, and did all that I bade him; and here I have his monks, 'who are good and chief,' 'who shall witness bear before you all [for to say the sooth]. Lo! where 'here' is the 'same' [young] child, make we 'hereof [thereof] a king, and here I hold the crown that thereto be-hoveth; and whoso will this withsay, he shall it buy dear!" Vortiger was

<sup>1</sup> & god?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Vortiger wes fwiðe strong ⁊	
þe hæhste mon of Brutlōd.	
nes þernauernan swahæh ⁊ [L 76. c. 1.]	Naf þar neuere man so bold ⁊
þat his quides durste halfien.	þat þis wolde wiþ-telle.
Wes i þere ilke wike ⁊	
þe ærchebiscop forð iwiten.	
nef þer nan biscop ⁊	nas þar nō bissop ⁊
þ forð on his wæi ne scoc.	
na munec ne nan abbed ⁊	
þ he an his wæi ne rad.	10 þat fone a-wai ne rod.
for heo ne durstē for gode ⁊	for hii ne dorste for god ⁊
don þer þa misbode.	don þare þan misbod.
nime þane munec child ⁊	
& makien Brutlondes king.	
þif ifæh Vortig <sup>2</sup> ⁊	þis i-feh Vortiger ⁊
of ufele he wes wel iwar.	of alle vuele he was war.
up he gon stonden ⁊	vp he gan stonde ⁊
þe crune he nom an honden.	þe croune he nam an honde.
he setten heo vppe Costance ⁊	and fette hire vppe Constance ⁊
þat him wes on þonke.	20 þat him was i-cweme.
Nes næuere na mam <sup>1</sup> ⁊	Nas þar neuere no man ⁊
þ don þer mihte cristindom.	þat don þar mihte cristendom.
þ mihte bleffinge ⁊	þat mihte bleffinge ⁊

most strong, the highest man of Britain'; was there never 'any [man] so bold that 'his words durst deprecate [this would deny]. 'In the same town was the archbishop dead'; and there was no bishop that 'forth on his way did not pass, nor monk nor any abbot,' that 'he on his way [soon away] did not ride, for they durst not for *fear of* God do there the wrong, 'to take the monk child, and make *him* Britains king.' Vortiger saw this,—of [all] evil he was 'well' ware; up he gan to stand, the crown he took in hand, [and] 'he' set it upon Constance,—that was to him 'in thought [pleasing]. Was there never any man that might there do Christendom, that might do

<sup>1</sup> R. man.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

don in þan kinge.  
 bute Vortiger ane ⁊  
 hit dude for alle clane.  
 þe frume wes vnhende ⁊  
 & al swa wef<sup>1</sup> þe ænde.  
 he for-lette goddes had ⁊  
 þer fore he forȝen ibad.  
 þus wef kīg Coſtance ⁊  
 & Vortiger wef hiſ ſtiward.  
 Conſtanz al hiſ kinelond ⁊ 10  
 ſette i Vortigeres hōd.  
 & al he dude an londe ⁊  
 ſwa him ſulſ wolde.  
 þa iſæh Uortiger ⁊  
 of muclen vfele he wef wær.  
 þ̃ Coſtanz þe king ⁊  
 ne cuðc of londe<sup>3</sup> na þing.  
 for he neſde ileorned ⁊  
 nauer nane lare.  
 buten in hiſ munſtre ⁊ 20  
 þ̃ munec ſcolde drigen.  
 Vortiger þ̃ iſæh ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 þe wurfe him wes ful neh.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

don vppe þan kinge.  
 bote Vortiger one ⁊  
 hit dude for alle cleane.  
 þat forme was on-hende ⁊  
 ſoch was þe hende.  
 he for-let godes hod ⁊  
 þar vore forewe he a-baod<sup>2</sup>.  
 þus was he king of þis erþ ⁊  
 and Vortiger hiſ ſtiward.  
 Conſtance al hiſ kinelond ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 ſette in Vortigernes hond.  
 þo iſeh Vortiger ⁊  
 of moche vuele he was war.  
 þat Conſtance þe king ⁊  
 ne couþe of londe noþing.  
 for he nadde hii-leornid<sup>4</sup> ⁊  
 in neuere none lore.  
 20 bote wat he ſolde dreie ⁊  
 a-mag<sup>5</sup> hiſ iveres.

blessing [up]on the king, but Vortiger alone did it clean for all! The beginning was unfair, 'and also [such] was the end; he deserted Gods hood (holy order), therefore he had sorrow! Thus was 'Constance [he] king [of this land], and Vortiger 'was' his steward. Constance set all his kingdom in Vortigers hand, 'and he did all in *the* land, as *he* himself would.' Then saw Vortiger,—of much evil he was ware,—that Constance the king knew nothing of land (government?), for he had not learnt [in] ever any learning, except what 'a monk [he] should perform 'in his monastery, [among his comrades]. 'Vortiger saw that,—the Worse was

<sup>1</sup> *The last letter of wef is sup. ras.*<sup>3</sup> *This word is sup. ras.*<sup>4</sup> *R. i-leornid.*<sup>2</sup> *abod?*<sup>5</sup> *amang?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ofte he hine bi-ðohte ⁊  
 wæht he don mahte.  
 hu he mihte mid læfinge ⁊  
 iquemen þan kinge.  
 Nu þu miht iheren ⁊  
 hu þes fwiken him gon uaren.  
 Weoren of Brutlonde ⁊  
 þa bezste alle dæde.  
 nu weoren þas kinges broðeren ⁊  
 beien ful lutle. 10  
 & Guēcelin ærchebiscop ⁊  
 þer bi-forē wes dæd.  
 & him fult þisses londes king ⁊  
 of þare laȝe ne cuðe na þing.  
 Vortiger þis i-fah ⁊  
 & he to þan kinge bæh.  
 mid mildere spæche ⁊  
 his lauerd he gon gretē.  
 Hal seo þu Coſtanz ⁊  
 Brutlondes lauerd. 20  
 Ich æm icumen þe þus næh ⁊  
 for muchelere neode.  
 for fuggen þe tiðende ⁊  
 þe beoð icume to londe.  
 of fwiðe muchele plihte ⁊  
 nu þe bi-houeð mihte.

ofte he hine bi-þohte ⁊  
 wat he don mihte.  
 ou he mihte mid lefinge ⁊  
 icweme þan kinge.  
 Nou þou miht ihere ⁊  
 ou he gan vare.  
 Weren of Brutlonde ⁊  
 þe beſte alle deade.  
 nou were þes kinges broþerf ⁊  
 beiene lutle. 10  
 and Gwencelin þe archebiſſop ⁊  
 þar bi-vore was dead.  
 and him ſeolf þes londes king ⁊  
 of laȝe ne couþe noþing.  
 Vortiger þis iſeh ⁊  
 and he to þan kinge beh.  
 mid mildere ſpeche ⁊  
 he gan his louerd grete.  
 Hayl beo þou Conſtance ⁊  
 Bruttene louerd. 20  
 Ich ham icome þe þus neh ⁊  
 for mochelere neode.  
 for ſegge þe tidingde ⁊  
 þat icome beoþ to londe.  
 of ſwiþe mochele plihte ⁊  
 nou þe bi-oueþ mihte.

full nigh him!—oft he bethought him what he might do, how he might  
 with leasing please the king. Now thou mayest hear; how 'this traitor  
 [he] gan 'him' fare. The best *men* of Britain were all dead; now were  
 the kings brothers both 'full' little, and Guencelin [the] archbishop there-  
 before was dead, and this lands king himself of 'the' law knew nothing.  
 Vortiger saw this, and he came to the king, with mild speech his lord he  
 gan greet: "Hail be thou, Constance, Britains lord! I am come thus nigh  
 thee for much need, for to say to thee tidings that are come to land, of very  
 great danger. Now thee behoveth might, now weapons behove thee to



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

nu þe bi-houeð wepnen ⁊ to werie þine þeodē. Her beoð chæpmen icumen ⁊ of oðere londen alfe hit is iwune. heo habbeoð ibroht to me ⁊ tol for heore æhte. and heo habbeoð me itald ⁊ & treowðen iplihte. þ þe king of Norewæize ⁊ neowenliche wule hider uarē. 10 & þere Dēfemōne king ⁊ þaſ Denen wulle atſechen. & þe king of Rufie ⁊ ræhʒeft alre cnihten. [f. 76 <sup>b</sup> . c. 1.] & þe kīg of Gutlonde ⁊ mid ferde ſwiðe ſtronge. & þe king of Friſe ⁊ þer uore me a-grifeð. þa tiðende beoð ſtronge ⁊ þe icumen beoð to londe. 20 her uore ich æm ſwiðe adred ⁊ for ne con ich nēne godne ræd. buten we moten mid mihtē ⁊ fēden æfter cnihten.	nou þe bi-houeþ wepne ⁊ to witie þine cunde. Her beoþ chepmen icome ⁊ of oþer londe alfe hit his wone. hii habbeþ me itold ⁊ wiþ forþere <sup>1</sup> ſpelle. þat þe king of Norweie ⁊ neuwenliche wole hider fare. and þe king of Denemarche ⁊ [c. 2.] þeos Denes wole ſeche. and þe king of Rufie ⁊ reʒeft alre cnihte. and þe king of Scotlond ⁊ mid mochelere ferde. and þe king of Friſye ⁊ her vore me agraifeþ. þeof tidinge beoþ ſtronge ⁊ þat icome beoþ to londe. her vore ich ham adrad ⁊ for ne can ich nanne godne read. bote we mote mid mihte ⁊ fende after cnihtes.
--	--

defend thy country. Here are chapmen arrived from other lands, as it is *the* custom; 'they have brought to me toll for their goods, and' they have told me, 'and plighted troth [with sooth speech], that the king of Norway will newly fare hither, and the 'Danish king [king of Denmark] these Danes will seek, and the king of Russia, sternest of all knights, and the king of 'Gothland [Scotland] with host 'most strong [great], and the king of Frise,— 'therefore [herefore] *is* alarmeth me. 'The [These] tidings are evil that are come to land; herefore I am 'most' adread, for I know no good counsel, unless we may with might send after knights, that are good and strong, and

<sup>1</sup> soþere?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat beon gode & stronge ⁊  
 & þat wel cunnen a londe.  
 & setten þine castles ⁊  
 mid kene monnen.  
 & swa þu miht þi kinelond ⁊  
 werien wið vnleoden.  
 & þine wurhscipe halden ⁊  
 mid hæjere strenðe.  
 For nis nan kine-lond ⁊  
 na swa brad næ swa long. 10  
 þat ne bið sone inomen ⁊  
 ȝif þær bið to lute gumen.  
 Þenne answerede þe king ⁊  
 of londe ne cuðe he naðing.  
 Vortiger þu ært stiward ⁊  
 ouer al Brutlondes ærd.  
 & þu hit scalt waldē ⁊  
 æft<sup>9</sup> þine willen.  
 Send after cnihten ⁊  
 þe gode beon to fihthe.  
 & nim al i þire hond ⁊  
 mine castles & mi lon<sup>1</sup>.  
 & do al þine iwillē ⁊  
 & ich wulle beon stille.

þat beo gode and stronge ⁊  
 and wel conne a londe.  
 and fulle þine castles ⁊  
 mid wel gode cnihtes.  
 and fo þou miht þin kinelōd ⁊  
 werie wiþ onleode.

For nis þar no kinelond ⁊  
 ne beo hit neuere fo strong.  
 þat ne worþ sone inome ⁊  
 ȝef þar beoþ to feue gomes.  
 Þo answerede þe king ⁊  
 þat of londe ne couþe noþing.

Send after cnihtes ⁊  
 20 þat gode beon to fihthe.  
 and nim al in þine hond ⁊  
 mine castles and min lond.  
 and do al þine wille ⁊  
 and ich wolle wonie stille.

'that' are well able in land; and 'set [fill] thy castles with 'keen men [well good knights], and so thou mightest defend thy kingdom against foreigners, 'and maintain thy worship with high strength.' For there is no kingdom, 'so broad nor so long [be it ever so strong], that will not soon be taken if there are too few warriors.' Then answered the king,—[that] of land 'he' knew nothing,—“ 'Vortiger, thou art steward over all Britains land, and thou shalt it rule after thy will.' Send after knights that are good in fight; and take all in thine hand, my castles and my land, and do all thy will, and I will be still, except 'the single [one only] thing, [that] I will

<sup>1</sup> lond?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xliii.

bute þe an læpi þing ⁊  
 ich wulle beon icleoped king.  
 þa loh Uortiger ⁊  
 he wes of vfele fwi<sup>1</sup> iwær.  
 nes he nauere swa bliðe ⁊  
 ær on his liue.  
 Uortiger nam læue ⁊  
 & forð he gon liðe.      [[c. 2.]  
 & swa he uorð ferde<sup>2</sup> al þ lond ⁊

bote on alpi þing ⁊  
 þat ich wolle beo icleoped king.  
 þo loh Vortiger ⁊  
 þat was of vuele war.  
 nas he neuere so blipe ⁊  
 her on his lifue.  
 Vortiger nam læfue ⁊  
 and forþ he gan wenðe.  
 and so he þorh ferde ⁊  
 10 al Brutlodes<sup>3</sup> erpe.  
 alle þe castles and þat lond ⁊  
 he fette in his owene hond. [f. 64. c. 1.]

he fette an hif aȝere hond.  
 & þe monraddene he nom ⁊  
 æuere æwher he com.  
 & swa he nō his sonde ⁊  
 & fende to Scotlonde.  
 & hæhte þa Pohtes ⁊  
 þa alre bezfte cnihtes.  
 þreo hundred him cumen to ⁊  
 & he heon<sup>5</sup> wolde wel don.      20  
 And þa cnihtes him to come ⁊  
 þer æfter wel sone.

And fuppe he nam his sonde ⁊  
 and fende to Scotlond.  
 and hehte þe beste cnihtes ⁊  
 þat were a-mag<sup>4</sup> þe Peutes.  
 þreo hundred him come to ⁊  
 and he ȝam wolde wel fon.  
 And þeos cnihtes comen ⁊  
 to him riht sone.

be called king." Then laughed Vortiger,—he [that] was of evil 'most' ware,—was he never so blithe ere in his life! Vortiger took leave, and forth he gan pass, and so he [proceeded through all Britains land; all the castles and] 'all' the land he set in his own hand, 'and the fealty he took ever where he came.' And 'so [afterwards] he took his messengers, and sent to Scotland, and ordered 'the Peohtes, the knights best of all [the best knights that were among the Peutes], three hundred to come to him, and he would well 'do to [receive] them. And 'the [these] knights came to him

<sup>1</sup> swiþe?<sup>2</sup> Thus written at first, but ferde afterwards expuncted. A line and half are evidently deficient.<sup>3</sup> R. Brutlondes.<sup>4</sup> amang?<sup>5</sup> heom?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þus spæc þe swikefulle gume ⁊  
 Cnihtes 3e beoð wulcume.  
 ich habbe i mire hond ⁊  
 al þis kinewurðe lond.  
 mid me 3e scullen liðen ⁊  
 for ich eow wullen luuien.  
 & ich eow wullen bringe ⁊  
 bi-uoren ure kinge.  
 3e scullen habbe feoluer & gold ⁊  
 þe bezste horf of þis lond. 10  
 claðes & fæire wif ⁊  
 eore wille ich wulle driȝen.  
 3e sculleð beon me leofue ⁊  
 for þa Bruttes me beoð laðe.  
 lude & stille ⁊  
 ich wulle <sup>1</sup>  
 3if 3e wulleð in londe ⁊  
 halden me for lauerd.  
 þa forð rihtes ⁊  
 anfwareda þa cnihtes. 20  
 Al we wulleð ⁊  
 don þine iwille.  
 & heo gunnen wenden ⁊  
 to Coftace<sup>2</sup> þan kinge.

þus spæc þe falsæ gome ⁊  
 Cnihtes 3e beoþ welcome.  
 ich habbe in mine hond ⁊  
 al þis kineworþe lond.  
 mid me 3eo folle wonie ⁊  
 and ich ou wolle lofuie.  
 3eo follen beo me leofue ⁊  
 for Bruttus beoþ me lope.  
 loude and stille ⁊  
 ich wolle don oure wille.  
 3ef 3eo wolleþ oueral ⁊  
 holde me for loūd.  
 þo forþrihtes ⁊  
 anfwareda þe cnihtes.  
 Don we hit wolle ⁊  
 al þine wille.  
 and hii gonne wende ⁊  
 to Constance þan kinge.

'thereafter' 'well [right] soon; thus spake the 'traitorous [false] man :  
 "Knights, ye are welcome. I have in my hand all this regal land; with  
 me ye shall 'go [dwell], and I will you love, 'and I will you bring before  
 our king; ye shall have silver and gold, the best horses of this land, clothes,  
 and fair wives; your will I will perform.' Ye shall be to me dear, for 'the'  
 Britons are hateful to me; loud and still I will [do your will], if ye will  
 'in land [over all] hold me for lord.'" Then forth-right answered the  
 knights: "We will [it] do all thy will"; and they gan proceed to Constance

<sup>1</sup> Half a line is here wanting, which the other text supplies.<sup>2</sup> R. Coftance.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

To þan kinge com Uortiger :	þo faide Vortiger :
of ufele he wes wel war.	þat was swiþe wis and war.
& feide him of his dæde :	
hu he idon hæuede.	
& her ich habbe Peohtes :	
þa scullen beð hired-cnihtes.	
and alleich habbe þine castles <sup>1</sup> :	Alle þine castles :
swiðe wel bitæht.	ich habbe wel iftored.
& þas uncuðe cnihtes :	and þeos oncoupe cnihtes :
bi-uoren uf scullen fihten.	folle bi-vore vs fihte.
Al þe king bi-lufde :	And al þe king lifde :
swa Fortiger hojede.	þat Vortiger faide.
ah wale þat nufte þa king :	ac wolawo þat nufte þe king :
of his þohte naðing.	of his þohte noþing.
ne of his fwikedome :	ne of his fwikedome :
þe he dude þer æfter sone.	þat he dude þar after sone.
þas cnihtes weorē an hirede :	þeof cnihtes wonede þare :
hæhliche iwurðed.	
fulle twa ȝere :	folle two ȝere.
mid þan kige heo wuneden þere.	
& Uortiger þe stiward :	and Vortiger þe stiward :
wes heore alre lauerd.	was hire alre louerd.
A he feide þat Bruttes :	

the king. 'To the king came [Then said] Vortiger,—'of evil he was well ware [that was most wise and wary],—' and said him of his deed, how he had done.—"And here I have *the* Peohtes, who shall be household knights; and' I have 'most' well stored all thy castles; and these foreign knights shall before us fight." The king commended all 'as [that] Vortiger 'purposed [said], but alas! that the king knew nothing of his thoughts, nor of his treachery, that he did soon thereafter! These knights 'were in court highly honored'; full two years 'with the king they' dwelt there, and Vortiger the steward was lord of them all. 'Ever he said that *the*

<sup>1</sup> R. castles.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

neoren noht to nuttes.

ah<sup>1</sup> he feide þat þa Peohtes ⁊

weoren gode cnihtes.

A weoren Bruttes ⁊

godes bidaled.

&amp; þa Peohtes walden ⁊

al þat heo wolden.

heo hafden dræncheo hafden mete ⁊

heo hafden muchel blisse æke.

Vortiger heom falde ⁊

al þat heo wolden.

10 Vortiger ȝam folde ⁊

al þat hii wolde.

and eke he ȝam ȝef ⁊

ȝiftes swiþe riche.

so þat he ham was so lef ⁊

alfe hire oȝe lif.

and hii stille speken ⁊

þar þat hii feten.

þat Vortiger were worþe ⁊

to welde þeos riche.

& heom wef<sup>2</sup> al swa leof ⁊

swa heore aȝene lif.

swa þat heo al speken ⁊

þer heo heore mete ætē.

þat Uortiger weoren wurðe ⁊

to walden þas þeode.

þurh ut alle þinges ⁊

bæt þene swulche þreo kinges.

Vortiger ȝef þissen gumen ⁊

swiðe muchele gærſūe.

þa ilomp hit on ane dæie ⁊

20 þorh vt alle þinges ⁊

bet þane ſoche þreo kinges.

þo bi-fulled<sup>3</sup> in hon dai ⁊

Britons were not of use, but he said that the Peohtes were good knights. Ever were *the* Britons deprived of goods, and the Peohtes wielded all that they would. They had drink, they had meat, they had eke much bliss. Vortiger granted them all that they would, and [eke he gave them gifts most rich, so that he] was to them as dear as their own life; 'so that [and] they 'all [stilly] spake, where [that] they 'ate their meat [sate], that Vortiger were worthy to govern this realm throughout all things, better than three such kings! 'Vortiger gave these men very much

<sup>1</sup> a?<sup>2</sup> The last two letters of wef are by second hand sup. ras.<sup>3</sup> bi-fulle hit?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þa Uortiger at his inne laie.  
 he nom<sup>1</sup> his tweiene cnihtef:  
 & fende æfter þan Peohtef.  
 hæhten heom cumen her:<sup>2</sup> [c.2.]  
 for alle heo sculden æten þer.  
 To him comen þa cnihtes:  
 to hif inne forð rihtes.  
 he uondede heom mid worde:  
 alfe heo seten at borde.  
 he lette heom bringen schenches:  
 of feole cunne drēches. 11  
 heo drunken heo dremdē:  
 dæi þer forð eode.  
 þa heo weof swa drunken:  
 þ̅ wakeden heore sconken.  
 þa spæc Uortiger:  
 þ̅ he hæfde iþoht ær.  
 Hercneð nu me cnihtef:  
 ich wulle suggen eow uorð rihtes.  
 of mire muchele forþen:<sup>3</sup> 20  
 þ̅ ich fore<sup>4</sup> habbe imurned.  
 þe kīg me bi-tahte þif ard:

þat Vortiger at his hinne lai.  
 he fende twei cnihtes:  
 after þeos Peutes.  
 þat hii folde alle:  
 heote mid him soolue<sup>2</sup>.  
 And anon forþrihtes:  
 to him come þeos cnihtes.  
 he fondede þam mid wordes:  
 alfe hii fete at þe bordes.  
 hii dronke hii dremde:  
 þe dai forþ eode.  
 So lang i<sup>3</sup> weren þere:  
 þat hii dronge were.  
 þ̅ spæc Vortiger:  
 þat he hadde iþoht her.  
 Hercneþ nou cnihtes:  
 ich wolle telle ou forþrihtes.  
 of þane mochele forewe:<sup>4</sup>  
 þat ich for ou habbe.

treasure.' Then befell it on a day, that Vortiger lay at his inn; he 'took his' two knights 'and' sent after 'the [these] Peohtes; 'bade them come here, for they all should eat there [that they should all eat with himself. And anon] forth-right 'the [these] knights came to him, 'to his inn'; he tried them with words as they sate at [the] board, 'he caused draughts to be brought them of many kinds of drinks'; they drank, they revelled, [the] day 'there' forth passed. 'When they were so drunk that their shanks weakened [So long they were there, that they were drunk], then spake Vortiger what he had previously thought: "Hearken now 'to me,' knights, I will 'say [tell]. to you 'forth-right [right sooth] of 'my [the] mickle sorrow that I for [you] have 'mourned. The king delivered

<sup>1</sup> inom *pr. m.*, but i erased.<sup>2</sup> seolue?<sup>3</sup> hii?<sup>4</sup> for eow?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

for to beon his stiward.

ȝe beoð me on lifue ⁊

alre mōnen leofst<sup>1</sup>.

ah nabbe ich æhtē ⁊

to ȝiue mine cnihten.

for þes king æh al þif lond ⁊

and he is ȝung &amp; þæh strong.

and al ic him mot ȝelden ⁊

þat ich nime of his londe.

&amp; ȝif ich his for-leofe ⁊

ich sal laȝe þolie.

&amp; mine ahten ich habbe isfēd ⁊

for ich eo<sup>3</sup> wulle iquemen.

&amp; nu ich mot heonene uarē ⁊

feor to summe kinge.

heren him mid fæhte ⁊

&amp; bi-winnen mid him ahte.

ne mæi i<sup>4</sup> noht formuchele feome ⁊

habben here þesne wone.

ah forð ich mot liðen ⁊

to uncuðe leoden.

& ȝif auere cumeð þe dæi ⁊ [L77<sup>b</sup>. c.1.] and ȝef euere comeþ þe dai ⁊

þ ich æhten bi-ȝiten mæi.

ȝeo beoþ me on lifue ⁊

cnihtef alre leofuest.

ac nabbe ich more to ȝefue ⁊

ne ȝou for to holde.

for þe king haht al þat lond ⁊

and he his his<sup>2</sup> ȝong and fwiþe

[strong.

10 ȝef ich his god mif-spene ⁊

ich mot laȝe þolie. [[L84<sup>b</sup>. c.1.]

and mine hæhte ich habbe isfened ⁊

for ich ou wolde cweme.

And nou ich mot of londe fare ⁊

for to somme kinge.

20

me this land for to be his steward.' Ye are to me liefest of all 'men [knights] alive, but I have not 'wealth [more] to give 'my knights [nor you for to maintain], for 'this [the] king possesses all 'this [the] land, and he is young and 'also [most] strong, 'and all I must yield to him that I take of his land; and' if I 'destroy [mis-spend] his [goods], I 'shall [must] suffer *the* law; and mine *own* wealth I have spent, because I would please you. And now I must 'depart hence [go from *the* land] far to some king, 'serve him with peace, and gain wealth with him; I may not for much shame have here this abode, but forth I must go to foreign lands.' And if the day shall ever come, that I may acquire wealth, and I may so well thrive, that

<sup>1</sup> leofuest?<sup>2</sup> Sic MS.<sup>3</sup> eow?<sup>4</sup> ich?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and ich mazen swa wel iþeon :	and ich mawe so wel iþeon :
þat ȝe cumen a londe þer ich beon.	þat ȝe come in londe war ich beon.
ich eow wulle wel biwiten :	ich ou wolle wel bi-wite :
mid muchelere wurðſcipe.	mid mochelere manſipe.
and habbeoð alle godne dæi :	and habbeþ alle godne dai :
to niht ich wulle faren awæi.	to niht ich wolle varen awai.
hit bið a muchele wæne :	
whær ȝe i-feon me auere mare.	
Nuften noht þas cnihtes :	Nuſte noht þe cnihtes :
<sup>1</sup> wæt þe ſwike þohte.	10 wat þe ſwike þohte.
Vortiger wes fæc :	
for her he hiſ lauerd bi-ſwæc.	
& þe cnihtes heolden hit for foh :	
þat þe ſwike ſæide.	
Fortiger hæhte hiſ ſweines :	Vortiger hehte hiſ ſweines :
sadeli hiſ blouken.	ſadeli hiſ ſtedes.
& nemnede twalf ſcalkes :	and nam twealf cnihtes :
to laden mid him feoluen.	forþ mid him feolue.
to horſen heo eoden :	to horſe hii eoden :
ſwulc heo wolden of þeoden.	20 alſe hii wolde of þeode.
þat iſeoȝen þa Peohtes :	þiſ iſehȝe þe Peutes :
þa for-drunkene cnihtes.	þe fordronkene cnihtes.

ye come in *the* land where I am, I will well reward you with much worship. And have *now* all good day; *for* to-night I will go away; 'it is a great doubt whether ye see me evermore.'"—These [The] knights knew not what the traitor thought. 'Vortiger was treacherous, for here he betrayed his lord, and the knights held it for sooth, what the traitor said.' Vortiger ordered his swains to saddle his steeds, and 'named [took] twelve 'men to lead [knights forth] with himself; to horse they went as if they would *depart* from *the* land. The Peohtes saw 'that [this],—the drunken knights,—' how Vortiger would depart; herefore they had much

<sup>1</sup> This and the two following lines are written by the first hand out of order, but marked for transposition. A second hand has struck them out in the text, and re-copied them in the margin in the order above given.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

hu Vortiger wolde uaren? [kare.

her uore heo hæfden muchelne

heo eodē to ræden?

heo eoden to rune.

alle heo menden heore lif?

for Vortiger heom wes swa leof.

&amp; þus feiden þa Peohtes?

and to hire herre hii fede?

þa drūkene cnihtes.

Whæt mæge we nu to rade?

Wat his vs nou to reade.

whæ scal us nu rædē.

10

wha scal us feden?

wo fal vs nou scrude?

wha scal uf scruden.

wo fal vs nou veode,

wha scal an hirede?

beon ure lauerd.

Nu Vortiger if iuaren?

Nou Vortiger his a-fare?

alle we mote fufen.

[c.2.]

and we ibroht in mochel care.

nulle we for nane þinge?

nole we for none þinge?

munec habbe to kinge.

monek habbe to kinge.

Ah wulle we wel don?

forð riht faren we him to.

20

diȝelliche &amp; stille?

&amp; don al ure iwille.

in to hif bure?

&amp; drincken of his beore.

þenne we habbeð idrunkē?

care; they went to counsel, they went to communing; all they lamented their life (exceedingly), because Vortiger was so dear to them.' And 'thus said the Peohtes [to their chief they said], 'the drunken knights': "What 'may we [is to us] now in counsel? 'who shall us now advise?' who shall us 'feed [now clothe], who shall us 'clothe [now feed], 'who shall be our lord at court?' Now Vortiger is gone, 'we all must depart [and we *are* brought in mickle care];—we will not for anything have a monk for king! 'But we will do well, forth-right go we to him, secretly and still, and do all our will, into his chamber, and drink of his beer. When we have drunk,

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

dreame we lude.  
 & summe sculleð to þere dure ⁊  
 mid sweorden stoden<sup>1</sup> þer biuoren.  
 & summe forð rihtes ⁊  
 nimen þene king & his cnihtes.  
 & flæn<sup>2</sup> of þa hafden ⁊  
 & we seolf hired haben.  
 & leten sone of-ærenen ⁊  
 uræ lauerd Uortigerne.  
 & seoððen þurh alle þinge ⁊ 10  
 hæbben hine to kinge.  
 þenne mah we libben ⁊  
 swa uf bið alre leofuest.  
 Wenden þa cnihtes ⁊  
 to þan kinge forð rihtes.  
 eoden heo alle ⁊  
 þurh ut þære halle.  
 in to þas kinges bure ⁊  
 þer he sæt bi fure.  
 Nes þer nan þat word spæc ⁊ 20  
 bute Gille Callæt.  
 þus he wið þæne kinge spæc ⁊  
 fwiken he þohte þet<sup>3</sup>.  
 Luft me nu leod-kig ⁊

Wende þes cnihtes ⁊  
 to þan kinge forþrihtes.  
 3eoden þes cnihtes alle ⁊  
 þorh vt þære halle.  
 in to þe kinges boure ⁊  
 þar he sat bi þan fure.

loudly revel we; and some shall *go* to the door, *and* with swords stand  
 therebefore, and some forth-right take the king and his knights, and smite  
 off the heads *of them*, and we *ourselves* have *the* court; and cause soon our  
 lord Vortiger to be overtaken, and afterwards through all things raise  
 him to *be* king;—then may we live as to us is liefest of all.' ” The [These]  
 knights proceeded to the king forth-right; ‘they [these knights] all went  
 throughout the hall into the king’s chamber, where he sate by *the* fire. ‘There  
 was none that spake a word except Gille Callæt; thus he spake with

<sup>1</sup> stonden?<sup>2</sup> The second letter of flæn is by second hand, *sup. ras.*<sup>3</sup> þet?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

nulle ich þe liȝen naȝing.  
 we habbeoð ibeon an hirede ⁊  
 hæhliche iwurðed.  
 þurh þinne stiward ⁊  
 þe haueð iwiten al þif ærd.  
 he uf haueð wel iued ⁊  
 he uf haueð wel ifcrud.  
 & to soðe ich fugge þe mai ⁊  
 mid him we æten nu to dæi. [178.c.1.]  
 ah fare uf of-þuncheð ⁊ 10  
 nefden we noht to drinken.  
 & nu we beoð in þine bure ⁊  
 ȝef uf drinken of þine beore.  
 þa ȝæf þe kīg anfware ⁊  
 þ̅ scal beon eowre lafte kare.  
 for ȝe sculleð habben to drinken ⁊  
 þa while þe eow god þunche.  
 Me heom brohte drinken ⁊  
 & heo gunnen dremen.  
 þuf sæide Gille Calæt ⁊ 20  
 to þere dure he wes ful wæt.  
 Whær beo ȝe cnihtes ⁊  
 sturied eow forð rihtes.  
 & heo þene king igripen ⁊  
 & his hæfde of fmiten.

And hii þane king igrepe ⁊  
 and þat heued of fmite.

the king *whom* he there thought to betray: "Listen to me now, monarch; I will nothing-lie to thee. We have been in court highly honored through thy steward, who hath governed all this land; he hath us well fed, he hath us well clothed. And in sooth I may say to thee, with him we ate now to-day, but sore *it* us grieveth, we had nought to drink, and now we are in thy chamber, give us drink of thy beer." Then gave the king answer: "That shall be your least care, for ye shall have to drink the while that you think good." Men brought them drink, and they gan to revel; thus said Gille Callæt,—at the door he was full active: "Where be ye, knights? Bestir you forth-right!" And they seized the king, and smote

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& alle his cnihtes ⁊  
 heo floȝen forð rihtes.  
 & nomen ænne fondes-mon ⁊  
 and fenden toward Lūden.  
 þat he fwiðe ſculde ærne ⁊  
 æfter Uortigerne.  
 ꝥ he fwiðe comen ⁊  
 & þene kinedom nome.  
 for þat wuſte he þurh alle þīg ⁊  
 iflæȝen wes Coſtanz þe king. 10  
 þet iharde Uortigerne ⁊  
 þe ſwike wes ful derne.  
 þuſ he hæhte þene fondes-mon ⁊  
 aȝan forð riht anan.  
 & hat heom wel bi-witen ⁊  
 al ure wurð-ſcipen.  
 ꝥ nauer anne wende ⁊  
 ut of þan ænde.  
 ah alle me abiden ⁊  
 a ꝥ ich cune<sup>3</sup> riden. 20  
 & ſwa ich wulle dele ⁊  
 þiſ lond uſ alle imæne.  
 Forð wende þe fondes-mon ⁊ [c.2.]  
 and Vortiger nom anan.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and alle his cnihtes ⁊  
 hii floȝen forþ rihtes.  
 And nemen ane fondesman ⁊  
 and fende to London.  
 þat he fwiþe folde ernne ⁊ [c.2.]  
 after Vortigerne.  
 þat he fwiþe come ⁊  
 and þane kinedom nome.  
 for þat wite þou þorh alle ⁊  
 hii-ſleȝe<sup>1</sup> we habbeþ þane king.  
 þat ihorde Vortigerne ⁊  
 þat ſwike was fol deorne.  
 þuſ a<sup>2</sup> hehte þane fondes-man ⁊  
 aȝen forþrihtes a-non.

and bidde þat non ne wende ⁊  
 vt of þan ende.  
 ac alle me a-bide ⁊  
 20 forte ich come ride.  
 and þan ich wolle deale ⁊  
 þiſ lond vs imene.  
 Forþ wede<sup>4</sup> þe fondesman ⁊  
 and Vortiger fende a-non.

off his head, and all his knights they slew forth-right. And took a messenger, and sent to 'ward' London, that he should ride quickly after Vortiger, that he should come speedily, and take the kingdom, for that 'he should know [know thou] through all 'things,' slain 'was [we have] 'Constance' the king. Vortiger heard that, who was traitor full secret; thus he ordered the messenger back forth-right anon, and 'bade [bid] 'them well to keep all our worship,' that 'never one [none] depart out of the place, but all abide me, until that I arrive, and 'so [then] I will divide this land among us 'all.' " Forth went the messenger, and Vortiger

<sup>1</sup> R. i-ſleȝe.<sup>2</sup> he?<sup>3</sup> cume?<sup>4</sup> R. wende.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& fende ȝeond Lūden :  
 & to huſtinge hehte heom.  
 ræðen & ful ſone :  
 ꝥ heo alle comen.  
 Icumen<sup>1</sup> weoren ꝥa burmen :  
 ꝥe ſwiðe balde weoren.  
 ꝥa ſpæc Vortigerne :  
 ꝥe ſwike wes ful deorne.  
 ſwiðe he gon to wepen :  
 & ſæriliche fiken.  
 ah hit wes an hafde :  
 & noht an his heorte.  
 ꝥa axeden hine ꝥa burhmen :  
 ꝥe ſwiðe balde weoren.  
 Lauerd Vortigerne :  
 whæht if ꝥ ꝥu murneſt.  
 nert ꝥu na wimman :  
 ſwa ſære to wepen.  
 ꝥa anſwarede Vortigerne :  
 ꝥe wes ſwike ful deorne.  
 Ich eow wulle telle :  
 for reoliche ſpelle.  
 of muche ſærneffe :

ouer al ꝥan londe :  
 ꝥat ꝥar a-boute were.  
 and hehte ȝam ſone :  
 ꝥat hii to him come.  
 ꝥo icomen were borhmen :  
 ꝥat were ſwiþe bolde.  
 ꝥo ſpac Vortigerne :  
 ꝥat ſwike was wel deorne.  
 ſwiþe he gan wepe :  
 10 and biterliche fike.  
 ac hit was on his heued :  
 and noht on his heorte.  
 ꝥo axede ꝥe borhmen :  
 ꝥat ſwiþe bolde weren.  
 Louerd Vortigerne :  
 wi his ꝥat ꝥou wepeſt.  
 nert ꝥou no wifman :  
 ſo fore to fike.  
 ꝥo anſwerede Vortigerne :  
 20 ꝥat ſwike was fol deorne.  
 Ich ȝou telle :  
 roupliche ſpelles.  
 of mochele ſorineffe :

'took [sent] anon 'and sent' over 'London [all the lands that there were about], and ordered them 'quickly and full' soon, that they 'all' should come to 'husting [him]. When 'the' burgh-men were come, who were most bold, then spake Vortiger, who was traitor 'full [well] secret;—much he gan to weep, and 'sorrowfully [bitterly] to sigh, but it was in [his] head, and not in his heart. Then asked 'him' the burgh-men, who were most bold: "Lord Vortiger, 'what [why] is that thou 'mournest [weep-est]? Thou art no woman so sore to 'weep [sigh]." Then answered Vortiger, who was traitor full secret: "I 'will' tell you piteous speeches,

<sup>1</sup> ꝥa icumen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þe ifiȝen if to londe.  
 Ich habbe iðif ærd ibeon ⁊  
 eower kingef ſtiwærd.  
 & ifpæken hin<sup>1</sup> wið ⁊  
 & iluued hine ſwa mi lif.  
 Ah nalde he at þan ende ⁊  
 nænne ræd luuien.

þat ifeȝe his to londe.  
 Ich habbe þane king iloued ⁊

more þan mi ſeolue.  
 And<sup>2</sup> nolde he aþan ende ⁊ [165. c. 1.]  
 noht hit onderſtonde.  
 ne non of dedes ⁊  
 don after reade.

he luuede þa Peohteſ<sup>3</sup> ⁊  
 þa vncuðe cnihtes.  
 & uf nalde he god don ⁊  
 ne neower feire vnderfon.  
 ah heom he wes liðe ⁊  
 a to heore liue.  
 Ne mihte ic of þan kinge ⁊  
 habben ſcipinge.  
 ich ſpende mine ahte ⁊  
 þa wile þa heo ilaſte.  
 & ſeoððe ich nam leue ⁊  
 to mine londe liðe. [178. c. 1.]  
 and þenne ich hæfde mine gael ⁊  
 cumen aȝan to hirede.  
 þa ifæbȝen þa Peohtes ⁊

10 he louede þe Peuteſ ⁊  
 þe oncoupe cnihtes.

of much calamity that is come to *the* land. I have 'been in this realm your kings steward, and spoken with him, and' loved 'him as my life [the king more than myself]. But he would not at the end 'any counsel approve, [understand it, nor do any deeds after counsel]; he loved the Peohtes, the foreign knights, 'and he would not do good to us, nor anywhere fair receive, but to them he was gracious, ever in their lives. I might not of the king have remuneration (or wages); I spent my wealth, the while that it lasted, and afterwards I took leave to go to my land, and when I had my tribute, come again to court. When the Peohtes saw that the king had no

<sup>1</sup> him?<sup>2</sup> Ac?<sup>3</sup> R. Peohtes.

MS. Cott. Callg. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat þe king nefde nane cnihtes.

neo nauere nænne cunef mō ⁊

þe heo<sup>1</sup> wolden oht fore don.

heo nomen heore uore ⁊

in to þas kīges bure.

ich fuggen eow þurh alle þing ⁊

iflæȝen heo habbeoð þæne king.

&amp; þencheð þifne kine-dom ⁊

&amp; uf alle for-don.

&amp; wulleð forð rihte ⁊

10

makien king of æne Peohte.

Ah ic wes hif stiward ⁊

wæken<sup>3</sup> ich wulle minne lauerd.

&amp; æueræche oht mon ⁊

hælpē me ꝥ to don.

on ich wulle mid mine gærē ⁊

&amp; forð riht ich wulle uæren.

Wenden ut of Lunden ⁊

cnihtes þritti hundred.

heo riden &amp; heo arnden ⁊

20

forð mid Vortigerne.

þat heo nehlæhten ⁊

þer weoren þa Peohtes.

&amp; he nom enne of his cnihtes ⁊

hii nemē hire vore ⁊

into þe kingef boure.

ich segge ȝou þorh alle þing ⁊

hii habbeþ i-flaȝe vre king.

and þenches<sup>2</sup> þifne kinedom.

and vs alle for-don.

Ac ich was hī stiward ⁊

wreken ich wolle min louerd.

and euerech oht mon ⁊

helpe þat to don.

Wenden vt of Londene ⁊

cnihtes þritti hundred.

hii riden and hii ernde ⁊

forþ mid Vortigerne.

þat hii nehlepte ⁊

þar wonede þes Peutes.

knights, nor ever any kind of man that would aught for them do,' they took their course into the kings chamber. I say you through all things, they have slain 'the [our] king, and think to destroy this kingdom and us all, 'and will forth-right make *them* king of a Peoht.' But I was his steward; avenge I will my lord; and every brave man help 'me' to do that! 'On I will with my gear, and forth-right I will go.'" Thirty hundred knights marched out of London; they rode and they ran, forth with Vortiger, until they approached where 'the [these] Peohtes 'were [dwelt]. 'And he

<sup>1</sup> heom?<sup>2</sup> þencheþ?<sup>3</sup> wreken?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& fende to þan Peohten.  
 & feide heō þat he com ⁊  
 ȝif heo hine wolden vnder-uon<sup>1</sup>.  
 þa Peohtes weorē bliðe ⁊  
 for heore<sup>2</sup> fæi-fiðe.  
 & heo nomen heore gode gærē ⁊  
 nef þer neowðer ſceld ne ſpære.

Vortiger forð rihtef ⁊  
 wepnede alle hiſ cnihtes.  
 & comē þa Peohtes ⁊      10  
 & bruhten hæued þas kingef.  
 þa Vortiger þis hæued iſæh ⁊ [c.2.]  
 þa hæelde he to grūde ful neh.  
 ſwulc he hæfuede mod-kare ⁊  
 meſt of alre monne.  
 mid hiſ lechen he gon liȝe ⁊  
 hiſ heorte wes ful bliðe.  
 þa feide Vortigerne ⁊  
 þe ſwike weſ ful deorne.  
 Auerælc oht mon ⁊      20  
 mid fweorde leggeð heom on.

Vortiger and his cnihtes ⁊  
 wepnede ȝam forþ rihtef.  
 þare come þe Peutes ⁊  
 and brohte heued þeos kinges.  
 þo Vortiger þis heued i-ſeh ⁊  
 þo helde he to grunde neh.  
 alfe he hadde mod-care ⁊  
 meſt of alle māne.  
 mid hiſ<sup>3</sup> he gan liþe ⁊  
 hiſ heorte was wel bliþe.  
 þo ſaide Vortigerne ⁊  
 þat ſwike was deorne.  
 Euer ech oht man ⁊  
 mid fweorde legge heom an.

took one of his knights, and sent to the Peohtes, and said to them that he came, if they would him receive. The Peohtes were blithe for their murder (that they had committed), and they took their good gear,—there was neither shield nor spear.' Vortiger 'weaponed all his knights [and his knights weaponed them] forth-right, 'and' the Peohtes [there] came, and brought *the* head of the king. When Vortiger saw this head, then fell he 'full' nigh to *the* ground, as *if* he had grief most of all men; with his countenance he gan lie, *but* his heart was 'full' [well] blithe. Then said Vortiger, who was traitor 'full' secret: "Every brave

<sup>1</sup> vnde-uon *pr. m.*

<sup>2</sup> *This seems a harsh construction. Perhaps we should read þes kinges fæi-fiðe, —the kings death.*

<sup>3</sup> *A word is here wanting.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& wrækeð wel an ærde :  
 þe feorȝe of ure lauereð.  
 Nænne heo ne nomen :  
 ah alle heo heom floȝen.  
 & to þan inne wende :  
 in to Winchæstre.  
 & floȝen heore sweines :  
 & heore burh-þeief.  
 heore cokes & heore cnaues :  
 alle heo duden of lif-dæȝen. 10  
 þus ferden þa tiðinde :  
 of Coſtanz þan kinge.  
 & þa weorlde-wis mon :  
 þa oðere childre bi-wuſten.  
 for heo hafden care of Vortiger :  
 heo nomen Ambroſie & Vðer.  
 & landen<sup>1</sup> heom ouer fæ :  
 in to þere laſſe Brutene.  
 & fæire heom bi-tahten :  
 Bidiz<sup>2</sup> þan kinge. 20  
 & he heom feire vnder-fēȝ :  
 he wes heore cun & heore freond. for he was hire cun.  
 & mid muchelere liſte :

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and wrekeþ wel on erþe :  
 þe forewe of vre louereð.  
 Nanne hii ne nemen :  
 ac alle hii floȝe.  
 and to þan hinne wende :  
 in to Wincheſtre. [c. 2.]  
 and floȝe þare of hire folk :  
 al þat hii funde.

þus ferde þe tȝdinge :  
 of Conſtance þan kinge.  
 þe worle-wifemen :  
 þe oþer children wiſte.  
 for drede of Vortiger :  
 hii neme Aurelie and Vther.  
 and ladde heom ouer ſée :  
 in to þe laſſe Britayne.  
 and ȝam bi-tahte :  
 Biduz þan kinge.  
 and he ȝam faire vnder-feng :

man lay on them with sword, and avenge well in *the* land the sorrow of our lord!" None they captured, but all they 'them' slew; and proceeded to the inn, into Winchester, and slew 'their swains, and their chamber-servants, their cooks, and their boys, all they deprived of life-day [there of their folk all that they found]. Thus fared the tidings of Constance the king. 'And' the worldly-wise men took charge of the other children; for 'they had care [dread] of Vortiger they took 'Ambrosie [Aurelie] and Uther, and led them over sea, into the Less Britain, and delivered them 'fairly' to Biduz the king. And he them fairly received, [for] he was their kin 'and their friend, and with much joy the children he brought up'; and

<sup>1</sup> ladden?<sup>2</sup> Budiz *man. sec.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

*Vortiger.*

þa childere he biwufte.  
 and swa wel fele ȝere :  
 mid him heo weoren þere.  
 Vortiger a piſſen londe :  
 wes ihoue to kinge.  
 alle þa Brut<sup>1</sup> ſtronge :  
 ſtoden an his honde.  
 fif & twenti ȝeren : [179.c.1.]  
 he wes king heſ.

He wes wod he wes wild : 10  
 he wes ræh he wes bald.

of alle þinge he hæfde his iwille : Of alle þinges he hadde his wille :  
 bute þa Peohtef neoren næuere bote þat Peutef nere neuere ſtille.  
 ah eouere heo wenden : [ſtille.  
 ȝeond þene norh enden.

& hunden<sup>2</sup> þif kinelond :  
 mid hærmæn vnmete.  
 & wreken heore cun inoh :  
 þat Vortiger here of-floh.  
 Vnder þan comen tiðende : 20  
 in to piſſen londe.  
 þat Aurelien wes cniht :  
 þe Ambroſiæn wes ihæten.  
 & al swa wes Vther :

and ſo fale ȝere :  
 þe childerne wonede þere.  
 Vortiger in piſſe londe :  
 waſ ihoue to kinge.  
 and þe borewes ſtronge :  
 ſtode on his honde.  
 fife and twenti ȝere :  
 he was king here.

ac euere hii hiende his kinelond :  
 mid harme onimete.  
 and wreken hire cun inoh :  
 þat Vortiger here of-floh.  
 Vnder þan com tidinge :  
 in to piſſe londe.  
 þat Aurelie was cniht :  
 on mid þan beſte.  
 and al ſo was Vther :

ſo 'well' many years 'with him they were [the children dwelt] there. Vortiger in this land was raiſed to *be* king; 'all [and] the ſtrong burghs ſtood in his hand; five and twenty years he was king here. 'He was mad, he was wild, he was cruel, he was bold'; of all things he had his will, except 'the [that] Peohtes were never ſtill, but ever they 'advanced over the north end, and' afflicted 'this [his] kingdom with prodigious harm, and avenged their kin enow, whom Vortiger ſlew here. In the mean *time* came tidings into this land, that Aurelie was knight, 'who was named Ambroſie [one with the beſt], and alſo was Uther, 'good knight and moſt [knight moſt wiſe and]

<sup>1</sup> burghes?<sup>2</sup> *Sic pr. m.*; henden *sec. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

god cniht &amp; swiðe iwar.

cniht fwiþe wis and war.

and wolden comen to þiffen londe: and wolde come to þiffe londe:

&amp; leden here swiðe stronge.

mid ferde stronge.

þis wes feole fiðe iqueðe:

ofte iquidded.

ofte comen tiðinde:

Ofte com þeos tidinge:

to Vortiger þā kinge.

to Vortiger þan kinge.

þer fore him ofte fcomede:

þar fore he ofte fameda:

&amp; his heorte gromede.

and his heorte gramede.

for men hit sæiden wel iwhær: 10 for men hit saide wel i-war: [f. 65<sup>v</sup>. c. 1.]Nu cumed<sup>1</sup> Ambrosie & Vther.

Nou comeþ Aurelie and Vther.

and wulleð wrækē Coſtance:

and wollep wreke. Conſtance. an

þene king of þif lōd.

þat was king in þiffe lond. [hond:

nuf<sup>2</sup> þer coſt nan oðer:

nif þar coſt non oþer:

wærken<sup>3</sup> heo wulleþ heore broðer. wreke hii wollep hire broþer.

and flæn Vortigerne:

&amp; to duſte hine for-berne.

þuſ heo wulleð al þif lond:

ſetten an heore aþere hond.

Swa quiddeden ælche dæi: 20 þuſ cwiddede eche dæi:

al þat verden æfter wæi.

al þat ȝeode bi þan wai.

Uortiger hine biðohte: [c. 2.] Vortiger hine bi-þohte:

whæt he don mihte.

wat he don mihte.

wary, and would come to this land, 'and lead [with] an army 'most' strong. 'This was many times a saying oft repeated'; oft came [these] tidings to Vortiger the king; therefore 'it' oft shamed him, [he oft was ashamed], and his heart angered, for men said it everywhere:—"Now will come 'Ambrosie [Aurelie] and Uther, and will avenge [soon] Constance, 'the [who was] king 'of [in] this land; there is no other course, avenge they will their brother, 'and slay Vortiger, and burn him to dust; thus they will set all this land in their own hand!'" 'So [Thus] spake each day all that passed by [the] way. Vortiger bethought him what he might do, and thought to send messengers

<sup>1</sup> cumeð?<sup>2</sup> nif?<sup>3</sup> wræken?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& þohte fende fende<sup>1</sup> fonde ⁊  
 into oðere londe.  
 æft<sup>9</sup> vncuðe cnihten ⁊  
 þa hine biwiten mihten.  
 and þohte to beð wær ⁊  
 wið Ambrosie & wið<sup>2</sup> Vther.  
 Vnder þan comen tiðende ⁊  
 to Vortiger þan kinge.  
 þ̅ ouer sæ weoren icumen ⁊  
 fwiðe felcuðe gumen. 10  
 inne þere Temese ⁊  
 to londe heo weorē icūmen.  
 þreo scipen gode ⁊  
 comen mid þan flode.  
 þreo hundred cnihten ⁊  
 alfe hit weoren kingef.  
 wið uten þan scipen-mōnen ⁊  
 þe weoren þer wið innē.  
 þif weoren þa færeſte men ⁊  
 þat auere her comen. 20  
 ah heo weore hæðene ⁊  
 þ̅ wes hærm þa mare.  
 Uortiger heom fende to ⁊  
 and axede hu heo weoren idon.  
 ȝif heo grið fohten ⁊

and þohte fende fōde ⁊  
 in to oþer londe.  
 after vncouþe cnihtes ⁊  
 þat hine bi-witie mihte.  
 Vnder þan com tyðinge ⁊  
 to Vortiger þan kinge.  
 þat ouer ſée weren icome ⁊  
 ſwiþe felliche gomes.  
 þreo ſipes gode ⁊  
 i-come were mid þan flode.  
 þar on þreo hundred cnihtes ⁊  
 alfe hit were kempes.  
 þes weren þe faireſte men ⁊  
 þat euere come here. 20  
 ac hii weren heþene ⁊  
 þat was har<sup>3</sup> þe more.

into other lands, after foreign knights, who might him defend; 'and thought to be wary against Ambrosie and Uther.' In the mean *time* came tidings to Vortiger the king, that over sea were come men exceeding strange; 'in the Thames to land they were come'; three ships good 'came [were come] with the flood, [therein] three hundred knights, 'kings [champions] as it were, 'without (besides) the shipmen who were there within.' These were the fairest men that ever here came, but they were heathens,—that was the more harm! 'Vortiger sent to them, and asked how they were disposed

<sup>1</sup> Sic MS.<sup>2</sup> wið?<sup>3</sup> harm?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

&amp; of his freond-scipe rohtē.

Heo wifliche andfwerden ⁊

swa heo wel cūden.

&amp; seiden ꝥ heo walden ⁊

speken wið þan kinge.

&amp; leofliche him heren ⁊

&amp; hælden hine for hærre.

and swa heo gunnen wenden ⁊

forð to þan kinge.

þa wes Uortigerne þa kig ⁊ 10

in Cantuarie-buri.

þer he mid his hirede ⁊

hæbliche spilede.

þer þas cnihtes comē ⁊

bi-forē þan folc-kinge.

Sone swa heo hine imetten ⁊ [L. 79<sup>b</sup>. þeos comen to þan kinge ⁊fæire heo hine igrættan. <sup>c.1.]</sup> and faire hine grette.

&amp; seiden þat heo him wolden ⁊ and seide þat hii wolde ⁊

hæren i þisse londe. him sarui in his lōde.

ȝif he heom wolde ⁊ 20 ȝis<sup>1</sup> vs þou wolle ⁊

mid rihten at-halden. mid rihte at-holde.

þa andfwerede Vortig<sup>9</sup> ⁊ þo anfwerede Vortiger ⁊

of ælchen vuele he wes war. þat of eche vuele he was war.

An alle mine iliue ⁊ In al mine lifue ⁊

..... Vorti-  
gerne .....  
venerunt

(their business); if they sought peace, and recked of his friendship? They answered wisely, as well they knew, and said that they would speak with the king, and lovingly him serve, and hold him for lord; and so they gan wend forth to the king. Then was Vortiger the king in Canterbury, where he with his court nobly diverted *themselves*; there these knights came before the sovereign.' 'As soon as they met him, they [These came to the king, and] greeted him fair, and said that they would serve him in 'this [his] land, if 'he would them [thou wouldest us] with right retain. Then answered Vortiger,—[who] of each evil he was ware,—"In all

<sup>1</sup> ȝif?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiii.

[Saxon]es  
in Bri[tan-  
ni]am, scili-  
cet Hen[ges  
et Hors],  
cum tribus  
na[vis]us],  
anno gratie  
qua[drage-  
si]mesimo  
xi<sup>o</sup>. xx<sup>o</sup>.

þe ich iluued habbe.

bi dæie no bi nihtes : [cnihtes.

ne sæh ich nauere ær swulche

for eouwer cumē ich æm bliðe :

&amp; mid me ȝe scullē bilæfuen.

&amp; eouwer wille ich wulle driȝen :

bi mine quicke liuen.

Ah of eou ich wulle iwiten :

þurh soðen eouwer wurðscipen.

whahæt cnihtē ȝe feon :

&amp; whænnenen ȝe icumen beon.

&amp; whar ȝe wullen beon treowe :

alde &amp; æc neowe.

þa anwerede þe oðer :

þat wes þe aldeste broðer.

Luft me nu lauerd king :

&amp; ich þe wullen cuðen.

what cnihtes we beoð :

&amp; whanene we icumen feoð.

Ich hatte Hēges :

Horf is mi broðer.

we beoð of Alemaïne :

aðeleft alre londe.

of þat ilken ænde :

þe Angles if ihaten.

þat ich ileued habbe :

bi dai no bi nihte :

ne feh ich foche cnihtes.

for ȝou ich ham blipe :

and mid me ȝe folle bi-lefue.

Ac forft ich wolle wite :

for ȝoure mochele worfipe.

wat cnihtes beo ȝeo :

and wanene ȝeo i-comen beo.

þo anwerede þe oþer :

þat was þe elder broþer.

20 Ich hatte Hengeft :

Hors hatte min broþer.

we beoþ of Alemaïne :

of one riche londe.

of þan ilke hende :

þat Englis hif ihote.

my life that I have lived, by day nor by night saw I 'never ere' such knights; for 'your arrival [you] I am blithe, and with me ye shall remain, 'and your will I will perform, by my quick life!' But [first] I would of you learn, 'through [for] your 'sooth [mickle] worship, what knights ye be, and whence ye are come, 'and whether ye will be true, old and eke new?' " Then answered the one who was the eldest brother: "Listen to me now, lord king, and I will make known to you what knights we are, and whence we are come.' I hight Hengest; Hors 'is [hight] my brother; we are of Alemaïne, 'a land noblest of all [of a rich land], of the same end that

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Beoð in ure londe ⁊  
felcuðe tiðende.  
vmbe fiftene ȝer ⁊  
þat folc hī<sup>1</sup> iforned.  
al ure iledene folc ⁊  
& heore loten werpeð.  
vppen þan þe hit faleð<sup>3</sup> ⁊  
he scal uaren of londe.  
bilæuen scullen þa fæue ⁊ [c. 2.]  
þa sexte scal forð liðe. 10  
ut of þan leode ⁊  
to ucuðe<sup>5</sup> londe.  
ne beo he na fwa leof mon ⁊  
uorð he scal liðen.  
For þer if folc fwiðe muchel ⁊  
mære þene heo walden.  
þa wif fareð mid childe ⁊  
fwa þe deor wilde.  
æuerlache ȝere ⁊  
heo bereð child þere. 20  
þ̅ beoð an uf feole ⁊  
þat we færen scolden.  
ne mihte we bilæue ⁊

Beoþ in vre londe ⁊  
wonder þenges gonde.  
bi eche fiftene ȝer ⁊  
þat folk his i-forned.  
and werpeþ þare hire lotes ⁊  
fo<sup>2</sup> to londes feche ⁊  
vt<sup>4</sup> wan þat lot falleþ ⁊  
he mot neod wende.

ne beo he noht fo riche ⁊  
he mot lond feche.

Forþe wifues goþ þar emid childe ⁊  
alfe þe deor wilde.  
bi euereche ȝere ⁊  
hii goþ mid childe þere. 20  
þat lot on vs ful ⁊  
þat we faren folde.  
ne moſte we bi-lefue ⁊

Angles is named. In our land are 'strange tidings; after [many good things; by each] fifteen years the folk is assembled, 'all our nation-folk,' and cast [there] their lots [for to seek *other* lands]; upon whom 'that it [the lot] falleth, he 'shall depart from *the* land [must needs depart]. 'The five shall remain, the sixth shall forth proceed out of the country to a foreign land'; be he 'man' ever so 'loved [rich], he 'shall forth depart [must seek *other* land]. For 'there is folk very much, more than they would' (desire); the women go [there] with child as the wild deer, [by] every year they 'bear [go with] child there! 'That is fallen [The lot fell] on us, that we

<sup>1</sup> is?<sup>2</sup> for?<sup>3</sup> faleð?<sup>4</sup> vp?<sup>5</sup> uncuðe?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

for liue ne for dæðe.

for life ne for deape.

ne for nauer nane þinge ⁊

for þan folc-kinge.

þus we uerden þere ⁊

þus hit fareþ þere ⁊

&amp; for þi beoð nu here.

þar fore we beoþ nou here.

to sechen vnder luste ⁊

lond &amp; godne lauerd.

Nu þu hæfuest iherd lauerd kig<sup>1</sup> ⁊ Nou þou hauest ihord louerd king ⁊soð of us þurh alle þig<sup>2</sup>.

soþ of vs and no lefing.

þa āfwærede Vortiger ⁊

10 þo faide Vortiger ⁊

of alc an vfele he wes war.

þat was wis and swiþe war.

Ich ileue þe cniht ⁊

þ þu me fugge soð riht.

&amp; wulche beoð æoure i-leuen ⁊

And woche beoþ þoure bi-léue ⁊

þ 3e on ileueð.

þat 3eo an bi-léfeþ.

&amp; eoure leofue godd ⁊

þe 3e to luted<sup>3</sup>.

þa andswærede Hængest ⁊

cnihtene alre fæireft.

nis in al þif kine-lond ⁊

20

cniht fwa muchel ne<sup>4</sup> fwa strong.

We habbeð godes gode ⁊

We habbeþ godes gode ⁊

should depart; we might not remain, for life nor for death, 'nor for ever anything, for *fear* of the sovereign. Thus 'we fared [it fareth] there, 'and' therefore are [we] now here, 'to seek under heaven land and good lord.' Now thou hast heard, lord king, sooth of us 'through all things, [and no leasing].'' Then 'answered [said] Vortiger,—'of each evil he was ware [who was wise and most wary],—'' 'I believe thee, knight, that thou sayest to me right sooth'. And what are your creeds, that ye in believe, 'and your dear god, whom ye worship?' Then answered Hengest, fairest of all knights,—in all this kingdom is not a knight so tall nor so strong:—

<sup>1</sup> king?<sup>2</sup> þing?<sup>3</sup> luted?<sup>4</sup> The words muchel ne are *sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe we luuieð an ure mode.  
 þa we habbeð hope to :  
 & heoreð heom mid mid<sup>1</sup> mihte.  
 þe an hæhte Phebus :  
 þe oðer Saturn<sup>2</sup>.  
 þe þridde hæhte Wodē :  
 þ̅ if an weoli godd.  
 þe feorðe hæh<sup>3</sup> Jupit<sup>2</sup> : [f.80. c.1.]  
 of alle þ̅ige he if whar.  
 þe fifte hæhte Mercuri<sup>2</sup> : 10  
 þat uf<sup>2</sup> þe hæhste ouer uf.  
 þæ sæxte hæhte Appollin :  
 þ̅ if a godd wel idon.  
 þe feoðueðe hatte Teruagant :  
 an hæh godd in ure lon<sup>4</sup>.  
 ȝet we habbeð anne læuedi :  
 þe hæh is & mæhti.  
 heh heo is & hali :  
 hired-men heo luuieð for þi.  
 heo if ihate Fræa :  
 wel heo heom dihteð.  
 Ah for alle ure goden deore :  
 þa we scullen hæren.

þat we louieð in mode.  
 þe on hatte Phebus :  
 þe oþer Saturnus.  
 þe þride hatte Woden :  
 þat was a mihti þ̅ing.  
 þe feorþe hatte Jubiter :  
 of alle þ̅inges he his war. [f.66. c.1.]  
 þe fifþe hatte Merchuri<sup>2</sup> :  
 þat his þe heheft ouer vs.  
 þe fixte hatte Appolin :  
 þat his a god of gret win.  
 þe foueþe hatte Teruagant :  
 an heh god in vre lond.  
 ȝet we habbeþ an leafdi :  
 þat heh his and mihti.  
 ȝeo hif i-hote Frea :  
 heredmen hire louieþ.  
 To alle þeos godes :  
 we worſipe wercheþ.

"We have good gods, whom we love in 'our' mind, 'whom we have hope in, and serve them with might.' The one hight Phebus; the second Saturnus; the third hight Woden, who 'is [was] a mighty 'god [thing]; the fourth hight Jupiter, of all things he is aware; the fifth hight Mercurius, who is the highest over us; the sixth hight Appolin, who is a god 'brave [of great power]; the seventh hight Tervagant, a high god in our land. Yet (in addition) we have a lady, who is high and mighty, 'high she is and holy, therefore courtiers love her,'—she is named Frea,—'well she them treateth [courtiers her love]. 'But among all our dear gods whom we shall serve, [To all these gods we work worship, and for their love these

<sup>1</sup> *Redundant.*<sup>2</sup> hæhte?<sup>3</sup> R. if.<sup>4</sup> lond?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Woden hehde þa hæhste laȝe ⁊  
 an ure ælderne dæȝen.  
 he heom wes leof ⁊  
 æfne al fwa heore lif.  
 he wes heore walden<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 and heom<sup>2</sup> wurðſcipe duden.  
 þene feorðe dæi i þere wike ⁊  
 heo ȝifuen him to wurðſcipe.  
 þa þunre heo ȝiuen þūref dæi ⁊  
 for þi þat heo heom helpen mæi.  
 Freon heore læfdi ⁊ 11  
 heo ȝiuen hire fridæi.

*Saturnus.*

Saturnus heo ȝiuen ſætterdæi ⁊  
 þene Sunne heo ȝiuen ſonedæi.  
 Monenen heo ȝifuenen monedæi ⁊  
 Tidea heo ȝeuen tiſdæi.  
 þuſ ſeide Hægeſt<sup>3</sup> ⁊  
 cnihten alre hendeft.  
 þa anſwerede Vortig<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 of ælchen vfel he wæs wær. 20  
 Cnihtes ȝe beoð me leofue ⁊  
 ah þaſ tiðende me beoð laðe.

and for hire loue ⁊  
 þeos dæȝes we heom ȝefue.  
 Mone we ȝefue monedæi ⁊  
 Tydea we ȝefue tiſdei.  
 Woden we ȝefue wendefdei ⁊  
 þane þonre we ȝefue þorifdai.  
 Frea þane fridaȝ ⁊  
 Saturnus þan ſaterefdai.

þuſ ſaide Hengeſt ⁊  
 cniht alre hendeft.  
 þo anſwerede Vortiger ⁊  
 of alle harme he was war.  
 Cnihtes ȝeo beoþ me leofue ⁊  
 ac ȝonre bilefues me beoþ lope.

days we give them.] 'Woden had the highest law in our elders days; he was dear to them even as their life, he was their ruler, and did to them worship; the fourth day in the week they gave him for his honor. To the Thunder (Jupiter) they gave Thursday, because that it may help them; to Frea, their lady, they gave her Friday; to Saturnus they gave Saturday; to the Sun they gave Sunday; to the Moon they gave Monday; to Tidea they gave Tuesday [To the Moon we give Monday; to Tydea we give Tuesday; to Woden we give Wednesday; to the Thunder we give Thursday; to Frea the Friday; to Saturnus the Saturday].' Thus said Hengeſt, fairest of all knights. Then answered Vortiger,—of each evil [all harm] he was ware,—'Knights, ye are dear to me, but these tidings

<sup>1</sup> waldend?<sup>2</sup> heo him?<sup>3</sup> Hængeſt?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

eouwer ileuen<sup>1</sup> beoð vnwraſte :ȝe ne ileoueð noht an criſtre<sup>2</sup>.

ah ȝe ileoueð a þene wurſe : [c. 2.]

þe godd ſeolf awariede.

eoure godes ne beoð nohtes :

in helle heo niðer liggeð. [hælde:]

Ah neoðeles ich wulle eou at- Ac ich wolle ou at-holde :

an mine anwalde.

in min anwolde.

for norð beoð þa Peohtes :

for norþ beoþ þe Peutes :

ſwiðe ohte cnihtes.

10 wiþe ohte cnihtes.

þe ofte ledeð in mine londe :

ferde ſwiðe ſtronge.

& ofte dod<sup>3</sup> me muchele ſcome : þat ofte doþ me ſame :

&amp; þerfore ich habbe grome.

and þar vore ich habbe grame.

&amp; ȝif ȝe me wulleð wræken :

And ȝef ȝe wollep me wreke :

&amp; heore hæfden me biȝeten.

of [hire] wiþere dedes.

ich eou wullen ȝeuen lond :

ich ȝou wolle ȝeue :

muchel ſeoluer &amp; gold.

ȝeftes ſwiþe deore.

þa andſwerede Hængeſt :

þo ſaide Hengeſt :

cnihtene alre feireſt.

20

ȝif hit wulle Saturnuf :

al hit ſcal iworðe þuſ.

al hit ſal iworþe þuſ.

&amp; Woden ure lauerd :

[your creeds] are loathsome to me; 'your creeds are wicked, ye believe not on Christ, but ye believe on the Worse, whom God *himself* cursed; your gods are of nought, in hell they lie beneath.' But 'nevertheless' I will retain you in my power, for northward are the Peohtes, knights most brave, who oft 'into my land lead host most strong, and oft' do me 'much' shame, and therefore I have grief. And if ye will me avenge, 'and procure me their heads [of their evil deeds], I will give you 'land, much silver and gold [gifts exceeding precious].'" Then 'answered [said] Hengest, 'fairest of all knights: "If Saturnus *so* will it, and Woden, our

<sup>1</sup> ilauerd *pr. m.*<sup>2</sup> criſte?<sup>3</sup> doð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þe we on bi-liueð.  
 Hengeft nō læue ⁊  
 & to ſcipen gon liðe.  
 þer wes moni cniht ſtrong ⁊ [lōd. and al hire godef ⁊  
 heo droȝen heore ſcipē uppe<sup>1</sup> þe hii beore to londe. [c.2.]  
 Forð wenden dringches ⁊ Forþ hii wende alle ⁊  
 to Vortigerne þan kenge. to Vortiger his halle.  
 biuoren wende Hengeft ⁊  
 & Horf him alre hændeſt.  
 ſeoððen þa Alemainiſce men ⁊<sup>10</sup>  
 þa aðele weorē an deden.  
 & ſeoððen heo ſenden him to ⁊  
 heore Sæxiſce cnihtes wel idon.  
 Hengeſtes cunneſmen ⁊  
 of hiſ aldene cudðe.  
 Heo comen in to halle ⁊  
 hændeliche alle.  
 bett<sup>2</sup> weoren iſcrudde ⁊ bed<sup>3</sup> weren i-ſcrud ⁊  
 & bed<sup>3</sup> weoren iuædde. and bet weren ived.  
 Hængeft ſwaine<sup>4</sup> ⁊ [£80<sup>b</sup>.c.1.] Hengeſtes ſweines ⁊  
 þene Vortigernes þeines. 21 þaue Vortiger his cnihtes.  
 þa wes Vortigernes hired ⁊  
 for behne ihalden.

lord, on whom we believe, it shall all thus be!" Hengest took leave, and  
 gan wend to *his* ships; 'there was many a strong knight; they drew their  
 ships upon the [and all their goods they bore to] land. Forth went *the*  
 warriors [they all] to Vortiger 'the king [his hall]; 'Hengest went before,  
 and Hors, next of all to him; then the Alemainish men, who were  
 noble in deeds; and afterwards they sent to him (Vortiger) their brave  
 Saxish knights, Hengests kinsmen, of his old race. They came into hall,  
 fairly all'; better were clothed and better were fed Hengests swains, than  
 'Vortigers thanes [Vortiger his knights]! Then was Vortigers court

<sup>1</sup> *Sup. ras.*<sup>2</sup> bet?<sup>3</sup> *bette pr. m., but e erased.*<sup>4</sup> *ſwaince?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Bruttes weoren særi :  
 for fwulchere ifihðe.  
 Nes hit nawiht longe :  
 þat ne comen to þan kinge.  
 cnihtes funen uiqe :  
 þa ifaren hafden biliue.  
 heo sæiden to þan kinge :  
 neowe tiðeden.

Nu forð rihtes :  
 icumē beoð þa Peohtes.  
 þurh þi lond heo ærneð :  
 & hærieð & berneð.  
 & al þene norð ænde :  
 iuæld to þā grūde.  
 her of þu most ræden :  
 oðer alle we beoð dæden.  
 þe king hine bi-þohte :  
 whæt he don mihte.  
 he fende to þan innen :  
 after al hiſ monnen.  
 þer com Hengeſt þer com Horf :  
 þer com mini<sup>1</sup> mon ful oht.  
 þer comē þa Saxiſce men :

Bruttes weren ſori :  
 for þan ilke ſihte.  
 Nas noht longe :  
 þat ne come tydinge.

þat þo forþ rihtes :  
 icomen were þe Peutes.  
 Oueral þin lond hii erneþ :  
 and fleap þin folk and bearneþ.  
 and alle þane norþ ende :  
 hii falleþ to þan grūde.  
 her of þou moſt reade :  
 oþer alle we beoþ deade.  
 þe king fende his ſonde :  
 to þeos cnihtes hinne.  
 þat hii ſwiþe fone :  
 20 to him feolue come.  
 þar com Hengeſt and his broþer :  
 and maniaſ oþer.

held in contempt'; *the* Britons were sorry for 'such a [that] sight. It was 'no whit [not] long before 'five knights sons who had travelled quickly' came 'to the king; they said to the king new' tidings: "Now [that then] forth-right the Peohtes 'are [were] come; 'through ["Over all] thy land they run, and 'harry [slay thy folk], and burn, and all the north end [they] fell to the ground; hereof thou must advise *thee*, or we all shall be dead." The king 'bethought him what he might do, he' sent [his messengers] to 'the [these knights] inn, 'after all his men [that they very soon should come to himself]. There came Hengest, 'there came Hors, there came many a man full brave; [and his brother, and many an-

<sup>1</sup> mani?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. 211.

Hengeftes cunnes-men.

&amp; þa Alemainiſce cnihtes ⁊

þe beoð gode to fihte.

þif iſæh þe king Vortiger ⁊

bliðe wes he þa þa<sup>1</sup> þer.

þa Peohtes duden heore iwune ⁊ þe Peutes dude hire wone ⁊

a þas hælf þere Humbre heo weo- a þif half Vmbre hii were icome.  
ren icume.

&amp; þe king Vortiger ⁊

of heore cume wes ful war.

to-gadere heo comen ⁊

&amp; feole þer of-flozen.

þer wes feht swiðe<sup>2</sup> ſtrong ⁊

comp swiðe ſturne.

þe Peohtes weoren ofte iwuned ⁊ þe Peutes weren ofte iwoned ⁊

Vortigerne to oð-cumen. [c.2.] Vortiger to ouercome.

& þa heo þohten afwa<sup>3</sup> ⁊

ah hit ilomp an oðer þa.

for hit wes heom al hele ⁊

þat Hengeft wes þere.

&amp; þa cnihtes ſtronge ⁊

þe comen of Saxelōde.

þat þe king Vortiger ⁊

blipe was þo þer.

þe Peutes dude hire wone ⁊

a þas hælf þere Humbre heo weo- a þif half Vmbre hii were icome.

And þe king Vortiger ⁊

of hire come was war.

to-gadere hii comen ⁊

and manie þar of-slozen.

þe Peutes weren ofte iwoned ⁊

Vortiger to ouercome.

and þo ipohten<sup>4</sup> al fo ⁊

ac hit bi-ful oþerweies þo.

for hii hadde mochel care ⁊

for Hengeft was þare.

for hii hadde mochel care ⁊

for Hengeft was þare.

20

other, so that] 'there came the Saxish men, Hengests kinsmen, and the Alemainish knights, who are good in fight.' The king Vortiger 'saw this'; blithe was 'he' then there. The Peohtes did their custom (as they were accustomed),—on this side of 'the' Humber they were come. And the king Vortiger of their coming was 'full' aware; together they came (encountered), and many there slew; 'there was fight most strong, combat most stern!' The Peohtes were oft accustomed to overcome Vortiger, and so they thought then *to do*, but it befell then 'in other *wise* [otherways], for 'it was safety to them (the Britons) that [they had much care because] Hengeft was there, 'and the strong knights who came from Saxland, and the brave Alemainish, who came thither with Hors,' [for] very many Peohtes

<sup>1</sup> *Redundant.*<sup>2</sup> *swiðe?*<sup>3</sup> *alfwa?*<sup>4</sup> *hii þohten?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& þa ohte Alemanifce ⁊  
 þe þider comen mid Horfe.  
 swiðe monie Peohtes ⁊  
 heo floȝen i þan fehte.  
 feondliche heo fuhten ⁊  
 feollen þa fæie.

for fwiþe manie Peutes ⁊  
 hii floȝen in þan fihte.

þa þe non wes icumen ⁊      þo þat non was icome ⁊  
 þa weoren Peohtes ouer-cumen.      þo were Peutes ouer-come.  
 & fwiðe heo awæi floȝen ⁊      and fwiþe hii aweȝ floȝe ⁊ [f. 66<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 an ælche helue heo forð fluȝen. 10 on euereche fide.

& alle dai heo fluȝen ⁊  
 monie & vnnifoȝe.

þe king Vortigerne ⁊      And Vortiger þe king ⁊  
 wende to herberwe.      wende aȝen to his hin.

& æuere him weorē on uaft ⁊  
 Horf & Hængeft.

Hængeft wes þan kinge leof<sup>1</sup> ⁊      and to Hengeft an his cnihtes ⁊  
 & him Lindefaȝe ȝef.      he ȝef riche ȝeftes.

and he ȝæf Horfe ⁊  
 madmes inoȝe. 20

& alle heore cnihtes ⁊  
 he fwiðe wel dihte.

& hit gode ftūde ⁊  
 stod a þan ilke.

they slew in the fight; 'fiercely they fought, the fated fell!' When the noon was come, then were *the* Peohtes overcome, and quickly away they fled, on 'each [every] side 'they forth fled, and all day they fled, many and without number.' [And] the king Vortiger went [back] to 'lodging [his inn], 'and ever were nigh to him Hors and Hengest. Hengest was dear to the king', and to 'him [Hengest and his knights] he gave' Lindesey [rich gifts], 'and he gave Hors treasures enow, and all their knights he treated exceeding well, and *thus* a good time it stood in the same *wise*.' *The* Peohtes durst never come into 'the

<sup>1</sup> *This word and half of the next line are on an erasure. We should probably read & him Lindefaȝe he ȝef.*



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Ne durſte nauere Peohtefteſ<sup>1</sup> :  
 cumen i þan londel.  
 no ræueres no utlaȝen :  
 ꝥ heo neoren ſone of-flæȝen.  
 & Hængeſt ſwiðe fæire :  
 herede þane king.  
 þa ilōp hit in ane time :  
 ꝥ þe king wes ſwiðe bliðe.  
 an-ane hæȝe dæie :  
 imong hiſ duȝeðe monnen. 10  
 Hengeſt hine bi-þohte :  
 what he don mihte.  
 for he wolde wið þan kige :  
 holdē runige. [c. 1. l.]  
 þan kinge he eode to-foren :  
 & fæire hine gon<sup>4</sup> greten.  
 þe king ſone up ſtod :  
 & ſætte hine bi him ſeoluen.  
 heo drunken heo dremden :  
 bliſſe wes among heom. 20  
 þa queð Hengeſt to þan kinge :  
 Lauerd hærcne tiðende.  
 & ich þe wulle ræcchen :  
 deorne runen.

Ne dorſte neuere Pentes :  
 come in þiſſe londe.  
 þat hii nere ſone of-ſlaȝe :  
 and idon of lifdaȝe.  
 and Hengeſt ſwiþe hendeliche :  
 cwemde þan kinge.  
 þo hit bi-ful in on time :  
 þat þe king<sup>2</sup> was ſwiþe bliþe.

Hengeſt wolde wiþ þan kinge :  
 holde rounig<sup>3</sup>.  
 þane kinge he com bi-vore :  
 and faire hine grette.  
 þo faide Hengeſt to þan kinge :  
 Louerd hercne tyðinge.  
 and ich þe wolle telle :  
 of deorne rounigea.

[this] land, 'no robbers nor outlaws,' that they were not soon slain [and deprived of life-day]; and Hengest exceeding fairly 'served [pleased] the king. Then befell it on a time, that the king was very blithe, 'on a high-day (festival), among his people.' Hengest 'bethought him what he might do, for he' would hold secret discourse with the king; he 'went [came] before the king, and 'gan greet [greeted him] fair. 'The king up stood, and set him by himself; they drank, they revelled,—bliss was among them.' Then 'quoth [said] Hengest to the king: "Lord, hearken tidings, and I will tell thee [of]

<sup>1</sup> Peohtes?<sup>2</sup> rouning?<sup>3</sup> Originally written ren king, but ren expuncted.<sup>4</sup> At first written gonde, but de expuncted.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ȝif þu mine lare :  
 wel wult lusten.  
 & noht halden to wraððe :  
 þat ich wel leare.  
 þe king answarede :  
 swa Hengef<sup>1</sup> hit wolde.  
 þa sæide Hængeft :  
 cnihten alre fæireft.  
 Lauerd ich habbe moni a dæi :  
 þine monscipe ihæȝed. 10  
 & þin holde mon ibeð :  
 i richen þine hirede.  
 & in ælche fæhte :  
 hæhft of þine cnihtē.  
 & ich habbe ofte ihærd :  
 hohfulle ronenen<sup>2</sup>.  
 imong þine hired-monnen :  
 heo hatieð þe fwiðe.  
 in to þan bare dæðe :  
 ȝif heo hit dursten cuðe. 20  
 Ofte heo stilledliche<sup>3</sup> spēkeð :  
 & spilieð mid runen.  
 of twam ȝūge monnen :  
 þat feor wunieð hennen.

ȝef þou mine lore :  
 wel wolt i-hure.  
 and noht holde to wrappe :  
 ȝef ich þe wel leore.  
 And þe king answerede :  
 alfe Hengeft hit wolde.  
  
 Louerd ofte ich habbe ihord :  
  
 a-mong þine cnihtes.  
 þat hii þe hatieþ swiþe :  
 into þare bare deathe.  
  
 Ofte hii stille spēkeþ :  
  
 of two ȝonge cheldrē.

secret discourse, if thou wilt well 'listen to [hear] my advice, and not hold in wrath 'what I [if I thee] well teach.' [And] the king answered as Hengest would it. 'Then said Hengest, fairest of all knights': 'Lord, I have 'many a day advanced thy honor, and been thy faithful man in thy rich court, and in each fight *the* highest of thy knights. And I have 'often heard 'anxious whisperings' among thy 'courtiers; [knights, that] they hate thee exceedingly, unto the bare death, 'if they it durst shew.' Oft they speak stilly, 'and discourse with whispers,' of two young 'men [children], 'that dwell far hence'; the one hight Uther, the other 'Am-

<sup>1</sup> R. Hengeft.<sup>2</sup> ronen?<sup>3</sup> stilleliche?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xlii.

þe an hæhte Vther ⁊  
 þe oðer Ambrofie.  
 þe þridde hæhte Costance ⁊  
 þe wes king i þisse lond<sup>1</sup>.  
 & he her wes of-flaȝen ⁊  
 þurh fwiçfulle laȝen.  
 Nu wulleð cume þa oðere ⁊  
 & wræken heore broðer.  
 al forbærnen þi lond ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 & flæn þine leoden. 10  
 þe seoluen & þine duȝeðen ⁊  
 driuen ut of londe.  
 & þuȝ fuggeð þine men ⁊  
 þer heo somned fitteð.  
 for þa twene broðere ⁊  
 beoð beyne<sup>2</sup> kine-borne.  
 of Androeinnes kunne ⁊  
 þaȝ aðele Bruttes.  
 & þuȝ þine duȝeðe ⁊  
 stille þe fordemeð<sup>3</sup>. 20  
 Ah ich þe wulle ræde ⁊  
 of mochele þine neode.  
 þ þu biȝite cnihteft<sup>4</sup> ⁊

þe on hatte Vther ⁊  
 þe oþer Aurelie.  
 þe þridde hehte Constance ⁊  
 þat þou dedeȝt to deaþe.  
 Nou wollep come þe oþer ⁊  
 and wreken hire broþer.  
 al for-bearne þi lond ⁊  
 10 and flean þine leode.  
 and þuȝ feggeþ þine men ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 stille bi-twine heom.

Nou wollep come þe oþer ⁊  
 and wreken hire broþer.  
 al for-bearne þi lond ⁊  
 10 and flean þine leode.

and þuȝ feggeþ þine men ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 stille bi-twine heom.

brosie [Aurelie],—the third hight Constance 'who was king in this land,'  
 'and he here was slain through traitorous usage [whom thou puttedst to  
 death]. The others will now come, and avenge their brother, all consume  
 thy land, and slay thy people, 'thysself and thy folk drive out of land'. And  
 thus say thy men, 'where they sit together [stilly between them], 'because  
 the twain brothers are both royally born, of Androeins race, these noble  
 Britons; and thus thy folk stilly condemn thee.' But I will advise thee of  
 thy great need, that thou procure knights that are good in fight; and give

<sup>1</sup> This word is interlined by a later hand.

<sup>2</sup> beoren *pr. m.*, but corrected by a second hand in the margin.

<sup>3</sup> fordemeð?

<sup>4</sup> Originally mihteft; the first letter corrected, but the last not. *R.* cnihtes.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa gode beoð to fihte.  
 & bi-tače me sennē castel ⁊  
 oðer ane kineliche burh.

þat gode beon to fihte ⁊  
 and bi-tak me one castel ⁊

þat ich mai inne ligge ⁊  
 þa while þa ich libbe.  
 Ic am uor þe iuaid ⁊

þat ich mai on wonie.

þær fore ic wene beon dæd.  
 fare þer ic auer fare ⁊

For ich ham for þe i-veipēd ⁊  
 þat ich wene beo dead.

næm ich næuere bute care.

vare ware ich euere vare ⁊  
 nam ich neuere boutē care.

buten ich legge faste ⁊

10 bote ihc. ligge faste ⁊

biclusēd inne castle.

bi-clusēd in on castle.

ȝif þu þif me wult don ⁊

ȝef þou þis woldes don ⁊

ich hit wulle mid luue a-fon.

& ich wulle biliue ⁊

mi wif folde come sone.

fenden after mine wiue.

þat if a Sexisc wimmon ⁊

of wifdome wel idon.

& after Rouwēne ⁊ mire dohter ⁊

and mi dohter Rowenne ⁊

þe me if fwiðe deore.

and moche of mine cunne.

þenne ich habbe mi wif ⁊

20

& mine wine-maies.

& ich beo i pine londe ⁊

Wan we þos beoþ in londe ⁊

fulliche at-ſtonde.

folliche at-ſtonde.

þa bet ich wullen hiren þe ⁊

þe bet we wollep cweme þe ⁊

ȝif þu þif ȝetteſt me.

ȝef þou þis wolt granti me.

to me a castle, 'or a royal burgh,' that I may 'lie [dwell] in, 'the while that I live. [For] I am for thee hated,—'therefore [so that] I ween to be dead; fare wherever I fare, I am never without care, unless I lie fast inclosed in [a] castle. If thou 'wilt [wouldest] do this 'for me, I will it receive with love,' and 'quickly I will send after my wife [my wife should come soon], who is a Saxish woman, of wisdom excellent,' and 'after' my daughter Rouwenne, 'who is most dear to me, [and much of my kindred]. When 'I have my wife, and my kinsmen, and 'I [we thus] are in 'thy' land fully settled, the better 'I [we] will 'serve [please] thee, if thou 'grant-est [will grant] me this.'" Then answered Vortiger,—[who] of each evil

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa answereðe Vortiger :  
 of ælchen vuele hewef war. [f. 81<sup>b</sup>.  
 Nim cnihtes biliue : c.1.]  
 & send æfter þine wiue.  
 & æfter þine children :  
 þan ȝūgen & þan olden.  
 & æfter þine cunnen :  
 & afeoh heom mid wunne.  
 þenne heo to þe cumeð :  
 þu scat<sup>1</sup> habben gærsume. 10  
 hæhliche heom to uedē :  
 & wurðliche scruden.  
 Ah nulle ich castel na burh :  
 nane þe bi-techen.  
 for men me wolden scenden :  
 i mine kine<sup>2</sup> kine-lond.  
 for ȝe haldeð þa hæðene laȝe :  
 þat stod on eoure ælderen dæȝe.  
 & we haldeð cristes laȝe :  
 & wulleð auere an ure dæȝe. 20  
 þa ȝet spæc Hængeft :  
 cnihten alre hendeft.  
 Louerd ich wulle þin iwil :  
 driȝe her & ouer al.

þo answereðe Vortiger :  
 þat of ech vuele waf war.  
 Nim cnihtes swiþe :  
 and send after þine wifue.  
 and after þine childrē :  
 þe ȝong and þe heoldre.  
 and after þine cunne :  
 and onderfang heom mid winne.  
 wane hii to þe comeþ :  
 þou salt habbe garifome.  
 hehliche heom to fede :  
 and worþliche to scrude.  
 Ac nelle ich castel ne borh :  
 nanne þe bi-take.  
 for men me wolde fende :  
 in mine kinelonde.  
 ȝef ich heþene men : [f. 67. c.1.]  
 londes bi-toke.  
 þe ȝet spæc Hengeft :  
 cniht alre hendeft.  
 Louerd nou ich wolle :  
 don al þine wille.

'he' was ware,—“Take quickly knights, and send after thy wife, and after thy children, the young and the old, and after thy kin, and receive them with joy; when they to thee come, thou shalt have riches to feed them nobly, and worthily to clothe *them*. But I will not give to thee any castle or burgh, for men would reproach me in my kingdom; 'for ye hold the heathen law that stood in your elders days, and we hold Christs law, and will ever in our days [if I gave lands to heathen men].” The yet spake Hengest, fairest of all knights: “Lord, I will 'perform [do now all] thy will, 'here and over all, and do all my deeds after thy counsel.' Now will

<sup>1</sup> R. scalt.<sup>2</sup> Redundant.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiii.

&amp; don al mine dæde :

æfter þine ræda.

Nu ic wulle biliue :

fende after mine wiue.

&amp; æfter mire dohter :

þe me if swa deore.

&amp; æfter ohte mōnen :

þa bezfte of mine cunne.

and þu ȝif me swa muchel lond :

to stonden a mire aȝere hōd. 10

swa wule anes bule hude :

ælches weies ouer-spræden.

feor from ælche castle :

amidden ane ualde.

þeñe ne mai þe atwite :

þe hæne ne þe riche.

þ̃ þu æi hæhne burhȝe : [c. 2.]

hæðene monne habbe bi-tæht,

þe king him ȝette :

swa Hengeft ȝirnde. 20

Hengeft nom<sup>1</sup> læue :

&amp; forð he gon liðe.

&amp; æfter hiſ wiue fende fonde :

to hiſ aȝene lōde.

Nou ich wolle bliue :

fende after mine wifue.

and þou ȝef me so mochel lond :

to stonde on min owe hond.

afe wole a bole hude :

in grene ouer-sprede.

for fram eche castle :

a-midde one felde.

þanne ne mai þe atwite :

þe pore no þe riche.

þat þou eni heh borh :

heþene man bi-takeft.

And þe kīg him ȝaf :

þat lutel þat he ȝornde.

Hengeft nam leſue :

and forþ he gan wende.

and after his wifue he fende fonde :

to his owene londe.

I speedily send after my wife, 'and after my daughter, who is to me very dear, and after brave men, the best of my kin.' And thou give me so much land, to stand in mine own hand, as a bulls hide will 'each way [on the green] overspread, far from each castle, amidst a field. Then nor the poor nor the rich may blame thee, that thou 'hast given [givest] any noble burgh to a heathen man.' [And] the king 'granted [gave] him 'as Hengeſt [the little that he] yearned. Hengeſt took leave, and forth he gan pass, and after his wife [he] sent messengers, to his own land; and 'he himself

<sup>1</sup> inom *pr. m.*, but i *erased*.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

<p>&amp; he seolf wende ȝeond þif lōd ⁊  to sechen ænne bræne<sup>1</sup> fæld.  þer he mihte wel spræde ⁊  on his feire hude.  He com æn enne ende ⁊  in enne fæire uelde.  he hafde ane hude ⁊  biȝite to his neode.  of ane wilde bule ⁊  þe wes wunder ane strong. 10  He hæfden ænne wifne mon ⁊  þe wel cuðe &amp; craften.  þe nom þaf hude ⁊  &amp; a bord leide.  and whætte his færes ⁊  alfe he schæren wolde.  Of þere hude he kærf enne þwong ⁊ þar of he makede ane þwang ⁊  fwiðe fwal<sup>2</sup> &amp; fwiðe long.  nes þe þwong noht fwiðe bræd ⁊  buten fwulc a twines þræd. 20  þa al iflit wes þe þong ⁊  he wes wunder ane long.  a-buten he bilæde ⁊  muche del of londe.</p>	<p>and him seolf wende ⁊  oueral to bi-holde.  ware he mihte wel sprede ⁊  his bole hude.  Hengeft hadde one wifne man ⁊  þat wel coupe of craften.  he nam þeos bole hude ⁊  and a borde laide.  fwiþe smal and fwiþe lang.  nas þe þwang noht broð ⁊  bote afe hit were a twined þred.  a-boute þar mid he leide ⁊  moche deal of londe.</p>
--	--

[he himself] went over 'this land, to seek a broad field [all, to behold], where'on' he might well spread his 'fair [bulls] hide. 'He came to a spot, in a fair field; he had obtained a hide to his need, of a wild bull, that was wondrously strong.' 'He [Hengest] had a wise man, who well knew of craft, 'who [he] took this [bulls] hide, and laid it on a board, 'and whet his shears, as if he would shear.' 'Of the hide [Thereof] he 'carved [made] a thong, very small and very long; the thong was not 'very' broad, but as [it were] a thread 'of twine [twined]; 'when the thong was all slit, it was wondrously long,' about [therewith] he encompassed a great deal of land.

<sup>1</sup> brædne ?<sup>2</sup> R. final.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiiii.

He bigon to deluen :  
 dic fwiðe muchele.  
 þer uppe ſtenene wal :  
 þe wes ſtrong ouer al.  
 ane burh he arerde :  
 muchele & mare.  
 þa þe burh wel<sup>1</sup> al ʒare :  
 þa ſcop he hire nome.  
 he hæhte heo ful iwif :  
 Kaer-Carrai an Bruttiſc. 10  
 & Ængliſce cnihtes : [f.82.c.1.]  
 heo cleopeden þwong-Chaſtre.  
 nu and auere mare :  
 þe nome ſtodeð<sup>2</sup> þere.  
 & for nan odere<sup>3</sup> gome :  
 næueden þæ burh þene nome.  
 a þet come Denſce men :  
 and driuen ut þa Bruttes.  
 þene þridde nome heo þer ſætte :  
 & Lane-caſtel hine hæhten. 20  
 & for ſwulche gomen :  
 þæ tun haſde<sup>4</sup> þaſ þreo nomen.  
 Vnder þan com liðen hider :

He lette þo delue :  
 on euerrech halue.  
 þar vppe ſtonene wal :  
 fwiþe ſtrong oueral. [c. 2.]  
 ane caſtel he arerde :  
 fair to bi-holde.  
 þo þe borh was al ʒaru :  
 þo ſette he hire name.  
 he hehte hire foliwiſ :  
 Cayr-Karri in Brutteſ.  
 and Engliſſe cnihtes :  
 þwangcheſtre.  
 nou and euer more :  
 þe name ſtondeþ þare.

Kaer-  
Carrai.þwo[n]g-  
Chafſtre.

forte þat Dence men :  
 driuen vt þe cnihtes.  
 þane þridde name þar ſette :  
 and Leane-caſtel hine cleopede. Lane-caſtel.  
 Vnder þan com liþe hider :

He 'began to dig a ditch very mickle [caused then to be dug on every side]; there upon a stone wall, 'that was [exceeding] strong over all, a 'burgh [castle] he areared, 'mickle and lofty [fair to behold]. When the burgh was all ready, then 'shaped [set] he to it a name; he named it full truly Kaer-Carrai in British, and English knights 'they called it' Thongchester. Now and evermore the name standeth there, 'and for no other adventure had the burgh the name,' until that Danish men 'came, and 'drove out the 'Britons [knights]; the third name 'they' set there, and Lane-caſtel (Lancaster) it 'named [called]; 'and for such events the town had these three names.' In the mean time arrived hither Hengests wife with her

<sup>1</sup> R. weſ.<sup>2</sup> ſtondeð?<sup>3</sup> oðere?<sup>4</sup> haſde?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiiii.

Hengeſtes wiſ mid hire ſcipen.  
 heo hæfde to iueren ⁊  
 fiſtene hūðed<sup>1</sup> ridern.  
 mid hire comē to iwiten ⁊  
 muchele æhtene ſcipen.  
 þer comen inne ⁊  
 muchel of Hengeſtes cunne.  
 & Rouwē hiſ dohter ⁊  
 þe him wes ſwide<sup>2</sup> deore.  
 Hit wes umbe while ⁊  
 þ̅ com þe ilke time.  
 þ̅ iȝarked wes þa burh ⁊  
 mid þan alre beȝſte.  
 Hēgeſt com to þan kinge ⁊  
 & bad him giſtninge<sup>3</sup>.  
 & ſeide þ̅ he hæfde an in ⁊  
 iȝarked to-ȝeines him.  
 & bad þat he come þer to ⁊  
 & he ſcolde beon fæire under-ſon.  
 & þe king him ȝette ⁊  
 ſwa Hengeſt hit wolde.  
 Hit com to þan time ⁊  
 þ̅ þe king gon forð liðe.  
 mid þan deoreſte monnen ⁊

Hengeſtes wiſ mid hire fiſes.  
 ȝeo hadde to ivere ⁊  
 fiſtene hundred rideres.

and Rowen hiſ dohter ⁊  
 þat was him ſwiȝe deore.  
 10 Hit was þi on wile ⁊  
 þat com þe ilke time.  
 þat i-ȝarked was þe borh ⁊  
 mid þan alre beſte.  
 and Hengeſt wende to þan kinge ⁊  
 and bad hine to gýſtnige.  
 and ſeide þat he hadde on in ⁊  
 hi-makede to-ȝenef him.

20 And þe king him grantede ⁊  
 alfe Hengeſt wolde.

Hengeſt.

ships; she had for companions fifteen hundred riders; 'with her came, to wit, mickle good ships; therein came much of Hengeſts kin,' and Rouwenne, his daughter, who was to him moſt dear. It was 'after [a] while, that that time came, that the burgh was completed with the beſt of all. [And] Hengeſt 'came [went] to the king, and asked him to a banquet, and ſaid that he had 'prepared [made] an inn againſt him (his coming), 'and bade that he ſhould come thereto, and he ſhould be fairly received.' And the king granted him as Hengeſt *it* would. 'It came to the time that the king gan forth proceed, with the deareſt men of all his folk'; forth 'he [they]

<sup>1</sup> hūðred?<sup>2</sup> ſwiȝe?<sup>3</sup> gýſtninge *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiii.

of alle hif duȝeðe.

forð he gon buȝen :

þ he to burh com.

he bi-heold þene wal :

up and dun ouer al.

al him wel likede :

þ he o lokede.

He wende in to halle :

&amp; hif heleðes mid him alle.

bemen heo bleowen :

gomē men gunnen cleopien.

bord heo hetten bređen :

cnihtes fetten þer to.

heo æten heo drunken :

dræm wes i burhȝen.

þa þe duȝeðe hafde iȝeten :

þa wes heom þa bet iloten.

Hængeft eode in to þan inne :

þer wunede Rouwenne.

he heo lette scruden :

mid vnimete<sup>1</sup> prude.

al þ scrud þe heo hafde on :

heo weoren fwiðe wel ibon.

[c. 2.]

Forþ hii gonne wende :

þat hii come to þan ende.

þe king bi-heold þane wal :

vp and dun oueral.

al him wel likede :

þat he on lokede.

He wende in to halle :

and his cnihtes mid him alle.

10

bordes hii lette sprede :

cnihtef þar to fete.

hii eoten hii drongken : [L 67<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]

bliffe was a-mang heom.

20

Hengeft wēde to þe ine :

þar Rowenne was hinne.

he hire lette scrude :

mid onimete prude.

gan proceed until 'he [they] came to *the* burgh [the spot]. 'He [The king] beheld the wall up and down over all; all *it* liked him well, that he on looked. He went into *the* hall, and all his knights with him; 'trumps they blew, games men gan to call,' boards they 'ordered [caused] to be spread, knights sate thereat; they ate, they drank, 'joy [bliss] was 'in *the* burgh [among them]!—'when the folk had eaten, then was the better befallen to them.' Hengeft went 'in' to the inn, where Rouwenne 'dwelt [in was]; he caused her to be clad with excessive pride; 'all the clothes that she had on, they were most excellent, they were good with the best,

<sup>1</sup> The last two letters of vnimete are interlined by second hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

heo weoren mid þan bezfte ⁊  
 ibrufted mid golde.

Heo bar an hiſ honde ⁊  
 ane guldene bolle.  
 i-uulled mid wine ⁊  
 þe wes wunder ane god.  
 Hæȝe iborēne men ⁊  
 heo lædden to hallen.  
 biuoren þan kinge ⁊  
 farreft alre þinge.

Reowen ſæt a cneowe ⁊  
 & cleopede to þan kinge.  
 & þuſ æreft ſæide ⁊  
 in Ænglene londe.  
 Lauerd king wæf hæil ⁊  
 for þine kime ich æm uæin.  
 þe king þiſ ihærde ⁊  
 & nuſte what heo ſelde.

þe king Vortigerne ⁊  
 fræinede hiſ cnihtes ſone. 20  
 what weoren þat ſpeche ⁊  
 þe þ̅ maide ſpilede.  
 þa andſwerede Keredic ⁊ [l. 82<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 a cniht ſwiðe ſellic.  
 he wes þe bezfte latimer ⁊

ȝeo bar in hire hond ⁊  
 ane goldene bolle.  
 hi-fulled mid wine ⁊  
 ne mihte non be richere.  
 Hehȝe ibore mē ⁊  
 hire ladde in to halle.  
 bi-vore þan kinge ⁊  
 10 faireft alle þing.  
 Rowennē ſat a cneowe ⁊  
 and ſeide to þā kinge.  
 þuſ ereft ȝeo ſpac ⁊  
 in Englene lond.  
 Louerd king waſſayl ⁊  
 for þine comes me beoþ hail.  
 þe kīg hit ihordē ⁊  
 and nuſte wat ȝeo ſaide.  
 þe king Vortigerne ⁊  
 20 haxede hiſ cnihtes.  
 wat were þe ſpeche ⁊  
 þat þe maide ſpeke.  
 þa anſwerede Keþereh ⁊  
 cniht mid þe wiſeſt.  
 he was þe beſte latimer ⁊

embroidered with gold.' She bare in her hand a golden bowl, filled with wine, 'that was one wondrous good [none might be richer]. High-born men led her [in] to *the* hall before the king, fairest of all things! Rowenne sate on *her* knee, and 'called [said] to the king, 'and' thus first [she] 'said [spake] in English land: "Lord king, wassail! for thy coming 'I am glad [is health to me]." The king 'this [it] heard, and knew not what she said; the king Vortiger asked his knights 'soon', what were the speech that the maid spake. Then answered 'Keredic [Kethereh], 'a' knight 'most admirable [with the wisest]; he was the best interpreter that 'ere

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat ær com her.  
 Luſt me nu lauerd king ⁊  
 & ich þe wulle cuðen.  
 whæt ſeið Rouwenne ⁊  
 fæireſt wimmonnen.  
 Hit beoð tiðende ⁊  
 inne Sæxe-londe.  
 whær ſwa æi duȝeðe ⁊  
 gladiēð<sup>2</sup> of drenche.  
 þat freond ſæiðe to freonde ⁊ 10 þat freond faiþ to his freond ⁊  
 mid fæire loten hende.  
 Leofue freond wæf hail ⁊  
 þe oðer ſæið drinc hail.  
 þe ilke þat halt þene nap ⁊  
 he hine drinkeð up.  
 oder<sup>3</sup> uul me þider fareð ⁊  
 & bi-thecheð hiſ iuerē.  
 þenne þat uul beoð icumen ⁊  
 þenne cufſeoð heo þreoiē.  
 þiſ beoð ſele laȝen ⁊ 20 þiſ beoþ þe lawes ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 inne Saxe-londe.  
 & inne Alemaine ⁊  
 heo beoð ihalden aðele.

þat euere wone<sup>1</sup> her.  
 Luſt nou mi louerd king ⁊  
 and ich þe wolle cuðen.  
 wat ſeiþ Rowenne ⁊  
 faireſt of al wommanne.  
 Hit hiſ þe wone ⁊  
 ine Sax-londe.

þat freond faiþ to his freond ⁊  
 wane he ſal dringe.  
 Leofue freond waſſail ⁊  
 þe oþer faiþ dringhail.  
 þe ilke þat halt þane nap ⁊  
 þane dringe dringþ vp.  
 and aȝeo me hine fulþ ⁊  
 and takeþ hiſ ivere.

came [ever dwelt] here: "Listen 'to me' now, [my] lord king, and I will make known to thee what Rouwenne ſaith, faireſt [of all] women. It is [the] cuſtom in Saxland, 'whereſoever any people gladden (make merry) in drink,' that friend ſayeth to [hiſ] friend, 'with fair comely looks [when he ſhall drink], "Dear friend, waſſail!"—the other ſayeth, "Drinchail!" The ſame that holds the cup, 'he' drinketh 'it [the drink] up; another full *cup* men thither bring [and again men fill it], and give to hiſ comrade. 'When the full *cup* is come, then kiſſ they thrice.' Theſe are [the] 'good' cuſtoms in Saxland, 'and in Alemaine they are accounted noble!'" Vortiger

<sup>1</sup> wonede?<sup>2</sup> Written at firſt gladiēð, but e expuncted by the ſame hand.<sup>3</sup> oðer?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þif iherde Uortiger :  
 of alchel<sup>1</sup> uuele he wæs war.  
 & feide hit an Bruttisc :  
 ne cuðe he nan Ænglisc.  
 Maiden Rouwenne :  
 drinc bluðeliche þenne.  
 þat maide dronc up þat win :  
 & lette don oðer þer in.  
 & bi-tæhten þan kinge :  
 & þrien hine cufte. 10  
 & þurh þa ilke leodē :  
 þa laȝen comen to þiffen londe.  
 [Wæf-h]ail wæf-hail & drinc-hæil :  
 moni mon þer of if fain.  
 Rouwenne. þe hende :  
 fat bi þan kinge.  
 þe king heo ȝeorne biheold :  
 heo was him an heorte leof.  
 ofte he heo cufte :  
 ofte he heo clupte. 20  
 al his mod & his main :  
 halde to þan mæidene.  
 þe wurfe wef þer ful neh : [c. 2.] þe worfe was þare wel neh :

þif ihorde Vortiger :  
 of eche vuele he was war.  
 and faide hit on Brutteffe :  
 ne coupe he noht on Englisse.  
 Mayde Rowenne :  
 dring blopeliche þanne.  
 þat maide drong vt þat win :  
 and lette don oþer þar in.  
 and bi-tahte þan kinge :  
 and he hit vp fwipte.  
 And þorh þifne ilke game :  
 þe lawe come to londe.  
 waffayl and dring-hayl :  
 þat mani mē lofuieþ.  
 þe faire Rowenne :  
 fat bi þan kinge.  
 þe king hirē ȝeorne bi-heold :  
 ȝeo was him leof on heorte.  
 ofte he hire cufte :  
 and ofte he hire clupte.

heard this,—of each evil he was ware,—and said it in British, *for* he knew  
 'no [not in] English': "Maiden Rouwenne, drink then blithely!" The  
 maid drank 'up [out] the wine, and let do (put) other *wine* therein, and  
 gave to the king, and 'thrice him kissed [he drank it up]. And through  
 'the [this] same 'people [game] the custom came to 'this' land of Wassail  
 and Drinchail,—many a man thereof is glad [that many men love]! Rou-  
 wenne the fair sate by the king; the king beheld her longingly, she was  
 dear to him in heart; oft he kissed her, [and] oft he embraced her; 'all  
 his mind and his might inclined *towards* the maiden.' The Worse was

<sup>1</sup> alchen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þe in ælche gomene is ful ræh.  
 þe wurfe ne dude næuere god ⁊  
 he mæingde þas kinges mod.  
 he murnede ful fwiðe ⁊  
 to habben þat mæidē to wiue.  
 þat wes swide ladlic<sup>1</sup> þing ⁊  
 þat þe cristine king.  
 luuede þat hæðene maide ⁊  
 leoden to hærmē.  
 ƿ̃ maiden wes þan kinge leof ⁊<sup>10</sup>  
 æfne alfe hiſ aȝene lif.  
 he bad Hengeſt hiſ dring ⁊  
 ȝiuē him þat maide-child.  
 Hēgeſt funde an hiſ ræd ⁊  
 to don ƿ̃ þe king him bed ⁊  
 he ȝef him Rouwenne ⁊  
 wimmon fwiðe hende.  
 þan kinge hit was [icweme] ⁊  
 he makede<sup>2</sup> heo to quene.  
 al after þan laȝen ⁊<sup>20</sup>  
 þe ſtoden an hæðe<sup>3</sup> dæȝen.  
 nes þer nan criſtindō ⁊

þat to ſoche game hiſ wel fleh.  
 þe worfe þat neuere ne doþ god ⁊  
 he meȝnde þare þeſ kingeſ mod.  
 þe king mornede fwiþe ⁊  
 for habbe hire to wiue.  
 þat was fwiþe loþlich þing ⁊  
 þat þe criſtene king.  
 louede þat maide heaþene ⁊  
 folk to harme.

To Hengeſt bad þe king ⁊  
 þat he þat maide ȝefue him.  
 Hengeſt funde on hiſ reade ⁊  
 don þat þe king him beade.  
 he ȝef him Rowenne ⁊  
 womman fwiþe hende.  
 þane king hit was icweme ⁊  
 he makede hire to cwene. [f.68.c.1.]  
 al after þe lawes ⁊<sup>20</sup>  
 þat ſtode in heaþene daiȝe.  
 naſ þar preoſt ne criſtendom ⁊

Rouwenne.

there full nigh, who in 'each [such a] game is 'full cruel [well sly]; the Worse [who] never 'did [doth] good, he troubled the king's mood; 'he [the king] mourned 'full' much, to have 'the maiden [her] for wife. That was a most loathly thing, that the christian king should love the heathen maid, to the harm of his people! 'The maiden was dear to the king, even as his own life'; 'he [The king] prayed [to] Hengest, 'his chieftain,' [that he should] give him the maid-'child.' Hengest found in his counsel to do what the king asked him; he gave him Rouwenne, the woman most fair. To the king it was pleasing; he made her queen, all after the laws that stood in the heathen days; was there 'no [nor priest nor] Christendom, where the king

<sup>1</sup> swiðe laðlic?<sup>2</sup> imakede man. sec.<sup>3</sup> hæðene?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

<p><i>Vortimer.</i> <i>Pascent.</i> <i>Catiger.</i></p>	<p>þer þe king þat maide mon<sup>1</sup>.  ne preoft ne na biſcop :  ne nauere ihandleð godes boc.  ah ā heðene wune he heo wedde : þat maýde he weddede :  &amp; brohte heo to his bedde.  Maidē he heo hæfde :  &amp; mærzeue hire bi-tahte.  þa he hine an hire hafde ifcend :  he hire ȝef Londen &amp; Kent.  þe king hafde þreo ſunen :  þe weoren ſwiðe hende gumē.  þe ældeſte hehte Vortimer :  Paſcent &amp; Katiger.  Garengan wes an eorl :  þe Kent ohte longe.  &amp; hiſ fader biuoren him :  and feoððen he þurh hiſ cun. [f. 83.  c. 1.]  þa he bezft wende :  to halden his lond.  þa hafde Hengeft :  hit an hiſ hond.  ſellic þuhte þan cnihte :  whæt þe king þohte.</p>	<p>þar þe king þat maýde nom.      and nam hire to his bedde.      þe king hadde þreo ſones :  þat were ſtaleworþe gomes.  þe eldeſte hehte Vortimer :  Paſcent and Catiger.  Garangan was an eorl :  þat Kent hadde longe.    þo he beſte wende :  to holde his cunde.  þo hadde hit þe cwene :  and Hengeft imene.  ſeollich þohte þe cniht :  wat þe king þohte.</p>
---	---	---

took the maid, 'nor priest, nor any bishop, nor *was* Gods book ever handled, but in *the* heathen fashion' he wedded 'her [the maid], and 'brought [took] her to his bed ! 'Maiden he had her, and ample gift bestowed on her ; when he had disgraced himself on her, he gave her London and Kent.' The king had three sons, who were men 'exceeding fair [valiant] ; the eldest hight Vortimer,—Pascent, and Catiger. Garengan was an earl, who 'possessed [had] Kent long, 'and his father before him, and he afterwards through his kin (by inheritance) ; when he best weened to hold his land, then had it [the queen, and] Hengest 'in his hand [in common] ; strange *it* seemed to the knight, what the king thought. 'The king loved the heathens and

<sup>1</sup> R. nom ? inom ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þe king luuede þa hæðene ⁊	
& hunde <sup>1</sup> þa cristine.	
þe hæðene hæfden al þis lond ⁊	þe heapene hadde al þis lond ⁊
to walden under heore hond.	to hire owe hond.
& þes kinges þreo sunen ⁊	and þeos kinges þreo sones.
ofte þoleden forȝen & kare.	ofte fori were.
Heore moder wes þa dæd ⁊	hire moder was dead ⁊
þer uore heo hafden þe laffe ræd.	þar vore hii hadde þe laffe read.
here moder wes swiðe god wif ⁊	
& ladde swiðe cristin lif.	10
& heore steopmoder hæðene ⁊	
Hengestes dohter.	
Nes hit noh <sup>2</sup> longe ⁊	Nas his <sup>3</sup> noht longe ⁊
buten ane stūde.	bote onȝ stunde ⁊
þ þe king makede ⁊	þat þe king makede feste ⁊
ueorme swiðe store.	on mid þe meste.
þe hæðene he laðede þar to ⁊	þe heapene he laþede þar to ⁊
he wende swiðe wel to don.	he wende swiþe wel to do.
þider comen þæines ⁊	
cnihtes and sweines.	20
And alle þe cuðe a boken ⁊	Ac al þat coupe of boke ⁊
þa feorme for-foken.	þe feste for-foke.
for þa hæðene men ⁊	
weoren hæhst an hireden.	

harmed the christians'; the heathens had all this land 'to rule under their [in their own] hand, and the kings three sons oft 'suffered sorrow and care [were sorry]. Their mother was 'then' dead, therefore they had the less counsel,—'their mother was a woman most good, and led a life very christian, and their stepmother *was* heathen, Hengests daughter.' It was not long, but a while, that the king made a feast, 'exceeding great [one with the most]; the heathens he brought thereto; he weened most well to do; 'thither came thanes, knights and swains.' And all that knew of book (the christians) forsook the feast, 'for the heathen men were highest

<sup>1</sup> henede man. sec.<sup>2</sup> noht?<sup>3</sup> R. hit.



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& þæt cristine hired ⁊  
for hæne wes ihalden.

þa hæðene weoren bliðe ⁊  
for þe king heom luuedē swiðe.  
Hengeft hine bi-þohte ⁊  
what he don mahte.  
he com to þā kinge ⁊  
mid are hailige.

& dronc to þan kinge<sup>1</sup> ⁊

þa spæc þuf Hængeft ⁊      10  
cnihtene alre hændest.      [c. 2.]

þ of hæðene laȝen ⁊

leouede a þan dæȝen ⁊

Hærcne me lauerd king ⁊

þu ært me leof þurh alle þing.

þu hæuest mine dohter ⁊

þæ me is swiðe deore.

& ich æm þe an folke ⁊

swa ich þi fader weore.

hærcne mine lare ⁊      20

heo sculleð þe wurðen leofue.

for ich wulle hæhliche ⁊

to helpen þe ræden.

þin hired þe hateð for me ⁊

þe heapene were bliþe ⁊

for þe king ȝam lofuede swiþe.

Hengeft hine bi-þohte ⁊

wat he don mihte.

he com to þan kinge ⁊

and þeos word faide.

Hercne me nou louerd king ⁊

ich þe louie þorh alle þing.      [c. 2.]

þou hæuest mine dohter ⁊

þat me his swiþe deore.

and ich ham þe on folke ⁊

alfe ich þi fader were.

in the court, and the christian folk was held for base'; the heathens were blithe, for the king loved them greatly. Hengest bethought him what he might do; he came to the king, 'with a hailing (salutation),' and 'drank to the king. Then' 'thus spake Hengest [said these words], 'fairest of all knights who lived of heathen law in those days': "Hearken to me [now], lord king, 'thou art to me dear [I love thee] through all things; thou hast my daughter, who is to me very dear, and I am to thee among folk as if I were thy father. 'Hearken to my instruction, it shall be to thee lief, for I will (wish) chiefly to help counsel thee.' Thy 'court [men] hate thee

<sup>1</sup> A line is here apparently deficient.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& ich æm iuæid for þe.  
 & þe hatieð kinges ⁊  
 eorles & ðringes.  
 heo uareð in þine londe ⁊  
 mid hære fwiðe stronge.  
 ȝif þu wult þe awraken ⁊  
 mid wurðscipe muchen.  
 & don þine vniwinen wa ⁊  
 send after mine fune Octa.  
 & æfter enne oðer ⁊ 10  
 Ebiffa his wed-broðer.  
 þis beoð þa hæhste men ⁊  
 þe æuef hired lædden.  
 & i þan norð ende ⁊  
 ȝif heom of þine londe.  
 Heo beoð of muchele mæhte ⁊  
 & stronge i fæhte.  
 heo wulleð biwiten þi lond ⁊  
 wel mid þan bezften.  
 þenne mihte þu mid winne ⁊ 20  
 þi lif al uor-werien.  
 mid haueken & mid hunden ⁊  
 hired-plæie luuien.  
 ne þræt þu nauere habben kare ⁊  
 of uncuðe leoden.

and ich ham ifeiþed for þe.  
 ȝef þou wolt þe awreke ⁊  
 mid worþipe mochele.  
 and don þin onwines wo ⁊  
 fend after mine sone Octa.  
 and after þan oþer ⁊ 10  
 Ebiffa his wed-broþer.  
 þis beoþ þe ardiefte men ⁊  
 þat euere bere wepne.  
 and in þan norþende ⁊  
 ȝef ham of þine lond.  
 Hii beoþ of mochele mihte ⁊  
 and strong in eche fhte.  
 hii wollep witie þi lond ⁊  
 wel mid þan befte.  
 þan miht þou in wele ⁊ 20  
 þi lif al for-werie.

for me (on my account), and I am detested for thee, 'and thee hate kings, earls and thanes; they fare in thy land with a host exceeding strong.' If thou wilt avenge thee with much worship, and do woe to thy enemies, send after my son Octa, and after 'another [the other], Ebissa, his wed-brother. These are the 'noblest [hardest] men that ever 'led army [bare weapon]; and give them of thy land in the north end. They are of mickle might, and strong in [each] fight; they will defend thy land well with the best; then mightest thou in 'joy [weal] thy life all spend, 'with hawks and with hounds court-play love; needest thou never have care of foreign people."

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þa anſwarede Vortiger : [ſ83<sup>b</sup>.c.1.] þo faide þe king :  
 of ælchen uuele he wes war.  
 Send þine ſoude : fende after ȝam for alle þing.  
 in to Sex-londe.  
 after þine ſune Octa :  
 & after þine freonden ma.  
 do him wel to iwiṡe :  
 ꝥ he fende hiſ writen.  
 æfter al þan cnihten :  
 þe gode beoð to fihten. 10  
 ȝeond alle Sæx-þeoden :  
 þat heo cumen to mire neoden.  
 & þeh he bringen ten þuſend gu-  
 alle heo beoð me welicumen. [men :  
 þiſ ihærde Hengeſt :  
 cnihten alre henddeft.  
 þa wes he ſwa bliðe :  
 ſwa he nes næuere an hiſ liue.  
 Hengeſt fende hiſ fode : Hengeſt fende hiſ ſoude :  
 in to Sax-londe. 20 into Saxlonde.  
 hehte cumen Octa : hehte come Octa :  
 and hiſ wed-broder Ebiffa. and hiſ wedbroþer Ebiffa.  
 & al of heore cūme<sup>1</sup> : and alle of hire cunne :

Then 'answered Vortiger [said the king],—'of each evil he was ware,'—  
 "Send 'thy messengers into Saxland,' after 'thy son Octa, and after thy  
 friends more [them, for all things]. 'Cause him to know well, that he send  
 his writs after all the knights that are good in fight, over all Saxland,  
 that they come to my need; and though he bring ten thousand men, all  
 they shall be welcome to me." Hengest heard this, fairest of all knights;  
 then was he so blithe as he was never in his life.' Hengest sent his  
 messengers into Saxland, and bade Octa come, and his wed-brother  
 Ebissa, and all of their kindred that they might gain, and all the knights

<sup>1</sup> cūne?

**MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.**

þat heo mihten iwinnen.  
 & alle þa cnihtes ⁊  
 þæ heo biȝiten mihten.  
 Octa fende feude¹ fonde ⁊  
 ȝeōð þreom kine-londe.  
 & bad ælcchene ohte gume ⁊  
 hiȝenliche hī to cume.  
 þe wolden biȝitē lond ⁊  
 oðer feoluer oðer gold.  
 Heo comen to hirede ⁊  
 alfe haȝel þe ualleð.  
 þ̃ was to iwitene ⁊  
 mid þreo hundred ſcipene.  
 Forð wenden mid Octa ⁊  
 þritti þuſend & æc ma.  
 ohte men & kene ⁊  
 & Ebiffa hiſ iuere. [c. 2.]  
 æfter com liðen ⁊  
 mid unimete leoden.  
 & he ladde to iwiten ⁊  
 oðer half hundred ſcipen.  
 þer æfter comen liðe ⁊  
 fue & fue.  
 bi fixe bi feoue ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

þat hii mihte a-winne.  
and alle þe cnihtes ?  
þat hii bi-ȝeten mihte.

Hii come fone to iwite ?  
mid foue hundred fipes.

þar after fone ?  
þar come wel ilome.  
bi fixe bi fouene ?

that they might get. 'Octa sent messengers over three kingdoms, and bade each brave man speedily to come to him, who would obtain land, or silver or gold.' They came [soon] 'to *the* army, as hail that falleth, that was' to wit, with 'three [seven] hundred ships. 'Forth went with Octa thirty thousand and eke more, brave men and keen; and Ebiassa, his companion, afterwards arrived with numberless folk, and he led to wit *an* hundred *and* fifty ships'; thereafter 'arrived five and five, [soon there came *ships* well often] by six, by seven, by ten, 'and' by eleven; and thus '*the* heathen

<sup>1</sup> *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

bi tene & bi ælleuene.  
 & þuſ heo comen liðen ⁊  
 toward þiſſen londe.  
 hæðene hære-gumē ⁊  
 to hirede þiſ kinges.

þ þiſ lond wes ſwa vul ⁊  
 of uncuðe leoden.  
 þat nes nan ſwa wiſ mon ⁊  
 no ſwa 3er witele.

þat mihte to-dæle ⁊  
 þa criſtine & þa hæðene.  
 for þa hæðene weoren ſwa riue ⁊  
 & auere heo comen bililiue<sup>1</sup>.

þa iſe3en B<sup>tt</sup>tes ⁊  
 þat balu wes an londe.  
 þer uore heo weoren ſæri ⁊  
 & an heorte druri.

& ferden to þan kinge ⁊  
 þe hæhſte of piſſen londe.  
 & þuſ him to ſæiden ⁊  
 mid forhfule ſteuene.

Luſt uſ nu lauere king ⁊  
 of ure leod-runen<sup>3</sup>.  
 þu ært þurh uſ bald king ⁊

bi ten bi enlouene.  
 and þuſ hii come fie ⁊  
 in to þiſſe londe.

þat þiſ lond was ſo ful ⁊  
 of heaþene hundes.  
 þat naſ non ſo wiſ man.  
 ne ſo war wittý.

10 þat mihte to-dele ⁊ [f. 68<sup>v</sup>. c. 1.]  
 þe heaþene and þe criſtene ⁊

þo iſeh3e Bruttes ⁊  
 þat þuſ hit verde in londe.  
 þar vore hii weren ſori ⁊  
 and in hire heor<sup>2</sup> dreri.  
 and wende to þan kinge ⁊  
 he heheſte of þiſſe [londe].

20 and þuſ to him ſaide ⁊  
 mid forþfulle heorte.

Hercne vs louerd king ⁊  
 of oure deorne rouning.  
 þou hart þorh vs bold king ⁊

warriors they arrived 'toward [into] this land, 'to *the* court of this king,' so that this land was so full of 'foreign people [heathen hounds], that *there* was no man so wise, nor so quick-witted, that might separate the christians and the heathens, 'for the heathens were so rife; and ever they speedily came!' When *the* Britons saw that 'sorrow was [thus it fared] in *the* land, therefore they were sorry, and in [their] heart dreary, and proceeded to the king, the highest of this land, and thus to him said with sorrowful 'voice [heart]: "'Listen [Hearken] to us, lord king, of our 'discourse [secret communing]; thou art through us (by our means) bold king in this 'Britain,

<sup>1</sup> R. biliue.<sup>2</sup> R. heorte.<sup>3</sup> leoð-runen sec. m.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

inne þiffē B<sup>u</sup>tene.  
 & þu hafuest þe biwūnen ⁊  
 hærm & muchele funnen.  
 ibroht heðene folc ⁊  
 ȝet hit þe ihærmeð.  
 & þu letest godes laȝen ⁊  
 uor uncude<sup>3</sup> leoden.  
 & nult ne ihæren ure drihtē ⁊  
 for þiffen hædene<sup>4</sup> cniliten.  
 & we þe wulleð bidden ⁊ [184.c.1.]  
 for alle godes fibbē ⁊  
 þat þu heom bilæuen ⁊  
 & of þine lode driuen.  
 ȝif þu allef ne maht ⁊  
 we wulleð makien muchel fæht.  
 & driuen heom of londe ⁊  
 oðer heom adun fallen.  
 oðer we uf seoluen ⁊  
 of-flaȝen wulleð liggen.  
 & leten hæðene uolc ⁊  
 hælden þas riche.  
 bruken hit mid winne ⁊  
 ȝif heo hit mazen iwinnen.  
 & ȝif heo alle beoð hæðene ⁊

in þiffere londe.  
 ac þou hauest þe bi-wonne ⁊  
 harm and mochel funne.  
 i-broh<sup>1</sup> heapene folk ⁊  
 ȝet hit mai þe ruwe.  
 and þo<sup>2</sup> for-sakest godes lawe ⁊  
 for heapene folke ⁊  
 11 for alle god fibbe.  
 þat þou heom bi-lefue ⁊  
 and of þine londe driue.  
 ȝef þou elles ne miht ⁊  
 we wollep makie gret fihht.  
 and driuen heom vt of londe ⁊  
 oþer to grunde falle.  
 oþer we vs seolue ⁊  
 to-hewe wollep ligge.  
 20 and leten heapene folk ⁊  
 habbe þeos riche.

And ȝef hii alle beoþ heapene ⁊

and [land, but] thou hast procured to thee harm and much sin; brought heathen folk,—yet it may thee harm [rue];—and thou forsakest Gods law, for 'foreign [heathen] folk, 'and wilt not worship our Lord, for these heathen knights.' 'And [But] we would pray thee, for all Gods peace, that thou leave them, and drive from thy land. If thou else (otherwise) mightest not, we will make 'mickle [great] fight, and drive them 'from [out of] land, or fell 'them' 'down [to ground], or we ourselves will lie 'slain [cut in pieces], and let *the* heathen folk 'hold [have] this realm, 'possess it with joy, if they may it win. And if they all are heathen, and

<sup>1</sup> ibroht?<sup>2</sup> þou?<sup>3</sup> uncude?<sup>4</sup> hæðene?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiiii.

& þu ane cristine.  
 nulleð heo nauere longe ⁊  
 habben þe to kinge.

and þou one cristene.  
 nolleþ hii neuere ⁊  
 holde þe for kinge.

buten þu a þine dajen ⁊  
 afo hæðene lajen.  
 & bilæue þe hahje godd ⁊  
 & luuie heore mahimet.  
 þenne scalt þu for-wurþen ⁊  
 a þifferere<sup>1</sup> woruld-riche.

& þi wracche faule ⁊ 10  
 fiȝen to helle.

þenne haueft þu aboht ⁊  
 þe luue of þire brude<sup>2</sup>.

þa anfwærede Vortiger ⁊  
 of ælc an uuele he wef wær.

Nulle ich heom bilauen ⁊  
 bi mine quike liue.

for Hengeft if hider icumen ⁊  
 he if mi fader & ich hif fune.

& ich habbe to leof-monne ⁊ 20  
 hif dohter Rouwenne,

& ich heo habbe biwedded ⁊

& ihaued a mine bedde.

& feoððen ich fende after Octa ⁊ and fuppe ich fende after Octa ⁊

þo anfwerede Vortiger ⁊  
 of ech uuele he was war.

Nelle ich þam bi-leue ⁊  
 bi mine cwike lifue.

for Hengeft his hider icome ⁊

he hif min fader and ich his fone.

and ich habbe to lefman ⁊ [(c.2.)  
 his dohter Rowenne.

thou alone christian, they will never 'long' 'have [hold] thee for king, 'except thou in thy days receive *the* heathen law, and desert the high God, and praise their idols. Then shalt thou perish in this worlds realm, and thy wretched soul sink to hell; then hast thou *dearly* bought the love of thy bride!' " Then answered Vortiger,—of each evil he was ware:—"I will not leave them, by my quick life! For Hengest is hither come, he is my father, and I his son; and I have for mistress his daughter Rouwenne, 'and I have wedded her, and had in my bed,' and afterwards I sent after

<sup>1</sup> þiffere?

<sup>2</sup> Written at first Brutede, but te struck out by the rubricator.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& after his iueren mā.  
 hu mihte ich for scome ⁊  
 fscunien heom swa fone. [c. 2.] fo fone ȝam for-fake.  
 driuē of londe ⁊  
 mine wiues<sup>1</sup> deore.  
 þa andswarede Bruttes ⁊  
 mid forȝen ibunden.  
 Nulle we nauere mare ⁊  
 þine iboden here.  
 ne to þine hirede cumen ⁊ 10  
 ne þe uor king halden.  
 ah hatien we wulleð ⁊  
 mid hæhȝere strēgðe.  
 alle þine hæðene wines ⁊  
 &<sup>2</sup> hærmes igreten.  
 bidden us to fultume ⁊  
 þ is crist godes sunne.  
 Forð iwenden eorles ⁊  
 forð iwenden beornes.  
 forð iwenden biſcopes ⁊ 20  
 & þa boc-ilæred m̃.  
 forð iwenden þæines ⁊  
 forð iwēden ſweines.

and after hire cunne mo.  
 hou mihte ich for fame ⁊  
 þo answered Bruttus ⁊  
 mid forewe ibunde.  
 And nolle we neuere more ⁊  
 þine bodes ihiere.  
 ne to þine hefte come ⁊ 10  
 ne þe for kinge holde.  
 ac þe and þine hundes ⁊  
 we wollep mid harme grete.  
 be vs nou to foltome ⁊  
 þat his crist godes fone.

Octa, and after more of 'his companions [their kin];—how might I for shame 'ahun [forsake] them so soon, 'and drive from land my dear friends?' " Then answered *the* Britons, with sorrow bound: "[And] we will nevermore obey thy commands, nor come to thy 'court [command], nor hold thee for king, 'but we will hate *thee* with great strength,' 'and all thine heathen friends [thee and thine hounds] with harm greet. Be Christ now, that is Gods son, our help!" Forth went '*the* earls, forth went *the* lords, forth went *the* bishops, and the book-learned men, forth went *the* thanes, forth went *the* swains,' 'all the Britons, until they came to London [they all to London

<sup>1</sup> wines?<sup>2</sup> mid?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

alle Brutleoden ⁊  
 þ̅ heo comen to Lūdene.  
 þ̅er wes moni hæh Brut ⁊  
 at þan hufstinge.  
 & þeos king þreo funes ⁊  
 alle heo weoren þider icumen.  
 þ̅er wes Uortimer ⁊  
 Pascent & Katiger.  
 & fwiðe monie oðere ⁊  
 þat comē mid þan broðere. 10  
 al þ̅ folc þider com ⁊  
 þat luueden þene cristtendom.  
 Alle þa riche ⁊  
 nomē heom to ræde.  
 & nomen þes kinges ældeste fune ⁊  
 þe to þan hufstinge wes icumen.  
 & mid muchele loft-fonge ⁊  
 heuen hiuen¹ to kinge.

*Vortim[er]*. þa wes Vortimer ⁊  
 cristine kīg þ̅er.  
 & Uortig² his fader ⁊  
 fulede þan hæðenen.

Forþ hii wende alle ⁊  
 to Londene his toune.  
 þar was mani heh Brut.  
 at þan ilke speche.  
 and þeos kinges þreo fones ⁊  
 alle hii were þider icome.

and fwiþe manie oþere ⁊  
 þat come mid þan broþeres.  
 al þat folk þider com ⁊  
 þat lofuede þane cristtendom.  
 And alle þe riche ⁊  
 nemen heom to reade.

þat hii wolde Vortimer ⁊  
 20 makie cristene kīg þ̅er.  
 and lete Vortigerne his fader ⁊  
 folwi þe heaðene.  
 Al þus hit bi-com ⁊

his town]. There was many a noble Briton at 'the husting [that conference], and the kings three sons they all were come thither; 'there was Vortimer, Pascent, and Catiger,' and very many others, that came with the brothers; all the folk came thither, that loved the Christendom. [And] all the rich *men* betook them to counsel, 'and took the kings eldest son, who was come to the husting, and with mickle song of praise elevated him to *be* king.' 'Then was [that they would make] Vortimer christian king there, and [let] Vortiger, his father, followed [follow] the heathens. [All thus it happened, as the counsel was done. And] Vortimer, the young

¹ hine?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Vortim<sup>9</sup> þe ȝunge kīg ⁊ [£84<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 wes swiðe kene þurh alle þing.  
 he fende Hengeft word ⁊  
 & Horfe his broðer.  
 buten heo hiȝenliche ⁊  
 uerden of þif riche.  
 he heom walde ufel don ⁊  
 baðe ablenden and anhon.  
 & his aȝene fader ⁊  
 he for-uaren walde.  
 & alle þa hæðene ⁊  
 mid hæȝere strengðe.  
 þa andfwærede Hengeft ⁊  
 cnihtene alre hendeft.  
 Her we wulleð wunien ⁊  
 wintres & fumeres.  
 riden & ærnen ⁊  
 mid þan kinge Vortigerne.  
 & alle þa mid Vortimere uareð ⁊  
 heo sculleð habben forȝen & kare.  
 þat iherde Vortimer ⁊  
 he wes wis & fwiðe iwar.  
 & lette beoden uerde ⁊  
 ȝeond allen þiffen ærde.

10

alfe þe read was idon.  
 and Vortimer þe ȝonge kīg ⁊  
 was kene þorh alle þing.  
 he het Hengeft hiȝenliche ⁊  
 faren vt of his riche.  
 oþer þou and þine veres ⁊  
 folle ligge here to-ȝere. [£69.c.1.]  
 þo anfwereð Hengeft ⁊  
 cniht alre hendeft.  
 Her we wollep wonie ⁊  
 wintres and fumeres.  
 riden and erne ⁊  
 mid þan king Vortigerne.  
 and al þat mid Vortimer vareþ ⁊  
 hii folle habbe forewe and care.  
 þat ihorde Vortimer ⁊  
 he was wis and fwiþe war.  
 he lette beden ferde ⁊  
 oueral þeof eorþe.

king, was 'most' keen through all things; he 'sent [ordered] Hengest 'and Hors his brother, unless' speedily 'they departed from this [to depart out of his] realm, 'he would evil do to them, both blind and hang; ["or thou and thy comrades shall presently lie here."]' 'and his own father he would destroy, and all the heathens, with great strength.' Then answered Hengest, fairest of all knights: "Here we will dwell winter and summer, ride and run with the king Vortiger; and all that with Vortimer go, they shall have sorrow and care!" Vortimer heard that,—he was wise and most wary,—and [he] caused a host to be assembled over all this land, that all

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þat al þ̅ cristine folc ⁊  
come to hirede.

Vortimer þe ȝunge king ⁊  
i Lundene heold his husting.

þe king hehte ælcne mon ⁊

þe luuede þene cristendom.

þat heo þa hæðene ⁊

hatien scolden.

& þa hæfden bringen.

to Vortimer þan kinge.

& twalf panewes habben to mede ⁊  
for his wel dede.

Vortimer þe ȝunge ⁊

verde ut of Lundene.

& Pascent his broðer ⁊

& Katig<sup>9</sup> þe oðer.

heom wes icumē word ⁊

þ̅ Hengeft læi at Epiford.

uppen þan watere ⁊

þe men nemneð Darewente. [c. 2.] þat Darwent his ihote.

þer comen to-somne ⁊

fixti þusend monnen.

an are halve wes Vortimer ⁊

Pascent & Categer.

& al þat leodliche folc ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

þat al þat cristene folc ⁊  
come to hire kinge.

þe king hehte echne mon ⁊

þat louede þane cristendom.

þat hii alle þe heapene ⁊

hatie folde.

and þe hefdes bringe ⁊

to Vortimer þan king.

and twelf panewes to mede ⁊  
habbe for his god dede.

Vortimer þe ȝonge ⁊

verde vt of Londene.

and Pascent his broþer ⁊

and Catiger þe oþer.

him was icome word ⁊

þat Hengeft lay at Epiford.

vppe þare watere ⁊

þat Darwent his ihote.

þar comen to-gadere ⁊

fixti þusend mǣne.

in on half was Vortimer ⁊

Pascent and Catiger.

and al þat cristene folc ⁊

the christian folk should come to 'his court [their king]. 'Vortimer, the young king, in London held his husting'; the king ordered each man that loved the Christendom, that they [all] should hate the heathens, and bring the heads of *them* to Vortimer the king, and have twelve pennies for reward, for his good deed. Vortimer the young marched out of London, and Pascent, his brother, and Catiger, the other; to 'them [him] was come word, that Hengest lay at Epiford, upon the water that 'men name [is named] Darwent. There came together sixty thousand men; on one half was Vortimer, Pascent, and Catiger, and all the [christian] folk that loved our Lord; on

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þat luueden ure drihten.  
 an oðere halve weorē drēches ⁊  
 mid Vortigerne þan kige.  
 Hengeſt and his broðer ⁊  
 & moni þuſend oðer ⁊  
 To-ſomne heo comen ⁊  
 & mid mæine on-ſloȝen.  
 þer uellen to þan grūde ⁊  
 twa & þritti hundred.  
 of Hængeſteſt<sup>1</sup> monnen ⁊ 10  
 & Hors wes for-wounded.  
 Catiger þer com ⁊  
 & mid his ſpere hine þurh-nom.  
 & Horf forð riht þer ⁊  
 for-woundede Catiger.  
 & Heng̃ gon to flonnen ⁊  
 mid al his driht-monnen.  
 & Vortigerne þe king ⁊  
 flæh forð alfe þe wið.  
 heo floȝen forð in to Kent ⁊ 20  
 & Vortimer heom after went.  
 uppen þere ſæ brimme ⁊  
 þer Hēgeſt þolede pine.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat louede vre drihte.  
 in þe oþer half were ⁊  
 mid Vortiger þan king.  
 Hengeſt and his broþer [c. 2.]  
 and mani þuſend oþer.  
 To-gadere hii come ⁊  
 and mainliche on-flowe.  
 þar fulle to þan grunde ⁊  
 two and þritti hundred.  
 of Hengeſtes men ⁊ 10  
 and his broþer ſore iwoundede.  
 Catiger þar com ⁊  
 and mid his ſpere him þorh-nom.  
 and he forþ riht þer ⁊  
 for-woundede Catiger.  
 And Hengeſt gan to flende ⁊  
 mid heaþene folke.  
 and Vortiger þe king ⁊  
 fleþ forþ afe þe wind.  
 hii floȝe forþ into Kent ⁊ 20  
 and Vortimer heom after wend.  
 vppe þare ſée rime ⁊  
 þar Hengeſt þolede pine.

the other half were 'chiefs' with Vortiger the king, Hengeſt and his brother, and many thousand others. Together they came (encountered), and combated 'with might [mightily]; there fell to the ground two and thirty hundred of Hengeſtes men; and 'Hors was [his brother ~~was~~ sore] wounded. Catiger came there, and with his spear ran him through, and 'Hors [he] forth-right there wounded Catiger. And Hengeſt gan to flee with 'all his followers [*i.e.* heathen folk], and Vortiger the king fled forth as the wind; they flew forth into Kent, and Vortimer went after them; there upon the sea-shore Hengeſt suffered pain; there they gan to halt, and fought very

<sup>1</sup> R. Hængeſtes.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þer heo gūnen at-stonden ⁊  
 & fuhten fwiðe longe.  
 fif þusende þer weorē iflæȝen ⁊  
 & idon of lif-dæȝen.  
 of Vortigernes<sup>1</sup> monnen ⁊  
 of þan hæðene cunnen.  
 Hengest hine biðohte ⁊  
 whæt he don mahte.  
 ifeh he þer bi-halues ⁊  
 ane hæuene fwiðe mære. 10  
 moni ſcipē gode ⁊  
 þer stoden i fæ flode.  
 Heo ifeȝen an heore riht hond ⁊  
 a fwiþe fæier æit-lond. [t. 85. c. 1.]  
*Tanate.* hit if ihatan Tænate ⁊  
 þiderward heo weoren whæte.  
 þer þa Sæxiſce men ⁊  
 þæ sæ ifohten.  
 & anan gunnen wendē ⁊  
 in to þan æit-londe. 20  
 & Bruttes heom after ⁊  
 mid feole cunne craften.  
 & heom to-heolden ⁊  
 in æchere hælue.

þar hii gonne aſtonde ⁊  
 and fohte fwiþe longe.  
 fif þouſēd þar were iflæȝe ⁊  
 and idon of lifdaiȝe.  
 of Hengestef men ⁊  
 of þan heapene cunne.  
 Hengest hine bi-þohte ⁊  
 wat he don mihte.  
 hi-seh he þer in flode ⁊  
 mani fipes gode.  
 Hii ſehe on hire riht hond ⁊  
 a fwiþe fair yllond.  
 þat his i-hote Tanate ⁊  
 þiderward iwere<sup>2</sup> wate.  
 þar þe Saxeſſe men ⁊  
 þare ſéé fohte.  
 and a-non wende ⁊  
 to þan yllonde.  
 and Bruttef heom after ⁊  
 mid fale cunne craftes.  
 and heom to-heolde ⁊  
 in euereche fide.

long; five thousand there were slain, and deprived of life-day, of 'Vortigers [Hengests] men, of the heathen race. Hengest bethought him what he might do; he saw there 'beside a haven very large,' many good ships 'there stood' in *the* 'sea'-flood. They saw on their right hand an island exceeding fair, 'it [that] is called Thanet; thitherward they were briak; there the Saxish men sought the sea, and anon 'gan pass [passed] 'in 'to the island. And *the* Britons *followed* after them, with many kind of crafts, and surrounded them on 'each [every] side; 'with ships and with boats they gan

<sup>1</sup> Hengeſtes?<sup>2</sup> hii were?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

mid ſcipē & mid baten ⁊  
 heo gunnen ſmiten & ſceoten.  
 Ofte wes Hængeſt wæ<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 & nauere wurf þane þa.  
 buten he dude oðerne ræd ⁊  
 þer he ſculden wurden dæd.  
 he nō ænne ſpere-ſcæft ⁊  
 þe wes long & ſwiþe ſtærc.  
 & dude a þene ænde ⁊  
 ænne mantel hende. 10  
 & cleopede to þan Brutten ⁊  
 & bed heom abiden.  
 he wold ſpæckē heom wið ⁊  
 & ȝirnen þeos kinges grið.  
 & mid griðe fēde ⁊  
 Uortigerne to londe.  
 to makien hiſ forward ⁊  
 þat he faren moſte.  
 wið uten mare ſconde ⁊  
 in to Sæx-londe. 20  
 Bruttes wende to londe ⁊  
 to Vortimere heore kinge.  
 and Hengeſt ſpæc wið Vortigerne ⁊ and Hengeſt ſpac wið Vortigene<sup>3</sup> ⁊

Ofte waf Hengeſt wo ⁊ [l. 69<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 ac neuere worſe þane þo.  
 bote he dude oþerne read ⁊  
 þar he moſte beo dead.  
 he nam one ſpere-ſaft ⁊  
 þat waf ſwiþe lang and ſtarc.  
 and dude o þan ende ⁊  
 one mantel hende.  
 and ſpac to þan Bruttes ⁊  
 wordes and ſaide þus.  
 Alle we ȝerneþ griþ ⁊  
 and to ſpeke þe kinge wiþ.  
 and mid loue fende ⁊  
 hiſ fader to londe.  
 wiþ þan þat we mote vare ⁊  
 mid<sup>2</sup> þiſ lure and þeos care.  
 and wiþ houte more ſconde ⁊  
 in to Saxlonde. 20  
 ¶ Bruttes wende to londe ⁊  
 to Vortim<sup>2</sup> hire kinge.

to smite and shoot.' Oft was Hengest woe, 'and [but] never worse than then; unless he did other counsel he should there be dead. He took a spear-shaft, that was long and 'very' tough, and put on the end a fair mantle, and 'called [spake words] to the Britons, and 'bade them abide [said thus]; he would speak with them, and yearn the kings grace ["We all yearn grace, and to speak with the king], and send 'Vortiger [his father] with 'peace [love] to *the* land, 'to make this agreement [on condition] that 'he might [we may] depart [with this loss and this care, and] without more shame into Saxland. *The* Britons went to *the* land, to Vortimer their king, and

<sup>1</sup> wæi *pr. m.*, but *i* erased.<sup>2</sup> *R.* mid.<sup>3</sup> *R.* Vortigerne.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

of rune fwiðe derne.	roune fwiþe deorne.
Vortigerne wende a þat lond :	Vortiger wende a lond :
& ber anne 3erd an hif hond.	and bar an 3eord on his hond.
þa while þa heo of griðe speken :	þe wile hii of griþe speke :
Saxes i fciþe leopen.	Saxeffe in fiþe leope.
& droʒen up to coppe :	and droʒen vp to toppe :
hæ3e heore feiles.	hehe hire feyles.
& wenden mid wedere :	and wende mid wedere :
i þere fæ wilde.	in þare féé wilde.
& letten i þiffen londe : [c.2.] 10	and bi-lefde in þiffe londe :
wiuues & heore children.	wifuef and hire children.
& Vortigerne king :	and Vortigerne þane king :
þe heom luuede þurh alle þing.	þat heō louede þorh alle þing.
Mid muchele mod-kære :	Mid mochele mod-care :
Hengeft gon awæi uarē.	Hengeft gan awei vare.
swa longe heo ferdē :	so longe hii wendē :
þat ine Saxlonde heo weoren.	þat ine Saxlonde hii weren.
þa weorē inn Bruttene :	þo were here :
Bruttes fwiðe balde.	Bruttef fwiþe bolde.
heo droʒen on heom muchel mod :	
& duden al þat heom þuhte god.	
& Vortimer þe 3unge : 22	and Vortimer þe 3onge king :
wes duhti mon þurh alle þig.	was dohti man þorh alle þing. [c.2.]
& Vortigerne his fader :	And Vortiger his fader :
ferde 3eond þas Bruttene.	

Hengest spake with Vortiger, in most secret converse. Vortiger went on 'the' land, and bare a wand in his hand. The while 'that' they spake of peace *the* Saxons leapt into *their* ships, and drew up high their sails to *the* top, and proceeded with weather in the wild sea, and left in this land *their* wives and their children, and Vortiger the king, who loved them through all things. With much grief of mind Vortiger gan away fare; so long they proceeded, that in Saxland they were (arrived). Then were 'in Britain [here] *the* Britons most bold; 'they assumed to them mickle mood, and did all that seemed good to them'; and Vortimer, the young king, was doughty man through all things. And Vortiger, his father, 'proceeded

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ah nes hit nan fwa wac mon :  
 þ̅ him ne hokerede on.  
 & fwa he gon wondrien :  
 fulle fif wintren.  
 & his fune Vortimer :  
 riche kīg wuneden her.  
 & al þif leodifce folc :  
 luueden hine fwiðe.  
 he wes milde ælche cnafe :  
 & tahte þan folke godef læȝe. 10  
 þan ȝungen & þan ælden :  
 hu heo criftindom ſculdē halden.  
 Writen he ſende to Rome :  
 to þan pape wel idone.  
 þe wes ihaten ſceint Romæin :  
 al criftindom he make fain.  
 Biſcopes he nom twæin :  
 hali men heo weoren bæien.  
 Germain & Leois :  
 of Ceore & of Træis. 20  
 heo uerden ut of Rome :  
 fwa þat heo hider comen.  
 þa wef fwa bliðe Vortimer<sup>1</sup> :

alle men hēnde.  
 and ſo gan he wondri :  
 folle fif ȝere.  
 And his ſone Vortimer :  
 riche king was her.  
 and al þis leodiffe folk :  
 lofuede hine fwiþe.  
 þe king ſende to Rome :  
 to þan pape wel idone.  
 þat was ihote ſeint Romaȝn :  
 he wetede þane criftendom.  
 Biſſopes he nam tweiene :  
 holi men hit were beiene.  
 Germaȝn and Lous :  
 of Geroȝne and of Troȝes.  
 hii verde vt of Rome :  
 ſo þat hii hider come.  
 þo was ſo bliþe Vortimer :

over this Britain,' 'but it was no man so poor, that did not revile him [all men reproached], and so he gan to wander full five years. And his son Vortimer 'dwelt [was] here powerful king, and all this nation loved him greatly. 'He was mild to each man, and taught the folk Gods law, the young and the old, how they should hold Christendom.' 'He [The king] sent 'letters' to Rome, to the excellent Pope, who was named Saint Romain,—'all Christendom he made glad [he had charge of the Christendom]. —He took two bishops, holy men 'they [it] were both, Germain and Louis, of 'Auxerre [Geroyne] and of Troyes; they proceeded out of Rome, so that they hither came. Then was Vortimer so blithe as he was never ere 'here';

<sup>1</sup> Vortimer *pr. m.*



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

swa he nes næuere ær her <sup>1</sup> .	fo he nas neuere her.
he & alle his cnihtes ⁊	he and alle his cnihtes ⁊
iwenden uoð <sup>2</sup> rihtes. [185 <sup>b</sup> .c.1.]	wende forþrihtes.
an here bare uoten ⁊	on hire barefote ⁊
to-ȝeines þan biſcopen.	to-ȝenes þis biſſopes gode.
& mid michelere murhðe ⁊	and mid mochele murthe ⁊
muðes þer cuſten.	muþes þar cuſte.
Nu þu miht iheren ⁊	Nou þou miht ihere ⁊
of þā kinge Vortimere.	of þan kinge Vortimere.
heu he ſpac wið ſeint Germain ⁊	hou he ſpac wiþ ſeint Germain ⁊
for heore kume he wes fæin. 11	of hire come he was fain.
Luſteð me lauerd-ðinges ⁊	Luſteþ louerdlinges ⁊
ich æm þiſſere leodene king.	ich ham þis leod king.
ich hatte Vortimer ⁊	ich hote Vortimer ⁊
mi broðer hatte Catimer <sup>3</sup> .	
Vortig <sup>4</sup> ne hehte ure fader ⁊	and Vortigerne mi fader.
him uulieð unrædes.	
He hað ibroh <sup>4</sup> i þis lond ⁊	He haueþ ibroht in þiſſe londe ⁊
hæðene leoden.	heapene leode.
ah we heom habbeoð iflemed ⁊ 20	ac we ȝam habbeþ iflemid ⁊
al ſwa <sup>5</sup> ure uulle iuan.	aſe vre folle fon.
& mid wepnē ifelled ⁊	and mid wepne ifalled ⁊

he and all his knights went forth-right on their bare feet towards 'the [these good] bishops, and with much mirth mouths there kissed. Now mayest thou hear of the king Vortimer, how he spake with Saint Germain, —'for [of] their coming he was glad. "Listen 'to me,' lordings, I am king of this people; I hight Vortimer, 'my brother hight Catiger;' [and] Vortiger 'hight our [my] father,—' miscounsel followeth him!' He hath brought into this land heathen people; but we have put them to flight, as our full foes, and felled with weapon many thousands 'of them,' and sent

<sup>1</sup> *Redundant?*<sup>2</sup> *R. uorð.*<sup>3</sup> *R. Catiger.*<sup>4</sup> *ibroht?*<sup>5</sup> *Written at first al ſwa aſe, but aſe expuncted by the same hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

of heom ueole þufen <sup>1</sup> .	fale þoufendes.	[[f.70.c.1.]
& ifend heom ouer sæ stran <sup>2</sup> ⁊	and ifend heom ouer féé strem ⁊	
þ heo nauere fel ne cumen aȝan.	þat hii neuere ne come a-ȝen.	
& we scullen an londe ⁊	And we folle here ⁊	
luuiæn ure drihten.	lofuie vre drihte.	
godef folc uroæfrien ⁊		
& freondliche hit halden.		
wurðen milf <sup>3</sup> liðe ⁊		
wið þa lond-tilien.		
churichen we scullen hæbȝen ⁊	10 cherches we folle hehȝi ⁊	
& hæðene-scipe hatien.	and heapensipe hatie.	
Habbe alc god mon ⁊		
hif rihte ȝif godd hit an.		
& ælc þrel & ælc wælh ⁊		
wurðe iuroeid.		
& hef ich bi-teche eou an hond ⁊		
al freo ælc chiric-lond.		
& ich for-ȝiue ælchere widewe ⁊	And ich for-ȝeue ech widewe ⁊	
hire lauerdes quide.	here louerdes cwide.	
	20 and ech loue to hoȝer ⁊	
	afe þoh were broþers.	
& þus we scullen an ure dāȝen ⁊ [c.2.]	and fo we folle a-neoþeri ⁊	
aniðeri Hēgeftes laȝen.	Hengeftes lawes.	

them over sea-stream, so that they never shall come again. And we shall 'in land [here] worship our Lord, 'comfort Gods folk, and friendly it maintain, and be mild to the land-tillers'; churches we shall honor, and heathendom hate. 'Each good man shall have his right, if God it will grant, and each thral and each slave be set free. And here I give to you in hand each church-land all free;' and I forgive to each widow her lords testament. [and each shall love other as though *they* were brothers.] And 'thus [so] we shall 'in our day' put down Hengests laws, 'and him

<sup>1</sup> þufend?<sup>2</sup> stran? The true reading is strem, which in the MS. stran much resembles.<sup>3</sup> milf pr. m., but e erased.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

&amp; hine &amp; hif hæðene-scipe ⁊

þæ he hider brohte.

&amp; minne fader biƿwak ⁊

þurh fwiƿe his craftes.

þurh his dohter Rouwenne ⁊

mine uader he uor-radde.

&amp; mi uader swa uuele agon ⁊

scunede þene cristindom.

&amp; þa hæðene laȝe ⁊

luuede to fwiðe.

þa we sculleð sceonien ⁊

þa while þa we luuien.

þa answare feint Germain ⁊

for swulche worden he wes fain.

Ich þonkie mine drihte ⁊

þe scop þes dages lihte.

þet he swulche mildce ⁊

sent to moncunne.

þas biſcopes ferdeneond þis lond ⁊ þeos biſſops verde oucrał þat lond ⁊

&amp; fetten hit al a godes hond.

&amp; þene cristindom heo rihten ⁊

&amp; þat volc þer to dihten.

&amp; seoððen þer æfter sone ⁊

heo iwenden to Rome.

þat mine fader bi-fwoc ⁊

mid his luþer craftes.

þorh his dohter Rowenne ⁊

mine fader he for-radde.

And mi fader so vuele agan ⁊

þat he sonede þane cristendō.

and þe heaþene lawes ⁊

10 lofuede to fwiþe.

þat we solle hatie ⁊

wile þat we libbeþ.

þo answered Germain ⁊

for þane wordes he was fain.

Ich þonkie mine drihte ⁊

þat sop þes dages lihte.

þat he soche milse ⁊

sent to mankunde.

þeos biſſops verde oucrał þat lond ⁊

and fette hit a godes hond.

and þane cristendom hii rihte ⁊

and þat folk hii dihte.

and suppe þar after sone ⁊

he<sup>1</sup> wende to Rome ⁊

and his heathendom that he hither brought, 'and [who] deceived my father 'through [with] his 'treacherous [wicked] crafts; through his daughter Rowenne he betrayed my father. And my father so evilly began, [that he] shunned the Christendom, and loved the heathen laws too much, which we shall 'avoid [hate] 'the' while that we live.' Then answered 'Saint' Germain,—for 'such [the] words he was glad:—"I thank my Lord, who shaped the day-light, that he such mercy sent to mankind!" These bishops proceeded over 'this [all the] land, and set it 'all' in Gods hand, and the Christendom they righted, and the folk 'thereto [they] instructed; and then

<sup>1</sup> hii?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& sæiden þan papen :  
 þe Roumain wef ihaten.  
 hu he<sup>1</sup> hafden her idon :  
 iriht þene cristindom.  
 & þuſ hit ane stūde :  
 stod a þan ilkē.

Vo we ȝet a Uortigerne :  
 alre kinge fi he ærmeſt.  
 he luuede Rouwen :  
 of þan hæðenne cūne.  
 Hengeſtes dohter :  
 heo þuhten him wel ſofte.

Rouwenne heo bi-þohte :  
 whæt heo don mahte. [[l. 86.c.1.]  
 hu heo mahte hire fader wreken :  
 & hire freondene deað.  
 Ofte heo ſende ſonde :  
 to Uortimere þon kinge.  
 heo him ſende maðmes :  
 moniare cunne.

of ſeoluer & of golde :  
 þe beſte of æie londe.  
 heo ȝirnede hiſ ære :  
 þ heo moſte wonien here.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and feide þan pope :  
 þat Romain was i-hote.  
 ou hii here hadde i-don :  
 a-riht þane criſtendom.

Go we ȝet to Vortigerne :  
 alre king beo him harmes.  
 he louede Rowēne :  
 10 of þan heaþene cunne.

Rowenne hire bi-þohte :  
 wat ȝeo don mihte.  
 ou ȝeo miht hire fader wreke :  
 and hire louerd hiſ teone.  
 Ofte ȝeo ſende ſonde :  
 to Vortimer þan kinge.

20

þat ȝeo moſte wonie here :

soon thereafter they departed to Rome, and said to the Pope, who was named Romain, how they had done here, restored the Christendom. 'And thus it stood a time in the same wise.' Go we yet (again) to Vortiger,—of all kings be he most wretched!—he loved Rowenne, of the heathen race, 'Hengests daughter, she seemed to him well soft.' Rowenne bethought her what she might do, how she might avenge her father and her friends death [lord his grief]. Oft she sent messengers to Vortimer the king; 'she sent him treasures of many a kind, of silver and of gold, the best of any land; she asked his favor,' that she might here dwell with Vortiger his father,

<sup>1</sup> heo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid Uortig<sup>9</sup> ne hif fader ⁊  
 & foluen his rædes.

mid his fader Vortigere.

þe king uor his fader bone ⁊  
 ȝette hire hir bone<sup>1</sup>.

and ȝeo wolde wel don ⁊  
 ād onderfange cristendom.

butē þat heo sculde wel don ⁊

þe king hire grantede ⁊

luuien þene cristindom.

þorh bidding of his fader.

al þ þe king ȝirned ⁊

Ac wolawo þat Vortimer ⁊

al heo hit ȝette.

of hire þong nas war.

Ah wale þat Uortimer ⁊

wolawo þat þe gode king ⁊

of hire þonke næf wær.

of hire þohte nuſte nobūg.

wale þat þe gode king ⁊

of þan ilke ſwikedom ⁊

of hire þonke nuſte na þing.

þat þohte þe luþere wiſmā.

þ he nuſte þene ſwikedom ⁊

Hit bi-ful in one time ⁊

þe þohte þa luðere wimman.

ȝeo nam hire to reade.

Hit ilomp an are tide ⁊

þat ȝeo wolde fare ⁊

heo nom hire to ræde<sup>2</sup>.

to þan kinge Vortimere.

and don bi his reade ⁊

alle hire neode. 20 [don ⁊ al hire neode.

and to wlche time heo mihte wel and woche time ȝeo miht wel don ⁊

vnderuongen þene cristindom. onderfange þane cristendom.

Forð heo gon riden ⁊

Forð ȝeo gan wende ⁊

‘and follow his counsels.’ The king for his fathers request granted to her her prayer, ‘except that she should [and she would] do well, [and] ‘love the [receive] Christendom; ‘all that the king yearned, all she it granted [the king granted *it* to her, through *the* prayer of his father]. But alas! that Vortimer was not aware of her thought; alas! that the good king of her thought knew nothing; ‘that he knew not the [of that] treachery that the wicked woman thought! It befell on a time she betook her to counsel, [that she would go to the king Vortimer, and do by his counsel] all her need, and ‘at’ what time she might do well, *and* receive the Christendom.

<sup>1</sup> Or bene; the MS. is dubious.

<sup>2</sup> There is evidently an omission here.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

to Uortimer þan kinge.  
 þa heo hine imette ⁊  
 uære heo hine igrette.  
 Hal wrð þu lauerd king ⁊  
 Bruttene deorling.  
 Ich æm þe icomen to ⁊  
 cristindom ich wulle auon.  
 an þan ilke dæie ⁊  
 þe þu seolf demest.  
 Ða wæs Uortimer þe king ⁊ 10  
 bliþe þurh alle þing.  
 he wende þat hit weore soð ⁊  
 þat þeo scaðe sæide.  
 Bemen þer bleowen ⁊  
 bliffe wes on hirede.  
 forð mon brohte þat water ⁊  
 bi-foren þan wun<sup>1</sup> kinge.  
 heo seten to borde ⁊  
 mid muchelure bliffe.  
 Ða þe king hafde iæten ⁊ 20  
 þa eoden þeines-men to mete.  
 in halle heo drunken ⁊  
 harpen þer dremden.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiii.

to Vortimer þan kinge.  
 þo 3eo hine imette ⁊  
 faire 3eo hine grette.  
 Hayl worþ þou louerd king ⁊  
 Bruttene deorling.  
 Ich ham þe icome to ⁊  
 cristendom to vnderfon.  
 in þan ilke daie ⁊  
 þat þou þi seolf demest.  
 Ðowas Vortimer þe king ⁊ [f.70<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 bliþe þorh alle þing.  
 he wende þat hit were soþ ⁊  
 þat þe scape seide.  
 Forþ me brohte þat water ⁊  
 to waffe hire hondes.  
 þo seten hii to borde ⁊  
 mid mochelere bliffe.  
 Ðo þe king hadde i3eote ⁊  
 þo 3eode fweines to mete.  
 in halle hii dronken ⁊  
 [c.2.] harpef þar dremden.

Forth she gan 'ride [proceed] to Vortimer the king; when she him met, fair she greeted him: "Hail be thou, lord king, Britains darling! I am come to thee; Christendom 'I will [to] receive, on the same day that thou [thy]self deemest fit." Then was Vortimer the king blithe through all things; he weened that it were sooth what the wretch said. 'Trumpets there blew, bliss was in *the* court'; forth men brought the water 'before the king [to wash their hands]; they sate [then] at *the* board with much bliss. When the king had eaten, then went *the* 'thanes-men [swains] to meat; in hall they drank; harps there resounded. 'The treacherous

<sup>1</sup> Query, if not superfluous? A plummet mark in the margin of the MS. indicates some error.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þa fwiçfulle Rouuenne ⁊  
 eode to are tunne.  
 þer wes idon in ⁊  
 þes kinges deoreſte win.  
 nom heo an honde ⁊  
 ane bolle of ræde golde.  
 & heo gon ſcencen ⁊  
 on þas kinges benche.  
 þa heo iſæh hire time ⁊  
 heo fulde hir ſcale of wine. 10  
 & at-foren al þan dringe ⁊  
 heo eode to þan kinge.  
 & þuſ hailede him on ⁊  
 þe fwiçfulle wimman.  
 Louerd king wæſhail ⁊  
 uor þe ich am fwiðe uæin.  
 Hercne nu muchel ſwikedom ⁊  
 of þere luðere wimmon.  
 hu heo gon ſwiken þer ⁊  
 þene king Uortimer. 20  
 þe king heo uæire under-uæng ⁊  
 to hiſ fæie-ſiðe.  
 Fortimer ſpæc Bruttifc ⁊  
 & Rouuenne Saxifc.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þo a-roſ Rowenne ⁊  
 and eode to hire hinne.  
 3eo eode war in ⁊  
 was þe kinges beſte win.  
 nam 3eo an honde ⁊  
 one bolle of reade golde.  
 and 3eo gan to ſenche ⁊  
 vp on þe kýngeſ benche.  
 þo 3eo i-feh hire tyme ⁊  
 3eo fulden<sup>1</sup> hire fulle<sup>2</sup> of wine.  
 and a-mong al þan þringe ⁊  
 3eo eode to þan kinge.  
 and þuſ hailede him on ⁊  
 þe fwiçfolle wiſman.  
 Louerd king waſſail ⁊  
 for þe ich ham fwiþe fain.  
 þe king here onderfeng ⁊  
 to hiſ feiſiþe.  
 Vortimer ſpæc Bruttuſ ⁊  
 and Rowenne Saxiffe.

[Then arose] Rowenne, [and] went to 'a tun [her inn], 'wherein was placed [she went wherein was] the king's 'dearest [best] wine. She took in hand a bowl of red gold, and she gan to pour out [up] on the king's bench. When she saw her time, she filled her 'vessel [bowl] with wine, and 'before [among] all the company she went to the king, and thus the treacherous woman hailed him (drank his health): "Lord king, wassail, for thee I am most joyful!" 'Hearken now *the* great treachery of the wicked woman, how she gan there betray the king Vortimer!' The king received her fair, to his *own* destruction. Vortimer spake British, and Rowenne Saxish; to

<sup>1</sup> fulde?<sup>2</sup> bolle?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þan king þuhte gomen inoh ⁊  
 for hire spæche he loh.  
 Hærcne hu heo toc on ⁊  
 þuſ<sup>1</sup> ſwicfulle wimman.  
 In hire boſme heo bar ⁊  
 bi-neoðen hire titten.  
 ane guldene ampulle ⁊  
 of attere i-fulled.  
 & þa luðere Rouenne ⁊  
 dronc þene bolle.  
 þat heo hafde half don ⁊  
 after þes kinges dom.  
 þa while þe þa king loh ⁊  
 þa ampulle heo ut droh.  
 þene bolle heo ſette to hire chin ⁊  
 þat atter heo halde in þat win.  
 & ſeoðen heo þa cuppe ⁊  
 bitahte þan kinge.  
 þe kig dronc al þat win ⁊  
 & þat atter þer in.  
 þe dai forð eode ⁊  
 bliſſe wes on hirede.  
 for Uortimer þe gode kig ⁊  
 of þan ſwikedom nuſte na þig.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þane king hit þohte game inoh ⁊  
 for hire ſpeche he ſmere loh.  
 Hercne ou ȝeo tock an ⁊  
 þes wickede wifman.  
 In hire boſome ȝeo bar ⁊  
 bi-neoþe hire týttes.  
 one ampulle ⁊  
 of hatter ifulled.  
 and þe luþere Rowenne ⁊  
 10 drang þane bolle.  
 þat ȝeo half hadde idon ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 after þe kinges dom.  
 þe wile þat þe king loþ ⁊  
 þe ampulle ȝeo vt droh.  
 þe bolle ȝeo ſette to hire chin ⁊  
 þat hatter ȝeo heolde þar in.  
 and ſupþe ȝeo þe bolle ⁊  
 bi-tahte þan kinge.  
 þe king drong al þat win ⁊  
 20 and þat hatter þar in.  
 He þat was ſo god king ⁊  
 of þeos ſwikedome nuſte noþing.

the king [it] ſeemed game enow, for her ſpeech he laughed. Hearken  
 how ſhe took on, this deceitful woman! In her boſom ſhe bare, beneath  
 her teats, a 'golden' phial filled with poiſon; and the wicked Rowenne  
 drank (or drenched) the bowl, until ſhe had half done, after the king's  
 will. The while that the king laughed, ſhe drew out the phial; the bowl  
 ſhe ſet to her chin, the poiſon ſhe poured 'in the wine [therein], and  
 afterwards ſhe delivered the 'cup [bowl] to the king; the king drank  
 all the wine, and the poiſon therein. 'The day forth paſſed, bliſs was  
 in the court,' for Vortimer the [He that was ſo] good king of 'the [this]

<sup>1</sup> þaſ?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

for he ifah Rouuene' [f. 86 <sup>b</sup> . c. 1.]	for he i-feh Rowenne'
halden þene bolle.	holde þane bolle.
& drinken half þat ilke win'	ād drong alf þat ilke win'
þat heo heuede idon þer in.	þat was idon þar in.
þa hit com to þare nihte'	þat him <sup>1</sup> com to þā nihte'
þa to-dælleden hired-cnihtes.	þo dealde hire cnihtes <sup>2</sup> .
& þa ufele Rouuene'	and þe vuele Rowenne'
wende to hire inne.	wende to hire ine.
& alle hire cnihtes'	and alle hire cnihtes'
mid hire uorð rihtes.	mid hire forþ rihtes.
þa heihte heo hire fweines'	þo hehte 3eo alle'
& ec þaie þeines.	
þat heo an hiȝinge'	
heore hors sculden fadelien.	hire horfen fadeli.
& heo swiþe stille'	and deorneliche'
stelen ut of buruwe.	and <sup>3</sup> stelen vt of borewe.
& wenden al bi nihte'	and al bi nihte ride'
to þwōcchestre uorð rihte.	into þwangchestre.
& þer swiðe fafte'	and þare swiþe fafte'
bi-clufen heom in ane castle.	bi-clufe 3am in þan castle.
& luȝē Uortigerne'	and seg to Vortigerne'
þat his sunne hine wolde biliggen.	þat his sone hine wolde bi-ligge.
& Vortig <sup>2</sup> ne þe fwikele king.	And Vortiger þe fole king'
ilæfde þare læfing.	ilefuede hire lefing.

treachery knew nothing, for he saw Rowenne hold the bowl, and drink half of the same wine that 'she had [was] put therein. When it came to the night, then separated the courtiers; and the evil Rowenne went to her inn, and all her knights with her forth-right. Then ordered she 'her swains, and eke the thanes [all], 'that they in haste' their horses 'should saddle [to saddle]; and 'they most still [secretly] to steal out of *the* burgh, and 'proceed [ride] all by night 'to [into] Thwongchester 'forth-right,' and there most fast (securely) to inclose them in 'a [the] castle, and 'lie [say] to Vortiger, that his son would besiege him. And Vortiger the 'false [foolish]

<sup>1</sup> þa hit?<sup>2</sup> hired-cnihtes?<sup>3</sup> Redundant?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

<p>Nu vnder-ȝat Uortimer hiȝ fune ȝ Nou wiȝte Vortimer hiȝ ſone ȝ          þ he heȝde atter inomen. þat he [hadde] hatter inome.          ne mihte na lechecraft ȝ ne mihte non lechecraft ȝ          helpen him næ wiht. him heolpe nowiht.          He nom feole ſonden ȝ He ſende hiȝ ſondes ȝ          &amp; ſende ȝeond hiȝ londe. a-mong alle hiȝ londes.          &amp; hehte alle hiȝ cnihtes ȝ and hehte alle hiȝ cnihtes ȝ [£71.c.1.]          to him comē forð rihtes. comen ſwiȝe forþ rihtes.          þa þ folc waȝ icumē ȝ þo hii were alle icome ȝ          þa waȝ þe king ſwiðe untrumed. þo waȝ þe king ſwiȝe ontromed.          þa ȝirnde þe king heore grið ȝ 11 þo þe king mid god griȝ ȝ          &amp; þuȝ he ſpac hem alle wið. to 1 alle hiȝ cnihtes he ſpac þuȝ wiȝ.          Alre cnihtē wrð eow beȝt ȝ Alre cnihtes worþ ou beȝt ȝ          þe heren æie kige. þat ſarueȝ enȝ king.          þer niȝ nan oðer red ȝ þar niȝ of me non oȝer read ȝ          buten hiȝēdliche ich beo dæd. bote hiȝenliche ich worþe dead.          hir ich biȝæche eow mi lond ȝ here ich bi-take ȝou an hond ȝ          al mi feoluer &amp; al mi gold. al to-gadere mi kinelond.          &amp; alle mine maðines ȝ          eowre mōſcipe iȝ þa mare. 20          &amp; ȝe forð rihtes ȝ And ȝeo forþrihtes ȝ          ſenden after cnihtes. ſendeȝ after cnihtes.</p>	
--	--

king believed 'the [her] leasing. Now 'understood [knew] Vortimer, his son, that he had taken poison; might no leechcraft help him any whit. He 'took many [sent his] messengers, 'and sent over [among all] his 'land [lands], and bade all his knights to come 'to him [quickly] forth-right. When 'the folk was [they were all] arrived, then was the king exceeding ill; then 'asked' the king 'their [with good] peace, 'and' thus he spake with 'them all [all his knights]: "Of all knights are ye best that serve any king; there is [of me] no other hap, but *that* speedily I be dead. Here I deliver you 'my land, all my silver and all my gold [in hand my kingdom all together], 'and all my treasures,—your worship is the greater.' And ye forth-right send after knights, 'and give them silver and gold, and hold ye

<sup>1</sup> *Redundant.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

&amp; ȝeuen heom foluer &amp; gold? [c. 2.]

&amp; hældeð ȝe feolf eowre lond.

& wrekeð eow ȝif ȝe cunnen?  
of Sexiſce monnen.and werieþ ou ȝef ȝe conne?  
wiþ Saxiſſe manne.

uor weonne ſo ich beo uorð faren? for wane ich ham forþ fare?

Hengeſt eow wul makien kare. Hengeſt ȝou wole makie care.

&amp; nimeð mine likamæ?

And nimeþ mine licame?

&amp; leggeð an chæſten.

and leggeþ on cheſte.

&amp; ledeð me to þare ſie ſtrōde?

and ledeþ me to þare ſée ſtrōd?

þer Saxiſce men wulleð cumen a þare Saxiſſe men wollep comen a

anan ſwa heo me þerwiten? [lond? anon ſo hii me þare witeþ? [lond.

awæi heo wulleð wenden.

12 a-wei hii wollep wende.

nouðer quic ne dead?

noþer cwik noþer dead?

ne durren heo me abiden.

ne dorren hii me a-bide.

Imong þiſſen dome?

Amang al þiſ motýng?

dæð<sup>1</sup> iwarð þe gode king.

dead iwarþ þe gode king.

þer wes wop þer wes rop?

&amp; reuliche iberen.

Heo nomen þes kinges licame?

Hii neme þiſ kinges licame?

&amp; laddē to Lundene.

20 and ladde to Londene.

&amp; biſides Bælȝes-ȝate?

and biſides Bellinges-ȝate?

fæire hine bi-burȝeden.

faire hine leide.

&amp; nawiht hine ne ladden?

and noht him ne ladde?

alfe þe king heihte.

afe him feolf hehte.

*yourselves your land,* and *'avenge [defend] you, if ye can, 'of [against] Saxish men; for when 'as' I 'be [am] departed, Hengest will make care to you. And take ye my body, and lay in a chest, and carry me to the sea strand, where Saxish men will come on land; anon as they know me there, away they will go; neither alive nor dead dare they abide me!'* Among [all] this discourse the good king died; 'there was weeping, there was lament, and piteous cries!' They took the kings body, and carried to London, and beside Belyns-gate 'buried [laid] him fair; and carried him 'no whit [not] as 'the king [*he* himself] ordered. Thus 'lived [it was of] Vor-

<sup>1</sup> dead?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þuſ liuede Uortimer ⁊	þuſ hit was of Uortimer ⁊	
& þuſ he endede þar.	and þuſ he hendede her.	
þa iueolen Bruttes ⁊	þo nuſte Brutteſ ⁊	
a balufulle ræde.	none gode readef.	[c. 2.]
heo nomen Uortigerne anan ⁊	hii nemen Vortiger a-non ⁊	
& bi-tahten heom <sup>1</sup> þefne kenedom.	and bi-tock him al þiſ lond.	
welle reoulich weſ þer a þing ⁊	wola <sup>2</sup> roulich waſ þare a þing ⁊	
nu waſ Vortigerne æft king.	nou waſ Vortiger heft king.	
Uortigerne nom hiſ fonde ⁊	Vortiger nam hiſ fonde ⁊	
& fende to Sexlonde.	and fende to Saxlonde.	10
& grette wel Hengeſt ⁊	and grette wel Hengeſt ⁊	
cnihten alre væireſt. [þinge <sup>3</sup> ⁊	cniht <sup>3</sup> alre faireſt.	
& grette hine <sup>4</sup> & bad hine hi-	and bad him an hiþenge ⁊	
comen to þiſſe londe.	come to þan kinge.	
& mid him brouhte here ⁊	and mid him brohte here ⁊	
an hundred ridærē.	an hundred rideres.	
For þat wite þu þuſ alle þing ⁊	For þat wite þou þorh alle þing ⁊	
þat dead iſ Vortimer þe king.	þat dead hiſ Vortimer þe king.	
& fiker þu miht hider comen ⁊		
for dæd iſ Fortimer mi ſune.		20
Niſ þe non need to bringen ⁊	Niſ hit no need to bringe ⁊	
mid þe muchel genge. [[t. 87. c. 1.]	wiþ þe mochel genge.	
leſte ure Bruttes ⁊	leſte vre Brutteſ ⁊	

timer, and thus he ended 'there [here]. Then *the* Britons 'fell into evil [knew no good] counsel; they took Vortiger anon, and delivered him [all] this 'kingdom [land]; there was a well rueful thing, now was eft Vortiger king! Vortiger took his messengers, and sent to Saxland, and greeted well Hengeſt, faireſt of all knights, and bade him in haſte to come to 'this land [the king], and with him ſhould bring here a hundred riders. "—For that know thou through all things, that dead iſ Vortimer the king, 'and ſure (ſafe) thou mayeſt hither come, for dead iſ Vortimer my ſon.' [It] iſ no need 'for thee' to bring with thee much folk, leaſt our Britons

<sup>1</sup> him?<sup>2</sup> wel?<sup>3</sup> cniht?<sup>4</sup> *These three words are, apparently, superfluous.*<sup>5</sup> an hiþenge?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

æft<sup>1</sup> beon abolȝen.  
 ꝥ eow æft feorwen ⁊  
 fiȝen bitweonen.  
 Hengeft ſomnede uærde ⁊  
 of feole cunne ærde.  
 ꝥat he hefde to iwiten ⁊  
 ſeouen hundred ſcipen.  
 & ælc ſcip<sup>2</sup> he dihte ⁊  
 mid þreo hundred cniten.  
 i þere Temefe at Lundene ⁊  
 Hengeft com to londe.  
 ꝥat word com ful ſone ⁊  
 to Uortigerne þan kinge.  
 ꝥ Hengeft waſ in hauene ⁊  
 mid ſeouen hundred ſcipene.  
 ofte waſ Uortig<sup>3</sup> ne wa ⁊  
 neuer wrfe þan þæ.  
 & Bruttes weoren fari ⁊  
 & ſeorhful an heorte.  
 nuſten heo an world-riche ⁊  
 ræd ꝥat heom weore ilike.  
 Hengeft waſ of ufele war ⁊  
 ꝥat he wel cudde þær.

heft beo abolwe.  
  
 Hengeft ſomnede ferde ⁊  
 of fale cun erpe.  
 ꝥat he hādde to iwite ⁊  
 ſoue hudred ſipes.  
 and [ech] fiþ he dihte ⁊  
 mid þreo hundred cnihtes.  
 in þare Temefe at Londene ⁊  
 10 Hengeft com to londe.  
 ꝥat word com ful ſone ⁊  
 to Vortiger þan kinge.

ofte waſ Vortiger wo ⁊  
 ac neuere worfe þane þo.  
 and Bruttes weren fori ⁊  
 and forhfulle on heorte.

Hengeft waſ of vue<sup>3</sup> war ⁊  
 ꝥat he wel cudde þær.

eft be angry, 'so that sorrow eft come between you.' Hengest assembled a host of many kind of land, so that he had to wit seven hundred ships, and each ship he filled with three hundred knights; in the Thames at London Hengest came to land. The tidings came full soon to Vortiger the king, 'that Hengest was in haven with seven hundred ships.' Oft was Vortiger woe, [but] never worse than then, and the Britons were sorry, and sorrowful in heart; 'they knew not in the worlds realm counsel that were to them pleasing.' Hengest was of evil ware,—that he well shewed

<sup>1</sup> There has been some attempt to alter this word, and the reading is doubtful.

<sup>2</sup> This word is sup. ras.

<sup>3</sup> R. vuele.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

he nom fone his fonde ⁊  
 & fende to þan kinge.  
 & grette Uortigerne king ⁊  
 mid fwiðe uaire worden.

he nom fone his fonde ⁊  
 and fende to þan kinge.

& feide þat he was icumen ⁊  
 fwa fader sculde to his fune.  
 mid fibbe & mid faihte ⁊  
 he wolde on fele wunien.

and faide þat he was icome ⁊  
 fo fader folde to his sone.  
 mid fibbe and mid feahte ⁊  
 he wolde here libbe. [£71<sup>b</sup>. c.1.]

grið he wolde luuien ⁊  
 unriht he wolde scunien. 10

grið he wolde habben ⁊

grið he wolde holden.

& al þif leodifce folc ⁊

luuien he wolde.

& Uortig<sup>9</sup>ne þene king ⁊

luuien þurh alle þing.

[geft ⁊

·Ah he hefde ibroht i þif lond ⁊ And ich habbe i-broþt cwaþ Hen-  
 ut of Sexleoden.

seouen hundred scipene ⁊

of hæðene folke. 20 mani cnihtes gode.

þ beoþ þe alre wihteste men ⁊ [c.2.]

þ wunieð under funnen.

& ich wulle quað Hengeft ⁊

and ich hā wolle leade ⁊

leden heo<sup>1</sup> to þan kinge.

alle to þan kinge.

there,—he took soon his messengers, and sent to the king, ‘and greeted Vortiger *the* king with words most fair,’ and said that he was come as a father should to his son; with peace and with friendship he would ‘dwell in amity [here live]; ‘peace he would love, *and* wrong he would shun; peace he would have, peace he would hold; and all this nation he would love, and love Vortiger the king through all things.’ ‘But he had brought [“And I have brought,” quoth Hengest], ‘in this land, out of Saxland,’ ‘seven hundred ships of heathen folk, “who are the bravest of all men that dwell under *the* sun [many good knights], and I will, ‘quoth Hengest,’

<sup>1</sup> heom?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

to an i-fette dæie ⁊  
 at-foren al his duȝeðe.  
 & þe king ſcal ariſen ⁊  
 and of þan cnihten cheoſen.  
 twa hundred cnihten ⁊  
 to leden to hiſ fihten.  
 þe ſculen biwiten þene king ⁊  
 durewurðliche þurh alle þing.  
 & ſeoððen ſcullen þa oðere ⁊  
 uaren to heore ærde. 10  
 mid fibbe & mid sæle ⁊  
 aȝen to Sæxlonde.  
 & ich wulle bi-læuen ⁊  
 mid monnen alre ſeleft.  
 ꝥ is Uortig⁹ne þe king ⁊  
 þe ich luuie þurh alle þing.  
 ꝥ word com to Brutten ⁊  
 hu Hengeſt bihæhte heom.  
 þa weoren heo uæine ⁊  
 uor uæiren hiſ worden. 20  
 & ſetten grið & ſetten frið ⁊  
 to whulchen ane uirſte.  
 þe king an ane dæie ⁊  
 wolde iſeon þaſ duȝeðe.  
 þat iherde Hengeſt ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xlii.

to one ifette daiȝe ⁊  
 bi-vore alle hiſ cnihtes.  
 And þe king ſal a-riſe ⁊  
 and of þan folk cheoſe.  
 two hundred cnihtes ⁊  
 to leade to hiſ fihte.  
 þat ſolle bi-witie þane king ⁊  
 deorworliche þorh alle þing.  
 and ſuppen ſolle þe oþer ⁊  
 fare to hire riche.  
  
 And ich wolle bi-léue ⁊  
 mid manne alre leueſt.  
 þat hiſ Vortiger þe king ⁊  
 wan ich luuie þorh alle þing.  
 þat word com to Brutteſ ⁊  
 ou Hengeſt heom bi-hehte.  
  
 þo ſetten hii griȝ ⁊  
 for alle ſpeken him wiȝ.  
  
 þat hi-horde Hengeſt ⁊

lead them [all] to the king, at a set (appointed) day, before all his 'people [knights]. And the king shall arise, and choose of the 'knights [folk] two hundred knights, to lead to his fight, who shall guard the king preciously through all things. And afterwards the others shall depart to their 'land [realm], 'with peace and with amity, again to Saxland'; and I will remain with *the* 'best [dearest] of all men, that is Vortiger the king, whom I love through all things.' The tidings came to *the* Britons how Hengest them promised; then 'were they fain for his fair words, and' set [they] peace 'and set amity' 'to such a time *that* the king on a day would see this folk [for all to speak with him]. Hengest heard that, fairest of all knights;

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

cnihten alre uæireft.  
 þa wes he fwa bliðe ⁊  
 fwa he nes neuere ær an lifue.  
 for he þohte swike ⁊  
 þene king an his riche.  
 Her iwrað Hengeft ⁊  
 cnihtē uor-cuðeft.  
 swa bið æuerælc mon ⁊  
 þe bi-swikeð þe him wel on.  
 Wha wolde wenen ⁊  
 a þiffere weorlð-riche.  
 þat Hengeft swikē þohte ⁊  
 þene king þat hæfde his dohter.  
 for nis nauere nan mon ⁊ [f. 87<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.] ac þar nis no man so wis ⁊  
 þat men emai mid fwikedome ouer-þat me ne mai bi-swike.  
 Heonomen ænne ifetnedæi ⁊ [gan. þe dai was ifet ⁊  
 þat scolden þas duȝeden.  
 cumen heom to-soinne ⁊  
 mid sæhte & mid fibbe.  
 an ane uælde þe wæs muri ⁊ æ  
 an uaft Ambresburi.  
 þe stude wes Ælengē ⁊  
 nu hatte hit Stan-henge.

cniht alre faireft.  
 þo was he so blipe ⁊  
 so he nas neuere her on lifue.  
 for he þohte swike ⁊  
 þane king on his riche.  
 10 Wo wolde wene ⁊  
 in þiffe worle-riche riche<sup>1</sup>.  
 þat Hengeft swike þohte ⁊  
 þane king þat hadde his dohter.  
 ac þar nis no man so wis ⁊  
 þat me ne mai bi-swike.  
 þe dai was ifet ⁊  
 ac feue ferde þe bet.  
 in on stude swipe mury ⁊  
 bi-fides Ambresburi.  
 þe stude þo was Elinge ⁊  
 þat nou hatte Stonhenge.

[Ambre]-  
buri.[Stanhenge]-  
ges.

then was he so blithe as he was never ere in life, for he thought to deceive the king in his realm. 'Here became Hengest wickedest of knights; so is every man that deceiveth *one*, who benefits him.' Who would ween, in this world's realm, that Hengest thought to deceive the king who had his daughter! 'For [But] *there* is 'never any man [no man so wise], that men may not 'over-reach with treachery [deceive]. 'They took an appointed day, [The day was set, but few fared the better!] 'that these people should come them together with concord and with peace,' in a 'plain that was [spot most] pleasant beside Ambresbury; the place was 'Ælengē; [then Elinge, that] now hight 'it' Stonehenge. There Hengest the traitor either

<sup>1</sup> Sic MS.



MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

þer Hengeſt þe ſwike ⁊  
 æiðer bi worde & bi write.  
 cuðde þan kinge ⁊  
 þat he cumen wolde.  
 mid hiſ mō-uerde ⁊  
 to wurðſcipe þes kinges.  
 ah he nalde bringen on drihte ⁊  
 buten þreo hundred cnihten.  
 þa alre wiſeſte men ⁊  
 þe he mihte uinden. 10  
 & þe kīg brohte al ſwa ueole ⁊  
 baldere þeinen.  
 and þeo weoren þa alre witereſte ⁊  
 þe wuneden on Bʰttene.  
 mid goden heore iweden ⁊  
 al buten wepnen.  
 þat heom no to-wurðen ⁊  
 þurh þriſt of þau wepnen.  
 þuſ heo hit ſpeken ⁊  
 & æft heo hit to-brekē. 20  
 for Hængeſt þe leod-ſwike ⁊  
 þuſ he hiſ gon learen.  
 þ ælc nome a long ſax ⁊  
 & læiden bi hiſ ſconke.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þar Hengeſt þe ſwike ⁊ [[c. 2.]  
 aiþer mid worde and mid write.  
 cudde þan kinge ⁊  
 þat he come wolde.  
 ac he nolde bringe ⁊  
 bote þreo hundred cnihtes.  
 þe alre wiſeſte men ⁊  
 þat he mihte finde. 10  
 and þe king folde alfe vale ⁊  
 bringe in hiſ halue.  
 mid gode hire wedes ⁊  
 al wiþ oute wepne.  
 þuſ i<sup>1</sup> þo ſpeke ⁊  
 and eft hit to-breke. 20  
 for Hengeſt þe wickede ⁊  
 þuſ hiſ gan leore.  
 þat ech neme a long ſex ⁊  
 and leide bi hiſ ſoncke.

'by [with] word and 'by [with] writ made known to the king, that he would come 'with his forces, in honor of the king'; but he would not bring 'in retinue' but three hundred knights, the wisest men of all that he might find. And the king should bring as many [on his side] 'bold thanes, and who should be the wisest of all that dwelt in Britain,' with their good vestments, all without weapons, 'that no *evil* should happen to them, through confidence of the weapons.' Thus they 'it [then] spake, and eft 'they' it brake; for Hengest the 'traitor [wicked] thus gan 'he' teach his *comrades*, that each should take a long sæx (knife), and lay by his shank, within his hose, where

<sup>1</sup> hii?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

wið inne hiſ hofe ⁊	wiþ ine hiſ hofe ⁊
þer hit hit habben <sup>1</sup> hæle.	þar he hit habbe mihte.
þēne heo comen to-ſomne ⁊	and wanne hii come to-gadere ⁊
Sæxes & Bruttes.	Saxiſſe and Bruttiffe.
þenne queð Hēgeſt ⁊	þanne leggeþ heom on ⁊
cnihten alre ſwikeleſt.	non þat ȝe ne ſparie.
Hail ſeo þu lauerd king ⁊	þo ſaide Hengeſt to þan king ⁊
ælc þe iſ þin vnderlig.	[c. 2.] þat was heheſt ouer him.
ȝif æuere æi of þine gume ⁊	ȝef here hiſ eny cniht ⁊
gære haueð biſiden.	10 þat wepne bere bi hiſ ſide.
ſend hit mid freondſcipe ⁊	ſende hine mid fronſipe ⁊
feor from uf feoluen.	for fram vs feolue.
& beon we on ſele ⁊	
and motegen of ſahte.	
nu <sup>2</sup> we maȝen mid fibbē ⁊	and ſpeke we of ſibbe ⁊
ure liſ libben.	ou we mawe libbe.
þuſ þe balde-fulle <sup>3</sup> mō ⁊	þuſ [þe] ſwicfolle man ⁊
bi-ſprac <sup>4</sup> þer þa Bruttes.	bi-ſwoc þare þe Bruttet.
þa andſwarede Uortiger ⁊	þo anſwerede Vortiger ⁊
her he weſ to vnwar.	20 to onwiſ he waſ þar.
ȝif here iſ æi cniht ſwa wod ⁊	ȝef here hiſ eny cniht ſo wod ⁊

he it might 'hide [have; and] When they 'came [should come] together, *the* Saxons and Britons, ["then lay on them, *so* that ye spare none!"] then 'quothe [said] Hengeſt, 'most deceitful of all knights': "' Hail be thou, lord king, each is to thee thy subject! [to the king, who was highest over him] If 'ever any of thy men hath [here is any knight, who beareth] weapon by [his] side, send 'it [him] with friendship far from ourselves, 'and be we in amity,' and speak [we] of 'concord [peace]; how we māy 'with peace our lives live.'" Thus the 'wicked [treacherous] man 'spake there to [deceived there] the Britons. Then answered Vortiger,—'here [there] he was too 'unwary [unwise],—" If here is any knight so wild, that hath weapon by *his*

<sup>1</sup> he hit mihte? *A plummet mark in the margin indicates that there is some error committed here by the scribe.*

<sup>2</sup> hu?

<sup>3</sup> balefulle?

<sup>4</sup> biſwac?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat wepnen habbe bi fiden.  
 he scal leofen þa hōd ⁊  
 þurh hif aȝene brand.  
 buten he hit sone ⁊  
 heonene ifende.

þat wepne habbe bi fide.  
 he fal leofe þe hond ⁊  
 þorh his owene brond.

Heore wepnen heo awæi sendē ⁊  
 þa nefden heo noht an honden.  
 cnihtes eoden upward ⁊  
 cnihtes eoden adonward.  
 ælc spac wið oðer ⁊ 10  
 swulc he weore his broðer.  
 þa weoren Bruttes ⁊  
 imænged wið þan Saxef.  
 þa cleopede Hengeft ⁊  
 cnihtene swikelæft.  
 Nimeð eoure sexes ⁊  
 sele mine bernas.

Hire wepne hii a-wei sende ⁊  
 þo nadden hii noh<sup>1</sup> an honde.  
 cnihtes eoden vþward ⁊ [l. 72. c. 1.]  
 cnihtes eoden dunward.  
 10 ech spac wiþ oþer ⁊  
 afe hit were broþers.  
 þo weren Bruttus ⁊  
 imeng wiþ þe Saxiffe.  
 þo faide Hengeft ⁊  
 cnih<sup>2</sup> alre swikeleſt.  
 Nemeþ oure seaxes ⁊

& ohtliche eou ſturieð ⁊  
 & nænne ne ſparieð.

and hahtliche ȝou ſtorieþ.

Bruttes þer weoren riche ⁊ 20  
 ah ne cuðe heo noht þa ſpeche.  
 whæt þa Saxiſce men ⁊  
 feiden heom bi-tweonen.  
 Heo breoden ut þa ſæxes ⁊

Bruttus þar weren riche ⁊  
 ac hii ne couþe noht of þe ſpeche.  
 wat Saxiffe men ⁊  
 feide heom bi-twine.  
 Hii breiden vt þe ſaxes ⁊

side, he shall lose the hand through his own brand, 'unless he soon send it hence.' " Their weapons they sent away, then had they nought in hand;—knights went upward, knights went downward, each spake with other as if 'he [it] were 'his brother [brothers]. When *the* Britons were mingled with the Saxons, then 'called [said] Hengest, of [all] knights most treacherous, "Take your sæxes, 'my good warriors,' and bravely bestir you, 'and spare *ye* none '! " Noble Britons were there, but they knew not [of] the speech, what 'the' Saxish men said them between. They drew out the

<sup>1</sup> noht?<sup>2</sup> cniht?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

alle bihalues.  
 heo fmitē an riht half :  
 heo fmiten an lift half.  
 biuoren & bihindē :  
 heo leiden heom to grunde. [f. 88.]  
 alle heo floȝen :  
 þat heo neh comen.  
 of þes kinges mōnen :  
 [fone] þer feollen.  
 feouwer hundred & fife : 10  
 wa wef þan kinge on liue.  
 þa Hengeft hine igrap :  
 mid grimmē hiſ gripen.  
 & bi þan mantle hine ibræid :  
 þat breken þa strenges.  
 & Sæxes him fette to :  
 & woldē þene king fordon.  
 & Hengeft hine gon werien :  
 & nalde hit noht iþeuen.  
 ah he heold hine ful fafte : 20  
 þe while þat feht ilaſte.  
 þer wes moni riche Brut :  
 biræfued þan liue.  
 summe heo fluȝen ſwiðe :  
 ofer þene feld brade.

alle bi-halues.  
 hii fmiten in eche halue :  
 bi-vore and bi-hinde.  
 alle hii floȝen :  
 þat hii neh comen.  
 of þis kinges folke :  
 fone þar fulle.  
 four hundred and fifue :  
 wo was þan king a-lifue.  
 Hengeft grop þan king :  
 and breide hine to him.  
 bi þane mantel :  
 þat þe strenges breke.  
 And Saxiſſe fote to :  
 and wolde þane king for-do.  
 ac Hengeft hine gan werie :  
 and nolde hit noht þolie.  
 ac he heold hine wel fafte : 20  
 þe wile þat fiht ilaſte.  
 þar was mani riche Brut :  
 bi-reiued of þan lifue.

sæxes, all aside; they smote on *the* right [each] side, 'they smote on *the* left side'; before and behind 'they laid them to *the* ground'; all they slew that they came nigh; of *the* [this] kings 'men [folk] there fell [soon] four hundred and five,—woe was the king alive! 'Then' Hengest grasped 'him [the king] 'with his grim gripe,' and drew him [to him] by the mantle, so that the strings brake. And *the* Saxons set on him, and would the king kill, 'and [but] Hengest gan him defend, and would not suffer it; but he held him 'full [well] fast, the while the fight lasted. There was many noble Briton bereaved of the life! Some 'they fled quickly over the

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& wereden heom mid stanen ⁊  
for wepnen næfdē heo nane.

ſomme werede heom mid ſtones ⁊  
for wepne nadden hii none.

þer wes swiðe hard fiht ⁊

þer feol moni god cniht.

þer wes of Salesburi ⁊

an oht bonde icumen.

æne muchelne mæin clubbe ⁊

he bar an his rugge.

þa wes þer an aðele eorl ⁊

Aldolf.

Aldulf ihatē.

cniht mid þan beſte ⁊

he æhte Glochæſt<sup>c</sup>.

he to þan cheorle leap ⁊

swulc hit a liun weoren.

& binom him þe clubbe ⁊

þa he bar an rugge.

æure wulcne ſwa he ſwat<sup>1</sup> ⁊

þer forð rihtes he iwat.

bi-foren & bi-hiden ⁊

he laide heom to grunde.

þreo & fifti he þer floh ⁊

& feoððe to ane ſte<sup>a</sup> droh.

he leap uppen ſtede ⁊

þar was a bond of Salusburi ⁊

þat bar on his honde.

ane mochele club ⁊

for to breke ſtones.

þeos ifeh a ſtrong eorl ⁊

10

Aldolf ihote.

cniht mid þan beſte ⁊

[c.2.]

þat hahte Glouceſtre.

he to þan cheorle leap ⁊

alfe hit a lȝon were.

and bi-nam him þane club :

þat he bar on his rugge.

wan he þar mid ſmot ⁊

þar riht he a-bod.

bi-vore and bi-hinde ⁊

20

he leide ȝam to grunde.

þreo and fifti he þar of-ſloþ :

and ſuppe to his ſtede droh.

he leap vppe þan ſtede ⁊

broad plain, and' defended them with stones, for weapons had they none. 'There was fight exceeding hard; there fell many a good knight!' There was a 'bold' churl of Salisbury 'come'; 'he [who] bare 'on [in] his 'back [hand] a great 'strong' club [for to break stones]. 'Then was there a noble earl [A strong earl saw this], named Aldolf, knight with the best; 'he [who] possessed Gloucester; he leapt to the churl, as if it were a lion, and took from him the club, that he bare on [his] back; whom'soever' he smote [therewith], there 'forth'-right he died; before and behind he laid them to *the* ground. Three and fifty there he slew, and afterwards drew

<sup>1</sup> ſmat?<sup>2</sup> ſtede?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& swiðe gon him riðe.	and swiþe gan ride.
he ærde <sup>1</sup> to Glochæstre ⁊	[c.2.] in to Gloucestre ⁊
& þe ȝatef læc ful feste.	and þe ȝeates lok faste.
& anan forð rihtef ⁊	And a-non forþ rihtes ⁊
lette ærmi his cnihtes.	lette harmi his cnihtes.
ȝeond alle þan londe ⁊	and wende ouer al þat lond ⁊
& nomen þat heo funden.	and nemen wat hii funde.
heo nomen orf heo nomen corn ⁊	
& al þat heo quic funden.	
& brohten to burhȝe ⁊	10 and brohte to borewe ⁊
vnnimete bliffe.	onimete bliffe.
þa ȝæten heo tūden uafte ⁊	þe ȝates hii tunde faste ⁊
& wel heom biwuften.	and wel ȝam bi-wufte.
Lete we hit þuſ ſtondē ⁊	Lete we þis ſtonde ⁊
& ſpeken of þan kinge.	and ſpeke we of þan kinge.
Sexes him leoppe to ⁊	Saxiſſe him leope to ⁊
& wolde þene king for-do <sup>2</sup> .	and wolde þane king for-do.
Hēgeſt cleopede uorð rihtes ⁊	ac Hengeſt faide forþrihtes ⁊
Aſwikeð mine cnihtes.	Bleueþ mine cnihtes.
ne ſculle ȝe hine noht for-faren ⁊	ne ſolle ȝe hine noht for-fare ⁊
for uſ he haueð ihaued mucle care. for vs he haueþ ihaued care.	
& he haueð to quene ⁊	22
mine dohter þa iſ ſcone.	

towards 'a [his] steed; he leapt upon [the] steed, and quickly gan 'him' rīde; 'he rode to [into] Gloucester, and the gates locked 'full' fast. And anon forth-right caused his knights to arm, [and marched] over all the land, and took what they found; 'they took cattle, they took corn, and all that they found alive,' and brought to *the* burgh with great bliss; the gates they closed fast, and well them guarded. Let we 'it thus [this] stand, and speak [we] of the king. The Saxons leapt towards him, and would kill the king, [but] Hengest 'called [said] forth-right, "Stop, my knights, ye shall him not destroy; for us he hath had 'much' care,

<sup>1</sup> ærnde ⁊<sup>2</sup> for is interlined by a second hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ah alle his burhȝes ⁊	ac alle his borewes ⁊
he ſcal uf bitæchen.	he ſal vs bi-take.
ȝif he wule his lif broken ⁊	ȝef he wolle libbe ⁊
oðer ællef him if balu ȝiueðe.	and his limes habbe.
þa wes Uortig <sup>9</sup> ne ⁊	þo was Vortigerne ⁊
væfte ibunden.	faſte i-bunde.
gyuef ſwiðe grete ⁊	gyues ſwiþe grete ⁊
heo duden an his foten.	idon <sup>1</sup> a-boute his feote.
ne moſte he nauere biten mete ⁊	ne moſte he neuere bite mete ⁊
ne wið nenne freond ſpeken. 10	no wiþ none freonde ſpeke.
ær he heom hæfden iſworen ⁊	her he ȝam hadde iſwore ⁊
uppe halidom þat wes icoren.	vppe halidomes þat were icore.
þat he al þiſ kine-lond ⁊	þat he al þiſ kinelöd ⁊
wolde bitæchen heom an heond.	wolde bi-take ȝam an hond. [L79 <sup>b</sup> .c.1.]
burhȝes & caſtles ⁊	
& al his coine-lond <sup>2</sup> .	
& al ſwa he idode ⁊	and al ſo he dude ⁊
alfe hit idemed waſ.	alfe hii hit wolde.
& Hengeſt nom an his hond ⁊	And Hengeſt nam on his hond ⁊
al þiſ riche kine-lond. 20	al þiſ riche kenelond.
& delde his leodē ⁊	
muchel of þiſſe londe.	
he ȝæf æne eorle al Kent ⁊ [L88 <sup>b</sup> .c.1.]	he ȝeof an cniht al Kent ⁊

'and he hath for queen my daughter who is fair.' But all his burghs he shall deliver to us, if he will 'enjoy his life, or else is sorrow given to him [live, and have his limbs]." Then was Vortiger fast bound; gyves exceeding great they put 'on [about] his feet; he might not ever bite meat, nor speak with any friend, ere he had to them sworn upon 'relic [relics] that 'was [were] choice, that he would deliver them all this kingdom in hand, 'burghs and castles, and all his kingdom.' And all so he did, as 'it was deemed [they it would]. And Hengeſt took in his hand all this rich kingdom, 'and divided among his people much of this land.' He gave 'an

<sup>1</sup> hii don ?<sup>2</sup> kinelond ? A second hand has erased the d, and altered lo into la.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

afe hit bi Lundene went.  
 he ȝæf his stiwarde Æst-fex<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 & his burðeine ⁊  
 Middel-fax bitahte.  
 þa cnihtes hit at-fengen ⁊  
 and ane while heo heolden.  
 þa while Uortig<sup>2</sup> ne ⁊  
 ȝeond þif lond ferde.  
 & bitahte Hengeft ⁊  
 hæȝen his burhȝes. 10  
 & Hengeft forð rihtes ⁊  
 dude þer in his cnihtes.  
 þa while muchel smol folc ⁊  
 læi inne Suð-sæxe.  
 & inne Middel-sæxe ⁊  
 muchel of þan kuþe.  
 & inne Æst-sæxe ⁊  
 heore aðelefte ȝuȝeðe.  
 Mete heo ferdan ⁊  
 al þat heo funden. 20  
 heo for-læȝen þa wif ⁊  
 & godes læȝen breken.  
 heo duden i þan londe ⁊

earl [a knight] all Kent, as it went (lay) by London; 'he gave his steward Essex, and on his chamberlain *he* bestowed Middlesex [and many other knights he made rich thanes, so that a turf of land did not remain to Vortiger in hand]. 'The knights received it, and a while they held it, the while Vortiger proceeded over this land, and delivered to Hengest his noble burghs. And Hengest forth-right placed his knights therein; the while much of *the* baser people lay in Sussex, and in Middlesex much of the race, and in Essex their noblest folk. *The* meat (provisions) they carried off, all that they found; they violated the women, and Gods law brake; they did in the land all that they would.' *The* Britons saw 'that

<sup>1</sup> A line, or part of one, seems here wanting.



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

al þ̅ heo wolden.

þ̅ ifeȝen Bruttes ʹ

þat balu wes on londe.

&amp; hu Sæxifce men ʹ

ifȝen weoren to heom.

Brutt<sup>1</sup> fcuþten þan londe nome ʹ Bruttus fip̅te þat lond name ʹ

for Sæxifce monnen fcome.

for Saxiffe menne fame.

&amp; for þan fwike-dome ʹ

þat heo idon hæfdē.

for þan þe heo mid cnifen ʹ 10

and for þan þat hii mid fexes ʹ

biræueden heom at liue.

bi-refde ȝam of lifues.

þa cleopeden heo þat lond al ʹ

þo cleopeden hii þat lond ʹ

[Æst]-f̅. Æst-fæx &amp; West-fæx.

Eftfex ʹ and Westfex.

[Wef]-f̅. & þat þridde ʹ Middel-Sæx<sup>2</sup>.and þat [þridde] Middelfex<sup>2</sup>.[Midde]-f̅. Vortig<sup>3</sup>ne þe king ʹ

bi-tæhte heom al þis lond.

þ̅ ne bilæfde him an heonde ʹ

a turf of londe.

& him feolf Vortig<sup>3</sup>ne ʹ

And Vortiger gan wende ʹ

flæh ouer Sæuærne.

20 ouer Séévarne.

feor in to Wellifce lond ʹ

for into Walfe lond ʹ

&amp; þer he gon at-ftonde.

and þar he gan at-ftonde.

&amp; his hired mid him :

[this], 'that mischief was in *the* land, and' how '*the* Saxish men were come to them [these Saxons governed]. *The* Britons shaped to the land a name for *the* shame of Saxish men, 'and for the treachery that they had done;' [and] for that *cause* that they with 'knives [sæxes] bereaved them of life, then called they 'all' the land East-Sex and West-Sex, and the third Middle-Sex. 'Vortiger the king gave them all this land, so that a turf of land did not remain to him in hand.' And Vortiger 'himself' 'fled [gan wend] over Severn, far into Welsh-land, and there he gan tarry, 'and his retinue with him, that poor was become.' And 'he [Vortiger] had in hoard treasure

<sup>1</sup> Brut *pr. man.*<sup>2</sup> Perhaps a line is here missing.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe hæne wes iwurðen.  
 & he hæfde an horde ⁊  
 gerfume swide<sup>1</sup> stronge.  
 he lette his men riden ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 widen & fiden.  
 and lette him to bonnen ⁊  
 of ælchef cunnes monnen.  
 þe æuere wolden his feoh ⁊  
 mid freondscipe ȝirnen.  
 þ̅ iherden Bruttes ⁊ 10 þ̅ iherden Scottes.  
 to him heo comen ⁊  
 þer after ful fone.  
 an ælchere fide ⁊  
 þider heo gūnē riden.  
 monies hæȝes monnes sūe ⁊  
 for golde & for gærfume.  
 þa hæfde he to-fomne ⁊  
 sixti þufend mounen.  
 þa sumnede he þa richen ⁊ 20 þa wel cuðen ræden.  
 Gode men ræðed<sup>3</sup> me ræd ⁊  
 uor me if swiðe muchel neod.  
 whar ich mihte on wilderne ⁊

And Vortiger hadde in horde ⁊  
 garifom swiþe riche.  
 and lette to him banni ⁊  
 of eche cunnef manne.  
 þat euere wolde his feo ⁊  
 mid māfiþe ȝeorne.  
 þat ihorde Bruttus ⁊  
 þat hi-horde Sottes<sup>2</sup>.  
 to him hii come ride ⁊  
 in euer eche fide.

mani beh mannef fone ⁊  
 for gold and for garefome.  
 þo hadde he to-gadere ⁊  
 fixti þufend manne.  
 to ȝam faide þo þer ⁊ 20 þe pore king Vortiger.  
 Gode men redeþ me read ⁊  
 for nou ich habbe moche  
 war ich mihte in wilderne ⁊ [neod.

most 'large [rich]; 'he caused his men to ride wide and far,' and caused to be summoned to him men of each kind, whoso ever would yearn his fee with friendship. That heard *the* Britons, that heard *the* Scots; they came to him [riding] 'thereafter full soon'; on 'each [every] side 'thither they gan ride, many a noble mans son, for gold and for treasure. When he had together sixty thousand men, then 'assembled he the nobles that well could advise [said there to them the poor king Vortiger]: "Good men, say me counsel, for 'to me is [now I have] great need, where I might (may)

<sup>1</sup> swiðe?<sup>2</sup> Scottes?<sup>3</sup> rædeð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

wurchen ænne castel.  
 þer ic mihte an inne :  
 lubbe<sup>1</sup> mid mine monnen.  
 & halden hine wið Hēgeft :  
 mid hæzere strengðe.  
 a þat ich mihte bæt :  
 burhzen iwinē.  
 wræken me a mine feondē :  
 þa mine wines feolden.  
 & habbeð al mi kine-lond : 10  
 awræht ut of mire hond.  
 & þuf me iflæmed :  
 mine fulle ifan.  
 þa andswarede a wif mon :  
 þe wel cudðe ræden.  
 Luft me nu lauereð king :  
 ich þe cuðe god þing.  
 uppen þan munte of Reir :  
 ich wullen ræden.  
 þat þu caste<sup>2</sup> wurche : 20  
 mid stronge stan walle.  
 for þer þu miht wunien :

werchen one castel.  
  
 þat ich mihte holde : [c. 2.]  
 wiþ Hengeft þan stronge.  
 forte þat ich mihte bet :  
 borewes a-winne.  
  
 vp ȝam þat habbeþ al mi lond :  
 a-wrept vt of mine hond.  
  
 þo answerede a wifman :  
 þat couþe wel reade.  
 Luft nou mi louereð king :  
 and ich þe wolle cuþe god þing.  
 vppe þan munte of Kaier :  
 ich þe wolle reade.  
 þat þou reare castel<sup>3</sup>.

in wilderness work a castle, 'wherein I might live with my men, 'and hold it [that I might hold] against Hengest 'with great strength [the strong], until that I might *the* better win *my* burghs, 'and avenge me of my enemies who felled my friends, and [from them who] have all my 'kingdom [land] wrested out of my hand, 'and thus driven me *out*, my full foes ? ' ' Then answered a wise man, who well could counsel : " Listen now 'to me, [my] lord king, [and] I will shew to thee *a* good thing ; upon the mount of 'Reir [Kaier] I will [thee] advise, that thou 'work [rear] *a* castle 'with strong stone wall, for there thou mightest dwell, and live with joy ; and yet thou

<sup>1</sup> libbe ?<sup>2</sup> R. castel.<sup>3</sup> A line appears to be wanting here.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& libben mid winne.  
 & ȝet þu hauest a þire hond ⁊  
 muchel feoluer & gold.  
 to halden þine hired ⁊  
 þa þe helpen scal.  
 & swa þu miht on liue ⁊ [189.c.1.]  
 libben alræ sæleſt.

þa andſwere þe king ⁊  
 Let hit cuðen an hiȝing.  
 ȝeond muchele mire ferde ⁊ 10  
 þat ich faren wulle.  
 to þan munte of Reir ⁊  
 & ræren þer caſtel.  
 Forð ferde þe kīg ⁊  
 & þa ferde mid him.  
 þa heo þider comen ⁊  
 dic heo bigunnen ſone.  
 hornes þer bleouwen ⁊  
 machūnes heowen.  
 lim heo gunnen bærenen ⁊ 20  
 ȝeond þat lond ærnen.  
 & al wæſt Walſce<sup>2</sup> lond ⁊  
 fettē a Uortigernes hond.  
 al heo hit nomen ⁊

þo anſwerede þe king ⁊  
 Let hit cuþe an hiȝeng.  
 ouer al þan folke ⁊  
 þat ich wende wolle.  
 to þan munte of Kayr ⁊  
 a-rere þar caſtel.  
 Forþ ferde þe king ⁊  
 and þe ferde mid him.  
 þo hii þider come ⁊  
 dich i<sup>1</sup> dolue ſone.

hast in thy hand much silver and gold, to maintain thy people who shall thee help; and so thou mightest in life live best of all.'” Then answered the king: “Let it be made known in haste, over ‘my numerous host [all the folk], that I will go to the mount of ‘Reir [Kayr], ‘and’ rear there a castle.” Forth went the king, and the host with him; when they thither came, a dyke they ‘began [dug] soon; ‘horns there blew, machines hewed; lime they gan to burn, and over the land to run; and all west Welsh-land set in Vortigers hand; all they it took, that they nigh came.’ When ‘the

<sup>1</sup> hii?<sup>2</sup> The last two letters of wæſt and Walſce are by second hand, sup. ras.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat heo neh comen.

þa þe dic wes idoluen ⁊

&amp; allunge ideoped.

þa bi-gunnen heo wal ⁊

a þere dic ouer al.

&amp; heo lim &amp; stan ⁊

leiden to-fomne.

of machunes þer wes wunder ⁊

fif and twenti hūðred.

A dæi heo leiden þene wal ⁊ 10

a niht he feol ouer al.

a marwe heo hine arædden ⁊

a niht he gon to-reofen.

fulle feouen nihte ⁊

fwa heom dihte.

ælcche dæi heo hine aredden ⁊

&amp; ælcche niht he gon reofen.

þa wes fari þe king ⁊

&amp; forliful þurh alle þing.

fwa wes al þa uerde ⁊ 20

ladliche of-færed.

for æuere heo lokede ⁊

whænne Hengeſt come an uenan.wane Hengeſt come liþe.

þo he was hi-dolue ⁊

alfe he beo folde.

þo leideine<sup>1</sup> wal ⁊

a þan dich oueral.

of machuns þar was wonder ⁊

fif and twenti hundred.

A dai hii leide þane wal ⁊ 10

a niht feol oueral.

a morewe hii hine arerde ⁊

a niht he gan to-refe.

folle fouenihte ⁊

þos<sup>2</sup> þis worck ham dihte.

þo waf fori þe king

and forþfolle þorh alle þing.

dyke [it] was dug, 'and thoroughly deepened [as it should be], then 'began [laid] they a wall on the dyke over all, 'and they laid together lime and stone'; of machines there was plenty,—five and twenty hundred! In *the* day they laid the wall, in *the* night 'it' fell over all; in *the* morrow they reared it, in *the* night it gan to tumble! Full a se'nnight 'so *it* [thus this work] them served; 'each day they raised it, and each night it gan fall!' Then was the king sorry, and sorrowful through all things; 'so was all the host terribly afraid'; for ever 'they [he] looked when Hengeſt should 'come upon *them* [arrive]. The king was 'full [well] sorry, and sent after sages,

<sup>1</sup> leiden hii?<sup>2</sup> þus?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe king wes ful færi :  
 & fende after witien.  
 æfter world-wife monne :  
 þa wiſdom cuðen.

& bad heom leoten weorpen :  
 & fondien leod-runen.

fondien þat foðe :

[c. 2.]

mid heore fiȝe-craften.

whær on hit weore ilōg :

þat þe wal þe wes swa ſtrong. 10  
 ne moſte moſte<sup>1</sup> niht longes :

nauere iſtonden.

þas weorlde-wife men :

þer a twa wendē.

fūme heo wenden to þan wude :

fūme to weien-læten.

heo gunnen loten weorpen :

mid heore leod-runen.

fulle þreo nihten :

heore craftes heo dihten. 20

ne mihtē heo nauere finden :

þurh nauere nane þinge.

whær on hit weore ilong :

þat þe wal þat wes swa ſtrong.

þe king was wel fori :  
 and fende after wittie.

and bad heom lotes werpe :

and fondie þat foþe :

war on hit were ilong :

þat þe wal þat was ſo ſtrang. [f. 73. c. 1.]

ne mihte nih<sup>2</sup> longe :

neuere one ſtonde.

þes worle-wifemen :

þar a two wende.

somme wende to þan wode :

somme to weynleates.

folle þreo nihtes :

hire craftes þar hii dihte.

ne mihten hii neuere finde :

þorh none cunneſ þinge.

war on hit were ilong :

þat þe wal þat was ſo ſtrong.

‘after world-wise men, who knew wisdom,’ and bade them cast lots, and ‘try incantations,’ try the truth ‘with their powerful craft,’ on what account it were, that the wall that was so strong might not ever stand a night long. These world-wise men there went in two *parties*; some ‘they’ went to the wood, some to *the* cross-ways; ‘they gan to cast lots with their incantations’; full three nights their crafts [there] they practised; they might never find, through ‘never any [no kind of] thing, on what account it were, that the wall that was so strong every night fell down, and the king lost his labor.

<sup>1</sup> Sic MS.<sup>2</sup> niht?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Jora[m].

æuere ælche nihte to-raſe  
 & þe king hiſ ſwic læs.  
 Buten witie þer wes an e  
 he wes ihaten Joram.  
 he ſeide þat he hit afunde e  
 ah hit þuhte læſinge.  
 he ſeide ȝif mon funde e  
 in auer æi londe.  
 æuer æi cniht bærn e  
 þe næuere fæder no ibæd. 10  
 & openede hiſ breoſte e  
 & nomen of hiſ blode.  
 & mengde wið þan lime e  
 & þæne wal læide.  
 þenne mihte he ſtonde e  
 to þere worlde longe.  
 þat word com to þan kige e  
 of þere læſinge.  
 & he hit ileſde e  
 þah hit læs weore. 20  
 Sone he nom hiſ fonde e  
 & ſende ȝeðd þan londe.  
 ſwa feor ſwa he<sup>1</sup> for dæðes kare : ſo for ſo he<sup>2</sup> dorſte for deþeſ care e  
 durſten æies weieſ faren.

euereche niht reefe  
 and þe king hiſ ſwic les.  
 Bote witti þar was on e  
 he was ihote Joram.  
 he ſaide þat he hit funde e  
 ac hit þoht leſinge.  
 he ſaide þat ȝef man funde e  
 in eni kinelonde.  
 eny cnaue child e  
 þat neuere fader nadde. 10  
 and hopenede hiſ breoſte e  
 and neme of hiſ blode.  
 and meinde wiþ þan lime e  
 and in þan wal leide.  
 þanne mihte he ſtonde e  
 to þan worle longe.  
 þe king ſende hiſ fonde e  
 oueral þan londe.  
 ſo for ſo he<sup>2</sup> dorſte for deþeſ care e  
 in eni wei fare.

But there was one sage, he was named Joram, he said that he it found,—  
 but it seemed (was) leasing,—he said that if men found in 'ever' any land  
 [kingdom], 'ever' any male-child, that never had father, and opened his  
 breast, and took of his blood, and mingled with the lime, and laid [in] the  
 wall, *that* then might it stand to the worlds end. 'The word came to the  
 king, of the leasing, and he it believed, though it were false.' 'Soon he took  
 [The king sent] his messengers, 'and sent' over [all] the land, so far as  
 they for care (fear) of death durst 'anyways [in any way] fare, and in each

<sup>1</sup> heo?<sup>2</sup> hii?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& in ælche tune ⁊	and in eche toune ⁊	
hercneden þa runen.	hercnede rounne.	
whær heo mihtē ifinden ⁊ [f. 89 <sup>b</sup> . c. 1.]	war hii. mihten finden ⁊	
speken of swulche childe.	speken of soche childe.	
þas cnihtes forð ferdan ⁊	þeos cnihtes forþ verde ⁊	
widen ȝeond þan ærde.	in to mani erþe.	
tweien uerden ænne wæi ⁊	tweie verden anne wāy ⁊	
þe weſt riht him læi.	þat weſt rihtes him lay.	
þe læi forð rihtes in ⁊	þat lay nou <sup>1</sup> rihtef in ⁊	
þer nu if Kaer-merðin.	þar nou his Kermerþin.	[c. 2.]
Bifides þere burh ⁊	Bifides þare borewe ⁊	
in ane weie brade.	in one wāy brode.	
hefden ænne muchelne plæȝe ⁊	adde alle <sup>2</sup> borh-cnaues. ⁊	
alle þa burh-cnauen.	hii-gadered <sup>3</sup> heom to-gadere.	
þas cnihtes weoren weri ⁊	þeos cnihtef weren weri ⁊	
& an heorte ſwiðe ſæri.	and on heorte fori.	
& ſeten adun bi þan plæȝe ⁊	and ſete adun bi þeos cnaues ⁊	
& bi-heolden þas cnauen.	bi-heolde ou hii pleoyde.	
Vmbē ane ſtunde ⁊	Bi one lutele ſtunde ⁊	
heo bigunnen ſtriuinge.	hii bi-gonne to ſtriuende.	
al ſe hit wes auer laȝe ⁊	al ſo hit was euere lawe ⁊	
imong childrene plæȝe.	a-mang ſtildrene <sup>4</sup> plawe.	
þe an þe oderne <sup>5</sup> ſmat ⁊	þe on þan oþer ſmot ⁊	

town hearkened 'the' rumors, where they might find speak of such a child. These knights forth proceeded 'wide over the [into many a] land; two of the number went a way that lay right west, that lay forth-right in where now Caermarthen is. Beside the burgh, in a broad way, all 'the' burgh-lads had 'a great play [gathered them together]. These knights were weary, and in heart 'exceeding' sorry, and sate down by 'the play [these lads], 'and' beheld 'these lads [how they played]. After a [little] time they began striving,—as it was ever custom among childrens play;—the one smote the other, and he 'these blows [his blow] suffered. Then

<sup>1</sup> forþ ⁊<sup>2</sup> alle þe ⁊<sup>3</sup> R. i-gadered.<sup>4</sup> childrene ⁊<sup>5</sup> oðerne ⁊



MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

*Merlyn.*

& he þeos dūdes<sup>1</sup> abad.  
 þa wes swiðe grim ⁊  
 Dinabuz touward Mærlin.  
 & þus quað Dinabꝰ ⁊  
 þe þene dūt hefde.  
 Mærling<sup>2</sup> vñwærste<sup>3</sup> man ⁊  
 whu hæuest þu me þus idon.  
 þu hæuest idon me muchel scome ⁊  
 þer fore þu scalt habben grome.  
 Ich æm anes kinges sune ⁊ 10  
 & þu ært of noht icumen.  
 þu nahtes i nane stude ⁊  
 habben freo-monnes ibude.  
 for swa wes al þa uore ⁊  
 þi moder wes an hore.  
 for n<sup>3</sup>te heo næuere þene mon ⁊  
 þ þe streonde hire on.  
 no þu on moncunne ⁊  
 nefdest fader nēne.  
 & þu in ure londe ⁊ 20  
 makest uf to sconde.  
 þu ært uf imong icumē ⁊  
 & nært nænes mōnes<sup>5</sup> sune.

and he his dunt a-bod.  
 þo was swiþe grim ⁊  
 Dunabuz to Merlȝn.  
 and þus faide Dunabuz ⁊  
 þat þane dunt hadde.  
 Merlȝn onwreste man ⁊  
 wi hæuest þou þus idon.  
 Ich ham one kinges sone ⁊  
 and þou hart of noht icome.  
 for so was al þe vore ⁊  
 þi moder was an hore.  
 for nuste ȝeo wat was þe man ⁊  
 þat þe streone hire an.  
 ne þou in mancunne ⁊  
 haddeft fader nadde<sup>4</sup>.  
 and þou in houre londe ⁊  
 dost vs so mochel sconde.

was exceeding wrath Dinabuz to 'ward' Merlin, and thus 'quoth [said] Dinabuz, who had the blow: "Merlin, wicked man, why hast thou thus done 'to me? Thou hast done me much shame, therefore thou shalt have grief.' I am a king's son, and thou art born of nought; 'thou oughtest not in any spot to have free man's abode'; for so was all the adventure, thy mother was a whore, for she knew not 'ever [what was] the man that begat thee on her, nor haddest thou any father among mankind. And thou in our land 'makest us to be shamed [dost us so much shame]; 'thou art among us come, and art son of no man'; thou shalt therefore in this day

<sup>1</sup> dundes?<sup>4</sup> nanne?<sup>2</sup> R. Merlin here and elsewhere.<sup>5</sup> This word is interlined by the second hand.<sup>3</sup> vñwærste?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þu scalt i þissen dæie ⁊      [c.2.]  
 þer uore dæd<sup>1</sup> þolien.  
 Þis iherden þa cnihtes ⁊  
 þer heo weoren bi-haluf.  
 heo arifen up & eoden neor ⁊  
 & neodeliche ȝerden<sup>2</sup>.  
 of þiffere uncuðe talen ⁊  
 þe heo iherden of þan cnauen.  
 Þa wes inne Kair-Merðin ⁊  
 a reue þe hehte Eli.      10  
 þa cnihtes bliue ⁊  
 comen to þan reue.  
 & þus him to sæiden ⁊  
 fone mid muðe.  
 We buð her rihtes ⁊  
 Uortig<sup>3</sup>nes cnihtes.  
 & habbeoð her ifunde ⁊  
 enne cnaue ȝunge.  
 he if ihatē Merlin ⁊  
 ne icnawe we na wiðt his cunne.  
 Nim hine & hiȝinde<sup>3</sup> ⁊      21  
 & fende hine to þan kinge.  
 al fe þu wult libben ⁊  
 & þine limen habben.

þou salt in þisse daie ⁊  
 þar vore deaþ þolie.  
 Þis ihorde þe cnihtes ⁊  
 þare hii weren bi-halues.  
 hii a-rise and eoden ner ⁊  
 and ȝornliche luste.  
 of þes vncouþe tale ⁊  
 þat hii ihorde of þes cnaue.  
 þo was in Kermerþin ⁊  
 a reue þat hehte Elý.      10  
 þes cnihtes bliue ⁊  
 comen to þan reue.      [f.72<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 and to him þus sæyde ⁊  
 fone mid muþe.  
 We beoþ here rihtes ⁊  
 Vortigerne his cnihtes.  
 and habbeþ here ifunde ⁊  
 one cnaue ȝonge.

*Merlin.*

suffer death." The knights heard this, where they were aside; they arose up, and went near, and earnestly 'asked of [listened to] this strange tale, that they heard of 'the [this] lad. Then was in Caermarthen a reve that hight Eli; 'the [these] knights quickly came to the reve, and thus to him said soon with mouth: "We are here-right 'Vortigers [Vortiger his] knights, and have found here a young lad; 'he is named Merlin; we know no whit his kin. Take him in haste, and' send him to the king, as thou wilt live, 'and thy limbs have,' and his mother with him, who bore him to be man.

<sup>1</sup> dæð?<sup>2</sup> ȝernden?<sup>3</sup> an hiȝinge?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& his moder mid him ⁊  
 þe hine bar to monnen.  
 ȝif þu þif wult don ⁊  
 þe king heom wule under-fon.  
 & ȝif þu hit noht ne ȝemeft ⁊  
 þer fore þu biſt flæme.  
 & þas burh al for-bard<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 þas leodē al forðemed.  
 þa anſwarede Eli ⁊  
 þe reue of Kæir-Merðiu. 10  
 Wel ic wat þat al þif lond ⁊  
 ftunt a Vortig<sup>9</sup> nes hond.  
 & we beoð alle hiſ men ⁊  
 hiſ monſcipe iſ þe mare.  
 & we ſcullen þif don fain ⁊  
 & driȝen hiſ wille.  
 Forð wende þe reue ⁊  
 & burhmen hiſ iuere.  
 & ifunden Mærlin ⁊  
 & hiſ plaȝe-iueren mid him. 20  
 Mærlin heo nomen ⁊  
 and hiſ iuæren loȝen.  
 þa þa Mærliȝ weſ ilad ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and hiſ moder mid him ⁊  
 þat hine bar to manne.  
 ȝef þou þif nelt noht don ⁊  
 þe king þe wole a-hon.  
  
 and þeos borh al for-berne ⁊  
 and þat folk fleme.  
 þo anſweredē Ely ⁊  
 þe reaue of Kermerþin. 10  
 Wel ich wot þat al þiſ lond ⁊  
 ſtond in Vortigernes hond.  
  
 þar vore ich wole þif don ⁊  
 and dreȝen hiſ wille.  
 Forþ wende þe reue ⁊  
 and borhmen hiſ ivere.  
 and ifunde Merlȝn ⁊  
 and hiſ pleiueres mid him. 20  
 Merlȝn hii nemen ⁊  
 and hiſ iweres lowen.  
 þo þat Merlȝn waſ ilad ⁊

If thou this wilt do, the king will receive them, and if thou carest it not, therefore thou wilt be driven *out* [wilt not do, the king will hang thee], and this burgh all consumed, [consume, and] this [the] folk all destroyed [drive *out*].” Then answered Eli, the reve of Caermarthen: “Well I wot, that all this land stands in Vortigers hand, ‘and we are all his men,—his honor is the more!’—‘and we shall [therefore I will] do this ‘gladly,’ and perform his will.” Forth went the reve, and *the* burghers his associates, and found Merlin, and his playfellows with him. Merlin they took, and his companions laughed; when that Merlin was led *away*, then was

<sup>1</sup> for-barnd?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þa wes Dinabus ful glad. [c. 1.]	þo was Dunabuz fol glad.
e <sup>1</sup> wende þat he ilad weore ⁊	he wende þat hit were ⁊
limen for to leofē.	for þane pley þare.
ah al an oðer fet þe dom ⁊	ac al an oþer was þe dom ⁊
ær hit weoren al idon.	are hit were al idon.
Nu wes Mærlinges moder ⁊	Nou was Merlȳn his moder ⁊
wundermere i-wurðen.	wonderliche iworþe.
in ane hæge munstre ⁊	in one nonneric ⁊
muchene <sup>2</sup> ihaded.	munechene ihoded.
Þider iwende Eli ⁊	10 Þider wende Elȳ ⁊
þe reue of Kaer-Merðin.	þe reue of Kermerþin.
& nom him þa lafdie ⁊	and nam þe gode leafdi ⁊
þer heo læi on munstre.	þar ȝeo was in munestre.
& uorð him gō ærne ⁊	and forþ him gan erne ⁊
to þan kinge Uortigerne.	to þan king Vortigerne. [c. 2.]
& muchel folc mid him ⁊	and mochel folk mid him ⁊
& ladden þa nunne & Merlin.	þat ladde þe nonne and Merlȳn.
Sone wes þat word cuð ⁊	Sone was þat word couþ ⁊
to Vortigernes kinges muð.	to Vortiger þe kinges muþ.
þat icumen wes Eli ⁊	20 þat icome was Elȳ ⁊
& brohte þa lauedi.	and hadde ibroht þe lafdi.
& Marling heore fone ⁊	and Merlȳn hire fone ⁊
wes mid hire þer icumen.	was mid hire þar icome.

Dinabuz full glad; he weened that 'he were led *away* for to lose *his* limbs [it were for the play there], but all another *way* 'set [was] the doom, ere it were all done. Now was 'Merlins [Merlyn his] mother strangely become in a 'noble minster [nunnery] a hooded nun. Thither went Eli, the reve of Caermarthen, and took 'him' the [good] lady, where she 'lay [was] in *the* minster, and forth gan him run to the king Vortiger, and much folk with him, 'and [that] led the nun and Merlin. The word (tidings) was soon made known to [the] king Vortigers mouth, that Eli was come, and [had] brought the lady, and *that* Merlin her son was with her there come.

<sup>1</sup> B. he.<sup>2</sup> munchene?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þa wes an liue ⁊

Vortigerne blide<sup>1</sup>.

&amp; þa læuedi aueng ⁊

mid swiðe uære læten.

& Mærlin he bitwahte<sup>2</sup> ⁊

goden twælf cnihten.

þa weoren þā kinge holde ⁊

&amp; hine witen scolden.

þa sæiden þe king Vortig<sup>3</sup> ⁊

wið þa nunne he spilede þer. 10

Gode læuedi sæi me ⁊

sæl þe scal iwurðe.

whar weoren þu iborē ⁊

wha streonede þe to bearne.

þæ andswarede þa nunne ⁊

&amp; hire fader nemnede.

þriddendale þis lond ⁊

stod a mines fader hond.

of þan londe he wes king ⁊

cuð hit wes wide. 20

he wes ihatē Conaan ⁊

cnihtene lauerd.

þa answarede þe king ⁊ [c. 2.]

þe king þe leafdi vnder-feng ⁊

and mansipe bi-hehte.

and Merlȳn he bi-tahte ⁊

twelf gode cnihtes.

þat weren þan kīge holde ⁊

and hine witie folde.

þo þe king Vortiger ⁊

wiþ þe nonne spac þer.

Gode leafdi fai me ⁊

wo streonede þe.

þo answerede þe nonne ⁊

and hire fader nemnede.

þat þriddene deal of al þis lond ⁊

stod in mine fader hond.

of þan londe he was king ⁊

couþ hit waf wide.

he was ihote Conan ⁊

cnihtene louerd.

þo spac Vortigerne ⁊

Then was Vortiger blithe in life, and [The king] received the lady, with looks most fair [and honor promised], and Merlin he delivered to twelve good knights, who were faithful to the king, and him should guard. Then 'said' the king Vortiger, with the nun 'he' spake there: "Good lady, say to me,—'well it shall be to thee,—where wert thou born,' who begat thee 'to be child'?" Then answered the nun, and named her father:—" [The] third part of [all] this land stood in my fathers hand; of the land he was king, known it was wide; he was named Conaan, lord of knights." Then 'an-

<sup>1</sup> bliðe?<sup>2</sup> bitahte? <sup>3</sup> Written at first Vortig<sup>3</sup>ne, but the last two letters expuncted.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

fwulc heo his cun weore.  
 Lauedi fæie þu hit me ⁊  
 fæl þe scal iwurðen.  
 her if Mærlin þi sune ⁊  
 wha streonede hine.  
 who wes him a folke ⁊  
 for fader iholden.  
 þa heng heo hire hæfued ⁊  
 & heolde touward bræsten.  
 bi þan kinge heo sæt ful softe ⁊ 10  
 & ane litle while þohte.  
 vmbe while heo spac ⁊  
 & spilede wið þan kinge.  
 King ich þe wulle tellē ⁊  
 for feolcuðe spellen.  
 Mi fader Conaan þe king ⁊  
 luuede me þurh alle þing.  
 þa iwarð ich on vestme ⁊  
 wunder ane fæir.  
 þa ich wes an uore ⁊ 20  
 fiftene ȝere.  
 þa wunede ich on bure ⁊  
 on wunfele mine.  
 maidene mid me ⁊  
 wūd<sup>e</sup> e ane uæire.

afe he his cun were.  
 Leafdi sei þou nou me ⁊  
 leof þou hart me swiþe.  
 her his Merlȳn þi sone ⁊  
 wo streonede hine.

King ich þe wolle telle ⁊  
 felcouþe spellen.  
 Mi fader Conan þe king ⁊  
 lofuede me þorh alle þing.

and feodde me in boure ⁊  
 mid mine maydenes deore.

swered the king [spake Vortiger], as *if* she [he] were of his kin : " Lady, say thou 'it [now] to me,—well *it* shall be to thee [thou art to me very dear].—here is Merlin thy son, who begat him ? ' Who was held for father to him among *the* folk ? " Then hung she her head, and bent toward *her* breast ; by the king she sate full softly, and thought a little while ; after *a* while she spake, and said to the king : " King, I will tell thee marvellous stories. My father Conaan the king loved me through all things ; ' then became I in stature wondrously fair. When I was fifteen years of age, ' then dwelt I [and fed me] in bower, ' in my mansion ' ; *my* maidens with me, [with my maidens dear] ' wondrously fair '. [And] when I was in bed ' in slumber,

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þenne ich wæs on bedde ifwaued ⁊ And þo ich was abedde ⁊	
mid soft mine flepen.	mildeliche on flepe.
þē com biuoren ⁊	þar com me bi-vore ⁊
	[[£74.c.1.]
þa fæirest þing þat wes iboren.	þat fayrest þinge þat was ibore.
fwulc hit weore a muchel cniht ⁊	alfe hit were a mochel cniht ⁊
al of golde idiht.	al of golde idiht.
þif ich isæh on sweuene ⁊	þis þing com me bi-vore ⁊
alche niht on flepe.	eche niht on fleape.
þif þing glad me biuoren ⁊	
and glitene on golde.	10
ofte hit me cufte ⁊	ofte hit me cufte ⁊
ofte hit me clupte.	and ofte hit me cluppte.
ofte hit me to-bæh ⁊	ofte þis þing ich iseh ⁊
& eode me swiðe neh.	and ofte hit ȝeode me neh.
þa ich an ænde me biſæh ⁊	
felcuð me þuhte þas.	
mi mæte me wes læd¹ ⁊	
mine limes uncuðe.	
selcuð me þuhte ⁊	selcuþ me þohte ⁊
what hit beon mihte.	[[£90b.c.1.] wat þis beon mihte.
þa anȝæt ich on ænde ⁊	21 þo anȝete ich at þan ende ⁊
þat ich was mid childe.	þat ich was mid childe.
þa mi time com ⁊	þo þat þe time com ⁊
þifne cnaue ich hæfuede.	þifne cnaue ich hadde.

with my soft sleep, then [mildly asleep, there] came before [me] the fairest thing that *ever* was born, as if it were a tall knight, arrayed all of gold. This 'I saw in dream [thing came before me] each night in sleep. 'This thing glided before me, and glistened of gold;' oft it me kissed, [and] oft it me embraced; oft 'it approached me [this thing I saw], and [oft it] came to me 'very' nigh; 'when I at length looked to myself,—strange this seemed to me,—my meat to me was loathsome, my limbs unusual'; strange *it* seemed to me, what 'it [this] might be! 'Then perceived I at [the] end that I was with child; when 'my [that the] time came, this boy I had. I know not

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Nat ic on folde ⁊  
 what hif fader weoren.  
 ne wha hine biȝate ⁊  
 inne weorlde-riche.  
 no whaðer hit weore unwiht ⁊  
 þe on godes halue idiht.  
 La swa ich ibedde are ⁊  
 nat ich na mare.  
 to fuggen þe of mine fune ⁊  
 hu he to worulde is icume. 10  
 þe nunne beh hire hæfde adun ⁊  
 & hire huȝe dihte.  
 þe king hine bi-þohte ⁊  
 whæt he don mihte.  
 & droh him to ræde ⁊  
 redȝiuen gode.  
 & heo him raddē ⁊  
 ræd mid þan bezste.  
 þat he of-sende Magan ⁊  
 þ̅ wes a felcuð mon. 20  
 He wes a wis clærc ⁊  
 & cuðe of feolc c̅æften.  
 he cuðe wel ræden ⁊

not ich in þis worle ⁊  
 wo his fader were.  
  
 þe king hine bi-þohte ⁊  
 wat he don mihte.  
 and nam him to reade ⁊  
 redȝeues gode.  
 and hii him radde ⁊  
 read mid þan beste.  
 þat he of-sende Madan<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 þat was a swiȝe wifman.

in [this] world 'what [who] his father were, 'nor who begat him in *this* worlds-realm, nor whether it were evil-thing, or on Gods behalf dight. Alas! as I pray for mercy, I know not any more to say to thee of my son, how he is come to *the* world." The nun bowed her head down, and covered her features.' The king bethought him what he might do, and 'drew [took] to him good councillors to counsel; and they said him counsel with the best, that he should send for Magan, who was a 'marvellous [very wise] man.—' He was a wise clerk, and knew of many crafts; he would advise well, he could far direct'; he knew of the craft that dwelleth in the sky (astronomy),

<sup>1</sup> R. Magan.



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

[Ma]gan.

he cuðe feor læden.  
 he cuðe of þā crafte ⁊  
 þe wunēð i þan lufte.  
 he cuðe tellen ⁊  
 of ælche leod-spelle.  
 Magan com to hirede ⁊  
 þar þe king wunede.  
 & þene king grætte ⁊  
 mid godfulle worde.  
 Hail seo þu & fund ⁊  
 Vortigerne þe king.  
 ich æm icumē to þe ⁊  
 cuð me þine iwille.  
 þa ādfwærede þe king ⁊  
 & talde al þan clærke.  
 hu þa nunne hafde ifæid ⁊  
 & axede hine þer of ræd.  
 ord fram þan ende ⁊  
 al he him talde. [c. 2.]  
 þa sæide Magan ⁊  
 Ich con ful wel her on.  
 þer wunieð in þan lufte ⁊  
 feole cunne wihte.  
 þa þer scullen bilæfuen ⁊  
 þat domeſ-dæi cume liðen.  
 sūme heo beoð aðele ⁊

10

he coupe of þan crafte ⁊  
 þat wonieþ in þan lufte.  
 he coupe telle ⁊  
 of eche leod-spelles.  
 Magā com to þe ſtude ⁊  
 þar þe king wonede.  
 and þane king grette ⁊  
 mid his milde wordes.

Ich ham icome to þe ⁊  
 cuþ me þine wille.  
 þo anſwerede þe king ⁊  
 and tolde þan clearke.  
 ou þe nonne hadde ifeid ⁊  
 and axede þar of read.

20

þo ſaide Magan ⁊  
 Ich con ful wel þar an.  
 þar wonieþ in þan lufte ⁊  
 fale cunne wiþtes.  
 þat þar mote wonie ⁊  
 forte domes-dai come.  
 ſomme hii beoþ gode ⁊ [c. 2.]

he could tell of each history (or language). Magan came to 'court [the place] where the king dwelt, and greeted the king with 'goodly [his mild] words: "'Hail be thou and sound, Vortiger the king!' I am come to thee, shew me thy will." Then answered the king, and told the clerk 'all,' how the nun had said, and asked 'him' thereof counsel; 'from *the* beginning to the end, all he him told.' Then said Magan: "I know full well 'hereon [thereon]. There dwell in the sky many kind of beings, that there shall remain [must dwell] until domesday 'arrive [come]; some they are

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& summe heo uuel wurcheð.  
 þer on if fwiðe muchel cun :

somme wircheþ vuele.

þa cumeð imōg monnen.

heo beoð ihaten ful iwis :

hii beoþ i-hote foliwis :

incubii demones.

incubi demones.

ne doð heo noht muchel scaðe :

ne doþ hii noht moche scaþe :

bute hokerieð þan folke.

monine mō on<sup>1</sup> fweuene :

bote fwinkeþ men on fleape.

ofte heo fwencheð<sup>2</sup>.

& monienne hende wimmon :<sup>10</sup> and mani on hēnde wifman :

þurh heore cræfte kenneð<sup>3</sup> anan. þorh hire craft kenneþ a-non.

& monies godes monnes child :

heo bicharreð þurh wigeliġ.

& þus wes Marlin biȝeten :

And þus waf Merlȳn bi-ȝete :

& iboren of his moder.

and ibore of his moder.

& þus hit if al igan :

quað þe clærc Magā.

þa sæide Marling :

þo faide Merlȳn :

to feolue þā kinge. [men : to þan feolue kinge.

King þine men me habbeoð inu- King þine men me habbeþ inome :

& ich æm to þe icumen. <sup>21</sup> and ich ham to þe icome.

& ich iwiten wulle :

and ich iwite wolle :

what beon þi wille.

wat beo þin wille.

good, 'and' some 'they' work evil. 'Therein is a race very numerous, that cometh among men'; they are named full truly Incubi Dæmones; they do not much harm, but 'deceive the folk; many a man in dream oft they delude [delude men in sleep], and many a fair woman through their craft childeth anon, 'and many a good mans child they beguile through magic.' And thus was Merlin begat, and born of his mother, 'and thus it is all transacted," quoth the clerk Magan.' Then said Merlin to the king *himself*: " King, thy men have taken me, and I am to thee come, and I would learn

<sup>1</sup> Altered by a second hand to of.

<sup>2</sup> The last four letters of this word are on an erasure by second hand.

<sup>3</sup> kenne *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

&amp; for wulche þinge ⁊

ich æm ibroht to kinge.

þa spilede þe king ⁊

mid swikere<sup>1</sup> speche.

Mærlin þu ært hider icumen ⁊

þu nært nanes monnes sunne.

swiðe þe longeð ⁊

after laðe spelle.

iwhiten þu wult þa uore ⁊

nu þu hit scalt ihere.

¶ Ich habbe bigunnen a weorc ⁊

mid grūdliche stregðe<sup>3</sup>.

þe haueð mine gærfume ⁊ [c.91.c.1.]

wel swiðe binume.

fif þusend men ⁊

wurcheð þer on.

Ich habbe lim &amp; stan ⁊

on leode nis betere nan.

na in nare leode ⁊

weorcmen al swa gode.

al þ þeo leggeoð a dæi ⁊

to soðe ich hit fugge mæi.

ær dæi amarwen ⁊

al hit bið dune.

þo faide þe king ⁊

mid cwickere speche.

Swiþe þe langeþ ⁊

after loþ speche.

hii<sup>2</sup> þou wolt ware vore ⁊

10 nou þou salt hit ihere.

¶ Ch habbe bi-gonne a worc ⁊

mid grundeliche strengþe.

al hit haueþ min garefome ⁊

of me clene bi-nome.

fif þusend men ⁊

wercheþ eche dai þar on.

And ich habbe lȝm and ston ⁊

in þe worle nis betere non.

20

al þat hii leggeþ adai ⁊

to soþe ich þe fegge mai.

her dai a morwe ⁊

al hit his a-doune.

what is thy will, 'and for what thing I am brought to *the* king?' Then said the king with quick speech: "'Merlin, thou art hither come; thou art son of no man!' Much thou longest after loath speech; learn thou wilt 'the adventure [wherefore],—now thou shalt hear it. I have begun a work with great strength, 'that [it] hath [all] my treasure 'well much [from me clean] taken away; five thousand men work [each day] thereon. [And] I have lime and stone, in [the] world is none better, 'nor in any land workmen so good.' All that they lay in *the* day,—in sooth I may say 'it [to thee],—ere day in *the* morrow all it is down; 'each stone from *the* other

<sup>1</sup> cwikere?<sup>2</sup> i-wite?<sup>3</sup> strengþe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ælc stan from oðer ⁊  
 iualled to þan grunde.  
 Nu fuggeð mine wife ⁊  
 and mine witie men.  
 þat ȝif ich nime þi<sup>1</sup> blod ⁊  
 ut of þire breoste.  
 & minne wal wurche ⁊  
 & do to mine lime.  
 þenne mai he stonde ⁊  
 to þere worlde longe.  
 Nu þu hit woſt al ⁊  
 hu þe iworðe ſcal.  
 Þis ihærde Mærlin ⁊  
 & bælh on hiſ mode.  
 & þas word ſæide ⁊  
 wrað þeh he weore.  
 Nulle hit nauere god ſeolf ⁊  
 þe gumenene is lauerd.  
 Þ þi caſtel ſtonde ⁊  
 for mine heorte blode.  
 ne nauere þi ſtan wal ⁊  
 ſtille ne ligge.  
 For alle þine witien ⁊  
 beoð ſwiðe ſwikele.  
 iſeid<sup>2</sup> læſſinge ⁊

Nou ſeggeþ mine wife ⁊  
 and mine wittye men.  
 þat ȝef ich neme þi blod ⁊  
 vt of þine breoste.  
 and do to mine lyme ⁊  
 and mine wal wurche.  
 þanne mihte he ſtonde ⁊  
 10 to þiſſe worle longe.  
 Nou þou iwoſt al ⁊  
 ou þe iworþe ſal.  
 Þis ihorde Merlȳn ⁊ [c. 74<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 a-bolwe on hiſ mode.  
 and þeos word ſaide ⁊  
 þoh he wroþ were.  
 Nolle hit neuere god ſeolf ⁊  
 þat hiſ māne louerd.  
 þat þin caſtel ſtode ⁊  
 20 for mine heorte blode.  
  
 Ac alle þine wittie ⁊  
 beoþ ſwiþe ſwikele.  
 hii ſeggeþ leſinge ⁊

felled to the ground!' Now say my wise and my sage men, that if I take thy blood, out of thy breast, and work my wall, and put to my lime, then 'may [might] it stand to 'the [this] worlds end. Now thou knowest 'it' all, how *it* shall be to thee." Merlin heard this, 'and' angered in his mood, and said these words, though he were wrath: "God *himself*, who is lord of men, will it never, that the castle should stand for my hearts blood, 'nor ever thy stone wall lie still.' 'For [But] all thy sages are exceeding de-

<sup>1</sup> The last letter of þi is on an erasure of two letters.<sup>2</sup> heo ſæið?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

bi-foren þæ<sup>1</sup> feolue.  
 ꝥ þu scalt afindē ⁊  
 a þisses dæief ferste.  
 for þif sæde Joram ⁊  
 þe if mi fulle ifa.  
 þa tiðende me þuncheð game ⁊  
 ich wes ifcæpen him to bone.  
 Let cumen biuoren<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 Joram þine<sup>3</sup> witie.  
 & alle his iuere ⁊  
 forð rihtes here.  
 þa þeos lefinge ⁊  
 talden þan kinge.  
 & ȝif ich þe fugge ⁊  
 soðe mine worde.  
 of þie walle ⁊  
 & whi he<sup>4</sup> adun falleð.  
 and mid soðe hit bitefle ⁊  
 þat heore talen finde<sup>5</sup> lefe.  
 ȝef me heore hæfdē ⁊  
 ȝif ich þi wærc hæle.  
 þa andswarede þe king ⁊  
 mid quickere ſteuene.

bi-vore þi fulue.  
 þat þou salt a-finde ⁊  
 in þisse daies furste.  
 for þif ſayde Joram ⁊  
 þat his min folle fon.  
 þe tȝdinge me þencheþ game ⁊  
 ich was ifape him to bane.  
 Let com bi-vore þe ⁊  
 Joram þane wittȝe.  
 10 and al his iveref ⁊  
 forþrið here.

and ȝef ich þe ſegge ſoþ ⁊  
 and þine worc heale.

[c.2.]

20 ȝef me hire hefdes ⁊  
 for hire lefinges.  
 þo answerede þe king ⁊  
 mid cwickere ſtemne.

ceitful; they say leasings before thyself,—that thou shalt find in this days space. For Joram said this, who is my full foe; the tidings seem to me sport; I was shapen to his bane! Let Joram `thy [the] sage come before thee, and all his companions, forth-right here, 'who told these leasings to the king;' and if I say thee `my sooth words of thy wall, and why it down falleth, and with sooth it prove, that their tales are leasing [sooth, and thy work heal], give me their heads, 'if I thy work heal [for their leasings].'" Then answered the king with quick voice: "So help me my hand,

<sup>1</sup> þi?<sup>2</sup> biuoren þe?<sup>3</sup> & þine *pr. m.*, but & expuncted.<sup>4</sup> Interlined by a second hand.<sup>5</sup> finde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Swa me help mī hond ⁊  
 þif forwærde ich þe halde.  
 To þan kinge was ibroht ⁊  
 Joram þe witie.  
 & seofue of his iueren ⁊  
 alle heo weoren uæie.  
 Marline gromede ⁊  
 & he grimliche spæc.  
 Sæie me Joram leod-fwike ⁊  
 lað me on heorten. 10  
 whi falleð þes wal ⁊  
 uolden to grunde.  
 sæie me wæh hit vælleð ⁊  
 þat þe wal reofeð.  
 what mai man uinden ⁊  
 at þere dic grunde.  
 Joram wes stille ⁊  
 ne cuðe he noht tellen.  
 þa feide Merlin þas word ⁊  
 King hald me forward. 20  
 let deluen þas dich ⁊  
 seouen uoten deopere.  
 heo scullen uinden ænne stan ⁊  
 wunder ane ueire.  
 he if ueir & brad ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

So me helpe min hond ⁊  
 þeos forewarde ich þe holde.  
 To þan kinge was ibroht ⁊  
 Joram þe wittý.  
 and his soue veres ⁊  
 alle hii weren feýe.  
 Merlýn gramede ⁊  
 and wroþliche spæc.  
 Saie me Joram ⁊  
 loþ me on heorte.  
 sai waren hit his lang ⁊  
 þat þe wal falleþ.  
 wat mai me finde ⁊  
 at þare dich his grunde.  
 Joram was stille ⁊  
 ne couþe he noht telle.  
 þo faide Merlýn ⁊  
 Let delue þane dich anon. 20  
 soue fet deoppere ⁊  
 þane he his nouþe.  
 and þou salt finde þare anon ⁊ [c.2.]  
 ane fwiþe brode ston.

this covenant I hold thee!" To the king was brought Joram the sage, and 'seven of his [his seven] companions,—all they were fated to die!' Merlin angered, and 'he' spake wrathly:—"Say me Joram, 'traitor,'—loathsome to me in heart,—'why falleth this wall to the ground;' say 'me' 'why it happeneth [what is the cause] that the wall falleth, what men may find at the 'dykes [dyke his] bottom?'" Joram was still; he could not tell. Then said Merlin 'these words: "King, hold to me covenant!" Cause 'this [the] dyke to be dug [anon] seven feet deeper [than it is now]; 'they shall [and thou shalt] find 'a stone wondrously

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

volke to bi-halden.

þa dich wes idoluē?

seoue vet depre.

þa uundē<sup>1</sup> heo anan?

þer rihtes þene stan.

þa fæide Mærlin þas word?

King hald me forward.

sæie me Joram?

mōne me laðeft<sup>2</sup>.

&amp; sæie þisse kinge?

wulches cunnes þinges.

vnder þissen stane?

staðel habbeoð inumen.

Joram wes stille?

ne cuðe he noht telle.

þa fæide Mærlin wunder?

A water her if under.

doh a-wai þisne stan? [f. 91<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]

þat water ȝe findeð anan.

Heo duden a-wai þene stan? 20 Hii dude away þane ston?

at-foren þan kinge anon.

þ̃ water heo funden?

þa fæide Merlin.

þis was fone idon?

and hii founde þane ston.

þo faide Merlȳn?

towarðef Joram.

Wat cunnes þingef?

vnder þis ston wonieþ.

Joram was stille?

ne couþe he noht telle.

þo faide Merlȳn wonder?

A water þar his hunder.

þat water hii fūde anon.

þo faide Merlȳn?

fair [there anon a very broad stone]; 'it is fair and broad, for folk to be-hold.' " 'The dyke was dug seven feet deeper; then [This was soon done, and] they found 'anon there-right' the stone. Then said Merlin 'these words [towards Joram]: "' King, hold to me covenant!" Say to me, Joram, man to me most hateful, and say to this king' what kind of thing 'hath taken station [dwelleth] under this stone?'" Joram was still; he could not tell. Then said Merlin a wonder: "A water 'here [there] is under; 'do away this stone, the water ye shall find anon.'" They did away the stone 'before the king anon'; the water they found [anon]. Then said

<sup>1</sup> This word has been subsequently altered to ivunden.<sup>2</sup> laðeft?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Æxe me Joram ⁊  
 þe is mi fulle ifa.  
 umben ane stunde ⁊  
 fuggen þe of þan grunde.  
 what wuncð i þan watere ⁊  
 wintres & summeres.  
 þe king axede Joram ⁊  
 ah ne cuðe he nowiht þer on.  
 þa ȝet sæide Mærlin þas word ⁊  
 King hald me foreward. 10  
 Let alæten þif wæter ⁊  
 & wei weorpen.  
 þer wunieð i þan grunde ⁊  
 tweien draken stronge.  
 þe an is a norð half ⁊  
 þe oðer a suð half.  
 þe oder<sup>1</sup> if milc-whit ⁊  
 ælche deore unnilich.  
 þe oðer ræd alfe blod ⁊  
 wurmen alre baldest. 20  
 Ælche middernihte ⁊  
 heo bigunneð to fhten.  
 2

and spac toward Joram.  
 Wat wonieþ in þan grunde ⁊  
 bi-halues þan watere.  
 þo faide Joram ⁊  
 Ne can ich nolht þar an.  
 Nou faide Merlȳn þis word ⁊  
 King holde me foreward.  
 Leteþ lade þat water ⁊  
 and awey werpe.  
 þar wonieþ in þan grunde ⁊  
 tweie drakes stronge.  
 þe on his a norþ half ⁊  
 þe oþer a sup half.  
 þe on his milc-wit ⁊  
 eche deor onilich.  
 þe oþer so read so blod ⁊  
 worm alre boldest.  
 Eche midnihte ⁊  
 hii bi-ginneþ to fhte.  
 and þorh hire fhte ⁊

Merlin: "Ask me [and spake toward] Joram, 'who is my full foe, after a while, to say thee of the bottom,' what dwelleth 'in the water, winter and summer [at the bottom, beside the water].'" "The king asked [Then said] Joram, 'but he knew ["I know] nought thereof. The yet [Now] said Merlin these words: "King, hold to me covenant! Cause 'this [the] water to be carried off, and away cast; there dwell at the bottom two strong dragons; the one is on *the* north side, the other on *the* south side; the one is milk-white, to each beast unlike, the other [as] red as blood, boldest of all worms! Each midnight they begin to fight, [and through their fight] thy

<sup>1</sup> oðer?<sup>2</sup> A line is here wanting.



MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

feollen þine wurckes.  
 þe eorðe gon to-rufien ⁊  
 & þi wal to-reofen.  
 þurh fwulche wundre ⁊  
 þi wal if afallen.  
 þa iwrað i þiffen flode ⁊  
 & noht for mine blode.  
 þis wæter wes al ilæde ⁊  
 þes kinges men weoren glæde.  
 muchel wes þa blisfe ⁊

10

biuoren þan leod-kinge.  
 & sone þer after ⁊  
 fari heo weorē.  
 ær þe dæi come to ende ⁊  
 heo iherden tiðinde.  
 þa þa water wes al ilædden ⁊  
 & þe put wes ilær. [c. 2.]  
 þa comen ut þas tweiē draken ⁊  
 & muchel dunen makeden.  
 & fuhten grimliche ⁊  
 dun i þere dich.  
 ne isæh nauere na cniht ⁊  
 nan lادلuker fiht.  
 fluȝen of heore muðe ⁊

folle þine workef.  
 þe eorþe gan to-cwakie ⁊  
 and þin wal to-refe.  
 and þorh foche wondre ⁊  
 þine walles fulle.

þis water was a-way idon ⁊  
 after Merlȝn his dom.

þo comen vt þe twei drakes ⁊  
 and mochel dune makede.  
 and fuhten feondeliche ⁊ [L 75. c. 1.]  
 dun in þare dich.  
 ne feh neuere non cniht ⁊  
 non lادلuchere fiht.  
 floȝen of hire mouȝe ⁊

works fell, the earth began to 'sink [quake], and thy wall to tumble; [and] through such wonder thy 'wall is fallen [walls fell], 'that happened in this flood, and not for (on account of) my blood.' " This water was 'all carried off [done away, after Merlin his sentence]; 'the kings men were glad, great was the bliss before the monarch, and soon thereafter they were sorry; ere the day came to an end, *strange* tidings they heard. When the water was all carried off, and the pit was empty,' then came out 'these [the] two dragons, and made great din, and fought fiercely down in the dyke. Never saw any man any loathlier fight; 'flames of fire [fiery sparks] flew from their mouth! The 'monarch [king] saw this [fight], 'their

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. x111.

fures leomē.

furie gledes.

þis ifah þe leodking ⁊

þis fiht ifah þe king ⁊

grimme heore lates.

þa wes he awundred ⁊

and awondrede him.

on þiffere wurlde-riche.

what weore þif tacninge ⁊

þa he ifah þer on grunde.

&amp; hu Mærlin hit wuſte ⁊

hou Merlȳn hit wiſte ⁊

þat nan oðer mon nuſte.

þat non noþer nuſte.

Æreſt wes þe white buuen ⁊ 10

Ereſt waſ þe wite boue ⁊

&amp; ſeoððen he wes bi-neoðen.

and ſupþe he waſ bi-neoþe.

&amp; þe drake ræde ⁊

and þe drake reade ⁊

for-wundede hine to dæðe.

for-wondede him to deaþe.

and æiðer wende to hiſ hole ⁊

and aiþer wende to hiſ hole ⁊

ne ifæh heom ſeoððe na mon i-

ne ſeah ham ſupþe no man ibore.

þuſ ferdan þeoſ þig ⁊

[boren. þuſ ferde þiſ þing ⁊

þat ifah Vortig<sup>ne</sup> þe king.

þat i-fah Vortiger þe king.

Ad alle þe weoren mid him ⁊

And alle hiſ iveren ⁊

luueden ſwiðe Mærlin.

and<sup>1</sup> lofuede ſwiþe Merlȳn.

&amp; þe king hatede Joram ⁊ 20

and þe king hatede Joram ⁊

&amp; hiſ hæfed hī binam.

and hiſ hefued him bi-nom.

&amp; hiſ ſeouene iuerē ⁊

and alle hiſ iveres ⁊

þe mid him weoren þære.

þat mid him þære were.

grim gestures'; 'then was he astonished [and wondered him] 'in this worlds-realm, what this tokening were, that he saw there at *the* bottom, and' how Merlin knew it, that no other 'man' knew. First was the white above, and afterwards he was beneath, and the red dragon wounded him to death; and either went to his hole,—no man born saw them afterwards! Thus fared this thing that Vortiger the king saw. And all 'that were with him [his companions] loved Merlin greatly; and the king hated Joram, and deprived him of his head, and [all] his 'seven' comrades that with him were there. The king went to *his* house, and led Merlin with

<sup>1</sup> *Redundant?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

To telde eode þe king ⁊  
 & mid him lædde Mærlin.  
 & seide him mid mucle luue ⁊  
 Mærling þu ært wilcume.  
 & ich þe ȝiuē wulle ⁊  
 al þ þu ȝirneft.  
 of mine londe ⁊  
 of feoluere & of golde.  
 He wende þurh Mærlin ⁊  
 þ lond al iwinneð.  
 ah al oðer hit wende ⁊  
 ær comen þes daies ende.  
 þus fræinede þe king ⁊  
 his leofe freond M<sup>9</sup>lin.  
 Sæie me nu M<sup>9</sup>lin ⁊  
 monnen me leofueft.

what bitacnieð þa draken ⁊ <sup>[f. 92. c. 1.]</sup>  
 þe þene dune makeden.  
 þe stan & þat water ⁊  
 & þat wundreliche<sup>1</sup> fæht.  
 fæie me ȝif þi wil is ⁊  
 whæt bitacneð al þis.  
 & seoððen þu most me ræden ⁊

To telde eode þe kinge ⁊  
 and ladde mid him Merlȝn.  
 ant tahte him moche lofue ⁊  
 Merlȝn þou hart wilcome.

He wende þorh Merlȝn ⁊  
 10 al þat lond awinne.  
 ac al oþer hit iwarþ ⁊  
 fone þar hafter.  
 þo faide þe king ⁊  
 Leoue freond Merlȝn.  
 wat bi-tocneþ þaie drakef ⁊  
 þat þane dune makede.  
 and þe ston ⁊ and þat water ⁊  
 20 and þaie stronge fihthes.  
 sai me of þin willes ⁊  
 wat bi-tokneþ al þis.  
 And supþe þou most me reade ⁊

him, and 'said to [bestowed on] him 'with' much love: "Merlin, thou art welcome, 'and I will give thee all that thou desirest, of my land, of silver and of gold.'" He weened through Merlin to win all the land, but it happened 'all otherwise' ere the days end came [soon thereafter]. The king 'thus asked his [then said:] dear friend Merlin, "'Say me now, Merlin, man to me dearest,' what betoken the dragons that made the din, [and] the stone, and the water, and the 'wondrous fight [strong combats]? Say me, 'if thy will is [of thy will], what betokeneth all this? And afterwards thou must counsel me how I shall guide me, and how I may win my

<sup>1</sup> wundeliche *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

hu ich ſcal me læden.  
 & hu ich mai biwinne ⁊  
 kinedō minne.  
 of Hengeſt mineſ wiues fader ⁊  
 þe ſwiðe me hæfð ihærmed.  
 þa andſwarede Merlin ⁊  
 þane kinge þe ſpac wið him.  
 King þu ært unwiſ ⁊  
 & vnwiter a ræde.  
 þu fræineſt of þan draken ⁊ 10  
 þe þene dune makeden.  
 & whæt tacned heore fiht ⁊  
 & heore feondliche gripē.  
 Heo tacneð kinges ⁊  
 þa funde to cumene.  
 & heore fiht & heore uare ⁊  
 & heore uæi uolc.  
 Ah ȝif þu weore ſwa wiſ mō ⁊  
 & ſwa witter a þoncke.  
 þat þu fræinedeſt me ⁊ 20  
 of feole þine forȝen.  
 of þire mucle kare ⁊  
 þa þe if to cumene.  
 ich þe wolde fuggen ⁊  
 of forȝe þine.

ou ich ſal me leade.  
 and hou ich may bi-winne ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 kinedom minne.  
 of Hengeſt mine wifueſ fader ⁊  
 þat ſwiþe me haueþ hi-harmed.  
 þo anſwerede Merlȝn ⁊  
 to þan king þat ſpac wiþ him.  
 King þou hart onwiſ ⁊  
 and onwytti of reade.  
 þou axeſt of þan drakes ⁊ 10  
 þat þane dune makede.  
 and wat bi-tokneþ hire fiht ⁊  
 and hire grim refes.  
 Hii bi-tokneþ kinges ⁊  
 þat ȝet beoþ to comene.

Ac ȝef þou were ſo wiſ man ⁊  
 fo ich wende þat þou were.  
 þanne þou woſt axi ⁊ 20  
 of þine mochele care.  
 and of þine wowe ⁊  
 þat þe hiſ to comene.

kingdom from Hengest, my wives father, who hath harmed me greatly." Then answered Merlin to the king that spake with him: "King, thou art unwise, and foolish in counsel; thou askest of the dragons that made the din, and what 'betokened [betokeneth] their fight, and their fierce assaults? They betoken kings that [yet] are to come, 'and their fight, and their adventure, and their fated folk!' But if thou wert so wise a man, 'and so prudent in thought, that thou haddest inquired of me [as I weened that thou wert, then thou wouldest ask] of thy 'many sorrows, [great care, and] of thy 'great care [woe], that is to come to thee, 'I would say to thee of thy sorrow.'" Then 'quoth [said] Vortiger the king: "Dear friend Merlin,

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

*Vortiger.*

þa quað Vortig<sup>2</sup> þe king :  
 Leofue freond Merling.  
 sæie me of þan þinge :  
 þe me to cumen fonden.  
 Bluðeliche quad<sup>1</sup> Mærlin :  
 baldere stefne.

ich þe wulle fuggen :  
 ah æuere hit wule þe<sup>3</sup> reouwen.  
 king king bi-fiȝ þe :  
 forȝen þe bið ȝeueðe. 10  
 of Coſtantineſ cunne :  
 hiſ beſ þu aqualdeſt. [c. 2.]  
 þu letteſt flæn Coſtanz :  
 þe weſ king a þiſ lond.  
 þu letteſt þine Peohteſ :  
 hine ladliche biſwiken.

þer uore þu ibideſt :  
 alre baluwene mæſt.  
 Seoððen þu tuȝen uenenon þe :  
 uncuðe leoden. 20

*Sax[es].*

Saxeſ to lode :  
 þer uore þu wurðeſt to ſcōde.  
 Nu beoð of Brutaine :

þo ſaide Vortiger þe king :  
 Leoue freōd Merlȝn.  
 ſai me of þan þinge :  
 þat me beoþ to comende.  
 Blopeliche cwaþ Merlȝn<sup>2</sup> :

ich þe wolle ſegge :  
 ac euere hit wole þe reuwe.  
 king king bi-feh þe :  
 ſorwe þe hiſ ȝefue.  
 of Coſtantineſ cunne :  
 hiſ ſone þou acweldeſt.  
 þou letteſt flea Conſtance :  
 þe king of þiſſe londe.

þar vore þou ibideſt :  
 alre care meſt.  
 Suþþe þou drohe to þe :  
 vncouþe leode.  
 Saxeſ to londe :  
 þar þou bideſt ſcōde.  
 Nou beoþ of Brutteſ :

say me of the things that are to come to me." "Blithely," quoth Merlin, 'with bold voice,' "I will say to thee; but ever it will thee rue. King, king, be-see thee (see to thyself), sorrow is to thee given of Constantines kin!—his son thou killedest; thou causedest Constance to be slain, 'who was [the] king 'in [of] this land; 'thou causedst thy Peohtes to betray (or destroy) him basely'; therefore thou shalt suffer 'sorrows [care] most of all! Afterwards thou drewest 'upon [to] thee foreign people, *the Saxons to this land; therefore thou shalt 'be destroyed [suffer destruction]! Now are the*

<sup>1</sup> quað?<sup>2</sup> Interlined, man. sec.<sup>3</sup> A line seems here wanting.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

beornes ariued.

cnihtef ariued.

hit his Aurilien &amp; Vther ⁊

þat his Aurelie and Vther ⁊

*Auril[ie.]*  
*Vthe[r.]*

nu þu ært þær of war.

nou þou hart þar of iwar.

heo cumeð to-mærzen fuliwis ⁊

hii comeþ to-morwe foliwis ⁊ [L. 75<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]

i þif lond at Tottensæs.

at Dertemuþ in Totenas.

ich do þe wel to witene ⁊

ich do þe wel to iwite ⁊

mid feouen hundred ſcipene.

mid ſceoue hundred ſipes.

&amp; nu heo inne ſæ ⁊

ſælieð biliue.

[idon ⁊

þu haueſt heom muchel uuel idon ⁊ þou haueſt heom mochel harm

and nu þu moſt þat lað on-fon. 11 and nou þou moſt þat onder-fon.

þu haueſt a ba halue :

bone þe þe þencheð.

þine ifan þe biuoren ⁊

for nou þine fon þe beoþ bi-vore ⁊

&amp; þine ifeond bæften.

and eke bi-hinde.

Ah ſih ſih þinne wæi ⁊

&amp; burh þine life.

&amp; fleo pider þe þu fleo ⁊

fleo woder þat þou fleo ⁊

heo þe wulleð after teon.

hii þeo wolleþ after teo.

Ambroſie Aurilien ⁊

20 And þe eldre broþer ⁊

he hæued<sup>1</sup> æreſt þifne kinedon<sup>2</sup>. worþ king bi-vore þan oþer.

ah he þurh atterne drench ⁊

ac he þorh hatterne drench ⁊

dæð ſcal ipolien.

deap fal þolie.

'barons [knights] of 'Britain [Britons] arrived; 'it [that] is, Aurelie and Uther,—now thou art thereof aware;—they shall come tomorrow, full truly, 'in this land at [at Dartmouth in] Totnes, I do thee well to wit, with seven hundred ships; 'and now they sail speedily in *the* sea.' Thou hast much 'evil [harm] done to them, and now thou must 'the harm [that] receive; 'thou hast on both sides bane that to thee shall seem'; [for now] thy foes [are] before thee, and 'thy enemies [eke] behind. 'But flee, flee thy way, and save thy life,—and' flee whither that thou fleest, they will pursue after thee! 'Ambrosie Aurelie he shall have first this kingdom [And the elder brother

<sup>1</sup> hæueð?

R. kinedom

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

<p>&amp; feoððen scal Vther Pendragō ⁊ habben þefne kinedom.  ah þi cun hine scal ⁊ mid attere aqllē.  ah ær he dæd<sup>1</sup> þolie ⁊ he scæl dune makien.  Vther scal habben ænne fune ⁊ of Cornwaille he scal cumen.  þat beoð a wilde bar ⁊ [192<sup>b</sup>.c.1.] iburstled mid stele.  þe bar scal for-bærnen ⁊ hæhȝe þa burhȝes.  he scal alle þa fwiken ⁊ fwenien mid eȝe.  he scal al þi riche cun ⁊ mid witen aquellen.  he bið fwiðe oht mon ⁊ &amp;ðele an þonke.  heonenæ into Rome ⁊ rixleð þeos ilke.  scal he alle his feond ⁊ fallen to grunde.  Soð ich habbe þe ifæid ⁊ ah nis þe na þe softre.</p>	<p>and supþe fal Vther Pendragun ⁊ habbe þifne kinedom.  ac þi cun hine fal ⁊ mid hatter acwelle.  ac her he deþ þolie ⁊ he fal dune makie.  Vther fal habbe one fone ⁊ þat fal vt of Cornwale come.  alfe hit were a wilde bor ⁊ iburstled mid stele.  þe bor fal for-bearne ⁊ fwiþe heȝe borewes.    hinene to Rome ⁊ folle rixly his domes.  he fal alle his fon ⁊ falle to þan grunde.  Soþ ich habbe þe ifeid ⁊ ac nis þe noht þe softere<sup>2</sup>.</p>
---	---

shall be king before the other]; but he through draught of poison shall suffer death. And afterwards shall Uther Pendragon have this kingdom; but thy kin shall kill him with poison; but ere he suffer death, he shall din (contest) make. Uther shall have a son, [out] of Cornwall 'he [that] shall come, 'that shall be [as it were] a wild boar, bristled with steel; the boar shall consume 'the [most] noble burghs; 'he shall destroy (or devour) all the traitors with authority; he shall kill with death all thy rich kindred; he shall be man most brave, and noble in thought'; hence 'in' to Rome 'this same [his authority] shall rule; all his foes he shall fell to [the] ground. Sooth I have said

<sup>1</sup> deað?<sup>2</sup> softere?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ah flih mid þine verde ⁊  
 þine iuon þe cumeð to herede<sup>1</sup>.  
 þa aſwac worden ⁊  
 Merlin þe wiſe.  
 & þe king lette blawen ⁊  
 preottene bemen.  
 & forð mid his ferde ⁊  
 feodliche<sup>2</sup> ſwiðe.  
 Nes þer uorð rihtes ⁊  
 bute uirft of ane nihte. 10  
 þat comen þa broðere ⁊  
 beien to-ſome<sup>3</sup>.  
 to ſæ ſtrōde ful iwiſ ⁊  
 at Dertenemuðe i Totenas.  
 þis iherden Bruttes ⁊  
 & weoren bliðe ful iwiſ.  
 heo drožen ut of þan wuden ⁊  
 & of þan wulderne.  
 bi fixti & bi fixti ⁊  
 & bi ſeouen hundred. 20  
 bi þrit<sup>4</sup> & bi þritti ⁊  
 & bi ſeole þuſend.  
 þa heo comen to-ſomne ⁊

for wēde woder þou wende ⁊  
 þine dāzes beoþ at þe ende.  
 þe king mid his ferde ⁊  
 forþ wende ſwiþe.  
 Nas þar soþ riht ⁊  
 10 bote forft of on niht.  
 þat comen þe broþers ⁊  
 beine to-gadere.  
 to ſéé ſtronde foliwiſ ⁊  
 at Dertemonþe in Totenas. [c. 2.] [To]ttenas.  
 þis i-horde Bruttes ⁊  
 and weren bliþe foliwiſ.  
 hii drožen vt of þe wodes ⁊  
 and of þe wīlderne.  
 bi fixti bi hundredes ⁊  
 20  
 and bi mani þuſendef.

to thee, but *it* is not to thee the softer;—'but flee with thine host, thy foes  
 come to thee to *thy* court [for go whither thou goest, thy days are at the  
 end]!' "Then Merlin the wise ceased *his* words, and' the king 'caused  
 thirteen trumpets to be blown, and' marched forth with his army 'exceed-  
 ing' quickly. There was not 'forth-right [right sooth] but space of one  
 night, that the brothers came, both together, to *the* sea-strand full truly, at  
 Dartmouth in Totnes. *The* Britons heard this, and were full surely blithe;  
 they drew *themselves* out of the woods, and *out* of the wilderness, by  
 sixty, 'and by sixty, and' by 'seven hundred [hundreds], 'by thirty, and

<sup>1</sup> *At first written* hirede.<sup>2</sup> to-ſomne?<sup>3</sup> feondliche?<sup>4</sup> þritti?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ful fel hit heo þuhte.

þa broðerē to þiffen ærde ⁊

brohten vnimete verde.

&amp; her comen heom bi-uoren ⁊

balde þas Bruttes.

vnimete uolc ⁊

al hit wræc þa wolde.

þæ ær weoren ȝeond wudes ⁊

wunderliche to-dreued.

þurh þene muchelne æie ⁊ [c. 2.] for Hēgestes ēye.

and þurh þe muclen ærmðe. 11

&amp; þurh þene mucle hærm ⁊

þa Hengeft heom wrohte.

&amp; hafde alle heore hæfd-men ⁊

mid cniuen amurðerd.

mid sæxen to-ſnæððe<sup>2</sup> ⁊

ſnelle þe þeines.

Bruttes heolden huftig ⁊

mid heȝe wiſdome.

heo nomen Aurilien ⁊

þene ældre broder anan.

inne hæȝe huftinge ⁊

And<sup>1</sup> broþers to þif erþe ⁊

brohte moche ferde ⁊

and her com heom bi-vore ⁊

mani bolde Bruttes.

þat hadde ȝam lang ihudde ⁊

And þo hii heolde ſpeche ⁊

mid mochele wiſdome.

20 and nemen Aurelien ⁊

þan eldre broþer anon.

and to-fore alle þing ⁊

by thirty,' and by many thousands,—'when they came together, full good it seemed to them!' [And] the brothers brought to this land a 'numerous [great] host; and here came before them 'these [many] bold Britons, a numerous folk, 'who would it all avenge,' that 'ere were over the woods wondrously scattered [had long hid themselves], 'through the mickle dread, and through the great misery, and through the mickle harm that Hengest wrought them [for dread of Hengest], 'and *who* had murdered all their chief men with knives, with sæxes cut in pieces the good thanes!' 'The Britons [And then they] held 'husting [conference] with great wisdom; 'they [and] took anon Aurelie, the elder brother, 'in the noble husting, and raised [before all things made] him to be king. Then

<sup>1</sup> And þe?<sup>2</sup> to-ſnæððe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

and heouen hine to kinge.  
 þa weoren Bruttes ⁊  
 mid blisse auulled.  
 bliðe an mode ⁊  
 þæ ær weoren murne.  
 Comen þas tiðende ⁊  
 to Vortigerne þan kinge.  
 þat Aurilien wes icoren ⁊  
 ād to kinge iheouen.  
 þa wes Vortig<sup>9</sup> wa ⁊  
 & æft him wes wurfe.  
 Vortiger uerde ⁊  
 ver to ane castle.  
 Genoire hæhte ⁊  
 hæh an ane munte.  
 Cloard hæhte þe munt ⁊  
 and Hærgin hahte þat lond.  
 on væst Wæie ⁊  
 þe is a water hende.  
 Vortigeres men nomen ⁊  
 al þat heo neh comen.  
 heo nomen wepnen & mete ⁊  
 a moni are wife.  
 to þan castle heo brohtē ⁊  
 swa muchel swa heo rohten.  
 þat heo inoh hafden ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

makede hine to kinge.  
 þo weren Bruttes ⁊  
  
 fwiþe bliþe foliwis.  
  
 Come þes tidinge ⁊  
 to Vortiger þan kinge.  
 þat Aurelie was ichofe ⁊  
 and to kinge ihoue.  
 10 þo was him wel wo ⁊  
 and eft him was worfe.  
 Vortiger wende ⁊  
 for to one castle.  
 Genoyre he hehte ⁊  
 heh vpon an hulle.  
 Gloarþ hehte þe hul ⁊  
 and þat lond Hergyn.  
  
 20 Vortigeres men nemen ⁊  
 al þat hii neh comen.  
 hii nemen wepne and mete ⁊  
 mani ane wife.  
 to þan castle hit brohte ⁊

*Genoire.**Hærgin.*

were *the* Britons 'filled with bliss, blithe in mood who ere were mournful [most blithe full truly]. These tidings came to Vortiger the king, that Aurelie was chosen and raised to *be* king. Then was 'Vortiger [he well] woe, and eft to him was worse! Vortiger proceeded far to a castle, 'named [it hight] Genoure, [up]on a high 'mount [hill]; Cloard hight the 'mount [hill], and Hærgin 'hight' the land, 'near *the* Wye, that is a fair water (stream).' Vortigers men took all that they came nigh; they took weapons and meat, 'on' many a wise; to the castle 'they [it] brought 'as much as they cared for, *so* that they had enow', though it little helped *them*. Aurelie

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þeh hit lutel hulpe.  
 Aurilien & Vther ⁊  
 weoren of Vortigerne war.  
 whær he wes uppen Cloward ⁊  
 bi-clufed in castlen.  
 Heo letten blawē bemen ⁊  
 bonnien heore uerde. [f. 93. c. 1.]  
 volc unimete ⁊  
 of mōi ane londe.  
 ferdn to Genoire ⁊  
 þær læi Vortigerne.  
 King wes wið utē ⁊  
 king wes wið innē.  
 cnihtes þer fuhten ⁊  
 mid feōdliche ræfen.  
 æuerælc god mō ⁊  
 gurede hine seolfuen.  
 þa heo ifeȝen ⁊  
 þat heo siȝen næfden.  
 þa to wude wenden ⁊  
 wunder mucche uerde.  
 heo uelden þæne wude adun ⁊  
 & droȝen to þan castle.  
 & fulden al þæ dic ⁊  
 þe wes wunder ane deop.

þeh hit lute holpe.  
 Aurelie and Vther ⁊  
 weren of Vortiger war.  
 þat he was in Gloarþ ⁊  
 bi-tuned in an castel.  
 10 hii to Genoȝre wende ⁊  
 war Vortiger alende. [f. 76. c. 1.]  
 King was wiþ ine ⁊  
 king was wiþ houte.  
 cnihtef þar fohtē ⁊  
 mid feondeliche refes.  
 20 And cnihtef a þan ende ⁊  
 to þan wode wende.  
 hii fulde þane wode adun ⁊  
 and-ladde to þan castle.  
 and fulde al þan dich ⁊  
 anon to þe toppe.

and Uther were aware of Vortiger, 'where [that] he was 'upon [in] 'Cloard, inclosed in [a] castle. They 'caused trumpets to be blown, their host to be assembled,—a numerous folk of many a land,—*they*' marched to Genoure, where Vortiger lay. A king was within, a king was without; knights there fought with fierce encounters; 'every good man made himself ready. When they saw, that they had not *the* victory,' 'then a wondrous great force [And *the* knights at the end] went to [the] wood; they felled the wood down, and drew to the castle, and filled all the dyke, 'that was wondrously deep [anon to the top. And] fire 'they' sent in, on every side, and called to

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Feor<sup>1</sup> heo in fende ⁊  
 on æuerælche ende.  
 & cleopeden to Vortiger ⁊  
 Nu þu scalt þe warmen þer.  
 for þu floȝe Coftanz ⁊  
 þe wes king of þif lond.  
 & seoððe Coftantin his fune ⁊  
 nu if Aurilie icumen.  
 & Vther his broðer ⁊  
 þa þe balu fendeð. 10  
 þe wind wæht þat fur ⁊  
 ꝥ hit wunderliche born.  
 þe caſtel gon to bernē ⁊  
 bures þer flælden<sup>2</sup>.  
 feollen þa hallen ⁊  
 floȝen<sup>3</sup> to grunde.  
 Ne mihten þer na cniht ⁊  
 aȝeines þe fure makien fiht.  
 þat fur eode ouer al ⁊  
 & barnde huf & barnde wal. 20  
 & þe king Vortig<sup>9</sup>ne ⁊  
 þer inne he gon to berne.  
 al hit for-fwælde ⁊  
 þat þer inne wonede.

And fur in fende ⁊  
 in euereche ende.  
 and cleopede to Vortiger ⁊  
 Nou þou fal þe wormie þer.  
 þe wind wehte þat fur ⁊  
 þat hit wel barnde.  
 Ne mihte þar non cniht ⁊  
 aȝen þan fure makie fiht.  
 þat fur wende oueral ⁊  
 and barnde cniht and barnd hal.  
 and þe king Vortigerne ⁊  
 þar in gan to bearne.  
 al hit for-swelde ⁊  
 þat þar ine wonede.

Vortiger: "Now thou shalt warm thee there, 'for thou slewest Constance, who was king of this land, and afterwards Constantine his son. Now is Aurelie come, and Uther his brother, who send thee bale!'" The wind wafted the fire, so that it burnt 'wonderfully [well]; 'the castle gan to burn, *the* chambers there were consumed; the halls fell to *the* ground.' Might no man there against the fire make fight (resist); the fire went over all, and burnt 'house [man], and burnt 'wall [hall]; and the king Vortiger therein 'he' gan to burn; all it was consumed that therein dwelt!

<sup>1</sup> Fur?<sup>2</sup> fwælden?<sup>3</sup> folden?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

*Deo gra-  
cias.*

þus ændede þer ⁊  
 mid muchele ærme Vortiger.  
 þa hæfde al þat lond ⁊  
 Aurilie an his hōd.  
 þer wes þe aðele eorl ⁊ [c.2.]  
 Aldolf ihaten.  
 he wes of Gloucestre ⁊  
 cnihtē alre glæuest.  
 þær Aurilie i þā ærde ⁊  
 makede hine stiward.  
 þa hæfde Aurilien ⁊  
 & Vther his brodrer<sup>1</sup>.  
 heore ifan auelde ⁊  
 & weorē þer fore þe bliðere.  
 þif iherden Hengeft ⁊  
 cnihten alre strengest.  
 þa wes he auæred ⁊  
 feondliche fwide<sup>2</sup>.  
 He fufde his ferde ⁊  
 & flæh toward Scotten.  
 & Aurilie þe kīg ⁊  
 æfter him uerde an hizinge.  
 & Hengeft þuhte þat he walde ⁊

[c.2.]

10

20

þus endede þar ⁊  
 mid mochele wowe Vortiger.  
 and Aurelie to his hond ⁊  
 nam al þis kine-lond.  
 þar was þe strong eorl ⁊  
 Aldolf ihote.  
 he was of Gloucestre ⁊  
 cniht mid þan beste.  
 þar riht Aurelie ⁊  
 his stiward hine makede.  
 þis ihorde Hengeft ⁊  
 cniht alre falsest.  
 He hizede swiþe ⁊  
 and wende toward Scottes.  
 and Aurelie þe king ⁊  
 after verde an hizenge.

Thus ended there, with mickle 'harm [woe], Vortiger! 'Then [And] Aurelie 'had [took] all 'the land [this kingdom] in his hand. There was the strong earl, named Aldolf; he was of Gloucester, 'of all knights skilfullest [knight with the best]; 'there in the land [there-right] Aurelie made him [his] steward. 'Then had Aurelie, and Uther his brother, felled their foes, and were therefore the blither!' Hengest heard this, strongest of all knights [knight falsest of all]; 'then was he afraid exceeding greatly. He 'marched his host [hastened greatly], and 'fled [proceeded] toward *the* Scots; and Aurelie the king went after 'him' in haste. 'And Hengest thought that he

<sup>1</sup> broðer?<sup>2</sup> fwiðe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

mid<sup>1</sup> al his mon-uerde.

ȝif me on-fohte him ⁊

fleon in to Scotte.

þat he mihte mid wiȝele ⁊

þanene atwinden.

ȝif he ne mihte i þan londe ⁊

uor Aurilie at-ftode<sup>2</sup>.

Aurilie ferde uorð ⁊

&amp; droh his folc riht norð.

mid alle his imihte ⁊

fulle feouen nihte.

Bruttes weoren balde ⁊

&amp; rehten ouer walde.

þa hafde Aurilien ⁊

vnimete uerde.

he funde weft lond ⁊

leoden of-flæȝene.

chiriches fur-baȝde<sup>3</sup> ⁊

Bruttes for-fwæled.

þa sæide Aurilie þe king ⁊

Bruttene deorlig.

ȝif ich mot ibiden ⁊

þ̃ ich aȝæ ride.

10 mid al his mihte ⁊

folle fouenihte.

Bruttes weren bolde ⁊

and rehten ouer wolde.

þo hafde Aurelie ⁊

onimete verde.

he funde in weft lond ⁊

þe chnihtes iflawe.

and þe chirches alle ⁊

icast to þan grunde.

20 þo saide Aurelie þe king ⁊

Bruttene deorlig.

[c. 2.]

would, with all his army, if men pursued him, flee into Scotland, so that he might thence with guile escape, if he might not for Aurelie remain in the land. Aurelie marched forth, and led his host right north, with all his might, full a se'nnight. The Britons were bold, and proceeded over the weald. Then had Aurelie a numerous force; he found [in] ravaged land, [the] people slain, [and all the] churches 'burnt [cast to the ground], 'and the Britons consumed.' Then said Aurelie the king, Britains darling: "If I might 'abide, that I should back ride; and if the Lord it will, who shaped

<sup>1</sup> The last letter of mid is by second hand, sup. ras.<sup>2</sup> at-ftonde?<sup>3</sup> for-barnde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

&amp; hit wulle drihte ⁊

þe scop þes dages lihte.

þat ich mote mid ifunde ⁊

biȝite mine ikunde.

chirchen ich wulle arære ⁊

&amp; god ich wulle hærē.

ich wulle alche cnihte ⁊ [f.93<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]

ȝeuē his irihte.

&amp; auer ælche beorne ⁊

þan ælden &amp; þan ȝungē. 10

ich wulle milden wurðen<sup>1</sup> ⁊

ȝif godd me wule ivnnæ ⁊

min æðel to biwinnen.

To Hengefte comen tidende ⁊

of Aurilie þan kinge.

þa fpac Hengeft ⁊

cnihtē alre fwikeleſt.

Hærcneð nu mi men ⁊ 20

monſcipe eou is ȝiueðe.

her cumeð Aurilie ⁊

&amp; Vther his broðer eke.

heo bringeð swiðe muchel folc ⁊

ȝef ich mote mid ifunde ⁊

bi-ȝete mine cunde.

cherchef ich wolle a-rere ⁊

and god ich wolle herie.

ich wolle eche cnihte ⁊

ȝeuen his rihte.

To Hengeft com tydinge ⁊

of Aurelie þan kinge.

þat he brohte ferde ⁊

of onimete folke.

þo fpac Hengeft ⁊

and leorede his cnihtes.

Hercneþ nou mine men ⁊ 20

wat ich ou wolle cuþe.

her comeþ Aurelie and Vther ⁊

the day-light, that I might 'in safety obtain my right (*or country*), churches I will arear, and God I will worship. I will give to each man his right, 'and to every person, the old and the young, I will be gracious, if God will grant to me my land to win!' Tidings came to Hengest of Aurelie the king, [that he brought *an* army of innumerable folk]. Then spake Hengest, 'most treacherous of all knights, [and instructed his knights]: "Hearken now, my men,—'honor to you is given [what I will make known to you],—here cometh Aurelie, and Uther 'eke, his brother; they bring very much

<sup>1</sup> A line seems here wanting, and an attempt seems to have been made to insert i before wurðen.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ah alle heo beoð fæie.  
 For vnwis if þe king ⁊  
 fwa beoð his cnihtes.  
 & a cnaue is his broðer ⁊  
 þe an alfe þe oðer.  
 þer fore maȝen Bruttes ⁊  
 beon muchele þe vnbaldur.  
 þenne þat hæfd is unwræst ⁊  
 þe hælp<sup>1</sup> is þæ wurfe.  
 & wel ȝe hit maȝen imunen ⁊ 10  
 þat ich wulle mæinen.  
 betere beoð ure fifti ⁊  
 þænne heore fif<sup>2</sup> hundred.  
 þat heo feole fiðen ⁊  
 ifonded habbeoð.  
 seoððen heo an londe ⁊  
 fōdeden leoden.  
 For cuð hit if wide ⁊  
 of ure wiðer-deden.  
 þ̅ we beoð kempen ⁊ 20  
 icud mid þan bezsten.  
 We scullen aȝen heom stonden ⁊ We folle aȝen heom stonde ⁊  
 & driuen heom of londen. and driuen of londe.  
 and walden þas riche ⁊ and welde þeos riche ⁊

and beie hii beoþ feaye.  
 For onwis his þe king ⁊  
 fo his his broþer ⁊  
 þar fore maȝen Bruttes ⁊  
 beo þe onbaldere.  
 wan þat heued his onwrest ⁊  
 þe heop his þe worfe.  
 and betere beoþ vre fifti ⁊  
 þane hire fif hūdred.  
 þat hii fale siþe ⁊  
 habbeþ i-funde.

folk,' 'but all [and both] they are fated! For the king is unwise, 'so are his knights, and' 'a knave [so] is his brother, 'the one as the other'; therefore may Britons be 'much' the un-bolder; when the head (leader) is bad, the heap (multitude) is the worse. And 'well ye may it remember, what I will say'; better are fifty of us, than of them five hundred,—that they many times have found, 'since they in land sought *the* people. For known it is wide, of our bold feats, that we are chosen warriors with the best!' We shall against them stand, and drive them from land, and possess this realm

<sup>1</sup> hæp?<sup>2</sup> *Sup. ras.*



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

after ure iwille.

after oure wille.

þuſ bæde Hængeſt ⁊

þuſ þe fwikele Hengeſt ⁊

cnihten alre hændeſt.

balde hiſ ferde ⁊

baldede hiſ cnihtes.

þer heo weſ an felde.

ah oðer weies hire<sup>1</sup> waſ idiht ⁊ [c. 2.] ac oþer wejeſ hit waſ idiht ⁊

ær com̃ ſeouen niht.

here come þe dai a ſoueniht. [c. 7]

Forð comen þa tiðide ⁊

Com þe tidinge ⁊

c. 1.

*Aurilie.*

to Aurilie þan kinge.

to Aurelie þan kinge.

whær Hengeſt wunede ⁊

10 war Hengeſt a-bod ⁊

buuen are munede.

vpon ane munede.

Aurilien haſde to iuerē ⁊

And Aurelie mid hiſ ferde ⁊

þritti þuſend rideren.

to him wende fwiþe.

balðere<sup>2</sup> Brutten ⁊

þe heore beot makeden.

&amp; æc he haſde Walifce ⁊

wunder ane monie.

þa lette he hiſ cnihtes ⁊

dæies &amp; nihtes.

æuere beon iweþned ⁊

20

alfe heo to wiþe ſcolden.

for auere he care haſde ⁊

of heðene uolke.

þa iherde Hengeſt ⁊

An þat ihorde Hengeſt ⁊

after our will." Thus 'hold [the traitorous] Hengest, 'fairest of all knights,' emboldened his 'host [knights], 'where he was in field,' but otherwise it was disposed ere came [the day a] se'nnight. 'Forth' came the tidings to Aurelie the king, where Hengest abode upon a mount. 'Aurelie had for companions thirty thousand riders, bold Britons, who made their threat; and eke he had Welsh, wondrously many. Then caused he his knights to be ever weaponed, day and night, as if they should go to battle; for ever he had care of the heathen folk. [And Aurelie with his host marched quickly towards

<sup>1</sup> hit?<sup>2</sup> baldere?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat Aurilien wes on uaft.  
 nom he hif ferde ⁊  
 & fufde him to-ȝaines.  
 þa wes Aurilie wær ⁊  
 þat Hengeft wolde cumē þær.  
 he uærde in ane velde ⁊  
 wel iwepned under ſcelde.  
 nom he forð rihtes ⁊  
 ten þuſend cnihtes.  
 þa weoren bezt iboren ⁊ 10  
 & of hif ferde coren.  
 & fetten heom a þan felde ⁊  
 auoten under ſcelde.  
 Ten þuſend Walifce ⁊  
 he to wude fende.  
 ten þuſend Scottes ⁊  
 he fende bi-halues.  
 þe hæðene to imete ⁊  
 bi ftizen & by ſtraten.  
 him ſeolf he nom hif eorles ⁊ 20  
 & his aðele kempes.  
 & hif holdeſte men ⁊  
 þa he hæfde an londe.  
 & makede his ſceld-trame ⁊  
 fwulc hit weoren an hær wude.

þat Aurelie was aneweft.  
 nam he his ferde ⁊  
 and wende him to-ȝenes.  
 þo was Aurelie war ⁊  
 þat Hengeft wolde come þær.  
 he wende in one felde ⁊  
 wel iwepnid onder ſealde.

Ten þuſend Walſe ⁊  
 he to wode fende.  
 ten þuſend Scottes ⁊  
 he fende bi-halues.  
 þe heaðene to mete ⁊  
 bi weief and bi ſtrede.  
 him ſeolf he nam his eorles ⁊  
 and his ſtronge cnihtes.

and makede one foltrome ⁊  
 afe hit were a wilde wode.

him.] 'When [And] Hengeſt heard [that,] that Aurelie was near, he took his army, and marched againſt him. When Aurelie was aware that Hengeſt would come there, he went into a field, well weaponed under ſhield; 'he took forth-right ten thouſand knights, that were *the* beſt born and choſen of his force, and ſet them in the field, on foot under ſhield.' Ten thouſand Welch he ſent to *the* wood; ten thouſand Scots he ſent aſide, to meet the heathens by ways and by ſtreets; himſelf he took his earls and his 'good warriors [ſtrong knights], 'and his faithfulleſt men, that he had in land,' and made 'his [a] ſhield-troop, as it were a wild wood; five thouſand there

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

*Aldolf.*

fif þusend þer riden ⁊  
 þa sculden al þif folc biwiten.  
 þa cleopede<sup>1</sup> Aldolf ⁊  
 eorl of Gloucestre.  
 ȝif hit me on drihte ⁊  
 þe alle domes waldeð. [f. 94. c. 1.]  
 þat ich mote ibide ⁊  
 þat Hængeſt cume riden.  
 þa iſ a þiſſen londe ⁊  
 ſwa longe atſtōde. 10  
 & biſwac mine leofe freondes ⁊  
 mid longe hiſ fæxes.  
 biſiðe Ambereſburi ⁊  
 mid ærmliche wiðe.  
 Ah ȝif ich mihte of þan eorlē ⁊  
 þ æðel me bi-winnen.  
 þenne mihte ich fuggen ⁊  
 soð quides mine.  
 þ me haſde godd ſeolf ⁊  
 godes iunnen. 20  
 ȝif ich mine iſan ⁊  
 fallen to grunde anan.  
 & wræken mi deore cun ⁊

fif þouſend þar ride ⁊  
 þat folde þis folk wel bi-wite.  
 þo ſaide Aldolf ⁊  
 eorl of Gloucestre.  
 ȝif hit wole drihte ⁊  
 þat al domes weldeþ.  
 þat ich mai enȝ fiht ⁊  
 of Hengeſt habbe.  
 he folde bitere a-bugge ⁊  
 al hiſ ſtronge gile.

rode, who should 'all' this folk [well] defend. Then 'called [said] Aldolf, earl of Gloucester, "If *the* Lord, that ruleth all dooms, 'grant it *to* me [will it], that I 'might abide, that Hengest should come riding. [may have any fight with Hengest, he should *the* better buy (atone for) all his strong guile!"'] 'who has in this land so long remained, and betrayed (*or* destroyed) my dear friends with his long saxes beside Ambresbury, with miserable death! But if I might of the earl win to me the country; then might I say my sooth words, that God *himself* had granted good to me, if I might fell my foes to ground anon, and avenge my dear kindred, whom they have laid adown!"'

<sup>1</sup> The last syllable *de* is interlined, but by the original hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat heo habbeoð ilæid adū.

Vn-neæðe wes þif ſpel ⁊

iſæid to þā ende.

þa iſeȝen heo Hængeſt ⁊

haldē ouer dune.

Mid vnimete ferdē ⁊

feondliche heo fuſden.

to-ſomne heo comen ⁊

&amp; feondliche heo floȝen.

þer þa ræȝe men ⁊

to-gæderen heom ræfden.

helmes gunnen gullen ⁊

cnihtes þer feollen.

ſtel eode wið þā ban ⁊

balu þer wes riue.

urnen inne ſtrete ⁊

ſtremes of blode.

faȝedē þa feldes ⁊

&amp; þ̅ graf falewede.

þa iſeh Hængeſt ⁊

þ̅ hiſ help trukede.

þa hald he fram fæhte ⁊

&amp; bi-halues flæh.

&amp; hiſ folc after ⁊

fuſde bi-liue.

Onneþe waſ þat word ⁊

iſaid to þan ende.

þat hine hii iſehȝe ⁊

holde ouer dune.

mid onimete ferde ⁊

feondliche he fuſde.

To-gadere ſone hii come ⁊

and faſteliche hii floȝe.

10

healmes þar gonne ȝelle ⁊ [c. 2.]

cnihtes þar fulle.

vrne in þan wayef ⁊

ſtremes of blode.

20

þo iſeh Hengeſt ⁊

þat hiſ healp trokede.

þo fleah he ſwiþe ⁊

and hiſ folk after.

Scarcely was 'this speech [the word] said to the end, that they saw 'Hengest [him] approach over *the* down. With *a* numerous host 'they [he] fiercely marched; together [soon] they came, and terribly they slew; 'there the stern men together rushed *themselves*, 'helms [there] gan resound, knights there fell; 'steel went against the bones, mischief there was rife'; streams of blood flowed in [the] ways; 'the fields were dyed, and the grass changed color!' When Hengest saw that his help failed *him*, then 'withdrew [fled] he 'from *the* fight [quickly], 'and fled aside, and his folk after 'speedily moved. The christians pursued after, and laid on them, and called Christ,

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þa c<sup>i</sup>stine liðen after ⁊  
 & heom on læidē.  
 & cleopeden crift godes sone ⁊  
 beō heom a fultume.  
 & þe heðene leoden ⁊  
 æc lude cleopeden.  
*Teruagant.* Ure godd T<sup>o</sup>uagāt ⁊

whi trukeft þu us an hond.  
 þa Hēgest ifæh ⁊  
 þa hæðene ibuȝene. 10  
 & þa cristine men ⁊  
 cumen heom an ufene. [c. 2.]  
 þa fleh Hengc<sup>1</sup> þurh & þurh ⁊  
 þat he com to Kunigges-burh.  
 i þare burh he wende ⁊  
 burh to bruke<sup>2</sup>.

& þe king Aurilien ⁊  
 aft<sup>o</sup> wende anan.

and Aurelie him fiwede forþ ⁊

& clepede to his leoden ⁊  
 ludere stæuene. 20  
 Ærneð æuere vorð & vorð ⁊  
 Hengest if ifaren norð.

& heo him after buȝen ⁊  
 þat heo to burhȝe comen.

forte hii come to Coninef-borh.

Gods son, to be to them in aid; and the heathen people also called loud, "Our God Tervagant, why failest thou us now?" When Hengest saw the heathens recede, and the christian men come upon them, then fled Hengest through and through, until he came to Coningsburgh; in the burgh he went, safety to obtain.' And 'the king' Aurelie 'went after *him* anon [followed him forth], 'and called to his people with loud voice: "Run ever forth and forth! Hengest is gone northwards!" And they pursued after him' until they came to 'the burgh [Coningsburgh]. When Hengest and his son saw

<sup>1</sup> *R.* Hengest.<sup>2</sup> breokene *man pr.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þa ifæh Hēgeſt & his fune ⁊  
 al þa uerde heom after cumen.  
 þa fæide Hengeſt ⁊  
 cnihten alre wraðeſt.  
 Nulle ich na mare fleon ⁊  
 ah nu ich wulle fihten.  
 & mi fune Octa ⁊  
 & hiſ wed-brōðer Ebiffa.  
 & al mi mon-uerde ⁊  
 ſturieð eouwer wepnen. 10  
 & fare we heom to-ȝænes ⁊  
 & makien feond flæhtes.  
 & ȝif we hom ne falleð ⁊  
 þænne beon we fæie.  
 ilæid on felde ⁊  
 & freōde bidælde.  
 Hengeſt bah a þene wald ⁊  
 & bilæfde al hiſ teld.  
 & made he ſceld-trume ⁊  
 al of hiſ hæðene gumen. 20  
 þa com Aurilie þe king ⁊  
 & moni þuſend mid him.  
 and bigūnen þer oðer fæht ⁊  
 þe wes feondliche ſtærc.  
 þer wes moni græt dunt ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þo ifeh Hengeſt and hiſ fone ⁊  
 þe ferde after ȝeom come.  
 þo faide Hengeſt ⁊  
 cniht alre wropeſt.  
 Nelle ich na more fleon ⁊  
 ac nou ich wolle fihte.  
 and min fone Octa ⁊  
 and hiſ wedbroþer Ebýffa.  
 And alle mine cnihtes ⁊  
 ſtorieþ ȝoure wepne. 10  
 and wende we heom to-ȝeanes ⁊  
 and make we ſtronge fleahteſ.

Hii wende in to þan felde ⁊  
 and lete ſtonde hire teldef.  
 and made hire ſultrome ⁊  
 of hiſ heape ne gomes. 20  
 þar com Aurelie þe king ⁊  
 and mani þouſend mid him.  
 and bi-gonne þare to fihte ⁊  
 mid folle ȝorneſte.

'all' the hoſt come after them, then ſaid Hengeſt, of all knights wratheſt,  
 "Will I no more flee, but now I will fight, and my ſon Octa, and hiſ wed-  
 brother Ebiffa! And all my 'army [knights], ſtir *ye* your weapons, and  
 march we againſt them, and make [we] ſtrong ſlaughter! 'And if we  
 fell them not, then be we dead, laid on *the* field, and deprived of friends!'"  
 'Hengeſt [They] marched 'on [into] the 'weald [field], and 'left all hiſ [let  
 ſtand their] tents; and made 'hiſ [their] ſhield-troop 'all' of hiſ heathen  
 men. Then came Aurelie the king, and many thouſands with him, and be-  
 gan there 'another [to] fight, 'that was exceeding ſtrong [in full earneſt];

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

idæld i þan compe.

þer weoren þa cristine ⁊

wel neh ouer-cumene.

þa comen þer uaren ⁊

fif þusēd rideren.

þa Aurilie hafde ⁊

an horfe to fhten.

heo smiten a þan hæðene ⁊

þ heo adun helden.

þer wes feht swiðe stor ⁊ 10

eorneft ful sturne.

I þan fæhte com the eorl ⁊

Aldolf of Gloucecre<sup>1</sup>. [194. c. 1.]

&amp; ifunde Hengeft ⁊

cnihten for-cuððeft.

whar he feðdliche faht ⁊

&amp; þa cristine feolde.

Aldolf his gode sweord adroh ⁊

&amp; uppen Hengeft sloh. [uoren ⁊ and toward Hengeft he smot. [vore ⁊

&amp; Hengeft warp þene sceld bi- and Hengeft warp þane sceald bi-

&amp; ælles weoren his lif for-loren. and helles he hadde be for-lore.

&amp; Aldolf smat i þene sceld ⁊ 22 and Aldolf smot in þane sceald ⁊

þat he atwa to-scænde.

þare weren þe cristene ⁊

wel neh ouer-come.

þo com þar to helpe ⁊

fif þusēd ridares.

and smite amāg þan heapene ⁊

þat hii to grūde folle.

In þan fhte com þe eorl ⁊

Aldolf ihote.

and ifunde Hengeft ⁊

cnihte forcoupeft.

war he ȝeorne faht ⁊

and þe cristene fulde. [177. c. 1.]

Aldolf his sweord droh ⁊

and Hengeft warp þane sceald bi-

and helles he hadde be for-lore.

and Aldolf smot in þane sceald ⁊

þat he atwo to-feolde.

'there was many great stroke dealt in the combat!' There were the christians well nigh overcome. Then 'approached there [came there to help] five thousand riders, 'that Aurelie had on horse to fight'; 'they [and] smote 'on [among] the heathens, so that they 'down [to ground] fell; 'there was fight most strong, combat full stern!' In the fight came the earl Aldolf 'of Gloucester [named], and found Hengest, wickedest of knights, where he fought fiercely, and felled the christians. Aldolf drew his 'good' sword, and 'upon [toward] Hengest [he] smote; and Hengest cast the shield before him, and else 'were his life [had he been] destroyed; and Aldolf smote on the shield, so that it was shivered in two. And

<sup>1</sup> R. Gloucestre.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& Hengeft hi leap to :  
 swulc hit a liun weore.  
 & smat an Aldolfes helm :  
 ꝥ he atwa to-feol.  
 ꝥa heowen heo mid sweorde :  
 ꝥa fwipen weorē grimme.  
 fur flæh of stele :  
 ofte & wel ilome.  
 Vnder are stunde :  
 ꝥa leap Aldolf to [grunde]. 10  
 & ifæh him Gorlois :  
 ꝥat wæs a kene gūe ful iwis.  
 of Cornwale he wes eorl :  
 he wes widene cūð.  
 ꝥa wes ꝥæ beorn Aldolf :  
 muchele ꝥe balder.  
 & hæf hæhȝe his sword :  
 & lette hit adun swippen.  
 & smat Hengeft a ꝥan hond :  
 ꝥ he forlette his brond. 20  
 &<sup>1</sup> hiȝinge hine igrap :  
 mid grimme his læchen.  
 bi ꝥere burne hode :

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and Hengeft him leap to :  
 afe hit a lȝon were.  
 and smot vp Aldolf his helm :  
 ꝥat he atwo to-scende.  
  
 Vnder one stūde :  
 ꝥo leap Aldolf to grunde.  
 and ifeh bi him Gorloȝs :  
 ꝥat was a kene cniht foliwis.  
 eorl of Cornwale :  
 wel wide icnowe.  
 ꝥo was Aldolf :  
 moche ꝥe boldere.  
 and heȝe hefde his sweorde :  
 and hit adū swipte.  
 and smot Hengeft a ꝥan hond :  
 ꝥat he for-let his gode bronde.  
 and an hiȝenge hine i-grop :  
 bi ꝥan brunie hode :

Hengest leapt to him, as *if* it were a lion, and smote [up]on 'Aldolfs [Aldolf his] helm, *so* that it parted in two. 'Then hewed they with swords,—the strokes were grim,—fire flew from *the* steel, oft and well frequent!' After a time, then leapt Aldolf to *the* ground, and saw [by] him Gorlois, who was a keen 'man [knight] full truly; of Cornwall 'he was' earl, 'he was [well] widely known. Then was 'the baron' Aldolf much the bolder, and heaved high his sword, and 'let it down swing [swung it down], and smote Hengest on the hand, *so* that he let go his [good] brand; and in haste grasped him, 'with his grim looks,' by the cuirasses hood 'that was

<sup>1</sup> And an?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þa wes an hif hafde.  
 & mid muchelere strengðe ⁊  
 hine adun swipte.  
 and seoððe he hine up bræid ⁊  
 swulc he hine to-breken wolde.  
 & mid ærmen hine bisprædde ⁊  
 & forð hine lædde.  
 Nu wes Hengeft inumen ⁊  
 þurh Aldolf þene æhte gume.  
 þæ cleope Aldolf ⁊ 10  
 þene eorl of Gloucestre. [c. 2.]  
 Hengeft n<sup>o</sup> þe noht swa murie ⁊  
 swa þe wes bi Ambresburie.  
 þer þu þa sæxes droʒen ⁊  
 and Bruttes of-floʒen.  
 mid mid<sup>2</sup> muchele swike-dome ⁊  
 þu mi cun floʒe.  
 Nu þu scalt læn leofen ⁊  
 & lofie þine freonden.  
 mid reoliche witen ⁊ 20  
 an worlde forwurðen.  
 Hengeft eode stille ⁊  
 ne isæh he help nenne.

and mid mochele strengþe ⁊  
 hine adun swipte.  
 and suppe hine vp bræid ⁊  
 afe he hine breke wolde.  
 and his harmes spradde ⁊  
 and forþ mid him ladde.  
 Nou was Hengeft inome ⁊  
 þorh Hengeft<sup>1</sup> þan hohte gome.  
 þo saide Aldolf ⁊  
 eorl of Gloucestre.  
 Hengeft nif þe noht so muri ⁊  
 afe þe was wile bi Ambresbury.  
 þar þou þe seaxes droʒe ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 and min cun of-floʒe.

Hengeft eode stille ⁊  
 ne likede noht his wille.

on his head,' and with great strength struck him down; and then 'he' him up drew, as *if* he would crush him, and 'with [his] arms' embraced him [spread], and forth [with] him led. Now was Hengest taken, through Aldolf, the brave man! Then 'called [said] Aldolf, 'the' earl of Gloucester: "Hengest, *it* is not so merry for thee *now* as *it* was [whilom] by Ambresbury, where thou drewest the sæxes, and slew *the* Britons [my kindred], 'with much treachery thou slewest my kindred! Now thou shalt pay retribution, and lose thy friends; with cruel death perish in *the* world!'" Hengest proceeded still (without speaking); 'he saw no help; [his will

<sup>1</sup> *R.* Aldolf.<sup>2</sup> *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Aldolf hine ladde ⁊

to his leod-kinge.

&amp; grætte þene leod-kīg ⁊

mid leofliche worden.

Hail seo þu Aurilien ⁊

aðeles cunnes.

her ich bringe þe biuoren ⁊

þe wes þines cunnes bone.

Hengeft þene heðene ⁊

þe hærm uf hafueð iuræinned. 10 þat houre cun acwelde.

godd hit me iuðe ⁊

þat ich hine igripen habben.

Nu ich hine ȝiue þe ⁊

uor monne leofueft ært þu me.

& þet<sup>1</sup> þine hired-childeren ⁊

pleien mid þiffē hunde.

scotien mid heore flā ⁊

&amp; his cun scenden anan.

þa andfwarede þe king ⁊

quicliche ſteuene.

Edi seo þu Aldolf ⁊

eorlene aðeleft.

þu ært me leof al fwa mi lif ⁊

and Aldolf hine ladde ⁊

to his leod-kinge.

an faide to þan kinge ⁊

þeof ilke wordes.

Her ich þe bringe ⁊

þine cunnes bane.

Hengeft þane heaþene ⁊

þat houre cun acwelde.

Nou ich hine ȝeue þe ⁊

for manne leoueft art þou me.

and let þine hiredmen ⁊

pleoȝe mid þā hunde.

þo anſwerede þe king ⁊

20 cwickere ſtemne.

Wel worþe þe Aldolf ⁊

eorl alre kenneft.

þou art me leof fo mi lif.

liked it not, and] Aldolf led him to his sovereign, and 'greeted the sovereign with loving [said to the king these same] words: "'Hail be thou, Aurelie, of noble race!' Here I bring 'before' thee Hengest, the heathen, 'who was' thy kindreds bane, who 'hath sought to us harm [killed our kin]; 'God granted it to me, that I have him grasped!' Now I give him to thee, for dearest of men art thou to me; and let thy attendants play with 'this [the] hound; 'shoot with their arrows, and his race anon destroy!' " Then answered the king with quick voice: "'Blessed be thou [Well worth thee], Aldolf, 'noblest [keenest] of [all] earls! Thou art to

<sup>1</sup> let?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

leoden þu scalt beon alder.  
 þer me nom Hengeſt :  
 and þer me bond Hengeſt.  
 þer weſ þa Hengeſt :  
 cnihten alre ȝeomereſt.  
 Þis feht weſ ouer-cumē :  
 & þa hæðene fluȝen.  
 þa iſeh Octa :  
 þat hiſ fader weſ ful wa.  
 & Ebiffa hiſ wed-broðer : [195.c.1.]  
 buȝeȝen heom to-gadere. 11  
 & fluȝen in to Eouuerwic :  
 mid ærmðen inoȝe.  
 & greiðeden walles :  
 to-halden þa halles.  
 Summe þa hæðene :  
 to þan wude iwenden.  
 þær þ̅ ganninde folc :  
 læiden heom to grunde.  
 þa weſ Aurilian þe king : 20  
 iquemed wel þurh alle þing.  
 he wende in to Cunīges-burh :  
 mid hiſ driht folke.  
 & þankede drihten :

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

leode þou ſalt beon louerd.  
 þar me nam Hengeſt :  
 þar me bond Hēgeſt.  
 Þis fiht waſ ouer-come :  
 and þe heaþene floȝe.  
 þo iſeh Octa :  
 þat hiſ fader waſ wel wo.  
 and Ebýſſa hiſ wedbroþer :  
 bouwed heom to-gadere.  
 and floȝen into Euerwich :  
 and bi-tunde ȝam faſte.  
 Somme þe heaþene :  
 to þan wode wende.  
 þar þat going folk :  
 laide heom to grunde.  
 þo waſ Aurelie þe king : 20  
 icwemid þorh alle þing.  
 he wende to Conines-borh :  
 mid alle hiſ folke.

me dear as my life, thou shalt be 'chief [lord] of people !' There men took Hengest, 'and' there men bound Hengest ; 'there was then Hengest of all knights most wretched !' This fight was overcome, and the heathens fled. Then saw Octa, that his father was 'full [well] woe ; and *with* Ebissa, his wed-brother, joined them together, and fled into York, 'with harm enow [and inclosed them fast], 'and made ready *the* walls, *and* pulled down the halls.' Some of the heathens went to the wood, where the folk on foot laid them to ground. Then was Aurelie the king pleased 'well' through all things ; he proceeded 'in' to Coningsburgh, with [all] his folk, 'and thanked *the* Lord for such might.' Three days and three nights the king 'dwelt

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

swulchere mihten.

þreo dæies &amp; þreo niht ⁊

þe king wunede þar riht.

to lechinien þa wunden ⁊

of leofenen his cnihtē.

&amp; baðien on burȝe ⁊

heore wærie ban.

þa þe þridde dæi com ⁊

&amp; þat folc hafde imaked non.

þa lette þe king blawen ⁊

&amp; beonnede his eorles.

þa heo comen to hufstinge ⁊

to Aurilie þan kinge.

þa heo to-gadere comen ⁊

þe king heom axede sone.

whæt heo him radde ⁊

þ his richemen weoren.

a wulchere witen ⁊

Hengeſt ſcolde for-wurðen.

&amp; hu he mihte beſt wreokē ⁊

his leofueſte freondes.

þe an feſt Ambereſ-buri ⁊

leien bi-buride.

¶ þa ſtod up Ældad ⁊

þreo dæies and þreo niht ⁊

þe king was þare forþ riht.

to lechnie þe wūdef ⁊

of leoue mine cnihtes. [£ 77<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]

þo þe þridde dai com ⁊

and þat folk hadde imaked non.

þo lette þe king cleopie ⁊

alle his heorles.

forte wite in woche<sup>1</sup> wife ⁊

Hengeſt folde deie.

þo ſtod vp Aldodus ⁊

*Aldodus.*

[was] there [forth]-right, to heal the wounds of 'his [my] dear knights, 'and rest in *the* burgh their weary bones.' When the third day came, and the folk had made noon (?), then caused the king '*the trumpets* to blow, and summoned [to be called all] his earls, 'that they should come to husting, to Aurelie the king. When they came together, the king asked them soon, what they would counsel him, who were his rich men,' 'by what death [for to know in what wise] Hengeſt should die, 'and how he might best avenge his dearest friends, who lay buried near Ambresbury.'

<sup>1</sup> *Written at first on woche on woche in woche, but the superfluous words expuncted.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& wið þene king he spac þus.  
to-wardef gode he was god ⁊

he wes an hali biscop.

Aldolf eorles broðer ⁊

nefde he nenne oðer.

Lauerd king lust nu me ⁊

what ic wullen tellen þe. [c. 2.]

ich wulle makiē þene dom ⁊

hu he scal beō fordō.

For he if on leode ⁊

monnen us laðest.

& haued ure kun of-flæȝen ⁊

& idon of lif-dæȝen.

and he if an hæðene hund ⁊

helle he scal ifechen.

þer he scal finke ⁊

for his fwikedome.

Lauerd kīg hærcne me ⁊

wat ich þe wulle tællen.

A king wes in Jerusalē ⁊

Saul.

Saul wes ihaten.

þe wes in hæðenesse ⁊

king of muchele mæhte.

Agag.

Agag wes ihaten ⁊

þat was an holý biffop.

and seide king hercne me ⁊

wat ich wolle telle þe.

ich wolle ȝefue þane dom ⁊

ou he fal beo for-don.

10

20 A king was in Jerusalem ⁊

Saul was i-hote.

and in heaþennisse ⁊

was a king of mochele mihte.

Agag was i-hote ⁊

Then stood up Ældadus, 'and with the king he spake thus;—towards God he was good,' 'he [who] was a holy bishop, 'Aldolf *the* earls brother, he had no other,'—[and said:] 'Lord' king, 'listen now [hearken] to me, what I will thee tell. I will 'make [give] the sentence, how he shall be put to death. 'For he is most hateful of men to us in *the* world, and hath slain our kindred, and deprived of life-day; and he is a heathen hound—hell he shall seek; there he shall sink for his treachery! Lord king, hearken to me, what I thee will tell.' A king was in Jerusalem, *who* was named Saul; and in heathendom was [a] king of mickle might, *who* was named Agag,—Jerusalem he hated,—he was king of the Amalech,—the

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Jerl̃m he hatede.

Jerusalem he hatede.

he wes king of þe Amalæh :

þe wurfe him wes ful nieh.

auere he hatede Jerufalem :

mid hærm̃en þan meften.

nolde he neuere heom ȝiuen grið : nolde he neuere ȝef ham grið :

ah auere he heom stod wið.      ac euere he faht heom wiþ.

he heom baðde he heom floh :

he dude heom forȝen<sup>1</sup> inoh.Hit ilomp in ane time :<sup>10</sup>

þat þe sunne gon to scine.

þa fat Agag þe king :

inne hið hæh sættele.

meinde hið sæie blod :

&amp; muneȝede hine to fufen.

He cleopede his cnihtes :

anan uorð rihtes.

Swiðe to eouwer steden :

&amp; forð we scullē riden.

we sculleð bærñen & flæn :<sup>20</sup>

al ibuten Jerl̃m.

Forð wende þe king :

&amp; muc̃he ferde mid him.

þ̃ lond heo gunne þurh-ær̃nen :

& þa tunes fur-ber̃nen<sup>2</sup>.

Worse was full nigh to him ! Ever he hated Jerusalem with harm the most ; never would he give them peace, but ever he withstood [fought with] them ; 'he burnt them, he slew them, he did them sorrow enow ! It fell on a time that the sun gan to shine ; then sate Agag the king on his high chair ; his fated blood was troubled, and urged him to march. He called his knights anon forth-right : " Quick to your steeds ! and forth we shall ride ; we shall burn and slay all about Jerusalem ! " Forth went the king, and a great host with him ; the land they gan through-run, and the

<sup>1</sup> forȝen *pr. m.*<sup>2</sup> for-ber̃nen ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þ ifeȝe þa men ⁊  
 þe wuneden inne Jerufalem.  
 & heo heom to-ȝeines ⁊ [195<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 cnihtes & fweines.  
 & fuhten wið þene king ⁊  
 & mid fæhte hine ouer-comen.  
 & al hiȝ folc floȝen ⁊  
 & Agag heo king nomē.  
 & fwa heo mid him comē ⁊  
 to Saul þan kinge.

10

þa wes Saul þe king ⁊  
 bliðe þurh alle þing.  
 þe king axeden ræd ⁊  
 at hiȝ riche a-nan.  
 whæðer he mihte hime<sup>1</sup> bet don ⁊  
 oðer flæn oðer an-hon.  
 þa leop up Samuel ⁊  
 a witiȝe of Israel.  
 he wes swiðe hali mon ⁊  
 hæh touward drihtē.  
 nuȝte na mon i þan dæȝen ⁊  
 fwa heh mon an godes laȝen.

20

þis ifehȝe þe men ⁊  
 þat wonede in Jerufalem.  
 and hii him to-ȝenes ⁊  
 cnihtes and fweines.  
 and þane king nemen ⁊  
 and hiȝ folk floȝen.

þo was Saul þe king ⁊  
 blipe þorh alle þing.  
 þe [king] axede read ⁊  
 of riche hiȝ cnihtes.  
 woche manere þeos king ⁊  
 mihte for-worþi.  
 þo leop Samuel ⁊  
 a wittȝ of Isrl.  
 nuȝte me in þan dæȝe ⁊  
 non foch of godeȝ lawe.

[Sam]uel.

towns to consume.' The men saw 'that [this] who dwelt in Jerusalem; and they *advanced* against 'them [him], knights and swains, 'and fought with the king, and with fight him overcame,' and slew 'all' his folk, and 'Agag' [the] king 'they' took; 'and so they with him came to Saul the king.' Then was Saul the king blithe through all things! The king asked counsel 'at [of] his rich [knights] 'anon,' 'which he might *the* better do to him, either slay or up hang [in what manner this king might perish]. Then leapt up Samuel, a prophet of Israel;—'he was *a* man exceeding holy, high toward *the* Lord'; 'no man knew [men knew not] in those days 'man so high in [none such of] Gods law. Samuel took Agag the king,

<sup>1</sup> him?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Samuel nom Agag þene king :  
 & lædde hine a þan cheping.  
 & lette hine fwiðe fterke :  
 to ane ftake binde.  
 & nom mid his riht hond :  
 ænne dure-wurðe brond.  
 & þus cleopede him on :  
 Samuel þe godef<sup>2</sup> mon.  
 þu hættas Agag þe king :  
 nu þu ært an ærmīg. 10  
 nu þu fcalt fon þat læn :  
 þ þu for-ferdest Jerufalem.  
 þat þu haueft þaf hæȝe burh :  
 fwa fwiðe for-worht.  
 & monienne godne mon iflæȝen :  
 & idon of lif-dæȝen.  
 fwa ich ibide are :  
 ne fcalt þu nauer māf.  
 Samuel þ fweord an-hof :  
 & hærdeliche adun floh. 20  
 & al to-fwadde þene king :  
 in Jerufalem<sup>9</sup> chepping.  
 & þa ftucchen tarueden :

Samuel nam Agag þane king :  
 and ladde hine in þan chipinge.  
 and lette hine fafte :  
 to one ftocke bȝnde.  
 and nam mid his riht hond : [c. 2.]  
 one ftelene brond.  
 and þus faide him ton<sup>1</sup> :  
 Samuel þe gode mon.  
 þat þu hættas Agag þe king :  
 nu þu ært an ærmīg. 10  
 nu þu fcalt fon þat læn :  
 þ þu for-ferdest Jerufalem.  
 þat þu haueft þaf hæȝe burh :  
 fwa fwiðe for-worht.  
 & monienne godne mon iflæȝen :  
 & idon of lif-dæȝen.  
 fwa ich ibide are :  
 ne fcalt þu nauer māf.  
 Samuel þ fweord an-hof :  
 & hærdeliche adun floh. 20  
 & al to-fwadde þene king :  
 in Jerufalem his cheping.  
 and þe fticches toruede :

and led him in the market-place, and caused him 'most' fast to a stake to be bound; and took with his right hand a 'precious [steel] brand; and thus 'called [said] to him Samuel, the good man: "'Thou hightest Agag the king, now thou art in sorrow!' Now thou shalt 'receive the retribution for that thou destroyedest Jerusalem, for that thou hast this noble burgh so greatly injured, and many a good man slain, and deprived of life-day [buy *dear* (pay or suffer for) thy wicked deeds]! 'As I hope for mercy, shalt thou *do so* no more.'" 'Samuel [He] heaved up the sword, and 'strongly down struck [the head off smote], and cut the king all in pieces in 'Jerusalems [Jerusalem his] market, and threw the

<sup>1</sup> to ?<sup>2</sup> gode ?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

wide ȝeond þa straten. [c.2.]  
 þuſ tok Samuel on ⁊  
 and swa þu aȝeft Hengeſt don.  
 þiſ iherde Aldolf ⁊  
 þe eorl of Gloceſ<sup>e</sup>.  
 toward Hengeſt he leap ⁊  
 ſwulc hit a liun weore.  
 and igrap hine bi þan toppe ⁊  
 & hine æfter him halede.  
 & landde<sup>1</sup> hine þurh & þurh ⁊ 10  
 & þurh ut Cuniges-burh.  
 & wið uten þere burhȝe ⁊  
 he hine lette binden.  
 Aldolf hiſ ſwored adroh ⁊  
 & Hengeſtes haſd of-ſloh.  
 & þe king hine nom forð rihtes ⁊  
 for he wes ſwa oht cniht.  
 & læide hine in eorðe ⁊  
 after heðene læȝen.  
 & bad for þere ſæule ⁊ 20  
 þ hiſ neuere ſæl neore.  
 & nu Aurilie þe king ⁊  
 lette beode huſtig.

oueral þan ſtrede.  
 þuſ tok Samuel an ⁊  
 and ſo þou falt Hengeſt don.  
 þiſ hi-horde Aldolf ⁊  
 þe biſſop hiſ broþer.  
 and toward Hengeſt leap ⁊  
 afe hit a lȝon were.  
 and grop hine bi þan toppe ⁊  
 and after him hine halede.  
 and droh hine þorh and þorh ⁊ 10  
 al Conineſ-borh.  
 and wiþ houte þe borh ⁊  
 he hine lette bȝnde.  
 Aldolf hiſ ſweord droh ⁊  
 and Hengeſtes heued of-ſloþ.  
 and þe king forþriht ⁊  
 for he was ſo god cniht.  
 leide hine in eorþe ⁊  
 after heapene lawe.  
 And to<sup>2</sup> Aurelie þe king ⁊  
 wende forþ an hiȝenge.

pieces 'wide over [over all] the streets. Thus Samuel took-on (acted), and so 'oughtest [shalt] thou do to Hengest." Aldolf heard this, the 'earl of Gloucester; [bishop his brother, and] toward Hengest 'he' leapt, as *if* it were a lion, and grasped him by the head, and after him hauled him, and drew him through and through, 'and throughout [all] Coningsburgh; and without the burgh he caused him to be bound. Aldolf drew his sword, and smote off Hengests head; and the king 'took him' forth-right, because he was so 'brave [good] a knight, 'and' laid him in earth, after *the* heathen law, 'and prayed for the soul, that it never were happy.' And now Aurelie the king 'caused a husting to be summoned [went forth in haste], 'and

<sup>1</sup> ladde?<sup>2</sup> þo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

&amp; lætte blawen bemen ⁊

&amp; bonnien hif ferde.

folc þer wes fellic ⁊

&amp; ferden riht to Euerwic.

&amp; bi-clufdē þer wið innen ⁊

Octa mid hif mōnen.

þe king lette deluen ænne dich ⁊ þe king lette dealue one dich ⁊

al abuten Eouerwic.

al a-boute Euerwich.

þat ne mihte þer na man ⁊

þat ne mihte þar no man ⁊

neoðer ute no igan<sup>1</sup>.

10 noþer vt ne in gon.

þæt iſæh Octa ⁊

þæt iſeh Octa ⁊

þer fore him wes wa.

þar vore him was fol wo.

&amp; hif hæðene folc ⁊

þe he hæfde an burȝe.

heo nomen heom to ræde ⁊

what heo don mæhten.

&amp; þuf ſpac Octa ⁊

and ſeide to his i-veres ⁊ [f. 78.c.1.]

wið his iuere Ebiffa.

þat þar ine mid him were.

No<sup>2</sup> ich habben me biþoht ⁊

Ich habbe me nou bi-þoht ⁊

wht<sup>3</sup> ich don wulle.

20 wat ich don wolle.

Ich and mine cnihtes ⁊

ſcullen forð rihtes.

in ure bare brechē ⁊

gon we folle alle ⁊

caused trumpets to be blown, and his army to assemble,—there was wondrous (numerous) folk,—and marched 'right [forth] to York, and inclosed Octa with his men 'there' within. The king caused a dyke to be dug, all about York, that no man might there either go out or in. Octa saw that; therefore he was [full] woe. 'And his heathen folk, that he had in *the* burgh, they betook them to counsel, what they might do.' And 'thus spake Octa with his companion Ebissa [said to his companions that were therein with him]: 'I have now bethought me, what I will do. 'I and my knights shall forth-right' 'in our bare-breech go out of *the* burgh,

<sup>1</sup> in gan ?<sup>2</sup> Nou ?<sup>3</sup> whæt ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

gan ut of burȝen.  
 ræmen a mine swof<sup>1</sup> : [f.96.c.1.]  
 ænne rake-teȝe.  
 & cumen to þan kinge :  
 hiſ mildce biddinde.  
 ælles we beoð alle dæde :  
 buten we fulien þiffen ræde.  
 Alle heo duden swa :  
 fwa heom radde Octa.  
 duden of claðes :  
 kare-fulle cnihtes.  
 & eoden ut of burhȝe :  
 blaðe þeines.  
 tweiene & tweiene :  
 twenti hūðred.  
 Þiſ bi-heold Aurilien :  
 alðeleſt<sup>2</sup> kingen.  
 seolcuð him þuhte :  
 of þan nakede cnihten.  
 To-ſomne comen þa ferde : 20  
 þat læi ȝeond þan ærde.  
*Octa.* iſeȝen Octa cumen :  
 þat wes Hengeſt ſune.

on vre bare fot.  
 and honge a-bute oure ſweres :  
 grete rakeȝies.  
 and come to þan kinge :  
 hiſ milce biddinge.

And alle hii dude fo :  
 alſe heom radde Octa.

10

Þiſ bi-heold Aurelie :  
 and wondrede ſwiȝe :

þo he iſeh nakede come :  
 Octa Hengeſt hiſ ſone.

[Go we shall all on our bare-feet, and] hang 'on my neck a chain [about our necks great chains], and come to the king, praying his mercy. 'We all shall else be dead, except we follow this counsel.' " [And] they all did so, as Octa them advised; 'put off *their* clothes *the* careful (sorrowful) knights, and proceeded out of *the* burgh, miserable thanes, twain and twain, twenty hundred!' Aurelie beheld this, 'noblest of kings,' 'strange *it* seemed to him [and wondered greatly,] 'of the naked knights. Together came the host that lay over the land'; *they* [when he] saw Octa [naked] come, 'that was' 'Hengests [Hengest his] son. 'He [and] bare in his hand

<sup>1</sup> *Sup. ras.*<sup>2</sup> *R. aðeleſt.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

He bar an hif honde ⁊  
 ænne rake-teȝe longe.  
 he com to þan kīge ⁊  
 & bi-uoren hif hære-dringe.  
 he feol uppen uolde ⁊  
 þaƿ kinges fæt iſohte.  
 & þaƿ word ſeide þa ⁊  
 Hengeſtef fune Octa.  
 Imilze mi lauerd king ⁊  
 þurh þene milde godd. 10  
 for luue of god almihtē ⁊  
 haue milce of mine cnihten.  
 for alle ure heðene-ſcipe ⁊  
 hæne if iwurðen.  
 laȝen & ure leoden ⁊  
 for laðe we beoð drihten.  
 for uf if itruked an hond ⁊  
 Appollin & Teruagant.  
 Woden & Mercuriuſ ⁊  
 Jubit<sup>9</sup> & Saƿnus. 20  
 Venus & Didō ⁊  
 Frea & Mamilon.  
 & alle ure laue ⁊  
 nu uf funde laðe.

and bar on his honde ⁊  
 one raketeȝe ſtronge ⁊  
 and nuel feol to grunde ⁊  
 bi-vore þis kinges fote.  
 and þes word ſaide þo ⁊  
 Hengeſtef ſone Octa.  
 For þe loue of god al-mihti ⁊  
 milce me and mine chnihtes.  
 for vs his itroked and<sup>1</sup> hond ⁊  
 Appolin and Teruegand.  
 " "  
 and alle houre bi-lefue ⁊  
 nou vs beoþ loþe.

*Appolin.*

a 'long [strong] chain; 'he came to the king,' and before 'his warriors he [this kings feet] fell 'upon [prone to] *the* ground, 'and the kings feet sought'; and these words then said Hengests son Octa: "' Mercy, my lord king, through God the mild'; for [the] love of God Almighty 'have mercy of [pardon me and] my knights! ' For all our heathendom is become base, *our* laws and our people, for loathsome we are to *the* Lord.' For us has failed in hand Appolin, and Tervagant, 'Woden, and Mercurius, Jupiter, and Saturnus, Venus, and Didon, Frea, and Mamilon,' and all our beliefs are

<sup>1</sup> *R. an.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ah we wulleð ileuen ⁊

ac we wollep ilefue ⁊

in leofē þine drihten.

on gode þine drihte.

for al hit trukeð uf an hond ⁊ [c 2.]

þ we to temden.

We ȝeorned<sup>1</sup> þine are ⁊

nu and auere mare.

ȝif þu me wult griðens<sup>2</sup> ⁊& þu me wult fruðien<sup>3</sup>.

we þe wulleð to teon ⁊

&amp; þine holde men beon. 10

luuien þine leoden ⁊

&amp; þine laȝen halden.

ȝif þu þet wulle<sup>4</sup> ⁊

do þine iwille.

whaðer swa þu wult don ⁊

þa uf flan þa us an-hon.

&amp; þe kīg wes mild-heorte ⁊

&amp; heold hine stille.

he bi-heold a riht hond ⁊

he bi-heold a lift hond. 20

wulc of wiifen ⁊

ærest spæken wolden.

Alle heo weoren stille ⁊

&amp; fwiȝedē mid fæuen.

now to us odious ; but we will believe on thy 'dear [good] Lord, ' for all it faileth us now in hand, that we worshiped. We yearn thy favor, now and evermore ; if thou wilt me grant peace, and *if* thou wilt me grant amity, we will draw to thee, and be thy faithful men ; love thy people, and hold thy laws ; if thou wilt *not* that, do thy will, whetherso (whatsoever) thou wilt do, or slay us or up hang us." And the king was mild-hearted, and held him still ; he beheld on *the* right hand, he beheld on *the* left hand, which of *his* wise *men* first would speak. They all were still, and kept silence

<sup>1</sup> ȝeorned ?<sup>2</sup> griðien ?<sup>3</sup> friðien ?<sup>4</sup> nulle ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

nes þer nan swa hæh mon :  
 þat durste word sciren.  
 & æuere læie Octa :  
 æt þes kinges foten swa.  
 alle his cnihtes :  
 leien him biæften.  
 þa spæc Aldadus :  
 þe gode biscop & feide þus.  
 Æuere hit wæf : & a hit bið :  
 & ȝet hit uf bi-houeð. 10  
 þene we milze ȝeorneð :  
 þ we milze habben.  
 wurðe he if milze :  
 þe wurðeliche heo biddeð.  
 & þu feolf læuerd king :  
 leoden þu ært ælder.  
 imilze þu Octa :  
 & his iueren al swa.  
 ȝif heo wulleð cristindom :  
 mid gode lefuē vnder-fon. 20  
 for ȝet hit mai ilimpen :  
 i summere leoden.  
 þ heo maȝen drihten :  
 duȝeðliche hærien.  
 Nu stont al þis kinelond :

þo spæc Aldadus :  
 þe gode biffop and feide þus. *Aldadus.*  
 Euere hit was : and ȝet hit his :  
 10 alfe vs wel bi-houeþ.  
 þat wo milce biddeþ :  
 þat he hit maȝe habbe.

þar vore louerd king :

milce þou alle heom.

ȝef hii wollep cristendom :  
 20 mid gode bi-leaue onderfon.

with voice ; was there no man so high, that durst a word utter ; and ever lay Octa at the king's feet so ; all his knights lay behind him.' Then spake Aldadus, the good bishop, and said thus : " Ever it was, and 'ever it shall be, and yet it [yet it is, as *it* well] behoveth us, 'when we yearn mercy, that we should have mercy [that whoso prayeth for mercy, that he it may have] ; 'worthy is he of mercy, who worthily prayeth for it.' 'And thou *thyself*, [Therefore,] lord king, 'thou art chief of *the* people,' pardon thou 'Octa, and also his companions [all of them], if they will receive Christendom with good belief ; 'for yet it may befall, in some country that they may fitly worship *the* Lord. Now stands all this kingdom in

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

a þire aȝef hond. [196<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]

bitec heom enne ftude ⁊

þer þe bið iqueme.

&amp; nim of heom ȝifles ⁊

swulche þu wult ȝirnen.

&amp; let heom wel halden ⁊

in irene benden.

finden þan ȝiflen mete &amp; clað ⁊

finden al þat heom bið leof.

&amp; þenne miht þu wel halden ⁊ 10

þif mon-cun i þine londe.

&amp; let heom tilien þ lond ⁊

&amp; libben bi heore tilæhðe.

ȝif hit feoððen ilimppeð ⁊

An ȝef hit bi-falleþ ⁊

sone þer after.

þ heo trukieð an hond ⁊

treoðe<sup>1</sup> to halden.

&amp; wakieð mid wærke ⁊

þat hii wakie.

[c. 2.]

&amp; þe wiðer haldeð.

nu ich<sup>2</sup> þe demen þene dom ⁊ 20 her ich ȝefue þane dom ⁊

whæt þu miht feoððen don. ou þou falt bi heom don.

Let riden heō to ⁊

ræhliliche<sup>3</sup> fwiðe.

thine own hand; give them a place, where *it* shall be agreeable to thee, and take of them hostages, such *as* thou wilt require; and let them be well held (secured) in iron bonds; the hostages be found meat and clothes, be found all that to them shall be lief; and then mightest thou well hold (retain) this people in thy land, and let them till the land, and live by their tilth." [And] if it 'subsequently' shall befall, 'soon thereafter, that they fail in hand to hold troth, and' weaken 'in work, and withstand thee,' 'now [here] I 'decree to thee [give] the doom, 'what thou mayest then [how thou shalt by them] do. 'Cause *men* to ride to them exceeding

<sup>1</sup> Above the letter o is written u, as if to take its place.<sup>2</sup> *ic pr. m.*<sup>3</sup> *ræhliliche?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& let heom alle for-don ⁊  
 spillen & æc an-hō.  
 þis ich þe deme ⁊  
 drihten hit ihere.  
 þa andswarede þe king ⁊  
 q'ckere stefne.

Al swa ich wulle don ⁊  
 swa þu hauest idemed.  
 þus spæc þe king<sup>1</sup> þa ⁊  
 Aris up Octa.  
 þu scalt swiðe wel don ⁊  
 vnder-uoh cristindom.  
 þer wes iuulged Octa ⁊  
 & his iueren al swa.  
 and alle his cnihtes ⁊  
 i þan stude uorð rihtes.  
 Heo nomen heore ȝifles ⁊  
 & ȝeuen þan kinge.  
 þreo & fifti children ⁊  
 heo bitæhten þan kinge.  
 & þe king heom fende ⁊  
 bi-fiden Scotlonde.  
 aðes heo sworn ⁊  
 fwiken þat heo nalden.

let nime ȝam alle fwiþe ⁊  
 and do ȝam of lifue.  
 þis ich ȝam deme ⁊  
 drihte hit ihere.  
 þo answerede þe king ⁊  
 don ich wolle al þis þing.

10 Arif nou Octa ⁊  
 and þine cnihtes alle.

Alle þes cnihtes ⁊

him bi-toke ȝifles ⁊  
 þreo and fifti children.  
 hii him bi-tahte ⁊

20 and oþes hii fwore ⁊  
 fwike þat hii nolde.

quickly, and 'cause them all to be 'destroyed, slain and eke up hung [taken quickly, and deprive them of life]. This I decree to 'thee [them]; *the* Lord *it* hear!" Then answered the king, 'with quick voice': "All I will 'so' do [this thing] 'as thou hast deemed.'" Thus spake the king then': "Arise 'up [now], Octa; 'thou shalt quickly do well, receive Christendom [and thy knights all]." 'There was Octa baptized, and his companions also; and 'all 'his [these] knights 'on the spot forth-right.' 'They took their [gave to him] hostages, 'and gave to the king, 'three and fifty children they delivered to 'the king [him]. And 'the king sent them beside Scotland'; oaths they swore,

<sup>1</sup> kin *pr. m.*



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þe king bi-tahte hond<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 sixti hidene lond.  
 þer on heo wuneden ⁊ [c.2.]  
 wel feole wītren.  
 þe king<sup>2</sup> wes inne Eouerwic ⁊  
 aðele him þuhte.  
 he nom hif fonden ⁊  
 & fende ȝeond hif londe.  
 hæhte hif biſcopes ⁊  
 hif boc-ilærede men. 10  
 eorles & þeines ⁊  
 cumen him to-ȝeines.  
 to Aurilie þā kige ⁊  
 to muchele huſtinge.  
 Hit iwærð fone ⁊  
 þat heo gadere comē.  
 þe king hif folc grætte ⁊  
 mid fæire hif worden.  
 he wilcumed eorles ⁊  
 he wilcumed beornes. 20  
 & þa biſcopes ⁊  
 & þa boc-ilærede men.  
 Ich eou wulle fuggen ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xlii.

þe king bi-tahte heom an hond ⁊  
 fixti hidene lond.  
 þar on hii wonede ⁊  
 wel fale wintres.  
 þe king was in Euerwich ⁊  
 and murie him þohte.  
 he fende his fonde ⁊  
 oueral his londe.  
 and hehte eorles and knihtes ⁊  
 10 biſſopes and cleorekes.  
 come an hiȝenge.  
 riht to him feolue ⁊  
 And hii ſwiȝe fone ⁊  
 to him alle come.  
 þe king welcomede alle ⁊  
 hiȝenliche ſwiȝe.  
 Ich ou wolle ſegge ⁊

that they would not deceive *him*. The king gave them in hand sixty hides of land; thereon they dwelt well many winters. The king was in York, 'good [and merry] it seemed to him; he 'took [sent] his messengers, 'and sent' over [all] his land; [and] ordered 'his' 'bishops, his book-learned men, earls and thanes [earls and knights, bishops and clerks], to come 'towards him, to Aurelie the king, [in haste, right to himself.] 'to a great husting. 'It soon came to pass, that they came together [And they very soon all came to him]. The king 'greeted his folk with his fair words [welcomed all very speedily], 'he welcomed earls, he welcomed barons, and the bishops, and the book-learned men.'—"I will say to you with [my]

<sup>1</sup> heom an hond?<sup>2</sup> kin, *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

mid foðe wordē.  
 whi ich eou æfter fende ⁊  
 & for wulche þingen.  
 Her ich aȝeuen ælche cnihten ⁊  
 icunden<sup>1</sup> & hiſ rihten.  
 & æuerælche eorle ⁊  
 & æuerælche beorne.  
 þat he mæi biwinnen ⁊  
 brukē hit mid wunnen.  
 & ælche monnen bi hiſ life ⁊ 10  
 ich hate grið luuien.  
 Ich hæten eou wurchen ⁊  
 & buldē þa chirchen.  
 bellen leten ringen ⁊  
 godes lof fingen.  
 heren mid ure mihtē ⁊  
 leofe ure drihten.  
 ælche mon bi hiſ mæhte ⁊  
 halden ſibbe & ſæhten.  
 læten tilien þ lond ⁊ 20  
 nu hit iſ al a mire hond.  
 þa þuſ dō wes iſæid ⁊  
 alle heo leofden þiſne ræd.  
 þe king heom ȝef leoue ⁊

mid foþe mine worde.  
 wi ich ou after fende ⁊  
 and for woche þinge.  
 Here ich take ech cniht ⁊  
 hiſ cūde and hiſ riht.  
 and ech eorl and barun ⁊  
 þat he mai a-winne ⁊  
 And ich ou hote alle ⁊  
 a-rere chirches þat beoþ a-valle.  
 and ech be hiſ mihte ⁊  
 lofuie vre drihte.  
 þo þeſ dom waſ al iſeid ⁊  
 alle hii louede þane read.  
 þe king ȝam [ȝef] leue ⁊ [£78<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]

sooth words, why I sent after you, and for what thing. Here I give to each knight his land and his right, and to 'every [each] earl and 'every' baron, what he may win, 'to possess it with joy; and each man I order to love peace, on his life'. [And] I bid you [all] to 'work and build the [arear] churches [that are fallen], 'to let *the* bells ring, to sing Gods praise,' [and each] 'with our [by his] might to 'worship [love] our 'dear' Lord; 'each man by his might to hold peace and amity, *and* cause the land to be tilled, now it is all in my hand.' " When this doom was [all] said, they all praised 'this [the] counsel. The king gave them leave to depart thence; each fared

<sup>1</sup> if cunden *man. sec.*, for his cunden.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þenne to liðe.	þane to liþe.
ælc uærde heomward ⁊	ech verde hamward ⁊
swa heom bezft þuhte.	þar him beft þohte.
Seouen niht fulle ⁊	Souenihte folle ⁊
þe king læi þer stille.	þe king lai þare stille.
& feoððen he gon liðe ⁊	and suppe he gan wende ⁊
in to Lūdenne. [f. 97. c. 1.]	in to Londone.
to gladien þat burh-folc ⁊	
þat ofte weoren bifie.	
He letten stronge walles ⁊	10 and lette strongi walles ⁊
he lette bulden halles.	and arere halles.
& rihte al þa workes ⁊	
þe ær weore to-brofene <sup>1</sup> .	
& aȝef heom alle þa laȝen ⁊	
þe stoden bi heore ælderne dæȝen.	
he makede þer reuen ⁊	and he makede þare reues ⁊
þan uolke to reden.	þan folke to dihte.
& þenenen he gon wendē ⁊	þanene he wende ⁊
riht to Winchæstre.	riht to Wynchestre.
þer he lette wurcchen ⁊	20 and lette þare wereche ⁊
2	halles and chirches.
þer him þuhte fwiðe muri ⁊	þare him þohte fwiþe muri ⁊
feoððen he uerde to Ambres-buri.	and suppe he wende to Ambresburi.

homeward, 'as [where] to 'them [him] *it* best seemed. Full seven nights the king lay there still, and then he gan proceed into London, 'to gladden the burgh-folk, who oft were busy.' 'He [and] caused walls to be strengthened, 'he caused [and] halls to be 'built [areared], 'and all the works to be righted (repaired) that ere were broken; and gave them all the laws that stood in their elders days'; [and] he made there reves, to rule the folk. 'And' thence he 'gan proceed [proceeded] right to Winchester; [and] there 'he' caused to be worked [halls and churches];—there *it* seemed to him most pleasant;—[and] afterwards he went to Ambresbury, 'to the

<sup>1</sup> This word is doubtful, and seems to have been written at first to-rofene.

<sup>2</sup> A line is here evidently deficient.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to þan leerstowe ⁊  
 of leofuen his freonden.  
 þa Hengeſt mid cniuen ⁊  
 þer aquald hæfuede.  
 He lette axien anan ⁊  
 men þat cuðen hæuwen ſtan.  
 & æc gode wurhten ⁊  
 þe mid æxe cuðe wurchen.  
 he þohte wurche þer a werc ⁊  
 wūder ane ueire. 10  
 þ̃ a ſculde ilaſten ⁊  
 þa while men luueden.  
 þa weſ inne Kaerlium ⁊  
 a biſcop þe hahte Tremoriun.  
 he wes ſwiðe wiſ mon ⁊  
 inne weorld-richen.  
 mid þā kinge he wes ⁊  
 ouenan þæ walde.  
 & þuſ Tremorien godes dring ⁊  
 ſpæc þer wið þene king. 20  
 Luſt nu me Aurilien ⁊  
 what ich þe wulle cuðen.  
 & ich þe wullen fuggen ⁊  
 ſæleſt alre ræden.  
 ȝif þu hine wult luuien ⁊

ware Hengeſt mid his cniueſ ⁊  
 adde idon his cun of lifue.  
 He lette axi anon ⁊  
 men þat couþe ewe ſton.  
 and eke after wrohtes ⁊  
 þat mid axe couþen weorche.  
 he þohte makien an worc ⁊  
 þat euere ſolde leſte ⁊  
 þo was in Kairlyon ⁊  
 an biſſop þat hehte Tremorion. *Tremorion.*

burial-place of his dear friends,' 'whom [where] Hengest with [his] knives had 'murdered there [deprived his kindred of life]. He caused men anon to be inquired for, who could hew stone, and eke 'good [after] wrights, who could work with axe; he thought to 'work there [make] a work 'wondrously fair,' that ever should last, 'the while men lived!' Then was in (of) Caerleon a bishop, that hight Tremoriun; 'he was a man exceeding wise in the worlds-realm; with the king he was, over the weald. And thus' 'Tremoriun, Gods servant, spake there with [he said to] the king, [of a good thing]: "'Listen now to me, Aurelie, what I will make known to thee, and I will say to thee the best of all counsel; if thou wilt it approve,

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

æft he þe likeð.

We habbeoð ænne witeȝe ⁊

Mærlin if ihaten.

ȝif æi mō hine mihte ifinden ⁊

uppe þiffere wælden. [c. 2.]

&amp; to þe ibringen ⁊

þurh æief cunnef þinge.

&amp; þu hiſ iwille ⁊

driȝen woldeſt.

he þe wolde runen ⁊

feleſt ræden.

hu þu mihteſt þiſ weorc ⁊

makien ſtrong &amp; ſterk.

þet a mihte ilæſten ⁊

þa while men leoueden.

þa andſwarede þe king ⁊

þas wordes him weoren iqueme.

Leoue freond T<sup>m</sup>oriun ⁊

al þiſ ich wulle don.

þe king ſende hiſ ſonde ⁊

ȝeond al hiſ kinelonde.

and bad æuerælcne mon ⁊

axien after Mærlin.

&amp; ȝif me hine mihten ifinden ⁊

bringen hine to þan kige.

We habbeþ one wýtti ⁊

Merlȝn hiſ ihote.

ȝef me hine mihte finde ⁊

and to þe hine bringe.

10 he þe wolde ſegge ⁊

feleſt alre reade.

hou þou mihteſt þiſ worc ⁊

makie ſtrōg and ſtark.

þat hit mihte leſte ⁊

þe wile þat men leſuede.

20 þe king an hiȝenge ⁊

wide þiſ men ſende.

for to hine finde ⁊

and bringe to þan kinge.

[c. 2.]

eft it will like to thee.' We have a prophet, *who* is Merlin named; if 'any man [men] might him find, 'upon this weald,' and bring [him] to thee, 'through any kind of thing, and if thou his will wouldest perform,' he would say to thee best [of all] counsel, how thou mightest this work make strong and stark, that 'ever [it] might last, the while [that] men lived. 'Then answered the king,—these words were to him agreeable:—"Dear friend Tremoriun, all this I will do." 'The king [in haste] sent his 'messengers over all his kingdom [men wide], 'and bade every man to ask after Merlin'; 'and if men might him find, to bring him [for to find him,

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

he him wolde ȝifuen lond ⁊  
 boðe feoluer & gold,  
 & a weorl-richen ⁊  
 driȝen hiſ iuille.  
 þa fondē gunnen riden ⁊  
 widen & fiden.  
 summe heo uerden riht norð ⁊  
 & ſumme heo uerden ſuð forð.  
 sūme heo uerden riht æft ⁊  
 & summe heo uerden riht weſt. 10  
 summe heo uerden a-nan ⁊  
 þat heo comen to Alæban.  
 þat iſ a wælle ⁊  
 inne Wælfce londe.  
 þe wælle he lufoðe ⁊  
 & ofte hine þer inne baðede.  
 þa cnihtes hine funde ⁊  
 þer he ſat bi þan ſtrondē.  
 Sone fwa hine inettē<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 fæire heo hine igrætten. 20  
 & þuſ him to forð rihtes ⁊  
 sæiden þa tweien cnihtes.  
 Hail ſeo þu Mærlin ⁊  
 monnene wiſeſt.

Sonime wēde a-non ⁊  
 þat hii come to Alaban.  
 þat hiſ fair welle ⁊  
 ine Walſe londe.  
 þe welle he moche lofuede ⁊  
 and lome þare baþede.  
 þe cnihtes hine funde ⁊  
 þar h<sup>1</sup> ſat bi brimme.

Ala[ban].

and bring] to the king; 'he would give him land, both silver and gold, and in *the* worlds realm perform his will. The messengers gan to ride wide and far; some they went right north, and some they went forth south; some they went right east, and some they went right west'; some 'they' went anon, *so* that they came to Alaban, that is 'a' [fair] well (spring) in Welsh land. The well he (Merlin) [much] loved, and oft 'therein [there] bathed 'him'; the knights him found where he sate by 'the strand [brim]. 'So soon as *they* him met, they greeted him fair'; and thus said the 'two' knights 'to him' 'forth [anon] right: "' Hail be thou, Merlin, wisest of

<sup>1</sup> R. he.<sup>2</sup> imetten?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

bi uf þe gon grætē? [197<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]

Bi vs þe gan grete?

þ̃ if a god-ful king.

þe king of þisse londe.

Aurilian ibaten?

aðest<sup>1</sup> alre kingē.

stont al þif muchele lond?

ī Aurilies kingef hond.

faire he þe bifecheð?

and faire þe bi-secheþ?

þ̃ þu him to buȝe.

þat þou to him come.

&amp; he þe wule ȝiue lond?

hand he þe wole ȝeue lond?

boðe feoluer &amp; gold.

10 and feoluer and golde.

ȝif þu an riche?

ræde wulle þā kinge.

Mærlin andfwerede þa?

Merlȳn anfwereðe þo?

þæt cnihten<sup>2</sup> wes ful wa.

þat þe cnihtes weren wo.

Ne recche ich noht hiȝ londes?

Ne rech ich of his londes?

hiȝ feoluer no hiȝ goldes.

ne of his oþer ȝeftes.

no his claðes no hiȝ hors?

mi feolf ich habbe inowe.

þa sat he stille?

þo sæt he stille?

longe ane stunde.

20 one lange stunde.

þaȝ cnihtes weoren afæred?

þat he fleon<sup>3</sup> wolde.

men!' By us *'he* who is a goodly king [the king of this land], 'named Aurelie, noblest of all kings,' greets thee, [and] 'he' beseecheth thee courteously, that thou come to him; and he will give land to thee, 'both [and] silver and gold, 'if thou in *the* realm wilt counsel the king.' " Then answered Merlin, 'what to *the* knights was full [that the knights were] woe: "I reckon not of his land, 'his silver, nor 'his gold [nor of his other gifts], 'nor his clothes, nor his horses; myself I have enow.' " Then sate he still a long time. 'These knights were afraid, that (least) he would flee.' When

<sup>1</sup> aðeleft?<sup>2</sup> þa has been added before cnihten by a second hand, and afterwards erased.<sup>3</sup> feon, *pr. man.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þa hit alles up brac :  
 hit wes god þat he spæc.  
 3it<sup>1</sup> beoð tweiene cnihtes :  
 icumen her rihtes.  
 3urstendæi ær none :  
 ich wuste þat 3e comen.  
 & 3if ich swa walde :  
 ne mihte 3e me finden.  
 3e bringeð me gretinge :  
 from Aurilie þan kinge.  
 Ich cneou his cnihtes<sup>2</sup> :  
 ær he come to londe.  
 & ich icneou þene oðer :  
 Vther his broðer.  
 ic icneou beien :  
 ær heo iboren weoren. [c. 2.]  
 þæh ich nauer nouper :  
 mid e3en ne ife3e.  
 Ah walawa walawa :  
 þat hit if idiht swa.  
 þ þe leodene-king :  
 leng ne mot luuien.  
 Ah nu ich wulle fufen :  
 & beon eouwer ifere.

þo hit halles vp brac :  
 hit waf god þat he spæc.  
 3e beoþ tweie cnihtes :  
 icome fram þan kinge.  
 3orstendai here non :  
 ich wuste þat 3e come.  
 and 3ef ich hit wolde :  
 ne solde 3e me finde.  
 3e bringeþ me gretýnge :  
 fram Aurelie þan kinge.  
 Ich i-cnew his custes :  
 are he to londe come.  
 and eke þan oþer :  
 Vther his broþer.  
 ich icnew beyene :  
 are hii ibore were.  
 þeh ich neuere ne seh3e :  
 noþer mid eh3e.  
 Ac wolawo wolawo : [c. 79. c. 1.]  
 þat hit his idiht so.  
 þat þe gode king :  
 lang ne mot libbe.  
 Nou ich wolle wende :  
 mid 3ou to þa kinge.

it all brake forth, it was good that he spake : "Ye are two knights come 'right here [from the king]; yesterday ere noon I knew that ye should come, and if I 'so [it] would, ye 'might [should] not find (have found) me. Ye bring me greeting from Aurelie the king. I knew his qualities ere he came to land, and 'I knew [eke] the other, Uther his brother; I knew both ere they were born, though I never saw either with eye. But alas! alas! that it is so ordered, that the 'monarch [good king] may not live long! 'But' now will I go, 'and be your companion;' to the king 'I will proceed

<sup>1</sup> *Written at first 3eit, but e expuncted.*<sup>2</sup> *costes ?*



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

to þan kinge ich faren wulle ⁊

&amp; driȝen hiȝ iwille.

Forð ferde Mærlin ⁊

&amp; þa cnihtes wið him.

swa longe ꝥ heo comen ⁊

to þā leod-kinge.

Komen to þan kinge ⁊

wil-tidende.

næuer ær an hiȝ liue ⁊

nes þe king swa bliðe. 10

for næuere nanef mōnes cume ⁊

þe him to come.

þe kīg to hiȝ stede ⁊

&amp; ut him gon ride.

&amp; alle hiȝ cnihtes mid hī ⁊

to wulcumen Mærlin.

þe kīg hine imette ⁊

&amp; fære hine igratte.

he hine iclupte ⁊

he hine cufte.

he hine cuðlæhte<sup>1</sup> ⁊

Muchel wes þe murhȝe ⁊

i þan mō-uerede.

al for Marlines cume ⁊

Forþ wende Merlȝn ⁊

and þe cnihtes mid him.

so lange þat hii come ⁊

þar þe king wonede.

þe king hine clupte ⁊

20 þe king hine cufte.

[with you], 'and perform his will.' " Forth went Merlin, and the knights with him, so long that they came 'to the sovereign [where the king dwelt]. 'The good tidings came to the king; never ere in his life was the king so blithe, for ever any kind of man that came to him! The king *went* to his steed, and out gan him ride, and all his knights with him, to welcome Merlin.' The king 'him met, and greeted him fair; he' embraced him, 'he[the king] kissed him, 'he made him *his* familiar. Great was the mirth among the people, all for Merlin's arrival, who was son of no man. Alas!

<sup>1</sup> A line here seems deficient.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þe nes nanes monnef fune.

Wale þat an worlde ⁊

næs nan witie.

þat auere wufte here ⁊

whes fune he weore.

buten drihtē ane ⁊

þe wlæt al clane.

þe king lælde<sup>1</sup> to bure ⁊

and ladde hine to boure ⁊

Mærlin þe wes deore. [f.98. c.1.] for he was him deore.

he hine fræinien gon ⁊ 10 and he axede him anon ⁊

mid fæire hif worden anan. mid fayre his wordef.

þat he dude him to vnder-stonde ⁊ þat he him dude to vnderstōde ⁊

of þan weorldeð ȝeōgen. of þis worle longe.

&amp; of al þan ȝeren ⁊

þat to cumen weoren.

for hit weoren him fwiðe iwil ⁊

þ he þerof wufte.

Mærlin andfwerede þa ⁊

Merlȳn anfwerede þo ⁊

&amp; to þan kinge feide fwa.

þat þan kinge was wo.

O Aurilie þe king ⁊

20 O Aurilie þe king ⁊

þu fræineft me a fellic þing.

þou axeft a wonder þing.

loke þat þu na mare ⁊

loke þat þou na more ⁊

fwulc þing ne ifcire.

foch þing ne fcire.

that in *the* world was no wise man that ever knew here whose son he were, but *the* Lord alone, who surveys (*or* explores) all clean! 'The king led [and led him] to chamber 'Merlin who was [for he was to him] dear; [and] he 'gan ask [asked] him anon with his fair words, that he should cause him to understand of 'the [this] worlds course, 'and of all the years that were to come; for it were to him greatly in will, that he thereof knew.' Merlin then answered, 'and to the king said thus [what to the king was woe]: "O Aurelie, the king, thou askest 'me' a strange thing; look that thou no more such thing inquire. 'For my spirit truly is wrathful, that

<sup>1</sup> lædde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

For mi gæft if bæl iwis<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 þa a mire breofte if.  
 and ȝef ich among monnen ⁊  
 ȝelp wolde makien.  
 mid glad-scipe mid gomene ⁊  
 mid god-fulle worden.  
 mi gaft hine iwarðeð<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 & wirð stille.  
 & binimeð me mī iwit ⁊  
 & mine wife word for-dut. 10  
 þenne weore ich dūbe ⁊  
 of æuer ælche dome.  
 Ah bilef fwulche þinges ⁊  
 quæð<sup>3</sup> Mærlin to þan kingen.  
 for whan fwa cumeð neode ⁊  
 to auer æi þeode.  
 & mon me mid milde-scipe ⁊  
 wulle me bifechen.  
 & ich mid mine iwille ⁊  
 mote wuniē stille. 20  
 þenne mæi ich fuggen ⁊  
 hu hit feoððen ſcal iwurðen. [c.2.]  
 Ah ich þe<sup>4</sup> wulle ræden ⁊  
 of nexte þire neoden.

Ac bi-lef al ſoche þinges ⁊  
 cwaþ Merlȳn to þan kinge.

Ac ich þe wolle reade ⁊  
 to þine nexte neode.

is in my breast; and if I among men would make boast, with gladness, with game, with goodly words, my spirit would wrath himself, and become still, and deprive me of my sense, and my wise words fore-close; then were I dumb of every sentence.' But leave [all] such things," quoth Merlin to the king, "'for whensoever need shall come to ever any people, and man will beseech me with mildness, and I may with my will dwell still, then may I say, how it afterwards shall happen.' But I will counsel thee of thy

<sup>1</sup> bæli wis, MS.<sup>2</sup> iwraðeð?<sup>3</sup> quæð?<sup>4</sup> þe is omitted by the first hand, which has also written ic.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

&amp; fugen þe her riht ⁊

what þu hauest an heorten.

A ueld if bi Amberes-buri ⁊

þe is brad &amp; fwiðe muri.

þer wes mid cniue ⁊

þi cun idon of liuen.

þer wef moni bald Brut ⁊

biſwiken to þan deðe.

&amp; þencheſt þene ſtude ⁊

mid wurðcipe igraten.

mid fælcuðe wærcken ⁊

wurðien þa dæde.

þat þer ſcal ſtonden ⁊

to þere worlde longe.

Ah naueſt þu neuere nenne mon ⁊

þe cunne awiht þe<sup>1</sup> on.

þe cunne wærc makien ⁊

þe nauere nulle trukien.

Ah ic þe wulle ræden ⁊

to ſwulchere neode.

for ich what a wærc ⁊

mid wundere bi-ſtonde.

for þat weorc ſtondeð ⁊

inne Irlonde.

and fegge þe her riht ⁊

wat þou haueſt on heorte.

On feold his bi Ambref-buri ⁊

þat his brod and ſwiþe muri.

þar was mid cniue ⁊

þin cun idon of lifue.

þar vore þou þencheſt þane ſtude ⁊

10 mid worþipe grete.

mid felcouþe workeſ ⁊

herie þe deade.

þat ſolde euere ſtonde ⁊

to þare worle longe.

Ac naueſt þou neuer one man ⁊ [c. 2.]

þat oht conne þar on.

for to worch makie ⁊

þat neuere nolle trokie.

Ac ich þe wolle reade ⁊

20 to ſolchere neode.

for ich wot a worc ⁊

for in Ýrlond.

nearest need, and say to thee right here what thou hast in heart. A plain is by Ambresbury, that is broad, and exceeding pleasant; there was thy kindred deprived of life with knives, 'there was many bold Briton betrayed to the death;' 'and [therefore thou] thinkest to greet the place with worship, *and* with surprising works to honor the dead, that 'there' shall [ever] stand, to the worlds end. But thou hast never 'any [one] man, that knows aught thereon, 'who can [for to] make a work that never will fail. But I will counsel thee at such need, for I know a work 'with wonder encompassed; far 'the work standeth' in Ireland. It is a most surprising

<sup>1</sup> þer?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiiii.

*Corea [gi]-  
gant[um].*Hit if a fwiðe fellic þing<sup>1</sup> :

Hit his a fwiþe fellich þing :

þat weorc if of ftane :

þat work his of ftone :

fwulc ne beoð oðer nane.

foch oper not ich none.

ftwa wid ftwa if weorlde-riche :

so wid fo his þe worle-riche :

nif nan weorc hif iliche.

nif no work him iliche.

þa ftanes beoð<sup>2</sup> muchele :

þe ftones beoþ mochele :

&amp; mahten heo habbeoð.

and mihte hii habbeþ.

þa men þe beoð un-hal :

þe men þat beoþ on-hole :

heo fareð to þan ftane.

10 wendeþ to þan ftones.

&amp; heo wafceð þene ftan :

and wafseþ þane ftan :

&amp; þer mide baðieð heore ban.

umbe lutle ftude<sup>3</sup> : [f.98<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]

heo wurðeð al ifude.

and habbeþ hire hele anon.

Ah þe ftanes beoð muchele :

Ac þe ftones beoþ mochele :

& uninete<sup>4</sup> græte.

and onimete grete.

for nif nauere na mon iboren :

for nas neuere þe man ibore :

i<sup>5</sup> nauere nare burhþe.

in neuere none borewe.

þe mihte mid ftrēgðe :

þat mihte mid ftrengþe :

þa ftanes þenne bringe.

20 þe ftones þanne bringe.

þa andfwarede þe king :

þo faide þe king :

Mærlin þu fæift fællc þing.

Merlȝn þou faift wonder þing.

thing, [it is named the Giants Ring]; the work is of stone, such as other 'there is [I know] none, so wide as is the worlds realm is no work 'its [to it] like. The stones are great, and virtue they have; the men who are sick 'they' go to the stones, and 'they' wash the stones, 'and therewith bathe their bones'; 'after a little while they become all sound [and have their health anon]! But the stones are mickle, and immensely great; for was never 'any [the] man born, in ever any burgh, who might with strength bring the stones thence.' Then 'answered [said] the king: "Merlin, thou sayest strange thing; 'that [if] never any man born 'may bring them thence,

<sup>1</sup> A line is here wanting, supplied by the other text.<sup>2</sup> beoð?<sup>3</sup> ftunde?<sup>4</sup> R. unimete.<sup>5</sup> Added by second hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe nauere nan iboren mon ⁊  
 ne maie heom bringgen þenne.  
 no mid nare strengðe ⁊  
 of þan stude lade.  
 hu mihte ich heom þenne ⁊  
 heom bringen þeonne.  
 þa andswerede Mærlin ⁊  
 þan kinge þat spac wið him.  
 ȝufe ȝufe lauereð kīg ⁊  
 hit wes ȝare iqueðen. 10  
 þat betere if liſte ⁊  
 þene ufe ſtrenðe¹.  
 for mid liſte me mai ihalden ⁊  
 þat ſtrengðe ne mai iwalden².  
 Ah fomne þine uerde ⁊  
 & far to þan ærde.  
 & þu mid þe lede ⁊  
 gode monne-uerde.  
 & ich wulle mid þe ⁊  
 þi monſcipe bið þe mære. 20  
 Ær þu aȝæn wende ⁊  
 þine iwille þu ſcalt habbē.  
 & þat weorc þu ſcalt bringen ⁊

wane neuere no man ibore ⁊  
 mid none cunnes ſtrengþe.  
 ne mai ȝam þanene ⁊  
 mid none þing bringe.  
 wat folde ich þanne ⁊  
 after heom ſende.  
 þo anſwerede Merlȝn ⁊  
 þan kinge þat spac wiþ him.  
 ȝufe ȝufe louerd ⁊  
 hit was ifaid wile.  
 þat betere his ſleahþe ⁊  
 þane vuele ſtrengþe.  
 for mid flehþe me mai holde ⁊ [L79<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 þat ſtrengþe ne mai awilde.  
 Ac ſend þider ferde ⁊

and ich wolde mid ham wende.

nor with any strength carry from the place, how might [with any kind of strength, may thence with any thing (contrivance) bring them, wherefore should] I then 'bring them thence [after them send]?' Then answered Merlin to the king who spake with him: "Yes, yes, lord 'king', it was 'of yore [whilom] said, that better is art, than evil strength; for with art men may hold what strength may not obtain. But 'assemble thine [send thither an] army,' and go to the land, and lead thou with thee a good host'; and I will [go] with 'thee, [them]—' thy worship will be the more! Ere thou back come, thy will thou shalt have, and the work thou shalt bring with thee to

¹ ſtrengðe?

² A part of this word is by second hand, *sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid þe to þiffen londe.  
 & swa þu hit scalt leden ⁊  
 to þere lich-rafte.  
 & wurðien þene stude ⁊  
 þer þine wines liggeð.  
 & þu seolf scalt þer in ⁊  
 þine ban restē.  
 þenne þi lif endeð ⁊  
 þer þu scalt resten.  
 þu seiden Mærlin ⁊ 10  
 & feoððen he sæt stille.  
 alse þeh he wolde ⁊  
 of worlden iwiten. [c. 2.]  
 þe king hine lette bringen ⁊  
 into ane fære bure.  
 & wunien þer inne ⁊  
 æft<sup>9</sup> his iwille<sup>1</sup>.  
 Aurilie þe king ⁊  
 lette beoden husting.  
 of alle þan londe ⁊ 20  
 þa stod an hif honde.  
 he bad him ræde ⁊  
 to swulchere neode.  
 and heo him wel rædden ⁊  
 riche hif beornes.  
 þ he dude þene ræd ⁊

this land, and so thou shalt carry it to the burial-place, and honor the spot where thy friends lie. And thou *thyself* shalt therein thy bones rest; when thy life endeth, there shalt thou rest." Thus said Merlin, and afterwards he sate still, as though he would from *the* world depart. The king caused him to be brought into a fair chamber, and dwell therein, after his will. Aurelie the king caused *a* husting to be summoned from all the lands that stood in his hand; he bade *them* counsel him at such need. And his noble barons

<sup>1</sup> *Sup. ras. à sec. man.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat Mærlin him hauede ifað<sup>1</sup>.

Ah heo nælden leden þene king ⁊

ut of þif londe.

ah heo curen heom to ældre ⁊

Vther þene gode.

&amp; fiftene þufend cnihten ⁊

fæire iweþned.

baldere Brutten ⁊

þa þider ſculde buȝen.

þa þaſ ferde wes al ȝaru ⁊ 10

þa bigunnen heo to faren.

mid alle þan bezſte ſcippen ⁊

þæ bi þære ſæ ſtoden.

&amp; ferdē ſwa longe ⁊

þat heo comen to Irlōde.

&amp; þa hauene nomen ⁊

þæ cnihtes wel idone.

heo eoden uppen ſæ ſtrōd ⁊

&amp; biheolden Irlonde.

þa ſpæc Mærlin ⁊ 20

&amp; ſpilede mid wordē.

Iſeo ȝe nu ohte men ⁊

þene muchelne hul.

And he forþrihtes ⁊

ſende fiftene þufend cnihtes.

and Merlȝn and Vther ⁊

þat was his oȝe broþer.

hii verde ſo longe ⁊

þat hii come to Ȝrlonde.

they well advised him, that he should do the counsel that Merlin had said to him.' 'But they would not lead the king out of this land, but they chose them for chief Uther the good, and fifteen thousand knights, weaponed fair, of bold Britons, who thither should go [And he forth-right sent fifteen thousand knights, and Merlin, and Uther, who was his own brother]. 'When this army was all ready, then began they to fare with all the best ships that by the sea stood,' and [they] voyaged so long that they came to Ireland. 'And the brave knights took the haven; they went upon *the* sea strand, and beheld Ireland. Then spake Merlin, and discoursed with words: "See ye now, brave men, the great hill, the hill so exceeding high,

<sup>1</sup> ifæd



MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe hul swa fwiðe hæh ⁊  
 þere weolcne he if ful neh.  
 þat if þat feolliche þing ⁊  
 hit hatte þere Eotinde Ring.  
 elches weorkes unniliche ⁊  
 hit com of Aufrike.

Slæð eower teldest<sup>1</sup> ⁊

and flozen hire teldes ⁊

ȝeond al þaf feldes.

oueral þe feldes.

her we scullen ræsten ⁊

to þreom dæȝen uirften. 10

i þan feorðe dæiȝe ⁊

we scullen heonne fufen.

touward þā hulle ⁊ [L99.c.1.]

þer if ure iwille.

Ah we scullē uf ær baðien ⁊

&amp; bonnien ure beornes.

græiðien ure wepnen ⁊

fer<sup>2</sup> wel heo uf bi-houeð.

þus hit bi-læfde ⁊

&amp; þer læie þa ferde. 20

þeo<sup>3</sup> ahte Irlond ⁊

a king þat wes swiðe strong.

Gillomaurus.

he hæhte Gillomaurus ⁊

þis ihorde Gillomaur ⁊

gomenen he wef lauerd.

king of þan londe.

him comen þa tiðende ⁊

that to the welkin it is full nigh? That is the marvellous thing, it is named the Giants Ring, to each work unlike,—it came from Africa.' 'Pitch your [and pitched their] tents over all 'these [the] fields; 'here we shall rest for the space of three days; on the fourth day we shall march hence toward the hill, where our will is. But we shall ere (previously) refresh us, and assemble our warriors; make ready our weapons, for well they behove us (we shall need them). Thus it remained, and there lay the army. 'Then possessed Ireland a king that was most strong; he hight Gillomaur, he

<sup>1</sup> teldest?<sup>2</sup> R. for.<sup>3</sup> þo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þ̅ Brutes weorē an londe.  
 he lette beoden ferde ⁊  
 ȝeond alle Irlondes ærde.  
 & he gon þretien fwiðe ⁊                      and þretede fwiþe ⁊  
 þat al he wolde heō to-driue.              þat he ȝam wolde vt driue.  
 þa þ̅ word him com to ⁊  
 þ̅ Brutes wolden þer don.  
 & comē to þan anes ⁊  
 to fæchen þa stanef.  
 þa þe kīg Gillomar ⁊                      10  
 makede mucchel hoker & scarn. and makede mochel scornes ⁊  
 & feide þ̅ heo weoren ⁊  
 sotten iueren.  
 þ̅ ouer sæ brade ⁊  
 þider weoren iliðene.                      þat hi sohte þare stanes.  
 to fechen þer stanes ⁊                      so afe none ne mihte be funde ⁊  
 afe in heore londe neorē nane.              in al Brutlonde.  
 and fwor a fēit Brændan ⁊                      He fwor bi feint Brendan ⁊  
 Ne scullen heo lædē ænne stan.              þat hii ne folde habbe on.  
 ahforþanstanen heofscullen ibiden ⁊ ac for loue of þan stanes ⁊  
 alre baluwenen mæst.                      21 hii fol<sup>1</sup> habbe harm mest.  
 heore blod ȝeoten ⁊

was lord of *the* people; the tidings came to him that the Britons were in  
*the* land; [This heard Gillomaur, king of the land,] 'he caused forces to  
 be summoned over all Irelands territory,' and 'he gan to threaten [threat-  
 ened] greatly, that he would 'all' drive them out. 'When the word  
 came to him, what *the* Britons would do there, and *that they* came for  
 that only, to fetch the stones, then the king Gillomar' [and] made mickle  
 'derision and' scorn, 'and said that they were foolish fellows, who over *the*  
 broad sea were thither arrived,' 'to seek [that they should seek] there  
 stones, as [if] none 'were in their land [might be found in all Britain];  
 'and [He] swore by saint Brandan:—"They shall not carry *away* one  
 stone [that they should not have one], but for [love of] the stones they

<sup>1</sup> folle?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ut of heore buken.  
 & swa me scal heō tachen ⁊  
 stanes to fæchen.  
 & feoððen ich wulle buzen ⁊  
 in to Brutlonde.  
 & suggen þan king Aurilie ⁊  
 þ mine stanes ich wullen werien.  
 & buten þe king beon stille ⁊  
 & don mine iwille.  
 ich wulle in his londe ⁊      10  
 mid fæhte at-den<sup>1</sup>.  
 maken him weste paðes ⁊  
 & wildernes monie. [c.2.]  
 widewen i-noȝe ⁊  
 heore weres scullen deȝe.  
 þus þe vnwise king ⁊  
 plaȝede mid worden.  
 ah al an oðer hit iwærð ⁊  
 oðer he iwende.  
 ȝaru wes hes<sup>2</sup> ferde ⁊      20  
 & forð heo gon fufen.  
 swa longe þat heo comen ⁊  
 þer læien Brutes on.

þus wife king<sup>3</sup> ⁊  
 pleoȝde mid wordes.  
 ac al an oþer hit iwarþ ⁊  
 oþer þane he wende.  
 ȝaru was his ferde ⁊  
 and he gan forþ wende.  
 so long þat he com ⁊  
 þar þeos Bruttes were.

'shall abide *the* most of all mischiefs; [should have most of harm.] 'spill  
 their blood out of their bellies,—and so men shall teach them (they shall  
 be taught) to seek stones! And afterwards I will go into Britain, and  
 say to the king Aurelie, that my stones I will defend; and unless the king  
 be still, and do my will, I will in his land with fight withstand; make him  
 waste paths, and wildernesses many; widows enow,—their husbands shall  
 die!' Thus the unwise king played with words, but it all happened an-  
 other *wise*, other [than] he weened. His army was ready, and forth 'they [he]  
 gan march, so long that 'they [he] came 'whereon the [where these] Britons

<sup>1</sup> at-stonden?<sup>2</sup> A part of this line seems omitted.<sup>3</sup> his?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

To-gaderē heo comen ⁊  
 & hærdliche on-floȝen.  
 & fuhten feondliche ⁊  
 feollen þa fæie.

þa Irifce weoren bare ⁊  
 & Bruttes iburnede.

þa Irifce fullen ⁊  
 & wriȝen al þa feldef.  
 & þe king Gillomar ⁊  
 gon him to fleonne þar.

& flæh forð rihtes ⁊  
 mid twenti of hif cnihtes.

in to ænne muchele wude ⁊  
 wurðfcipen biræiued<sup>1</sup>.

wes hif Irifce uolc ⁊  
 mid stele iualled.

þuſ wes þe kīg ifcænd ⁊  
 & þ<sup>o</sup> he endede hif ȝelp.

& þ<sup>o</sup> to wude ferde ⁊  
 & lette hif folc fællen.

þa Bruttes biheolden ⁊  
 þa dede ȝeond þan vælden.

seouen þuſend þer leien ⁊  
 liues biðæled.

Bruttes ȝeond þan uælden ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

To-gadere hii come ⁊  
 and hahliche floȝe.

Ac Yrefſe weren bare ⁊  
 and Bruttus i-burned.

þe Yrifſe folle ⁊  
 and wreȝe þe feldeſ.  
 and þe king Gillomaur ⁊  
 gan to fleonde þar.

in to one mochele wode ⁊  
 worſipe bi-deled.

þuſ was þe king ifend ⁊  
 and þuſ eandede<sup>2</sup> his ȝealp.

Bruttes in þan felde ⁊

'lay [were]. Together they came, and 'hardily [fiercely] encountered, 'and fought fiercely,—the fated fell!' [But] 'the' Irish were bare, and *the* Britons in armour; the Irish fell, and covered 'all' the fields. And the king Gillomar gan 'him' to flee there, 'and fled forth-right, with twenty of his knights,' into a great wood,—of worship bereaved,—'his Irish folk was felled with steel.' Thus was the king shamed, and thus 'he' ended his boast, 'and thus went to *the* wood, and let his folk fall! The Britons beheld the dead over the fields; seven thousand there lay deprived of life.'

<sup>1</sup> biræiueð *pr. m.*<sup>2</sup> he endede?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ferdē to heore telden.  
 & heore gode wepnen :  
 wurðliche bihoȝeden.  
 & þer heo gunnen ræsten :  
 alse Merlin heom radde.  
 I þan feorðe dæie :  
 þa gūnen heo fufen.  
 & ferden to þan hulle :  
 iwæpned wel alle.  
 þer stod þ̅ seolkuð werc : 10  
 muchel & fwiðe st<sup>9</sup>c.  
 Cnihtes eoden upward :  
 cnihtes eodē dunward.  
 cnihtes eoden abuten :  
 & ȝeorne biheolden.  
 ifeȝen<sup>1</sup> þer on loude : [f. 99<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 sellic werc stonden.  
 þer weoren a þufend cnihtes :  
 mid wepnen wel idihten.  
 and alle þa ðer<sup>2</sup> to iwiten : 20  
 biwuften wel heore scipen.  
 þa spæc M<sup>9</sup>lin :  
 & spileden mid þan cnihten.  
 Cnihtes ȝe beoð stronge :

wende to hire teldes. [c. 2.]  
 and þar hii gonne to reste :  
 ase Merlȳn heom hehte.  
 In þan feorþe daie :  
 þo gonnen hii wende.  
 and ferde to þan hulle :  
 iwepnid wel alle.  
 war stod þat wonder worc : 10  
 mochel and fwiþe stark.  
 Cnihtes eoden vpward :  
 cnihtes eoden dunward.  
 hii eoden al aboute :  
 and ȝeorne bi-heolde.  
 hii fehȝen þar on londe :  
 wonder work stonde.

*The Britons went 'over [on] the fields to their tents, 'and worthily looked to (or took care of) their good weapons,' and there they gan to rest, as Merlin 'counselled [bade] them. On the fourth day then gan they to march, and proceeded to the hill, all well weaponed, where the marvellous work stood, great and most strong! Knights went upward, knights went downward, 'knights [they] went [all] about, and earnestly beheld it; they saw there on the land the marvellous work stand. 'There were a thousand knights with weapons well furnished, and all the others to wit guarded well their ships.' Then spake Merlin, and 'discoursed with [said to] the knights:*

<sup>1</sup> heo feȝen ?<sup>2</sup> oðer ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

<p>             þaf stanes beoð græte &amp; longe.              ȝe mote neh gon :'              &amp; neodliche heom fon on.              ȝe mote uafte heom wriðen :'              mid strongen sæil-rapen.              fcuuen &amp; hebben :'              mid hæȝere strenðe¹.              treon græte &amp; longe :'              þ̅ beon swiðe stronge.              &amp; gað to ane stane :'              ȝe alle glæue².              and cumeð mid fregðe¹ :'              ȝif ȝe hine maȝen sturien.              Wel wufte Merlin :'              hu hit fculde iwurðen.              Þa cnihtes to-ftepen :'              mid muchelere strengðe.              heo fwunken ful swiðe :'              ah næfden heo fyȝe.              þat heo auer æine stan :'              sturien mahten.              M⁹lin biheold Vther :'  </p>	<p>             and ȝe beoþ men stronge.                suueþ and hebbep :'              mid al ȝoure strengþe.                10 and goþ to one stone :'              ȝe alle cleane.                Ac wel wufte Merlȳn :'              hou hit wolde iworþe.              Þis cnihtef to-fstape :'              mid mochelere strēgþe.              hii fwonke wel fwiþe :'              þeh hit lute holpe.              20 ne mihten hii alle :'              anne fton welde.              Merlȳn bi-heold Vther :'  </p>
--	---

“ ‘Knights, ye are strong; these stones are great and long [These stones are long, and ye are strong men]; ‘ye must go nigh, and forcibly take hold of them; ye must wreathe them fast with strong sail-ropes’; shove and heave with ‘utmost [all your] strength ‘trees great and long, that are exceeding strong’; and go *ye* to one stone, all clean, ‘and come *again* with strength, if ye may it stir.’” [But] Merlin wist well how it ‘should [would] happen. ‘The [These] knights advanced with mickle strength; they labored full greatly, ‘but they had not power, *so* that they ever any stone might stir [though it helped *but* little; they all might not gain one stone]! Merlin beheld Uther, who was ‘the [this] kings brother, and ‘Merlin the pro-

¹ strengðe?

² clæne?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe was þe kinges broðer.

þat was þis kinges broþer.

&amp; þas word sæide ⁊

M<sup>o</sup>lin þe witeȝe.

Vther tih þe aȝan ⁊

&amp; bonne þine cnihtes.

and bad him and his cnihtes ⁊

&amp; stondeð al abutē ⁊

stonde bi-halues.

&amp; ȝeorne bi-haldeð.

&amp; beoð alle stille ⁊

þ̅ na man þer ne sturie.

ær ich fugge eou nu anan ⁊

forte ich legge ȝou anon ⁊

hu we scullen fon on.

10 nimeþ ech ane ston.

Vther droh hine abac ⁊

&amp; bonnede hif cnihtes.

þ̅ ne bilafden þer nane ⁊

aneowefte þan stane.

al fwa feor fwa a mon ⁊

mihte werpen ænne stan. [c.2.]

&amp; Mærlin eode abutē ⁊

Merlȝn eode aboute ⁊

&amp; ȝeornen gon bihalden.

þ̅rie he eode abuten ⁊

wið innen &amp; wið uten.

20 wiþ ine and wiþ houte.

&amp; sturede hif tunge ⁊

and storede his tonke<sup>1</sup> ⁊

alfe he bede funge.

afe he his bedes songe.

þus M<sup>o</sup>lin dude þer ⁊

þus Merlȝn dude þer ⁊

phet said these words: "Uther, draw thee back, and assemble thy knights, and stand *ye* all about [bade him and his knights stand aside], 'and diligently behold, and be *ye* all still, *so* that no man there stir' 'ere [until] I say to you 'now' anon how we shall commence ['take *ye* each a stone']." 'Uther drew him back, and assembled his knights, *so* that none there remained near the stones, as far as a man might cast a stone. And 'Merlin went about, 'and diligently gan behold; thrice he went about,' within and without, and moved his tongue as *if* he sung [his] beads. Thus did Merlin

<sup>1</sup> tonge?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þ<sup>1</sup> cleopede he Vðær.  
 Vther com fwiðe ⁊  
 & alle þine cnihtes mid þe.  
 & winneð þas stanes alle ⁊  
 ne scullen ȝe læuen nænne.  
 for nu ȝe mazen heom habben<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 swulche veðerene balles.  
 & swa ȝe sculleð heom mid ræde ⁊  
 to ure scipen lede.  
 þeos stanes heo ladden ⁊ 10  
 swa Merlin heom radde.  
 & duden heð in heore scipen ⁊  
 & feileden uorð to iwiten.  
 & swa heo gunnē wenden ⁊  
 into þissen londe.  
 & ladden heom in ann velde ⁊  
 þe if wunder ane brad.  
 he if brad & swiðe muri ⁊  
 on uæst Ambref-burie.  
 þer Hengeft biſwæc ⁊ 20  
 Bruttes mid sæxen.  
 Mærlin heom ȝon rærē ⁊

þo cleopede he Vther.  
 Vther com to me ⁊  
 and alle þine cnihtes mid þe. [180. c. 1.]  
 and nimeþ þeos stanes alle ⁊  
 ne folle ȝeo bi-leaue nanne.  
 for nou ȝe mawe heom hebbe ⁊  
 afe feþerbeddes.  
 and so ȝe folle mid reade ⁊  
 to ȝoure fipes leade.  
 þe stanes hii ladde ⁊  
 afe Merly<sup>3</sup> heom radde.  
 and wende forþ so long ⁊  
 þat hii come to þisse londe.  
 hii bere ȝam alle bolde ⁊  
 and leide ȝam vp on wolde.  
 þat was a stude wel [muri] ⁊  
 ihote Ambres-buri.

Ambr

Merlȝn hem gan reære ⁊

there; 'then called he Uther: "Uther, come 'quickly [to me], and all thy knights' with thee, and take *ye* these stones all; ye shall not leave one; for now ye may heave them as (like) feather 'balls [beds]; and so ye shall with counsel carry 'them' to 'our [your] ships.'" 'These [The] stones they carried *away*, as Merlin counselled them, 'and placed them in their ships, and sailed forth to wit,' and 'so they gan proceed into [proceeded forth so long, that they came to] this land, 'and brought them on a plain that is wondrously broad; broad it is and most pleasant, near [they bore them all bold, and laid them upon a weald that was a place well pleasant, named] Ambresbury, 'where Hengest betrayed (or destroyed) *the* Britons with sæxes.'

<sup>1</sup> þa?<sup>2</sup> hebben?<sup>3</sup> R. Merlȝn.



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

alfe heo stoden ærer.  
 swa næu<sup>1</sup> nan oder<sup>2</sup> mon ⁊  
 þene craft ne cuðe don.  
 ne næuer ær þer biforē ⁊  
 nef na mon fwa wif iboren.  
 þat cuðe þet weorc rihten ⁊  
 & þa stanes dihten.

þat tidende com to þan kinge ⁊  
 i þan norð ende.  
 of Merlines fore ⁊  
 & of Vthæres his broðer.  
 þat heo weoren mid ifunde ⁊  
 icumen to þissen londe.  
 & þ þat worc wef al idiht ⁊  
 & ifet up riht.

þe king wes an breofte ⁊ [ℓ100.c.1.]  
 wūder ane bliðe.  
 & lette beode huftūge ⁊  
 fwa wid fwa wef al his lond.  
 þat al his folc fwa swiðe muri ⁊ ⁊  
 come to Amberes-buri.  
 al his drihtliche uolc ⁊  
 to White-funedæie.

alfe hii sto<sup>1</sup> ere.  
 so neuere non oþer man ⁊  
 þane craft ne couþe don.

þe tȝdinge com to þan kinge ⁊  
 of þan worc to his hinne.  
 10 and of Merlȝn his vore ⁊  
 and Vther his boþer<sup>3</sup>.  
 þat hii weren mid ifunde ⁊  
 icoome to þisse londe.  
 and þat worc was al idiht ⁊  
 and ifet vp riht.  
 þe king was on lifue ⁊  
 wonderliche bliþe.  
 and lette beade al his folk muri ⁊  
 þat hii come to Ambref-buri.  
 wiþ houte delaie ⁊  
 in þan Witefonedaiȝe.

Merlin gan rear them, as they ere stood, so never any other man could do the craft, 'nor ever ere there-before was any man so wise born, that could the work raise, and the stones dispose.' The tidings came to the king 'in the north end, [to his inn, of the work, and] of 'Merlins [Merlin his] proceeding, and 'of' Uther, his brother, that they were with safety come to this land, and that the work was all disposed, and set up right. The king was in 'breast [life] wondrously blithe; and caused 'a husting [all his merry folk] to be summoned, 'so wide as was all his land,' that 'all his merry folk [they] 'so very joyous' should come to Ambresbury, 'all his

<sup>1</sup> stode?<sup>2</sup> oðer?<sup>3</sup> R. broþer.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ȝider com com<sup>1</sup> Aurilie þe king ⁊ and þe king wolde þare beo ⁊  
& al his folc mid him. and þane stude worþi.

a Whiten-funēdæie ⁊

ie þer wærf makede.

ð se ich þe wulle telle ⁊

a þisse boc-spelle.

Weoren a þan walde ⁊

teldes itælded.

in þan brade uelde ⁊

nize þusend teldes.

al þan Whitenfunendæi ⁊

þe king a þan uelde læi.

hæt halȝien þe stude ⁊

þe hæhte Stanhenge.

þreo dæies fulle ⁊

wunede þe king stille.

i þan þridde dæie ⁊

heȝe wurðede his duȝeðe. 20

he makede tweie biſcopes ⁊

wunder ane gode.

Seint Dubriz to Kaerliun ⁊

þar were in þan wolde ⁊

10 nize þusend teldes.

o þan Witeſonneday ⁊

þe king in þan felde lay. [c. 2.]

he bar þare his croune ⁊

heȝe vppe on his heued.

and lette halȝi þane stude ⁊

þat hatte Stonhenge.

þreo dages folle ⁊

þar lay þe king stille.

he makede twei biſſopes ⁊

holi mē and gode.

Seint Dubriz to Caȝrlion ⁊

*Dubris.*

people, at [without delay, on the] Whitsunday, [and the king would be there, and honour the place]. 'Thither came Aurelie the king, and all his folk with him; on Whitsunday he there made a feast, as I will thee tell in this book-story. [There] were on the weald 'tents raised, on the broad plain,' nine thousand tents. 'All [On] the Whitsunday the king on the plain lay; [he bare there his crown, high upon his head]; 'ordered [and caused] the place to be hallowed, that hight Stonehenge. Full three days the king 'dwelt [lay there] still; 'on the third day, his people *he* highly honoured [*or* rewarded];' he made two bishops, 'wondrously [holy men

<sup>1</sup> *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiii.

*Samfon.*

to Eouuerwic feint Samfon.  
 beien heo iwurðen hali ⁊  
 & mid gode haȝe.  
 I þan feorðe dæie ⁊  
 duȝeðen to-dælden.  
 and swa ane stunde ⁊  
 hit stod a þan ilke.

*Paffent.*

¶ Þa ȝet þer wes a luðer gume ⁊  
 Paffent Vortigernes fune.  
 wes þe ilke Paffent ⁊  
 in to Walisc londe iwēt.  
 and þer a þen ilke dāȝen ⁊  
 wes bicumen ut-laȝe.  
 Ah ne durste he noht longe wiinien  
 for Aurilie & for Vther.  
 ah he biȝet fciȝen gode ⁊  
 & ferde bi fæ flode.  
 in to Alemaine he uerde ⁊  
 mid fif hundred monnen.  
 & þer he biwon muchel uolc ⁊  
 & makeden fciȝ-ferde.  
 & for swa longe ⁊  
 þat he com to þiffe londe.

to Euerwich feint Samfon.  
 beine hii were holȝ ⁊  
 and þorh god mihti.  
 In þan feorþe daie ⁊  
 þat folk him to-dealde.  
 and so hit one stunde ⁊  
 stod in þan ilke.

**P**E ȝet þar was on luþer gome ⁊  
 Pascent Vortigerne his fone.  
 10 waf þes ilke Pascent ⁊  
 in to Walfe lond iwend.  
 and þare in þan ilke dāȝe ⁊  
 [þer ⁊ was bi-come vtlāȝe. [þær ⁊  
 Ac ne dorste he noht longe wonie  
 [[c.2.] for Aurelie and for Vther.  
 ac bi-ȝeat fipes gode ⁊  
 and wende bi fée flode.  
 in to Alemayne he com ⁊  
 mid fif hundred manne.  
 in<sup>1</sup> þar bi-wan moche ⁊  
 20  
 and torn eft to þif londe.

and] good, Saint Dubriz at Kaerleon, and Saint Samson at York; both they 'became [were] holy, and 'with [through] God 'high [mighty]. On the fourth day 'people [the folk it] separated, and so a time it stood in the same *wise*. The yet there was a wicked man, Pascent, 'Vortigers [Vortiger his] son; was 'the [this] same Pascent gone into Welsh land, and there in the same days was become outlaw. But he durst not long dwell there, for Aurelie and for Uther; but 'he' procured good ships, and went by *the* sea-flood; into Germany he 'proceeded [came], with five hundred men, and there 'he' won much 'folk, and made *a* fleet,' and 'voyaged so long that he came [turned eft] to this land, into 'the Humber

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ī to þere Humbre :  
 þer he hærmes worhte.  
 Ah ne durste he noht longe :  
 i þan ænde at-ſtonde.  
 þe kin<sup>1</sup> ferde þider ward :  
 & Paſſent fleh aweiward.  
 æft<sup>9</sup> fæ ſwa longe :  
 þat he com to Irlonde.  
 Sone he þer funde :  
 þene king of þan londe. 10  
 his heorte wes ſwiðe fæſt :  
 he grette þene king Gillomar.  
 Hail ſeo þu Gillomar :  
 gumene ælder.  
 ich æm to þe icume :  
 ich wes Vortig<sup>9</sup> nes ſune.  
 mi fader wes Brutlondes king :  
 he luuede þe þurh alle þing.  
 & ȝif þu woldeſt to-ȝere :  
 beon þider min iuare. 20  
 ſwa wit ſculden iſpæcken :  
 & minne fader wel wreken.  
 & wel wreken þi folc :

in to Norþhūbre :  
 þare he harmes wrohte.  
 Ac ne dorſte he noht longe :  
 in þan eande aſtonde.  
 þe king verde þiderward :  
 and Paſcent fleoþ a-weiward.  
 into Yrlonde :  
 to king Gelomaur þe ſtronge. [£80<sup>b.c.1.</sup>]  
 and grette þan kinge :  
 mid godes gretige.  
 Ich ham to þe icome :  
 ich was Vortigeres ſone.  
 mi fader was Brutlondes king :  
 and louede þe þorh alle þing.  
 and ȝef þou woldeſt to-ȝere :  
 beo mine vere.  
 to wreken mine fader deap :  
 and þin owe folkes.

[Northumberland], where he harm wrought. But he durst not long remain in the territory. The king marched thitherward, and Pascent fled awayward, 'by sea so long that he came' to [into] Ireland. 'Soon he found there the king of the land; [to king Gillomar the strong; and] 'his heart was very sore, he' greeted the king 'Gillomar' [with Gods greeting]: "'Hail be thou, Gillomar, chief of men!' I am to thee come; I was Vortigers son; my father was Britains king, 'he [and] loved thee through all things. And if thou wouldest now be my companion, 'as we shall agree,' 'and my father well avenge, and well avenge thy folk [to avenge my fathers

<sup>1</sup> king?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þ Vther her qualde.  
 & þi felcuðe wærc ⁊  
 þat heo<sup>1</sup> heonne droȝe.

þat Vther here fulde ⁊  
 þo he þe stonof fette.

halfendel þat kinelond ⁊  
 ich wolde fet þe an hond.

& æc ich iherde suggen ⁊  
 þer ic ferde inne sæ.  
 þat þe king Aurilien ⁊  
 seoc if iwurðen.  
 & lið inne Winchæstre ⁊ [f.100<sup>b</sup>. c.1.]  
 a bedde ful faste.  
 þu miht ileue me inoh ⁊  
 for þif if witerliche soð.

11

Passēt & Gillomar ⁊  
 makeden heore forward þar.  
 aðes heo sworē ⁊  
 monie & unifohȝe.  
 þ heo woldē al þis lond ⁊  
 sætten on hæore tweire hond.  
 þe aðes weoren ifworene ⁊ 20  
 ah æft heo weoren for-lorene.  
 þe king gadere ferde ⁊  
 wide ȝeond his ærde.

þus Pascent and Gillomar ⁊  
 makede foreward þar.  
 oþes i<sup>2</sup> sworn ⁊  
 manye and inowe.  
 þat hii wolde al þis lond ⁊  
 fette in hire tweire hond.  
 þe king gadere ferde ⁊  
 ouer al þan erþe.

death, and thine own folks] that Uther here 'killed, and thy marvellous work, that he hence drew [felled, when he fetched *away* the stones, *the* half-part of the kingdom I would set to thee in hand."] 'And eke I heard say, where I voyaged in *the* sea, that the king Aurelie is become sick, and lieth in Winchester, in bed full fast. Thou mayest believe me enow, for this is verily sooth.'" [Thus] Pascent and Gillomar made 'their' compact there; oaths they swore, many and 'innumerable [enow], that they would set all this land in their two (joint) hands; 'the oaths were sworn, but eft they were broken!' The king gathered a host 'wide over his [over all the] land;

<sup>1</sup> he?<sup>2</sup> hii?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

to þere sæ beoð iwende ⁊  
 Gillomar & Passen<sup>1</sup>.  
 in to þan scipen eoden ⁊  
 & forð heom letten gliden.  
 Forð heo wenden biliue ⁊  
 þat heo comen to Meniue.  
 þ̅ wes a þan time ⁊  
 tun fwiðe hende.  
 þ̅ mō nu iwitterli ⁊  
 clepeð feint Deouwi.  
 þer heo nomen hauene ⁊  
 mid hegere bliffe.  
 scipen eodē a þat strond ⁊  
 cnihtes eoden a þat lond.  
 þa sæide Passent ⁊  
 toward Gillomar he went.  
 Seie me king Gillomar ⁊  
 nu we beoð icumen her.  
 Nu ich sette þe an hond ⁊  
 halfenuēdæl<sup>2</sup> þif kinelon<sup>3</sup>.  
 for if of Wichastre icume ⁊  
 to me anes cnihtes sune.  
 & fæið me fwulne ræd ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

to þare féé hii beoþ iwend ⁊  
 Gillomar and Pascent.  
 Forþ hii eode blifue ⁊  
 þat hii come to Menue.  
 þat was in þan time ⁊  
 toun fwiþe hende.  
 þat me nou weterly ⁊  
 10 cleopeþ feint Dauī.

þo Pascent ⁊  
 toward Gillomar went.

Ich sette þe nou an hond ⁊  
 20 haluendel þif kinelond.  
 for þar his of Winchestre ico  
 to me one cnihtes sone.  
 and faiþ me sochnue read ⁊

to the sea [they] are gone, Gillomar and Pascent; 'into the ships *they* and forth let them glide'. Forth they proceeded quickly, *so* that they to Meneve, that was in that time a town exceeding fair, that men now call Saint Davids. 'There they took haven with great bliss; *the* went on the strand, *the* knights went on the land.' Then 'said' Pasce toward Gillomar 'he' went,—“‘Say me, king Gillomar, now we are here'; now I set to thee in hand half-part this kingdom; for [the from Winchester come to me a knights son, and saith to me such as

<sup>1</sup> R. Passent here and below.<sup>2</sup> halfendæl? haluendæl? One syllable is redundant.<sup>3</sup> kinelond

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þ Aurilie wole beon dæd.  
 þat ufel if under his ribben :  
 þat ne mæi he noh<sup>1</sup> libben.  
 her wit scullen wel wreken :  
 unker wine-mæies.  
 biwinnen his wunfeles : [c. 2.]  
 fwa us bið alre felefst.  
 To þan kinge com þat word :  
 in to Winchæstre.  
 þat Pascent & Gillomar : 10  
 weoren mid ferde icumen hæf.  
 þe king cleopede Vther :  
 þe wes his leoue broðer.  
 Vther beð<sup>2</sup> uerde :  
 3eond al þissen ærde.  
 & far to ure feonden :  
 & drif heom of ærde.  
 oðer þu heom fufen :  
 oðer þu heō feolle.  
 Ich wolde faren æc :  
 3if ich neore fwa feoc.  
 ah 3if ich mai beon feore :  
 ich þe cumen after fone.

þat Aurelie wole beo dead. [c. 2.]  
 her we folle oure cun wel wreke :  
 and þis lond a-winne.  
 To þan kinge cō þat word :  
 In to Wýncheſtre.  
 þat Paſcent and Gillomar :  
 were mid ferde icome her.  
 þe king cleopede Vther :  
 þat was his owe broþer.  
 Vther beað ferde :  
 oueral þeos eorþe.  
 and wend to oure onfreondes :  
 and drif heom of londe.  
 .  
 20 and ich wolde eke :  
 3ef ich nere fo feke.  
 ac al fo fone fo ich may :  
 ich wolle þe after wende.

that Aurelie will be dead (die); 'the sickness is under his ribs, so that he may not live.' Here we shall well avenge our kindred, [and] win 'his territories [this land], 'as to us shall be best of all.''' To the king came the word, into Winchester, that Pascent and Gillomar were come here with an army. The king called Uther, who was his 'dear [own] brother:—"Uther, summon forces over all this land, and march to our enemies, and drive them from land; 'either thou them disperse, either thou them fell.' [And] I would eke 'fare,' if I were not so sick; but 'if I may be sound (convalescent), I will come after thee soon [as soon as I may, I will after thee march].'" Uther did

<sup>1</sup> noht?<sup>2</sup> bed?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xlii.

Al dude Uðer ð  
 swa þe king him sæide þer.  
 & Passen at fēit Deowi ð  
 sorȝen iworhte þer bi.  
 and þe king Gillomar ð  
 muchel forȝe he dude þær.

Brutlond heo þurh-arnden ð  
 hæȝede & barden<sup>1</sup>.

& Vther i þissen ærde ð  
 sunnede hið ferde.

10

& hit wes longe uirft ð  
 ær he mihte fufen a-riht.

& Passent West Walisc lond ð  
 fet an hið ægere hond.

Hit wes an ane dæie ð  
 his duȝeðe weorē bliðe.

þer com faren Appas ð  
 feōdes hine vælden<sup>2</sup>.

to Passent he quað þuð ð

Cum hidere to uf.

20

ich þe wulle telle ð  
 of ane wil-spalle<sup>3</sup>.

Ich waf at Winchæstre ð  
 at þine wiðer-iwinnē.

Al dude Vther ð  
 alfe þe king hī faide þar.  
 And Pascent at seint Dauī ð  
 mochel forewe dude þar bi.

Brutlond hii þorh-hearnde ð  
 and flowen and barnde.

and al West Walfe lond ð  
 fette in hire owe hond.

Hit was in on tyme ð  
 þat þe folk was bliþe.

þar com faren Appas ð

*Appas.*

to Pascent and faide þuð.

Ich was in Wýnchestre ð  
 mid þan seake kinge.

all as the king said to him there. And Pascent at Saint Davids 'wrought [made] thereby [much] sorrow; 'and to the king Gillomar much sorrow he did there'; Britain they through-ran, 'harried [and slew] and burnt. 'And Uther in this land assembled his host, and it was long time ere he might march aright.' And 'Pascent' set in 'his [their] own hand [all] West Welsh land. It was on a 'day [time], 'his people were [that the folk 'was blithe, there arrived Appas,—the fiends him conveyed! To Pascent 'he quoth [and said] thus: "'Come hither to us. I will thee tell of a joyful tidings.' I was 'at [in] Winchester, with 'thine adversaries [the sick king],

<sup>1</sup> barnden?<sup>2</sup> vereden? Cf. l. 17787. et alib.<sup>3</sup> wil-spelle?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þer lið þe king feoc ⁊  
 & forh-ful an heorten.  
 what ſcal beon mi mede ⁊  
 ȝif ic þider ride.  
 & ich þe ſwa iqueme ⁊  
 þat ich hine aquele<sup>1</sup>. [£101.c.1.]  
 þa andſwarede Paſſen ⁊  
 and toward Appaſe went.  
 Ich bi-hate þe todæi ⁊  
 an hūdrad pund for ic mæi. 10  
 ȝif þu me iquemest ⁊  
 þat þu hine aȝlle.  
 Treoðe he<sup>2</sup> plihtē ⁊  
 þefne ſwikedom to dihten.  
 Appas eode to buſ ⁊  
 & þefne balu mæinde.  
 he wes an hæðene gume ⁊  
 ut of Saxlonde icume.  
 Muneckes claðes he nom an ⁊  
 he ſcar hiſ crune uſeen. 20  
 he nom him tweien iueren ⁊  
 & forð he gon fuſen.  
 & wende anan rihte ⁊

þar he liþ in bedde ⁊  
 and ȝet wole libbe.  
 ac wat ſal beon mi mede ⁊  
 ȝef ich hine acwelle.  
 þo anſwerede Paſcent ⁊  
 and toward Appas he went.  
 Ich bi-hote þe to day ⁊ [£81.c.1.]  
 an hundred pund an wel ich may.  
 ȝef þou ine cwaleſt.  
 Treouþe hii plihtē ⁊  
 þifne ſwikedom to dihte.  
 Appas eode to boure ⁊  
 and þane balu meȝnde.  
 he was an heaþene gome ⁊  
 vt of Saxlonde icome.  
 Monekene cloþes he nom ⁊  
 and far him croune ouenon.  
 and wende a-non riht ⁊

where 'the king [he] lieth 'sick, and sorrowful in heart [in bed, and yet would live. But] what shall be my meed, if I 'thither ride, and I so gratify thee, that I 'kill him?' Then answered Pascent, and toward Appas he went: "I promise thee to-day a hundred pounds, for [and well] I may, if thou 'me so gratifiest, that thou 'kill [killest] him. Troth they plight this treachery to contrive. Appas went to *his* chamber, and 'this [the] mischief meditated; he was a heathen man, out of Saxland come. Monks clothes he took 'on,' 'he [and] shaved 'his crown upon [him upon *the* crown]; 'he took to him two companions, and forth he gan proceed,' and went anon

<sup>1</sup> The letters *le* are written above the line.<sup>2</sup> heo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

in to Winchæstre.  
 fwulc hit weore an hali mon ⁊  
 þe hæðene deouel.  
 He wende to þan burhgate ⁊  
 þer þe king on bure lai.  
 & gratte þene dureward ⁊  
 godes grætinge.  
 & band<sup>1</sup> hine an hizige ⁊  
 gan in to þan kinge.  
 & fuggen him to soðe ⁊      10  
 þ̅ Vther his broðer.  
 hæfde him þider i-fend ⁊  
 feolne læche.  
 þene bezfte læche ⁊  
 þe wunede an sæi londe.  
 þe auer ælcne fucne mon ⁊  
 of ufele bringē con.  
 þuf læh þe laðe mon ⁊  
 leodene-kinge.  
 for Uther wef ifarē ⁊      20  
 forð mid his ferde.  
 no nauer Vther hine ne ifæh ⁊  
 ne þider hine i-fende.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

in to Wynchestre.  
 alfe hit were an holi mā ⁊  
 þe heaþene deauel.  
 He wende to þa borhgate ⁊  
 and þare doreward grette.  
 and bad hine an hizenge ⁊  
 go to þan kinge.  
 and seggen him to soþe ⁊      10  
 þat Vther his broþer.  
 hadde him þider i-fend ⁊  
 þane king to hele.  
 þus he leh þe loþe man ⁊  
 loh him worþe drihte.  
 for Vther was forþ ifare ⁊      20  
 mid mochelere ferde.  
 ne neuere Vther hine ne feþ ⁊  
 ne þider ne fende.

right into Winchester, as if it were a holy man,—the heathen devil! He went to the burgh-gate, 'where the king lay in chamber,' and greeted the door-keeper 'with Gods greeting;' and bade him in haste go 'in'to the king, and say to him in sooth, that Uther his brother had sent him thither 'a good leech [the king to heal]; 'the best leech that dwelt in any land, that ever any sick man *out* of sickness can bring.' Thus [he] lied, the odious man, 'to the monarch,—[may *the* Lord be to him loath!],—for Uther was gone forth with 'his [great] army, nor ever him saw (had seen) Uther, nor thither 'him' sent! 'And [But] the king weened 'that' it were sooth, and

<sup>1</sup> bad?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& þe king wende þat hit weore soð: ac þe king wende hit were soþ: /  
& ilefde hī inoh. and ilefde him inoh.

Wha wolde wene: /  
þat he swike weore.  
for an hif bare liche: /  
he weorede ane burne.

Wo wolde wene: /  
þat he fwike were.  
for nexst his liche: /  
he werede þe eare.  
þar ouenan he hadde: /  
one blake couele.

þer ufenen he hæfde: [c. 2.]  
ane ladliche here.  
& feoðden<sup>1</sup> ane cule: /  
of ane blake claðe. 10  
iblæcched he hæfede hif licame: /  
fwulc ifmitte of cole.

He cneolede to þan kingge: /  
hif spæche wæs ful milde.  
Hail seo þu Aurilien: /  
aðelest alre kīgē.  
hider me fende Vther: /  
þe is þin aȝen broðer.  
& ich al for godes luue: /  
æm to þe her icume. 20  
for ich þe wulle helen: /  
& al hal makien.  
for cristes leofes godes fūne: /  
ne ræche ich nane garfūe.

He cneolede to þan kinge: /  
his speche was wel milde.  
Hayl beo þou Aurelie þe king: [c. 2.]  
Bruttene deorling.  
hider me fende Vther: /  
þat his þin owe broþer.  
and ich al for godes loue: /  
ham to þe hider icome.  
for ich wolles for cristes loue: /  
al hol þe makis.

believed him enow. Who would ween that he were traitor!—for 'on his bare [next his] body he wore 'a cuirass [the hair-cloth], thereupon he had a 'loathly hair-cloth [black cowl], 'and then a cowl of a black cloth; he had blackened his body, as if smutted with coal! He kneeled to the king, his speech was 'full [well] mild: "Hail be thou, Aurelie, 'noblest of all kings [the king, Britains darling]! Hither me sent Uther, that is thine own brother; and I all for Gods love am 'here [hither] to thee come. For I will 'heal, and 'all whole thee make, for Christs love, 'Gods son; I

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

no mede of londe ⁊  
 ne of feoluere no of golde.  
 ah ælche feocken ich hit do ⁊  
 for luue of mine drihtene.  
 þif iherde þe king ⁊  
 hit wes him swiðe iqme.  
 ah whar if æuere æi mon ⁊  
 a þiffe middel-ærde.  
 þe þif wolde wenen ⁊ 10  
 ꝥ he fwiken weore.  
 He nō hif glæf-fat anan ⁊  
 & þe king mæh þer on.  
 anne while after þan ⁊  
 þat glæf-fat an honden nom.  
 & sceoweden hit forð rihtes ⁊  
 biforen þaƿ kinges enihtes.  
 & þ⁹ fæide anan ⁊  
 Appas þe hæðene mon.  
 3if 3e me wulleð ileuð ⁊ 20  
 ær to marwen eue.  
 þes king ſcal beon al hal ⁊  
 ihaled an his willē.  
 þa weoren bliðe ⁊  
 alle þa weoren i bure.  
 Appas eoden in ænne bur ⁊

þis ihorde þe king ⁊  
 hit was him swiþe icweme.  
 for ware his euere þe man ⁊  
 in þiffe worle-riche.  
 þat wolde hit iwene ⁊  
 þat he ſoch were.  
 He nam his vrinal anon ⁊  
 an þe king meh þar on.  
 one wile after þan ⁊  
 þe vrinal an honde he nā.  
 and ſewede forþ rihtes ⁊  
 bi-vore alle his enihtes.  
 and þus faide anon ⁊  
 Appaƿ þe luþer man.  
 Are to morewe heue.  
 al hol þou ſalt iworþe.  
 þo weren bliþe ⁊  
 alle þat weren in boure.  
 Appas wende to boure ⁊

reck not any treasure, nor meed of land, nor of silver nor of gold, but to each sick *person* I do it for love of my Lord.' ” The king heard this, it was to him most agreeable;—‘but [for] where is ever ‘any [the] man in this ‘middle-earth [worlds realm], that would ‘this [it] ween, that he were ‘traitor [such]! He took his ‘glass vessel [urinal] anon, and the king urined therein; a while after that, the ‘glass-vessel [urinal] in hand [he] took, and viewed ‘it’ forth-right before ‘the kings [all his] knights; and thus said anon Appas, the ‘heathen [wicked] man: “ ‘If ye will me believe’ ere to-morrow eve ‘this king shall be [thou shalt become] all whole, ‘healed at his will’.” Then were blithe all that were in chamber. Appas went ‘in a [to] cham-

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& þat balu mæinde.  
 & dude þer to atter :'  
 þa scamoiene<sup>1</sup> hatte.  
 & com ut forð rihtef :'  
 imōg þa burh-cnihtes. [f.101<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 & þan kinge<sup>2</sup> he gon dæle :'  
 muchel canele.  
 & giuguere & licoriz :'  
 he hom lefliche ȝef. 10  
 alle heo nomen ꝥ lac :'  
 & he heom alle bi-fwac.  
 þeos fwike feol a cneowe :'  
 at-foren þan leod-kinge.  
 & þ<sup>3</sup> faide<sup>3</sup> him to :'  
 Lauerd nu þu scalt a-fon.  
 of þissen drinchen ane dæle :'  
 þat scal beon þin hale.  
 & þe king up drong :'  
 & þer ꝥ atter he dronc. 20  
 Anan swa he hafde idrunke :'  
 þe leche hine adun læide.  
 þus feide Appas :'

and þane balu meingde.  
 and dude þar to hatter :'  
 þat scamoine hatte.  
 and com vt forþrihtes :'  
 amōg alle his cnihtes.  
 and to ȝam he gan deale :'  
 mochel canele.  
 alle hii nemen þat lock :'  
 and he alle bi-fwoc.  
 þes fwike ful a-cnowe :'  
 bi-vore þan kinge.  
 and þus faide him to :'  
 Louerd þou salt þis vnder-fo.  
 of þis drench on deal :'  
 and þat sal beon þin heal. [f.101<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 And þe king hit drong :'  
 to his feye-fiþe. 20

ber, and the mischief meditated, and put thereto poison, that hight scamony, and came out forth-right among 'the chamber-knights [all his knights], and to 'the knights [them] he gan to distribute much canel, ' and gingiver and liquorice he gave them lovingly.' They all took the gift, and he deceived 'them' all. This traitor fell on *his* knees before the 'monarch [king], and thus said to him: "Lord, 'now' thou shalt receive [this,] of this drink a part, [and] that shall be thy cure." And the king 'up drank, and there the poison he drank [drank it to his *own* destruction]. 'Anon as he had drank, the leech laid him down. Thus said Appas to the chamber-

<sup>1</sup> The last two letters of this word are added by a second hand.

<sup>2</sup> cnihtes?

<sup>3</sup> faide *sæide* *man. pr.*, but the second word struck out *man. sec.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

to þan bur-cnihtes.

Wreoð nu wel þene king ⁊

þ he ligge a swæting.

for ich fugge eou þurh alle þing ⁊

al hal beoð aure<sup>1</sup> king.

&amp; ich wulle to mine inne ⁊

and speken wið mine monnen.

&amp; to þere mid-nihte ⁊

ich cum forð rihtes.

mid oðer lache-c̅afte ⁊ 10

þa sculleð beon him liðe.

Forð wende þe swike ⁊

þe king læi on sweuete.

Appaf to hif inne ⁊

&amp; spec wið his monnē.

mid stilleliche rune ⁊

biſtal of þan tune.

and þe leche ſtille ⁊

bi-ſtal vt of þan halle.

and awei him wēt ⁊

toward Gillomar and Paſcent.

To þere mid-nihte ⁊ 20

þa ſende þa burh-cnihtes.

ſixe of heore monne ⁊

to Appafes inne.

knight: "Wrap now the king well, that he lie in sweating; for I say to you through all things, all whole shall your king be. And I will *go* to my inn, and speak with my men, and at the midnight I will come *again* forth-right, with other leechcraft, that shall be to him healing." Forth went the traitor,—the king lay in slumber,—Appas to his inn, and spake with his men; 'with stilly counsel stole from the town. [And the leech stilly stole out of the hall (palace), and away went he toward Gillomar and Paſcent.] 'At the midnight then sent the chamber-knights six of their men to Appases inn; they weened to find him, and bring him to the king. Then was he

<sup>1</sup> eoure?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

heo wenden hine to finden :  
 and longi hine to þan kinge.  
 þa wes he ifloȝen :  
 & feondes hine uæreden.  
 þa men aȝein comē :  
 þer þe king wunede. [c.2.]  
 & cuddē<sup>1</sup> i þan bure :  
 of Appases fore.  
 þa mihte me ifeon :  
 forȝen inoȝe beon. 10  
 cnihtes feollen a-dun :  
 & ȝirnden heore dæðes.  
 þer wes muchel wanig :  
 heortne granig.  
 þer wes moni reolic spel :  
 þer wes gumene iȝel.  
 Heo leopen to þan bedde :  
 & þene king hedden.  
 þa ȝet he lai on sweouete :  
 & on muchele fwate. 20  
 þæ cnihtes mid weope :  
 þene king awehten.  
 & heo him to-cleopeden :  
 mid mildere ſteuene.

And ȝit þe king :

20 al to-fwate an hiȝenge.

and cleopede his cnihtes :  
 to him anon rihtes.

flown, and *the* fiends him carried! The men came back where the king dwelt, and made known in the chamber of Appases departure. Then might men see sorrow enow be! Knights fell down, and yearned their deaths; there was mickle lamentation *and* heart-groaning, there was many a piteous speech, there was yell of men! They leapt to the bed, and beheld the king; 'the yet he lay in slumber, and in great sweat. [And yet the king all over sweated speedily; and called his knights to him anon right.] 'The knights with weeping awakened the king, and they called to him with

<sup>1</sup> cudden?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Lauerd hu mid þe ⁊  
 hu beoð pine beouste<sup>1</sup>.  
 for nu if ure læche ⁊  
 ifaren buten lauc.  
 iliðen ut of hirede ⁊  
 for hæne uf bilæued.  
 þe king heom ȝif andfware ⁊  
 Al ic æm to-fwollen.  
 & þer nif nan oder<sup>2</sup> ræd ⁊  
 nu nan ich wurðe dæd. 10  
 & ich bidde forð rihtes ⁊  
 ȝe beoð mine cnihtes.  
 þat ȝe græten Vther ⁊  
 þe if min aȝe broðer.  
 & biddeð hine halden ⁊  
 mi lond an on-walde.  
 Godd feolf þurh alle þing ⁊  
 lete hine beon god king.  
 & hateð hine beon kene ⁊  
 & æiwær riht deme. 20  
 wærcche<sup>3</sup> uolke for fæder ⁊  
 hænen to frouere.

and feide ȝam an strongne read ⁊  
 10 þat he moſte beo dead.  
 And ȝeo cnihtes hende ⁊

mild voice: "Lord, how *is it* with thee? how is thy harm? For now is our leech departed without leave, gone out of court, *and* left us as wretches." The king gave them answer: "I am all over swollen, and there is no other hap, now anon I shall be dead. And I bid forth-right, *ye who* are my knights [and said to them an evil hap, that he must die. "And ye, fair knights], 'that ye greet Uther, who is my own brother, and bid him hold my land in *his* sway. God *himself* through all things let him be a good king! And bid him be keen, and always deem right, as a father to *the* poor folk, to *the* destitute for comfort;—then may he hold *the* land in

<sup>1</sup> Perhaps an error for beorste? A plummet-mark in the margin indicates some mistake.

<sup>2</sup> oðer?

<sup>3</sup> wræcche?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þenne maie he halde ⁊  
 lond an on-walde.  
 & nu to dai þenne ich beo dæd ⁊  
 nimeð alle anne ræd.  
 & leteð me ilenge ⁊ [f. 102.c.1:]  
 riht to Stanhenge.  
 þer lið muchel of mine cunne ⁊  
 þurh Sæxen a-qualde.  
 & of-fended<sup>1</sup> biſcopes ⁊  
 & boc-ilarede men. 10  
 mi gold and mi feoluer ⁊  
 deled<sup>2</sup> for mire ſaule.  
 & leggeð me an æft ænde ⁊  
 inne Stan-henge.  
 Næs þer nan oðer ræd ⁊  
 þer iward<sup>3</sup> þe king dæd.  
 & al ſwa hiſ men duden ⁊  
 ſwa þe king demde.  
 Inne Wæles<sup>4</sup> wes Vther ⁊  
 & her of næs naðing war. 20  
 neuere þurh nare liſte ⁊  
 her of naþing nuſte.

bringeþ me at Stōhenge.

and leggeþ me þar in ⁊  
 ware liþ mochel of mine cun.

And al þus hit was iwroht ⁊  
 alfe þe king hit hadde idiht.  
 And Vther was in Walis ⁊

and noht her of nuſte.

power. And now today, when I be dead, take *ye* all one counsel, and 'cause me to be brought right [bring me] to Stonehenge, 'where lie much of my kindred, by *the* Saxons killed. And send for bishops, and book-learned men; my gold and my silver distribute for my soul,' and lay me 'at *the* east end, in Stonehenge [therein, where lie much of my kindred]. 'There was no other hap,—there was the king dead!' And all 'so his men did [thus it was wrought] as the king 'directed. [had ordered it. And] Uther was in Wales, and hereof 'was nothing ware, never through any art hereof' 'nothing [nought] wist; nevertheless he had with him the prophet

<sup>1</sup> of-fendeð?<sup>2</sup> deleð?<sup>3</sup> iward?<sup>4</sup> The first hand has only written *wæs*, which is corrected by the second into *Wæles* *wes*.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

naðeles he hafede mid him ⁊  
þene witeȝe M<sup>9</sup>lin.

noþeles he hadde mid him ⁊  
þane wittȝ Merlȝn.

aȝeineden<sup>1</sup> þere uerde ⁊  
þe icumē wef to ærde.

Vther lai inne Wales ⁊  
in anne wilderne.

& fundede to uarene ⁊  
wið Paſſent to fehten.

þa a þan auen time ⁊  
þe mone gon to ſcine.

In þan euetime ⁊  
10 þe mone gan to ſeȝne.

wel neh al ſwa brihte ⁊  
ſwa þe ſūne-lihte.

þa iſehȝen heo feorre ⁊  
æne ſelcuðe ſterre.

hii iſeȝen a-vorre ⁊  
one ſelcoupe ſtorre.

he wes brad he wes muchel ⁊  
he wes unimete.

of hī comē leomen ⁊  
igaſtliche ſcinē.

þe ſteorre iſ ihate ⁊  
a latin comete.

þat his ihote ⁊  
20 a latȝn Comete.

Com of þan ſteore ⁊  
a leome ſwiðe ſturne.

Com of þan ſtorre ⁊  
a leom ſwiþe ſturne.

at þeos leomen ende ⁊  
wes a drake hende.

at þe leomes ende ⁊  
was a drake hende.

of þeſ draken muðe ⁊  
leomen comē inohȝe.

of þan drakes moupe ⁊  
leames come inowe.

Merlin; *he* proceeded towards the army that was come to *the* land. Uther lay in Wales, in a wilderness, and prepared to march, to fight with Pascent. Then 'in the eventime, the moon gan to shine, 'well nigh all as bright as the sun-light. Then' they saw afar a marvellous star; 'it was broad, it was large, it was immense! From it came gleams terribly shining'; 'the star [that] is named in Latin, comet. Came from the star a gleam most fierce; at 'this [the] gleams end was a dragon fair; from 'this [the] dragons

<sup>1</sup> aȝenden, *pr. man.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Ah tweien þer weoren muchele ⁊	Ac tweie þar were mochele ⁊
þere oðere vnimete.	þe oþre oniliche.
þe an droh touward France ⁊	þe on droh to F <sup>n</sup> ce ⁊
þe oðer touward Irlonde. [c.2.]	þe oþer to Yrlonde.
þe leome þe toward France droh ⁊	þe leame þat toward France droh ⁊
he wes briht vnifoh.	he was him seolf briht inoh. [c.2.]
to Mut <sup>1</sup> Giu wæs ifegen ⁊	
þa feolcuðe takne.	
þe leome þa strehte west riht ⁊	þe leome þat strahte west riht ⁊
a feouen bæmen wes idiht. 10	a feoue bemes hit was idiht.
þif ifah Vðer ⁊	þis i-feh Vther ⁊
ah nas he noht her of war.	ac he nas noht fale war.
fær him wes an heorte ⁊	
& feolliche auæred <sup>2</sup> .	
fwa wes al þat muchele folc ⁊	
þat wes in þere uerde.	
Vðer cleopede M <sup>9</sup> lin ⁊	Vther cleopede Merlȝn :
& bad hine cume to him.	and bad hine come to him.
& þuf seide him to ⁊	and þus faide him to ⁊
mid fwiðe softe worden. 20	mid mildere speche.
Mærlin M <sup>9</sup> li ⁊ leoue freond ⁊	Merlȝn leoue freond ⁊
fonde þi feoluen.	fonde þi feolue.
& fæie uf of þan tacne ⁊	and fei vs of þan tockne ⁊

mouth came gleams enow! But twain there were mickle, unlike to the others; the one drew (spread) 'toward [to] France, the other 'toward [to] Ireland. The gleam that toward France drew, it was [itself] bright enow; 'to Munt-Giu was seen the marvellous token!' The gleam that stretched right west, [it] was disposed in seven beams. Uther saw this,—but he was not 'hereof [much] wary,—'sorrow was to him in heart, and strangely *he* was frightened; so was all the great folk that was in the host.' Uther called Merlin, and bade him come to him, and thus said to him with 'very soft words [mild speech]: "Merlin, 'Merlin,' dear friend, prove thyself, and say to us of the token that we have seen; for 'I wot not

<sup>1</sup> Munt?<sup>2</sup> Some alteration has been made in this word.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiii.

þe we i-sæȝen habbeoð.  
 for nat ich on worlde-riche ⁊  
 to whan hit ſcal iwurðen.  
 buten þu uf raden ⁊  
 aȝæn we moten riden.  
 Mærlin ſæt him ſtille ⁊  
 longe ane ſtunde.  
 ſwulc he mid ſweuene ⁊  
 ſwunke ful ſwiðe.  
 Heo feið þe hit iſeȝen ⁊  
 mid heore aȝen aȝen.  
 þat ofte he hine wende ⁊  
 ſwulc hit a wurem weore.  
 Late he gō awakien ⁊  
 þa gon he to quakien.  
 & þas word ſeide ⁊  
 M<sup>9</sup>lin þa witeȝe.  
 Wæilawæi wæilawæi ⁊  
 a þiffere worlde-riche.  
 muchel if þa forȝe ⁊  
 þe iſiȝen if to londe.  
 Whær ært þu Vther ⁊  
 fiteſ me biuoren her.  
 & ich þe wulle ſuggen ⁊  
 of forȝen inoȝen.  
 Dæd if Aurilie ⁊

þat we iſeihȝe habbeþ.  
 for bote þou vs reade ⁊  
 aȝein we mote ride.  
 Merlȝn ſat wel ſtille ⁊  
 one lange ſtunde.  
 alſe he mid ſweune<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 wel fore ſwonke.  
 10 Hii ſaide þat hit iſehe ⁊  
 mid hire owene heȝe.  
 þat ofte he hine wende ⁊  
 alſe hit a worm were.  
 Late he gan a-wakie ⁊  
 þo gan he to cwakie.  
 and þeos word ſaide ⁊  
 Merlȝn þe wiſe.  
 Way la way ⁊  
 in þiſſe worle-riche.  
 20 moche hiſ þe forewe ⁊  
 þat iſeȝen hiſ to londe.  
 War hart þou Vther ⁊  
 ſete me bi-vore her.  
 and ich þe wolle ſegge ⁊  
 of many cunnes forewe.  
 Dead hiſ Aurelie þi broþer ⁊

in *the* worlds realm to what *end* it shall befall; unless thou us counsel,  
 back we must ride." Merlin sate 'him [well] still, a long time, as *if* he  
 with dream 'full greatly [well sorely] labored. They said who saw it with  
 their own eyes, that oft he turned him, as *if* it were a worm! At length he  
 gan to awake, then gan he to quake, and these words said Merlin the  
 'prophet [wise]: "Walaway! Walaway! in this worlds realm, much is  
 the sorrow that is come to *the* land! Where art thou, Uther? Set before  
 me here, and I will say to thee of 'sorrows enow [many kind of sorrow].

<sup>1</sup> ſweuene?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

kingene aȝeleſt.

ſwa iſ þe oðer? [£102<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]

Coſtanz þi broðer.

þe Uortig<sup>9</sup> ne biſwac?

mid his ſwike-dome.

Nu haueð Vortigernes cun?

Aurilien aquald.

nu þu ært al ane?

of aȝele þine cunne.

Ah ne hope þu to ræde?

of heom þat liggeð dede.

ah þenc of þe ſeoluen?

ſeolðen þe beoð ȝiueþe.

for ſelde he aſwint?

þe to him ſeolue þencheð.

þu ſcalt wurðen god king?

&amp; gumenene lauerd.

&amp; þu to þere mid-nihte?

wepne þine cnihtes.

þat we i þan morȝen-liht?

mæȝen come forð riht.

for at Meneue?

þer þu ſcat<sup>1</sup> fihtē.

ær þu þenne wende?

and Conſtance þin oþer.

þat Vortiger bi-ſwok?

mid his ſwikedome.

Nou haueþ Vortigerne his cun?

Aurelie acwelled.

nou hart þou al one?

of alle þine kunne. [£82.c.1.]

10 Ac ne hope þou to reade?

of hā þat liggeþ deade.

ac þench ou þou miht þi ſeolf?

þine kinedom werie.

for ſealde he aſwint?

þat to him ſeolue treſteþ.

þou ſalt worþe god king?

and ſteorne þorh alle þing.

And þou at þare midniht?

wepne þine cnihtes.

20 þat þou at þan moreliht?

mæȝe be a-redi to þe fiht.

Dead is Aurelie [thy brother], 'noblest of kings'; 'so is the other, Constance, thy brother [and Constance, thine other], whom Vortiger betrayed with his treachery. Now hath 'Vortigers [Vortiger his] kin killed Aurelie; now art thou alone of 'thy noble [all thy] kindred. But hope not thou for counsel of them that lie dead, but think 'of thyself,—prosperity shall be given to thee [how thou mightest thyself defend thy kingdom];—for seldom he faileth, who to himself 'thinketh [trusteth]. Thou shalt become good king, and 'lord of men [stern through all things]. And thou at the midnight weapon thy knights, that 'we in [thou at] the morning-light may .come forth-right [be ready for the fight], 'before Meneve,—there thou

<sup>1</sup> R. ſcalt.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

felæht þu scalt makien.

þu scalt beien flæ þer :

Passent and Gillomar.

&amp; monie þusend of þan gumen :

þat beoð mid heom hider icumen.

þat taken of þan steorre :

þe we isægen swa feorre.

soð hit if Uðer leof :

þ̃ tacnede þines broðer dæd.

Biuoren þa steorre wes þæ drake :

elcches wurmes vnimake. 11

þ̃ takē wes a<sup>1</sup> þine half :þ̃ weore<sup>2</sup> þu Uðer þi feolf.

þu scalt habben þis lond :

&amp; þin æie beon muchel &amp; strong.

Swulche toknen beoð uncuðe :

of þaf draken muðe.

eoden tweien leomen : [c. 2.]

wunder ane lihte.

þe an strehte feor soð :

ut ouer France.

þ̃ if an æizef-ful sunne :

þ̃ of þine licame scal come.

for þou salt beiene flen þar :

Pascent and Gillomar.

and mani þousend of þan gomes :

þat beoþ mid þam icome.

þe tockne of þan storre :

þat we isehen so forre.

soþ hit was Vther leof :

hit tocknede þine broþer deaþ.

Bi-fore þan stor was þe drake :

eche worme onimake.

þat tockne was in þine half :

þat were Vther þou þi feolf.

þe tocknes oncoupe :

þat come of þe drakes moupe.

þat weren tweie leomes :

wonderliche lihte.

þe on strehte for sup :

vt ouer France.

þat his a witfol sone :

þat of þine licame sal come.

shalt fight; ere thou thence depart, slaughter thou shalt make'; [for] thou shalt both slay there, Pascent and Gillomar, and many thousands of the men that are with them 'hither' come. The token of the star, that we saw so far, sooth it 'is [was], Uther dear, 'that [it] betokened thy brothers death. Before the star was the dragon, to each worm unlike; the token was on thy half, that was thou, Uther, thyself! 'Thou shalt have this land, and thy authority be great and strong.' 'Such [The] tokens 'are' marvellous [that came] of the dragons mouth; two gleams 'proceeded forth [that were] wondrously light. The one stretched far south, out over France,—that is (signifies) a 'powerful [wise] son, that of thy body shall come, who shall

<sup>1</sup> a is interlined.<sup>2</sup> At first written weoren, but n struck out.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe scal moni kine-lōd ⁊  
 mid compe biwinne.  
 & an ende he scal rede ⁊  
 moniane þeode.

þat fal many cūne lond ⁊  
 a-winne to his hond.

þe oðer leome þe strahte west ⁊  
 wunder ane lihte.

þe oþer þat streahste west ⁊

þat bið a dohter ⁊  
 þa þe bið swiðe deore.

þat fal beon a dohter ⁊

þe leome gon striden ⁊

þe leomes þat þar strehte ⁊

a ueire feoue strenge. 10

in to foue strenges. [c. 2.]

þ beod<sup>1</sup> feouen uæire funen ⁊

þat beoþ foue fones ⁊

þe of þine dohter sculleð cumen.

þat solleþ of þine dohter come.

þe scullen moni kine-lond ⁊

biȝiten to heore aȝere hond.

heo sculleð beon wel stronge ⁊

hii follen beo wel stronge ⁊

a water & a londe.

a water and a londe.

Nu þu hauest of me ihærde ⁊

Nou þon hauest of me ihord ⁊

þe wule halpen.

wat þe wollep helpe.

swiðe uorð rihtes ⁊

swiþe forþ riht ⁊

far to þine fihte. 20

wend to þine fihte.

& Merlin gon to flume<sup>2</sup> ⁊

fwulc he wolde flæpen.

Vp araf Vðer ⁊

Vp aros Vther ⁊

win many 'kingdoms with conflict [kind of land to his hand], 'and in the end he shall rule many a nation.' The other gleam that stretched west, 'wondrously light,' that shall be a daughter, 'that to thee shall be exceeding dear.' The gleams that 'gan to spread in [there stretched into] seven 'fair' strings, are seven 'fair' sons, who shall come of thy daughter, 'who shall win to their own hand many a kingdom'; they shall be well strong, on water and on land. Now thou hast of me heard what will thee help, quickly forth-right march to thy fight." 'And Merlin gan to slumber, as if he would sleep.' Up arose Uther, 'now he [who then] was [both] wise and

<sup>1</sup> beoð ?

<sup>2</sup> *Written at first flumē, for flumen, but the stroke above the m afterwards erased.*

<sup>3</sup> *Interlined man. sec.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

nu he wef<sup>3</sup> wif & war.  
 & hæhte his cnihtes ⁊  
 to horfe forð rihtes.  
 & hæhte heom bliue ⁊  
 faren to Meneue.  
 & alle heore fare græiðen ⁊  
 alle<sup>1</sup> heo scullē sehten.  
 I þan flokke biforen ⁊  
 he hafde cnihtes wel icoren.  
 feouen þusend cnihte ⁊  
 ohte men & wihte. 10  
 hafde he amidde ⁊  
 cnihtes wel bihedde.  
 oðer feoue þusend ⁊  
 felere þeinen.  
 hæ hede<sup>2</sup> bæfte ⁊ [£103.c.1.]  
 ohtere cnihten.  
 ahtene þusen<sup>3</sup> ⁊  
 ohtere kempen.  
 & of ganninde uolke ⁊  
 fwa feole þusend. 20  
 þ a nane spelle ⁊  
 ne mihte heom na mon tellen.  
 Forð heo wenden bliue ⁊  
 þ heo comē to Meneue.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat was þo boþe wis and war.  
 and hehte his cnihtes ⁊  
 to horfe forþ rihtes.  
 and hehte heō bliuē fare ⁊  
 toward Menue.  
 In þan flokke bi-vore ⁊  
 weren cnihtes wel icore.  
 soue þusend cnihtes ⁊  
 10 ohte men and wihte.  
 hadde he a-midde ⁊  
 cnihtes wel bi-hedde.  
 oþer soue þusend ⁊  
 holdere cnihtes.  
 and eke he hadde bi-hinde ⁊  
 ehtetene þusend.  
 and of goinge folk ⁊  
 20 so many þusendes.  
 þat in none spelle ⁊  
 ne mihte heom no man telle.  
 Forþ hii wende blife ⁊  
 þat hii come to Menue.

wary, and ordered his knights forth-right to horse, and ordered them quickly to proceed 'to [toward] Meneve; 'and all their expedition (or forces) to prepare, as if they should fight.' In the troop before 'he had [were] knights well chosen; seven thousand knights, brave men and active. He had in the middle knights well beseen, other seven thousand 'good thanes. [bold knights. And eke] he had behind 'brave knights' eighteen thousand, 'brave warriors,' and of folk on foot so many thousands, that in no speech might any man tell them! Forth they marched quickly, until they came

<sup>1</sup> alfe?<sup>2</sup> he hafede?<sup>3</sup> þusend?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þer ifah Gillomar ⁊  
 Whar him com Vther.  
 & hæhde<sup>1</sup> hif cnihtes ⁊  
 to wepne forð rihtes.  
 & heo to-biliue ⁊  
 &<sup>2</sup> gripen heore cniues<sup>3</sup>.  
 & of mid here breches ⁊  
 feolcuðe weoren heore lechef.  
 & igripen an heore hond<sup>4</sup> ⁊  
 heore sþeren longe. 10  
 hengen an heore æxle ⁊  
 mucle wi-æxe.

þa sæide Gillomar þe king ⁊  
 a fwiðe feollic þing.  
 Her cumeð Vðer ⁊  
 Aurilies broder.  
 he wule bidden mi grið ⁊  
 & noht fehten me wið.  
 þa formeste beoð hif sweines ⁊  
 farē we heom to-þeines<sup>5</sup>. 20  
 ne þurfē 3e nauere rehchen ⁊  
 þah 3e flæn þa wrecchen.  
 For 3if Vther Costantinef fune ⁊ And 3ef Vther Constantines fone ⁊

þo i-feh Gillomar ⁊  
 war hī com Vther.  
 and behte his cnihtes ⁊  
 wepni heom forþrihtes.  
 And hii to-blue ⁊  
 neomen hire cniues.

and gripen on hire honde ⁊  
 hire sþeres longe.

þo faide Gillomar þe king ⁊  
 a fwiþe fellich þing.  
 Her comeþ Vther ⁊  
 Aurelie his broþer.  
 he wole bidde min griþ ⁊ [182<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 and noht fihte me wiþ.

to Meneve. 'There [Then] saw Gillomar where Uther came to him, and commanded his knights to weapon [them] forth-right. And they very speedily 'grasped [took] their knives, 'and off with their breeches—strange were their looks,'—and grasped in their hands their long spears, 'and hung on their shoulders great battle-axes.' Then said Gillomar the king a thing very strange:—"Here cometh Uther, 'Aurelies [Aurelie his] brother; he will ask my peace, and not fight with me. 'The foremost are his swains; march we against them; ye need never reckon, though ye slay the wretches!' 'For [And] if Uther, Constantines son, will here become my man, 'and give

<sup>1</sup> hæhte?<sup>2</sup> Partly on an erasure, but by original hand.<sup>4</sup> honde *pr. man.*, but e erased.<sup>3</sup> Redundant?<sup>5</sup> 3eines *man. pr.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

wulle her mi mon bicume.  
 & Passente aȝenen ⁊  
 hif fader richē.  
 ich hine wullen griðien ⁊  
 & latten hine liuien.  
 & inne fæire bēden ⁊  
 læden hine to mine londe.  
 þe king wordede þus ⁊  
 þa while him a-lomp wurf.  
 Weoren Vtheres cnihtes ⁊ 10  
 at þan tune forð rihtes.  
 leiden fur a þene tun ⁊  
 & fehten biliue. [c. 2.]  
 mid sweorden beom to rakeden ⁊  
 and þa Irisce weoren nakede.  
 þa ifeȝen Irisce mē ⁊  
 þat Brutten wes an eorneft.  
 feondliche heo fuhten ⁊  
 and neoðeles heo feollen.  
 heo cleopedē on heore king ⁊ 20  
 Whar ært þu niðing.  
 whi nult þu hider wenden ⁊  
 þu lezft uf her scenden.  
 and Passent þin ifere ⁊  
 ifih us fallen here.

wole her mi man bi-come.  
 ich hine wolle griþie ⁊  
 and lete hine libbe.  
 and in faire bendes ⁊  
 him lede to mine londe.  
 þe kīg wordede þus ⁊  
 þe wile hit bi-fulle worf.  
 Weren Vther his chnihtes ⁊ 10  
 in þan toune forþrihtes.  
 and fetten fur oueral ⁊  
 in bour and in hal.  
 and faste to ȝam rakede ⁊  
 and hii were alle nakede.  
 þo i-fehȝe Ȝriffe men ⁊  
 þat hii þusse fullen.  
 hii gradde to hire king ⁊ 20  
 War hart þou niþing.  
 wi nelt þou hider wende ⁊  
 þou leteft vs alle asende.

to Pascent his fathers realm,' I will him grant peace, and let him live, and in fair bonds lead him to my land." The king spake thus, the while worse 'him [it] befell! 'Uthers [Uther his] knights were in the town forth-right, [and] 'laid [set] fire 'in the town, and fought sharply; with swords [over all, in bower and in hall, and fast] rushed towards them; and 'the Irish [they] were [all] naked. When *the* Irish men saw, that '*the* Britons were in conflict, they fought fiercely, and' 'nevertheless [thus] they fell; they called 'on [to] their king: "Where art thou, nithing! why wilt thou not come hither? thou lettest us 'here [all] be destroyed;—' and Pascent, thy comrade, saw us fall here;—come *ye* to us to help, with great strength!'"

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

cumeð us to halpe ⁊	
mid hahære strengðe.	
Þif iherde Gillomar ⁊	Þis ihorde Gillomar ⁊
þer foren wes his heorte sær.	þar vore his heort was for.
mid his Irisce cnihten ⁊	mid his Yresse cnihtes ⁊
he com to þan fihte.	he com to þan fihte.
and Passend vorð mid him ⁊	and Pascent forþ mid him ⁊
beien heo weoren uæie.	beine hii weren veie.
þa iseh Vðer ⁊	þo iseh Vther ⁊
þat icumen wes þer Gillomar.	þat icome was Gillomar.
to him he gon riden ⁊	to him he gan ride ⁊
and smat hine i þere fide.	and smot hī in þan fide.
þat þat spere þurh-rade ⁊	þat þe spere þorh-rōd ⁊
& þa heorte to-glad.	and þe heorte to-glod.
Hizendliche he hine biwet <sup>1</sup> ⁊	Hizenliche he hine bi-went ⁊
& of-toc Passent.	of-tock he sone Pascent.
and þas word sæide ⁊	and þeos word saide ⁊
Vther þe sele.	Vther þe sæle.
Passent þu scalt abiden ⁊	Pascent wi nelt abide ⁊
her cumeð Vther riden.	her comeþ Vther ride.
He smat hine uuenen þat hæued ⁊	He smot hine ouenon þat heued ⁊ [c.2]
þat he adun halde.	þat he ful to þan grunde.
and þat sweord putte in his muð ⁊	and þat sweord put in his muþ ⁊
swulc mete him wes uncuð.	soch mete him was oncouþ.

Gillomar heard this; therefore his heart was sore; with his Irish knights he came to the fight, and Pascent forth with him,—both they were fated! When Uther saw, that Gillomar was 'there' come, to him he gan ride, and smote him in the side, so that the spear through pierced, and glided to the heart. Hastily he passed by him, and [he soon] overtook Pascent; and said these words Uther the good: "Pascent, 'thou shalt [why wilt thou not] abide; here cometh Uther riding!" He smote him upon the head, so that he fell 'down [to the ground], and the sword put in his mouth—

<sup>1</sup> biwent?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat þe ord of þan sworde :  
wod in þere eorðe.

þa sæide Vther :

Passent liȝ nu þer.

nu þu hauest Brutlond : [f.103<sup>b</sup>.c.1.] nou þou hauest Brutlond :

al bi-tald to þire hond.

al awonne to þin hond.

Swa þe if nu iræd :

þer on þu ært ded.

wikien ȝe scullen here :

wonieþ nou here :

þu and Gillomar þin ifere.

10 þou an Gillomare.

& brukeð wel Brutlōd :

and broukeþ wel Brutlond :

for nu ic hit bitæche inc an hond. for nou ȝe hit habbeþ an hond.

þat ȝit mazen to-ȝere :

mid uf wunien here.

ne þurue ȝe nauere adrede :

ne þerh he<sup>1</sup> noht drede :

wha eou scullen feden.

þat ȝou fal feode.

þuf sæide Vder<sup>2</sup> :

and seoððe he arnde þer.

and drof Irifce men :

ȝeond wateres and ȝeond fenes. 20

and floh al þa uerde :

þe mid Passent commen to ærde.

Summe to þere sæ iwiten :

such meat to him was strange,—so that the point of the sword went in the earth. Then said Uther: "Pascent, lie now there; now thou hast Britain all won to thy hand! 'So is now hap to thee; therein thou art dead;' dwell 'ye shall [now] here, thou, and Gillomar 'thy companion,' and possess well Britain! For now 'I deliver it to you [ye it have] in hand, 'so that ye may presently dwell with us here'; ye need not 'ever' dread who you shall feed!" 'Thus said Uther, and afterwards he there ran, and drove the Irish men over waters and over fens, and slew all the host that with Pascent came to land. Some to the sea fled, and leapt into their ships;

<sup>1</sup> ȝe?

<sup>2</sup> R. Vðer.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& leoppen in heore scipen.  
 mid wederen & mid wateren :  
 þær heo forferden.  
 Þuſ heo iſpædden her :  
 Paſſent and Gillomar.  
 Nu wes þiſ feht idon :  
 and Vther aȝe com.  
 and forð rihtes wende :  
 into Winchæſtre.  
 in are brade ſtrete : 10  
 he igon mete.  
 þreo cnihtes & heore ſweines :  
 cūmen hī to-ȝeines.  
 A-nan ſwa heo ine<sup>1</sup> imette :  
 fæire heo hine igrætten.  
 Hail ſeo þu Vther :  
 þeoſ æðeles beoð<sup>2</sup> þin æȝen.  
 ded iſ Aurilie :  
 kingene aðeleſt.  
 he þe haueð iſet an hond : 20  
 al hiſ kinewurðe lond.  
 he bad þe beon a ſele :  
 & þenchen on hiſ faule. [c. 2.]  
 þa weop Vðer :

þuſ i-ſped here :  
 Paſcent and Gillomare.  
 N Ou was þaſ fiht i-don :  
 and Vther aȝen com.  
 and forþrihtes wēde :  
 toward Wincheſtre.  
 in one brode ſtrede :  
 he i-gan mete.  
 þreo cnihtes & hire ſweines :  
 comē him to-ȝeȝnes.  
 A-non fo hii hine i-mette :  
 faire hii hine grette.  
 Haȝl beo þou Vther :

dead hiſ þin broþer.  
 he þe haueþ iſet an hond :  
 al þiſ ilke kinelond.

þo wep Vther :

with weather and with water there they perished !' Thus 'they' ſped here, Paſcent and Gillomar. Now was this fight done (finished); and Uther back came, and forth-right marched 'into [toward] Winchester. In a broad way he gan meet three knights and their ſwains, *who* came toward him. Anon as they met him, fair they him greeted : "Hail be thou, Uther; 'theſe territories are thine own.' Dead is 'Aurelie [thy brother], 'nobleſt of kings'; he hath ſet to thee in hand all 'hiſ regal land [this ſame kingdom]; 'he bade thee be in proſperity, and think of hiſ ſoul.' " Then wept

<sup>1</sup> hine ?

<sup>2</sup> beoð ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

wunder ane fwiðe.  
 Vðer wende forð riht ⁊  
 into Winchæstre.  
 þa weoren him biforen ⁊  
 wiðuten þere burȝe.  
 alle þa burh-men ⁊  
 mid reoulliche iberen.  
 Sone fwa heo hine iſeȝen ⁊  
 heo hi to ſæiden.  
 Vther þin are ⁊  
 nu & æuere mare.  
 ure king we habbeoð ilore ⁊  
 wa if uf þer fore.  
 þu weore<sup>2</sup> hiſ broðer ⁊  
 nafde he nænne oðer.  
 no he neſde<sup>3</sup> nenne ſune ⁊  
 þe mihte king bicumē.  
 Ah nim þu þene kine-halm ⁊  
 he if þe icunde.  
 & we þe wulleð helpen ⁊  
 & halden for lauerd.  
 mid wapnen & mid æhten ⁊  
 and al ure mihte.  
 þiſ iherde Vðer ⁊

10

20

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

wonderliche ſwiþe þer.  
 Vther wende forþ riht ⁊  
 toward Wincheſtre.  
 þo weren him bi-vore ⁊  
 wiþ houte þan boure<sup>1</sup>.  
 alle þe borhmen ⁊  
 fore wepige.  
 and faide Vther þin ore ⁊ [f.83. a.1.]  
 nou an euere more.  
 houre king we habbeoþ for-lore ⁊  
 wo his ous þar vore.  
 þou were hiſ broþer ⁊  
 nafep he non oþer.  
 ne he naueþ nanne ſone ⁊  
 þat mawe king bi-come.  
 Ac nim þou þane kinedom ⁊  
 for he hiſ þe icunde.  
 and we þe wollep helpe ⁊  
 mid wepne and mid mihte.  
 þiſ i-horde Vther ⁊

Uther wondrously much [there]. Uther proceeded forth-right 'into [to-ward] Winchester; then were before him, without the burgh, all the burghers 'with piteous cries [sore weeping]. 'So soon *as* they saw him,' 'they [and] said 'to him': "Uther, thy favor, now and evermore! Our king we have lost, woe is to us therefore. Thou wert his brother,—he 'had [hath] no other, nor he 'had [hath] no son, who 'might [may] become king. But take thou the 'crown, [kingdom, for] it is thy right, and we will help thee, 'and hold for lord,' with weapons and with 'goods, and with all our' might." Uther heard this; he was wise and 'he was [very] aware, that there

<sup>1</sup> borh?<sup>2</sup> weoren *pr. man.*, but *n* erased.<sup>3</sup> neſde *pr. man.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

he wes wis & he wes war.  
 þat þer næs coft nan oder<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 seoððen dæd wes hif broðer.  
 He nom þenne kine-helm ⁊  
 þe hī bicom fwiðe wel.  
 and he wurðeliche ⁊  
 iwarð him to kinge.  
 & heold gode laȝe ⁊  
 and hif folc lufede.  
 Imong þat he king wæf ⁊ 10  
 & hif wikenares<sup>2</sup> chæs.  
 M<sup>9</sup>lin him sæt-wende ⁊  
 nuſte he nauere whidef.  
 no nauere a worlde-riche ⁊  
 to whan he bcome.  
 wa wes þā kinge ⁊  
 swa wes al hif duȝeðe. [£104.c.1.]  
 and alle hif hif<sup>3</sup> hird-men ⁊  
 þer uore murnende weoren.  
 þe king lette riden ⁊ 20  
 widen & fidē.  
 he bad gold & gerfume ⁊  
 ælche farinde gume.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

he was wis and fwiþe war.  
 þat þar nas read non oþer ⁊  
 wane dead was his broþer.  
 He nā al þis kinelond ⁊  
 to his owene hond.  
  
 and heold gode lawes ⁊  
 and his folk lofuede.  
 10 Amang þif motinge ⁊  
  
 Merlȝn at-wende.  
 nuſte man in þiſſe riche ⁊  
  
 to wan he bi-come.  
 wo was þan kinge ⁊  
  
 20 þe king lette ride ⁊  
 wide and fide.  
 and bi-hehte gold and garifome ⁊  
 to eche varen gome.

was no other 'course [counsel], since his brother was dead. He took 'the crown, that came to him exceeding well [all this kingdom in his own hand]; 'and he worthily became king, 'and held good laws, and loved his folk. 'Whilst that he was king, and chose his ministers [Among this transaction] Merlin disappeared; 'he [men] knew not 'ever whither, nor ever' in 'the worlds realm [this realm] to what he became (what became of him). Woe was the king, so 'was [were] all his 'people [knights], 'and all his courtiers were therefore mourning.' The king caused *men* to ride wide and far; 'he offered [and promised] gold and treasure to each travelling man, 'whose-

<sup>1</sup> oer?<sup>2</sup> wikemares *pr. man.*<sup>3</sup> Sic MS.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

wha fwa mihte finde :  
 Merlin an londe.  
 þer to he læide muchel lof :  
 ah ne herde he him nawhit of.  
 þa biðohte Vther :  
 whæt Merlin him fæide ær.  
 in þan hire-geonge :  
 inne Walisc londe.  
 þer heo ifeȝen þene drake :  
 ælches wurmes vnimake. 10  
 and he þohte of þan tacnen :  
 þe M<sup>9</sup>lin him tahte.  
 þe king wes swiðe færi :  
 and sorhful an heorte.  
 for ne lef he næuere leouere mon :  
 seoððen he wes an liuen.  
 neouere nēne oðer :  
 ne Aurelie hiſ broðer.  
 þe king lette wurchen tweið ima-  
 ken :  
 tweien guldene draken. 20  
 al for Mærlines liue<sup>2</sup> :

þat couþe þorh enȝ ginne :  
 Merlȝn ifinde.  
 ac nas þar non fo witti :  
 þat hine cuþe finde.  
 þar fore was þe king :  
 fori on heorte.  
 for ne leos he neuere leuere man :  
 feopþe he was on lifue. [c. 2.]  
 þe king of þan drake :  
 þat Merlȝn to him spac.  
 and makede tweið ymages :  
 þane drake iliche.  
 al of reade golde.  
 for Merlȝnes loue :

*ever* might [who could through any stratagem] find Merlin 'in *the* land ;' 'thereto he laid (added) mickle praise, but he heard no whit of him [but there was none so witty that could him find]. 'Then bethought Uther, what Merlin said to him ere, in the expedition into Welsh land, where they saw the dragon, to each worm incomparable ; and he thought of the tokens that Merlin taught him.' The king was 'exceeding [therefore] sorry, 'and sorrowful in' heart, for he lost never a dearer man, since he was alive, 'never any other, not *even* Aurelie, his brother.' The king 'caused to be worked [*thought* of the dragon, of which Merlin to him spake, and made] two images, 'two golden dragons [all of red gold], 'all' for Merlins love,—'so greatly he

<sup>1</sup> þohte of ?<sup>2</sup> liue ?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

fwa fwiðe he wilnede hiȝ cume.

þa þe draken ȝaru weoren :

þe oðer wes iuere.

whar fwa he an ærde :

ladde hi<sup>1</sup> ferde.

he wes his hire-mærke :

in æuer ælche happe.

þene oðerne he wurðliche ȝaf :

into Winchæstre.

into þā biſcop-ſtole :

þer he ſtude haldeð.

þer to he ȝef hiȝ gode ſpere : [bere.

þer mid me ſculde þene drake

þenne me ſcolde halidom : [c.2.]

beren to proceſſiun.

þiȝ iſeȝen Brutteȝ :

þaȝ draken þa weoren imaked þ<sup>2</sup>.æuer ſeoððen<sup>2</sup> heo cleopeden

Vther :

þe to hermærke þene drake bar.

þene nome heo him laiden on :

þet wes Vðer Pendragon.

Pendragun an Brutifc :

þo þe drakes ȝaru were :

þe oþer was his i-vere.

war þat he on erþe :

ladde his ferde.

þan oþer he ȝaf :

in to Wincheſtre.

10 in to þan biſſopes ſtol :

þare he ſtude holdeþ.

þar to he ȝaf hiȝ gode ſpere :

þat me mihte þane drake biere.

wane me folde halȝdomes :

beare at proceſſions.

þiȝ i-ſeȝen Bruttus :

þeȝ draken þat were imaked þuȝ.

and makede bi Vther :

one to-name þer.

and cleopede hine anon :

Vther Pendragon.

Pendragon on Bruttifch :

Vther Pen-  
dr[agon.]

desired his coming.' When the dragons were ready, the one was [his] companion ; 'wheresoever [where that] he in *the* land led his army, 'it was his standard, in every hap'; the other he 'worthily' gave into Winchester, into the bishops see, where he stead holdeth. Thereto he gave his good spear, 'wherewith [that] men 'should [might] bear the dragon, when men should carry relics at processions. *The* Britons saw this, these dragons that were thus made ; 'ever since they called Uther, who for *a* standard bare the dragon, the name they laid on him, that was [and made for Uther a sur-name there, and called him anon] Uther Pendragon ; Pendragon in

<sup>1</sup> his ?<sup>2</sup> ſeoððen ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Draken-hefd an Englisc.  
 Nu wes Vther god king ⁊  
 ah of Merlin nefde he na þing.  
 þis word iherde Octa ⁊  
 þer he norð wunede.  
 & Ebiffa his wend-broðer<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 and Ofa þe oðer.  
 þa Aurilien fende þider ⁊  
 & sette heom þer on his griðe.  
 and bi-tahte heom an honde ⁊ 10  
 fixti hidē of londe.  
 Octa iherden ful iwif ⁊  
 al hu hit ifaren wes.  
 of Aurilief dæðe ⁊  
 & of Vtheres kinedome.  
 Octa him to-cleopede ⁊  
 his cun þe wes aneofte.  
 nomē heō to ræde ⁊  
 of heore alde dede.  
 þat heo wolden bi heore liue ⁊ 20  
 cristidom bilaue.  
 Heo heolden huftig<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 & hæðene bicomē.

Drake-heued on Engliffe.  
 N Ou was Vther god king ⁊  
 ac of Merlȳn ne horde he  
 þis ihorde Octa ⁊ [noþing.  
 þar he norþ wonede.  
 and his wedbroþer Ebýffa ⁊  
 and his i-verē Offa.

of Aurelies deaþe ⁊  
 and of Vtheres kinedome.

Hii nemen heom to reade ⁊  
 of hire holde deades.  
 þat hii wolden bliue ⁊  
 cristendom bi-leue.  
 Hii heolden hire speche ⁊ [f.83<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 and heaþene bi-come.

British, Dragons-head in English. Now was Uther good king, but of Merlin he 'had [heard] nothing. This 'word (tiding)' heard Octa, where he dwelt northward, and Ebissa his wed-brother, and Ossa 'the other [his companion], 'that Aurelie sent thither, and set them there in his peace, and gave them in hand sixty hides of land. Octa heard full truly all how it was transacted,' of Aurelies death, and of Uthers kingdom. 'Octa called to him his kin that was nearest'; [they] betook them to counsel, of their old deeds, that they would 'by their life [quickly] desert Christendom. They held 'husting [their conference], and became heathens; then came

<sup>1</sup> R. wed-broðer.<sup>2</sup> hufting?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þa comen þer to-gadere ⁊  
 of Hengestes cunne.  
 fif & sixti hundred ⁊  
 of heðene monnen.  
 Sone wes þat word cuð ⁊  
 an ȝeond þan londe icud.  
 þ̅ Octa Hengestes fune ⁊  
 wes<sup>1</sup> hæðene bicume.  
 & þaf ilke gumen alle ⁊  
 þa Aurilien igriðed hæfuede. <sup>[f. 104<sup>b</sup> c. l.]</sup>  
 Octa fende hif fonde ⁊  
 in to Walisce londe.  
 after þan Irisce ⁊  
 þæ Vðer æt-urnen.  
 and after þan Alemainen ⁊  
 þe weoren awei idraȝene.  
 þa weoren to wude iwende ⁊  
 þe while men sloh Pascent.  
 and huden heð wel iwhær ⁊  
 þe while men sloh Gillomar. 20  
 þat folc ut of wude teh ⁊  
 & touward Scotlonde beh.  
 Auer þer comen ma & ma ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þar comen þo to-gadere ⁊  
 of Hengeft his cūne.  
 fifue and sixti hundred ⁊  
 of heapene manne.  
 Sone was þat word coup ⁊  
 and widene ichnowe.  
 þat Octa Hengeft his sone ⁊  
 was heapene bi-come.  
 and þe men alle ⁊  
 þat Aurelie i-greþid hadde.  
 Octa fende his fonde ⁊  
 in to Walse londe.  
 after þaie Yresse ⁊  
 þat Vther weren of-vrne.  
 and after þe Alemaines ⁊  
 þat a-chaped were.  
 þat were to wode a-wend ⁊  
 þe wile me sloh Pascent.  
 þat folk vt of wode teh ⁊  
 and to Scotlonde beoþ.  
 Euere þar comen mo and mo ⁊

there together, of 'Hengests [Hengest his] kindred, five and sixty hundred of heathen men. Soon was the word reported and 'over the land [wide] known, that Octa, 'Hengests [Hengest his] son, was become heathen, and all 'these same [the] men to whom Aurelie had granted peace. Octa sent his messengers into Welsh land, after the Irish that from Uther [were] fled, and after the Alemaines (Germans), that 'away were drawn [were escaped], that were gone to *the* wood, the while men slew Pascent, 'and hid them well everywhere, the while men slew Gillomar;' the folk out of *the* wood drew, and to 'ward' Scotland proceeded. There came ever

<sup>1</sup> Nes *pr. man.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and ferden touward Octa.	þat wende to Octa.
þa heo to-somme <sup>1</sup> weoren iwende: þo	hii to-gadere were alle hii-
	come <sup>2</sup> ⁊
þa weoren þer þritti þufend.	þo weren þar þritti þufend.
wið uten þa wifmen ⁊	wiþ oute þan wimmen ⁊
of Hengeſtes cunnen.	of Hengeſt his cunne.
Heo nomen heore uerde ⁊	Hii nemen hire ferde ⁊
& gunnen to farene.	and forþ gonnewende.
& fetten al an heore hōd ⁊	and fette al in hire hōd ⁊
biȝeonden þere Humbre lond.	bi-ȝeonde Norþhumberlond.
& <sup>3</sup> þat leoden ⁊	
10 þer heo gunnē liðen.	
ferde þer wes fellic ⁊	ferde þar was fellich ⁊
and wenden riht to <sup>4</sup> Eouerwic.	and wende riht to Euerwich.
and an ælche fide ⁊	and in eche fide ⁊
þa burh gunnē biride.	þane borh gonne bi-ride.
& þa burh bilæien ⁊	and þe þorh bi-leien ⁊
hæðene leoden.	heaþene hundes.
and nomen hit al to heore honde ⁊	and nemen al to hire hond ⁊
forð into Scotlonde.	forþ into Scotlond.
al þat heo iſeȝen ⁊	20 al þat hii i-feȝen ⁊ [c. 2.]
heo talden heore aȝen.	hii tolden hire owene.
Ah Vtheres cnihtes ⁊	Ac Vther hiſ cnihtes ⁊

more and more, and proceeded to 'ward' Octa; when they together were [all] come, then were there thirty thousand, without the women, of 'Hengests [Hengest his] kin. They took their host, and [forth] gan to fare, and set all in their hand beyond 'the Humber [Northumberland], 'and the people, where they gan march; 'there was a marvellous host! And *they* proceeded right to York, and on each side *the* heathen 'people [hounds] gan ride about the burgh, and the burgh besieged'; and took 'it' all in their hand, forth into Scotland; all that they saw they accounted their own. But 'Uthers [Uther his] knights who were in the

<sup>1</sup> to-somme?<sup>3</sup> A word seems here wanting.<sup>2</sup> i-come?<sup>4</sup> Interlined man. sec.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þa weoren i þan caſtle.	þat weren in þan caſtle.
wereðen þene tun wið innen ⁊ [c.2.]werede þane toun wiþ ine ⁊	
þat ne mihten heo næuere binnen. þat hii ne mihte hine awinne.	
ne iherde mon in nane ſtude ⁊	ne horde no man in no ſtude ⁊
lute men þat ſwa wel duden.	feuwe men þat bet dude.
Swa fone ſwa Vðer ⁊	So fone ſo Vther ⁊
of þiſſen þingen iwarð war.	of þis þinge was war.
færde he bad ſtronge ⁊	ferde he bad ſtronge ⁊
Ʒeod al hiſ kinelonde.	of al hiſ kinelonde.
and he ſwiðe hiƷend-liche ⁊	and he ſwiþe hiƷenliche ⁊
ferde touward Eouerwic.	wende toward Euerwich.
ferde uorð riht anan ⁊	ferde forþriht ſo ⁊
þer him læi Octa.	þar him laƷ Octa.
Octa and hiſ ferde ⁊	Octa and hiſ ferde ⁊
fuſde heom to-Ʒeines.	wende him to-Ʒeines.
wurueden heom to-gadere <sup>1</sup> ⁊	þrongen heom to-gadere ⁊
mid grimere ſtrengðe.	mid grettere ſtrengþe.
heowen hardliche ⁊	hewen hardeliche ⁊
hælmes gullen.	healmef þar Ʒolle.
falewede feldes ⁊	20 falewede þe feldes ⁊
of fæie blode.	of hire blodes.
& þa heðene faulen ⁊	
helle iſohten.	

castle, defended the town within, so that they might 'never *get* within [not it win]; in no place heard [any] one, of few men that did 'so well [better]! So soon as Uther of this thing was aware, he assembled a strong army, 'over [from] all his kingdom, and he very speedily marched toward York; proceeded forth-right 'anon [so], where Octa him lay. Octa and his forces marched against 'them [him]; encountered them together with 'grim [great] strength; hewed hardily; helms [there] resounded; [the] fields were dyed with 'the blood of the slain [their blood], 'and the heathen souls hell sought '! When the days end 'arrived [came], then was

<sup>1</sup> To is interlined man. sec.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þa þes dæies ende bicom :  
 þa wes hit swa ufel idon.  
 ꝥ þat hæðene uolc :  
 þa ufere hond hafeden.  
 & mid muchelere strengðe :  
 sturmden þa Bruttes.  
 and driuen heom to ane munte :  
 þæ wes unimete stor.  
 & Vðer mid hif monnen :  
 teh to þan munte.  
 and hæuede iloren in fihte :  
 leofe hif cnihtes.  
 fulle seouen hundred :  
 hif hælp<sup>1</sup> wes þa wurfe.  
 þe munt hæhte Dunian :  
 þe Vther wes ufenan.  
 wes þe munt þurh-wexen :  
 mid ane wude feiren.  
 þeking wes þer wið innen : [f. 105. c. 1.]  
 mid fwiðe feole monnen.  
 & Octa hine bi-læi :  
 mid hæðene monnen niht and dæi.  
 bilæi hine al abuten :  
 wa wes þan Brutten.

10 þo þes daiȝes ende com :  
 þo was hit so vuele idon.  
 þat þe heaþene folk :  
 þe ouere hond hadde.  
 and mid mochele strengþe :  
 fweinde þe Bruttus.  
 and driuen heom in on mund :  
 þat was onimete stor.  
 And Vther to þan hulle :  
 wende mid his manne.  
 and hadde ilore in fihte :  
 leofue his cnihtes.  
 folle foue hundred :  
 his heap was þe worfe.  
 þe hulle hatte Dinian :  
 þar Vther lay ouenan.  
 was þe hul þorh-woxe :  
 mid one wode faire. [f. 84. c. 1.]  
 20 þe king was þare wiȝ ine :  
 mid fwiȝe fale manne.  
 and Octa hine bi-lay :

it so evilly done, that the heathen folk had the upper hand, and with great strength routed the Britons, and drove them 'to [on] a mount that was exceeding strong. And Uther with his men 'drew [went] to the 'mount [hill], and had lost in *the* fight his dear knights, full seven hundred,—his hap was the worse! The 'mount [hill] hight Dunian, 'that [where] Uther 'was [lay] upon; the 'mount [hill] was overgrown with a fair wood. The king was there within with very many men, and Octa besieged him with *the* heathen men [his folk] night and day,—'besieged

<sup>1</sup> hæp?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Wa wes þan kinge Vðer :  
 þat he nef ær wær.  
 þat he nefde an londe :  
 bet vnder-ſtonde.

Ofte heo eoden to ræde :  
 of fwucchere neode.  
 hu heo mihten ouer-cumen :  
 Octa Hengeſtes ſune.

*Gorlois.*

¶ þer wes an eorl Gorloif :  
 ocht mon ful iwif.  
 cniht he wes wel idon :

he wef Vðeres mon.  
 eorl of Cornwaille :

cuð he wes wide.  
 he wes fwiðe wiſ mon :

of alle þinge wel idō.  
 To him ſæide Vther :

ſæri an heorten.  
 Hail ſeo þu Gorlois :

gumenene lauerd.  
 þu ært min aȝe mon :  
 & fwiðe wel ich þe on.

þu ært cniht wel idon :  
 muchel is þi wiſdom.  
 alle mine leoden :

Wo was þan kige Vther :  
 þat he nadde beo ear war.

ofte hii ȝeode to reade :  
 of folchere neode.  
 ou hii mihte ouercome :  
 Octa Hengeſt his ſone.  
 þar was a man Gorloȝs :

10 on ſtrong eorl foliwiſ.

eorl of Cornwale :  
 he waſ coup wide.  
 he was fwiþe wiſman :  
 of alle þinge wel idon.  
 To him ſaide Vther :

fori on heorte.

20

Gorloȝs þou hart mi mon.

and mochel caneſt of wiſdom.  
 alle mine leode :

him all about, woe was to the Britons !' Woe was the king Uther, that he 'was not [had not been] ere aware, 'that he had not in land better understood.' Oft they went to counsel of such need, how they might overcome Octa, 'Hengests [Hengest his] son. There was 'an earl [a man] Gorlois, 'bold man [a strong earl] full truly,—'knight he was good, he was Uthers man,'—earl of Cornwall, known he was wide,—he was a very wise man, in all things excellent. To him said Uther, sorry in heart: "'Hail be thou, Gorlois, lord of men !' [Gorloys] thou art 'mine own [my] man, and 'very well I thee treat; thou art knight good,' great is thy [much knowest of] wisdom; all my people I put in thy counsel, and 'all'

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

ich don in þine ræden.  
 & alle we sculle wurchen ⁊  
 after þine iwille.  
 þa hing his breowen adun ⁊  
 þe king Vther Pendragū.  
 and stod him ful stille ⁊  
 & bad Gorlois fuggen hif iwille.  
 þa andfwarede Gorlois ⁊  
 he wes hende ful iwif.  
 Sæie me Vther Pendragon ⁊ 10  
 whi halst þu þin hafed adun. [c.2.]  
 naft þu þat godd ane ⁊  
 if betere þene we al clæne.  
 he mai wham swa he wule ⁊  
 wurðcipe bitachen.  
 Bihate we him on liue ⁊  
 þat we him nulleð lize.  
 & leten we uf ræden ⁊  
 of ure misdeden.  
 ælc mon forð riht ⁊ 20  
 of alle hif funnen nimen scrift.  
 ælc mon scriuen oðer ⁊  
 fwulc hit weoren hif broðer.  
 & æuer ælc god cniht ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ich do in þine reade.  
 and we follen weorche ⁊  
 after þine wille.  
 þo heng he his brouwes a-dun ⁊  
 Vther Pendragon.  
 and stod him ful stille ⁊  
 and bad Gorloys segge hif wille.  
 þo answered Gorloys ⁊  
 þat was hende foliwis.  
 Sai me Vther Pendragon ⁊  
 wi hangeft þou þin heued adun.  
 noft þou þat god one ⁊  
 his betere þane we alle cleane.  
 he may wam so he wole ⁊  
 worfipe bi-take.  
 Bi-hote we him on lifue ⁊  
 þat we hine loueie wolleþ.  
 and lete we vs reade ⁊  
 of vre misdede.  
 ech man forþ riht ⁊ [c.2.]  
 of his funne nime scrift.  
 ech man scriue oþer ⁊  
 afe hit were hif broþer.  
 and euerech god cniht ⁊

we shall work after thy will. Then hung [he] his brows down, 'the king'  
 Uther Pendragon, and stood him full still, and bade Gorlois say his will.  
 Then answered Gorlois, who was fair (or courteous) full truly: "Say me,  
 Uther Pendragon, why 'bowest [hangeſt] thou thy head down? Knoweſt  
 thou not that God alone is better than we all clean? He may to whomſo-  
 ever he will give worſhip. Promise we him in life that we will 'not him  
 deceive [love him]; and let we counſel us of our miſdeeds. Each man  
 forth-right take ſhriſt of 'all' his ſins; each man ſhrive other, as if it were  
 his brother, and every good knight 'take on him much [receive good]



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

nime on him muchel scrift.  
 & godde we scullen bihatē ⁊  
 ure funnen to betē.  
 & to þere midnihte ⁊  
 ȝarkien uf to fihten.  
 þeos hæðene hundes ⁊  
 talleð uf al ibunden.  
 Octa Hengestes funæ ⁊  
 weneð ꝥ we beon alle inumen.  
 heo leggeð i þiffen felden ⁊ 10  
 ihæled in heore telden.  
 heo beoð swiðe werie ⁊  
 iboren heore wepnen.  
 nu nan heo sculleð flumen ⁊  
 & feoððen flæpen.  
 of uf nabbeoð heo nane kare ⁊  
 ꝥ we aȝen heom wulleð faren.  
 To þere midnihte ⁊  
 we sculleð forð rihtes.  
 fwiðelicche stille ⁊ 20  
 adun of þiffen hulle.  
 na wurðe cniht swa wod ⁊  
 þat he scire æi word.  
 ne nauer nan hæleð ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ondernime god scrift.  
 and god we follen bi-hote ⁊  
 houre sunne to beate.  
 And to þare midniht ⁊  
 ȝarke we ous to fiht.  
 þeos heaþene hundes ⁊  
 telleþ ous alle ibunde.  
 Octa Hengeft his sone ⁊  
 wenep ꝥat we beo alle inome.  
 hii liggeþ in þiffe feldes ⁊  
 iheled in hire teldes.  
 hii beoþ fwiþe weri ⁊  
 ibore hire wepne.  
 nou non hii folle heueȝi ⁊  
 and fupþe hii folle fleape.  
 of vs nabbeþ hii nanne care ⁊  
 þat we wollep aȝein heom vare.  
 To þare midnihte ⁊  
 we follen forþriht.  
 swiþeliche stille ⁊ 20  
 adun of þiffe hulle.  
 ne worþe non cniht fo wod ⁊  
 þat speke eni word.  
 ne neuere non man ⁊

shrift, and God we shall promise to amend our sins. And at the midnight prepare [we] us to fight; these heathen hounds account us all *here* bound. Octa, 'Hengests [Hengest his] son, weeneth that we are all taken; they lie in these fields covered in their tents, they are very weary of carrying their weapons; now anon they shall 'slumber [*grow heavy*], and afterwards [they shall] sleep; of us they have no care, that we will march against them. At the midnight we shall forth-right *go* exceeding still, down from this hill; be no knight so mad, that 'he ask [*speak*] any word, nor ever any man *be so mad*, that he blow horn. But we shall step to

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat he <sup>1</sup> horn blawe.	þat he horn blowe.
Ac we scullen steppen heom to :	Ac we sollen stap heom to :
fwa we stelen wolden. [f.105 <sup>b</sup> .c.1.]	alse we stele wolde.
ær heo wurðen iware :	her hii beon ware :
we scullen heōm amarre.	we solle heom a-morre.
we scullen heom to teō :	we sollen heom to teon :
& tidende tellen.	and tȳdinge telle.
And æuerælc oht mon :	And euerech oht man :
sterkliche heom legge on.	starliche heom legge an.
and fwa we scullen of londe : 10	and so we solle of londe :
driuen vnicunde.	driuen onicunde.
and mid mihte of ure drihten :	and mid mihte of houre drihte :
bitellen ure irihten.	bi-tellen oure rihte. [f.84 <sup>b</sup> .c.1.]
Al þas ferde idude :	Al hii dude :
swa Gorlois heom hauede ibede.	afe Gorloys hit hadde ibode.
ælc mon forð rihte :	
dude hine vnder scrifte.	
bi-hehten god <sup>2</sup> to donne :	
and þat afel to forgonne.	
To þeƿ mid-nihte :	20 To þare midnihte :
wepnede heom cnihtes.	wepnede heom cnihtes.
and aueremeste uerde adun :	and fomeft ver <sup>3</sup> adun :
Vðer Pendragun.	Vther Pendragon.
and his cnihtes alle :	and his cnihtes alle :

them as *if* we would steal ; ere they are aware, we shall destroy them ; we shall approach to them, and tell *them* tidings. And *let* every brave man strongly lay on them ; and so we shall drive *the* foreigners from *the* land, and with *the* might of our Lord, win our rights." 'All this host [They all] did as Gorlois had bid them ; 'each man forth-right put him under shrift ; promised to do good, and to forsake the evil.' At the midnight *the* knights weaponed them ; and Uther Pendragon foremost went down, and all his knights, exceeding still ; and smote in the 'wealds,

<sup>1</sup> *Interlined man. sec.*<sup>2</sup> *godd man. pr., but d erased.*<sup>3</sup> *formeft verde ?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

swiðeliche stille.  
 and smiten i þa waldes :  
 imong alle þa teldes.  
 and floȝen þa hæðene :  
 mid hæþere strenðe<sup>1</sup>.  
 fluȝen ȝeōð þan feldes :  
 falewe lockef.  
 uolken hit wes ærmeſt :  
 heo droȝen heore þermes.  
 mid muchele vnifunde :  
 heo feollen to þan grunde.  
 þer wes forð riht inume :  
 Octa Hengeſtes ſune.  
 & hiſ wedbroðer : Ebiffa :  
 & hiſ iuere Offa.  
 þe king heom lette binden : [c. 2.]  
 mid irene bænde.  
 and bi-tahte heom fixti cnihten :  
 þe gode weoren to fihten.  
 ufennen þan walden :  
 uafte to halden.  
 & he ſeolf draf him forð :  
 and muchel dune makede.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ſwiþeliche ſtille.  
 and smiten in þan teldes :  
 þar hii were in þe feldes.  
 and ſwo hii gonne þe heapene :  
 legge to grunde.

And þar was forþriht inome :  
 Octa Hengeſt hiſ ſone.  
 and hiſ wed-broþer Ebýffa :  
 and hiſ i-vere Offa.  
 þe king heom lette binde :  
 mid ýrene bendes.  
 and bi-tahte heð fixti cnihtes :  
 þat goden were to fihte.  
 ouenan þan wollde :  
 faſte to holde.  
 And him ſeolf drof heom forþ :  
 and moche dune makede.

among all the tents [tents, where they were in the fields], and 'slew the heathens with great strength [so they gan to lay the heathens to ground]; "slew over the fields *the* yellow locks; of folk it was most wretched, they drew *along* their bowels; with much destruction they fell to the ground!" [And] there was forth-right captured Octa, 'Hengests [Hengest his] son, and his wed-brother Ebissa, and his comrade Ossa. The king caused them to be bound with iron bonds, and delivered them to sixty knights, who were good in fight, fast to hold (guard) over the weald. And 'he *himself* [*he himself*] drove 'him [them] forth, and made much din; and

<sup>1</sup> strenðe ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& Gorlois þe hende ⁊  
uorð an oðer ende.  
& alle heore cnihtes ⁊  
æuere forð rihtes.  
adū rihtes floȝen ⁊  
al þat heo neh comen.  
Summe heo crupē to þan wude ⁊  
an heore bære cneowen.  
heo weoren amærȝe ⁊  
volken alre ærmeſt.  
Octa wes ibunden ⁊  
& ilad to Lunde.  
and Ebiffa & Offa ⁊  
nes heom nauere al ſwa wa.  
þiſ feh<sup>1</sup> wes idon ⁊  
& þe king wende forð.  
in to Norð-humbre ⁊  
mid hæȝere bliſſe.  
& ſeoððe to Scotlonde ⁊  
& ſette hit al an hiſ aȝere hond.  
He ſette grið he ſette frið ⁊  
þ ælc mon mihte faren wið.  
from londe to londe ⁊

and Gorloys þan hende ⁊  
forþ an oþer eande.  
and alle hire cnihtes ⁊  
euere forþrihtes.  
adun riht flowen ⁊  
al þat hii neh comen.  
Somme hii crope to þan wode ⁊  
on hire bare cnowes.  
and þaie were amorwe ⁊  
10 alle idon to deaþe.  
Octa was ibūde ⁊  
and ilad to Londene.  
and Ebýſſa and Offa ⁊  
nere heō neuere ſo wo.  
þiſ fiht was al idon ⁊  
and þe king forþ com.  
into Norþhumbre ⁊ [c. 2.]  
mid heȝere bliſſe.  
and ſupþe to Scotlond ⁊  
and ſette hit al in hiſ hond.  
He ſette ſwiþe god griþ ⁊  
þat ech man mihte faren wiþ.  
fram londe to londe ⁊

Gorlois the fair, forth on *the* other side; and all their knights, ever forth-right alew downright all that they came nigh. Some they crept to the wood on their bare knees, [and] they were on *the* morrow 'most miserable of all folk [all put to death]. Octa was bound, and led to London, and Ebissa, and Ossa,—'was never to them such [were they never so] woe! This fight was [all] done, and the king forth 'marched [came] into Northumberland with great bliss; and afterwards to Scotland, and set it all in his 'own' hand. He established peace [most good], 'he established quiet,' that each man might journey with from land to land, though he bare gold in *his* hand; of

<sup>1</sup> feht?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þeh he bere gold an hode.  
 of grið he dude fwulc þig ⁊  
 þat ne mihte næuer ær na king.  
 fram þan ilke time ⁊  
 þ Bruttas comen her liðen.  
 Andseoððenvmbestunde<sup>2</sup> [f. 106.c.1.]  
 he ferde to Lunden.  
 he wes þere an æft<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 mid aleðele<sup>2</sup> hif uolke.  
 bliðe wes þe Lundenes tun ⁊ 10  
 for Vthere Pendragun.  
 He fende hif sonde ⁊  
 ȝeond al hif kinelonde.  
 he bæd þa eorles ⁊  
 he bæd þa cheorles.  
 he bæd þa biscopas ⁊  
 þa boc-ilærede men.  
 þ heo comen to Lunden ⁊  
 to Vðer þan kingen.  
 in to Lundenes tun ⁊ 20  
 to Vðer Pendragun.  
 Riche men fone ⁊  
 to Lundene comen.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þeh<sup>1</sup> bere gold an honde.  
 of gripe he dude soch þing ⁊  
 þat ne mihte her no king.  
 fram þan ilke time ⁊  
 þat Brut<sup>2</sup> her com lipe.  
 And suppe bi one stunde ⁊  
 he verde to Lundene.  
 he was þar on easter ⁊  
 and alle his folke.  
 blipe was Londene his toune ⁊  
 for Vther Pendragon.  
 He fende his sonde ⁊  
 oueral his kinelonde.  
 he bad eorles and cnihtes ⁊  
 and alle oþer þeines.  
 þat hii come to Londene ⁊  
 to Vther þan kinge.  
 Riche men fone ⁊  
 to Londene come.

peace he did such things, that no king might 'ever' ere, from that time that  
*the* Britons here arrived. And then, after *a* time, he proceeded to London;  
 he was there at Easter, 'with [and all] his 'good' folk; blithe was 'the  
 Londons [London his] town, for Uther Pendragon. He sent his messen-  
 gers over all his kingdom; he bade 'the' earls, 'he bade the churls, he  
 bade the bishops, *and* the book-learned men [and knights, and all *the* other  
 thanes], that they should come to London, to Uther the king, 'into Londons  
 town, to Uther Pendragon.' Rich men soon to London came; they brought

<sup>1</sup> þeh he ?<sup>2</sup> R. aþele.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xi.ii.

heo brohten wif heo brohten child?	hii brohten wif hii brohten child?
fwa hehte Vther þe king.	afe hii were ihote.
Mid muchele godnæsse?	Mid mochele godniffe?
þe king iherde mæsse.	þe king ihorde hif maffe.
& Gorlois þe eorl of Cornwale?	and Gorloys eorl of Cornwale?
& mid him cnihtes uale.	and mid him cnihtes fale.
muche bliffe wes i þan tun?	moche bliffe was in þan toun?
mid Vðer kinge Pendragun.	mid Vther Pendragon.
þa þe mæsse wes ifungē?	þo þe maffe was ifonge?
to halle heo þrunge.	10 to halle hii þronge.
bemē heo bleowen?	and bordes hii leidē?
bordes heo brædden.	and adun feten.
al þat folc æt & dronc?	hii eotē hii drongen? [185.c.1.]
& bliffe heom wes imong.	biliffe <sup>1</sup> waf a-mang heom.
þer fæt Vðer þe king?	þar fat Vther þe king?
an hif hæb setle.	in his heȝe setle.
forn aȝan him Gorloif?	aforneȝen him Gorlois?
hēde cniht ful iwif.	þat was hende foliwis.
þe eorl of Cornwale?	
mid aȝele hif wife.	20
þa heo weoren alle ifeten?	þo hii were alle ifete?
eorles to heore mete. [c.2.]	eorles to þare mete.
þe king fende his fonde?	þe king fende his fonde?

wife, they brought child, as 'Uther the king [they were] commanded. With much goodness the king heard [his] mass, and Gorlois, 'the' earl of Cornwall, and many knights with him; much bliss was in the town, with 'king' Uther Pendragon. When the mass was sung, to *the* hall they crowded; 'trumpets they blew, boards (tables) they spread; all the folk [and boards they laid, and down sate; they] ate 'and [they] drank, 'and' bliss was among them. There sate Uther the king in his high chair; opposite to him Gorlois, 'fair knight [who was fair] full truly, 'the earl of Cornwall, with his noble wife.' When they were all seated, *the* earls to their meat, the king sent his messengers to Ygærne the fair, 'Gorlois *the*

<sup>1</sup> bliffe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

*Igær[ne].*

to Igærne þere hende.

Gorloif eorles wif ⁊

wifmone alre hendest.

Ofte he hire lokede on ⁊

&amp; leitede mid eȝene.

ofte he his birles fende ⁊

fron to<sup>1</sup> hire borde.

ofte he hire loh to ⁊

&amp; makede hire letes.

and [heo] hine leofliche biheold ⁊ and ȝeo hine lofueliche bi-heold ⁊

ah inæt<sup>2</sup> whær heo hine luuede. I not<sup>2</sup> ware ȝeo hine lofuede.

Næs þe king noht swa wif ⁊ 12 Nas þe king noht so wis ⁊

ne swa ȝære witele.

þ̅ imong his doȝeþe ⁊

his þoht cuðe dernen.

Swa long þe king þif him droh ⁊

þat Gorloif iwærð him wrað.

&amp; him gromede swiðe ⁊

wið þene king for his wife.

þe eorl &amp; his cnihtes ⁊ 20 þe eorl and his cnihtes ⁊

arifen forð rihtes.

&amp; forð mid þan wife ⁊

cnihtes swiðe whraðe.

to Igerne þan hende.

Ofte he hire lokede on ⁊

and leitede mid eȝene.

ofte he his borles fende ⁊

to hire borde.

ofte he hire loh to ⁊

and makede hire letes.

and ȝeo hine lofueliche bi-heold ⁊

I not<sup>2</sup> ware ȝeo hine lofuede.

Nas þe king noht so wis ⁊

ne so war witele.

þat couþe his þoht hude ⁊

a-mang his doȝeþe.

So lange þe king þis game drof ⁊

þat Gorlois iwarþ wroþ.

and him gramede swiþe ⁊

to þe king for his wifue.

þe eorl and his cnihtes ⁊ 20 þe eorl and his cnihtes ⁊

a-rifen forð rihtes.

and forð mid þan wifue ⁊

cnihtes swiþe wroþe.

earls wife, woman fairest of all.' Oft he looked on her, and glanced with his eyes; oft he sent his cup-bearers 'forth' to her table; oft he laughed at her, and made glances to her; and she him lovingly beheld,—'but' I know not whether she loved him. The king was not so wise, nor so far prudent, that among his folk he could his thoughts hide. So long the king this 'practised [game drove], that Gorlois became 'him' wrath, and angered him greatly with the king, for (on account of) his wife. The earl and his knights arose forth-right, and *went* forth with the woman, knights most wrath. King Uther saw this, and 'herefore' was 'sorry [wrath full truly],

<sup>1</sup> forn to? Cf. l. 19019.<sup>2</sup> ich næt? ich not?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Vther king þis ifah ⁊  
 & here fore særi wes.  
 & nom him forð rihtes ⁊  
 twælf wife cnihtes.  
 & fende aft<sup>9</sup> Gorloif ⁊  
 gumenene ældere.  
 and beden hine an hiȝinge ⁊  
 cumē to þan kinge.  
 & don þan kinge god riht ⁊  
 & beon icnowen of his pliht. 10  
 ꝥ he hafde<sup>1</sup> þene king ifcend ⁊  
 & from his borde wes iwende.  
 he and his cnihtes ⁊  
 mid muchele vn-rihte. [f. 106<sup>v</sup>. c. 1.]  
 for the king him wæs glad wið ⁊  
 & for he halled in his wif.  
 & ȝif he nalde aȝein cumen ⁊  
 & his gult beon icnawen.  
 þe king him wolde aft<sup>9</sup> ⁊  
 and don al his mahten. 20  
 binimen him al his lond ⁊  
 and his feoluer & his gold.  
 þis iherde Gorlois ⁊  
 gumenene lauer<sup>2</sup>.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

King Vther ifah þis ⁊  
 an was wroþ foliwis.  
 and nam a-non rihtes ⁊  
 twalf wife cnihtes.  
 and fende after Gorloys ⁊  
 eorl of Cornwale.  
 and bad hine an hiȝenge ⁊  
 come to þan kinge.  
 and don þan kinge god riht ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 and beon icnowe of his pliht.  
 þat he hadde þane king ifend ⁊  
 þat he was fram his borde iwend.  
 he and his cnihtes ⁊  
 mid mochele onrihtes.  
 for þe king him louede afe his lif ⁊  
 and haylede to his wif.  
 And ȝef he nolde þis owe ⁊  
 and of his gult beo cnowe.  
 þe king him wolde after ⁊  
 and don al his mihte. 20  
 bi-nimen al his lond ⁊  
 þat he hadde an hond.  
 þis ihorde Gorloys ⁊  
 eorl of Cornwale.

and took 'him forth-right [anon right] twelve wise knights, and sent after Gorlois, 'chieftain of men [earl of Cornwall], and bade him come in haste to the king, and do the king good right, and acknowledge his fault, that he had disgraced the king, 'and [that] from his board [he] had departed; he, and his knights, with mickle wrong, for (because) the king 'was cheerful with him [loved him as his life], and 'for he' hailed (drank health?) to his wife. And if he would not 'back come [this own], and acknowledge his guilt, the king would *follow* after him, and do all his might; take from him all his land, 'and his silver, and his gold [that he had in hand]. Gorlois heard this, 'lord

<sup>1</sup> R. hafde.<sup>2</sup> lauerd?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& he andfware ȝaf :  
 eorlene wraðest.  
 Næi fwa me helpe drihte :  
 þa ifcop þaf dazef lihte.  
 nulle ich nauere aȝæn cumen :  
 no hif grið ȝirnen.  
 ne fcal he neuere on liue :  
 me fçende of mine wife.  
 & fuggeð Vðer kinge :  
 at Tintaieol he mai me finden.  
 ȝif he þuder wule ride :  
 þer ich him wulle abiden.  
 and þer he fcal habbe hærd gome :  
 & mucle weorldes fcome.  
 Forð wende þe eorl :  
 ire on his mode.  
 he wes wærð<sup>1</sup> wið þene king :  
 wunder ane fwiðe.  
 and þretede Vther þene king :  
 and alle his þeines mid him.  
 ah he nuſte whæt com feoððe :  
 fone þer æfter.  
 þe eorl anan wende :

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and he anſwerede :  
 wroþliche fwiþe.  
 Naȝ fo me helpe drihte :  
 þat fceop þes daiȝes lihte.  
 nelle ich neuere aȝein come :  
 ne his griþ ȝerne.  
 ne fal he neuere on lifue :  
 me fçende of mine wifue.  
 Ac feggeþ Vther þan king :  
 at Tȳntagel he maȝ me finde.  
 ȝef he þider wole ride :  
 þar ich him wole abide.  
**F**Orþ wende þe eorl :  
 ȝr on his mode.  
 he was wroþ wiþ þan king :  
 wonderliche fwiþe.  
 and wreppede<sup>2</sup> Vther þane kig :  
 and alle his cnihtef mid him.  
 ac he nuſte wat com fuþþe :  
 fone þar after.  
 þe eorl a-non wende : [f. 85<sup>v</sup>. c. 1.]

of men [earl of Cornwall], and he 'answer gave, wrathest of earls [answered exceeding wrathly]: "Nay, so help me *the* Lord, that formed the day-light, will I never back come, nor yearn his peace; nor shall he ever in life disgrace me of my wife! 'And [But] say *ye* to Uther [the] king, at 'Tintaieol [Tyntagel] he may find me; if he thither will ride, there will I abide him, 'and there he shall have hard game, and mickle worlds shame.'" Forth proceeded the earl, angry in his mood; he was wrath with the king wondrously much, and threatened Uther the king, and all his 'thanes [knights] with him. But he knew not what should come subsequently, soon thereafter. The earl proceeded anon into Cornwall; he had there two castles

<sup>1</sup> wærð?<sup>2</sup> þretede?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

in to Cornwaille.  
 he hafde þer tweie castles :  
 biclufed fwiðe uafte.  
 þæ castles aðele<sup>1</sup> weore :  
 of his eoldrene iftreon.  
 To Tintaieol he fende :  
 his leofmon þa wes hende.  
 Ygerne ihatē :  
 wifene aðeleft. [c.2.]  
 and heo biclufde uæfte : 10  
 inne þan castle.  
 Ygerne wef særi :  
 & forhful an heorte.  
 þat swa moni mon for hire :  
 sculden habbē þer lure.  
 þe eorl fende sonde :  
 ȝeōd al Brutlonde.  
 and bæd alcne ohte gome :  
 þat he him sculde to cume.  
 for gold and for feolure : 20  
 & for oðere ȝiuē gode.  
 þat heo ful fone :  
 to Tintaieole comen.  
 & his hiſ<sup>3</sup> aȝene cnihtes :

into Cornwale.  
 he hadde þare tweie castles :  
 bi-walled fwiþe fafte.  
 þe castles gode were :  
 of his hilderne streone.  
 To Tyntagel he fende :  
 his wif þat was so hende.  
 Igerne i-hote :  
 treouwest alre wifue.  
 and he bi-clufdere<sup>2</sup> fafte : 10  
 ine þane castle.  
 Igerne was fori :  
 and forhfolle an heorte.  
 þat so mani man for hure :  
 folde habbe þare lure.  
 þe eorl fende sonde :  
 oueral Brutlond.  
 and bad echene ohte gome :  
 þat he folde to him come.  
 for feoluer and for golde : 20  
 and for oþer ȝeftes gode.  
 þat he wel fone :  
 to Tyntagel come.  
 and his owene cnihtes :

'inclosed [be-walled] most fast; the castles were good, of (and belonged to) *the* race of his ancestors. To 'Tintaieol [Tyntagel] he sent his 'mistress [wife] who was [so] fair, named Ygærne, 'best [truest of all] women; and [he] inclosed her fast in the castle. Ygærne was sorry, and sorrowful in heart, that so many men for her should there have destruction. The earl sent messengers over all Britain, and bade each brave man, that he should come to him, for gold and for silver, and for other good gifts, that 'they [he] full soon should come to 'Tintaieol [Tyntagel]; and *bade* his own

<sup>1</sup> *Written at first alðele, but l expuncted.*<sup>2</sup> bi-clufde hire?<sup>3</sup> *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

comen forð rihtes.

þa heo to-gædere weoren ⁊  
fele þeines.

þa hafde he fulle ⁊

fiftene þufend.

&amp; heo Tintaieol ⁊

faſte bitunden.

Uppen þere ſæ ſtronde ⁊

Tintaieol ſtondeð.

he is mid ſæ cliuen ⁊

faſte bicluſed.

þat ne bið he biwunne ⁊

þurh nanes cunnes monnen.

bute ȝif hunger ⁊

cumen þer an vnder.

þe eorl uerde þenne ⁊

mid ſeouē þufend monnen.

&amp; wende to ane oðere caſtle ⁊

and bichifde hi<sup>2</sup> ful uæſte.*Tintaieol.* and bilefde hiſ wif in Tintaieol ⁊

mid ten þufend monnen.

For ne þurue þa cnihtes ⁊

dæies na nihtes.

comen forþrihtes.

þo hii to-gadere weren ⁊

alle hi-fomed.

þo hadde<sup>1</sup> fulle ⁊

fiftene þufend.

and he Tyntagel ⁊

faſte bi-tunde.

Vppe þare ſtronde ⁊

Tyntagel ſtondeþ.

10 he his mid ſéé cluues ⁊

faſte bi-tuned.

þat ne worþ he bi-wonne ⁊

þorh neuere none manne.

bote of ſtrang hunger ⁊

come þar honder.

þe eorl wende þanne ⁊

mid ſcouē þouſend manne.

and wende to an oþer caſtel ⁊ [c.1]

and bi-tunde him wel faſte.

bilefde his wif in Tyntagel ⁊

21 mid hehte þouſen<sup>3</sup> manne.

For ne þeorte þe cnihtes ⁊

daiȝes no nihtes.

knights to come forth-right. When they were together, *the* good thanes [all assembled], then had he full fifteen thousand, and *they* [he] *fast* inclosed *Tintaieol* [Tyntagel]. Upon the *sea* strand *Tintaieol* [Tyntagel] standeth; it is with *the* sea cliffs *fast* inclosed, so that it may not be won, by 'no kind of [ever any] man, but if (except) [strong] hunger come there'in' under. The earl marched thence with seven thousand men, and proceeded to another castle, and inclosed it 'full [well] fast, 'and' left his wife in *Tintaieol* [Tyntagel], with 'ten [eight] thousand men. For it needed the knights, day or night, only to guard [well] the castle gate,

<sup>1</sup> hadde he?<sup>2</sup> bicluſde hine?<sup>3</sup> þouſend?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

buten buten <sup>1</sup> biwiten þat caſtel; at: bote witie wel þan caſtel ȝeate: & careles liggen flæpen. and careles ligge fleape.  
 and þe eorl wuſte þene oþer: and þe eorl wuſte þan oþer:  
 & mid hī hiſ a<sup>a</sup> broðer. mid him hiſ owe broþer.  
 Þiſ iherde Vther: Þiſ ihorde Vther:  
 þe king wes ſwiðe ſteorc. þat king in londe waſ her.  
 þat Gorloif hiſ eorl: þat Gorloſs hiſ eorl:  
 hiſ ferde haſde igadere. [f. 107.c.1.] ferde hadde i-gadered.  
 and wolde halde weorre: and wolde holde werre:  
 mid muchelere wraððe. 10 mid mochelere wraþþe.  
 þe king bad hiſ ferde: þe king bad hiſ ferde:  
 ȝeond al þiſen ærde. oueral hiſ erþe.  
 & ȝeond al þan londe:  
 þa ſtoden an hiſ honde.  
 monief kinneſ leoden:  
 liðen heom to-gæderes.  
 and comen to Lundene:  
 to þan leod-kinge.  
 Ut of Lundeneſ tun:  
 ferde Vðer Pendrag. 20 U<sup>T</sup> of Londonenſ toun:  
 he & hiſ cnihtes: verde Vther Pendragon.  
 ferde norð rihtes. he and hiſ cnihtes:  
 ſwa longe þat heo comen: wende forþrihtes.  
 into Cornwæille. ſo lange þat hii come:  
 in to Cornwale.

Vðer Pen-  
dragon.

and lie careless asleep; and the earl kept the other, 'and' with him his own brother. Uther heard this, who was king 'most stark [in land here], that Gorlois, his earl, had gathered 'his' forces, and would hold war, with much wrath. The king summoned his host over all 'this [his] territory, 'over all the land that stood in his hand'; people of many kind marched them together, and came to London to the sovereign. Out of Londons town fared Uther Pendragon; he and his knights proceeded forth-right, so long, that they came into Cornwall, and over the water 'they'

<sup>1</sup> Sic MS.<sup>2</sup> aȝen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& ouer þat water heo tueoȝen ⁊  
 þat hatten Tambreif.  
 riht to þan castel ⁊  
 þer heo Gorlois wuften.  
 Mid muchelere læðe ⁊  
 þene castel heo bilæien.  
 ofte heo to-ræfden ⁊  
 mid ræȝere strengðe.  
 to-somne heo leopen ⁊  
 leoden þer feollen. 10  
 Fulle feouen nihte ⁊  
 þe king mid his cnihten.  
 bilæi þene castel ⁊  
 his men þer hafeden sorȝen.  
 ne mihte<sup>1</sup> he of þan eorle ⁊  
 naȝing iwinneu.  
 and alle þa feouen nihte ⁊  
 ilaſte þat felliche feoht.  
 þa iſeh Vðer kig ⁊  
 þat him ne ſpedde naðing. 20  
 ofte he hine biþohte ⁊  
 whæt he don mahte.  
 for Ygærne him wes ſwa leof ⁊  
 æfne alſe hiſ aȝen lif.  
 and Gorloif him wes on leodē ⁊

and ofer þat water wende ⁊  
 þat Tambre his ihote.  
 riht to þan castel ⁊  
 þar hii Gorlois wuſte.  
 and al þar aboute ⁊  
 þane castel bi-leȝe.  
 ofte hii to-reſde ⁊  
 mid rehȝere ſtrengþe.

Folle fouenihteſ ⁊  
 þe king mid his cnihteſ.  
 bi-laȝ þane castel ⁊ [L. 86 c. 1.]  
 his men þare hadde teone.  
 ne mihte he of þan eorl ⁊  
 noȝing a-winne.  
 ac al þat foueniht ⁊  
 ilaſt þat ſelliche fiht.  
 þo iſeh Vther þe king ⁊  
 þat him ne ſpedde noȝing.  
 ofte he hine bi-þohte ⁊  
 wat he don mihte.  
 for Igerne him was ſo leof ⁊  
 ſo his owene lif.  
 and Gorlois in londe ⁊

passed, that Tambres 'hight [is named], right to the castle, where they knew Gorlois to be. 'With much enmity [and all thereabout] the castle 'they' besieged; oft they assaulted it with fierce strength; 'together they leapt, people there fell.' Full seven nights the king with his knights besieged the castle; his men there had sorrow; he might not of the earl anything win, 'and [but] all the se'nnight lasted the marvellous fight. When Uther [the] king saw, that nothing sped to him; oft he bethought him what he might do; for Ygærne was so dear to him, 'even' as his own life, and

<sup>1</sup> mihte ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

monnen alre læðest.  
 & ælches weief him wes wa ⁊  
 a þiffere weorlde-riche. [c. 2.]  
 for he ne mihte beon wurðe ⁊  
 na þing of his wille.  
 Þa wes mid þan kinge ⁊  
 an ald mon fwuðe hende.  
 he wes a fwiðe riche þein ⁊  
 and ræh on ælche dome.  
 he wes ihaten Vlfin ⁊  
 mucche wiſdō wes mid him.  
 Þe king bræid up his chin ⁊  
 and biſah an Vlfin.  
 ſwiðe he murnede ⁊  
 his mod wes iderued.  
 Þa quað Vðer Pendragun ⁊  
 to Ulfin þan cnihte.  
 Ulfin ræd me ſumne ræd ⁊  
 oðer ich beo ful raðe dæde.  
 ſwa fwiðe me longeð ⁊  
 20 þ ne mai i noht<sup>1</sup> libben.  
 after þere faire Ygærne ⁊  
 þis word halt me derne.

man alre loþeſt.  
 and in eche weyes him was wo ⁊  
 in þiſſe worle-riche.  
 for he ne mihte habbe ⁊  
 noht of his wille.  
 ¶ Þo was mid þan kinge ⁊  
 an hold man fwiþe hende.  
 10 he was ihote Vlfin ⁊  
 moche wiſdom was mid him.  
 Þe king i-breid vp his chin ⁊  
 and bi-heold Vlfin.  
 and feide mid his mouþe ⁊  
 toward his cnihte.  
 Vlfin read me ſomne read ⁊  
 oþer ich worþe ſone dead.  
 20 ſo fwiþe me langeþ ⁊  
 þat ich ne may noht libbe.  
 after þare faire Igerne ⁊  
 þis word halt me deorne.

Vlfin.

Gorlois was to him in *the* land 'of all men [man of all] most loathsome; and [in] each way was woe to him in this worlds realm; because he might not have 'anything [aught] of his will. Then was with the king an old man exceeding well-informed; 'he was a very rich thane, and skilful in each doom'; he was named Ulfin; much wisdom was with him. The king drew up his chin, and 'looked on [beheld] Ulfin; 'greatly he mourned; his mood was disturbed.' 'Then quoth Uther Pendragun to Ulfin the [and said with his mouth toward his] knight: "Ulfin, say me some counsel, or I shall be 'full' soon dead, so much *it* longeth me after the fair Ygærne, that I may not live.

<sup>1</sup> ich noht?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

for Ulfīn þe leoue ⁊	for ich wole ilifue ⁊
aðele þine lare.	al þine lore.
lude & stille ⁊	loude and stille ⁊
don ich heom wulle.	don ich wolle.
þa andſwarede Ulfīn ⁊	þo answerede Vlfīn ⁊
þan kinge þet ſpac wið him.	þan king þat ſpac wiþ him.
Nu ihere ich muche feollic ⁊	Nou ihire ich mochel fellich ⁊
ænne king fuggen.	one king ſegge.
þu luueſt Ygærne ⁊	þou loueſt Igerne ⁊
and halft hit ſwa deorne.	and holdeſt hit ſo deorne. [c2.]
þe wiſmon iſ þe to leof ⁊	þe wiſman hiſ þe to leof ⁊
& hire lauerd al to lað.	and hire louerd to loþ.
hiſ lond þu forberneſt ⁊	hiſ lond þou for-bearneſt ⁊
& hine blæð wurcheft.	
and þratteſt hine to flænne ⁊	and him ſeolue þreteſt.
& hiſ cun to fordōne.	
Weneſt þu mid ſwulche hærme ⁊	Weneſt þou mid ſoche hærme ⁊
to biȝeten Ygærne.	to bi-ȝete Igerne.
þenne heo ſculde don ⁊	þanne ȝeo ſolde don ⁊
ſwa ne deð na wiſman.	aſe ne doþ no womman.
mid æie vnimete ⁊	mid heȝe onimete ⁊
halden luue fwete.	holde loue fwete.
Ah ȝiſ þu luueſt Ygærne ⁊	Ac ȝeſ þou hire louedeſt ⁊
þu ſculdeſt hit halden derne. [f. 107 <sup>b</sup> . c. 1.]	þou ſoſt <sup>1</sup> hire ſondes ſende.

This word hold to me secret; for 'Ulfīn the dear, thy good [I will believe all thy] counsels, loud and still I will do 'them'. Then answered Ulfīn to the king who spake with him: "Now hear I a king say great marvel! Thou lovest Ygærne, and holdest it so secret; the woman is to thee dear, and her lord 'all' loath; his land thou consumest, 'and makest him destitute,' and threatenest him[self] 'to slay, and his kin to destroy.' Weenest thou with such harm to obtain Ygærne? She should do then as no woman doth, with dread unmeet hold love sweet. But if thou 'lovest Ygærne [lovedest her],

<sup>1</sup> foldest?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiiii.

and fendē hire sone ⁊  
 of feoluere and of golde.  
 & luuien hire mid lifte ⁊  
 & mid leofliche bihæfte.  
 þa ȝet hit weore a wene ⁊  
 whar þu heo mihtes aȝe.  
 for Ygærne if wel idon ⁊  
 a fwiðe treowe wimmon.  
 swa wes hire moder ⁊  
 & ma of þan kunne.  
 To foðe ich þe fuggē ⁊  
 leofest alre kinge.

þat oðere weief þu most agunnen ⁊ Ac oþer weies þou most a-gýnne ⁊  
 ȝif þu hire wult awinnen. ȝef þou hire wolt a-winne.  
 For ȝurftendæi me com to ⁊ For ȝorftnendai me com to ⁊  
 an æremite wel idon. on heremite wel idon.  
 & swor bi his chinne ⁊ and swor bi his chinne ⁊  
 þat he wufte Merli. þat he wifte of Merlȝn.  
 whar he ælche nihte ⁊ ware he eche nihte ⁊  
 reſteð vnder luſte. 20 reſte onder luſte.  
 and ofte he hī ſpæc wið ⁊ and ofte he ſpac him wiþ ⁊  
 & ſpelles him talde. and ſpelles him tolde.  
 & ȝif we mihte M<sup>o</sup>lin ⁊ And we mihte þorh eni þing ⁊  
 mid lifte biwinnen. a-winne þiſſne Merlȝn.  
 þenne mihteſt þu þine iwille ⁊ þanne mihtes þou sone ⁊

and louie hire mid lifte ⁊  
 and mid faire bi-hefte.  
 And ȝet hit were a wene ⁊  
 war þou hire habbe mihtes.  
 for Igerne his wel idon ⁊  
 a fwiþe treouwe womman.  
 so was hire moder ⁊  
 10 and mo of hure kunne.

thou shouldest 'hold it secret, and' send her 'soon of silver and of gold [messengers], and love her with art, and with 'loving [fair] behest. 'The [And] yet it were a doubt, whether thou mightest 'possess [have] her; for Ygærne is chaste, a woman most true; so was her mother, and more of the [her] kin. 'In sooth I thee say, dearest of all kings,' 'that [But] otherwise thou must begin, if thou wilt win her. For yesterday came to me a good hermit, and swore by his chin, that he knew [of] Merlin, where he each night resteth under heaven; and oft he spake with him, and stories him told. 'And' if we might 'with art [through any thing] get [this] Merlin,



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

allunge biwinne.  
 þæ wes Vðer Pendragun ⁊  
 þa softer an his mode.  
 & ȝif<sup>1</sup> andſware red ⁊  
 Vlfin þu haueſt wel iſæd.  
 Ich þe ȝiue an honde ⁊  
 þritti folh of londe.  
 þ þu M<sup>9</sup>lin biwine ⁊  
 & don mine iwille.  
 Vlfin ȝeond þat folc wende ⁊ 10  
 & ſohte al þa uerde. [c. 2.]  
 & he vmbe ſtunde ⁊  
 þene æremite finde<sup>3</sup>.  
 and an hiȝinge ⁊  
 brohte hine to þan kinge.  
 and þe king him fette an hond ⁊  
 ſeouen fulȝene lond.  
 ȝif he mihte bringen ⁊  
 M<sup>9</sup>lin to þā kinge.  
 þe æremite gon wēde ⁊ 20  
 in þene weſt ænde.  
 to ane wilderne ⁊  
 to ane wude muchele.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

habbe þine wille.  
 þo was Vther Pendragun ⁊  
 þe ſoftere in his mode.  
 and anſwerede þane read ⁊  
 Vlfin þou haueſt wel iſeid.  
 Ich ȝeue an honde þe<sup>2</sup> ⁊ [f. 86<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 þritti folh of londe.  
 þat þou Merlȝn a-winne ⁊  
 and do mine wille.  
 Vlfin in þan londe wende ⁊  
 and ſohte al þe ferde.  
 and bi one ſtunde ⁊  
 þane heremite [funde].  
 and an hiȝenge ⁊  
 brohte hine to þan kinge.  
 and þe king him fette an hond ⁊  
 ſcoue ſolwene lond.  
 ȝef he mihte finde ⁊  
 Merlȝn and to þe kinge bringe.  
 þe heremite gan wende ⁊ 20  
 to þan weſt eande.  
 to one wilderne ⁊  
 to one wode mochele.

then mightest thou thy will 'wholly obtain [soon have]." Then was Uther Pendragun the softer in his mood, and 'gave answer [answered]: "Ulfin, thou hast well said [the] counsel; I give thee in hand thirty ploughs of land, so that thou get Merlin, and do my will." Ulfin went 'through the folk [in the land], and sought all the host, and 'he' after [a] time found the hermit, and in haste brought him to the king. And the king set to him in hand seven ploughs of land, if he might [find and] bring Merlin to the king. The hermit gan wend 'in [to] the West end, to a wilderness, to a mickle wood, where he had dwelt well many winters; and Merlin very

<sup>1</sup> ȝaf?<sup>2</sup> R. þe an honde.<sup>3</sup> funde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þer he iwuneð<sup>1</sup> hafde ⁊  
 wel feole wintre.  
 and M<sup>o</sup>lin fwiðe ofte ⁊  
 þer inne<sup>2</sup> fohte.  
 Sone þe armite com in ⁊  
 þa ifunde he Mærlin.  
 vnder ane treo stonden ⁊  
 and fære him gon longē.  
 þene æremite he ifæh cume ⁊  
 alfe while wes his iwune. 10  
 he orn him to-ʒænes ⁊  
 beiene heo uæineden þas.  
 heo cluptē heo cuften ⁊  
 and cuðliche speken.  
 þa sæide M<sup>o</sup>lin ⁊  
 muchel wiðdom wes mid him.  
 Sæie þu mi leofe freond ⁊  
 wi naldest þu me fuggen.  
 þurh nanef cūnes þinge ⁊  
 þat þu wældest to þā kinge. 20  
 Ah ful ʒare ich hit w<sup>o</sup>te ⁊  
 anan swa ich þe mište.  
 þat þu icumen weore ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þar he iwoned hadde ⁊  
 wel fale wyntres.  
 and Merlȝn fwiþe hofte ⁊  
 þare hine fohte.  
 Sone so þe heremite com in ⁊  
 he ifeh Merlȝn.  
 vnder one stunde ⁊  
 and fore him gan longȝe.  
 þan heremite he ifeh come ⁊  
 afe wile was if wone.  
 he orn him to-ʒeines ⁊  
 and to him faide þus.  
 hii clupten hii cuften ⁊  
 an cupliche speke.  
 þo faide Merlȝn ⁊  
 moche wiðdom was mid him.  
 Sai þou me leofue freond ⁊  
 wi noldest þou me couþe.  
 þorh none þing ⁊  
 þat þou woldest to þan kinge.  
 Ac fol ʒare ich hit wište ⁊  
 anon afe ich þe mište.

oft sought him there. So soon [as] the hermit came in, 'then found he [he saw] Merlin, 'standing under a tree [after a time], and sore gan for him long; he saw the hermit come, as whilom was his custom; he ran towards him, 'both they rejoiced for this [and said to him thus]; they embraced, they kissed, and familiarly spake. Then said Merlin,—much wisdom was with him,—“ Say thou, 'my [to me,] dear friend, why wouldest thou not 'say [make known] to me, through no 'kind of' thing, that thou wouldest go to the king? But full quickly I it knew anon as I thee missed, 'that thou wert come to Uther *the* king'; and what the king spake with thee,

<sup>1</sup> iwuned?<sup>2</sup> hine?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to Vðere kinge.

and what þe king þe wið spæc :  
and of his londe þe bæd.þat þu me sculdest bringe :  
to Vðer kinge. [£108. c. 1.]And Vlfīn þe sohte :  
& to þan kinge brohte.  
& Vðer Pendragun :

forð rihtes anan.

fette him an honde :

þritti folh of londe.

& he sætte þe an honde :  
seoue fulhene lōd.Vther if<sup>1</sup> of-longed :  
æfter Ȝgærne þere hende.wunder ane fwiðe :  
after Gorloifes wiue.

Ah longe if æuere :

þ ne cummeð nauere.

þ he heo biwinne :

bute þurh mine ginne.

for nif na wimmon treowere :

in þiffere worlde-riche.

&amp; neoðeles he scal aȝe :

þa hende Ȝgærne.

and wat þe king þe wiþ spæc :  
and of his londe þe bead.þat þou me soldest bringe :  
to Vth<sup>9</sup> þan kinge. [c. 2.]and Vlfīn þe sohte :  
and to þan kinge brohte.

10 and Vther fette hī an hond :

þritti solwene lond.

and þe he fette an honde :  
soue solwene lond.Vther his of-longed :  
after Igerne.wonderliche fwiþe :  
after Gorloȝs his wifue.

Ac lange his euere :

þat ne comeþ neuere.

20 þat he hire awinne :

bote mid mine gȝinne.

for nif no wommā treowere :

in þisse worle-riche.

And nopeles he fal habbe :

þe hendi Igerne.

and of his land thee offered, that thou shouldest bring me to Uther [the] king. And Ulfīn thee sought, and to the king brought, and Uther 'Pendragon forth-right anon,' set him in hand thirty ploughs of land; and he set thee in hand seven ploughs of land. Uther is desirous after Ȝgærne 'the fair,' wondrously much, after 'Gorloises [Gorloys his] wife. But *so long as* is eternity, that shall never come, that he obtain her, but (except) through my stratagem; for *there* is no woman truer in this worlds realm. And ne-

<sup>1</sup> R. if.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

on hir<sup>1</sup> he scal streonē ⁊  
 þat scal wide sturien.  
 he scal streonien hire on ⁊  
 ænne swiðe fellichne mon.  
 Longe beoð æuere ⁊  
 dæd ne bið he næuere.  
 þe wile þe þif world stænt ⁊  
 ilæsten scal if worðmunt<sup>2</sup>.  
 and scal inne Rome ⁊  
 walden þa þæinesf. 10  
 Al him scal abuȝe ⁊  
 þat wunēð inne Bruttene.  
 of him scullen gleomen ⁊  
 godliche fingen.  
 of his breosten scullen æten ⁊  
 aðele scopes.  
 scullen of hif blode ⁊  
 beornef beon drunke.  
 of hif eȝene scullen fleon ⁊  
 furene gleden. 20  
 ælc finger an hif hond ⁊ [c.2.]  
 fcarp stelene brond.  
 scullen stan walles ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

in hire he fal streni ⁊  
 þat fal wide sturie.  
 he fal streoni hire on ⁊  
 one felliche man.  
 Lange his euere ⁊  
 dead ne worþ he neuere.  
 þe wile þat þe worle steond ⁊  
 me wole of him telle.  
 he fal in Rome ⁊  
 welde þe cnihtes. 10  
 Al him fal abouwe ⁊  
 þat wonieþ in Bruttene.  
 of hī folle gleomen ⁊  
 coupliche finge.  
 of his brost sollen eate ⁊  
 staleworþe kempef.  
 solle of his blode ⁊  
 cnihtes beo dronge.  
 of his eȝene folle fleo ⁊  
 furie gledef. 20  
 ech fenger of his hond ⁊  
 fcarp stelene brond.  
 sollen ston walles ⁊

vertheless he shall 'possess [have] the fair Ygærne; and he shall beget on her what shall widely rule; he shall beget on her a man 'exceeding' marvellous (or famous). So long as is eternity, he shall never die; the while that 'this [the] world standeth, 'his glory shall last [men will of him tell]; 'and' [he] shall in Rome rule the 'thanes [knights]. All shall bow to him that dwelleth in Britain; of him shall gleemen 'goodly [familiarily] sing; of his breast 'noble poets [stalworth warriors] shall eat; of his blood shall 'men [knights] be drunk; from his eyes shall fly fiery embers; each finger 'on [of] his hand shall be a sharp steel brand; stone walls shall before him

<sup>1</sup> Interlined by a second hand.<sup>2</sup> word munt, *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

biuoren him to-fallen.  
 beornes scullen rufien ⁊  
 reofen heoƿ mærcen.  
 þuƿ he ƿal wel longe ⁊  
 liðen ȝeod londen.  
 leoden biwinnen ⁊  
 & hiƿ laȝen ƿette.

þiƿ beoð þa tacnen<sup>1</sup> of þan ƿune ⁊  
 þe cumeð of Ure<sup>2</sup> Pendragune.  
 and of Yȝærne ⁊  
 þeƿ ƿeche iƿ ƿul derne.  
 for ȝet næt hit neoðer ⁊  
 Yȝærne no Uðer.

þat of Vðere Pendragune ⁊  
 ƿal ariƿe ƿiƿe a ƿune.

for ȝet he beoð unƿtreoned ⁊  
 þa ƿurieð al þa þeoden.  
 Ah laured quað Merlin ⁊  
 nu hit iƿ iƿille þin.  
 þat forð I<sup>3</sup> ƿal ƿuƿe ⁊  
 to uerde þaƿ kingeƿ.  
 þi ƿord iƿ ƿulle heren ⁊  
 and nu iƿ ƿulle wende.  
 and ƿaren iƿ ƿulle for þire luƿe ⁊

to-vore hi to-falle.  
 beornes folle rufie ⁊  
 reƿe hire marke.  
 þuƿ he ƿal wel lange ⁊  
 wende ouer al þan londes.  
 folk to bi-winne ⁊ [f.87.c.1.]  
 and hiƿ laȝeƿ ƿette.

þiƿ beoþ þe tockne of þan ƿone ⁊  
 þat comeþ of Vther Pendragon.  
 and of Igerne ⁊  
 þat ȝet hiƿ wel deorne.  
 for ȝet not hit noþer ⁊  
 Igerne no Vther.

for ȝet he hiƿ on-ƿtreone ⁊  
 þat ƿorie ƿal þeƿ ȝeode.  
 Ac louerd cƿaþ Merlȝn ⁊  
 nu hit hiƿ iƿille þin.  
 þat forþ iƿ ƿal ƿare ⁊  
 to folke þeƿ kingeƿ.  
 þi ƿord iƿ ƿolle iheren ⁊  
 and nu iƿ ƿolle wende.

and ƿaren iƿ ƿolle for þine loue ⁊

tumble; barons shall give way, *and* their standards fall! Thus he shall well long fare over [all the] lands, people to conquer, and set his laws. These are the tokens of the son, that shall come of Uther Pendragon and of Ygærne. 'This speech [That yet] is 'full [well] secret; for yet neither it knoweth, Ygærne nor Uther, 'that of Uther Pendragon such a son shall arise'; for yet he is unbegot, that shall govern 'all the [this] people. But, Lord," quoth Merlin, "now it is thy will, that forth I shall go to *the* 'host [folk] of 'the [this] king; thy words I will obey, and now I will depart, and

<sup>1</sup> beoð ȝacnen, *pr. m.*<sup>2</sup> Uðer?<sup>3</sup> iƿ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

to Vthere Pendragune.  
 and habben þu scalt þat lond ⁊  
 þ̅ he þe fette an hond.  
 þuſ heo þa iſpecken ⁊  
 þæ æremite gon to weopen.  
 deorliche he hine cuſte ⁊  
 þer heo gunnen dælen.  
 Merlin ferde riht ſuð ⁊  
 þat lond him wæs ful cuð.  
 forð riht he fuſde ⁊  
 to þes kinges ferde.  
 Soneſwa Vðer hine iſæh ⁊<sup>[f. 108<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]</sup>  
 ſwa he him to-ȝeines bæh.  
 & þuſ quað Vder<sup>3</sup> Pēdragune ⁊  
 Mærlin þu ært wilcume.  
 Her ich fette þe an honde ⁊  
 al þene ræd of mine londe.  
 and þ̅ þu me ræde ⁊  
 to muchere neode.  
 Vther him talde ⁊  
 al þ̅ he walde.  
 & hu Ygærne him wes on leodē ⁊  
 wimmonnen<sup>4</sup> leofeſt.

to Vther Pendragon.  
 and habbe ȝe ſolle þat lond ⁊  
 þat a<sup>1</sup> ȝou fette an hond.  
 Dorneliche<sup>2</sup> hii cuſte ⁊  
 þo hii gonne to-deale.  
 Merlȳn wende riht forþ ſup ⁊  
 þat lond him was wel coup.  
 forþ riht he wende ⁊  
 to þis kinges ferde.  
 Sone ſo Vther hine iſeh ⁊  
 aȝeines him he beh.  
 and þus cwaþ Vther Pendragon ⁊  
 Merlȳn þou hart wilcome.  
 Here ich þe fette an hond ⁊  
 al þane read of mine lond.  
 for nou þou moſt me reade ⁊  
 at mochele mine neode.

10

20

proceed I will for thy love to Uther Pendragon. And 'thou shalt [ye shall] have the land that he set 'thee [you] in hand.' 'Thus they then spake: the hermit gan to weep'; dearly 'he him [they] kissed; 'there [then] they gan to separate. Merlin went right 'forth' south, the land was well known to him; forth-right he proceeded to 'the [this] kings host. So soon as Uther him saw, 'so' he approached towards him; and thus quoth Uther Pendragon: "Merlin, thou art welcome! Here I set thee in hand all the counsel of my land, 'and that [for now] thou [must] me advise, at [my] great need." 'Uther told him all that he would, and how Ygærne was to him in *the* land dearest of women, and Gorlois, her lord, most odious

<sup>1</sup> he ?<sup>2</sup> deoreliche ?<sup>3</sup> R. Vðer.<sup>4</sup> wimmonnen ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and Gorlois hire lauerd ⁊  
 momnenen<sup>1</sup> alre laðeft.

& buten ich habbe þine ræd ⁊  
 ful raðe þu ifihst me dæad.

þa andswerede M<sup>9</sup>lin ⁊  
 Let nu cume in Vlfin.  
 & bitæc him an honde ⁊  
 þritti fulþene lond.  
 & bi-tæc þan æremite ⁊  
 þat þu him bihete.  
 for nulle ich aȝæn na lond ⁊  
 neouðer<sup>2</sup>

for ich am on rade ⁊  
 rihcheft alre monnen.

& ȝif ich wilne æhte ⁊  
 þenne wurfede ich on crafte.  
 Ah al þi iwille ⁊  
 wel scal iwurðen.  
 for ich cō swulcne leche-craft ⁊  
 þe leof þe scal iwurðen.

for bote ich habbe þine read ⁊  
 wel sone ich worþe dead.  
 for ich langȝ so swiþe ⁊  
 after Gorloȝs his wifue.

þo anwerede Merlȝn ⁊  
 Let nou come Vlfin. [c. 2.]  
 and bi-tak him an hond ⁊  
 10 þritti folwene lond.  
 and bi-tak þe heremite ⁊  
 þat þou hine bi-heate.  
 for nelle ich of þe habbe ⁊  
 none cunne ȝeftes.

for ȝef ich wilnede hahte ⁊  
 þanne werfede ich on crafte.  
 Ac al þine wille ⁊  
 20 wel þou salt habbe.  
 for ich can on soch craft ⁊  
 þat þe sal wel likie.

of all men.'—“‘And [For] unless I have thy counsel, ‘full [well] soon ‘thou wilt see me [I shall be] dead, [for I long so greatly after Gorloȝs his wife].” Then answered Merlin: “Let Ulfin now come ‘in,’ and give him in hand thirty ploughs of land, and give to the hermit what thou him promisedest; for I will not ‘possess any land, neither silver nor gold [have of thee any kind of gifts]; for ‘I am in counsel most skilful of all men, and’ if I wished for possessions, then should I become worse in craft. But all thy will well ‘shall come to pass [thou shalt have]; for I know such ‘leech’-craft, that shall ‘be to thee lief [to thee well like], so that all thy

<sup>1</sup> monnen?

<sup>2</sup> Part of a line is here wanting. We should doubtless read neouðer feoluer na gold. Cf. l. 18579. et alib.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat al scullen þine gareres<sup>1</sup> :  
 iwurðen swulc þas eorles.  
 þi speche þi dede :  
 imong þere duȝeðe.

þine horf & þine iwede :

& al fwa þu scalt ride.

þenne Ygæne<sup>2</sup> þe scal ifeon :

a mode hire scal wel beon.

heo lið inne Tintaieol :

uafte bituned.

Nif nan cniht fwa wel iboren :

of nane londe icoren. [[c.2.]

þe mihte<sup>3</sup> strēgðe of Tintaieol :

þe ȝeten mihten un-tunen.

buten he<sup>4</sup> weoren ibirfsted :

mid hungere & mid þurfte.

þat if þ̃ soðe :

þat ich þe fugge wulle.

þurh alle þinge þu scalt beon :

swulc þu eorl weore.

& ich wulle beon iwil del :

swulc him if Brutael.

þat if a cniht swiðe herd :

þat al folle þine cheres :

iworþe alfe þe eorles.

þi speche þin dede :

þin hors and fo salt ride.

Wane Igerne þe sal ifen :

a mode þe bet hire sal ben.

ȝeo liþ ine Tyntagel :

faſte bi-tuned.

Nis no king so wel ibore :

of none londe icore.

þat mid strengþe of Tyntagel :

þe ȝeates mihte ontune.

bo<sup>5</sup> hii were burfsted :

mid hunger and mid þorfte.

Ac þat his þat soþe :

þat ich þe ſegge wolle.

þorh alle þig þou ſalt beo :

aſe hit þe eorl were.

and ich wolle beon evereideal :

aſe him his Bricahel.

þat his a cniht ſwiþe hard :

appearance shall become as the earls; thy speech, thy deeds 'among thy people'; thy horse and 'thy weeds (garments); and so shalt 'thou' ride. When Ygærne shall see thee, in mood shall *it* be 'well [the better] to her; she lieth in 'Tintaieol [Tyntagel], fast inclosed. *There* is no 'knight [king] so well born, of no land chosen, that might with strength unfasten the gates of 'Tintaieol [Tyntagel], unless they were burst with hunger and with thirst. [But] that is the sooth that I will say to thee; through all things thou shalt be as *if* 'thou wert [it were] the earl; and I will be every bit as Britael he is, who is a knight most hardy, he is this earls

<sup>1</sup> The first letter of this word is *sup. ras.*

<sup>3</sup> mid?

<sup>4</sup> heo?

<sup>2</sup> R. Ygærne.

<sup>5</sup> bote?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

he is þeos eorles stiward.  
 Jurdan is hif bur-cniht ⁊  
 he if swiðe wel idiht.  
 ich wulle makien anan ⁊  
 Ulfīn swulc if Jurdan.  
 þenne biſt þu lauer<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 & ich Brutael þi ſtiward.  
 & Ulfīn Jurdan þi bur-cniht ⁊  
 & we ſcullen faren nu to niht.  
 faren þu ſcalt bi ræde ⁊      10  
 wuder swa ich þe læde.  
 Scullen nu to nihte ⁊  
 half hundred cnihten.  
 mid ſperē and mid ſcelden ⁊  
 beon abuten þine telden.  
 þ̅ nauere nan quið<sup>3</sup> mon ⁊  
 ne cumē þer aneoſten.  
 & ȝif þer auer æi mon cume ⁊  
 þat hif hæued him beon bi-numē.  
 for þa cnihtes ſcullen fuggen ⁊  
 ſelen þie beornen.      21  
 þat þu ært ilete blod ⁊  
 and reſteſt þe on bædde.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

he his þis kingef<sup>1</sup> ſtiward.  
 Jordan þat his bour-cniht ⁊  
 foeh ſal Vlfīn beo to niht.  
 and fare þou ſalt to reade ⁊  
 woder þat ich þe leode.  
 Sollē nou to niht ⁊  
 alf an hundred cnihtes. [L87<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 mid ſpere and mid ſcealde ⁊  
 beo a-boute pine teldes.  
 þat neuere non cwicmon ⁊  
 ne come þar a-neweſt.  
 and ȝef þar eni þare come ⁊  
 þat his heued him beo bi-nome.  
 For þe cnihtes ſolleþ ſegge ⁊  
 ſeale þine þeines.  
 þat þou har hi-lete blod ⁊  
 and reſteſt on bedde.

steward; Jurdan 'is his [who is] chamber-knight, 'he is exceeding well dight; I will make Ulfīn anon such as Jurdan is. Then wilt thou be lord, and I be Britael, thy steward, and Ulfīn be Jurdan, thy chamber-knight.' 'And we shall go now [such shall Ulfīn be] to-night; [and] fare thou shalt by counsel, whither 'soever [that] I lead thee. Now to-night shall half [a] hundred knights, with spear and with shield be about thy tents, so that never any man alive come there near; and if ever any 'man' come there, that his head be taken from him. For the knights shall say,—thy good 'men [thanes],—that thou art let blood, and retest 'thee'

<sup>1</sup> eorles?<sup>2</sup> lauerd?<sup>3</sup> quik?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

<p> þas þigges forð rihte ⁊  þuſ weoren idihte.  Forð ferde þe king ⁊  næs hit cuð na þing.  and ferdan forð mid him ⁊  Ulfīn &amp; M<sup>9</sup>lin.  he¹ tuȝen riht þen wæi ⁊  þa in to Tintaieol læi.  heo comento þaſcaſtles ȝæte ⁊  &amp; cuðliche cleopeden.  Vndo þiſ ȝæt eſſel ⁊  þe eorl iſ icumen here.  Gorlois þe læuerd ⁊  &amp; Britael hiſ ſtiward.  and Jurdan þe burchniht ⁊  we habbeoð ifaren al niht.  þe ȝæteward hit cudde ouer al ⁊  &amp; cnihtes urnen uppen wal.  and ſpeken wið Gorloif ⁊  and hine icneowen mid iwiſ. 20  þa cnihtes weoren ſwide³ whæte ⁊  and weſden up þa caſtles ȝæte.  &amp; letten hine binnan fare ⁊ </p>	<p> þeſ þingef weren forþriht ⁊  in þilke manere idiht.  Forþ wende þe king ⁊  naſ hiſ couþ noþing.  and forþ wende mid him ⁊  Ulfīn and Merlyn.  hii wende riht þane way ⁊  þat in to Tyntagel lay.  hii come to þan caſtel ȝæte ⁊  and coupliche ſpeke.  Vndo þiſ ȝæte eſſel ⁊  þe eorl hiſ icomen her.  Gorlois þin louerd ⁊  and Britahel hiſ ſtiward.  and Jordan hiſ bourcniht ⁊  we habb hii-riden² al niht.  þe ȝæteward hit cudde oueral ⁊  and cnihtes vrnen vppe wal.  and ſpekē wiþ Gorlois ⁊  and hine i-cnewe foliwiſ.  þeoſ cnihtes weren ſwiþe wate ⁊  and weſde vp þe caſtel ȝæte.  and lete hine in vare ⁊ </p>
--	---

in bed. These things were forth-right 'thus [in this manner] dight. Forth went the king; it was nothing known; and forth went with him Ulfīn and Merlin; they proceeded right the way that lay into 'Tintaieol [Tyntagel]; they came to the castle-gate, and 'called [spake] familiarly: "Undo this gate-bolt; the earl is come here, Gorlois 'the [thy] lord, and Britael his steward, and Jordan 'the [his] chamber-knight; we have 'journeyed [ridden] all night!" The gateward made it known over all, and knights ran upon *the* wall, and spake with Gorlois, and knew him full surely. 'The [These] knights were most alert, and weighed up the castle-gate, and let

heo?

² habbeþ i-riden?

³ ſwiðe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þa læsse wes þa heore care.  
 heo wēden mid iwisse ⁊  
 to habben muchel bliffe.  
 þa hædden heo mid ginne ⁊  
 M<sup>o</sup>lin þer wið inne.  
 & heo<sup>1</sup> Vðer þene king ⁊  
 wið ine heore walding.  
 and ledde þer mid him ⁊  
 his gode þein Ulfīn.  
 þif tidinde com biliue ⁊      10  
 in to þā wife.  
 þæt hire læuerd wes icumen ⁊  
 and mid him his þreo gumen.  
 Vt com Ygærne ⁊  
 forð to þan eorle.  
 and þas word seide ⁊  
 mid wunfume wurde.  
 Wilcume læuerd ⁊  
 monne me leofest.  
 & wilcume Jurdan ⁊      20  
 and Britael if afwa<sup>2</sup>.  
 beo ȝe mid ifūde ⁊  
 to-dæled from þan kinge.  
 þa quæð Vðer ful iwif ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiih.

þe lasse was hire [kare].  
 hii wende mid iwisse ⁊  
 to habbe mochel bliffe.  
 þo haden hii mid gýnne ⁊  
 Merlȝ þar wiþ ine. [c.2]  
 and Vther þane king ⁊  
 wiþ hinne hire weldýng.  
 and ladde þare mid him ⁊  
 his leoue freond Merlȝn.  
 þes tidinge com bliue ⁊      10  
 into þan wifue.  
 þæt hire louerd was icome ⁊  
 and mid him his þreo gomef.  
 Vt com Igerne ⁊  
 forn to þan eorl.  
 and þef word seide ⁊  
 mid wonfome speche.  
 Wolcome louerd ⁊  
 manne me leoueft.  
 and wolcome Jordan ⁊      20  
 and Britaeh al fon<sup>3</sup>.  
 be ȝeo mid ifunde ⁊  
 idealed frā þan kinge.  
 þo cwaþ Vther foliwiis ⁊

him come 'with'in,—the less was 'then' their care;—they weened certainly to have much bliss. Then had they with stratagem Merlin there within, and Uther the king within their possession, and led there with him his 'good thane Ulfīn [dear friend Merlin]. These tidings came quickly unto the lady, that her lord was come, and with him his three men. Out came Ygærne forth to the earl, and said these words with winsome speech: "Welcome, lord, man to me dearest; and welcome, Jordan, and Britael 'is' also;—be ye in safety parted from the king?" Then quoth Uther full truly as if it were Gorlois: "Mickle [is] the multitude that

<sup>1</sup> Redundant? Perhaps we should read æc?<sup>2</sup> al fwa?<sup>3</sup> Britahel al fo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

swulc hit weore<sup>1</sup> Gorlois.  
 Muchel þat mōkun? [c.2.]  
 þæt is mid Vther Pend<sup>g</sup>gun.  
 and ich æm bi nihte?  
 bi-stole from þan fihte.  
 for æfter þe ic wes of-longed?  
 wifmonne þu ært me leofuest.  
 Buð in to bure?  
 & let mi bed makien.  
 and ich me wulle ræsten? 10  
 to þiffere nihte uirfte.  
 & alle dai to mæwe?  
 to bliffien mire duȝeðe.  
 Ygærne beh to bure?  
 & lætte bed him makien.  
 wes þat kinewurðe bed?  
 al mid palle ouer bræd.  
 þe kīg hit wel bihedde?  
 & eode to his bedde.  
 and Ygærne læi adun? 20  
 bi Uðere Pendragon.  
 Nu wende Yg<sup>o</sup>ne ful iwis?  
 þat hit weoren Gorloif.  
 þurh neuere nænes cunnef þing?

ase hit were Gorloȝs.  
 Mochel his þat mancun?  
 þat his mid Vther þe king.  
 and ich ham al bi nihte?  
 bi-stele fram þan fihte.  
 for after þe ich was of-langet?  
 womman þou hart me leouest.  
 Bou into boure?  
 and let min bed makie.  
 and ich me wolle reafte?  
 to þiffe niht his forste.  
 and al dai to morewe?  
 to gladiē mine doȝeþe.  
 Igerne wende to boure?  
 and lette bed makie.  
 was þat kineworþe bed?  
 al mid palle ouer sprad.  
 þe king hit wel bi-hedde?  
 and eod to his bedde.  
 and Igerne lay adun? [f.88.c.1.]  
 bi Vther Pendragon.  
 Euere wende Igerne foliwiis?  
 þat hit were Gorloȝs.

is with Uther 'Pendragon [the king]; and I am [all] by night stolen from the fight, for after thee I was desirous, woman thou art to me dearest. Go into *the* chamber, and cause my bed to be made, and I will rest me for this 'nights [night his] space, and all day tomorrow, to gladden my people. Ygærne went to chamber, and caused *a* bed to be made 'for him'; the kingly bed was all overspread with *a* pall. The king viewed it well, and went to his bed; and Ygærne lay down by Uther Pendragon. 'Now [Ever] weened Ygærne full truly, that it were Gorlois; 'through

<sup>1</sup> weoren *pr. m.*, but *n* erased.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

no icneou heo Vðer þene king.

þe king hire wende to ˚

þe king hire wende to ˚

swa wapmō sculde to wimmon do. so wepman fal to wifue do.

&amp; hæfde him to done ˚

wið leofueft wimmonne.

&amp; he streonede hire on ˚

and streonede hire on ˚

æne felcuðne mō.

one felcouþe man.

kingen alre kenest ˚

king alre kenest ˚

þæ æuere com to monnen.

þat euere com to londe.

&amp; he wes on ærde ˚

10 and was on erþe ˚

Arð[ur].

Ærður ihaten.

Arþour ihote.

Nuste noht Yg<sup>o</sup>ne ˚

wha læie on hire ærme.

for æuere heo wende ful iwif ˚

þat it weoren þe eorl Gorloif.

Næs þer na mære uirft ˚ [l. 109 : cl.]

Nas þar na more sohriht ˚

buten þ hit wes dæi-liht.

bote þat hit was daj-liht.

þer forð rihtes ˚

a-non forþ rihtes ˚

vnderȝeten þa cnihtes.

onderȝeten Vther his cnihtes.

þat þe king wes iuaren ˚

20 þat þe king was awend ˚

ut of þere uærde.

vt of þan ferde.

þa sæiden þa cnihtes ˚

þo saide þe cnihtes ˚

soð pæh hit neoren.

soþ þeh hit nere.

þat þe king wes ifloȝen ˚

þat þe king was afloȝe ˚

never any kind of thing knew she Uther the king.' The king approached her as man should do to woman, 'and had him to do with *the* dearest of women'; and 'he' begat on her a marvellous man, keenest of all kings, that ever came 'among men [to land], and 'he' was on earth named Arthur. 'Ygærne knew not who lay in her arms; for ever she weened full surely, that it were the earl Gorlois.' There was no greater 'interval [right sooth] but until it was day-light, 'there [anon] forth-right 'the [Uther his] knights understood, that the king was departed out of the host. Then said the knights, sooth though it were not, that the king was flown, 'filled with dread [for dread of the earl]; 'but it all was leasing that

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

mid ærhþen afeolled.  
 ah al hit wes leffinge ⁊  
 þ̅ heo feiden bi þan kinge.  
 her of heo heoldē muchel run ⁊  
 uppen Vder<sup>1</sup> Pendragun.  
 þa feiden þa eorles ⁊  
 & þa hæhste beðrnef.  
 Nu þenne hit waht Gorlois ⁊  
 hu hit iuaren if.  
 þat ure kīg if ifaren ⁊  
 & hif ferde bilæiued.  
 he wule forð rihtes ⁊  
 wepni hif cnihtes.  
 and ut he wule to fihten.  
 & feollen uf to grūden.  
 mid woden hif þeines ⁊  
 muchel wæl makien.  
 þenne weore uf beteren ⁊  
 þat we iboren neoren.  
 Ah leten we blawen bemen ⁊  
 & bonnien ure uerde.  
 & Cador þe kene ⁊  
 ſcal beren þaſ kinges marke.  
 hæbben hæȝe þene drake ⁊

for drede of þan eorle.  
 and heolde her of mochel roun ⁊  
 vppe Vther Pendragon.  
**P**O faide þe eorles ⁊  
 and þe hehste beornes.  
 Nou wane hit wot Gorloys ⁊  
 ou hit ivaren his.  
 10 þat oure king his afloȝe ⁊  
 and his ferde bi-lefued.  
 he wole anon rihtes ⁊  
 wepni his cnihtes.  
 and vt he wole to fihte ⁊  
 and falle ous to grunde.  
 þanne were vs betere ⁊  
 þat we ibore nere.  
 20 Ac lete we blowe bumes ⁊  
 and banni oure ferde.  
 and Cador þe kene ⁊  
 fal bere þis kinges marke.  
 holden heȝe þane drake ⁊

[Cado]r.

they said of the king; 'they [and] held hereof much converse upon Uther Pendragon. Then said the earls and the highest barons; "Now when Gorlois shall know it, how it is passed, that our king is 'departed [fled], and *has* left his host, he will 'forth-right [anon right] weapon his knights, and out he will to fight, and fell us to ground, 'with his furious thanes make mickle slaughter;' then were *it* better for us, that we were not born. But cause we *the* trumpets to be blown, and our army to assemble; and Cador the brave shall bear 'the [this] kings standard; 'heave [hold]

<sup>1</sup> R. V<sup>er</sup>.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

bi-foren þissere duȝeðe.  
 and faren to þan castl<sup>e</sup> ⁊  
 mid kene ure folke.  
 and þe eorl Aldolf ⁊  
 scal beon ure aldre.  
 & we him scullen here ⁊  
 swulc hit þe king weoren.  
 & swa we swollen mid rihte ⁊  
 wið Gorloif fihthen. [c. 2.]  
 and ȝif he uf wule speken wið ⁊  
 & ȝernē þis kinges grið. 11  
 fetten fæhtn<sup>2</sup>fe ⁊  
 mid æðen soð-fæste.

þenne mazen we mid wurðscipen ⁊ þanne mawe<sup>2</sup> mid worfipe ⁊  
 heonene iwenden.  
 þenne nabbeoð ure æfterlinges ⁊ þat nabbeþ oure onderlinges ⁊  
 nane up-breidingef.  
 þat we for ærhcipe ⁊  
 heonene at-ærnden.  
 Al þat leodliche folc ⁊ 20  
 bilufde þefne ilke ræd.  
 Bemen heo bleowē ⁊  
 bonneden wærden.  
 up heo hafden þene drake ⁊

bi-vore þeof ilke ferde. [c. 2.]  
 and wende to þan castl<sup>e</sup> ⁊  
 mid al oure mihte.  
 and þe eorl Aldolf ⁊  
 sal beon oure eldre.  
 and we him solle herie ⁊  
 ase he þe king were.  
 and so we follen mid fihthe<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 wiþ Gorloys fihthe.  
 and ȝif he wole speke vs wiþ ⁊  
 and ȝerne þis kinges griþ.

hinne wende.  
 none vp-breidinges.  
 þat we for enȝ yearfipe ⁊  
 hinene beoþ at-hourne.  
 Al þat ilke folc ⁊  
 lofuede þane ilke read.

**B**ymes hii bleowen ⁊  
 and bannede hire ferde.  
 vp hii houe þane drake ⁊

high the Dragon before this 'people [same host], and march to the castle, with 'our keen folk [all our might]. And the earl Aldolf shall be our chief, and we shall obey him, as *if* he were the king; and so we shall with right with Gorlois fight; and if he will speak with us, and yearn this king's peace, 'set amity with soothfast oath,' then may we with worship go hence; 'then [*so that*] our underlings will have no upbraidings, that we for any timidity hence [are] fled.'" All 'the nation-folk [that folk] praised 'this [the] same counsel. Trumpets they blew, [and] assembled [their] host;

<sup>1</sup> rihte ?<sup>2</sup> mawe we ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ælcnes mærcen ṽnimake.  
 þer wef moni bald scalc ⁊  
 þe ſceld weiden on ſculdre.  
 moni þein kene ⁊

& wenden to þan caſtle.  
 Gorloif wes wið innē ⁊  
 mid kene his monnen.  
 he lette blawen beomen ⁊  
 & bonnien hiſ ferdē.

leopen an ſteden ⁊ 10  
 cnihtes gunnē riden.

þæs cnihtes weoren ſwiðe wate ⁊ And hii were ſwiþe wate ⁊  
 & wenden ut at þan ȝate. and ſweinde ṽppe caſtel ȝate.  
 to-ſomne heo comen ſone ⁊ and come to-gadere ſone ⁊  
 faſtliche heo on-foȝen. and faſtliche on-foȝe.

feolle fæie men ⁊  
 uolden iſohten<sup>a</sup>.

þer wes muche blod gute ⁊  
 balu wes on folke.

imong þan fihte ful iwif ⁊ 20  
 mon floh þene eorl Gorloif.  
 þa gunnen hiſ men fleon ⁊  
 & þa oðere after teon.

þar was mochel blod iȝote ⁊  
 wowe was mid folke.

amang þan fihte foliwiſ ⁊  
 me floh þā eorl Gorloifs.  
 þo gonne hiſ men fleo ⁊  
 and þe oþer after teo.

Gorloif.

up they heaved the Dragon, by each standard unmatched; there was many a bold man, that hung shield on shoulder, 'many a keen thane'; and proceeded to the castle, [where] Gorlois was within, 'with his keen men. He caused trumpets to be blown, and his host to assemble; *they* leapt on steed; knights gan to ride.' 'These knights [And they] were exceeding active, and 'went out at the gate; [swung up the castle-gate, and] together 'they' came soon, [and] quickly 'they' attacked; 'fell *the* fated men; *the* ground *they* sought; there was much blood shed, harm was 'among [with] *the* folk; amidst the fight full certainly men slew the earl Gorlois. Then gan his

<sup>1</sup> ſceald?<sup>2</sup> R. Gorloys.<sup>a</sup> heo-fohten?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

heo comen to þan caſtle ˚[£110.c.1.]	hii comen to þan caſtle ˚
and binnen heo þraſtē.	and hii in þraſte.
Sone hit comen binnen ˚	
ba twa þa uerden.	
þer ileſte þat fiht ˚	þar ilaſte þat fiht ˚
þurh þene dæi-liht.	þorh vt þan dāy-liyt. [£88.c.1.]
ær þe dai weore al a-ſceken ˚	her þe dai were al a-ſake ˚
wes þe caſtel biȝeten.	was þe caſtel bi-ȝeate.
næs þer nan ſwa wracche ſwein ˚	
þat he nes a wel god þein. 10	
Comen þa tidinde ˚	Come þe tȝdinge ˚
into Totintageol <sup>1</sup> an hiȝende.	to Tȝntagel an hiȝenge.
forð into þan caſtle ˚	
þer Vðer wes inne.	
þat iſlaȝen wes ful iwif ˚	þat iſlawe was foliwiſ ˚
þe eorl heore læuerd Gorloif.	þe gode eorl Gorloȝs.
& alle hiſ hiſ <sup>2</sup> here-gumen ˚	and alle hiſ hired-gomes ˚
and hiſ caſtel inumen.	and þe caſtel inome.
þiſ iherde þe king ˚	þiſ ihorde þe king ˚
þer he læi an ſkentting. 20	þar he lai a ſwetig.
& leop ut of bure ˚	and leop vt of boure ˚
ſwulc hit an liun weore.	aſe hit a lȝon were.
þa quað þe king Vðer ˚	þo ſaide king Vther ˚

men to flee, and the others to pursue after; they came to the castle, and 'within [in] they thrust. 'Soon it came within, both the two hosts;' there lasted the fight through[out] the day-light; ere the day were all gone, the castle was won; was there no swain so mean, that he was not a well good thane.' The tidings came 'in'to Tintageol in haste, 'forth into the castle wherein Uther was,' that the [good] earl 'their lord' Gorlois was slain full truly, and all his soldiers, and 'his [the] castle taken. The king heard this, where he lay 'in amorous play [a-sweeting], and leapt out of bower, as if it were a lion. Then 'quoth the [said] king Uther, [who]

<sup>1</sup> R. Tintageol.<sup>2</sup> Sic MS.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

of þiffen tiðende he wes wær.  
 Beoð stille beoð stille ⁊  
 cnihtes inne halle.  
 here ich æm ful iwif ⁊  
 eore læuerd Gorloif.  
 and Jurdan mi burward ⁊  
 and Brutael mi stiward.  
 Ich & þas tweie cnihtes ⁊  
 leopen ut of þan fihte.  
 and hider in we beoð idrazen ⁊  
 neore we noht þeſ iflaȝen. 11  
 Ah nu ich wulle fuſe ⁊

& ſumnien mine ferde.  
 and ich & mine cnihtes ⁊  
 ſcullen al bi nihte.  
 faren in ænne tun ⁊  
 and imeten Vðer Pendragun.  
 and buten he of ſæhneſſe<sup>1</sup> ſpeken ⁊  
 ich wulle me wuðliche<sup>2</sup> awrake.  
 & ȝe þefne caſtel ⁊  
 bi-cluſeð ſwiðe uafte.  
 and hateð me Ýgerne ⁊  
 þat heo noht ne murne.  
 Nu ich fare forð riht ⁊

þat of þe tyðinge was war.  
 Cnihtes in halle ⁊  
 beoþ ſwiþe stille.  
 her ich ham foliwiſ ⁊  
 ȝoure louerd Gorloȝs.  
 and Jordan mȝ bourward ⁊  
 and Britahel mi ſtiward.  
 Ich and þeſ tweie cnihtes ⁊  
 leopen vt of þan fihte.  
 and hider in we beoþ idraȝe ⁊  
 nere we noht þare iflaȝe.

Ac nou ich and mine cnihtes ⁊  
 ſollen alle bi nihte.  
 varen into on toun ⁊  
 and imete Vther Pendragon.  
 and bote he of ſahneſſe<sup>1</sup> ſpeke ⁊  
 ich wole me worþliche a-wreke.  
 And ȝe þifne caſtel ⁊  
 bi-tuneþ ſwiþe faſte.  
 and biddeþ Igerne ⁊  
 þat ȝeo noht ne morne.  
 Nou ich wende forþriht ⁊

[c. 2.] And ȝe þifne caſtel ⁊

21

of 'this [the] tiding 'he' was ware: "Be 'still, be [most] still, knights in hall! Here I am full truly, your lord Gorlois; and Jordan, my chamberlain, and Britael, my steward. I and these two knights leapt out of (withdrew from) the fight, and in hither we are arrived,—we were not there slain. But now I 'will march, and assemble my host; and I' and my knights shall all by night proceed into a town, and meet Uther Pendragon, 'and' unless he speak of reconciliation, I will worthily avenge me! And inclose ye this castle most fast, and bid Ygærne that she mourn not. Now go I

<sup>1</sup> ſæhtneſſe ? ſahtneſſe ?<sup>2</sup> wurðliche ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

habbeoð alle gode niht.  
 Bi-foren ferde M<sup>9</sup>lin ⁊  
 & þe þein Vlfin.  
 & feoððen Uðer Pendragun ⁊  
 ut of Títageoleftun.  
 æuere heo uerden alle niht ⁊  
 þat hit wes dæi-liht.  
 þa com he to þan ærde ⁊  
 þer læi his ferde.  
 Merlin hafde a þene king ⁊ 10  
 hif wlite ifet þurh alle þing.  
 þa icneowen cnihtes ⁊  
 heore kinelauerd.  
 þer wes moni oht Brut ⁊  
 mid bliffen afeolled.  
 þa weoren inne Bruttene ⁊  
 bliffen inoȝe.  
 hornes þer bleowen ⁊  
 gleomen gen<sup>a</sup> gleowen.  
 glad æuer ælch cniht ⁊  
 al mid pælle bi-þæht.  
 þreo dæies wes þe king ⁊  
 wuniende þere.  
 & þan feorðe dæie ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

habbeþ alle gode niht.  
 Bi-vore wende Merlȝn ⁊  
 and þe cniht<sup>1</sup> Vlfin.  
 and suppe Vther Pendragon ⁊ {c. 2.  
 vt of Tȝntagelef toun.  
 euere hii wende al niht ⁊  
 þat hit was dai-liht.  
 þo com he to þan stude ⁊  
 war lay his ferde.  
 Merlȝn hadde al his craft ⁊  
 ondo of þan kinge.  
 þo icnewe his cnihtes ⁊  
 hire kinelouerd.  
 þar was many bold Brut ⁊  
 ifulled mid blisse.  
 20 glad was ich cniht ⁊  
 al mid palle bi-þehte.  
 þreo dages waf þe king ⁊  
 woniende þare.  
 in þan feorþe daie ⁊

forth-right; have ye all good night!" Merlin went before, and the 'thane [knight] Ulfin, and afterwards Uther Pendragon, out of Tintageols town; ever they proceeded all night, until it was day-light. When he came to the spot where his army lay, Merlin had 'on the king set his *own* features through all things [undone all his craft from the king]; then [his] knights knew their sovereign; there was many a bold Briton filled with bliss; 'then was in Britain bliss enow; horns there blew, gleemen gan chant' glad [was] 'every [each] knight, all arrayed with pall! Three days was the king dwelling there; 'and [on] the fourth day he went to Tintaieol. He

<sup>1</sup> cniht?    <sup>2</sup> Originally written gleowen, but the letters leow erased; read gon.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

to Tintaieol he wende.  
 He sende to þan castle ⁊  
 his seleft þeines.  
 & grætte Ygærne ⁊  
 wifuene aðelest.  
 & sende hire taken ⁊  
 whæt heo i bedde speken.  
 hehte heo þat heo aȝeuen ⁊  
 þene castel bliue.  
 þer nes nan oðer ræd ⁊ 10  
 for hire lauerd wes dæd.  
 ȝet wende Ygærne ⁊  
 þat hit soð weoren.  
 þat þe dæde eorl ⁊  
 isoht hafede his duȝeðe. [f.110<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 and al heo ilæfde ⁊  
 þat hit læf weore.  
 þat þe king Vðer ⁊  
 æuere weorē icumen her.  
 Cnihtes eoden to ræde ⁊ 20  
 cnihtes eoden to rune.  
 radden þat heo nalden ⁊  
 þene castel lengere halden.  
 heore brugge heo duden adun ⁊  
 & bitahte hine Vðer Pendragū.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to Tyntagel he wēde.  
 He sende to þan castle ⁊  
 his wifeste cnihtes.  
 and grette Igerne ⁊  
 wifuene hendest.  
 and sende hire tockne ⁊  
 wat hii in bedde speke.  
 hehte þat ȝeo aȝeoue ⁊  
 þane castel bliue.  
 þar naf non oþer read ⁊ 10  
 for hire louerd wes dead.  
 ȝet wende Igerne ⁊  
 þat hit soþ were.  
 þat þe deade eorl ⁊  
 isoht hadde his cnihtes.  
 and al wende ⁊  
 þat hit les were.  
 þat þe king Vther ⁊  
 euere weren icode þer.  
 Cnihtes eoden to reade ⁊ 20  
 cnihtes eoden to rounne.  
 radden þat hii nolde ⁊  
 þane castel lengere holde.  
 hire brugge hii dude adun ⁊  
 and leten him<sup>1</sup> Vther Pendragon. [f.89.c.1.]

sent to the castle his 'best thanes [wisest knights], and greeted Ygærne, 'noblest [fairest] of women, and sent her token what they spake in bed; *and* ordered 'her' that she should yield the castle quickly,—*there was* no other counsel, for her lord was dead. Yet Ygærne weened that it were sooth, that the dead earl had sought his 'people [knights], and 'she' all 'believed [weened], that it were false, that the king Uther had ever come there. Knights went to counsel, knights went to communing; *they* resolved that they would not hold the castle *any* longer; their bridge they let down,

<sup>1</sup> ine?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þa stod al þis kinelond ⁊  
 æft an Vtheres hond.  
 þer Vðer þe kīg ⁊  
 nom Ygærne to quene.  
 Ygærne wes mid childe ⁊  
 bi Vðer kige.  
 al þurh M<sup>9</sup>lines wiȝel ⁊  
 ær heo biwedded weore.  
 þe time cō þe wes icoren ⁊  
 þa wes Arður iboren. 10  
 Sone swa he com an eorðe ⁊  
 aluen hine iuengen.  
 heo bigolen þat child ⁊  
 mid galdere fwiðe stronge.  
 heo ȝeuē him mihte ⁊  
 to beon bezft alre cnihten.  
 heo ȝeuen him an oðer þing ⁊  
 þat he scolde beon riche king.  
 heo ȝiuen hī þat þridde ⁊  
 þat he scolde longe libben. 20  
 heo ȝifen him þat kine-bern ⁊  
 cuften fwiðe gode.  
 þat he wes mete-cufti ⁊

[Natus] est  
 Arthurus.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þo stod al þis kinelond ⁊  
 in Vtheres owe hond.  
 þar Igerne iwarþ ⁊  
 Vther his cwene.  
 and ȝeo was gret mid childe ⁊  
 bi Vther þan knge<sup>1</sup>.  
 al þorh Merlīnes craft ⁊  
 here ȝeo bi-wedded were.  
 þe tyme com þat was icore ⁊  
 þo was Arþur ibore. 10  
 Sone so he to worle com ⁊  
 aluene him onderfenge.

and ȝeuen him mihte ⁊  
 to beon best alre cnihte.  
 hii ȝeuen him an oþer þing ⁊  
 þat he folde beo riche king.  
 hii ȝeuen him þat þridde ⁊  
 þat he folde lange libbe. 20  
 hii ȝeuen þane beorn ⁊  
 ȝeftes fwiþe gode.  
 þat he wes mete-cufti ⁊

and 'delivered it to [let in] Uther Pendragon. Then stood all this king-  
 dom 'eft' in Uthers [own] hand. There 'Uther the king took Ygærne  
 for queen; Ygærne was [Ygærne became Uther his queen, and she was  
 great] with child by Uther [the] king, all through Merlins craft, before  
 she was wedded. The time came that was chosen, then was Arthur born.  
 So soon as he came 'on earth [in the world], elves 'took [received] him;  
 'they enchanted the child with magic most strong,' 'they [and] gave him  
 might to be the best of all knights; they gave him another thing, that  
 he should be a rich king; they gave him the third, that he should live  
 long; they gave to 'him the princoe [the child] virtues [gifts] most good,

<sup>1</sup> R. kinge.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiiii.

of alle quikemounnen.  
 þis þe alue him ȝef ⁊  
 and al swa þat child iþæh.  
 Æfter Arður wes iboren ⁊  
 þeo ædie burde.  
 heo wes ihaten Æne ⁊  
 þ ædien maiden.  
 & feoððen heo nom Loð ⁊ [c.2.]  
 þe Leonef ahte.  
 heo wæs inne Loeneif ⁊ 10  
 leodene læfdi.  
 Longe luede Vðer ⁊  
 mid muchelere blisse her.  
 mid gode griðe mid gode friðe ⁊  
 freo on kinedome.  
 þa þe he wes ald mō ⁊  
 þa com him ufel on.  
 þat vfel hine læide adun ⁊  
 seoc wes Vðer Pendragun.  
 swa he wes here ⁊ 20  
 seoc seoue ȝere.  
 þa iwurðen Bruttes ⁊  
 swiðe ibalded.

of alle cwike manne.  
 þis þe alfe him ȝeaf ⁊  
 and al so þat child i-þeh.  
 After Arþur was ibore ⁊  
 þat edie maide.  
 ȝeo waf i-hote Anna.<sup>1</sup>  
 þat Leoneif hahte.  
 ȝeo was in Leoneis ⁊  
 folkene leafdi.  
**L** Ang lifuede Vther ⁊  
 mid mochele blisse her.  
 þo þat he was hold man ⁊  
 þo com him vuel an.  
 þat vuel hine laide adun ⁊  
 feac was Vther Pendragon.  
 so he was here ⁊  
 feac seoue ȝere.  
 þar vore weren Bruttus ⁊ [c.2.]  
 moche onbalded<sup>2</sup>.

so that he was *most* generous of all men alive. This the elves gave him, and thus the child thrived. After Arthur, the blessed 'lady [maid] was born, she was named Anna, 'the blessed maiden; and afterwards she took (married) Loth,' who possessed Leoneis (Lothian); she was in Leoneis lady of the people. Long lived Uther with mickle bliss here, 'with good peace, with much quiet, free in *his* kingdom.' When that he was *an* old man, then came illness on him; the illness laid him down, sick was Uther Pendragon; so he was here sick seven years. 'Then became [Therefore were] the Britons much emboldened; they did oft wickedly, all for abs-

<sup>1</sup> A line is here apparently wanting.<sup>2</sup> ibalded?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

heo duden ofte unwræfte :  
 al for æie-leste.  
 þe ȝet læi ibunden :  
 in þe quarterne of Lunden.  
 Octa Hengestes fune :  
 þa at Eouerwic wes inume.  
 and his iuerē Ebiffa :  
 & his oder Ossa.  
 heom biu<sup>9</sup>ten twælf cnihtes :  
 dæief and nihtes. 10  
 þa weoren weri of-læien :  
 inne Lundenne.  
 Octa iherde fuggen :  
 of feocneffe þaf kinges.  
 & spac wið þa wardes-men :  
 þe hine witen scolden.  
 Hærcneð me nu cnihtes :  
 þat ich eou wulle cuðen.  
 We liggeð here i Lundene :  
 uafte ibunden. 20  
 and ȝe monienne longne dæi :  
 ouer uf ilæien habbeoð.  
 bettere uf weoren to libben :  
 inne Saxlonde.  
 mid muchele richedome :

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

hii dude ofte onwreste :  
 al for heye-leste.  
 ȝet lai ibunde :  
 in þe tour of Londene.  
 Octa Hengestes fone :  
 þat at Euerwich was inome.  
 and his iwere Ebiffa :  
 and þe oþer Ossa.  
 ȝam bi-wufte twalf cnihtes :  
 daies and nihtes.  
 þat weri were for-leie :  
 ine Londene.

Octa to þis cnihtes :  
 spac þus forþrihtes.

Betere ȝou were libbe :  
 ine Saxlonde.  
 mid moche bliffe :

ence of dread. 'The' yet lay Octa, Hengests son, bound in the 'prison [tower] of London, who was taken at York, and his comrade Ebissa, and 'his [the] other Ossa. Twelve knights guarded them day and night, who were wearily oppressed with watching, in London. Octa 'heard say of the sickness of the king, and' spake 'with the guardsmen, who should keep him [thus forth-right to these knights]: "'Hearken to me now, knights, what I will make known to you. We lie here in London fast bound, and ye many a long day have watched over us.' Better were *it* for 'us [you] to live in Saxland, with much [bliss and] wealth [certainly], than thus

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

1		and richedom iwiffe.
þene þuf reouliche here :		þane þus rouliche here :
1		liggen afwounde.
& 3if 3e wolden iwurðen :	[f. 111. c. 1.]	and 3ef <sup>2</sup> þiffe wolde :
& don mine iwille.		alþing i-wourþe.
ich eou wolden 3iuen lond :		ich 3ou wolde 3eue lond :
muchel feoluer & gold.		boþe feoluer and gold.
þat a 3e mihten riche :		þat 3eo mihte richeliche :
rixliē in þan londe.		rixli on lond.
and eoure lif libben :	10	
ſwa eou bið alre leofueſt.		[þing :
For no biden 3e nauere 3iuen gode :		For ne ſolle 3eo neuere habbe ſoch
of Vðer kinge.		of Vther 3oure king.
for nu ful raðe he bið dæd :		for his <sup>3</sup> almoſt dead :
and hiſ duʒeðen al bilæueð.		þanne nabbe 3eo nanne read.
þenne nabben 3e nouðer :		ne þanne nabbe 3e noþer :
þat an no þat oðer.		þat on ne þat oþer.
Ah biðenche eou ohte mē :		
& doð uf eoure mildze on.		
& þencheð whæt eou weoren leof :		Ac bi-þencheþ wat 3ou were leof :
3if 3e þuf ibūden leien.	21	3ef 3e ibunde were.
& mihten in eouwer londē :		and mihte in oþer londe :

miserably here [lie asleep]. And if ye would [in all things] accomplish [this], 'and do my will,' I would give you land, 'much [both] silver and gold, so that 'ever' ye might richly rule in 'the' land, 'and live your life as to you shall be liefest of all.' For ye shall never have 'good gifts [such things] of Uther, [your] king, for 'now full soon he will be dead, and his people all desert; [he is almost dead; then will ye have no counsel, nor] then will ye have neither, the one nor the other. But be-think 'you, brave men, and give to us your compassion, and think' what were lief to you, if ye 'thus lay [were] bound, and might in 'your [other]

<sup>1</sup> Two lines seem to be missing here.<sup>2</sup> 3ef3c ?<sup>3</sup> he his ?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

libben inne winne.  
 Swiðe ofte Octa :'  
 wið þæs cnihtes spac swa.  
 Cnihtes gunnen runen :'  
 cnihtes gunnen ræden.  
 to Octa heo seiden ful stille :'  
 We scullen don þine iwille.  
 aðes heo fsworen :'  
 fwiken þat heo nalden.  
 Hit wæs in ane nihte :'  
 10 þ þe wind wende rihte.  
 forð iwenden cnihtes :'  
 to þere mid-nihte.  
 and ledden uorð Octa :'  
 & Ebiffa & Offa.  
 after þere Temese :'  
 tuhten forð into þere sæ.  
 forð heo iwenden :'  
 into Sæxlonden.  
 Heore cun heom cō aȝeines :'  
 20 mid mucle flockes.  
 heo liðen ȝeond þan leoden :'  
 [c.2.] hii wende oueral þan londe :'  
 fwa heð wes alre leofuest.  
 me heom bi-tahte lond :'

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

libbe mid winne.  
 Swiþe ofte Octa :'  
 wiþ þis cnihtes spac fo.  
 Cnihtes gonne rounne :'  
 cnihtef gonne reade.  
 and to Octa faide wel stille :'  
 [189<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 We sullen don þine wille.  
 oþes hii fsworen :'  
 fwike þat hii nolden.  
 Forþ wende cnihtes :'  
 to þare see forþ rihtef.

and ouer wende :'  
 in to Saxlonde.  
 Hire cun heom com to-ȝeines :'  
 20 mid mochelere flockes.  
 hii wende oueral þan londe :'  
 ware heom were leuest.  
 me ȝaf ham ȝeftes and lond :'

land live 'in [with] joy.' Very oft Octa spake so with these knights. *The* knights gan to commune, *the* knights gan to counsel; [and] to Octa *they* said 'full [well] still: "We shall do thy will." Oaths they swore, that they would not deceive. 'It was on a night that the wind went right'; forth went *the* knights 'at the midnight [to the sea forth-right], 'and led forth Octa, and Ebissa, and Ossa; along the Thames *they* proceeded forth into the sea'; 'forth they [and over] passed into Saxland. Their kindred came towards them with great flocks (forces); they marched over [all] the land, 'as [where] to them was liefest [of all]; men gave them [gifts and] land; 'men gave them silver and gold.' Octa bethought him what he

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

me ȝæf heom feoluer &amp; gold.

Octa hine bidohte<sup>2</sup>?

whæt he don mahte.

he þohten hider wenden?

&amp; wræken his fader wunden.

Ferden heo biȝæten?

of folke vnimete.

to þere fa heo wenden?

mid muchele þrætte.

1

to Scotlonde heo comen.

sone heo fufden alond?

and mid fure hit igrættē.

Sæxes weoren ræie?

Scottes heo floȝen.

mid fure heo adun læiden?

scotti<sup>4</sup> hundred tunef.

Scottes heo floȝē?

moni and unifoȝen.

Comē þa tidende?

to Vðer kinge.

Vðer wes fwiðe wa?

&amp; wunderliche ihærmed.

1

Octa hine bi-þohte?

wat he don mihte.

he þohte hider wende?

and wreke his fader wonde.

Ferde he bi-ȝet?

of folke onimet.

to þare féé hii wende?

mid moche þretinge.

10

forþ hii wende sone?

þat hii to Scotlond come.

sone hii þrafte lond<sup>3</sup>?

and mid fure hit grette.

and þritti tounes?

hii leide to þan grunde.

Scottes hii floȝe?

manie ād inowe.

20

C Omen þe tidinge?

to Vther þan kinge.

might do; he thought to come hither, and avenge his fathers wounds. They [He] procured a host of innumerable folk; to the sea they proceeded with great threats; [threatening; forth they went soon, so that] they came to Scotland; soon they pushed on land, and greeted it with fire; 'the Saxons were cruel, the Scots they slew; with fire' they down laid [and they laid to the ground] thirty 'hundred' towns; the Scots they slew, many and 'innumerable [enow]. The tidings came to Uther [the] king. 'Uther [he] 'was exceeding woe, and wonderfully grieved, and' sent 'in 'to

<sup>1</sup> A line is deficient in both these places.<sup>3</sup> an lond?<sup>2</sup> biðohte?<sup>4</sup> þritti?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and senden into Loæines ⁊  
 to leofen his freondē.  
 and grette Lot his aḡum ⁊  
 & hehte hine beon an fund.  
 & hahte hine nimen an his hond ⁊  
 al his kinewurðe lond.  
 cnihtes and freomen ⁊  
 and freoliche heom halden.  
 & leden heō to ferde ⁊  
 swa laȝen beoð an ærde. 10  
 & he hæhte his cnihtes leoue ⁊  
 beon hærfume Loðe.  
 mid leofliche læten ⁊  
 swulc he weoren leodene king.  
 For Lot wes fwiðe god cniht ⁊  
 & hafdeihalden monifiht. [L 1111<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 and he wes mete-cuſti ⁊  
 æuer alche mōne.  
 he bitahten him þa warde ⁊  
 of alle þiffen ærde. 20  
 Octa heold mucche vnfrið ⁊  
 & Lot faht him ofte wið.  
 & ofte he ahte biȝæt ⁊  
 & ofte he heom lofede.

he ſende to Leoneys ⁊  
 to leofe his freonde.  
 and grette Loth his oþom ⁊  
 and bad hine beo hol and fund.  
 and hehte hine nime his kinelond ⁊  
 to his owene hond.  
 cnihtes and freomen ⁊  
 and freoliche heom holde.  
 and he hehte his cnihtes ⁊  
 beo horſom to Loth.  
 mid alle ſcines þing ⁊  
 afe he were leod-king. [c. 2.]  
 þe kīg bi-tahte Loth þe ferde ⁊  
 of alle þis erpe. 20  
 Octa ne ſohte no griþ ⁊  
 and Loth [faht] him oſte wiþ.  
 and ofte he bi-ȝet ⁊  
 and heft hit lofede.

Loeneis, to his dear friends; and greeted Loth, his son-in-law, and bade him be 'in health [whole and sound], and ordered him to take in his [own] hand all his 'royal land [kingdom]; knights and freemen, and freely hold them, 'and lead them in a host, as *the* laws are in *the* land.' And he ordered his 'dear' knights to be obedient to Loth, with 'loving looks [all kind of thing], as if he were sovereign. 'For Loth was very good knight, and had held many fight, and he was liberal to every man,' he [The king] delivered 'to him [Loth] the 'government [host] of all this land. Octa 'held much war [sought no peace], and Loth often fought with him, and oft he gained 'possessions,' and 'oft he them [est it] lost. *The Britons had mickle*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Bruttes hafden muchel mode ⁊  
& vnimete prute.

& weoren æielelefe<sup>1</sup> ⁊

for þaſ kinges alde.

and lætten fwiðe hokerliche ⁊

of Lote þan eorle.

and dudē fwiðe vnwraſte ⁊

&<sup>2</sup> alle hiſ haſte.

and weoren alle twiræde ⁊

heore teone wes þa mare.

þiſ wes iſæid fone ⁊

feockē þan kinge.

þat hiſ hæȝe men ⁊

Lot al for-hoȝeden.

Nu ich þe wulle tellen ⁊

a piſſen boc-ſpællen.

hu Vðer þe king ⁊

uurede hine feolven.

He ſæide þat he wolde ⁊

wende to hiſ ferde.

and mid hiſ eȝene iſeon ⁊

wæ þer wolde wel don.

He lette makien þere ⁊

gode horſe-bere.

Bruttes hadde mochel mod ⁊  
and onimete prude.

and leten ſwiþe moche hoker ⁊  
of Loth þane eorle.

and weren of twireade ⁊

10 hire care was þe more.

þiſ was fone ibroht ⁊

to þan ſeake kinge.

þat hiſ owene men ⁊

Loth al for-howede.

Nou ich þe wolle telle ⁊

of piſſe bok-ſpelle.

hou Vther þe king ⁊

fondede him feolue.

He ſaide þat he wolde ⁊

20 wende to hiſ ferde.

and mid hiſ eȝen iſen ⁊

wo þar wolde wel don.

He lette makie þere ⁊

gode horſe-bere.

mood, and immoderate pride, 'and were void of dread, for (on account of) the kings age'; and looked very 'contemptuously [much derision] on Loth the earl, 'and did very evilly all his commands,' and were 'all [of] two counsels,—their care was the more! This was soon 'said [brought] to the sick king, that his 'high [own] men Loth all despised. Now will I tell thee, in this history, how Uther the king disposed himself. He said that he would go to his host, and see with his eyes who would there do well. He caused there to be made a good horse-litter, and caused an army to be

<sup>1</sup> æielefe?<sup>2</sup> Redundant P

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiii.

& letten beoden uerde ⁊  
 ȝeond al his kine-ærde.  
 þat ælc mon bi hiſ liue ⁊  
 comen to him ſwiðe.  
 bi heore liue & bi heore leme ⁊  
 to wræken þas kinges ſcome.

and lette bede ferde ⁊  
 oueral his kine-erþe.  
 þat ech man bi his liue ⁊  
 come to him blifue.

& ȝif þær iſ æi gume ⁊                      And ȝef þær iſ eni gome ⁊  
 þæt nulle hiȝenliche cume. [(c.2.)] þæt nele an hiȝenge come.  
 ich wulle hine hiȝenliche fordon ⁊ ich hine wole ahon ⁊  
 oðer flæn oðer an-hon.                      10 and cwikliche al for-don.

Alle ful ſone ⁊

to hirede heo comen.  
 no durſte þær bilæuen ⁊  
 na þæ uatte no þe læne.  
 þe king forð rihtes ⁊  
 nom alle his cnihtes.

Ne dorſte þær non bi-lefue ⁊  
 for þis kinges heȝe.  
 þe king forþ rihtes ⁊  
 nam alle his cnihtes.

& ferde him anan ⁊  
*Verolam.* to þā tune of Merelam<sup>1</sup>.  
 abuten Uerolames tun ⁊

and wende him a-non ⁊  
 to þan toune of Verolam.  
 a-boute Verolameſ toun : [f.90.c.1.]  
 com Vther Pendragon.                      20 com Vther Pendragon.

*Octa.* Octa wes wið innen ⁊  
 mid alle hiſ imonnen.  
 þa wes Verolam ⁊

Octa was wiþine ⁊  
 mid alle his manne.  
 þo was Verolam ⁊

assembled over all his kingdom; that each man by (on pain of) his life should come to him quickly, 'by their lives and by their limbs, to avenge the kings shame.'—"And if there is any man, who will not come 'hastily [in haste], I will 'speedily destroy him, either slay either hang [him hang, and quickly all destroy]." 'All full soon to *the* court (*or* to *the* army) they came'; durst there [none] remain, 'nor the fat nor the lean [for dread of this king]. The king forthright took all his knights, and marched him anon to the town of Verulam; about Verolams town came 'him' Uther Pendragon; Octa was within with all his men. Then was Verolam a most

<sup>1</sup> Verolam?<sup>2</sup> Vðer? *here and below.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

a fwiðe kinewurðe hō.  
 Seint Alban wes þes <sup>1</sup> iflæȝen ⁊  
 & idon of lif-dæȝen.  
 þe burh wef feoððe for-uaren ⁊  
 & muchel folc þer wes iflæȝen.  
 Vðer lai wið utē ⁊  
 & Octa wið innen.  
 Vðeres ferde ⁊  
 fufde to wal<sup>2</sup>.  
 ræfden to feondliche ⁊ 10  
 þeines riche.  
 ne mihte heo of þā walle ⁊  
 ænne stan falle.  
 no mid nare ftrengðe ⁊  
 þene wal amærre.  
 Wælle bliðe wes þæ ⁊  
 Hangeſtes fune Octa.  
 þa he ifæh Bruttes ⁊  
 buȝen from walle.  
 & forhful wenden ⁊ 20  
 aȝæin to heore teldē.  
 þa fæide Octa ⁊  
 to hiſ iueren Ebiffa.  
 Her if icumen to Æuerlam<sup>3</sup> ⁊

a fwiþe worþlich hom.  
 Saint Alban was þar ifllaȝe ⁊  
 and idon of lif-dæȝe.  
 þe borh was suppe for-vare ⁊  
 and nioche folk þar was iflaȝe.  
 Vther lay wiþ houte ⁊  
 Octa wiþ ine.  
 Vther his ferde ⁊  
 fufde to þan walle.  
 ne mihten hii of þan walle ⁊  
 one ſton falle.  
 Wel bliþe was þo ⁊  
 Hengeſtes ſone Octa.  
 þo he ifah Bruttus ⁊  
 bouwe fram þe wallas.  
 þo faide Octa ⁊  
 to his iwere Ebýffa.  
 Her his icome to Verolam ⁊

Octa.

Verolamia.

'royal [worthy] town; Saint Alban was there slain, and deprived of life-day; the burgh was subsequently destroyed, and much folk there was slain. Uther lay without, 'and' Octa within. 'Uthers [Uther his] army advanced to [the] wall; 'the powerful thanes fiercely assaulted it'; they might not of the wall one stone detach, 'nor with any strength the wall injure.' Well blithe was then Hengests son Octa, when he saw the Britons recede from [the] walls, 'and go sorrowful again (back) to their tents.' Then said Octa to his

<sup>1</sup> þer?<sup>2</sup> An e is added above, so as to make wale, for walle?<sup>3</sup> Verolam?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Vder þe lome mon.  
 & wulle wið uf here ⁊  
 fihten in his bære.  
 he wænde mid hif crucehe ⁊  
 uf adun þrucche.

Vther þe lame man.  
 and wole wiþ houre here ⁊  
 fihte in his bere.

Ah to mærze wæne hit dæi buð ⁊ Ac to morewe wane hit his day ⁊  
 duȝeðe ſcal ariſen. cnihtes folle a-riſe.

& oppenien ure caſtel-ȝæten. <sup>[L1112. c.1.]</sup> and hopeni þeoſ caſtel-ȝæte ⁊  
 þas riſe we ſwullen al biȝeten. and þes riſe we ſolle bi-ȝete.  
 ne ſcullen we nauære here liggen ⁊ nolle we hefe ligge ⁊  
 for ane lomme monne. 11 for one lame manne.

Ut we ſcullen riden ⁊  
 uppen ure ſteden goden.  
 and to Uðere fuſen ⁊  
 & hif folc fællen.

for alle heo beoð fæie ⁊  
 þat hider beoð iridenen.

and nimen þene lome mon ⁊  
 and leggen in ure benden.  
 and halden þene wræcche ⁊ 20  
 a þat he for-wurðe.  
 & fa me ſcal lacnien ⁊  
 hif leomes þat beoð fare.  
 and hif ban rihten ⁊

ac him we ſolle a-welde ⁊  
 and legge in houre bendes.  
 and holde þane wrech ⁊  
 forte he for-worþi.  
 and fo me ſal lechni ⁊  
 his leomeſ þat beoþ fore.

comrade Ebissa: "Here is come to Verulam Uther, the lame man, and will with 'us here [own forces] fight in his litter; 'he weened with his crutch to thrust us down!' But to-morrow when it is day, *the* 'people [knights] shall arise, and open 'our [this] castle-gate, [and] this realm we shall 'all' win; 'shall we never [we will not] lie here for one lame man! 'Out we shall ride upon our good steeds, and advance to Uther, and fell his folk; for all they are fated (shall die) that hither are (have) ridden; 'and take the lame man [But him we shall get possession of], and lay in our bonds, and hold the wretch until 'that' he dies; and so men shall leach his limbs that are sore, 'and heal his bones with bitter steel!' " Thus spake 'him' Octa with

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

mid bitele<sup>1</sup> stelen.

þuſ him iſpac Octa ⁊

wið hiſ iuere Ebiffa.

ah al hit iwræð<sup>2</sup> oðer ⁊

þene heo iwenden.

Amarȝe þa hit dazede ⁊

duren heo un-tunden.

up araſ Octa ⁊

Ebiffa &amp; Offa.

and hehten heore cnihtes ⁊ 10

ȝarkien heom to fihte.

vndon her brade ȝætē ⁊

burȝen un-tunen.

Octa him ut ræd ⁊

& mucche folc him aft<sup>9</sup> glæd.

mid balden hiſ beornen ⁊

þer he bælu funden.

Vðer him þiſ iſæh ⁊

þat Octa heom to bæh.

&amp; þohten hiſ ferde ⁊ 20

feolen to grūde.

þa cleopede Uðer ⁊

mid quickere ſtefene þer.

Wær beo ȝe Bruttes ⁊

þuſ ſpac Octa ⁊

wiþ hiſ iuere Ebyſſa.

ac al hit iwende ⁊

oper þane hii wende.

A morwe þo hit dazede ⁊ [c.2.]

doreſ hii on-tunde.

vp a-roſ Octa ⁊

Ebyſſa and Offa.

and hehte hire cnihtes ⁊

greiþi heom to fihte.

Octa.  
Ebiffa.  
Offa.

Octa him ut ræd ⁊

and moche folk him after glod.

Vther þiſ iſæh ⁊

þat Octa him to beoh.

and þohte hiſ ferde ⁊

fallen to þan grunde.

þo cleopede Vther ⁊

mid cwickere ſtemne þer.

Ware beo ȝe Bruttes ⁊

his comrade Ebissa; but all it happened *otherwise* than they weened. On *the* morrow when it dawned, they unfastened *the* doors; up arose Octa, Ebissa and Ossa, and ordered their knights to prepare them for fight, to undo their broad gates, *and* unfasten *the* burgh.' Octa rode him out, and much folk followed after him; 'with his bold warriors there he bale found!' Uther saw 'him' this, that Octa approached to them [him], and thought to fell his host to [the] ground. Then called Uther with quick voice there: "Where be ye, Britons, [Where be ye,] my 'bold thanes [champions]?"

<sup>1</sup> bitere?<sup>2</sup> iwarð?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

balde mine þeines.	ware beo ȝeo mine kenipes.
nu is icumen þe ilke dæi :	nou his icode þe ilke dai :
þe drihtē uf helpen mai. [c.2.]	þat drihte vs holde maȝ.
þat Octa scal ifinden :	þat Octa mihte ifinde :
þat he þrættede me to binden.	þat he þretede me to binde.
Iþenched <sup>1</sup> on eoure aldren :	Bi-þencheþ of ȝoure eldre :
hu gode heo weoren to fehten.	ou gode hii were to fihte.
iþenched <sup>1</sup> þene wurðscipe :	bi-þencheþ in þan worfipe :
þ̅ ich eou habbe wel biwiten.	þat ich ȝou habbe wel iwited.
ne læten ȝe næuere þas hæðene :	ne lete ȝe neuere þis heaþene :
bruken eoure hames.	11 brouke ȝoure homes.
þæs ilke awedde hundes :	þef ilke a-wende <sup>2</sup> hundes :
walden eouwere lōdes.	habbe ȝoure londes.
And ich wullen bidden drihten :	And ich wolle bidde drihte :
þ̅ scop þæs dæies lihten.	
& alle þaie halȝen :	and alle his halwe.
þa an hæfeuene <sup>3</sup> hæhȝe fitteð.	
þat [ich] on þiffen felde :	þat ich in þiffe wolde :
mote beon ifroured.	mote beon ifreuered.
Nu fufeð heom to fwiðe :	20 Nou foufeþ heom to fwiȝe :
fulfte eou drihten.	fulfte vs drihte.
þe al waldinde god :	
bi-witen mine þeines.	

Now is come that day, that *the* Lord may 'help [sustain] us;—that Octa 'shall (may) find, *in* that he threatened me to bind. Think of your ancestors, how good they were in fight; think of the worship that I have to you well given; nor let ye ever this heathen enjoy your homes, *or* these same raging hounds 'possess [have] your lands. And I will pray to *the* Lord 'who formed the day-light,' and to all 'the [his] hallows, 'that sit high in heaven,' that I on this 'field [weald] may be succoured. Now march quickly to them,—may *the* Lord aid 'you [us], 'may the all-ruling God protect my thanes!'" Knights gan to ride, spears gan to glide,

<sup>1</sup> Iþencheð ?<sup>2</sup> awedde ?<sup>3</sup> hæfene ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Cnihtes gunnen riden ⁊  
 gæres gunnen gliden.  
 breken bræde sperē ⁊  
 br̥sleden sceldes.  
 helmef þer scenden ⁊  
 scalkes feollen.  
 þe Bruttes weoren balde ⁊  
 & bifie to fihten.  
 & þa hæðene hundes ⁊  
 hælden to grunde.  
 þer wes iflaȝen Octa ⁊  
 Ebiffa & Offa.  
 þer seouentene þufend ⁊  
 fiȝen into helle.  
 feole þer at-wenden ⁊  
 touward þan norð enden.  
 Al þene dæi-lihte ⁊  
 Vðeres cnihtes.  
 floȝen and nomen ⁊  
 al þat heo neh comen.  
 þa hit wes eauen ⁊  
 þa wes hit al biwunnen.  
 þa funggen hired-men ⁊  
 mid hæȝere strengðe. [£ 112<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 & þæs word sæidē ⁊  
 inne murie heore fongen.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Cnihtes gonne ride ⁊  
 speref gonne glide.  
 and breken brode speres ⁊  
 braftelede feldef.  
 healmes þar ȝolle ⁊  
 cnihtes þar folle.  
 þe Bruttus weren bolde ⁊  
 and bufie to fihte.  
 and þe heaþene hundes ⁊ [£ 90<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 10 fulle to grunde.  
 þar was iflawe Octa ⁊  
 Ebiffa and Offa.  
 þare fouentene þufend ⁊  
 feȝen into helle.  
 and fale þare at-wende ⁊  
 to þan norþ ende.  
 And al þan day-liht ⁊  
 Vter his cnihtes.  
 floȝen and nemen ⁊  
 20 þat hii neh comen.  
 þo eode a-dun þe sonne ⁊  
 þan was hit al a-wonne.  
 þo faide hired-men ⁊  
 mid murie hire fonges.

[and] broad spears brake, shivered shields,—helms there 'were severed [re-sounded], men [there] fell! The Britons were bold, and busy in fight, and the heathen hounds fell to *the* ground. There was slain Octa, Ebissa, and Ossa; there seventeen thousand sunk into hell; [and] many there escaped 'toward [to] the North end. [And] all the day-light 'Uthers [Uther his] knights slew and captured 'all' that they came nigh; when 'it was even [the sun went down], then was it all won. Then 'sung [said] *the* soldiers with 'great strength, and said these words in 'their merry songs: "Here

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Her is Vder Pendragū?  
 icume to Verolamef tuni  
 & he hæfueð idubbed swa?  
 Octa & Ebiffa & Offa.  
 & itah heom a londē?  
 laȝen swiðe stronge,  
 þat men maȝen tellen?  
 heore cun to spelle.  
 and þer of wurchen songes?  
 inne Sæxlondē.  
 þa wes Vðer bliðe?  
 & igladed swuðe.  
 and spac wið his ðaȝeðe?  
 þe deore him wes an heorte.  
 & þas word sæide?  
 Vðer þe alde.  
 Sexifce men mæ habbeoð?  
 for hene ihalden.  
 mine unhæle mæ atwiten?  
 mid heore hoker worden.  
 for ich wes here?  
 ilad inne horfe-bere.  
 & sæiden þ̅ ich wes<sup>a</sup> ded?  
 & mi ðaȝeðe afwunden.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Her his Vther Pendragon?  
 icome to Verolaries toun.  
 and he haueþ idobbed fo?  
 Octa Ebiffa and Offa.  
 and itaht heom in þat lond?  
 lawes swiþe strong.  
 þat men mawe telle?  
 hire cun spelles.  
 10  
 þo was Vther bliþe?  
 and glad swiþe.

and þef wodrd<sup>1</sup> faide?  
 Vther þe holde.

Saxiffe men min heolde atwite?  
 20 mid hire hokere wordes.  
 for ich was here?  
 ilad in horfe-bere.  
 and fayde þat ich was dead?  
 and min folk afwode?

is Uther Pendragon come to Verulams town; and he hath so beaten Octa, 'and' Ebissa, and Ossa, and given them in [the] land laws most strong, so that men may tell their kin 'in story [stories], 'and thereof make songs in Saxland!' " Then was Uther blithe, and exceeding glad, and 'spake with his people, that was dear to him in heart,' and these words said Uther the old: "Saxish men 'have accounted me for baþe'; my 'sickness [age] *they* twitted 'me' with their scornful words, because I was led here in a horse-litter; and said that I was dead, and my folk asleep. And now

<sup>1</sup> R. word.<sup>2</sup> habbeoð?<sup>3</sup> This word is interlined, sec. man.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiii.

And nu if muchel fellic ⁊  
 ifiȝen to piſſere riche.  
 þat nu haueð þeos dede king ⁊  
 þaſ quiken aqualden.  
 & ſūme he heð flæmde ⁊  
 uorð mid þan wedere.  
 Nu iwurðen her after ⁊  
 drihttenes wille.  
 Fluȝen Sæxiſce men ⁊  
 feōdliche ſwiðe.  
 þe weoren bihalues ⁊  
 ihalden from þā fihte.  
 forð heo gunnen ſcriðen ⁊  
 into Scotlonde.  
 and nomen heom to kinge ⁊  
 Colgrim þene hende. [c. 2.]  
 He wes Hængeſtes mæie ⁊  
 & monnen him leofueſt.  
 and Octa hine luſuede<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 þæ while þe he leouede.  
 Weoren þa Saxiſce mē ⁊  
 ſwiðe ifwūten.  
 & ifcriðen heō to-ſomne ⁊  
 into Scotlonde.

And nou his moche wonder ⁊  
 iſeȝe to piſſe londe.  
 þat þis deade king ⁊  
 þe cwike haueþ alle acwelled.

Nou iworþe here after ⁊  
 drihtene wille.  
 10 **F**lowen Saxiſſe men ⁊  
 feōdeliche ſwiþe ⁊  
 þat weren bi-halues. [c. 2.]  
 iholden fram þan fihte ⁊  
 forþ hii gonne gōn ⁊  
 riht into Scotlond.  
 and nemen him<sup>1</sup> to kinge ⁊  
 Colgrim þan hende.  
 He was Hengeſtes may ⁊  
 and Octa hine louede.

20

is much wonder come to this 'realm [land], that 'now' this dead king hath killed 'these [all the] quick; 'and some he *hath* them driven forth with the weather!' Now hereafter be done *the* Lords will!" The Saxish men fled exceeding fast, that were (had) aside retreated from the fight; forth they gan 'proceed [go right] into Scotland; and took to them for king Colgrim the fair. He was Hengests relation, 'and dearest of men to him'; and Octa loved him, 'the while that he lived. The Saxish men were greatly discouraged, and proceeded them together into Scotland; and

<sup>1</sup> ham?<sup>2</sup> luſiede *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

&amp; Colgrim þene hende ⁊

heo makeden to kinge.

&amp; fumneden færde ⁊

wide ȝeond þan ærde.

and sæiden þat heo wolden ⁊

mid heore wiðer-craften.

inne Winchastre tun ⁊

quellen Uðer Pēdragun.

Wa la wa ⁊

þat hit ſculde iwurðen ſwa. 10

Nu sæiden Saxiſce men ⁊

in heore fom runen.

Nime we fix cnihtes ⁊

wiſe men and wihte<sup>2</sup>.and<sup>3</sup> hæweres witere ⁊& ſenden we to hiredede<sup>4</sup>.

læten heom uorð liðen ⁊

an almef monnes wiſe.

&amp; wunien an hirede ⁊

mid heȝe þan kinge. 20

and æuer ælche dæie ⁊

þurh-gon al þa duȝeðe.

and gan to þas kinges dale ⁊

He<sup>1</sup> gaderede ferde ⁊

wide ȝeond þan erþe.

and ſaide þat hii wolde ⁊

mid hire wiþere-craftes.

ine Wincheſtre his toun ⁊

cwelle Vther Pendragon.

Wo la wo ⁊

þat hit ſolde iworþe ſo.

Nou ſaide Saxiſſe men ⁊

in hire deorne wordes.

þat hii wol fix cnihtes ⁊

fende forþrihtes.

to þis kinges ferde ⁊

in pore men guȝſe.

þat ſolde ȝam þorh gon ⁊

and tydinge hercnȝ on.

and go to þe kinges dole ⁊

they made Colgrim the fair for king,' and assembled [They gathered] a host, wide over the land, and said that they would with their wicked craft in Winchester [his] town kill Uther Pendragon. Alas, that it should so happen! Now said *the* Saxish men in their 'communing together: "Take we [secret words, that they would send] six knights, 'wise men and active, and skilful spies,' and send we to *the* court [forth-right to this kings host], in 'almsmans [poor mens] guise, 'and dwell in *the* court, with the high king,' and every day pass through all the people [that should themselves through pass, and hearken to *the* tidings]; and go to the kings dole, as if

<sup>1</sup> Hii?<sup>2</sup> Struck out by the second hand.<sup>3</sup> widtes *pr. man.*<sup>4</sup> hirede?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

swulc heo weoren vn-hale.  
 & imong þan wracchē ⁊  
 hærniē ȝeorne.  
 ȝif mon mihte mid crafte ⁊  
 a dæi oðer a nihte.  
 inne Winchæstres tun ⁊  
 cumen to Vder Pendragun.  
 & mid morð-spelle ⁊  
 þene king aquellen.  
 þenne weorē heore iwil. [L 113.c.1.]  
 allunge iwurden.<sup>1</sup> 11  
 þēne weoren heo care-læse ⁊  
 of Coſtantineſ cunne.  
 Nu wenden forð þa cnihtes ⁊  
 al bi dæief lihten.  
 on ælmeſ mōneſ claðeſ ⁊  
 cnihtes forcuðeſt.  
 to þaſ kingeſ hirede ⁊  
 þer heo hærm wrohten.  
 Heo eoden to þære dale. 20  
 swulc heo weoren un-hale.  
 & hærcneden ȝeornen ⁊  
 of þaſ kingeſ hærmē.  
 hu me þæne kig mihte ⁊  
 to dæðe idihte.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

aſe hii weren on-hole.  
 and a-mang þan wrecchen ⁊  
 hercnȳ wel ȝeorne.  
 ȝeſ man mihte mid crafte ⁊  
 bi daiȝe oþer bi nihte.  
 in Wȳncheſtres toun ⁊  
 come to Vther Pendragō.  
 and mid morþre-spelle ⁊  
 þane king a-cwelle.  
 þanne weren hii careleſ ⁊  
 of Coſtantineſ cunne.  
 ¶ Nou wende forþ þe cnihtes ⁊  
 2

and al dude in dede ⁊  
 aſe hii raþer demde.

they were infirm, and among the poor *people* 'hearken [well] studiously if man might with craft, by day or by night, in Winchester's town come to Uther Pendragon, and kill the king with murder;—' then were (would be) their will wholly accomplished,' then were they careless of Constantine's kin. Now went forth the knights 'all by daylight, in almsman's clothes,—knights most wicked,—to the king's court,'—there they harm wrought. They went to the dole, as if they were infirm, and hearkened studiously of the king's sickness, how men might put the king to death, [and all did in

<sup>1</sup> iwurden?<sup>2</sup> A line is here missing.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þa imetten heo enne cniht ⁊  
 from þan kinge he com riht.  
 he wes Vðeres mæi ⁊  
 & monnen him leofuest.  
 þas fwiken þer heo fætē ⁊  
 on longē þere streten.  
 cleopeden to þan cnihte ⁊  
 mid cudliche<sup>2</sup> worden.  
 Lauerd we beoð wracche men ⁊  
 a pissere weorlde-riche. 10  
 while we weoren on londe ⁊  
 for gode men iholden.  
 a þat Sæxifce men ⁊  
 fetten uf a-dune.  
 & al bi-ræiueden uf ⁊  
 & ure æhtē binomen uf.  
 Nu we beden fīgeð ⁊  
 for Vðer kinge.  
 ælche dæie on a mæl ⁊  
 ure mete trukeð<sup>3</sup>. 20  
 ne cumeð nauere inne ure disc ⁊  
 neoþer flæf na no fisc.  
 no nanes cunnes dræc ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Hii i-mette wiþ on cniht ⁊  
 frā þan kinge he com forþ riht. [19L.c.l.  
 he was Vther his may ⁊  
 and manne him leouift.  
 þes fwikes þar ifete<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 in langes þane strete.  
 cleopede to þan cnihte ⁊  
 mid coupliche wordes.  
 Louerd we beoþ wrecche men ⁊  
 a pisse worle-riche. 10  
 wile we were on londe ⁊  
 for gode men iholde.  
 forte Saxiffe men ⁊  
 sette vs a-doune.  
 Nou we bedes fingeþ ⁊  
 for Vter þan kinge.  
 eche day on halmef ⁊  
 me houre mete bringeþ. 20  
 ne comeþ neuere in oure difce ⁊  
 noþer fles noþer fifce.  
 ne none cunnes drigke ⁊

deed, as they previously *had* determined]. 'Then' met they [with] a knight, from the king he came [forth-]right; he was 'Uthers [Uther his] relation, and dearest of men to him. These deceivers, where they sate along the street, called to the knight with familiar words: "Lord, we are wretched men in this worlds realm; whilom we were in land accounted for good (wealthy) men, until Saxish men set us adown, 'and bereaved us of all, and our possessions took from us.' Now we sing beads (prayers) for Uther [the] king; each day 'in a meal our meat faileth [in alms men bring our meat]; cometh never in our dish neither flesh nor any [neither] fish, nor any kind

<sup>1</sup> hii fete?<sup>2</sup> cudliche?<sup>3</sup> *At first written* brukeð, *but altered by the same hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

buten water scenc.

bote water senche.

buten water clæne ⁊

for þi we beoð þus læne. [c.2.]

þif iherde þe cniht ⁊

þis ihorde þe cniht ⁊

aȝæn he eode forð riht.

aȝen he wende forþriht.

&amp; com to þā kinge ⁊

and com to þan kinge ⁊

þer he lai on bure.

þar he lay a sweuekinge<sup>1</sup>.

&amp; feide to þan kinge ⁊

Lauerd beo þu on funde.

her ute fitteð fix men ⁊

10 Here vte setteþ fix men ⁊

iliche on heouwen.

iliche of ewe.

alle heo beoð iferen ⁊

alle hii beoþ iveren ⁊

ifcrudde mid heren.

ifcrud mid herde here.

While heo weoren ⁊

Wile hii weren riche ⁊

a þiffere worlde-richē.

god-fulle þeines ⁊

and mihti of gode.

mid goden afeolled.

nu habbeoð Sæxiſce men ⁊

nou habbeþ Saxiſſe men ⁊

iſæt hō to grunden.

iſet heom to grunde.

þat heo beoð on weorlde ⁊

20 þat hii beoþ in worle ⁊

for wracchen ihaldē.<sup>2</sup>

for wrecchef iholde.

no raccheoð heo to borde ⁊

ne habbeþ hii at borde ⁊

of drink but a draught of water, 'but water clean,—therefore we are thus lean.'” The knight heard this; back he went forth-right, and came to the king, where he lay 'in chamber [in slumber], 'and said to the king: “Lord, be thou in health!’ Here out sit six men, alike in hue (appearance); all they are companions, *and* clothed with [hard] hair-cloth. Whilom they were 'in this worlds realm goodly thanes, *and* 'filled with [rich, and mighty of] goods; now have Saxish men set them to ground, *so* that they are in *the* world accounted for wretches; they have not at board

<sup>1</sup> a ſweneninge?<sup>2</sup> This and the preceding line and half are on an erasure in the MS., but by the original hand.



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

buden<sup>1</sup> bræd ane.  
 no to heore drencches ⁊  
 bute water scenches.  
 þus heo leodeð heore lif ⁊  
 inne þire leode.  
 & heore beoden biddeð ⁊  
 þ̃ godd þe lete longe libben.  
 þa quað Vder þe king ⁊  
 Let heom cumen hider in in<sup>2</sup>.  
 ich heom wulle scruden ⁊ 10  
 & ich heom wulle ueden.  
 for minef drihtenef lufe ⁊  
 þa wille þa ich liuie.  
 Comen into bure ⁊  
 beornef þa swikele.  
 þe king heo lette fedē ⁊  
 þæ king heom lette scruden.  
 & nihtes hom læiden ⁊  
 ælc on his bedde<sup>4</sup>.  
 & ælc on his halue ⁊ 20  
 heoȝede ȝeorne.  
 hu heo mihtē þene king ⁊

bote bred one.  
 ne to hire dringke ⁊  
 bote water cleane.  
 þuf hii leadeþ hire lif ⁊  
 amang þine leode.  
 and hire bedef biddeþ ⁊ [c.2]  
 þat þou mote libbe.  
 þo faide Vther þe king ⁊  
 Let heom come hider in.  
 ich ȝam wole scrude ⁊ 10  
 and ich<sup>3</sup> wole feode.  
 for loue of mine drihte ⁊  
 wile þat ich libbe.  
 Comen in to boure ⁊  
 men swiþe swikele.  
 þe king heom lette fede ⁊  
 þe king ȝam lette scrude.  
 and a nihtes ȝam leyde ⁊  
 ech on his bedde.  
 and ech on his fide ⁊ 20  
 aspide wel ȝeorne.  
 hou hii mihte þane king ⁊

but bread alone, nor for their drink but water 'draughts [clean]. Thus they lead their life 'in [among] thy people, and bid their beads, that 'God will let thee long [thou mayest] live.' Then 'quothe [said] Uther the king: "Let them come in hither; I will them clothe, and I will them feed, for *the* love of my Lord, 'the' while that I live." 'The' [most] treacherous men came into *the* chamber; the king caused them to be fed, the king caused them to be clothed, and at night each laid them on his bed. And each on his 'part [side] aspied [well] earnestly how they might kill the king

<sup>1</sup> R. buten.<sup>2</sup> Sic MS. A word in the margin has been erased, as also the first two letters of wulle in the next line but one.<sup>3</sup> ich ȝam?<sup>4</sup> Interlined.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid morðe aquellen. [[f.113 <sup>b</sup> .c.1.]	mid morþre acwelle.
ah ne mihten heo þurh naþing ⁊	ac ne mihten hii þorh no þing ⁊
aquellen Vðer þene king.	a-cwelle Vther þane king.
ne þurh nane crafte ⁊	
cumen to him ne nahten. <sup>1</sup>	
þa iwærð <sup>2</sup> hit in ane time ⁊	þo iwarþ hit on an tyme ⁊
þe ræin him gon rine.	þe reyn him gan ryne.
þa cleopede þer a læche ⁊	þo faide a leche ⁊
þer he læi on bure.	þat þar was in boure.
to ane bur-cnihte ⁊	to one bourcniht ⁊
and hahte hine forð rihtes.	and hehte him forþriht.
irne to þere welle ⁊	heorne to þare wille ⁊
þe wes on væst þere halle.	þat waf bi þare halle.
and fetten þene <sup>3</sup> ænne ohte swain ⁊	and fette þare one ohte sweyn ⁊
to biwiten heo wið ræin.	for to witte hine for þe reyn.
For þe king ne mai on duȝeðe ⁊	For þe king ne may on worle ⁊
bruken nanes drenches.	dringke none fenche.
buten cald welles stræm ⁊	bote cold welles water ⁊
þat him if iquene <sup>4</sup> .	þat him his icweme.
þat if to his ufele ⁊	
aðelest alre drencche.	
þas speche uorð rihtes ⁊	¶ þeos speche forþ rihtes ⁊
iherden þas fix cnihtes.	i-horde þes cnihtes.

with murder; but they might not through anything kill Uther the king, 'nor through any craft might come to him.' Then happened it on a time, the rain it gan to pour; then 'called there [said] a leech, 'where he lay [who was there] in *the* chamber, to a chamber-knight, and ordered him forth-right to run to the well, that was 'near [by] the hall, and set there a good swain, [for] to keep it from [the] rain.—“For the king may not 'enjoy [drink] no draught in *the* world but *the* cold well 'stream [water], that is to him pleasant; 'that is for his sickness best of all draughts.’” This speech forth-right heard these 'six' knights,—to harm they were prompt,

<sup>1</sup> mahten ?<sup>2</sup> iwærð ?<sup>3</sup> þere ?<sup>4</sup> iqueme ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

to harme heo weoren wipte<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 and ut wenden bi-nihte.  
 forð to þere welle ⁊  
 þer ho<sup>2</sup> hærm wrorhten<sup>3</sup>.  
 Vt heo droȝen sone ⁊  
 amppullen scone.  
 ifulled mid attere ⁊  
 weten alre bittereft.  
 six amppullen fulle ⁊  
 heo ȝeoten i þan welle. 10  
 þa wes þa welle anan ⁊  
 al mid attre bi-gon.  
 þa weoren ful bliðe ⁊  
 þæ fwiken on heore liue.  
 & forð heo iwenden ⁊  
 ne durften heo þer bilæfen.  
 þa comen þer forð rihtes ⁊  
 tweien bur-cnihtes.  
 heo beren on heore honde ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 twæie bollen of golde. 20  
 Heo comen to þare welle ⁊  
 and heore bollen feolde.  
 aȝein heo gunnen wēde ⁊  
 to Vðer þan kinge.

to harme hii weren lihte ⁊  
 and hout eode bi nihte.  
 to þan ilke wille ⁊  
 þare hii harmef wrohte.  
 Vt hii drowe sone ⁊  
 fix ampulles.  
 mid hatter ifulled ⁊ [f. 91<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]

10 and caste hit in þan wille.

þo werē wel blipe ⁊  
 þe fwikes on hire lifue.  
 and forþ anon wende ⁊  
 ne dorsten hii þare bi-lefue.  
 þo com þar forþ rihtes ⁊  
 twei bourcnihtes.  
 and bere on hire honde ⁊  
 20 twei bolles of golde.  
 Hii come to þare welle ⁊  
 and hire bolles fulde.  
 aȝein hi gonne wende ⁊  
 to Vther þan kinge.

—and went out by night 'forth to the [to the same] well,—there they harm wrought. Out they drew soon 'fair [six] phials, filled with poison, 'of all liquids bitterest; six phials full' 'they poured [and cast it] in the well; 'then was the well anon all with poison infected.' Then were 'full [well] blithe the traitors in their life, and forth 'they [anon] went; they durst not there remain. Then came there forth-right two chamber-knights; 'they [and] bare in their hands two bowls of gold. They came to the well, and filled their bowls; back they gan wend to Uther the king, 'forth into the

<sup>1</sup> The letter þ is interlined.<sup>2</sup> Interlined.<sup>3</sup> worhten? wrohten?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

forð in to þan bure ⁊  
 þer he læi on bedde.  
 Hail seo þu Vðer ⁊  
 nu we beoð icumen her.  
 and we habbeoð þe ibroht ⁊  
 þat þu ær bedde.  
 clæld<sup>1</sup> welle water ⁊  
 bruc hit on wunne.  
 Vp araf þe feocke king ⁊  
 & fat on his bedde.  
 of þan watere he dronc ⁊  
 & fone he gon fweten.  
 his heorte gon to wakien ⁊  
 his nebigon to blakien.  
 his wombe gon to swollen ⁊  
 þe king gon to swelten.  
 Næs þer nan oðer ræd ⁊  
 þer wef Vðer king dæd.  
 alle heo iwurðen dede ⁊  
 þat drunken of þan watere.  
 þa þat hired ifah ⁊  
 þat forhȝen of þan kinge.  
 & of þas kinges monnē ⁊  
 þe mid attre weoren for-done.

and faide to Vther ⁊  
 Nou we beoþ icome her.  
 and we habbeþ ibroht ⁊  
 þat þou her bede.  
 cold welles water ⁊  
 brouket<sup>2</sup> mid winne.  
 Vp a-ros þe feake king ⁊  
 10 and fat on his bedde.  
 of þan watere he drong ⁊  
 and fone gan fwete.  
 his heorte gan to wokie ⁊  
 his neb bi-gan to blokie.  
 Nas þar non oþer read ⁊  
 bote þar iwarþ þe king dead.  
 and alle hii dead were ⁊  
 20 þat drongke of þan watere.

chamber, where he lay in bed.'—"Hail be thou, [and said to] Uther! Now we are come here, and we have brought 'thee,' what thou ere bade, cold well water; receive it with joy." Up arose the sick king, and sate on his bed; of the water he drank, and soon 'he' gan to sweat; his heart gan to weaken, his face began to blacken, 'his belly gan to swell, the king gan to burst. There was no other hap, [but] there was 'Uther [the] king dead; [and] all they were dead, who drank of the water. 'When the attendants saw the calamity of the king, and of the kings men, who with poison were

<sup>1</sup> cæld?<sup>2</sup> brouk hit?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þa wenden to þere welle :  
cnihtes þe weoren snælle.  
& þa welle for-duden :  
mid derfulle swincche.

mid eorðe & mid stanen :  
stepne hul makedē.

þa nomen þa duȝeðe :  
þene king dede.  
vnimete uolc :

& forð hine uereden. 10  
stið imodede men : [f.114.c.1.]

in to Stanhengē.

& hine þer bureden :  
bi leofen his broðer.  
side bi fide :

beiene heo þer liggeð.

þa com hit al to-gadere :

þat hæht wes on londe.

eorles & beornes :

& boc-ilarede men. 20

heo comen to Lundene :

to muchelere huftinge.

Nomen heom to rade :

þeines riche.

þat heo wolden ouer fæ :

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þo wende to þan wille :  
cnihtes fwiþe snelle.  
and þane wel dutte :

mid stanes and mid erþe.

þo nemen hii alle :  
þane king deade.

and forþ hine ladde.

into Stonhenge.

and hine þare leyde :

bi his leofue broþer.

side bi fide :

þare hii boþe liggeþ.

þo comen to-gadere : [c.2.]

þe heheft of þis londe.

and nomen alle to rade :

þat hii fende wolde.

destroyed,' then went to the well knights 'that were [exceeding] active, and 'destroyed [stopt up] the well 'with painful labor,' with earth and with stones 'made a steep hill.' Then 'the people [they all] took the dead king, — 'numerous folk,'—and forth him carried 'the stiff-minded men' into Stonehenge, and there 'buried [laid] him, by his dear brother ; side by side there they lie both. Then came 'it all' together, 'that was [the] highest 'in the [of this] land, 'earls and barons, and book-learned men ; they came to London, to a mickle husting,' [and] 'the rich thanes' betook 'them' [all] to counsel, that they would send 'messengers over sea' into 'Britanny

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xliii.

fenden fonde.

in to Bruttainne ⁊

after bezft alre ȝeoȝeðe.

þa a þiffere weorlden-riche ⁊

a þan dæȝen weore.

Ærður ihaten ⁊

bezft alre cnihten.

and fuggen þat he cumen fone ⁊

to hiȝ kinedome.

for dæd him wes Vðer ⁊

al swa Aurilien wes ær.

and Vðer Pendragune ⁊

nefde nenne oðerne fune.

þat mihte after his dæȝen ⁊

halden Bruttes to laȝe.

mid wurðſcipe halden ⁊

&amp; þifne kinedom walden.

For ȝæt weoren in þiffen londe ⁊

Sæxes at-ſtonden.

Colgrim þe kene ⁊

and moni þuſend of his iuerē.

þa ofte ure Bruttes ⁊

makeden huſele burſtes.

Bruttes ful ſœ ⁊

þreo biſcopes nomen.

into Britaynes lond ⁊

after Arthur þan ſtrong.

and bidden hine fone ⁊

come to his kinedome.

10 for dead was Vther Pendragon ⁊

nadde he non oþer fone.

and þat mihte after his daiȝe ⁊

holde Bruttus to lawe.

mid worſipe holden ⁊

and þifne kinedom welden.

For ȝet weren in þiſſe londe ⁊

Saxif at-ſtonde.

Colgrim þe kene ⁊

and mani þuſend of his ivere.

þat ofte oure Bruttus ⁊

makede ſcondes.

Bruttus wel fone ⁊

þreo biſſopes neme.

Colgrim.

[Britannys land], after 'the best of all youth that was in the worlds realm in those days, named' Arthur [the strong], 'the best of all knights; and 'say that he should [bid him] come soon to his kingdom; for dead was 'he' Uther [Pendragon], 'as Aurelie was ere', 'and Uther Pendragon [he] had no other son, [and] that might after his days hold by law (govern) the Britons, maintain with worship, and rule this kingdom. For yet were in this land the Saxons settled; Colgrim the keen, and many thousands of his companions, that oft made to our Britons 'evil' injuries. The Britons 'full [well] soon took three bishops, and seven riders, 'strong in [high of] wis-

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix. . . .

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and ridæres feouene ⁊  
 ræiȝe on wiſdome.  
 forð heo gunnen buȝen ⁊  
 ī to Bruttaine.  
 & heo ful ſone ⁊  
 to Ærðure comen. [c. 2.]  
 Hail ſeo þu Arður ⁊  
 aðeleſt cnihten.  
 Vðer þe græten ⁊  
 þa he ſculde iwihten. 10  
 & bæd þat þu ſculdeſt ⁊  
 a Bruttē þe ſeoluen.  
 halden laȝen rihte ⁊  
 & hælpen þine folke.  
 and wihten þine kinedom ⁊  
 ſwa god king ſculden don.  
 þine ſeond flæmen ⁊  
 & driuen heom of londen.  
 & he bad þe to fultume ⁊  
 þene milde godeſ fune. 20  
 þat þu moſtes wel don ⁊  
 & þat lond of godde a-ſon.  
 For dæd iſ Vðer Pendragun ⁊

and ridares ſouene ⁊  
 heh of wiſdome.  
 forþ hii gonne bouwe ⁊  
 in to Brutayne.  
 and hii fol ſone ⁊  
 to Arthur come.  
 Hayl beo þou Arthur ⁊

þe king þe gan grete.  
 þo he wende folde ⁊  
 vt of þiſe lifue.  
 and bad þat þou foldeſt ⁊  
 holde gode lawes.

and witie þine kinedom ⁊  
 fo god king folde don.  
 þine freond<sup>1</sup> fleome ⁊  
 2  
 And beo þe nou to foltome ⁊  
 20 þane milde godes ſone.  
 þat þou mote wel don ⁊  
 and of god vnderfon.  
 for dead hiſ Vter þe king ⁊

dom; forth they gan proceed into Brittany, and they full soon came to Arthur.—“Hail be thou, Arthur, ‘noblest of knights!’ Uther thee greeted [The king gan thee greet], when he should ‘depart (die) [go out of this life], and bade that thou shouldest ‘thyself in Britain’ hold ‘right [good] laws, ‘and help thy folk,’ and defend ‘this [thy] kingdom, as good king should do; defeat thy enemies, ‘and drive them from land.’ And ‘he prayed [be] the mild Son of God ‘to be’ to thee [now] in aid, that thou mightest do well, and ‘the land’ receive from God. For dead is Uther

<sup>1</sup> ſeond ?<sup>2</sup> A line is here wanting.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& þu ært Ærður hif fune.  
 & dæd if þe oðer ⁊  
 Aurilien hif brøðer.  
 þus heo gūnen tellen ⁊  
 & Arður sæt ful stille.  
 ænne stunde he wes blac ⁊  
 and on heuwe fwiðe wak.  
 ane while he wef reod ⁊  
 and reoufede on heorte.  
 þa hit alles up brac ⁊  
 hit wef god þat he spac.  
 þuf him sæide þer riht ⁊  
 Arður þe aðele cniht.  
 Louerd crift godes fune ⁊  
 beon uf nu a fultume.  
 þat ich mote on life ⁊  
 goddes laȝen halden.  
 Fiftene ȝere wes Ardur<sup>1</sup> ald ⁊  
 þa þif tiðende him wes itald.  
 & alle heo weoren wel bitoȝen ⁊  
 for he wes fwiðe iðoȝe.  
 Ærður forð rihtef ⁊  
 cleopede hif cnihtef.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and þou hart Arthur his [fone].  
 and dead his þe oþer ⁊ [c92.c.1.]  
 Aurelie his broþer.  
 þus hii gonne telle ⁊  
 and Arthur fat stille.  
 one while he was blac ⁊  
 an oþer wile he stille fat.  
 10 þo hit alles vp brac ⁊  
 hit was god þat he spac.  
 and þus him saide forþriht ⁊  
 Arthur þe gode cniht.  
 Louerd crift godef fone ⁊  
 beo me nou to foltome.  
 þat ich mote on lifue ⁊  
 gode lawes lofue.  
 Fiftene ȝer was Arthur holde ⁊  
 þo þes tyðinge him was itold.  
 and alle þe ȝeres weren wel bi-toȝe ⁊  
 21 for he was wel þoȝe.  
 Arthur forþrihtes ⁊  
 cleopede his cnihtes.

Pendragon [the king], and thou art Arthur, his son; and dead is the other, Aurelie his brother." Thus they gan tell, and Arthur sate 'full' still; one while he was wan, 'and in hue exceeding pale'; 'one while he was red, and was moved in heart [an other while he sate still]. When it all brake forth, it was good that he spake; [and] thus said he 'there [forth]-right, Arthur the 'noble [good] knight: "Lord Christ, Gods Son, be to 'us [me] now in aid, that I may in life 'hold Gods [love good] laws!" Arthur was fifteen years old, when this tiding was told to him, and all 'they [the years] were well employed, for he was 'much [well] instructed. Arthur

<sup>1</sup> Arður?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& hæhte æuer ælc nemon : [L114<sup>b</sup>.c.1.] and hehte euerech man :

bonnien hif weppnen.

louie<sup>1</sup> his wepne.

&amp; heore hors fadelie :

and hire hors fadelie :

hiȝendliche ſwiðe.

hiȝenliche ſwiȝe.

for he wolde buȝe :

for he wolde wende :

to þiffere Brutene.

to þiffere londe.

To þere ſæ wenden :

To þare ſée wende :

ſele þeines.

ſelie cnihtes.

at Mihæles munte :

at Mihȝeleſ munte :

mid muchelere uerede.

10 mid mochelere ferde.

þa ſæ heo<sup>2</sup> ſættan a þat ſtrond :

þe ſee ȝam ſette a þan ſtronde :

at Suð-hamtune heo comen alond.

at Suþhamtone hii come a londe.

Forð hī gon ride :

Forþ hii wende rihtef :

Arður þe riche.

toward Cireceſtres.

riht to Selechæſtre :

þer him ſel þuhte.

þer wes<sup>3</sup> Bruttene weored :

þar was Bruttene ferde :

baldeliche iſomned.

boldeliche igadered.

Muchel wes þa bliſſe :

Moche was þe bliſſe :

þa Arður com to burhȝe.

20 þo Arthur com to borewc.

þa wes bemene blæſt :

&amp; ſwiðe glade beornes.

þer heo hounen to kinge :

þar hii hounen to kinge :

forth-right called his knights, and bade every man get ready his weapons, and saddle their horses very speedily, for he would go to this 'Britain [land]. To the sea proceeded *the* good 'thanes [knights], at Michaels mount, with a mickle host; the sea set them on the strand, at Southampton they came ashore. Forth 'he gan ride, Arthur the powerful, right to Silchester [they went right toward Cirencester]; 'there *it* seemed good to him; 'there was *the* host of Britons boldly 'assembled [gathered]. Great was the bliss when Arthur came to *the* burgh; 'then was blast of trumpets, and men most glad';

<sup>1</sup> banni?<sup>2</sup> heom?<sup>3</sup> The last letter of this word is *sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Arðūr þene ȝūge.  
 Þa þe Arðūr wes king ⁊  
 hærne<sup>1</sup> nu feollic þing.  
 he wes mete-cuſti ⁊  
 ælche quike monne.  
 cniht mid þan beſte ⁊  
 wunder ane kene.  
 he wes þan ȝungen for fader ⁊  
 þan alden for frouer.  
 and wið þan vnwiſe ⁊      10  
 wunder ane ſturnne.  
 woh him wes wūder lað ⁊  
 and þat rihte a leof.  
 Ælc of his birlen ⁊  
 & of hiſ bur-þæinen.  
 & hiſ ber-cnihtes ⁊  
 gold beren an honden.  
 to ruggen and to bedde ⁊  
 iſcrud mid gode webbe.  
 Neſde he neuere nænne coc ⁊      20  
 þ he neſ keppe ſwiðe<sup>2</sup> god.      þat he naſ kempe god.  
 neuær nanes cnihtes ſwein ⁊ [c.2.]  
 þat he næs bald þein.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Arthur þan ȝonge.  
**P**O Arthur was king ⁊ [c.2.] [Arðū]r.  
 hercne nou ſellech þing.  
 he was mete-couſti ⁊  
 to eche cwike manne.  
 cniht mid þan beſte ⁊  
 wonder one kene.  
 he was þan ȝonge for fader ⁊  
 þane holde for froure.  
 and wiþ þan onwiſe ⁊      10  
 wonderliche ſteorne.  
 woh him was ſwiþe loþ ⁊  
 and riht him was ſwiþe leof.

there they raised to be king Arthur the young. When Arthur was king,—  
 hearken now a marvellous thing;—he was liberal to each man alive, knight  
 with the best, wondrously keen! He was to the young for father, to the old  
 for comforter, and with the unwise wonderfully stern; wrong was to him  
 exceeding loathsome, and 'the' right 'ever [was to him exceeding] dear.  
 'Each of his cupbearers, and of his chamber-thanes, and his chamber-  
 knights, bare gold in hand, to back and to bed, clad with gold web.' 'He  
 [Arthur] had 'never any [no] cook, that he was not champion 'most' good;  
 'never any knights swain, that he was not bold thane!' The king held

<sup>1</sup> hærne?<sup>2</sup> ſwiðe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þe king heold al hiſ hired :  
 mid hæȝere blife.  
 & mid ſwulche þinges :  
 he ouer-com alle kingef.  
 mid ræhȝere ſtrengðe :  
 & mid riche-dome.  
 ſwulche weoren hiſ-cuſtes :  
 þat al uolc hit wuſte.  
 Nu wes Arður god king :  
 hiſ hired hine lufede.  
 æc hit wes cuð wide :  
 of hiſ kinedome.  
 þe king huld i Lundene :  
 ane muchele huſtinge.  
 þer to weoren ilaðede :  
 hiſ leond-cnihtes alle.  
 riche men and hæne :  
 to hæȝen þan king.  
 þa þe hit weſ al icume :  
 uolc vnimete.  
 vp araef Arður :  
 aðeleſt kingen.  
 & lette bringen him biſoren :  
 halidomes wel icoren.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe king heold al his folk :  
 to-gadere mid bliſſe.  
 and mid ſoche þinges :  
 he ouer-com alle kýmges<sup>1</sup>.  
 mid reȝere ſtrengþe :  
 and mid richedome.

Nou was Arthur god king :  
 and al folk hine louede.  
 þat hit was widene coup :  
 of hiſ kinedome.  
 - þe king heold in Londene :  
 one mochele ſpeche.  
 þar to weren ilaðed :  
 hiſ riche cnihtef alle.

þo þe hii were alle icome :  
 folk onimete.  
 vp a-ros Arthur þe gode king :

and lette bringe halidomes to him.

all his folk [together] with 'great' bliss; and with such things he overcame all kings, with fierce strength and with treasure. 'Such were his qualities, that all folk it knew.' Now was Arthur good king; 'his people [and all folk] loved him; 'eke [so that] it was known wide, of his kingdom. The king held in London a mickle husting; thereto were arrived all his [rich] knights, 'rich men and poor, to honor the king.' When that 'it was [they were] all come, a numerous folk; up arose Arthur 'noblest of kings [the good king], and caused to be brought 'before [to] him reliques 'well

<sup>1</sup> R. kynges.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þer to gon cneoli ⁊  
 þe king fume<sup>1</sup> þrie.  
 n<sup>o</sup>te noht his duȝeðe ⁊  
 what he deme wolde.  
 Arður heold up his riht hond ⁊  
 ænne að he þer swor.  
 þat næuere bi hif liue ⁊  
 for nanes monnes lære.  
 ne fculden ine Brutene ⁊  
 Sæxes wurðe bliðe.  
 londes beon wurðen ⁊  
 no wurðſcipe bruke.  
 ah he heom wolde flemen ⁊  
 for heo weoren iuæid wið him.  
 floȝen Vðer Pendragune ⁊  
 þe wes Coſtaces<sup>3</sup> fune.  
 swa heo duden þene oder<sup>4</sup> ⁊  
 Aurilien hif broðer. [L115.c.1.]  
 for þi heo weoren on londe ⁊  
 laðeſt alre uolke.  
 Arður forð rihtes ⁊  
 nom hif wiſe cnihtef.  
 weore heom lef weore heom lað ⁊

and gan þar to cneoly ⁊  
 þe king fone þries.  
 nuſte noht his cnihtef ⁊  
 wat he ſeggen wolde.  
 Arthur held vp his rih<sup>2</sup> hond ⁊  
 an oþ he ſwor a-non.  
 þat neuere bi hif lifue ⁊  
 for none mannes lore. [L92<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 ne ſolde in Brutayne ⁊  
 10 Saxeſſe bliþe worþe.  
 ne londes brouke ⁊  
 ne homes habbe.  
 ac he ȝam wolde fleme ⁊  
 and falle heo to grunde.  
 For hii floȝe Vther þane king ⁊  
 þat was fader min.  
 ſo hii dude þan oþer ⁊  
 Aurelie his broþer.  
 for þi hii me beoþ in londe ⁊  
 20 loþeſt alre folke.

Arthur forþ rihtes ⁊  
 nam his wiſeſte cnihtes.  
 were heom leof were heom loþ ⁊

Arður.

choice'; [and] thereto the king gan soon to kneel thrice;—his 'people  
 [knights] knew not what he would 'pronounce [say]. Arthur held up his  
 right hand, an oath he 'there [anon] swore, that never by his life, for no  
 mans lore, should *the* Saxons become blithe in Britain, [nor] 'be land-  
 holders [possess lands], nor 'enjoy worship [have homes]; but he would drive  
 them out, 'for they were at enmity with him; [and fell them to ground. For  
 they] slew Uther 'Pendragon [the king], who was 'son of Constance [my  
 father]; so they did the other, Aurelie, his brother; therefore they 'were  
 [are to me] in land loathest of all folk. Arthur forth-right took his 'wise

<sup>1</sup> fune?<sup>2</sup> riht?<sup>3</sup> R. Coſtances.<sup>4</sup> oþer?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

alle heo fsworen þene að.  
 trouliche þat heo woldē ⁊  
 mid Arðure halden.  
 & wreken þene king Vðer ⁊  
 þat Sæxes aqualden her.  
 Arður hif writen fende ⁊  
 wide ȝeond hif londe.  
 after alle þan cnihten ⁊  
 þe he biȝiten mihte.  
 þat heo ful fone ⁊ 10  
 to þan kinge comen.  
 & he heom wolde on londe ⁊  
 leofliche at-halden.  
 fciþien heom mid londe ⁊  
 mid feoluere & mid golde.  
 Forð þe kig ferde ⁊  
 mid vnimete uerde.  
 folc he ledde fællīc ⁊  
 & ferde riht to Eouerwic.  
 þer he læi ane niht ⁊ 20  
 amærwe he ferde forð riht.  
 þer he wufte Colgrim ⁊  
 & hif iuerē mid him.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

alle hii fswore þan ilke oh.  
 treuliche þat i<sup>1</sup> wolde ⁊  
 mid Arthur holde.  
 and wreke þan king Vther ⁊  
 þat hii acwelde her.  
 Arthur his wretes fende ⁊  
 to manicunne londe.  
 after alle þe cnihtes ⁊  
 þat he bi-ȝete mihte.  
 10 þat hii fol fone ⁊  
 to þan kinge come.  
 and he ȝam wolde on londe ⁊  
 loueliche at-holde.

Forþ þe king wende ⁊  
 mid onimete ferde.  
 folk he ladde fellich ⁊  
 and wende riht to Euerwich.  
 20 þar he laȝ one niht ⁊  
 a morwe he wende forþriht.  
 þar he wifte Colgrim ⁊  
 and his i-veres mid him.

[wisest] knights; were *it* lief to them were *it* loath to them, they all swore the [same] oath, that they would truly hold with Arthur, and avenge the king Uther, whom *the* Saxons [they] killed here. Arthur sent his writs 'wide over his [to many kind of] land, after all the knights that he might obtain; that they full soon should come to the king, and he would in land lovingly maintain them; 'reward them with land, with silver and with gold.' Forth went the king with a numerous host; he led a surprising multitude, and marched right to York. There he lay one night; on *the* morrow he proceeded forth-right where he knew Colgrim *to be*, and his

<sup>1</sup> hii?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Swedððen<sup>1</sup> Octa wes of-flaȝen ⁊

&amp; idon of lif-dæȝen.

þe wes Hengeſtes fune ⁊

vt of Sæxlond icumen.

Colgrim wes þe hæhſt mon ⁊

þat ut of Saxlond com.

aft<sup>2</sup> Hengeſte ⁊

&amp; Horſe hiſ broðer.

&amp; Octa &amp; Offa ⁊

and heore iuere Ebiffa.

Heold a þan ilke dæȝen ⁊

Colgrim Sæxes to laȝen.

ladde &amp; radde ⁊

mid ræȝere ſtrengðe.

muchel wes þat moncun ⁊

þat ferde mid Colgrim. [c.2.]

Colg<sup>1</sup>m iherde tidende ⁊of Arðude<sup>2</sup> þā kige.

þat he touward him com ⁊

and wolde him vfel don.

Colgrim hine biþohte ⁊

whæt he dō mahte.

&amp; bonnede hiſ uerde ⁊

ȝeond al þan norð ærde.

Colgri was þe baldeſte man ⁊

þat vt of Saxlond com.

after Hengeſt and Octa ⁊

10 Ebiffa and Offa.

Heold a þan ilke dæȝe ⁊

Colgrim Saxen to laȝe.

ladde and radde ⁊ [c.2.]

mid rehȝere ſtrengþe.

moche was þe mankun ⁊

þat ferde mid Colgrim.

Colgrim iherde tȝdinge ⁊

of Arthur þan kinge.

þat he toward him com ⁊

20 and wolde him vuel don.

Colgrim hine bi-þohte ⁊

wat he don mihte.

and bannede hiſ ferde ⁊

oueral þan Norþ ende.

comrades with him. 'Since Octa was slain, and deprived of life-day, who was Hengests son, out of Saxland come,' Colgrim was the 'noblest [boldest] man that came out of Saxland, after Hengest, and 'Hors, his brother, and' Octa, 'and Ossa, and their companion Ebissa [Ebissa and Ossa]. At that day Colgrim ruled *the* Saxons by authority, led and counselled, with fierce strength; mickle was the multitude that marched with Colgrim! Colgrim heard tiding of Arthur the king, that he came toward him, and would do to him evil. Colgrim bethought him what he might do, and assembled his host over all the North 'land

<sup>1</sup> feoððen?<sup>2</sup> R. Arðure.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þer liðen to-fomne ⁊  
 alle Scotleode.  
 Peohtes & Sæxes ⁊  
 fiȝen heom to-gæderes.  
 & moniennes cunnes men ⁊  
 uuleden Colgrimē.  
 Forð he gon fufen ⁊  
 mid ṽnimete verde.  
 to-ȝaines Arðure ⁊  
 aðeleſt kingen.  
 he þohte to quellen ⁊  
 þe king on hiſ þeodē.  
 & hiſ folc ualden ⁊  
 uolden to grūden.  
 & fetten al þiſ kine-lond ⁊  
 an hiſ aȝere hond.  
 & fallen to þan grūde ⁊  
 Arður þene ȝunge.  
 Forð wende Colgrī ⁊  
 & hiſ ferde mid him.  
 & wende mid hiſ ferde ⁊  
 þat he com to ane watere.  
 þat water iſ ihaten Duglaſ ⁊  
 duȝeðen hit aquelle.  
 þer com Arður him aȝein ⁊

Dug[las].

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þar comen to-gaderes ⁊  
 al Scotleode.  
 Peuteſ and Saxiſ ⁊  
 wende heom to-gaderes.  
 and maniane cunnes man ⁊  
 folwede Colgrim.  
 Forþ he gan foufe ⁊  
 mid onimete ferde.  
 to-ȝeineſ Arthure ⁊  
 10 baldeſt alre kinge.  
 he þohte to cwelle ⁊  
 þane king in hiſ londe.  
 .  
 Forþ wende Colgrim ⁊  
 20 and hiſ Saxiſſe mid him.  
 and wende mid ferde ⁊  
 þat hii come to one watere.  
 þat hiſ ihote Duglaſ ⁊  
 manie þare fulle.  
 þar com Arthur him aȝein ⁊

[end]. There came together all *the* Scottish people; Peohtes and Saxons joined them together, and men of many kind followed Colgrim. Forth he gan to march with *an* immense force, against Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings; he thought to kill the king in his land, 'and fell his folk to *the* ground, and set all this kingdom in his own hand, and fell to the ground Arthur the young.' Forth marched Colgrim, and his 'army [Saxons] with him, and proceeded with 'his' host until 'he [they] came to a water; 'the water [that] is named Duglas; 'people it destroyed [many there fell]! There came Arthur against him, ready 'with his [to]

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xliii.

ȝaru mid hiſ fehte<sup>1</sup>.  
 in ane brade forde ⁊  
 þa ferden heom imetten.  
 faſtliche on-floȝen ⁊  
 ſnelle heore kenpen<sup>3</sup>.  
 feollen þa uæie ⁊  
 uolden to grunde.  
 þer wes muchel blod gute ⁊  
 balu þer wes riue.  
 bruſtlede ſcæftes ⁊  
 beornes þer ueollen. [f.115<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 þat iſæh Arður ⁊  
 on mode him wes unneðe.  
 Arður hine biðohte ⁊  
 whæt he dō mahte.  
 & thehte hine a bacward ⁊  
 in enne uald brade.  
 þa wenden hiſ feond ⁊  
 þat he flæn walde.  
 þa wes glad Colgrim ⁊  
 and al hiſ ferde mid him.  
 heo wenden þat Arður ⁊  
 mid arhredðe weore aſallæd þere.  
 & tuȝen ouer þat water ⁊

redi to fihte.  
 in one brode forde ⁊  
 þe ferde hire hii-mette<sup>2</sup>.  
 faſteliche hii flowen ⁊  
 follen þe veie.  
 þar was moche blod iȝote ⁊  
 and wowe þar was riue.  
 þis iſeh Arthur ⁊  
 þat ȝam lute lofuede.  
 and him bi-þohte ⁊  
 wat he don mihte.  
 and teh hine a bacward.  
 in one brode felde.  
 þo wende hiſ fon ⁊  
 þat he fleon wolde.  
 þo was glad Colgrim ⁊  
 and hiſ iweref mid him.  
 and after him wende ⁊

*Primum  
bellum Ar-  
thuri.*

fight; on a broad ford the hosts them met; vigorously 'their brave champions  
 attacked [they slew]; the fated fell 'to the ground!' There was much  
 blood shed, [and] woe there was rife; 'shivered shafts; men there fell!'

Arthur saw 'that; in mood he was uneasy; Arthur [this, who loved them  
 little, and] bethought him what he might do, and drew him backward on  
 a broad field (plain). When his foes weened that he would fly, then was  
 Colgrim glad, and 'all his host [his comrades] with him; 'they weened that  
 Arthur had with fear retreated there,' and 'passed over the water [after him

<sup>1</sup> *At first written ferde.*<sup>2</sup> ȝam i-mette?<sup>3</sup> kempen?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

alfe heo wode weoren.  
 þa Arður þat isah ⁊  
 þat Colgrim him wes fwa neh.  
 & heo weoren beien ⁊  
 bihalues þan wateren.  
 þuf seide Arður ⁊  
 aðelest kingen.  
 Ifeo ȝe mine Bruttes ⁊  
 here uf bilalfues<sup>1</sup>.  
 uī iuan uulle ⁊  
 crist heom aualle.  
 Colgrim þene stronge ⁊  
 ut of Sæx-londe.  
 His cun i þisse lode ⁊  
 ure ælderne aqualden.  
 ah nu if þe dæi icumen ⁊  
 þe drihten haueð idemed.  
 þat he scal þat lif leofen ⁊  
 & leofien his freonden.  
 oðer we sculle dæde beon ⁊  
 ne muȝe we hine quic ifeon.  
 scullen Sæxisce men ⁊  
 sorȝen ibiden.  
 & we wreke wurhliche ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

afe he wod were.  
 þo Arthur þat iseh ⁊  
 þat Colgrim him was fo neh.  
 þat hii weren beȝne ⁊  
 in on half þan watere.  
 þo faide Arthur ⁊  
 and spac to his cnihtes.  
 Ne se ȝe mine Bruttus ⁊  
 her vs bi-halues.  
 10 houre ifon folle ⁊  
 crist ȝam a-cwelle.  
 Colgrim þane strōge ⁊  
 vt of Saxlonde.  
 His cun in þisse londe ⁊  
 oure eldre a-fulde.  
 ac nou his þe dai i-come ⁊  
 þat drihte haueþ idemid.  
 þat hii hit folle a-bugge ⁊  
 of<sup>a</sup> ich mote libbe.  
 20 oþer ich wolle dead bean ⁊  
 ne maȝ ich hine cwik i-sen.  
 solle Saxisse men ⁊  
 forewe ibide.

pursued], as if 'they [he] were mad. When Arthur saw that, that Colgrim was so nigh to him, 'and [that] they were both 'beside [on one side of] the water, 'thus [then] said Arthur, 'noblest of kings [and spake to his knights]: " See ye [not], my Britons, here beside us, our full foes,—Christ destroy them!—Colgrim the strong, out of Saxland? His kin in this land killed our ancestors; but now is the day come, that *the* Lord hath appointed, that 'he shall lose the life, and lose his friends [they shall pay for it, if I may live], or *else* 'we shall [I will] be dead; 'we [I] may not see him alive! *The* Saxish men shall abide sorrow, 'and we avenge worthily our friends

<sup>1</sup> R. bihalfues.<sup>2</sup> ȝef?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ure wine-maies.

Vp bræid Arður his sceld :  
foren to his breoften.

&amp; he gō to rufien :

swa þe runie wulf. [c. 2.]

þenne he cumeð of holte :

bi-honged mid snawe.

and þencheð to biten :

swulc deor swa him likeð.

Arður þa cleopede :

to leofe his cnihten.

Ford<sup>2</sup> we biliue :

þeief ohte.

alle someð<sup>3</sup> heom to :

alle we sculleð wel don.

&amp; heo uorð hælden :

swa þe hæȝe wude.

þēne wind wode :

weieð hine mid mæine.

Fluȝen ouer þe woldef :

þritti þufend sceldef.

&amp; smiten a Colgrimes cnihtes :

þat þa corðe aȝæn quehte.

Vp brayd Arthur his seald :  
forn to his breofte.

and he gan to rese :

so þe wode wolf.

wane he comeþ of holte :

bi-honge mid snowe.

and þencheþ to bite :

woch seap þat him likeþ.

10 Arthur þo cleop<sup>1</sup> :

to leoue his cnihtes.

Wende we blifue :

and do ȝam vt of lifue.

20 Floȝen ouer þe feldes :

þritti þufend feldes.

and smiten Colgrim his cnihtes :

þat þe erþe aȝein cwehte.

(or relatives).” Up caught Arthur his shield, before his breast, and he gan to rush as the howling wolf, when he cometh from *the* wood, behung with snow, and thinketh to bite ‘such beasts as [which sheep that] he liketh. Arthur then called to his dear knights: “Advance we quickly, ‘brave thanes! all together *towards* them; we all shall do well, and they forth fly, as the high wood, when *the* furious wind heaveth it with strenght [and put them out of life]!” Flew over the ‘wealds [fields] thirty thousand shields, and smote ‘on’ ‘Colgrims [Colgrim his] knights, so that the earth shook again. ‘Brake *the* broad spears, shivered shields;’ *the* Saxish men

<sup>1</sup> cleopede?<sup>2</sup> Ford?<sup>3</sup> fomed?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

breken braden speren ⁊

bruftleden sceldes.

feollen Sæxifce men ⁊

folden to grunden.

þat ifah Colgrim ⁊

þer uore wa wes him.

þe alre hendeste mon ⁊

þe ut of Sexlonde com.

Colgrim gon to flænne ⁊

feondliche swiðe.

&amp; his horf hine bar ⁊

mid hæhære strengðe.

ouer þat water deope ⁊

&amp; scelde hine wið dæðe.

Saxes gunnen finken ⁊

forȝe heom wes ȝiueðe.

Arður wende his speref ord ⁊

and for-stod heð þene uord.

þer adruncke Sexef ⁊

fulle seoue þufend.

Summe heo gunnen wondrien ⁊

swa doð þe wilde cron.

i þan moruenne ⁊

þenne his flocc if awēmed. [f. 116. c. 1.] wane his fliht his a-wemmid.

& him halded<sup>1</sup> after ⁊

folle Saxiffe men ⁊

folde to grunde.

þat ifeh Colgrim ⁊

þar fore wo was him.

and he gan to fleonde ⁊ [c. 2.]

10 wonderliche swiþe.

and his horf hine bar ⁊

mid mochelere strengþe.

ouer þat water deope ⁊

and readde hine fram deaþe.

Arthur to þan watere ⁊

hiȝede swiþe.

and tornde þe speref hord ⁊

and forstod ȝam þane ford.

þar ha-drongke Saxiffe ⁊

20 folle soue þufend.

Somme hii gonne wondri ⁊

fo doþ þe wilde crane.

in þan mor-fenne ⁊

and him holdeþ after ⁊

fell to the ground! Colgrim saw that, therefore he was woe,—‘the fairest man of all that came out of Saxland.’ ‘Colgrim [and he] gan to flee, exceeding quickly; and his horse bare him with great strength over the deep water, and saved him from death. ‘*The Saxons* gan to sink,—sorrow was given to them!’ Arthur [hastened speedily to the water, and] turned ‘his [the] spears point, and hindered to them the ford; there *the Saxons* were drowned, full seven thousand. Some they gan wander, as the wild crane doth in the moorfen, when his flight is impaired, and swift hawks pursue

<sup>1</sup> haldeð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

hauekes swifte.  
 hūdes ī þā reode ⁊  
 mid reouðe hine imeteð.  
 þēne nis him neouðer god ⁊  
 no þat lond no þat flod.  
 hauekes hine smiteð ⁊  
 hundes hine biteð.  
 þenne bið þe kinewurðe foʒel ⁊  
 fæie on his fiðe.  
 Colgrim ouer feldes ⁊ 10  
 flæh him biliuef.  
 þat he com to Eouerwic ⁊  
 riden swiðe fellic.  
 he wenden into burȝe ⁊  
 & fafte heo biclufde.  
 hafuede he binnen ⁊  
 ten þufend monnen.  
 burh-men mid þa bezfte ⁊  
 þe him bihalues weoren.  
 Arður halde after ⁊ 20  
 mid þritti þufend cnihten.  
 & ferde riht to Eouerwic ⁊  
 mid folke swiðe fellic.  
 and bi-læi Colgrim ⁊

hauekes swifte.  
 houndes in þan reode ⁊  
 mid rouþe hine imeteþ.  
 þanne nis him noþer god ⁊  
 no þat lond ne þat flod.  
 hauekes hine smiteþ ⁊  
 houndes hine biteþ.  
 þan his þe kineworþe foʒel ⁊  
 adrad in eche fide.  
 Colgrim ouer feldes ⁊  
 fleþ him wel swiþe.  
 þat he com to Euerwich ⁊  
 ride swiþe fellich.  
 he wende in to borewe ⁊  
 and fafte hine bi-tunde.  
 and hadde þar ine ⁊  
 ten þufend manne.

Colgrim.

20 Arthur him heol<sup>1</sup> after ⁊  
 mid þritti þoufend cnihtes.  
 and bi-lay at Euerwich Colgrim ⁊

after him, *and* hounds with mischief meet him in the reeds; then is neither good to him, nor the land nor the flood; *the* hawks him smite, *the* hounds him bite, then is the royal fowl 'at his death-time [adread on each side]! Colgrim fled him over *the* fields 'quickly [well speedily], until he came to York, riding most marvellously; he went into the burgh, and fast it inclosed; 'he [and] had within ten thousand men, 'burghers with the best; that were beside him.' Arthur pursued after [him] with thirty thousand knights, 'and marched right to York with folk very numerous,' and besieged Colgrim [at York], who defended *it* against him. Seven nights therefore

<sup>1</sup> heold?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

	þe weorrede aȝæin him.	þat werrede a-ȝein him.
	Seouen niht þer biuoren ⁊	Soueniht þar bi-vore ⁊
	wes suðward ifaren.	was suþward ivare.
Baldulf.	Baldolf þe hende ⁊	Baldolf þe hende ⁊
Colgrim.	broðer Colgrimes.	Colgrimes broþer.
	and lai bi þare sæ brimme ⁊	and laȝ bi féé fellich ⁊
	& abad Childrichen.	abidende Cheldrich.
Childric.	Childric wes i þan dāzen ⁊	Cheldrich was a þane dāȝe ⁊ [f. 99. c. l.]
	cæiser of riche laȝen.	kaiser of heȝe laȝe.
	inne Alemaine ⁊	10 in Alemaine ⁊
	þat aȝel wes hiȝ aȝene.	þat lond was his owe.
	þa iherde Baldolf ⁊	þo ihorde Baldolf ⁊
	þer he bi sæ lai.	þar he bi féé laȝ.
	þat Arður hafde inne Eouerwic ⁊	þat Arthur hadde in Euerwich ⁊
	Colgrim bi-clufed.	Colgrim bi-clufed.
	Baldolf hæfde ibonned ⁊ [c. 2.]	Baldolf hadde ibanned ⁊
	teouen þuȝed monnen.	soue þuȝend manne.
	baldere beornnen ⁊	
	þe bi sæ leien.	
	heo nomen heom to ræden ⁊ 20	and nemem him <sup>1</sup> to reade ⁊
	þat aȝæin heo woldē riden.	þat aȝen hii wolde ride.
	and bi-læuen Childric ⁊	and bi-léue Cheldrich ⁊
	& faren in to Eouerwic.	and wende riht to Euerwich.
	& fehten wið <sup>2</sup> Arðure ⁊	and fihte wiþ Arthur ⁊
	& aquellen al hiȝ duȝeðe.	and a-cwelle his doȝeþe.

Baldolf the fair, Colgrims brother, was gone southward, and lay by 'the sea-side, and abode [*the* sea strangely, abiding] Childric. Childric was in those days a kaiser of powerful authority; the land in Alemaine was his own. When Baldolf heard, where he lay by *the* sea, that Arthur had inclosed Colgrim in York, Baldolf had assembled seven thousand men, 'bold fellows, who by *the* sea lay'; 'they took them [and took him] to counsel, that back they would ride, and leave Childric, and proceed 'into [right to] York, and fight with Arthur, and destroy 'all' his people. 'Baldolf swore in his

<sup>1</sup> nemen ȝam?<sup>2</sup> wið?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Baldolf swor ð hif grome ⁊  
 þat he wolde beon Ardureref<sup>1</sup> bone.  
 & bruken al þaf riche ⁊  
 mid Colgrime hif broðere.

Nolde Baldolf abide ⁊  
 þan keifere Childriche.  
 ah þenne he ferde uorð ⁊  
 and droh him forð rihtes nord<sup>2</sup>.  
 from dæie to dæie ⁊  
 mid baldre<sup>3</sup> duȝeðe.

þat he com in ane wude ⁊  
 in ane wilderne.  
 frō Ardures<sup>4</sup> ferde ⁊  
 fulle feoue milen.  
 He hafde iþohte bi nihten ⁊  
 mid feouen þufend cnihten.  
 to riden uppen Arður ⁊  
 ær þe king wore ware<sup>5</sup>.  
 and hif folc afeollen ⁊  
 & hine seolf aquelle.  
 Ah al hit oðer iwarð ⁊  
 oðer he iwēde.  
 for Baldolf hafede on hirede ⁊

Nolde Baldolf abide ⁊  
 þane cāyfer Cheldriche.  
 ac þanene he ferde forþ ⁊  
 and droh him riht norþ.

forte he come to one wode ⁊  
 to one wilderne.  
 fram Arthures ferde ⁊  
 folle soue mile.  
 He hadde iþoht bi nihte ⁊  
 mid alle his cnihtes.  
 comen vppen Arthur ⁊  
 are þe king were war.  
 and his folk falle ⁊  
 and him seolf a-cwelle.  
 Ac oþer weies hit was idiht ⁊  
 here hit were dai-liht.  
 for þar was mid Baldolf ⁊

anger, that he would be Arthurs bane, and possess all this realm, with Colgrim his brother.' Baldolf would not wait for the kaiser Childric, but thence he marched forth, and drew him 'forth' right north, 'from day to day, with *his* bold folk,' until he came 'in [to] a wood, 'in [to] a wilderness, full seven miles from Arthurs host. He had thought by night with 'seven thousand [all his] knights to 'ride [come] upon Arthur, and fell his folk, and himself kill. But 'all it *otherwise* happened, other *than* he weened [otherways it was disposed, ere it were daylight]; for 'Baldolf had in *his* host [there was with Baldolf] a British knight; he was Arthurs relative,

<sup>1</sup> Ardures?<sup>2</sup> norð?<sup>3</sup> balde *pr. m.*<sup>4</sup> Ardures?<sup>5</sup> *The last two words of this line are interlined.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

*Mau[rin].**[Cador].*

ænne cniht Bruttiscne.  
 he wes Arðures mæi ⁊  
 Maurin ihaten.  
 Maurin bi-halues ⁊  
 to þan wude halde.  
 þurh wude & þurh feldes ⁊  
 þat he com to Arðures teldes.  
 and þus feide sone ⁊ [f. 116<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 to Arður kinge.  
 Hail seo þu Arður ⁊ 10  
 kingene aðeleft.  
 ich æm hidere icume ⁊  
 ich æm of þine cunne.  
 Her if Baldulf icumen ⁊  
 mid fwiðe hære hære-gumen.  
 & þencheð in þiffere nihte ⁊  
 to flæn þe & þine cnihtes.  
 to wracken his brøðer ⁊  
 þe fwiðe if vnbaldeð.  
 ah godd him scal forwænen<sup>3</sup> ⁊ 20  
 þurh his muchele mihten.  
 & fend nu uorð Cador ⁊  
 þene eorl of Cornwaile.  
 and mid him ohte cnihtes ⁊

on cniht Bruttiffc.  
 he was Arthures may ⁊  
 Morisse ihote.  
 Moris wende bi-halues ⁊  
 þorþ wode and þorh feldes.  
 forte<sup>1</sup> to Arthur come ⁊  
 and him faide sone.  
 Hayl beo þou Arthur ⁊  
 kingene wifest.  
 ich ham hider icome ⁊  
 ich ham of þine cunne.  
 Her his Baldolf icome ⁊  
 mid fwiþe kene gomes. [c. 2.  
 and þencheþ in þiffe nihte ⁊  
 flea<sup>2</sup> þe and þine cnihtes.  
 ac god hit fal for-werne ⁊  
 þorh his mochele mihte.  
 Ac fende nou forþ Cador ⁊  
 þan eorl of Cornwale.  
 and mid him gode cnihtes ⁊

named 'Maurin [Moris]. Maurin went aside 'to the wood,' through woods  
 and through fields, until he came to 'Arthurs tents [Arthur]; and 'thus'  
 said soon to 'Arthur *the* king [to him]: "Hail be thou, Arthur, noblest of  
 kings! I am hither come; I am of thy kindred. Here is Baldolf arrived  
 with 'warriors [men] most 'hardy [keen], and thinketh in this night to slay  
 'thee and thy knights, 'to avenge his brother, who is greatly discouraged;  
 but God shall prevent 'him [it], through his mickle might. 'Ald [But]  
 send now forth Cador, the earl of Cornwall, and with him 'bold [good]  
 knights, 'good and brave [that are keen to fight], full seven hundred good

<sup>1</sup> fort he ?<sup>2</sup> flean ?<sup>3</sup> forwænen ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

gode and wihte.  
 fulle feoue hundred ⁊  
 felere þeines.  
 & ich heom wulle ræden ⁊  
 & ich hō wulle leden.  
 hu heo muwē Baldulf ⁊  
 flæn al se enne wulf.  
 Forð ferde Cador ⁊  
 & alle þas cnihtes.  
 þat heo comen bihaluf ⁊ 10  
 þer Baldulf<sup>1</sup> lai on comele.  
 heo hī to helden ⁊  
 on ælchere haluē.  
 heo flozen heo nomen ⁊  
 al þat heo aneh comen.  
 þer weorē aqualde ⁊  
 niȝen hundred alle italde.  
 Baldulf wes bi-halues ⁊  
 igan him aburhȝes<sup>2</sup>.  
 & þurh þa wilderne flæh ⁊ 20  
 feondliche fwiðe.  
 and hafde hif men leofe ⁊ [c.2.]  
 mid reouðe bilæfued.  
 & fleh him fwa feor norð ⁊

þat kene beo to fihte.  
 folle foue hundred ⁊  
 felie kempes.  
 and ich ȝam wolle reade ⁊  
 and ich ȝam wolle leade.  
 ou hii mawe Baldolf ⁊  
 flean afe hit were a wolf.  
 Forþ wende Cador ⁊  
 and alle þes cnihtes.  
 þat hii come bi-halues ⁊ 10  
 þar Baldolf lay in teldes.  
  
 and flozen and nemen ⁊  
 al þat hii neh comen.  
 þar weren a-cweld ⁊  
 folle niȝe hundred.  
 Baldolf was bi-halues ⁊  
 i-gon vt of teldes.  
 and þorh the wilderne fleoh ⁊ 20  
 wonderliche fwiȝe.  
  
 and fleþ him so for norh ⁊

'thanes [champions]; and I will counsel them, and I will lead them, how they may Baldolf slay as *if* [it were] a wolf." Forth went Cador and all these knights, *so* that they came aside where Baldolf lay in tents; 'they advanced to him on each side'; 'they [and] slew, 'they [and] captured all that they came nigh;—there were killed [full] nine hundred 'all *out* told.' Baldolf was gone aside 'to save himself [out of *the* tents], and fled through the wilderness, wondrously fast; 'and had his dear men with sorrow deserted'; and fled him so far north, that he came so forth, where

<sup>1</sup> Balulf *pr. m.*<sup>2</sup> aburhȝen?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat he com fwa feor forð.<sup>1</sup>  
 þat he com fwa uorð ⁊  
 þer Arður lai in uolde.  
 mid richen hif ferde.  
 al abuten Eouerwic ⁊  
 kīg fwiðe feollic.  
 Colgrī wef wið innen ⁊  
 mid Sæxifce monnen.  
 Baldulf hine biþohte ⁊  
 what he don mihte. 10  
 mid wulches cunnes gynnne ⁊  
 he mihte cumen binnen.  
 in to þere burh⁊e ⁊  
 to Colgrime hif broðere.  
 þe wes him on liue ⁊  
 leofest alre monne.  
 Baldulf lette st'ken ⁊  
 to þan bare lichen.  
 his bærd and hif chinne ⁊  
 and makede hine to crosse. 20  
 he lette sceren half hif hæfd ⁊  
  
 and nō him ane harpe an hond.

þat he com so forþ.  
 þar Arthur lay on felde ⁊  
 mid riche his ferde.  
 al aboute Euerwich ⁊  
 ferde swiþe fellich.  
 Colgrim was wiþ ine ⁊  
 mid Saxisse manne.  
 Baldolf hine bi-þohte ⁊  
 wat he don mihte. 10  
 mid woche cunnes gynnne ⁊  
 he mihte come wiþ ine.

Baldolf lette strike ⁊  
 to þan bare liche.

and lette seren his heued ⁊  
 afe me doþ an fole.  
 and nom him an honde ⁊  
 one harpe longe.

Arthur lay on *the* 'weald [field], with his powerful host, all about York,—  
 'king [host] most surprising! Colgrim was within with *the* Saxish men, and  
 Baldulf bethought him what he might do; with what kind of stratagem he  
 might come within, 'into the burgh, to Colgrim his brother, who was to him  
*the* dearest of all men alive.' Baldulf caused to be shaved to the bare skin  
 'his beard and his chin, and made him as a fool'; 'he [and] caused 'half'  
 his head to be shorn, [as men do a fool]; and took him in hand a [long]  
 harp. He could harp [exceeding] well in his childhood; and with his

<sup>1</sup> This line is evidently superfluous.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

He cuðen harpien wel :  
 an hif child-haden.  
 & mid hif harpe he ferde :  
 to þaf kingef hirede.  
 & gon þær to gleowien :  
 & muche gome to makien.  
 Ofte me hine smæt :  
 mid smærte ȝerden.  
 ofte me hine culde :  
 swa me deð crofce.  
 ælc mon þe hine imette :  
 mid biſmare hine igratte.  
 ſwa nauere na mon nuſte :  
 of Baldulfes cuſte. [£117.c.1.]  
 buten hit weore croſſe :  
 icumen to þan hirede.  
 Swa he eode longe<sup>3</sup> upward :  
 swa longe he eode adunward.  
 þat heo weoren warre :  
 þe weoren þær wið innen. 20  
 þat hit wes Baldulf :  
 Colgrimes broðer.  
 Heo wurpen ut enne rap :  
 & Baldulf hine faſte igrap.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

He coupe harpi ſwe<sup>1</sup> wel :  
 in his child-hode. [£94.c.1.]  
 and<sup>2</sup> his harpe he wende :  
 to þan kingef ferde.  
 and gan þære to pleoȝe :  
 and moche game makie.  
 Ofte me hine smot :  
 mid ſwiþe ſmorte ȝerdes.  
 ofte me hine culde :  
 ſo me ſal an fole.  
 10  
 ſo neuere no mā nuſte :  
 of Baldolf his cuſtef.  
 bote þat hit a fol were :  
 i-come to þan folke.  
 So lang he ȝeode vpward :  
 ſo lange he ȝeode a-dunward.  
 þat hii were war wiþ ine :  
 þat hit was Baldolf wiþ houte.  
 20  
 Corgrim<sup>4</sup> his broþer :  
 nadde he non oþer.  
 Hii worpen vt one rop :  
 and Baldolf hine igrop.

*Baldulf.*

harp he went to the kings host, and gan there to play, and much game to make. Oft men him smote with wands [most] smart; oft men him struck (?) as men 'do [shall a] fool; 'each man that met him, greeted him with derision; so never any man knew of 'Baldulfs [Baldolf his] appearance, but [that] it were [a] fool come to the folk! So long he went upward, so long he went downward, that they were aware, 'who were there' within, that it was Baldulf [without], 'Colgrims [Colgrim his] brother [he had no other]. They cast out a rope, and Baldulf grasped it

<sup>1</sup> ſwiþe ?<sup>2</sup> and mid ?<sup>3</sup> Better ſwa longe he eode.<sup>4</sup> R. Colgrim.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and brudden up Baldolf ⁊

þat he binnen com.

mid swulches cunnef ginnes ⁊

Baldulf com wið innen.

þa wes bliðen Colgrī ⁊

and alle hiſ cnihtes mid hī.

and fwiðe heo gunnen þrattien ⁊

Arður þene king.

Arður bihaluef wef ⁊

&amp; þiſ gomen iſæh.

and wraðde hine ſulfne ⁊

wunderliche fwiðe.

and hæhte anan wepnien ⁊

al hiſ wunliche uolc.

he þohte þe burhȝe ⁊

mid ſtrengðe to biwinnen.

Alfe Arður wolde ⁊

to þan walle ræfe.

þa com þer riden ⁊

*Patric.*

Patric þe ricche mon.

þat wes a Scottiſc þein ⁊

ſcone an hiſ londen.

&amp; þuſ clupien a-gon ⁊

to þan kinge anan.

Hail ſeo þu Arður ⁊

and mid þan ilke gýnne ⁊

hii brohte him þar ine.

þo was bliþe Colgrim ⁊

and alle hiſ cnihtes mid him.

and fwiþe hii gonne þretie ⁊

Arthur þan kinge.

10 Artur þiſ game iſeh ⁊

and wreþþede him fwiþe.

and hehte a-non wepni ⁊

alle hiſ cnihtes.

he þohte þane borh ⁊

mid ſtrengþe bi-winne.

Al ſo Arthur wolde ⁊

to þan walle reafe.

þar com ride anon ⁊

20 Patrigh þe riche man.

and þuſ him faide ⁊

to Arthur þan kinge.

Hayl beo þou Arthur þe king ⁊

'fast,' and 'they drew up Baldulf, so that he came within'; with 'such kind of [that] stratagem' Baldulf came within [they brought him therein]. Then was Colgrim blithe, and all his knights with him, and greatly they gan to threaten Arthur the king. Arthur 'was beside, and saw' this game, and wrathed himself 'wondrously much'; and ordered anon all his 'brave folk [knights] to weapon *them*'; he thought to win the burgh with strength. As Arthur would (was about to) assault the wall, 'then [anon] came there riding Patrick, the rich man, 'who was a Scottish thane, fair in his land'; and thus 'began to call to the king anon [he said to Arthur the king]:

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

aðeleſt Brutten.

Bruttene deorlȳng.

Ich þe wulle tellen? [c. 2.]

Ich þe wolle telle?

neouwe tidende.

neowe tidȳnge.

of þā kæifere Childriche?

of þan kaiſer Childrich? [c. 2.]

þan wode &amp; þan richen.

þan wode and þan riche.

þan ſtrongen &amp; þan balden?

þan bolde and þan ſtronge?

He iſ inne Scottlōde.

He hiſ in Scotlonde.

ihælde to are hafene?

&amp; hameſ forberneð.

and waldeð al ure lond?

10 and haueþ i-nome al oure lond?

after hiſ ahȝere hond.

to hiſ owane hond.

He haueð uerde wel idone?

He haueþ ferde wel idone?

al þa ſtrengðe of Rome.

al þe ſtrengþe of Rome.

he ſæið mid hiſ ȝelpe?

he ſaiþ mid hiſ ȝelpe?

þenne me him win ſcenccheð.

wane me him win ſenchep.

þat þu ne dærſt in nare hude?

þat þou ne darſt in none ſtude?

hiſ ræſſeſ abiden.

hiſ reaſeſ a-bide.

no on uelde no on wude?

no nauere nane ſtude

&amp; ȝif þu him abideſt?

20 and ȝef þou him abideſt?

he þe wule binden.

he þe wole acwelle.

quellen þine leoden?

and þi lond aȝen.

Ofte weſ Arðure wa?

**O** Fte waſ Arthur wo?

nauere wurſe þene þa.

neuere worſe þane þo.

“Hail be thou, Arthur [the king], ‘nobleſt of Britons [Britons darling]! I will tell thee new tiding, of the kaiſer Childric, the furious and the powerful, the ‘ſtrong [bold] and the ‘bold [ſtrong]. He iſ in Scotland ‘arrived in a haven, and *the* homeſ conſumeth,’ and ‘wioldeth [hath captured] all our land in hiſ own hand. He hath *a* hoſt brave; all the ſtrength of Rome; he ſaith with hiſ boſt, when men pour to him *the* wine, that thou dareſt not in any ſpot hiſ attackſ abide, ‘neither in field, nor in wood, nor *in* ever any place.’ And if thou him abideſt, he will thee ‘bind [kill]; ‘deſtroy thy people, and poſſeſſ thy land.’” Oft waſ Arthur woe, *but* never worſe than

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

and he droh hine abac ⁊  
 bihalues þere burȝe.  
 clupede to ræde ⁊  
 cnihtes to neode.  
 beornes and eorlef ⁊  
 & þa hali biſcopes.  
 & bad þat heo him radden ⁊  
 hu he mihte on richen.  
 mid his mon-weorede ⁊  
 hiſ monſcipe halden.  
 & fehten wið Childriche ⁊  
 þan ſtrōge & þan richen.  
 þa hider wolde liðe ⁊  
 to helpen Colgrime.  
 þa ađſwarede Bruttes ⁊  
 þa þere weoren bihaluef. [f. 117<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.] þat þare were bi-halues.  
 Faren we riht to Lundene ⁊  
 and lete hine liðe after.  
 & ȝif he cumeð riðe ⁊  
 forȝe he ſcal ibiden.  
 he ſeolf and hiſ ferde ⁊  
 fæie ſcal iworðen.  
 Arður al bilufedē ⁊  
 þat radden hiſ leoden.  
 forð he gon liðen ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and he droh hine abac ⁊  
 bi-halues þare borewe.  
 cleopede to reade ⁊  
 cnihtes to neode.  
 and bad þat hii him radde ⁊  
 ou he miht on riche.  
 mid his man-ferde ⁊  
 10 his manſipe holde.  
 and fihte wiþ Childrich ⁊  
 þane ſtronge and þan riche.

þo ſaide Bruttes ⁊  
 þat þare were bi-halues.  
 Wende þe<sup>1</sup> riht to Londene ⁊  
 and let hine come after.  
 and ȝef he comeþ ride ⁊  
 20 forwe he ſal a-bide.  
 him ſeolf and hiſ ferde ⁊  
 fæie ſal iworþe.  
 Arthur al wrohte ⁊  
 afe radde hiſ cnihtef.  
 forþ he gan wende ⁊

then; and he drew him backward, beside the burgh; called to counsel knights at need, 'barons and earls, and the holy bishops'; and bade that they should him counsel, how he might in *the* realm with his army his honor maintain, and fight with Childric, the strong and the powerful, 'who hither would come, to help Colgrim.' Then answered *the* Britons, that were there beside: "Go we right to London, and let him come after; and if he cometh riding, sorrow he shall abide; 'he [him]self and his host shall die!'" Arthur 'approved [wrought] all 'that [as] his 'people [knights] counselled; forth

<sup>1</sup> we?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat he to Lundene com.  
 Colgrim wes in Eouerwic ⁊  
 & þær abad him Childric.  
 Childric gon wende ⁊  
 ȝeon<sup>1</sup> þan norð ende.  
 & nom on honde ⁊  
 muchæl dal of londe.  
 Al Scot-þeode ⁊  
 he ȝaf hiſ ane þeine.  
 & al Norð-humberlond ⁊      10  
 he ſette hiſ broðer an hond.  
 Galeweoie & Orcaneie ⁊  
 he ȝaf hiſ ane eorle.  
 him ſeolf he nō from Humber ⁊  
 þat lond into Lundene.  
 Ne þohte he nauere mare ⁊  
 of Arður habben are.  
 buten he wōlden hiſ mō bicume ⁊  
 Arður Vðeres fune.  
 Arður wes in Lundene ⁊      20  
 mid alle Brutleoden.  
 he bed hiſ ferde ⁊  
 ȝeond alle þiſſen ærde.

toward Londene.  
 Colgrim was in Euerwich ⁊  
 and þær abod him Childrich.  
 Cheldrich gan wende ⁊  
 to þan Norþ ende.  
 and nam on<sup>1</sup> his hond ⁊      [f.94<sup>b</sup>.c.1.  
 mochel deal of londe.  
  
 and dealde alle þe londes ⁊      [Gale]waie.  
 among his eorles.  
 and him ſeolf nam fram Humber ⁊  
 þat lond into Londene.  
 Ne þohte he neuere more ⁊  
 of Arthur habbe ore.  
 bote he wolde his man bi-come ⁊  
 Arthur Vther his fone.  
 Arthur was in Londene ⁊  
 mid al Brutleode.  
 he bad his ferde ⁊  
 ouer al þan erþe.

he gan march 'until he came to [toward] London. Colgrim was in York, and there he abode Childric. Childric gan proceed 'over [to] the North end, and took in [his] hand a great deal of land. 'All Scotland he gave to a thane of his, and all Northumberland he set in *the* hand of his brother; Galloway and Orkney he gave to an earl of his; [and dealt all the lands among his earls, and] himself he took the land from Humber into London. He thought never more of Arthur to have mercy, unless he would become his man, Arthur, 'Uthers [Uther his] son. Arthur was in London, with all *the* Britons; he summoned his forces over all 'this [the] land, that

<sup>1</sup> ȝeond ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat æuer ælc mon ˚  
 þe hi god vðen.  
 ræðe & ful fone ˚  
 to Lundene comen.  
 þa wes Ænglene lond ˚  
 mid ærmþe of-fulled.  
 her wes wop & her wes rop ˚  
 and reouðen vniuoȝe.  
 muchel hunger & hæte ˚ [c. 2.]  
 at æuer ælche monnef ȝete. 10  
 Arður fende ouer sæ ˚  
 fele tweie cnihtes.  
 to Hoele hif mæie ˚  
 þe wes him leofest monnē.  
 þe ahte Bruttaine ˚  
 cniht mid þan bezfte.  
 and bad hine ful fone ˚  
 þat he hider come.  
 liðen to londe ˚  
 leodē to helpen. 20

*Cheldric.*

for Chældrich hafde an honde ˚  
 muchel of þiffen londe.  
 and Colg'm & Baldulf ˚

*Colgrim.  
Baldulf.*

þat ech man fone ˚  
 to Londene come.  
 þo was Englene lond ˚  
 mid harme i-fulled.  
 her was hunger an hate ˚  
 at euereche mannes<sup>1</sup> ȝete.  
 Arthur fende [ouer] fécé ˚  
 tweie wife cnihtes.  
 to Howel his may ˚  
 þat he louede swiþe.  
 þat hahte Brutayne ˚  
 cniht mid þan beste.  
 and bad hine wel fone ˚  
 þat hii<sup>2</sup> hider come.

for Childrich hadde an honde ˚  
 mochel of his londe.  
 and Colgrim and Baldolf ˚

'every [each] man, 'that good would grant to him, quickly and full' soon  
 to London should come. Then was England filled with harm; here was  
 'weeping and here was lament, and sorrow immoderate; mickle' hunger  
 and strife (?) at every mans gate! Arthur sent over sea two 'good [wise]  
 knights, to Howel his relation, 'who was to him dearest of men [whom he  
 loved greatly], who possessed Britanny, knight with the best; and bade  
 him 'full [well] soon, that he hither should come, 'sail to land, to help the  
 people;' for Childric had in hand much of 'this [his] land, and Colgrim  
 and Baldulf were come to him, and thought to drive Arthur the king 'out

R. mannes.

<sup>2</sup> he?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

him to iboȝen weoren.

i-wend to him were.

and ȝohten Arȝur ȝene king ⁊  
driuen ut of cuȝȝen.and ȝohte Arthur ȝane king ⁊  
driuen of londe.

binimen him hiȝ icunde ⁊

bi-nimen his cunde ⁊

and hiȝ kineriche.

and hiȝ kine-riche.

ȝenne were hiȝ cun iȝcend ⁊

ȝat were hiȝ cun iȝend ⁊

miȝ ſcomeliche witen.

for ene and for euere.

heore wurȝſcipe iloren ⁊

a ȝiffere worlde-richē.

ȝenne weoren ȝan kingge betere ⁊ ȝanne betere ȝan kinge were ⁊

ȝat he iboren neore.

11 ȝat he ibore neore.

ȝiȝ iherde Howel ⁊

ȝiȝ ihorde Howel ⁊

*Howel.*ȝa haȝſte of Brutaine<sup>1</sup>.

and fori was in heorte.

&amp; he cleopien agon ⁊

hiȝ ſele cnihtes anan.

&amp; bæd heȝ to horſe ⁊

and bæd hiȝ cnihtes ſwiȝe ⁊

hiȝenliche ſwiȝe.

bi hiȝ bare liȝue. [c.2.

&amp; faren into France ⁊

wenden into France ⁊

to ȝan freo cnihten.

to ȝan freo cnihtef.

&amp; ſeide heom ȝat heo comen ⁊

and ſaide ȝat icome<sup>2</sup> ⁊

raȝe &amp; ful ſone.

21 raȝe and fol ſone.

to Miȝæles munte ⁊

to Miȝheleȝ monte ⁊

*Miȝeles  
munte.*

miȝ muchere ſtrenȝe.

miȝ mochelere ſtrengȝe.

of [from] *the* land; take from him his right, and his kingdom;—then were [so that should be] his kindred disgraced with shameful injury; their worship lost in this world's realm [once and for ever]; then were it better for the king, that he were not born! Howel heard this, 'the highest of Brittany [and was sorry in heart]; 'and he gan to call his good knights anon,' and bade them to horse exceeding speedily, and [his knights quickly, by their bare life] go into France, to the free knights, and should say 'to them' that they should come, quickly and full soon, to Michaels Mount, with mickle strength, all who would of silver and of gold, win worship in this

<sup>1</sup> Bruaine *pr. m.*<sup>2</sup> hii come?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

alle þa þe wolden ⁊  
 of feoluere & of golde.  
 wurhſcipe iwinne ⁊  
 a piſſere weorlde-richen. [L118. c.1.]  
 To Peito he fende ⁊  
 fele hiſ þeines.  
 & ſumme touward Flandres ⁊  
 feondliche ſwiðe.  
 and to Turuine ⁊  
 tweie þer wēden. 10  
 & into Gaſcuinne ⁊  
 cnihtes æc gode.  
 & hahten heom mid maine ⁊  
 touward Mihhælef nunte.  
 & ær heo eoden to ulode ⁊  
 heo ſculden habbeon ȝiuen gode.  
 þat heo mihte þa bliðere ⁊  
 buȝe from heore ærde.  
 & mid Howele þan hende ⁊  
 cumen to piſſen lōde. 20  
 to helpen Arðure ⁊  
 aðeleſt kingen.  
 þreottene dæies igon weoren ⁊

alle þe þat wolde ⁊  
 of ſeoluer and of golde.  
 worſipe bi-winne ⁊  
 a piſſe worle-riche.  
 To Peyto he fende ⁊  
 and into Turuïne.  
 and in to Gaſcoïne ⁊  
 cnihtes þar wende.  
 and ſomne<sup>1</sup> cnihtes ⁊  
 to Mihelef monte.  
 and her hii eode to flode ⁊  
 hii ſolde habbe ȝeſtes gode.  
 þat hii mihte þe blopelokere ⁊  
 wende vt of londe.  
 mid Howel þan hende ⁊  
 in to More Britayne.  
 to helpe Arthur hiſ meȝ ⁊  
 þat narewe was bi-þronge.

worlds realm. To Poitou he ſent 'his good thanes; and ſome toward Flanders, exceeding quickly'; and 'to [into] Touraine, 'two there proceeded'; and into Gaſcony, knights 'eke good [there proceeded]; and 'ordered them *to come* with ſtrength toward [ſummoned *the* knights to] Michaels Mount; and ere they went to flood (embarked), they ſhould have gifts good, that they might the blither 'depart from their [go out of] land, 'and' with Howel the fair 'come to this land [into Greater Britain], to help Arthur, 'nobleſt of kings [his relative, who was narrowly preſſed]. 'Thirteen days were paſſed ſince the meſſengers came there'; then ad-

<sup>1</sup> ſomnede.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

seoððen þa beoden commen þære.

þa halden hit<sup>1</sup> to fæ :  
 fwa hahzel deh from wolcne.  
 twa hundred ſcipene :  
 þer weoren wel biwitene.  
 me feoldē heom mid folke :  
 and heo forð wenden.  
 wind ſtond & þat weder :  
 after heore wille.

and heo at Hamtone :  
 halden to londe.  
 Up leoppen of ſcipe :  
 wode ſcalkkes.  
 beren to londe :  
 halmeſ & burnen.  
 mid ſpæres & mid ſceldes :  
 heo wriȝen al þa feldes.  
 þer wes moni bald Brut :  
 þat beot wes aræred.  
 heo beoteden ſwiðe :  
 bi heore quiken liue.  
 þat heo wolden igræten :  
 Cheldric þene richen.

þo held hii toward ſée :  
 afe þe hawel þat falleþ.  
 and two hundred ſipes fūde :  
 bi þare ſée grunde.  
 and ȝam alle fulde :  
 mid cnihtef ſwiþe gode.

10 and hii at Hamtone :  
 come to londe.  
 Vp leopen of ſipes :  
 buſie cnihtes.  
 and to londe bere :  
 healmes and brunief.  
 mid ſperes and mid ſcealdes :  
 hii wreȝen al þe feldes.  
 þar waſ mani bold Brut :  
 þat mid worde ſeide.

20

pat hii wolde grete : [f.95.c.1.]  
 Cheldric þan riche.

vanced they [toward] *the* sea, as [the] hail 'doth from *the* welkin [that fall  
 eth]; [and] two hundred ships 'were there well prepared; men filled then  
 with folk, and forth they voyaged [*they* found, by the sea-shore, and fille  
 them all with knights most good]; '*the* wind and the weather stood afte  
 their will'; and they came to land at Hamtone. Up leapt from *the* ship  
*the* 'furious men; [busy knights, and] bare to *the* land helms and burnies  
 with spears and with shields they covered all the fields. There was man  
 a bold Briton that 'threat had raised; they threatened greatly, by thei  
 quick life [said with words], that they would greet Childric the powerful

<sup>1</sup> heo ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

<p>þene [bolde] kæifere ⁊  mid muchele harme þere. [c. 2.]  And ȝif he nolde awæi fleon ⁊  &amp; touward Alemaine teon.  and he wolde on londe ⁊  mid fehte atftonden.  mid balde hif beornen ⁊  beorkes abiden.  here heo ſculde bilauen ⁊  þat heom weore alre laðeſt<sup>1</sup>. 10  haſden and heore honden ⁊  &amp; heore white halmes.  &amp; ſwa heo ſcullen on londē ⁊  loſien heore freonden.  hælden into hælle ⁊  hæðene hundes.  <i>Arð[ur]</i>. Arður wes i Lūdene ⁊  aðeleſt kingen.  &amp; iherde ſuggen ⁊  fuðere ſpellen. 20  þat waſ icumen to londe ⁊  <i>Howel</i>. Howel þe ſtronge.  <i>Ham[une]</i>. to Hamtune forð rihtes ⁊  mid þritti þuſen<sup>2</sup> cnihten.</p>	<p>þane bolde caȝfere ⁊  mid mochelere harme þere.  ȝef he wolde in londe ⁊  mid fihte at-ſtonde.    here he ſolde bi-leafue ⁊  þat him were alre leoueſt.  hauekes and hundes ⁊  and hire brihte healmes.  and ſo hii ſolle in þiſſe lond ⁊  loſie hire freondeſ.  and fallen into helle ⁊  heaþene hundes.  Arthur was in Londene ⁊    and ihorde telle ⁊    of Howel hiſ may ⁊  þat hi-come<sup>3</sup> was to londe.  to Hamtone forþriht ⁊  mid þritti þuſed cnihtef.</p>
--	--

the [bold] kaiser, with much harm there. 'And if he would not flee away, and toward Alemaine proceed, and' [if] he would in *the* land with fight resist; 'with his bold people *the* barks (vessels?) abide;' here 'they [he] should leave what to 'them [him] were dearest of all, 'their heads and hands [hawks and hounds], and their 'white [bright] helms; "and so they shall in [this] land lose their friends, [and] fall into hell,—*the* heathen hounds!" Arthur was in London, 'noblest of kings,' and heard 'say [tell] 'sooth relation,' 'that Howel, the strong [of Howel, his relation, that he] was come to land, forth-right to Hamtone, with thirty thousand knights, and with

<sup>1</sup> leofest?<sup>2</sup> icome he?<sup>3</sup> þuſend?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& mid vnimete uolke ⁊  
 þat wollezede þan kinge.  
 Arður him to-ȝaines bah ⁊  
 mid hæhȝere bliffe.  
 mid muchelere mon-weorede ⁊  
 to-ȝaines his mæie.  
 To-fomne heo comen ⁊  
 bliffe wes on hirede.  
 cuften & clupten ⁊  
 & cuðliche speken. 10  
 & anan forð rihtes ⁊  
 fomneden heore cnihtes.  
 þa weoren þer to-fomne ⁊  
 fele twa ferdan.  
 Howel sculde dihten ⁊  
 þritti þufend cnihten.  
 & Arður hafde an londe ⁊  
 feouwertig þufend an honde.  
 Forð riltes he¹ wenden ⁊ [c.118. c.1.]  
 toward þā norð ænde. 20  
 toward Lincolne ⁊  
 þe Cheldric þe kaifere bilai.  
 Ah he heo þa ȝæte ⁊  
 nefde noht biwūnen.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and mid onimete folk ⁊  
 þat folwede him a fote.  
 and Arthur him to-ȝeines beoh ⁊  
 mid mochelere bliffe.  
 mid mochele manferde ⁊  
 to-ȝeines his mæye.  
 To-gadere hii comen ⁊  
 an cuſte wel ilome.  
 and anon forþ riltes ⁊  
 bannede hire cnihtes.  
 þo weren þar to-gadere ⁊  
 two gode ferdas.  
 Howel folde dihte ⁊  
 þritti þufend cnihtes.  
 and Arthur hadde an londe ⁊  
 fourti þouſend an hond.  
 Forþ hii anon wende ⁊  
 to þan Norþ ende. 20  
 toward Lyncolne niht and day ⁊ [Linc]ol  
 þar Childrich þe borh bi-lay.  
 Ac he þe ȝet ⁊ [c.2.]  
 nadde noþing awonne.

innumerable folk, that followed 'the king [him on foot; and] Arthur towards him marched, with great bliss; with a mickle host, towards his relation. Together they came,—bliss was among *the* folk,—[and] '*they* kissed 'and embraced [well often], 'and spake familiarly'; and anon forth-right assembled their knights. Then were there together two good armies; of *whom* Howel should command thirty thousand knights, and Arthur had in land forty thousand in hand. Forth-'right [anon] they marched, 'toward [to] the North end, toward Lincoln [night and day], 'that [where] Childric the 'kaiser [the burgh] besieged. But he the yet had 'nought

¹ heo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

for þer weoren wið inē ⁊  
 feoue þufen<sup>1</sup> monnen.  
 ohte men and wihte ⁊  
 dæies and nihtes.  
 Arður mid his ferde ⁊  
 fufde touward burȝe.  
 & Arður for-bæd his cnihtes ⁊  
 dæies & nihtes.  
 þat heo liðen stille ⁊  
 fwulc neo stelen woldē.  
 liðen ouer leoden ⁊  
 & luden<sup>a</sup> bilefden.  
 hornes & bemen ⁊  
 alle weoren bilafde.  
 Arður nom enne cniht ⁊  
 þe wes oht mon and wiht.  
 & fende hine to Lincolne ⁊  
 to leuē his monnen.  
 & he heō to soðe ⁊  
 sæide mid muðe.  
 þat cumen wolde Arður ⁊  
 aðelest kingē.  
 to þere middernihte ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

for þare were wiþ ine ⁊  
 foue þufend manne.  
 ohte men an wihte ⁊  
 daiȝes and nihte.  
 Arthur mid his ferde ⁊  
 wende touward borewe.  
 Arthur for-bed his cnihtes ⁊  
 daiȝes and nihtes.  
 þat hii ȝeoden afe stille ⁊  
 fo hii stele wolde.  
  
 Arthur nam one cniht ⁊  
 þat was wis man and wiht.  
 and fende hine into Lȝncolne ⁊  
 to leoue his manne.  
 þat he solde to soþe ⁊  
 segge mid mouþe.  
 þat comen wolde Arthur ⁊  
 to þare midnihte.

[nothing] won; for there were within seven thousand men, brave men and active, by day and night. Arthur with his forces marched toward *the* burgh; and Arthur fore-ordered his knights, by day and night, that they should proceed [as] still, as *if* they would steal; 'pass over *the* country, and cease *any* noise; horns and trumpets, all should be relinquished.' Arthur took a knight, that was a 'brave [wise] man and active; and sent him to Lincoln to his dear men, 'and he said to them [that he should say] in sooth, with mouth, that Arthur would come, 'noblest of kings,' at the midnight, 'and with him many a good knight.'—"And ye within,

<sup>1</sup> þufend?<sup>a</sup> The first two letters of this word are on an erasure.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. x111.

&amp; mid him moni god cniht.

&amp; ȝe wið inne ⁊

þenne beoð eou iwarre.

þat þenne ȝe i-hereð þene dune ⁊

þat ȝe ȝæten untunen.

and fufed<sup>1</sup> ut of burȝe ⁊& eoure feod<sup>2</sup> felleð.

&amp; ffiniteð a Cheldrichen ⁊

þan strongen &amp; þan richen.

and we heom fculleð tellen ⁊

Bruttiffe felles.

Hit waf to þere middel-niht ⁊

þe mone fcaen fcan<sup>3</sup> fuð riht. [c. 2.]

Arður mid his ferde ⁊

fufde to burh.

þat folc wes fwa ftille ⁊

fwa heo ftefen woldē.

forð heo comen liðen ⁊

þat heo ifeiȝen Lincolne.

þu f him cleopien agon ⁊

Arður þe kene mon.

Whar beo ȝe mine cnihtes ⁊

mine hære-kemppen.

Ifeo ȝe þa teldes ⁊

And ȝe wiþ ine beoþ iwar ⁊

wane ȝeo þe dune ihereþ.

þat ȝe þe ȝeates vntune ⁊

and vt wendeþ fwiþe.

and fmiteþ on Cheldrich ⁊

þane fstronge and þane riche.

and we heom folle telle ⁊

Bruttuffe felles.

Hit was to þan midniht ⁊

þe mone fon fouþriht.

Arthur mid his ferde ⁊

wende to borewe.

þat folc was fo ftille ⁊

fo hii ftefe wolde.

forþ hii comen wende ⁊

to Lyncolnef ende.

þo him cleopie agan ⁊

Arthur þe kene man.

Ware beo ȝeo mine cnihtes ⁊

mine deorworþe kempes.

Nou ȝeo ifeþ þe teldes ⁊

'then' be 'ye' ware, 'that' when ye hear the din, that ye [the] gates unfasten; and sally out of *the* burgh [quickly], 'and fell your foes'; and smite on Childric, the strong and the powerful; and we shall tell them British tales!'—It was at the midnight, *when* the moon shone right south, Arthur with his host marched to *the* burgh; the folk was as still as *if* they would steal; forth they proceeded until they saw 'Lincoln [to Lincoln] end. 'Thus [Then] gan he call, Arthur the keen man: "Where be ye, my knights, my [dear-worthy] warriors? 'See ye [Now ye see] the tents,

<sup>1</sup> fufed?<sup>2</sup> feond?<sup>3</sup> Redundant?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þer Childrich lið i ueldef.  
 Colgrim & Baldulf ⁊  
 mid baldere strengðe.  
 þat Alemainisce uolc ⁊  
 þat uf hæfeð ihærmed.  
 & þat Sæxifce uolc ⁊  
 þat forȝen uf bilateð.  
 þat alle habbeoð aqualde ⁊  
 þa hæhste of mine cunne.  
*Constans.* Constanz and Costantin ⁊  
*Constantin.* & Vðer þe wes fader min.  
*Ver.* and Auriliæn Ambrosie ⁊  
*Aurilie.* minef fader broðer.  
 & moni þusend mōnen ⁊  
 of aðele mine cunne.  
 Utē we heom to liðe ⁊  
 and to grunde leggē.  
 and wreken wruðliche<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 ure cun & heore riche.  
 and alle someð<sup>3</sup> forð riht ⁊  
 nu ride æuer alc god cniht.  
 Arður gon to riden ⁊  
 þa ferde gon gliden.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

warChildrich liþ in feldes.[195<sup>a</sup>.c.1.]  
 Colgrȳm and Baldolf ⁊  
 mid boldere strengþe.  
 þaxiffe<sup>1</sup> folk ⁊  
 þat habbeþ vs iharmid.  
  
 þat alle habbeþ acweld ⁊  
 þe beste of oure cunne.  
 10 Constance and Constantin ⁊  
 and Vther þat was fader min.  
 and Aurelie Ambrosie ⁊  
 þat was min fader broþer.  
 and many þousend manne ⁊  
 of gode mine cunne.  
 Hote to heō wende ⁊  
 and to grunde legge.  
 and wreke worþliche oure cun ⁊  
 and oure kine-riche.  
  
 þo Arthur gan ride ⁊  
 and þe ferde forþ glide.

where Childric lieth on *the* fields; Colgrim and Baldulf, with bold strength;  
 the 'Alemainish [Saxish] folk, that us hath harmed, 'and the Saxish folk,  
 that sorrow to us promiseth; that all hath killed, the 'highest [best] of  
 'my [our] kin; Constance and Constantine, and Uther, who was my father,  
 and Aurelie Ambrosie, [who was] my fathers brother, and many thousand  
 men of my 'noble [good] kindred? Go we out to them, and lay to *the*  
 ground, and worthily avenge our kin and 'their realm [our kingdom];  
 'and all together forth-right now ride every good knight!' " [Then] Arthur  
 gan to ride, [and] the army 'gan [forth] to move, 'as *if* all the earth

<sup>1</sup> þa Saxiffe?<sup>2</sup> wruðliche?<sup>3</sup> fomed?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ƿwulc al ȝa eorðe ˚  
wolde for-bærnen.

and ƿmiten i ȝa ueldc˚  
imōg Childriches teldes.

ȝæt wes ȝæ æreſte mon ˚

ȝe ȝer cleopien agon. [L119.c.1.]

Arður ȝe heȝe gume ˚

ȝe wes Vðeres fune.

kenliche & lude ˚

ƿwa bicumeð kinge.

Nu fulſte uf Marie ˚

goddess milde moder.

and ich ibidde hire fune ˚

ȝat he uf beon a fultume.

Æfne ȝan wordes ˚

turnden heo heore ordes.

ſtikeden & floȝen ˚

al ȝat heo neh comen.

And cnihtes ut of burhȝe ˚

buȝen heō to-ȝæines.

ȝif heo fluȝen to burȝen ˚

ȝer heo for-wurðen.

ȝif heo floȝen to ȝa wunde<sup>1</sup> ˚

and ƿmiten in ȝe feldes ˚

among Childrich his teldef.

ȝat was ȝe ereſte man ˚

ȝat ȝare cleopie agan.

Arthur ȝe heȝe gome ˚

ȝat his Vth<sup>9</sup> his fone.

keneliche and loude ˚

10 ſo bi-comeȝ kȳnges.

Nou fulſte vs Marie ˚

ȝat his godeſ moder.

and ich bidde hire fone ˚

ȝat vs beo a foltome.

Æfne ȝan worde ˚

hii tornde hire ordes.

ſtikede and flowe ˚

al ȝat hii neh come.

And cnihtes vt of borewe ˚

20 wende heom to-ȝenef.

ȝef hii floȝe to borewe ˚

ȝare hii hadde forewe.

ȝef hii floȝe to ȝare wode ˚

would be consumed'; and smote in the fields among 'Childrics [Childric his] tents. That was the first man, that there gan to shout,—Arthur the noble man, who 'was Uthers [is Uther his] son,—keenly and loud, as becometh 'a king [kings]: "Now aid us, Mary, 'Gods mild [that is Gods] mother! And I pray her son, that he be to us in succour!" Even with the words they turned their spears; pierced and slew all that they came nigh. And *the* knights out of *the* burgh marched against them (the enemies); if they fled to *the* burgh, there they 'were destroyed [had sorrow]; if they fled to the wood, there they [men] slaughtered them; come wher-

<sup>1</sup> R. wude.



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

*Bellum Ar-*  
*thuri.*

þer hi heom forduden.  
 comen þer heo comen ⁊  
 æuere heo heom floȝen.  
 Nif hit a nare boc idiht ⁊  
 þat æuere weore æi fihht.  
 iŋe piŋŋere Bruttene ⁊  
 þat balu weore ŋwa riue.  
 for volken him wes ærmeŋt ⁊

þat æuere com to ærde.

þer wes muchel blod ȝute ⁊ 10 þar was mochel blod iȝote ⁊  
 balu wes on folke.

dæð þer wes riŋe ⁊

þe eorðe þer dunede.

*Childric.*

Childrich þe kæiŋere ⁊  
 hæfede ænne caŋtel here.

a Lincolneŋ felde ⁊

þer he læi wið innen.

þe wes neouwen iworht ⁊

& ŋwiðe wel biwuft.

& þere weoren mid him ⁊ 20 and þar weren mid him ⁊

Baldulf & Colgrim.

and iŋeȝen þat heore uolc ⁊

ŋæie-ŋih worhtē.

& heo forð riht anon ⁊

on mid heore burnen. [c. 2.]

þære me heom for-dude.

come ware hii come ⁊

euere me hii ŋlowe. [c. 2.]

Nis hit iu none boke idiht ⁊

þat euere her were ŋoch fihht.

in piŋŋere Brutaine ⁊

þære fleahht were ŋo riue.

þar was mochel blod iȝote ⁊

deap þar waŋ riue.

**C** Hildrich þe kayŋer ⁊  
 hadde one caŋtel her.

a Lȝncolneŋ felde ⁊

þar he læȝ wið ine.

he waŋ newene iwroht ⁊

and ŋwiþe wel he waŋ idiht.

and þar weren mid him ⁊ 20 and þar weren mid him ⁊

Baldolf and Colgrim.

and iŋeȝe þat hire folke ⁊

folle to grunde.

And hii forþ riht anon ⁊

an mid hire brunief.

*ever* they might come, *ever* 'they [men] them slew. It is not in any book indited, that *ever* 'any [such] fight were [ere] in this Britain, 'that mischief [where slaughter] was so riŋe, 'for folk it was most miserable, that *ever* came to *the* land!' There was mickle blood-shed, 'mischief was among *the* folk'; death there was riŋe; 'the earth there became dun!' Childric the kaiser had a castle here, in Lincolns field, where he lay within, 'that [it] was newly wrought, and exceeding well 'guarded [it was made]; and there were with him Baldulf and Colgrim, and saw that their folk 'suffered death [fell to ground]. And they anon forth-right, on with their burnies, and

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and fluȝen ut of caſtle ⁊  
 kenſcipe bidaled<sup>1</sup>.  
 and fluȝen forð riht anan ⁊  
 to þe wude of Calidon.  
 Heo haſden to iferen ⁊  
 feouen þuſend rideren.  
 and ho bilaſden of-flaȝen ⁊  
 & idon of lif-daȝen.  
 feowerti þuſude<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 ifeolled to þan grunde.  
 Alemainiſce mē ⁊  
 mid ærnðe<sup>3</sup> forðemed.  
 and þa Sexiſce men ⁊  
 ibroht to þan grunden.  
 þa iſæh Arður ⁊  
 aðeleſt kingen.  
 þat Childrich wes iſloȝen ⁊  
 into Calidonie itoȝe.  
 and Colgrim & Baldulf ⁊  
 mid him iboȝen weoren.  
 into þā haȝe wude ⁊  
 in to þan hæȝe holme.  
 & Arður bæh after ⁊  
 mid fixti þuſend cnihten.

and floȝen vt of caſtle ⁊  
 kenſipe bi-dealed.  
 and floȝen forþriht anon ⁊  
 to þan wode of Calidon.  
 And hadde to i-vere ⁊  
 foue hundred rideres.  
 and hii blefde of-slawe ⁊  
 and idon of lif-daȝes.  
 fourti þuſend ⁊  
 10 liggen on þare feldeſ.

Calid[on].

þo iſeh Arthur ⁊  
 boldeſt alre kinge.  
 þat Cheldrich was a-flowe ⁊  
 and in to Calidoine itowc.  
 and Colgrȳm and Baldolf ⁊  
 20 mid him þare were.

Arthur wende after ⁊  
 mid fixti þuſend cnihtes.

fled out of *the* castle, of courage bereft; and fled forth-right anon to the wood of Calidon. They [And] had for companions seven thousand riders; and they left forty thousand slain, and deprived of life-day, felled 'to the ground [lying on the fields]; 'Alemainish men, with mischief destroyed, and the Saxish men, brought to the ground!' Then saw Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings, that Childric was flown, [and] into Calidon gone, and Colgrim and Baldulf with him were 'gone [there,] 'into the high wood, into the high holm. And' Arthur pursued after with sixty thousand

<sup>1</sup> bidaleð *pr. m.*<sup>2</sup> þuſunde ?<sup>3</sup> ærnðe ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Bruttene leoden ⁊	Bruttene leode ⁊
þene wude al bileien.	þane wode al bi-leie.
and an are halfe hine feolden ⁊	in one half hii hine fulde ⁊
fulle feoue milen.	folle foue mýle.
treo uppen oðer	treo vppe treo ⁊
treoliche fafte.	kenliche fwiþe.
an oðer halue he hine bilai ⁊	an oper half hine bi-leye ⁊
mid hif leod-ferde.	mid gode his folke.
þreo dages & þreo niht ⁊	þreo daiȝes and þreo niht ⁊
þ̅ wes heom muchel pliht.	10 þat was to heom god riht. [c. 1.]
Colg[rim]. þa ifæh Colgrī ⁊	þo ifeh Colgrim ⁊
alfe he læi þer in.	afe <sup>1</sup> laȝ þar in.
þat þer wes buten mete ⁊	þat þare was boute mete ⁊
scarp hunger & hete.	scarp hunger and hate.
ne heō no heore horfen ⁊	ne hii ne hire hors ⁊
hælp nefde nenne.	help nadde nanne.
And þuf cleopede Colgrim ⁊	[c. 119 <sup>b</sup> c. 1.] þo faide Colgrým ⁊
to þan kaifere.	to þan caȝfere Cheldrich.
Sæie me lauerd Childric ⁊	Sai me louerd Childrich ⁊
soðere worden.	20 soþere wordef.
for whulchef cunnes þinge ⁊	for woche cunnes þinge ⁊
ligge we þuf here.	ligge we þus her ine.
whi nulle we ut faren ⁊	wi nole we vt fare ⁊
& bonnien ure ferden.	and bannȝ oure ferde.

knights of British people; the wood *he* all surrounded; 'and' on one side [they] it felled, full seven miles, 'one tree upon another, truly fast [tree upon tree, very keenly]; on *the* other side 'he' surrounded it with his 'army [good folk], three days and three nights;—that was to them 'mickle harm [right good]. Then saw Colgrim, as he lay therein, that there was without meat sharp hunger, and strife (?); nor they nor their horses help had any. 'And thus called [Then said] Colgrim to the kaiser [Childric]: "Say me, lord Childric, sooth words; for what kind of thing lie we thus here[in]? Why should we not go out, and assemble our host, and begin

<sup>1</sup> afe he?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and biginnen<sup>1</sup> fehtes ⁊  
 wið Arður & wið his cnihtes.  
 for betere uf if on londe ⁊  
 mid mōſcipe to liggen.  
 þene we þus here ⁊  
 for hungere to-wurðen.  
 ifwenched<sup>2</sup> uf ſære ⁊  
 folke to ſcare.

Oðer we ſendeð wið and wið ⁊  
 and ȝeornen Arðures grið. 10  
 and bidden þuf hiſ milce ⁊  
 & ȝiſles him bitechen.  
 & wurchē freondſcipe ⁊  
 wið þan freo kige.  
 Þiſ iherde Childric ⁊  
 þer he læi wið inne dic.  
 and he andſwarede ⁊  
 wið ærmliche ſtefene.  
 ȝiſ hit wulle Baldulf ⁊  
 þe iſ þin aȝe broðer. 20  
 and ma of uf iſeren ⁊  
 þe mid uf fundē here.  
 þat we bidden Ardures<sup>3</sup> grið ⁊

and bi-ginne fihhtes ⁊  
 wiþ Arthur and his cnihtes.  
 for betere vs his on londe ⁊  
 manſipliche ligge.  
 þane we þus here ⁊  
 mid hunger forworþi.

Oþer we ſende him wiþ ⁊  
 and ȝeorne Arthur his griþ. 10  
 and bidde him milce ⁊  
 and ȝiſles bi-take.

Þiſ ihorde Cheldrich ⁊  
 þar he lai wiþ ine dich.  
 and anſwerede ⁊  
 mid cwickere ſtemne.  
 ȝeſ hit wole Baldolf ⁊  
 20 þat hiſ þin owe broþer.  
 and mo of oure fereſ ⁊  
 þat mid vs beoþ here.  
 þat we bidde Arthures griþ ⁊

fight with Arthur and 'with' his knights? For better *it* is for us on land 'with honor [honorably] to lie, than *that* we thus here perish 'for [with] hunger; 'if grieveth us sore, to *the* destruction of *the* folk.' Either send we 'again and again [to him], and yearn 'Arthurs [Arthur his] peace, and pray 'thus his [him] mercy, and hostages deliver him, 'and make friendship with the free king.'" Childric heard this, where he lay within *the* dyke, and 'he' answered with 'sorrowful [quick] voice: "If Baldulf it will, who is thine own brother, and more of our comrades, who with us are here, that we pray Arthurs peace, and make amity with him, after your

<sup>1</sup> bigunnen *pr. m.*<sup>2</sup> ifwencheð?<sup>3</sup> Arðures?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& sahtneffe him wurchen wið.  
 after æuwer wille ⁊  
 dō ich hit wulle.  
 For Arður if swiðe hæh mon ⁊  
 ihalden on leoden.  
 leof alle hif monnen ⁊  
 & of kine-wurðe cunne.  
 al of kingen icume ⁊  
 he wes Vðeres fune.  
 & of<sup>2</sup> hit ilimpeð ⁊  
 a ueole cunne þeoden.  
 þer gode cnihtes ⁊  
 cumeð to sturne fihte. [c. 2.]  
 þat heo ærest biȝiteð ⁊  
 after heo hit leofeð.  
 & al fwa uf to-ȝere ⁊  
 if ilimpen here.  
 & æft uf bet ilippeð ⁊  
 ȝif we motē liuien.  
 Sone forð rihtes ⁊  
 andfwareden þa cnihtes.  
 Alle uf biluuiet<sup>3</sup> þifne ræd ⁊  
 for þu hafeft wel ifæid.  
 Heo nomen twælf cnihtes ⁊

and sæhtneffe him werche wiþ.  
 after oure<sup>1</sup> wille ⁊  
 don ich hit wolle.  
 For Arthur his wel heb man ⁊  
 hi-holde in londe.  
 leof alle his manne ⁊  
 and of kineworþe cunne.  
 al of kinges icome ⁊  
 he was Vther his fone.  
 10 And ofte hit bi-falleþ ⁊  
 in manycunne leode. [c. 2.]  
 þar þe gode cnihtes ⁊  
 comeþ to strange fihtes.  
 þat þaȝe þat her bi-ȝetep ⁊  
 eft hii leofep.  
 and al fo ous to-ȝere ⁊  
 his ifalle here.

20 Sone forþrihtes ⁊  
 answerede alle þe cnihtes.  
 Alle we louieþ þane read ⁊  
 for þou haueft wiſſliche i-feid.  
 Hii nemen twalf cnihtes ⁊

will I will do it. For Arthur is esteemed 'very [well] noble man in land; dear to all his men, and of royal kindred, all come of kings; he was 'Uthers [Uther his] son. And oft it befalleth, in many kind of land, where [the] good knights come to 'stern [strong] fight, that they [who] first gain, 'afterwards [eft] they 'it' lose. And thus to us now is befallen here, 'and eft to us better will happen, if we may live.' " Soon forth-right answered [all] the knights: " We all praise 'this [the] counsel, for thou hast 'well [wisely] said!" They took twelve knights, and sent forth-right, where

<sup>1</sup> ȝoure?<sup>2</sup> oft?<sup>3</sup> biluuiet?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& fenden forð rihtes.  
 þer he wes on telde ⁊  
 bi þaf wudes ende.  
 þe an cleopeden anan ⁊  
 mid quickere stefne.  
 Lauerd Arður þi grið ⁊  
 we wolden speken þe wið.  
 hider þe kaifere uf sēt ⁊  
 Childric ihaten.  
 & Colgrim & Baldulf ⁊ 10  
 beien to-somē.  
 Nu and æuere mare ⁊  
 heo bidded<sup>1</sup> þine ære.  
 þine men heo wulleð bicumen ⁊  
 & þine mōscipe hæȝen.  
 & heo wulleð ȝiuē þe ⁊  
 ȝifles inowe.  
 & halden þe for lauerð<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 fwa þe beoð alre leofest.  
 ȝif heo moten liðe ⁊ 20  
 heonene mid liue.  
 into heoƿ leoden ⁊  
 & lað-spæl bringen.  
 For her we habbeod<sup>4</sup> ifunden ⁊

and fende forþrihtes.  
 þar Arthur was in telde ⁊  
 bi þan wodef hende.  
 and on cleopie agan ⁊  
 loudere stemne.  
 Louerd Arthur þin grið ⁊  
 we wollen speke þe wiþ.  
 hider þe kaifer vs sent ⁊  
 þat Cheldrich his ihote.  
 Colgrȳm and Baldolf ⁊ 10  
 beȳne to-gadere.  
 Hii biddeþ þin ore ⁊  
 nou and euere more.  
 þine men hii wolleþ bi-come ⁊  
 and treoupe to þe holde.  
 ȝef hii mo<sup>3</sup> libbe ⁊ 20  
 and hire limes habbe.  
 and hinene wende ⁊  
 in to hire londe.  
 For her we habbeþ i-funde ⁊

'he [Arthur] was in tent, by the woods end; [and] 'the' one 'called anon [began to call] with 'quick [loud] voice: "Lord Arthur, thy peace! We would speak with thee; hither the kaiser sent us, [who is] named Childric, 'and' Colgrim and Baldulf, both together. Now and evermore they pray thy mercy; thy men they will become, and 'thy honor advance, and they will give to thee hostages enow, and hold thee for lord, as to thee shall be liefest of all, if they may depart hence with life, [troth to thee hold, if they may live, and have their limbs, and hence depart,] into their land;

<sup>1</sup> biddeð?<sup>2</sup> lauerd?<sup>3</sup> mowe?<sup>4</sup> habbeoð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

feole cunne forȝen.  
 at Lincolne bilæued ⁊  
 leofe ure mæies.  
 fixti þufend monnen ⁊  
 þa þer beoð of-flæȝene.  
 And ȝif hit þe weore ⁊  
 wille an heorte.

[f. 120. c. 1.]

þat we moften ouer sæ ⁊  
 winden mid feile.

nulle we nauere mare ⁊ 10  
 æft cumen here.  
 for her we habbeoð<sup>1</sup> for-lorē ⁊  
 leoue ure mæies.  
 swa longe swa bið<sup>3</sup> æuere ⁊  
 her ne cume we næuef.

Arthur.

þa loh Arður ⁊  
 ludere stefene.  
 Iþonked wurðe drihtene ⁊  
 þe alle domef waldeð.  
 þat Childric þe stronge ⁊ 20  
 if fad of mine londe.  
 Mi lōd he hæfeð to-dæled ⁊  
 al hið duȝeðe-cnihtes.  
 me feoluē he þohte ⁊

fale cunnef forewe.  
 at Lyncolnes feldes ⁊  
 bi-leaued oure freondes.  
 sixti þoufend manne ⁊  
 þar liggeþ of-flawe.  
 And ȝef hit were þin wille ⁊

þat we moft away wende.

noðde we neuere more ⁊  
 eft comen here.  
 for he<sup>2</sup> we habbeþ for-lore ⁊  
 oure leafue meȝef.

so lange so beoþ euere ⁊  
 her ne come we neuere.  
 þo loh Arthur ⁊ [f. 120. c. 1.]  
 loudere stemne.

Ich þonki mine drihte ⁊  
 þat alle domef weldeþ.  
 þat Childric þe stronge ⁊ 20  
 hið fad of mine londe.  
 Mi lond he haueþ idealed ⁊  
 amang his freo cnihtes.  
 mi feolue he þohte ⁊

'and bring evil tidings.' For here we have found sorrows of many kind; at 'Lincoln [Lincolns fields] left our 'dear relatives [friends]; sixty thousand men, 'that' there 'are [lie] slain. And if it were 'to thee will in heart [thy will], that we might 'pass over sea with sail [go away], we would nevermore eft come here; for here we have lost our dear relatives. So long as is ever, here come we *back* never!" Then laughed Arthur, with loud voice:—"Thanked be the [I thank my] Lord, that all dooms wield-eth, that Childric the strong is tired of my land! My land he hath divided

<sup>1</sup> habbeoð?<sup>2</sup> R. her.<sup>3</sup> bið?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

driuen ut of mire leoden.

driue vt of mine culþe.

halden me for hæne ⁊

&amp; habben mine riche.

&amp; mi cun al for-uaren ⁊

mi uolc al forðemed<sup>1</sup>.Ah of hī<sup>2</sup> bið iwurðen ⁊

Ac of him hit his iworþe ⁊

fwa bið of þan voxē.

fo hif of þā foxe.

þēne he bið baldest ⁊

wane he his boldest ⁊

ufen an þan walde.

ouenan þe wolde.

&amp; hæfeð hif fulle ploȝe ⁊

10 and haueþ hif folle pleay ⁊

&amp; fuȝeles inoȝe.

and foweles inowe.

for wildſcipe climbið ⁊

for wildſipe clembeþ ⁊

and cluden ifeched<sup>3</sup>.

and cludeþ he fecheþ.

i þan wilderne ⁊

in þan wilde cleues ⁊

holȝes him wurchēð.

holes he fecheþ<sup>4</sup>.

farē wha fwa auere fare ⁊

fare wo fe þar fare ⁊

naueð he næuere næne kare.

naueþ neuere nanne care.

he weneð to beon of duȝeðe ⁊

he wenep þat he be þanne ⁊

baldest alre deoren.

boldest alre deore.

þēne<sup>5</sup> fiȝeð him to ⁊

20 Ac wane fieþ him to ⁊

ſegges vnder beorȝen.

hontef onder borewe.

mid hornen mid hundē ⁊

mid hornes mid hundes ⁊

'to all [among] his [free] knights; myself he thought to drive out of my country; 'hold me for base, and have my realm, and my kin all put to death, my folk all destroy.' But of him [it] is happened, as *it* is of the fox, when he is boldest over the weald, and hath his full play, and fowls enow; for wildness *he* climbeth, and rocks [he] seeketh; in the 'wilderness [wild cliffs] holes 'to him [he] worketh. Fare 'whosoever [whoso there] shall fare, he hath never any care; he weeneth 'to be of power [that he is then] *the* boldest of all animals. [But] when come to him *the* 'men [hunters] under *the* hills, with horns, with hounds, with loud cries; *the*

<sup>1</sup> fordemen?<sup>2</sup> *At first written* hit.<sup>3</sup> ifecheð?<sup>4</sup> wircheþ?<sup>5</sup> Ah þēne?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

mid haȝere ſtefenen. [c.2.]  
 hunten þar talieð ⁊  
 hundes þer galieð.  
 þene vox driueð ⁊  
 ȝeond daleſ & ȝeond dunes.  
 he ulih to þā holme ⁊  
 & hiſ hol<sup>1</sup> iſecheð.  
 i þā uirſte ænde ⁊  
 i þan holle wendeð.  
 þenne iſ þe balde uox ⁊ 10  
 bliſſen al bideked.  
 & mon him to-delueð ⁊  
 on ælchere heluen.  
 þēne beoð þer forcuðeſt ⁊  
 deoren alre prutteſt.  
 Swa wes Childriche ⁊  
 þan ſtrongen & þan riche.  
 he þohten al mi kinelōd ⁊  
 ſentten<sup>2</sup> an hiſ aȝere hond.  
 ah nu ich habbe hine idriuen ⁊ 20  
 to þan bare dæðe.  
 whæðer ſwa ich wulle don ⁊  
 oðer flæn oðer ahon.  
 Nu ich wulle ȝifen hī grið ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

mid heȝere ſtemne.  
 hontef þar talieþ ⁊  
 houndes þar galieþ.  
 þane fox driueþ ⁊  
 ȝeond dounes and dales.  
 þanne flicþ he to þan cleoue ⁊  
 and hiſ hol ſecheþ.  
 in to þan forreſt ende ⁊  
 of þan hole he wendeþ.  
 þanne hiſ þe bolde fox ⁊ 10  
 bliſſe al bi-dealeð.  
 and man him to-dealueþ ⁊  
 in euerече halue.  
 þanne hiſ forcoupift ⁊  
 deor alre proteſt.  
 So was Childriche ⁊  
 þe ſtrange and þe riche.  
 he þohte al min kinelond ⁊ [c.2.]  
 fette on hiſ owe hond.  
 ac nou ich habbe hine idriue ⁊ 20  
 to þan bare deaþe.  
 waþer ſo ich wolle don ⁊  
 oþer flen oþer an-hon.  
 Nou ich wolle ȝefue him griþ ⁊

hunters there hollow, *the* hounds there give tongue, *they* drive the fox over 'dales and over downs [downs and dales, then] he fleeth to the 'holm [cliff], and seeketh his hole; 'in [into] the furthest end 'in [of] the hole [he] goeth; then is the bold fox of bliss all deprived, and men dig to him on 'each [every] side; then is 'there' most wretched *the* proudest of all animals! So was *it with* Childric, the strong and the rich; he thought all my kingdom to set in his own hand; but now I have driven him to the bare death, whether so (whatsoever) I will do, either slay or hang. Now will

<sup>1</sup> holt *pr. m.*, but *t* erased.<sup>2</sup> *R.* fetten.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

<p> &amp; leten hine me ſpecken wið.  nulle ich hine flæ no ahon ⁊  ah hiſ bode ich wulle fō.  ȝifles ich wulle habbē ⁊  of hæxten hiſ monnen.  horf &amp; heore wepnen ⁊  ær heo heðne wenden.  and ſwa heo ſcullen wræcchen ⁊  to heoren ſcipen liðen.  ſæilien ouer ſæ ⁊  to ſele heore londe.  &amp; þer wirdliche¹ ⁊  wunien on riche.  and tellen tidende ⁊  of Arðure kīnge.  hu ich heom habbe ifreoied ⁊  for mineſ fader ſaule.  &amp; for mine freo-dome ⁊ [f. 120<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  ifrouered þa wræcchen.  Her weſ Arður þe king ⁊  aðelen biðæled.  neſ þer nan ſwa rehȝ mon ⁊  þe him durſte ræden.  þet him of-þuhte ſære ⁊ </p>	<p> and lete hine ſpeke me wiþ.  nolle ich hine flean ne an-hon ⁊  al hiſ bede ich wolle don.  ich wolle habbe ȝifles ⁊  of þe hehteſt of hiſ manne.  horf and hire wepne ⁊  her hii wende ine.  ſo hii ſolle wreccheſ ⁊  to hire fipes wende.  ſayli ouer ſée ⁊  to hire owe londe.  and þar worplice ⁊  wonie on hire riche.  and tellen tȝdinde ⁊  of Arthur þan kinge.  hou ich hā ifroued ⁊  for mine fader ſaule.  and for mine fredome ⁊  ifroued þe wrecches.  Her waſ Arthur þe king ⁊  apele bi-dealed.  naſ þar non ſo reh mon ⁊  þat him dorſte reade.  þat him of-þohte ⁊ </p>
---	---

I give him peace, and let him ſpeak with me; I will not him ſlay, nor hang, 'but [all] hiſ prayer I will 'receive [do]. Hoſtages I will have of [the] hiſteſt of hiſ men; their hoſes and weapons, ere they hence depart; 'and' ſo they ſhall *as* wretches go to their ſhips; ſail over ſea to their 'good [own] land, and there worthily dwell in [their] realm, and tell tidings of Arthur [the] king, how I them 'have freed [ſuccoured], for my fathers ſoul, and for my freedom ſolaced the wretches." Hereby was Arthur the king of honor deprived; was there no man ſo bold that durſt him adviſe;—

¹ wirdliche?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

sone þer after.

sone þar after.

[Child]ric. Childric cō of comela ⁊

Cheldrich com of comelan ⁊

to Arðure þan kinge.

to Arthur þan kinge.

&amp; he his mon þer bi-com ⁊

and he his man þar bi-com ⁊

mid his cnihten alle.

and his cnihtes alle.

Feouwer and twenti ȝifles ⁊

Four and twēti hostages ⁊

Childric þer bitæhte.

Childrich þar bi-tahte.

alle heo weoren icorene ⁊

alle hii weren i-core ⁊

and hæhȝe men iborenne.

and heȝe men i-bore.

heo bi-tahten heore horf ⁊ 10

hii bi-tahte hire hors ⁊

and heore burnen.

and al hire wepne.

scaftes &amp; sceldes ⁊

scaftes and feldes ⁊

&amp; longe heore sweordes.

and al hire sweordef.

al heo bi-læfden ⁊

al hii bi-lefden ⁊ [197. c. 1.]

þat heo þer hæfden.

þat hii þar hadden.

Forð heo gunnen fiȝen ⁊

Forþ hii gonne wende ⁊

þat heo to sæ comen.

þat hii to sée come.

þer heore scipen gode ⁊

þar hire fipes gode ⁊

bi þere sæ stoden.

bi þare [sée] stode.

Wind stod on wille ⁊ 20

weder fwiðe murie.

he<sup>1</sup> scufen from þan stronde ⁊and hi hii<sup>2</sup> fouen fram þan londe ⁊

scipen grete &amp; longe.

hire fipes stronge.

that repented him 'sore,' soon thereafter! Childric came from covert (?) to Arthur the king; and he there became his man, 'with [and] all his knights. Four and twenty hostages Childric there delivered; all they were chosen, and noble men born; they delivered their horses, and 'their burnies [all their weapons], spears and shields, and 'their long [all their] swords; all they relinquished that they there had. Forth they gan to march until they came to *the* sea, where their good ships by the sea stood. 'The wind stood at will, *the* weather most favorable,' [and] they shoved from the 'strand [land their] ships 'great and long [strong]; 'the land they all left,'

<sup>1</sup> heo?<sup>2</sup> Sic MS.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat lond heo al bilæfden ⁊

&amp; liðen after vðen.

þat nāene siht of londe ⁊

ifeō heo ne mahten.

þat water wes stille ⁊

after heore iwille.

heo lettē to-somne ⁊

fæiles gliden.

bord wið borden ⁊

beornes þer spileden.

sæiden þat heo wolden ⁊

eft to þiffen londe.

& wreken wurdliche<sup>1</sup> ⁊

heore wine-mæies.

&amp; weften Arðures lond ⁊

&amp; leoden aquellen.

and castles biwinnen ⁊

&amp; wilgomē wurchen.

Swa heo liðen after fæ ⁊

efne al fwa longe.

þat heo comen bitwiȝe ⁊

Ænglelonde &amp; Normandie.

heo wenden heore lofes ⁊

&amp; liðen toward lode.

and wende forþ so longe ⁊

þat no lond hii ne sehȝe.

þat weder was stille ⁊

after hire wille.

and gliden to-gaderes ⁊

and wordes speke.

10

[c. 2.] and faide þat hii wolde ⁊

eft to þiffe londe.

20

and weften Arthur lond ⁊

and hif folk cwelle.

Hii wende hire loues ⁊

and tornde to þiffe londe.

and 'floated with the waves [proceeded forth so long], that no 'sight of' land they 'might see [saw]. The 'water [weather] was still, after their will; 'they let together *their* sails glide, board against board, *the* men there discoursed [and glided together, and words spake; and] said that they would *return* eft to this land, 'and avenge worthily their relatives,' and waste Arthurs land, and kill [his] folk, 'and win *the* castles, and work *their* pleasure. So they voyaged on *the* sea even so long, that they came between England and Normandy'; they veered their luffs, and 'came toward [turned

<sup>1</sup> wurdliche?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þat heo comen ful iwif :  
 to Derte-muðe at Totteneis.  
 mid muchelere bliffe :  
 heo buȝen to þan londe.  
 Sone fwa heo a lond comen :  
 þat folc heo afloȝen.  
 þa cheorles heo uloȝen :  
 þa tiledē þa eorðen.  
 heo hengen þa cnihtef :  
 þa biwusten þa londef. 10  
 alle þa gode wiuef :  
 heo stikeden mid cnifes.  
 alle þa maidene :  
 heo mid morðe aqualden.  
 and þaie ilærede men :  
 heo læiden on gledē.  
 Alle þa heorede-cnauen :  
 mid clibben heo a-qualden.  
 heo velledden þa castles :  
 þat lond heo a-wæsten. 20  
 þa chirechen heo for-barnden :  
 baluw wes on folke.  
 þa fukende children :  
 heo adrēten inne wateren.  
 þat orf þat heo nomen :

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat hii come foliwis :  
 to Dertemuþ at Totenas.  
 Sone fo hii a lond come :  
 þat folk hii a-flowe.  
 þe cherles hii hilden :  
 þat telede þar erþe.  
 þe cnihtef hii an-hong :  
 þat were in þan londe. 10  
 alle þe gode wifes :  
 hii stekede mid cnifues.  
 alle þe maidene :  
 mid morþre hii acwelde.  
 and alle þe learedemen :  
 hii caste in fure.  
 þe cheorchef hii for-barnde :  
 þe chaftles hii afulde.  
 þat horf þat hii nome :

to this] land, so that they came full surely to Dartmouth at Totnes; 'with much bliss they approached to the land.' So soon as they came on land, the folk they slew; the churls they drove off, that tilled 'the' earth [there]; the knights they hung, that 'defended [were in] the land; all the good wives they stucked with knives; all the maidens they killed with murder; and [all] the learned men (clergy) they 'laid on embers [cast in *the* fire]. 'All the domestics (*or* baser sort) they killed with clubs; they felled the castles, the land they ravaged; the churches they consumed, [the castles they felled],—'grief was among *the* folk!—the sucking children they drowned in *the* water.'

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

al heo floȝen.	al hii of-flowe.
to heore inne ladden ⁊	to hire ine hii hit ladde ⁊
and fudē and bradden. [c.121.c.1.]	and fude hit and bradde.
al heo hit nom ⁊	al hii hit neme ⁊
þat heo neh comen.	þat hii neh come.
Alle dæi heo funȝen ⁊	Al day hii fonge ⁊
of Ardure <sup>1</sup> þan kinge.	of Arthur þan kinge. [c.2.]
and sæiden þat heo haueden ⁊	and faide þat hii hadde ⁊
hamef biwunnen.	homes bi-wonne.
þæ scolden heom i-halden ⁊ 10	woche hii wolde holde ⁊
in heore onwalden.	
& þer heo woldē wunien ⁊	
wintres & sumeref.	wyntref and fomerres.
And ȝif Arður weoren swa kene ⁊	and ȝef Arthur were so kene ⁊
þat he cumen wolde.	þat he comen wolde.
to fihten wið Childrichen ⁊	to fihte wiþ Childrich ⁊
þan strongen & þan richen.	þan strong and þe rich.
heo wolden of his rugge ⁊	We wollep of his rugge ⁊
makien ane brugge.	makien one brugge.
and nimen þa ban alle ⁊ 20	and nime þe bones alle ⁊
of aðele þan kinge.	
and teien heom to-gadere ⁊	and tiȝe heom to-gadere ⁊
mid guldene teȝen.	
and legȝen i þare halle-dure ⁊	and legȝe heom in þare halle-dore ⁊

The cattle that they took, all they slaughtered; to their inns [they] carried [it], and boiled [it] and roasted; all they it took, that they came nigh. All day they sung of Arthur the king, and said that they had won homes, 'that [which] they 'should [would] hold 'in their power; and there they would dwell' winter and summer. And if Arthur were so keen, that he would come to fight with Childric, the strong and the rich, 'they would ['We will] of his back make a bridge, and take all the bones 'of the noble king,' and tie them together 'with golden ties,' and lay [them] in the hall

<sup>1</sup> R. Arðure.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þer æch mon sculde uorð faren. þar ech man fal forþ fare.  
 to wurðſcipe Chilche<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 þan ſtrongen & þan riche.  
 Þiſ wes al heore gome ⁊  
 for Arðures kingef ſceome.  
 ah al hit iwarð<sup>2</sup> on oðer ⁊  
 fone þer after.  
 heore ȝelp & heore gōe ⁊  
 ilomp heom ſeoluen to ſcāe.  
 & ſwa deð wel iwære ⁊  
 þe mon þe ſwa ibereð.  
 Childric þe kaiſere biwon ⁊  
 al þat he lokede on.  
 he nom Sumerſete ⁊  
 & he nom Dorſete.  
 and al<sup>4</sup> Deuene-ſcire ⁊  
 þat volc al for-ferde.  
 and he Wiltun-ſcire ⁊  
 mid wiðere igrætte. [c.2.]  
 he nom alle þa londes ⁊  
 in to þære ſæ ſtrōde.  
 þa æt þan laſte ⁊  
 þa lette heo blawē.

Childric.

Þiſ was al hire game ⁊  
 for Arthur þe kingef ſame.  
 ac al hit iwarþ oþer ⁊  
 fone þar after.  
 heore ȝeolp and hire game ⁊  
 ful ȝam ſeolue to grame.  
 10 so doþ wel iwære ⁊  
 þe man þat vuel wircheþ.  
 Childrich al a-won ⁊  
 þat he mid ehȝene lokede on.  
 he nam Somerte<sup>3</sup> ⁊  
 he nam Dorſete.  
 and in Deueniffire ⁊  
 þat folk he for-ferde.

door, where each man 'should [shall] go forth, ' to *the* worship of Childric, the strong and the rich !' This was all their game, for Arthur [the] king's shame ; but all it happened ' in ' other *wise*, soon thereafter ; their boast and their game befell to themselves to 'shame [grief] ; ' and ' so doth well everywhere the man that 'so acteth [worketh evil]. Childric ' the kaiser ' won all that he looked on [with eyes] ; he took Somerset, ' and ' he took Dorset, and in Devonshire the folk 'all [he] destroyed, ' and Wiltshire with hostility he greeted' ; he took all the lands ' un ' to the sea strand. Then at the last, ' then caused he horns and trumpets to be blown, and ' his host ' to be as-

<sup>1</sup> Childriche.<sup>2</sup> iwarð ?<sup>3</sup> Somerſete ?<sup>4</sup> an ? i ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

hornes & bemen ⁊  
 & bonniē hif ferden.  
 & forð he wolde buȝen ⁊  
 & Baðen al biliggen.  
 and æc Bristouwe ⁊  
 abuten birouwen.  
 þis waf heore ibeot ⁊  
 ær heo to Baðe comen.  
 To Baðe com þe kæisere ⁊  
 & bilæi þene castel þere. 10  
 & þa men wið innen ⁊  
 ohtliche agunnen.  
 ftepen uppen stanene wal ⁊  
 wel iwepned ouer al.  
 & wereden þa riche ⁊  
 wið þan stronge Childriche.  
 þer lai þe kaifere ⁊  
 & Colgrim hif iuere.  
 & Baldulf hif broðer ⁊  
 & moni an oðer. 20  
 Arður wes bi norðe ⁊  
 and noht her of nufte.  
 ferde ȝeōd al Scotlond ⁊  
 & fette hit an hif aȝere hond.  
 Orcaneie & Galeweie ⁊

he bannede his ferde.  
 and faide þat he wolde ⁊  
 Baþe bi-ligge.  
 and eke Briftouwe ⁊  
 a-boute bi-rowe.  
 þis was hire broc ⁊  
 are hii to Baþe come.  
 þider wende þe cayer ⁊  
 and bi-lay Baþe þer.  
 and þe men wiþ ine ⁊ [L. 97<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 ahlice a-gonne.  
 wenden vppe ston wal ⁊  
 wel iwepnid oueral.  
 and werede þe riche ⁊  
 wiþ þan strong Childriche.  
 Arthur was bi Norþe ⁊  
 and noht her of nufte.  
 he wende oueral Scotlond ⁊  
 and fette hit in his owe hond.  
 Man and Organeie ⁊

sembled, and forth he would march, and [he assembled, and said that he would] Bath 'all' besiege, and eke Bristol about berow. This was their threat, ere they to Bath came. 'To Bath came [Thither went] the kaiser, and belay 'the castle [Bath] there; and the men within bravely began; *they* mounted upon *the* stone walls, well weaponed over all, and defended the place against Childric the strong. 'There lay the kaiser, and Colgrim his companion, and Baldulf his brother, and many another.' Arthur was by *the* North, and knew nought hereof; [he] proceeded over all Scotland, and set it in his own hand; 'Orkney and Galloway, Man and Moray [Man and



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xlii.

Man & Murene<sup>1</sup>.

Morayne and Galeweye.

and alle þa londes ⁊

þe þer to læien.

Arður hit wende ⁊

Arthur hit wende ⁊

to iwiflichē þinge.

þat hit soþ were.

þat Childric iliðen<sup>2</sup> weoren<sup>3</sup> ⁊

þat Childrich were ichord ⁊

to hif aȝene londe.

to his owe londe.

and þat he nauere mære ⁊

and þat he neuere more ⁊

nolde cumen here.

nolde comen here.

þa comen þa tidende ⁊

10 þo comen þe tidynge ⁊

to Arthure kinge.

to Arthur þan kinge.

þat Childric þa kæifere ⁊

þat Cheldrich þe cayfer ⁊

icumen wes to londen<sup>4</sup>.

icome waf to londe.

and i þan fuð ende ⁊ [L 121<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]

in þan fuþ eande ⁊

sorȝen þer worhten.

harmes he wrohte.

[Ar]ður.

þa Arður feide ⁊

þo faide Arthur ⁊

aðeleft kingen.

boldest alre kinge.

Wala wa walawa ⁊

Wolawo ⁊

þat ich sparede mine iua.

þat ich sparede mine fo.

þat ich nauede on holte ⁊

20 þat ich nadde on holte ⁊

mid hūgere hine adefed<sup>5</sup>.

mid hunger hine a-cwelled.

oðer mid fweorde ⁊

oþer mid fweorde ⁊

Orkney, Moray and Galloway], 'and all the lands that lay thereto.' Arthur it weened 'to be certain thing [that it were sooth], that Childric had departed to his own land, and that he never more would come here. When the tidings came to Arthur [the] king, that Childric the kaiser was come to land, 'and' in the South end 'sorrow there [harms he] wrought, then said Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings: "Alas! Alas! that I spared my foe! that I had not with hunger destroyed him in *the* wood, or with

<sup>1</sup> The last two letters are sup. ras.<sup>2</sup> The second letter of this word is sup. ras.<sup>3</sup> The final n has been struck out by a second hand.<sup>4</sup> Lunden, pr. m.<sup>5</sup> adrefed?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

al hine to-fwugen<sup>1</sup>.  
 Nu he me ȝilt mede?  
 for mire god dede.  
 ah swa me hælpēn drihten?  
 þæ scop þæf dæies lihten.  
 þer fore he scal ibiden?  
 bittereft alre baluwen.  
 harde gomenef?  
 hiſ bone ich wulle iwurðen.  
 Colg<sup>1</sup>m & Baldulf?  
 beiene ich wulle aquellen.  
 & al heore duȝeðe?  
 dæð scal iðolien.  
 ȝif hit wule iſnnen?  
 waldende hæfnen.  
 ich wulle wurðliche wreken?  
 alle hiſ wiðer deden.  
 ȝif me mot ilaſten?  
 þat liſ a mire breoſten.  
 & hit wulle me iunne?  
 þat i-ſcop mone & funne.  
 ne ſcal nauere Childric?  
 æft me bi-charren.

al hine to-fwonge.  
 Nou he me ȝelt mede?  
 for mine god hede<sup>2</sup>.  
 al<sup>3</sup> ſo me helpe drihte?  
 þat ſop þiſ daiȝef lihte.  
 he hit ſal a-bugge?  
 ȝef ich mote libbe.  
 10 and Colgrim and Baldolf?  
 beyne ich wolle acwelle.  
 and alle hire cnihtes?  
 deap ſolle þolie.  
 ȝef hit wole drihte?  
 þat alle þingē dihteþ.  
 ich [wolle] worþliche a-wreke?  
 al hiſ wiþere deades.  
 ȝef hit mot i-laſte?  
 þat liſ in mine breoſte.  
 20 ne ſal neuere Cheldrich?  
 eft me bi-chorre.

[C]

[c. 2.]

sword cut him all to pieces! Now he yields to me meed for my good deeds. But so help me *the* Lord, who formed 'the [this] daylight, he shall 'therefore abide bitterest of all bales,—hard games;—his bane I will be [pay for it, if I may live]! [And] Colgrim and Baldulf both I will kill, and all their 'people [knights] shall suffer death. If *the* 'Ruler of Heaven [Lord] will 'grant' it, [who ruleth all things] I will worthily avenge all his hostile deeds; if the life in my breast [it] may last 'to me, and *the* Power that formed moon and sun will grant it to me,' never shall Childric eft deceive me!" Now called Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings:—

<sup>1</sup> to-fwungen?<sup>2</sup> dede?<sup>3</sup> ac?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Nu cleopede Arður ⁊  
 aðeleſt kingen.  
 Whar beo ȝe mine cnihtes ⁊  
 ohte men & wiðte.  
 to horſe to horſe ⁊  
 he<sup>1</sup> haleðes gode.  
 and we ſcullē<sup>2</sup> buȝen ⁊  
 touward Baðe ſwiðe.  
 Leteð up fuſen ⁊  
 heȝe forkē. 10  
 & bringeð her þa ȝæſles ⁊  
 biſore ure cnihtes. [c.2.]  
 and heo ſcullen hongien ⁊  
 on hæȝe treowen.  
 þer he lette fordon ⁊  
 feouwer & tweti<sup>3</sup> childerren.  
 Alemainiſce mē ⁊  
 of ſwide<sup>4</sup> heȝe cunnen.  
 þa comē tidende ⁊  
 to Arðure þan kinge. 20  
 þat ſeoc wes Howel hiſ mæi ⁊  
 þer fore he wes fari.  
 i Clud ligginde ⁊  
 & þer he hine bilæfde.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Nou cleopede Arthur ⁊  
 boldeſt alre kinge.  
 Ware be ȝe mine cnihtes ⁊  
 ohte men and wihte.  
 nou we mote wende ⁊  
 toward Baȝes eande.  
 leteþ hongy þe ȝiſles ⁊  
 þat hii ous bi-toke.  
 þar he lette for-don ⁊  
 four and twenti children.  
 Alamainiſſe ⁊  
 of ſwiþe heȝe canne.  
 þo com tydinge ⁊  
 to Arthur þan kinge. 20  
 þat ſeak was Howel hiſ maj ⁊  
 þar vore he waſ ſori.  
 faſte liggende ⁊  
 and ſo he hine bi-lefde.

“Where be ye, my knights, brave men and active! ‘To horse, to horse, good warriors’; ‘and we shall [now we must] march toward ‘Bath speedily [Baths end]! Let ‘high gallows be up raised, and bring here the hostages before our knights, and they shall hang on high trees [the hostages be hung, that they delivered to us]!’” There he caused to be destroyed four and twenty children, Alemainish ‘men’ of very noble race. Then came tidings to Arthur the king, that Howel, his relation, was sick,—therefore he was sorry,—lying ‘in Clud [fast]; and ‘there [so] he left him.

<sup>1</sup> Probably *superfluous*.<sup>2</sup> R. *twenti*.<sup>3</sup> *sculleð*?<sup>4</sup> *ſwide*?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Hiȝenliche ſwiðe ⁊  
 forð he gon liðe.  
 þat he bihalues Baðe<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 beh to ane uelde.  
 þer he alihte ⁊  
 & hiſ cnihtes alle.  
 and on mid heore burnen ⁊  
 beorneſ ſturne.  
 & he a fif dæle ⁊  
 dælde hiſ ferde<sup>2</sup>.  
 þa he hafde al iſet ⁊  
 and al hit iſemed.  
 þa dude he on hiſ burne ⁊  
 ibroide of ſtele.  
 þe makede on aluiſc ſmið ⁊  
 mid aðelen hiſ craſte.  
 he wes ihatē Wýgar ⁊  
 þe witeȝe wurhte.  
 Hiſ ſconken he helede ⁊  
 mid hoſē of ſtele.  
 Calibeorne hiſ ſweorð<sup>4</sup> ⁊  
 he ſweinde bi hiſ ſide.  
 hit wes iworht in Aualun ⁊

and he an hiȝenge ⁊  
 toward Baðe wende.  
 þo he nehlehte ⁊  
 bi-halueſ þan tounē.  
  
 he hehte alle hiſ cnihtes ⁊  
 an mid hire brunies.  
  
 and he a fif deale ⁊  
 10 to-deale<sup>3</sup> to-dealde hiſ ferde.

And he warp on him ⁊  
 one brunie of ſtele.  
 þat makede an haluiſ ſmiþ ⁊  
 mid hiſ wife craſte.  
 he was i-hote Wigar ⁊  
 þe wittȝe wrohte.  
 Hiſ legges he helede ⁊  
 20 mid hoſen of ſtele.  
 Caliburne hiſ ſweorð ⁊  
 he ſweinde bi hiſ ſide.  
 hit was i-wroht in Auylun ⁊

Wýgar.

Caliburne.

'Forth he gan to push exceeding hastily, until he beside Bath approached to a plain; there he alighted, and all his knights; and [and he in haste toward Bath went. When he approached beside the town, he ordered all his knights] on with their burnies '*the stern men*,' and he in five divisions separated his army. 'When he had set (appointed) all, and it all beseemed, then' 'he put on his burny, fashioned of steel [And he threw on him a burny of steel], that an elvish smith made, with his 'excellent [wise] craft; he was named Wýgar, the witty wright. His 'shanks [legs] he covered with hose of steel. Caliburn, his sword, he hung by his side; it

<sup>1</sup> Baðe?<sup>3</sup> *Superfluous.*<sup>2</sup> *feorde pr. m. but o expuncted.*<sup>4</sup> *ſweorð?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mið<sup>1</sup> wiȝele-fulle craften.

mid witfolle crafte.

Halm he set on hafde ⁊

One helm he sette on his heued ⁊

hæh of ſtele.

heȝe of ſtele.

þer ð wes moni ȝim-ſton ⁊

þar an was mani ȝemſton ⁊ [L 98. c. 1.]

al mid golde bi-gon.

al mid golde bi-gon.

he wes Vderes<sup>2</sup> ⁊

þas aȝelen kinges.

*Gofwhit.*

he wes ihaten Gofwhit ⁊

he waſ ihote Gofwiht ⁊

ælcen oðere vnlic.

alle oþer onilich.

He heng an his fweore ⁊ [L 122. c. 1.]

He heng on his fwere ⁊

æne ſceald deore.

one ſceald deore.

hiſ nome wes on Bruttife ⁊

hiſ name was in Bruttiffe ⁊

*Prid.*

Pridwen ihaten.

Pridewyn ihote.

þer wes innen igrauen ⁊

þat<sup>3</sup> was hine igraued ⁊

mid rede golde ſtauen.

on anlichniſſe of golde.

an on-licneſ deore ⁊

þat was mid iſoþe ⁊

of drihteneſ moder.

drihtene moder.

Hiſ ſpere he nom an honde ⁊

Hiſ ſpere he nam an honde ⁊

*Ron.*

þa Ron wes ihaten.

þat Ron was ihote.

þa he hafden al hiſ iweden ⁊ 20

þo he hadde al hiſ wede ⁊

þa leop he on hiſ ſteden.

þo leop he on hiſ ſtede.

þa he mihte bihalden ⁊

þo hii mihte bi-holde ⁊

þa bihalueſ ſtoden.

þat þar bi-halueſ were.

was wrought in Avalon, with 'magic [witful] craft. [A] helm he set on [his] head, high of steel; thereon was many gemstone, all encompassed with gold; 'it was Uthers, the noble kings'; it was named Goswhit, 'each [all] other unlike. He hung on his neck a precious shield; its name was in British called Pridwen; therein was engraved 'with red gold tracings' a precious image of [an image of gold, that was in sooth] Gods mother. His spear he took in hand, that was named Ron. When he had all his weeds, then leapt he on his steed. Then might 'he [they] behold, who 'stood [were] beside, the fairest knight, that ever host should lead; 'never saw

<sup>1</sup> mid ?<sup>2</sup> Vðeres ?<sup>3</sup> þar ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þene uæireſte cniht ⁊  
 þe verde ſcolde leden.  
 ne iſæh næuere na man ⁊  
 ſelere cniht nenne.  
 þene him wes Arður ⁊  
 aðeleſt cunnes.

þa cleopede Arður ⁊  
 ludere ſtæfne.

Lou war her biſforen uf ⁊  
 heðene hundes ⁊

þe floȝen ure alderē ⁊  
 mid luðere heore craften.

and heo us beoð on londe ⁊  
 læðeſt alre þīge.

Nu fuſen we hom to ⁊

& ſtærcliche heom leggen on.

& wræken wunderliche ⁊

ure cū & ure riche.

& wreken þene muchele ſcome ⁊ and wreken þane mochele ſame ⁊

þat heo uf iſcend habbeoð. 20 þat ous hii do habbeþ.

þat heo ouer vðen ⁊

comen to Derte-muðen.

& alle heo beoð for-ſworene ⁊

& alle heo beoð for-lorene.

þane faireſt cniht ⁊  
 þat ferde ſal leade.

þo cleopede Arthur ⁊  
 loudere ſtemne.

Lo war her bi-vore ous ⁊

10 heaþene hundes.

þat oure eldre floȝe ⁊

mid hire luþer craftes.

and hi ous beoþ on londe ⁊

loþeſt alre þīge.

Nou wende<sup>1</sup> to heom ⁊

and ſtarlige ȝam legge an.

for alle hii beoþ for-ſworen ⁊

and alle hii beoþ for-loren.

any man better knight none, than Arthur he was, noblest of race!' Then called Arthur with loud voice: "Lo! where here before us *the* heathen hounds, who slew our ancestors with their wicked crafts; and they are to us in land loatheſt of all things. Now march we to them, and ſtarkly lay on them, and avenge 'worthily our kindred, and our realm, and avenge' the mickle ſhame 'by which they have diſgraced us [that they have done to us], 'that they over *the* waves ſhould have come to Dartmouth.' 'And [For] all they are forſworn, and all they ſhall be de-

<sup>1</sup> wende we?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

heo beoð for-demed alle ⁊  
 mid drihttenes fulste.  
 Fufe we nu forð ward ⁊  
 uafte to-somē.  
 æfne al swa softe ⁊ [c.2.]  
 swa we nan ufel ne þohten.  
 and þenne we heoð cumeð to ⁊  
 mi seolf ic wullen on-fon.  
 an alre feormeste<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 þat fiht ich wulle biginnen<sup>2</sup>. 10  
 Nu we scullen riden ⁊  
 and ouer lond gliden.  
 and na man bi his liue ⁊  
 lude ne wurchen.  
 ah faren fæstliche ⁊  
 drihten us fulsten.  
 þa riden agon ⁊  
 Arður þe riche mon.  
 beh oð wælde ⁊  
 & Baðe wolde ifechē. 20  
 þa tidende com to Childriche ⁊  
 þan strongen & þan richen.

Nou we folle ride ⁊  
 nou we folle glide.  
 and al þe formeft ⁊  
 þat fiht ich wolle bi-gynne.  
 nou me helpe to dai ⁊  
 drihte þat wel may.  
**Þ**O riden agon ⁊  
 Arthur þe riche man.  
 wende ouer wolde ⁊  
 Baþe to feche.  
 þe tyding com to Childrich ⁊  
 þane stronge and þane rich. [c.2]

Arðu[r].

stroyed; 'they shall be all put to death, with *the* Lords assistance! March we now forward, fast together, even all as softly as *if* we thought no evil; and when we come to them, myself I will commence; foremost of all the fight I will begin.' Now we shall ride, 'and over *the* land [now we shall] glide; and 'no man on *pain* of his life make noise, but fare quickly; *the* Lord us aid [all the foremost the fight I will begin; now help me to day *the* Lord that well may]!' Then Arthur the rich man gan to ride; *he* proceeded over *the* weald, 'and' Bath 'would [to] seek. The tiding came to Childric, the strong and the rich, that Arthur came

<sup>1</sup> feormeste?<sup>2</sup> Written bigunnen, but a plummet line over the first limb of the u indicates the correction.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þ Arður mid ferde com :  
 al ȝaru to fihte.  
 Childric & hiſ ohte men :  
 leopen heom to horſen.  
 igripen heore wepnen :  
 heo wuſten heom iſæied.  
 Þiſ iſæh Arður :  
 aðeleſt kinge.  
 iſæh he ænne hæðene eorl :  
 hældē him to-ȝeines. 10  
 mid ſeouen hundred cnihten :  
 al ȝærewē to fihten.  
 Þe orl him ſeolf ferden<sup>1</sup> :  
 bi-foren al hiſ genge.  
 & Arður him ſeolf arnde :  
 bi-uoren al hiſ ferde.  
 Arður þe ræie :  
 Ron nom an honde.  
 he ſtræhte ſcaft ſtærcne :  
 ſtiðimoden king. 20  
 hiſ horf he lette ġnen :  
 þat þe eorðe dunede<sup>2</sup>.  
 Sceld he braid on breoſtē :

þat Arthur mid ferde :  
 ȝaru cō to fihte.  
 Cheldrich mid hiſ ohte men :  
 leopen heom to horfe.  
 and grepen hiſe wepne :  
 hii wiſte ȝam i-ſeipēd.  
 Þo iſeh Arthur an eorl :  
 holde him to-ȝenef.  
 mid ſoue hundred cnihtes :  
 al ȝaru to fihte.  
 Þe eorl him ſeolf ferde :  
 bi-vore al hiſ genge.  
 and Arthur him ſeolf :  
 bi-vore al hiſ ferde.  
 Arthur þe bolde :  
 hiſ ſpere nam an honde.  
 hiſ horf he makede earnee :  
 þat al þe erþe dunede.  
 Sceald he breid to breoſte :

with hoſt 'all' ready to fight. Childric 'and [with] hiſ brave men leapt them to horſe, [and] grasped their weapons,—they knew *themselves to be* hateful! 'Arthur ſaw this, nobleſt of kings'; 'he [Then Arthur] ſaw a 'heathen' earl advance againſt him, with ſeven hundred knights, all ready to fight. The earl himſelf approached before all hiſ troop, and Arthur himſelf 'rode' before all hiſ hoſt. Arthur the bold took 'Ron [hiſ ſpear] in hand; 'he extended (couched) *the* ſtark ſhaft, *the* ſtiff-minded king'; hiſ horſe he 'let [made to] run, *ſo* that [all] the earth dinned. *Hiſ* ſhield he drew to *hiſ* breſt,—the king was incenſed,—he ſmoſe 'Borel' the earl

<sup>1</sup> *The final letter has been ſtruck out by a ſecond hand.*<sup>2</sup> *dunc pr. m.*



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

[*Bor*]el.

þe king wes abolȝen. [f.122<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 he fmat Borel þene eorl ⁊  
 þurh ut þa breoſten.  
 þat þæ heorte to-chā ⁊  
 and þe king cleopede anan.  
 þe formeſte iſ fæie ⁊  
 nu fulſten uſ drihte.  
 and þa hefenliche quene ⁊  
 þa drihten akēde.  
 þa cleopede Arður ⁊ 10  
 aðeleſt kinge.

Nu heom to nu heð to ⁊  
 þat formeſt iſ wel idon.  
 Bruttes hom leiden on ⁊  
 ſwa me ſcal a luðere don.  
 heo bittere ſwipen ȝefuen ⁊  
 mid axes & mid ſweordes.  
 þer feolle Cheldriches men ⁊  
 fulle twa þuſend.  
 ſwa neuere Arður ne leſ ⁊ 20  
 næuere ænne of hiſ.  
 þer weoren Sæxiſce men ⁊  
 folken alre ærmeſt.  
 & þa Alemainiſce men ⁊  
 ȝeomereſt alre leoden.  
 Arður mid hiſ ſweorde ⁊

þe king was a-bolwe.  
 he fmot þan eorl ⁊  
 þorh vt þe breoſte.  
 þat þe heorte to-chon ⁊  
 and þe king cleopede anon.  
 þe formeſte hiſ oure ⁊  
 nou helpe ous drihte.

Nou heom to nou heom to ⁊  
 þe formeſte hiſ wel idon.  
 Bruttus heom leide on ⁊  
 ſo me ſal þe luþer don.  
 bitere ſwipes hii ȝeuen ⁊  
 mid axes and mid cniues.  
 þar folle Childreches men ⁊  
 folle two þuſend.  
 ſo neuere Arthur ne leas ⁊  
 on of hiſ manne.

Arthur mid hiſ ſweorde ⁊

throughout the breast, so that the heart sundered. And the king called anon, "The foremost is 'dead [ours]! Now help us *the* Lord, 'and the heavenly queen, who *the* Lord bore!" Then called Arthur, noblest of kings': "Now to them! now to them! The commencement is well done!" *The* Britons laid on them, as men should do on [the] wicked; they gave bitter strokes with axes and with 'swords [knives]. There fell of Childrics men full two thousand, so *that* never Arthur lost 'ever' one of his [men]; 'there were *the* Saxish men of all folk most wretched, and the Alemainish men most miserable of all people!' Arthur with his sword 'wrought destruction

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

fæie-feipe wurhte.  
 al þat he smat to ⁊  
 hit wes sone for-don.  
 Al wæs þe king abolȝen ⁊  
 swa bið þe wilde bar.  
 þēne he i þan mæste ⁊  
 monie [fwyn] imetep.  
 Þis ifæh Childric ⁊  
 & gon him to charren.  
 & beh him ouer Auene ⁊  
 to burȝen him feoluen.  
 And Arður him læc to ⁊  
 fwa hit a liun weoren.  
 & fufde heom to flode ⁊  
 monie þer weoren fæie. [c.2.]  
 þer funken to þan grūde ⁊  
 fif & twenti hūdreð.  
 þa al wes Auene stram ⁊  
 mid stele ibrugged.  
 Cheldric ouer þat wate<sup>1</sup> flæh ⁊ 20  
 mid fiftene hundred cnihten.  
 þohte forð siðen ⁊  
 & ouer sæ liðen.  
 Arður ifæh Colgrim ⁊

bitere fwipef fwipte.  
 al þat he smot to ⁊  
 hit was sone for-do.  
 Al waf þe king a-bolwe ⁊  
 so his þe wilde bor.  
 wane he in þan mæste ⁊  
 many fwyn i-metep.  
 Þis i-feh Cheldric ⁊ [f. 98<sup>b</sup>. c. 2.]  
 and gan him to flende.  
 and iwende ouer Auene ⁊  
 to borȝe him fram arme.  
 And Arthur heom leop to ⁊  
 ase hit a lȝon were.  
 and wende him to flode ⁊  
 and manie weren fæie.  
 þar funke to þan grunde ⁊  
 fouene an twenti hundred.  
 þat al was þe streim of Auene ⁊ *Auene*  
 mid stele i-brugged.  
 Childrich ouer þan water fleap ⁊ *Childr*  
 mid fiftene hundred cnihtes.  
 he þohte forþ wende ⁊  
 and ouer see sailȝ.  
 Arthur ifah Colgrim ⁊ *Colgr*

[bitter strokes struck]; all that he smote at, it was soon destroyed! The king was all enraged as is the wild boar, when he in the beech-wood meeteth many swine. Childric saw this, and gan him to 'turn [flee], and 'bent him [went] over *the* Avon, to save 'himself [him from harm]. And Arthur 'approached [leapt] to 'him [them], as *if* it were a lion, and 'drove them [advanced him] to *the* flood; 'there [and] many were slain; there sunk to the bottom 'five [seven] and twenty hundred, *so* that all 'Avons stream [the stream of Avon] was bridged with steel! Childric over the water fled, with fifteen hundred knights; [he] thought forth to push, and sail over

<sup>1</sup> water?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

climben to munten.  
 buȝen to þan hulle ⁊

clembe to on hulle.

*Baðe.* þa ouer Baðen stondeð.

*Baldulf.* & Baldulf beh him after ⁊  
 mid seoue þusend cnihtes.  
 heo þohten i þan hulle ⁊  
 hæhliche at-stonden.

and Baldolf wende after ⁊  
 mid soue þousend cnihtes.  
 hii þohten o þan hulle ⁊  
 hehliche at-stonde.

weorien heom mid wepnen ⁊  
 & Arður<sup>1</sup> awæmmen.

*Arður.* þa isæh Arður ⁊

10

aðelest kingen.

*Colgrim.* whar Colgrim at-stod ⁊

& æc stal wrohte.

þa clupede þe king ⁊

kenliche lude.

Balde mine þeines ⁊

buhȝeð to þā hullef.

For ȝerstendæi wes Colgrim ⁊  
 monnen alre kenneft.

nu him if al swa þere gat ⁊ 20

þer he þene hul wat.

hæh uppen hulle ⁊

fehtheð mid hornen.

þo cleopede þe king ⁊

kenliche londe.

Bolde mine cnihtes ⁊

boueþ to þan hulle.

For ȝorstendai was Colgrim ⁊  
 man alre kenneft.

nou hi his ase wo ase þe got ⁊

þar he þane hulle wot.

heh vppen hulle ⁊

fihteþ mid hornes.

*the sea.* Arthur saw Colgrim climb to *the* mount [a hill], 'retreat to the hill that standeth over Bath'; and Baldulf went after 'him,' with seven thousand knights; they thought on the hill to withstand nobly, 'defend them with weapon, and do injury to Arthur. When Arthur saw, noblest of kings, where Colgrim withstood, and eke battle wrought,' then called the king, keenly loud: "My bold *'*thanes [knights], advance to the *'*hills [hill]! For yesterday was Colgrim *'*of all men keenest [man keenest of all], *but* now *'*it is to him all as to [he is as woe as] the goat, where he guards the hill; high upon *the* hill *he* fighteth with horns, when the wild

<sup>1</sup> The last two letters are interlined.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þenne comed<sup>1</sup> þe wlf wilde:  
 touward hire winden.  
 þeh þe wulf beon ane:  
 butē ælc imane.  
 & þer weoren in ane loken:  
 fif hundred gaten.  
 þe wulf heom to iwiteð:  
 and alle heom abiteð.  
 Swa ich wulle nu to dæi: [f.123.c.1.]  
 Colgrī al fordemem.  
 ich am wulf & he if gat:  
 þe gume ſcal beon fræie.  
 þa ȝet cleopede Arður:  
 aðeleſt kingen.  
 ȝorſtendæi wes Baldulf:  
 cnihten alre baldeſt.  
 nu he ſtant on hulle:  
 & Auene bi-haldeð.  
 hu ligeð i þan ſtræme:  
 ſtelene fiſces.  
 mid ſweorde bi-georede:  
 heore fund if awemmed.  
 heore ſcalen wleoteð:  
 ſwulc gold-ſaȝe ſceldes.

wane comeþ þe wolf:  
 wilde toward him winde.  
 þeh þe wolf be one:  
 wiþ houte heni imone.  
 and þar were on flockes:  
 two hundred gotes.  
 þe wulf to witeþ:  
 and alle a-biteþ.  
 So ich wolle nou to dai:  
 10 Colgrīm for-deme.  
 ich ham wolf and he got:  
 þat ſal deaþ þolie.  
 ȝet him ſpekeþ Arthur: [c.2.]  
 baldeſt alre kinge.  
 ȝorſtendai was Baldolf:  
 cniht alre baldeſt.  
 nou he ſtond on hulle:  
 and Auene bi-holdeþ.  
 hou liggeþ in þan ſtreme:  
 20 ſtelene fiſces.

wolf approacheth toward him. Though the wolf be alone, without 'each [any] herd, and there were in 'a fold five [flocks two] hundred goats, the wolf to them goeth, and all 'them' biteth. So will I now to-day Colgrim 'all' destroy; I am *the* wolf and he 'is' *the* goat; 'the man shall die [that shall suffer death]!' 'The' yet 'called [speaketh him] Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings: "Yesterday was Baldulf 'of all knights [knight of all] boldest, *but* now he standeth on *the* hill, and beholdeth *the* Avon, how *the* steel fishes lie in the stream! 'Armed with sword, their life is destroyed; their scales float like gold-dyed shields; there float their fins,

<sup>1</sup> comeð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Childric.

þer fleoteð heore spiten :  
 fwulc hit spæren weoren.  
 þis beoð seolcuðe þing :  
 ifiȝen to þisse londe.  
 fwulche deor an hulle :  
 fwulche fises in walle.  
 ȝurstendæi wes þe kaifere :  
 kenneft alre kingen.  
 nu he if bicumen hunte :  
 & hornes him fulieð.  
 sihð ouer bradne wæld :  
 beorkeð his hundes.  
 he hafeð bihaluf Baðen :  
 his huntinge bilæfued.  
 freom his deore he flicð :  
 & we hit scullen fallen.  
 and his balde ibeot :  
 to nohte ibrigen.  
 and swa we sculle brukien :  
 rihte bi-ȝæten.

Arður.

¶ Efne þan worde :  
 þa þe kig seide.  
 he bræid hæȝe his sceld :  
 forn to his breosten. [c. 2.]  
 he igrap his spere longe :

þis wonderes beoþ :  
 ifiȝe to londe.  
 soch fif in wille :  
 soch deor on hulle.  
 ȝorstenday was Cheldrich :  
 kenneft alre kinge.  
 nou he his bi-come honte :  
 10 and hornes him folweþ.  
 flicþ ouer brodne feld :  
 borkeþ his hundes.  
 he haueþ bi-haluf Baþe :  
 his hontynge bi-lefued.  
 fram his deor he flicþ :  
 we hit solle falle.

20

Efne þan worde :  
 þat þe king saide.  
 he breid hehȝe his scelde :  
 vp to his breoste.  
 he grop his spere longe :

as if it were spears'. These are 'marvellous things [wonders] come to 'this' land; such beasts on *the* hill, such 'fishes [fish] in *the* stream! Yesterday was 'the kaiser [Childric] keenest of all kings; now is he become a hunter, and horns him follow; *he* flieth over *the* broad 'weald [field]; his hounds bark; he hath beside Bath his hunting deserted; from his deer he flieth, 'and' we it shall fell, 'and his bold threats bring to nought; and so we shall enjoy *our* rights gained.'" Even with the words that the king said, he drew his shield high 'before [up to] his breast; he grasped his long spear, 'his horse he gan [and gan his horse] spur. Nigh

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

hif horf he gon spurie.  
 Neh al fwa fwi<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 swa þe fuȝel flizeð.  
 fuleden þan kinge ⁊  
 fif and twenti þufend.  
 whitere monnen ⁊

wode under wepnen.

hældē to hulle ⁊

mid hæhȝere strēgðe.

and uppen Colgrime smiten ⁊ 10

mid fwiðe smærte biten.

And Colgrim<sup>2</sup> heom þer hente ⁊

and feolde þa Bruttes to grūde.

i þan uormeste ræfe ⁊

fulle fif hundred.

þat ifaeh Arður ⁊

aðelest kingen.

and wrað hi<sup>3</sup> him iwræððed ⁊

wunder ane swiðe.

and þus cleopien a-gon ⁊ 20

Arður þe hæhȝe mā.

War beo ȝe Bruttes ⁊

balde mine beornes.

her stondeð us biuoren ⁊

and gan his horf sporie.

Neh al so fwiþe ⁊

so þe fowel flieþ.

folwede þan kinge ⁊

fif and twenti þoufend.

hii wende to þan hulle ⁊

mid baldere strengþe.

and vppe Colgri smite ⁊

fwiþe smorte bites.

And Colgrim ȝam hende ⁊

and fulde þe Bruttus.

in þe forste reafe ⁊

fulle fif hūdred.

Þis ifah Arthur ⁊

and wrappede him fwiþe ⁊

and cleopie agan ⁊

Arthur þe hehȝe man.

Ware be ȝeo Bruttes ⁊

bolde mine cnihtes.

here stondeþ vs bi-vore ⁊ [f.9]

all so swift as the fowl flieth, five and twenty thousand 'of brave mad under arms,' followed the king; [they] proceeded to the hill 'great [bold] strength, and smote upon Colgrim 'with' exceeding strokes. And Colgrim them 'there' received, and felled the Briton ground'; in the 'foremost [first] attack fell five hundred. Arthur saw [this], 'noblest of kings,' and wrathed him 'wondrously' much; and 'gan to call Arthur, the noble man: "Where be ye, Britons, my bold [knights]! Here stand before us our foes all chosen; 'my good war

<sup>1</sup> fwiðe?<sup>2</sup> grum, *pr. m.*, but corrected in the *mar*<sup>3</sup> *Sic MS.* These two words are probably superfluous.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

vre ifan alle icorē.  
 gumen mine gode ⁊  
 legge we heom to grunde.  
 Arður igrap his sweord riht ⁊  
 & he smat ænne Sexife cniht.  
 þ̅ þ̅ sweord<sup>1</sup> þ̅ wes swa god ⁊  
 æt þan toþen at-stod.  
 & he smat enne oðer ⁊  
 þat wes þas cnihtes broðer.  
 þat his halm & his hæfd ⁊ 10  
 halden to grunde.  
 þene þridde dunt he sone ȝaf ⁊  
 & enne cniht atwa clæf.  
 þa weoren Bruttes ⁊ [f. 123<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 swiðe ibalded.  
 & leiden o þan Sæxen ⁊  
 læȝen swi<sup>2</sup> stronge.  
 mid heore speren longe ⁊  
 and mid fweoreden swiðe strōge.  
 Sexes þer uullen ⁊ 20  
 & fæie-sih makeden.  
 bi hundred bi hundred ⁊  
 hælden to þan grunde.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

oure fon al icore.  
 go we mid ifunde ⁊  
 and legge we heom to grunde.  
 Arthur grop his sweord riht ⁊  
 and smot ane Saxisse cniht.  
 þat þe sweord þat was so god ⁊  
 at þe middel hit astod.  
 and he smot on oþer ⁊  
 þes cnihtes broþer.  
 þat his helm and his heued ⁊  
 wende in þan felde.  
 þane þridde dunt he sone ȝeaf ⁊  
 and one cniht he al to-cleof.  
 þo weren Bruttus ⁊  
 swiþe ibolded.  
 and leiden on þe Saxisse ⁊  
 mid hire stronge mihte.

[go we in safety, and] lay we them to *the* ground!" Arthur grasped his sword right, and 'he' smote a Saxish knight, *so* that the sword that was so good at the 'teeth [middle it] stopt; and he smote another, 'who was' this knights brother, *so* that his helm and his head fell 'to *the* ground [on the field]; the third blow he soon gave, and a knight 'in two clove [he all clove asunder]. Then were *the* Britons greatly emboldened, and laid on the Saxons 'laws (blows) most strong [with their strong might,] 'with their long spears and with swords most strong'; [*so* that] *the* Saxons there fell, and made *their* death-time, by hundreds and hundreds sank to the [many

<sup>1</sup> *Sup. ras.*<sup>2</sup> swiðe? Cf. v. 19581.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

bi þufund & bi þufend ⁊  
 þer feollen æuere in þene grund.  
 þa ifeh Colgrim ⁊  
 wær Arður com touward him.  
 ne mihte Colgri for þan wæle ⁊  
 fleon a nare fide.  
 þer sæht Baldulf ⁊  
 bi-fiden his broðer.  
 þa cleopede Arður ⁊  
 ludere stefne.  
 Her ich cume Colg'm ⁊  
 to cuððen wit scullen ræchen.  
 nu wit scullen þif lond dalen ⁊  
 swa þe bið alre laððeft.  
 Æfne þan worde ⁊  
 þa þe king sæide.  
 his brode swærd he up ahof ⁊  
 and hærdliche adun floh.  
 and smat Colg'mes hælme ⁊  
 þ he amidde to-clæf.  
 and þere burē hod ⁊  
 þat hit at þe breofste at-stod.  
 And he sweinde touward Baldulfe ⁊

þo ifeh Colgri ⁊  
 war Arthur com toward him.  
 ne mihte he fliht makie ⁊  
 in neuere one fide.

þo saide Arthur ⁊  
 10 to Colgrim þan kene.

Nou we folle þis kinelond ⁊  
 deale ous bi-twine.

**E** Fne þan word ⁊  
 þat þe king saide.  
 his brode sweord he vt droh ⁊

and vppe Colgrim his helm smot

and to-cleof þane brunie hod ⁊  
 þat hit at þe breofste a-stod.

And he a wiþer sweyncde ⁊

to] ground, 'by thousands and thousands fell there ever on the ground!' When Colgrim saw where Arthur came toward him, 'Colgrim [he] might not 'for the slaughtered flee on any [make flight on ever one] side; 'there fought Baldulf beside his brother.' Then 'called [said] Arthur 'with loud voice [to Colgrim the keen]: "'Here I come, Colgrim! 'to *the* realm we *two* shall reach'; now we shall divide this land [kingdom between us], 'as shall be to thee loathest of all!'" Even with the words that the king said, his broad sword he 'up heaved [out drew], 'and hardily down struck,' and smote 'Colgrims [upon Colgrim his] helm, 'so that he clove *it* in *the* midst, and [clove asunder] the burnys hood, so that it (the sword) stopt at the breast. And he smote to' ward' Baldulf [his brother] 'with his left



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

mid his swiðrē hōde.  
 & swipte þat hæfued of ⁊  
 forð mid þan helme.  
 þa loh Arður ⁊  
 þe alðele<sup>1</sup> king.  
 and þus ȝeddien agon ⁊  
 mid gomenfulle worden.  
 Lien nu þere Colg<sup>1</sup>m ⁊  
 þu were iclumben hæȝe. [c. 2.]  
 and Baldulf þi broðer ⁊ 10  
 lið bi þire side.  
 nu ich al þif kine-lond ⁊  
 sette an eorwer<sup>3</sup> ahȝere hond.  
 dales & dunef ⁊  
*Colgrim.* & al mi drihtliche uolc.<sup>4</sup>  
 þu clumbe a þiffen hulle ⁊  
 wunder ane hæȝe.  
 fwulc þu woldest to hæuene ⁊  
 nu þu scalt to hælle.  
 þer þu miht kenne ⁊ 20  
 mucche of þine cunne.  
 And gret þu þer Hengeft ⁊  
 þe cnihten wes faȝereft.

to Baldolf his broþer.  
 and swipte þat heued of ⁊  
 forþ mid þan helme.  
 þo loh Arthur þe king ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 and þes word faide.  
 Li nou þar Colgrȝm ⁊  
 þe<sup>2</sup> were iclemde to heȝe.  
 and Baldolf þin broþer ⁊  
 liþ bi þine side.  
 nou ich al þif kinelond ⁊  
 sette in ȝoure tweire hond.  
 ȝe clemde to hehȝe ⁊  
 vppen þiffe hulle.  
 afe þeh ȝe wolde to heuene ⁊  
 ac nou ȝe mote to helle.  
 and þare ȝeo mawe kenne ⁊ 20  
 moche of ȝoure cunne.  
 And greteþ þare Hengeft ⁊  
 þat was cniht faireft.

hand [again], and struck off the head, forth with the helm. Then laughed Arthur, the 'noble' king, and 'thus gan to speak with gameful words [said these words]: "Lie now there, Colgrim; thou wert climbed [too] high; and Baldulf, thy brother, lie by thy side; now set I all this kingdom in your 'own [two] hands; 'dales and downs, and all my good folk!' 'Thou [Ye] climbed 'on [upon] this hill 'wondrously [too] high, as 'if thou wouldst [though ye would] *ascend* to heaven; [but] now 'thou shalt [ye must] to hell, [and] there 'thou mayest [ye may] know much of 'thy [your] kindred. And greet 'thou [ye] there Hengest, that was fairest of knights, Ebissa, [Octa]

<sup>1</sup> R. aðele.<sup>2</sup> þou?<sup>3</sup> eower?<sup>4</sup> This line is sup. ras.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Ebiſſa & Offa ⁊  
 Octa & of þine cūne ma.  
 and bide heom þer wunie ⁊  
 wintres & ſumeref.  
 & we ſcullen on londe ⁊  
 libben in bliſſe.  
 bidden for eower ſaulen ⁊  
 þat fel ne wurðen heom nauære.  
 & ſcullen her æuwer ban ⁊  
 biſide Baðe ligen. 10  
 Arður þe king cleopede ⁊  
 Cador þene kene.  
 of Cornwale he wes eorl ⁊  
 þe cniht wes ſwiðe kene.  
 Hercne me Cador ⁊  
 þu ært min aȝe cun.  
 Nu if Childric iuloȝen ⁊  
 & awæiward itoȝen.  
 he þencheð mid ifunde ⁊  
 aȝen cumen liðen. 20  
 Ah nim of nire uerde ⁊  
 fif þuſend monnen.  
 & fareð forð rihtes ⁊  
 bi dæie & bi nihte.  
 þat þu cumme to þare ſæ ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Ebiſſa Octa and Offa ⁊  
 and of þine cunne mo.  
 and bide heom þare wonie ⁊  
 wýntres and ſomeref.  
 and we ſollen here in londe ⁊  
 libbe in bliſſe.  
 Arthur þo ſaide ⁊  
 to Cador þe kene.  
 of Cornwale he was eorl ⁊  
 þat was a cniht kene.  
 Hercne me Cador ⁊  
 þou hart min eorl deore.  
 Nou his Childrich a-floȝe ⁊  
 and a-weiward itowe.  
 and þencheþ mid ifunde ⁊  
 aȝein hider wende. 30  
 Ac nim of mine ferde ⁊  
 fif þouſend manne.  
 and far þe forþ riht ⁊  
 bi daie and bi niht.  
 þat þou come to þare fée ⁊

and Ossa, 'Octa,' and more of thy kin, and bid them there dwell winter and summer; and we shall [here] in land live in bliss; 'pray for your souls, that happiness never come to them; and here shall your bones lie, beside Bath!'" Arthur, 'the king, called [then said to] Cador, the keen;—of Cornwall he was earl, 'the knight was most [that was a knight] keen:—"Hearken to me, Cador, thou art 'mine own kin [my dear earl]. Now is Childric flown, and awayward gone; 'he [and] thinketh with safety again to come [hither]. But take of my host five thousand men, and go forth-right, by day and by night, until thou come to the sea, before (previous to) Chil-

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

bi-foren Childriche.

bi-vore Childriche.

and al þat þu miht biwīnen ⁊

and al þat þou miht bi-winne ⁊

bruc hit on wunnen.

brouket<sup>1</sup> hit mid wonne.

⁊ ȝif þu miht þene kaifere ⁊ [f. 124.c.1.] and ȝef þou miht þan caȝfer ⁊

ufeſe aquellen þere.

eniwiſe a-cwelle þar.

ich þe ȝifue<sup>2</sup> to mede ⁊

ihc þe ȝefe to mede ⁊ [f. 99.c.1.]

al Doreſete.

al Dorſete.

Al ſwa þe aȝele king ⁊

Onneþe hadde þe kīg ⁊

þas word haſede iſæid.

þat word ibroht to þe hende.

Cador ſprong to horſe ⁊

10 þat Cador ne ſparng<sup>3</sup> to horſe ⁊

ſwa ſpærc him doh of fure.

aſe ſparc doþ of fure.

fulle ſeoue þuſend ⁊

folle ſoue þuſend ⁊

*Cador.* fuleden þan eorle.

folwede þan eorle.

Cador þe kene ⁊

⁊ muchel of hiſ cunne.

hii wende ouer ſeldes ⁊

wenden ouer woldes ⁊

and ouer wildernes.

⁊ ouer wildernes.

ouer dales ⁊ ouer dunes ⁊

ouer deope wateres.

Cador cuȝe þene wæi ⁊

20 Cador coupe þane way ⁊

þe toward hiſ cunde læi.

þat touward hiſ cuppe lay.

an oueſte he wende fuliwiſ ⁊

and an hiȝenge wende foliwiſ ⁊

*Tottenais.* riht toward Toteneis.

riht touward Totenas.

dric; and all that thou mayest win, possess it with joy; and if thou mayest 'with evil [anywise] kill there the kaiser, I will give thee all Dorset to meed.' 'All as the noble king these words had said, [Scarcely had the king brought the words to the end, before] Cador sprang to horse, as spark 'it' doth from fire; full seven thousand followed the earl. 'Cador the keen, and much of his kindred,' [They] proceeded over 'wealds [fields], and over wilderness, 'over dales and over downs, and over deep waters.' Cador knew the way that toward his country lay, 'by the nearest he [and in haste] proceeded full surely right toward Totnes, day and night, [until] he

<sup>1</sup> brouke?<sup>2</sup> ȝifuen, *pr. m.*, but *n* erased.<sup>3</sup> sprang?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

dæies & nihtes ⁊  
 he com þere forð rihtes.  
 swa neuere Childric nufte ⁊  
 of his cume nane cufte.  
 Cador com to cuððe ⁊  
 bi-uoren Childriche.  
 and lette hi fufen<sup>1</sup> biforen ⁊  
 al þas londes folc.  
 cheorles ful ȝepe ⁊  
 mid clubben swiðe græte. 10  
 mid spæren and mid græte wæzen ⁊  
 to þan ane icoren.  
 and duden heom alle clane ⁊  
 into þan scipen grunde.  
 & hæhte heom þere lutie wel ⁊  
 þat Childric of heom neore war.  
 & þenne his folc come ⁊  
 & in wolden climben.  
 heore botten igripen ⁊  
 and ohtliche on smiten. 20  
 mid heore wæzen & mid heore  
 fperen ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 murðren Childriches heren.

daizes and nihtes ⁊  
 forte he com þer forþ rihtes.  
 Childrich noþing nufte ⁊  
 of his come no cufte.  
 Cador com to cuppe ⁊  
 bi-fore Cheldriche.  
 he lette wende him bi-vore ⁊  
 al þat londes folc.  
 cheorles fol ȝepe ⁊  
 mid clubbes wel grete.  
 and dude ȝam alle cleane ⁊  
 into þan fipef grude.  
 and hehte heom lotie wel ⁊  
 þat Cheldrich nere noht war.  
 ac wane his folk come ⁊  
 and in wolde clembe.  
 Nimeþ ȝoure badtes ⁊  
 and hahtliche ȝou florieþ.

ca

came there forth-right, 'so *that*' Childric 'never [nothing] knew any manner of his coming. Cador came to *the* country before Childric, 'and [he] caused to advance before him all *'the* folk of the land [the land-folk]; churls full sagacious, with clubs 'exceeding [well] great, 'with spears and with great staves, chosen for the purpose'; and placed them all clean into the ships holds, and ordered them 'there' to stoop well (low), that Childric were not aware 'of them'; 'and [but] when his folk came, and in would climb, 'to grasp their ["Take *ye* your] bats, and bravely 'on smite [stir you!"]'; 'with their staves and with their spears to murder Childrics host.' The churls did all, as Cador them taught. To

<sup>1</sup> *This word is on erasure.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Al duden þa cheorles :  
 swa Cador heom tæhte.  
 To þan scipen wenden :  
 wiðer-fulle cheorles.  
 in æuer ælche scipe :  
 oder<sup>1</sup> half hundred.  
 And Cador þe kene bæh :  
 in toward ane wude hæh.  
 fif mile from þan stude :  
 þær þæ stoden þa scipen<sup>2</sup>.  
 and hudde hine on wille :  
 wūder ane stille.  
 Childric com fōe :  
 ouer wald liðen.  
 walde to þan scipen fleon<sup>3</sup> :  
 and fufen of lōden.  
 Sone swa Cador isæh :  
 þat wes þe kene eorl.  
 þat Childric wes an eorðen :  
 bitweonen hī and þā cheorlen.  
 þa clupede Cador :  
 ludere stefne.  
 Wær beo ȝe cnihtes :  
 ohte men & wihte.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Al dude þe cheorles :  
 afe Cador ȝam tahte.  
**T**O þan fipes wend :  
 wiperfolle cheorlef.  
 in euereche fipe :  
 oþer half hundred.  
 And Cador þe kene beh :  
 and toward one wode teh.  
 fif mile frā þan stude :  
 þar þe fipes stode. [c. 2.]  
 and hudde him an wile :  
 wonderliche stille.  
 And Cheldrich com sone :  
 ouer dounes wende.  
 wolde to þan fipes fleon :  
 and stelen vt of londe.  
 Sone so Cador þis iseh :  
 þat was þe eorl kene.  
 þat Childrich was bi-twixe :  
 him and þe cheorles.  
 þo saide Cador :  
 loudere stemne.  
 Ware beo ȝe cnihtes :  
 ohte men and wihte.

the ships proceeded *the* valiant churls; in every ship *a* hundred and half. And Cador the keen withdrew, 'in [and] toward a wood 'high [marched], five miles from the place where the ships stood; and hid him a while, wondrously still. [And] Childric soon approached, over *the* 'weald [downs]; and would flee to the ships, and 'push from [steal out of] land. So soon as Cador saw [this], who was the earl keen, that Childric was 'in land, 'between [betwixt] him and the churls, then 'called [said] Cador, with loud voice: "Where be ye, knights, brave men and active?

<sup>1</sup> oðer?<sup>2</sup> þær þa scipen stoden?<sup>3</sup> *R.* fleon.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Iþenched <sup>1</sup> what Ardur <sup>2</sup> ⁊	Iþencheð wat Arthur ⁊
þe if ure aðele king.	þat his oure alre louerd.
at Baðen us bi-fohte ⁊	at Baþe vs bi-fohte ⁊
ær we wenden from hirede.	are we fram him wende.
Leou war fufeð Childric ⁊	Lo war wendeþ Childrich ⁊
& fleð wule of londe.	and fare wole of londe.
and þencheð to Alemaine ⁊	and þencheþ to Alemaine ⁊
þer beoð hiſ ældren.	ware wonieþ hiſ eldre.
and wule bi-ȝiten ferde ⁊	and wole a-winne ferde ⁊
and æft cumen hidere.	10 and eft þiſ lond ſeche.
and wule faren hider in ⁊	
and þencheð awrækē Colgrim.	for to a-wreke Colgrim.
and Baldulf hiſ broðer ⁊	and Baldolf hiſ broþer ⁊
þæ bi <sup>3</sup> Baðen reſteð.	
Ah no abide he neaſuere þæredæȝen ⁊	Ac ne abide we neuere þane dāȝ ⁊
ne ſcal he no ȝif we maȝen.	ne ſal he no ȝef ich maȝ.
Æfne þere ſpæche ⁊ [ſ. 124 <sup>b</sup> . c. 1.]	Efne þan ſpeche ⁊
þa ſpac þe eorl riचे.	þat ſpac þe eorl riचे.
and on ueft he gon riðe ⁊	
þe reh <sup>4</sup> weſ on moden.	20 hii leopen vt of wode ⁊
halden ut of wude ſcaȝe ⁊	aſe hit lȝons were.
ſcalkeſ fwiðe kene.	

Bethink *ye* what Arthur, who is 'our noble king [lord of us all], at Bath besought us, ere we went from 'the host [him]. Lo! where Childric wendeth, and will 'flee [fare] from *the* land; and thinketh *to pass* to Alemaine, where his ancestors 'are [dwell]; and will obtain *an* army, and eft 'come hither, [seek this land, for] 'and will fare in hither; and think-eth' to avenge Colgrim, and Baldulf, his brother, 'who rest at Bath.' But 'he [we] never shall abide the day; he shall not, if 'we [I] may *prevent him!*' Even with the speech, that the powerful earl spake, 'and promptly he gan ride, that was stern in mood; 'the warriors most keen advanced out of *the* wood-shaw [they leapt out of *the* wood, as *if* it were lions], and

<sup>1</sup> Iþencheð?<sup>2</sup> R. Artur.<sup>3</sup> This word is interlined by a second hand.<sup>4</sup> On erasure, but by first hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

and after Cheldriche ⁊  
 þan strongen & þan richen.  
 Cheldriches cnihtes ⁊  
 bi-fehȝen heom baften.  
 ifehȝen ouer wolden ⁊  
 winden heore-mærken.  
 winnien ouer ueldes ⁊  
 fif þuſeð ſceldes.  
 þa iwærð Childric ⁊  
 chærfu<sup>1</sup> an heorten.  
 and þas word ſæide ⁊  
 þe riche kaiſere.  
 þiſ iſ Arður þe king ⁊  
 þe alle uſ wule aquellen.  
 fleo we nu biliue ⁊  
 & in to ſcipen fuſen.  
 and liðen forð mid watere ⁊  
 ne recchen we nauere wudere.  
 þa Childric þe kaiſere ⁊  
 þas word hæuede iſæid.  
 þa gon he to fleōne ⁊  
 feondliche ſwiðe.  
 & Cador þe kene ⁊  
 com him after ſone.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and after Cheldrich ⁊  
 þan kene and þan riche.  
 Childreches cnihtes ⁊  
 ifehȝe bi-hinde.  
  
 hearne ouer feldeſ ⁊  
 fif þouſend ſcealdeſ.  
 þar iwarþ Cheldrich ⁊  
 forþfolle in heorte.  
 and þes word ſaide ⁊  
 þe riche cayſer.  
 þiſ hiſ Arthur þe king ⁊ [£100.c.1.]  
 þat al vs wole a-cwelle.  
 fleo we nou ſwiþe ⁊  
 and in to ſiþe wende.  
 and wende forþ mid wedere ⁊  
 ne reche we neuere wodere.  
 þ O Childrich þe cayſere ⁊  
 þiſ word hadde iſaid þare.  
 þo gonne hii to fleonde ⁊  
 feondeliche ſwiþe.  
 and Cador þe kene ⁊  
 com ȝam after ſone.

after Childric *pursued*, the 'strong [keen] and the rich. Childrics knights looked behind 'them; *they* saw over *the* weald *the* standards wind'; 'approach [run] over *the* fields five thousand shields. Then became Childric 'careful [sorrowful] in heart, and these words said the powerful kaiser: "This is Arthur the king, who will us all kill; flee we now quickly, and into ship go, and voyage forth with *the* 'water [weather], reck we never whither!" When Childric the kaiser had said [there] these words, then gan 'he [they] to flee exceeding quickly; and Cador the keen came soon after 'him [them]. Childric and his knights came to ship forth-right; they

<sup>1</sup> cærfu?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Childric and his cnihtes :  
 to ſcipe comen forð rihtes.  
 heo wenden þa ſcipen ſtronge :  
 to ſculuen<sup>1</sup> from þan londe.  
 þæ cheorles mid heore botten :  
 weoren þer wið innen.  
 þa botten heo up heouen :  
 & adun riht floȝen.  
 þer wes sone iſlaȝen :  
 moni cniht mid heoſ wahȝen. 10  
 wið heore pic-forcken : [c.2.]  
 heo ualden heom to grundē.  
 Cador & his cnihtes :  
 floȝen heð baſten.  
 þa iſaȝ Childric :  
 þ heð ilomp liðerlic.  
 þa al hiſ folc macle :  
 feol to þan grūde.  
 nu i-ſaȝ he þer biſaluē<sup>2</sup> :  
 ænne ſwiðe mare hul. 20  
 þat water tið þer under :  
 þat Teine iſ ihatē.  
 þa hulle ihaten Teinnewic :

Childrich and his cnihtes :  
 to ſipe come forþ rihtes.  
 hii wende þe ſipeſ ſtronge :  
 ſeue fram þan londe.  
 þe cheorles mid hire battes :  
 weren þar wiþ ine.  
 þe battes hii vp houen :  
 and a-dun rihttes flowen.  
 þar was sone iſlaȝe :  
 mani cniht mid hire wawes.  
 mid hire pic-forken :  
 feolde heom to grūde.  
 Cador and his cnihtes :  
 flowen heom bi-hinde.  
 þo iſeȝ Cheldrich :  
 þat him bi-fulle luperlich.

Teine.

weened to shove the strong ships from the land. The churls with their  
 bats were there within; the bats they up heaved, and adown right swung;  
 there was soon slain many a knight with their clubs; with their pitch-  
 forks 'they' felled them to ground, and Cador and his knights slew them  
 behind. 'Then [When] saw Childric, that it befell to 'them [him] evilly;  
 'that all his mickle folk fell to the ground; now saw he there beside a hill  
 exceeding great'; 'the water floweth there under, that is named Teine; the  
 hill is named Teinewic; thitherward [he fled to a hill, that is named Teyne;  
 to the hill of Teyneswich fast] fled Childric, as quickly as he might, with

<sup>1</sup> ſcuuen?<sup>2</sup> biſaluē?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þider ward flæh Childric.  
 swa fwiðe swa he mihte ⁊  
 mid feouwer & twenti cnihten.  
 þa ifæh Cador ⁊  
 hu hit þa uerde þer.  
 þat þe kaisere flæh ⁊  
 & touwarde þæ hulle tæh.  
 and Cador him after ⁊  
 swa swiðe swa he mahte.  
 and him to tuhte ⁊  
 & hine of-toc sone.  
 þa faide Cador ⁊  
 þe eorl swiðe kene.  
 Abid abid Child'c ⁊  
 ich wulle þe ȝefen Teinewic.  
 Cador his sweord an-hof ⁊  
 and he Childric of-sloh.  
 Monie þe þer fluzen ⁊  
 to þan watere heo tuhȝen.  
 inne Teine þan watere ⁊  
 þer heo for-wurðen.  
 al Cador awælde<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 þat he quic funde.  
 and fumme heo crupen ito þan

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

fwiþe fleoh Cheldrich.  
 so fwiþe so he mihte ⁊  
 mid four and twenti cnihtes.  
 þat ifeh Cador ⁊  
 ou hit þo ferde þar.  
  
 he him went after ⁊  
 so fwiþe so he mihte.  
 10 and him of-tok sone ⁊  
 in lutele tȝme.  
 þo faide Cador þe eorl ⁊  
 þat cniht<sup>1</sup> was fwiþe kene. [c. 2]  
 Abid abid Cheldrich ⁊  
 ich wole ȝeue þe Teȝneswich.  
 Cador his sweord a-hof ⁊  
 and he Cheldrich of-sloh.  
 Many þo þar floȝen ⁊  
 and to þan watere toȝen.  
 20 and þar hi a-dreinte ⁊  
 for Cador his heiȝe.  
 al Ca[dor] a-fulde ⁊  
 [wude ⁊] þat he cwik funde.

four and twenty knights. 'Then [That] Cador saw, how it then fared there, 'that the kaiser fled, and toward the hill retreated;' and Cador *pursued* [he went] after him, as speedily as he might, and 'came up to him, and' overtook him soon [in little time]. Then said Cador, the earl [who was knight] most keen: "Abide, abide, Childric! I will give thee Teinewic!" Cador heaved up his sword, and he Childric slew. Many 'that [then] there fled, [and] to the water 'they' drew; [and] 'in Teine the water,' there they 'perished [were drowned, for Cador his dread]; Cador 'killed [felled] all that he found alive; 'and some they crept into the wood, and all he them there

<sup>1</sup> cniht?<sup>2</sup> acwælde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. x111.

and alle he heō þer for-dude.

þa Cador heom haueden alle ouer þo Cador þat fiht hadde ouercome:  
cumen ⁊

and æc al þat lond inumen.

he fette g<sup>t</sup> swiðe god ⁊

þat þer after longe stod. [f. 125.c.1.]

þeh ælc mon beere an honde ⁊

behæf of golde.

ne durste nauere gume nan ⁊

oðerne ufele ig<sup>e</sup>ten<sup>1</sup>.Arður wes forð iwende ⁊ 10  
in to Scotlondē.

for Howel lai inne Clud ⁊

faſte bi-cluſed.

Haſden Scottes hine bi-læien ⁊

mid luðere heore craftē. [icumen ⁊ mid hire luper craftes.

and ȝif Ardur<sup>2</sup> neore þe rader<sup>3</sup> and ȝef he nadde þe raþer bi-come ⁊þenne weoren Houwel inumen. Howel hadde bi nome<sup>4</sup>.

and al hiſ folc þer iſlaȝen ⁊

and idon of liſ-daȝen.

Ah Arður com sone ⁊ 20

mid felere ſtrengðe.

and Scottes to fleōne ⁊

feor of þan ærde.

and þat lond to him inome.

he fette griþ swiþe god ⁊

þat þar after lange stod.

þeh ech man bere an honde ⁊

beȝes of golde.

ne dorſte no gome ⁊

oþ<sup>9</sup> vuele igrete.**A**rthur was forþ iwende ⁊ *Arður.*  
in to Scotlonde.

for Howel laȝ ine Clud ⁊

faſte bi-cluſed.

Hadde Scottes hine bi-leȝe ⁊

mid hire luper craftes.

and ȝef he nadde þe raþer bi-come ⁊

Howel hadde bi nome<sup>4</sup>.

and hiſ folk þar iſlaȝe ⁊

and idon of liſ-daȝe.

Ac Arthur com sone ⁊

and Scottes to fleonde.

destroyed.' When Cador had overcome 'them all [the fight], and 'eke all' the land [to him] taken, he set peace most good, that thereafter long stood; though each man bare in hand rings of gold, durst 'never' any man greet another evilly. Arthur was forth marched into Scotland; for Howel lay in Clud, fast inclosed. The Scots had besieged him with their wicked crafts; and if 'Arthur were [he had] not the earlier 'come [arrived], 'then' 'were [had been] Howel taken, and 'all' his folk there slain, and deprived of life-day. But Arthur came soon, 'with good strength,' and the Scots

<sup>1</sup> ig<sup>e</sup>ten at first, but æ expuncted.<sup>3</sup> raðer?<sup>2</sup> Arður?<sup>4</sup> be inome?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

in to Muræine ⁊  
 mid mucle mon-weorede.  
 And Cador com to Scotlonde ⁊  
 þer he Arður ifunde.  
 Arður and Cador ⁊  
 into Clud ferdē.  
 & funden þer Howel ⁊  
 mid hahȝere blisse an fel.  
 of his seocneffe ⁊  
 ifund wes iwurðen. 10  
 muchel wes þa blisse ⁊  
 þæ þa wes in burȝe.  
 Scottes weoren inne Mureine ⁊  
 and þer þeohten wunien.  
 & mid bolde heore worden ⁊  
 heore beot makeden.  
 and fæiden þat heo wolden ⁊  
 þa riche walden.  
 and Arður þer abiden ⁊  
 mid baldere strenðe. 20  
 for ne durfte nauere Arður ⁊  
 for his life come þer.  
 þa iherde Arður ⁊  
 ærhðen bidæled. [c. 2.]  
 whæt Scottes hafden ifæid ⁊

in to Morayne ⁊  
 mid mochelere ferde.  
 And Cador com to Scotlōd ⁊  
 þar he Arthur funde.  
 Arthur and Cador ⁊  
 into Clud wende.  
 and funden þar Howel ⁊  
 mid baldere blisse.  
 of al his seacniffe ⁊  
 10 hol was i-worþe. [f. 100<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 moche was þe blisse ⁊  
 þat þo was in borwe.  
 Scottes weren in Morayne ⁊  
 and þare þohte wonie.  
 and faide heom bi-twine ⁊  
 mid hire bolde worðef.  
 þat Arthur nolde neuere ⁊  
 for his lifue come þare.  
 þif ihorde Arthur ⁊  
 baldest alre kinge.  
 wat Scottes hadde ifeid ⁊

*gan* to flee 'far from the land,' into Moray, with a mickle host. And Cador came to Scotland, where he Arthur found. Arthur and Cador proceeded into Clud, and found Howel there, with 'great [bold] bliss 'in health,' of [all] his sickness whole *he* was become; great was the bliss that then was in *the* burgh! *The* Scots were in Moray, and there thought to dwell, and with their bold words 'made their boast, and said that they would rule the realm, and Arthur there abide, with bold strength; for [said them between that] Arthur 'durst [would] never for his life come there. 'When [This] Arthur heard, 'void of fear [boldest of all kings], what *the*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

mid heore hux wordē.  
 þa sæide Arður ⁊  
 aðeleft kīgē.

Whær ært þu Howel ⁊  
 hæhst of mine cunne<sup>1</sup>.  
 and Cador þe kene ⁊  
 ut<sup>2</sup> of Cornwæle.

Leteð blæwē bemen ⁊  
 & bonnien ure ferdē.  
 & to þere mid-nihtē ⁊  
 we sculleð faren forð riht.  
 toward Mureine ⁊

ure mon-scipe<sup>3</sup> to bi-tellen.  
 ȝif hit wule drihte ⁊  
 þe scop þæs dages lihten.  
 we heom sculle tellen ⁊  
 forhfulle spelles.

heore ȝælp fellen ⁊  
 & heom feolue a-quellen.  
 To þere mid-nihtē ⁊  
 Arður aras forð riht.  
 hornes me gon blawen ⁊  
 mid habȝere stafnen.

mid hire hokere wordes.

He cleopede Howel ⁊  
 þe hehȝest of his cunne.  
 and Cador þe kene ⁊  
 vt of Cornwale.

Leteþ blowe bemen ⁊  
 and banni vre ferde.  
 10 and at þare midniht ⁊  
 we solle wende forþriht.

and hire ȝealp falle ⁊  
 and ȝam seolf a-cwelle.  
 20 To þare mid-niht<sup>4</sup> ⁊  
 Arthur a-ros forþ riht.

Scots had said with their scornful words, 'then said Arthur, noblest of kings': "'Where art thou, [he called] Howel, [the] highest of 'my [his] kindred, and Cador the keen, out of Cornwall? Let *the* trumpets blow, and assemble our host, and at the midnight we shall march forth-right 'toward Moray, our honor to win. If *the* Lord will it, who shaped the day-light, we shall them tell sorrowful tales,' [and] fell their boast, and themselves kill.'" At the midnight Arthur forth-right arose; 'horns men gan to blow with loud sound; knights gan arise, and stern words to speak.'

<sup>1</sup> This word is interlined by second hand.

<sup>2</sup> Originally written out, but o expuncted.

<sup>3</sup> scipe is interlined sec. m.

<sup>4</sup> R. mid-niht.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

cnihtes gunnen arifen ⁊  
 and ræhȝe word ſpeken.  
 Mid muche mon-weorede ⁊  
 into Mureine.  
 forð gunnen wræſtē ⁊  
 þreottene þuſend.  
 a feormefte flocke ⁊  
 feondliche kene men.  
 Seoððen com Cador ⁊  
 þe eorl of of<sup>1</sup> Cornwæille. 10  
 mid ſeouentene þuſen<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 ſelere þeinen.  
 Seoððen com Heowel ⁊  
 mid hiſ kēppen ſwiðe wel.  
 mid an and twenti þuſen<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 mid<sup>3</sup> aðelere kempen.  
 Seoððen com Arður ⁊  
 aðeleſt kingen.  
 mid ſeouen & twenti þuſend ⁊  
 fiȝen heom afterward. [f. 125<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 ſceldes þer clifedē ⁊ 21  
 lihten hit gon dæȝen.  
 þat word com to Scotten ⁊  
 þær þar heo wuneden.

and wende mid hiſ ferde ⁊  
 toward Morayne.  
 forþ gonne þreafte ⁊  
 þrittene þouſend.  
 Suppe com Cador ⁊  
 þe eorl of Cornwale. 10  
 mid ſouentene þouſend ⁊  
 ſelere cnihtes.  
 þar after com Howel ⁊  
 mid on and twenti þouſend ⁊  
 þo com Arthur him ſeolf ⁊  
 mid ſouene and twenti þouſend.  
 ſcealdes þar gliſſenede ⁊ 21  
 and liht hit gan dæȝeie.  
 þat word com to Scottes ⁊  
 þar þat hii wonede.

'With a great army *he* marched into [and marched with his host toward] Moray; forth gan press thirteen thousand 'in the foremost flock, men exceeding keen.' Afterwards came Cador, the earl of Cornwall, with seventeen thousand good 'thanes [knights]. 'Next [Thereafter] came Howel, 'with his champions exceeding well,' with one and twenty thousand 'noble champions.' Then came Arthur [himself], 'noblest of kings'; with seven and twenty thousand 'followed them afterward'; *the* shields there glistened, [and] light it gan to dawn. The tidings came to *the* Scots, 'there where [where that] they

<sup>1</sup> *Sic MS.*<sup>2</sup> þuſend?<sup>3</sup> *Redundant?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

hu Arður þe kīg ⁊  
 com touward heore londe.  
 feōdliche fwiðe ⁊  
 mid vnimete folke.  
 þa weoren ærheft ⁊  
 þat ær weoren baldeft.  
 and gunnen to fleonnen ⁊  
 feondliche fwiðe.  
 into þan watere ⁊  
 þer wunderes beoð inoȝe. 10  
 þat is a feolcuð mere ⁊  
 ifet a middelærde.  
 mid fenne & mid ræode ⁊  
 mid watere fwiðe bræde.  
 mid fiscen & mid feoȝelen ⁊  
 mid uniuiele þigē.  
 þat water is unimete brade ⁊  
 nikeres þer badieð inne.  
 þer if ælucne ploȝe ⁊  
 in atteliche pole. 20  
 Sixti æit-londes ⁊  
 beoð i þā watere longe.  
 in ælc of þan æit-londe ⁊  
 is a clude hæh and strong.  
 þer næstieð arnes ⁊

hou Arthur þe king ⁊  
 com to hire londe.  
 þo weren hii ȝearþheft ⁊  
 þat her weren baldeft. [c.2.]  
 and gonne to fleonde ⁊  
 feondeliche fwiþe.  
 in to þan watere ⁊  
 þar wondres beoþ inowe. 10  
 þat his a wonder mere ⁊  
 ifet in middilerþe.  
 mid fenne and mid reode ⁊  
 and mid water brode.  
 þat water his onimete brod ⁊  
 nikeres þar wonieþ.  
 Sixti eyllondes.  
 beoþ in þan mere longe.  
 in ech of þan ýllond ⁊  
 his a chlud fwiþe strong.  
 þar nestleþ hearnes ⁊

dwelt, how Arthur the king came to 'ward' their land, 'exceeding quickly, with innumerable folk.' Then were [they] fearfullest, who ere were boldest, and gan to flee exceeding quickly into the water, where wonders are enow! That is a marvellous lake, set in middle-earth, with fen (marsh), and with reed, [and] with water 'exceeding' broad; 'with fish, and with fowl, with evil things!' The water is immeasurably broad; nikers 'therein bathe [there dwell]; 'there is play of elves in *the* hideous pool.' Sixty islands are in the long 'water [lake]; in each of the islands is a rock 'high and [most] strong; there 'nest [nestle] eagles, and other great fowls. The eagles

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& oðere græte uoȝeles.  
 þe ærnes habbeoð ane laȝe ⁊  
 bi æuerælches kinges dahȝen.  
 whænne fwa æi ferde ⁊  
 fundeð to þā ærde.  
 þeonne fleoð þa fuȝelef ⁊  
 feor i þan lufte.  
 moni hundred þufen<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 & muchel feoht makieð.  
 þenne if þat folc buten wene ⁊ 10  
 þat reouðe heo if to cumene.  
 of fummef cunnef leoden ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 þe þat lond wulleð ifechen.  
 Tweien dæȝef oðer þreo ⁊  
 þus ſcal þif taken<sup>2</sup> beo.  
 ær unkuðe men ⁊  
 to þan londe liðen.  
 ȝet þer if fellic ⁊  
 to fuggen of þan watere.  
 þer walleð of þan mære ⁊ 20  
 a moniare fiden.  
 of dalen & of dunen ⁊  
 & of bæcchen deopen.  
 fixti wateres ⁊

and oþer grete foȝeles.  
 þe hearnes habbeþ one lawe ⁊  
 bi euereche kingef dawe.  
 wane fo enȝ ferde ⁊  
 fundeþ to þan erþe.  
 þanne fleoþ þe foȝeles ⁊  
 for in to þan lufte.

Twei dæȝef oþer þreo ⁊  
 þus fal þe tockne beo.

ȝet þat his fellich ⁊  
 to ſeggen of þan watere.  
 þar falleþ in þan mere ⁊

many cunnef wateref ⁊

have a law by every kings day; whensoever any army cometh to the country, then fly the fowls far in[to] the sky, 'many hundred thousands, and mickle fight make. Then is the folk without doubt, that sorrow is to come to them from people of some kind, that will seek the land.' Two days or three thus shall 'this [the] token be, 'ere foreign men approach to the land.' Yet 'there [that] is a marvellous *thing* to say of the water; there falleth in the lake, 'on many a side, from dales and from downs, and from deep valleys, sixty streams, all there collected; so (yet) never out of the lake any man

<sup>1</sup> þufen?<sup>2</sup> On erasure, but by the original hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

alle þer isomned.

fwa neuere ut of þan mære ⁊

na man no uindeð.

þat þer ut wenden ⁊

buten an an ænde.

an imetliche broc ⁊

þe of þan mere ualleð.

&amp; swiðe ifemeliche ⁊

into sæ wendeð.

þa Scottes weoren to-deled ⁊ 10 þar ine weren Scottes ⁊

mid muclen viſelen.

ȝeond þa monie mūtē ⁊

þa i þan watere weoren.

Arður biſeohte ſcipen ⁊

&amp; gon heom to wenden.

&amp; floh þer vniuoȝe ⁊

moni and inoȝe.

& mōi þuſend<sup>1</sup> þer wes dæd ⁊

for heð trukede ælc bræd.

Arður þe aðele ⁊

was an æſt ſide.

Howel þe ſele ⁊

was a suð halme<sup>2</sup>.

and vt noþing ne goþ ⁊

in neuere one ſide.

oueral þan munteſ.

and Arthur him bi-fohte ſipes ⁊

and in him gan wende.

and floh þar onifoȝe ⁊

mani and inoȝe.

20 Arthur þe king ⁊

was on eaſt ende.

Howel þe ſele ⁊

was a ſuþ ende.

findeth that thereout *they* flow, except a small brook at one end, that from the lake falleth, and wendeth very stilly into *the* sea [waters of many kind, and nothing goeth out on never one side]. The Scots were 'dispersed [therein] 'with much misery,' over [all] the 'many' mounts 'that were in the water. [And] Arthur sought [him] ships, and 'gan to enter them [in him gan wend]; and slew there without number, many and enow; 'and many a thousand there was dead, because each (all) bread failed them.' Arthur the 'noble [king] was on *the* east 'side [end]; Howel the good was on *the* south 'half [end]; and Cadur the keen guarded 'them [it]

<sup>1</sup> On erasure, but by first hand.<sup>2</sup> haluc?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& Cador þe kene ⁊  
 bi norðen heom biwuften.  
 and his smale uolc ⁊  
 he setten alle bi weste fiden.  
 þa weoren Scottes ⁊  
 ihalden for fottes.  
 þer heo leieien ȝeðð þa cliues ⁊  
 fafte bi-clufeð<sup>1</sup>. [£126.c.1.]  
 þer weoren fixti þufend ⁊  
 mid forreȝe for-farene.  
 þa wes Irlondes king ⁊  
 icuū in to hafene.  
 twalf milen frō Arðure ⁊  
 þer he lai mid ferde.  
 Scotten to hælpen ⁊  
 Howel to for-farene.  
 þer<sup>4</sup> iherden Arður ⁊  
 aðelest kinge.  
 & nom hif ane ferde ⁊  
 & þiderward fufden.  
 & funde þene king Gillomar ⁊  
 þe icumen wes to londe þar.  
 Arður him faht wið ⁊  
 & nolde him ȝiuen na grið.

and Cador þe kene ⁊  
 bi norþe hit wiste.  
 and his smale folk ⁊  
 he sette al bi weste. [£101.c.1.]  
 þo weren Scotef ⁊

Gillomar.

10 mid honger ibursted.  
**þ** Ar<sup>2</sup> Irlondes king ⁊  
 icome was to haue<sup>3</sup>.  
 twealf mýle fram Arthur ⁊  
 þar he lay mid ferde.  
 Scottef to helpe ⁊  
 and Arthur to cwelle.  
 Arthur his one ferde nam ⁊  
 20 and þiderwardes wende.  
 and funde þane king Gillomar ⁊  
 þat icome was to londe þar.  
 and Arthur heom faht wip ⁊  
 and ȝef ȝam no griþ.

by *the* north; and his inferior folk he set all by *the* west 'side'. Then were *the* Scots 'accounted for sots, where they lay around the cliffs, fast inclosed; there were sixty thousand' with 'sorrow [hunger] destroyed. 'Then [There] was come 'into [to] haven *the* king of Ireland; twelve miles from Arthur, where he lay with *an* army, to help the Scots, [and] 'Howel [Arthur] to 'destroy [kill]. Arthur 'heard this, noblest of kings, and' took one host of his, and thitherward marched; and found the king Gillomar, who was come there to land. [And] Arthur fought with 'him [them], and 'would give him [gave them] no peace (quarter), and felled

<sup>1</sup> bi-clufed ⁊<sup>2</sup> þa ⁊<sup>3</sup> R. hauene.<sup>4</sup> þis ⁊

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and feolde Iriſce men ⁊  
feondliche to g<sup>u</sup>den.

and fulde Ireſſe men ⁊  
manȝe to grunde.

And Gillomar mid twalf ſcipen ⁊ And Gellomar mid twelf ſipes ⁊  
teh from þan londe.

& ferde to Irlonde ⁊  
mid harme ſwiðe ſtronge.

fleoh to Irlonde ⁊

And Arður a þan londe ⁊  
flo<sup>h</sup><sup>1</sup> al þat he uunde.

And Arthur in þan londe ⁊  
flo<sup>h</sup> al þat he funde.

and ſeoððen he wendeto þan mere ⁊ and wende ſuppe to þan mere ⁊  
þer he hiſ mæi lette.

10 þar he Howe<sup>2</sup> bi-lefde.

Howel þene hende ⁊  
haſt of Brutlonde.

wið uten Arðure ⁊  
aðeleſt kingen.

Arður Howel uunde ⁊  
þer he wes bi hauene.

Arthur Howel funde ⁊  
þar he was bi hauene.

bi þan mere brade ⁊  
þer he abiden haſde.

þa fainede ſwiðe ⁊  
folc an hirede.

20

of Arðures cume ⁊  
& of aðele hiſ dede.

þer wes Arður ford<sup>3</sup> riht ⁊

and þar a-bide forþ riht ⁊

*the* Irish men 'exceedingly [many] to *the* ground. And Gillomar with twelve ships 'departed from the land, and' 'proceeded [fled] to Ireland, 'with harm most strong.' And Arthur in the land slew all that he found; and afterwards 'he' went to the lake, where he left 'his relation' Howel 'the fair, noblest of Britain, except Arthur, noblest of kings.' Arthur found Howel, where he was by *the* haven, 'by the broad lake, where he had abode. Then rejoiced greatly *the* folk in *the* host, of Arthurs arrival, and of his noble deeds;' 'there was Arthur [and there abode] forthright, two days and two nights. 'The Scots lay over *the* rocks, many

<sup>1</sup> *The first letter has been corrected.*

<sup>2</sup> *R. Howel.*

<sup>3</sup> *forð?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

twei dæies & twa niht.  
 Scottes leie ȝeōd clude? [c. 2.]  
 moni þufend dede.  
 mid hungere for-uarene?  
 folkene alre ærmeft.  
 I þan þridde dæiȝe?  
 faire hit gon dazȝen.  
 þa tuȝen touward hirede?  
 alle þat weoren ihadded.  
 & þreo biſcopes wife? 10  
 a boke wel ilæred.  
 preoſtes & mucnekes<sup>1</sup>?  
 vnimete monie.  
 canones þer comen?  
 monie & wel idone.  
 mid alle þan halidomē?  
 þa haht an londe weoren.  
 and ȝeornden Arðuref grið?  
 & his aðmeden.  
 Þider þa wifes comen? 20  
 þa i þan londen wuneden.  
 heo wæiden in hære ærmen?  
 heore childrē ærmen.

twei dazes and two niht.  
  
 In þan þridde daiȝe?  
 fair hit gan dazeie.  
 þo come toward ferde?  
 alle þat hoded were.  
 10 biſſopes and canounes?  
 preoſtes and clerekes.  
  
 mid many halidomes?  
 2  
 and beden of Arthur griþ?  
 þat hii moſte ſpeken him wiþ.  
 Þider þe wifues come?  
 20 þat in þan londe weren.

thousands dead, with hunger destroyed, most miserable of all folk! On the third day, it gan to dawn fair; then came toward *the* host all that were hooded, and three wise bishops, in book well learned [bishops and canons]; priests and 'monks [clerks], 'many without number; canons there came, many and good,' with 'all the [many] reliques' that were noblest in *the* land, and 'yearned Arthurs [prayed of Arthur] peace, and his compassion [that they might speak with him]. Thither came the women, that 'dwelt [were] in the land; 'they carried in their arms their miserable children'; they wept before Arthur wondrously much, and their fair hair

<sup>1</sup> muneke?<sup>2</sup> A line is here wanting.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

heo weopen on Arðure :  
 wunder ane fwiðe.  
 and heore uæx fæire :  
 wælden to volde.  
 curuen heore lockes :  
 & þer niðer læiden.  
 to þas kinges foten :  
 bi-foren al his duȝeðen.  
 nailes to heore nebbe :  
 þat æfter hit bledde. 10  
 Neh þan alle clæne :  
 nakede heo weoren.  
 sorhliche heo gunnen clupien :  
 to Arðure þan kinge.  
 and fumed þuf ifeiden :  
 þer heo on fið weoren.  
 King we beoð on ærde : [f. 126<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 ærmeft alre uolke.  
 we ȝeorneð þine milzce :  
 þurh þæne milde godd. 20  
 þu haueft a þiffe londe :  
 ure leoden aflæȝen.  
 mid hungere & mid hete :  
 mid feole cunne hærmē.  
 mid wapnen mid wæteren :

hii wepen vppen Arthur :  
 wonderliche fwiþe. [c. 2.]  
 and hire her faire :  
 al hii to-tere.  
 corue hire lockes :  
 and þar a-dun laide.  
 bi-vore þis kingef fote :  
 to-fore alle his cnihtef.  
 naylef fette to nebbe :  
 10 þat after hit bledde.

and þus hii gonne grede :  
 to Arthur þan kinge.

King we biddeþ þine milce :  
 20 for loue of al-miht.  
 þou haueft of oure londe :  
 oure men iflawe.  
 mid hunger and mid hate :  
 and mid fale harmes.

'threw to *the* earth [they tore all in pieces]; cut off their locks, and there down laid 'at the [before this] kings feet, before all his people; [set] *their* nails to their face, so that afterwards it bled. 'They were naked nigh (nearly) all clean; and 'sorrowfully [and thus] they gan to 'call [cry] to Arthur the king, 'and together thus said, where they were in affliction' (?): " King, 'we are on earth most wretched of all folk'; we 'yearn [pray] thy mercy, 'through the mild God [for love of *the* Almighty]! Thou hast 'in this [of our] land our 'people [men] slain, with hunger and with strife (?), [and] with many kind of harms; 'with weapon, with water, and with many

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

mid feole wan-fiðen.  
 vre children imaked faderlefe ⁊  
 & frofre bidæled.  
 Þu ært cristine mon ⁊  
 & we al swa funden.  
 Sæxifce men beoð ⁊  
 hæðe¹ hundes.  
 Heo comen to þisse londe ⁊  
 and þif folc here aqualden.  
 3if we heom hereden ⁊ 10  
 þat was for ure hermē.  
 for we nefden nænne mon ⁊  
 þe us wið heom mihtē griðien.  
 Heo uf duden fwiðe wa ⁊  
 & þu uf deft al swa.  
 þa heðene uf hatieð ⁊  
 & þe cristine uf fari makieð.  
 wær scullen we bicumen ⁊  
 queðen þa wif to þan kinge.  
 A3ef uf 3et þa quicke men ⁊ 20  
 þa liggeð 3eod þas cluden.  
 and 3if þu 3iuest milze ⁊  
 þisse moncunnen.

þou hart cristeneman ⁊  
 and we beoþ al fon.  
 þe heaþene vs dude moche wo ⁊  
 and þou vs doft al so.  
 ware folle we bi-come ⁊  
 cwaþ þe wifues to þan kinge.  
 3ef vs 3et þe cwiike men ⁊  
 þat liggeð ine clude.

mischiefs our children made fatherless and deprived of comfort.' Thou art a christian man, and we are also; 'the Saxiah men are heathen hounds. They came to this land, and this folk here killed; if we obeyed them, that was because of our harm, for we had no man that might accord us with them.' 'They [the heathens] did us much woe, and thou dost to us also; 'the heathens us hate, and the christians make us sorrowful';—where shall we become (what will become of us)!'—quoth the women to the king. "Give us yet the men alive, who lie 'over these [in *the*] rocks; 'and if thou givest grace to this multitude, thy honor will be the greater,

¹ hæðene?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þi mon-scipe bið þa mare ⁊  
 nu and æuere mære.  
 Lauer<sup>1</sup> Arður ure kīg ⁊  
 leoðe vre benden.  
 þu hafuſt al þiſ lond inomen ⁊  
 & al þiſ folc ouercumen. [c. 2.]  
 we beoð under uote ⁊  
 a þe iſ al þa bote. •  
 þiſ iherde Arður ⁊  
 aðeleſt kingen. 10  
 þefne wop & þefne rop ⁊  
 & reouðen vniuoðe.  
 þa toc he to ræde ⁊  
 and reoſede on heorte.  
 he uunde on hiſ ræde ⁊  
 to don þat heo hie bedē.  
 he ʒæf heō liſ he ʒef heom lumen ⁊  
 & heore lond to halden.  
 He lette blæwen bemen ⁊  
 and þa Scottes bæcnien. 20  
 & heo ut of cluden ⁊  
 to þan ſcipen comen.  
 an auerælchen fiden ⁊

Louerd Arthur þe king ⁊  
 flake oure bendes.  
 þou haueſt al þiſ lond inome ⁊  
 and þiſ folk hiſ ouercome.  
 we beoþ vnder fote ⁊  
 in þe hiſ al þe bote.  
 þiſ i-horde Arthur þe king ⁊  
 10 Bruttene deorling.

and ʒeode to reade ⁊  
 and rouſede on heorte.  
 and funde in hiſ reade ⁊  
 don þat hii hine bede.

He hehte blouwen bumes ⁊  
 20 and bannien Scottes.  
 hii copen vt of cloudes ⁊  
 in euereche fides.

now and evermore.' Lord Arthur 'our [the] king, loosen our bonds! Thou  
 hast taken (conquered) all this land, and 'all' this folk [is] overcome; we  
 are under *thy* foot; in thee is all the remedy." Arthur [the king] heard this,  
 'noblest of kings [Britons darling]; 'this weeping and this lament, and im-  
 moderate sorrow'; 'then took he [and went] to counsel, and had pity in heart;  
 'he [and] found in his counsel to do what they him prayed; 'he gave them life,  
 he gave them limb, and their land to hold.' He caused *the* trumpets to be  
 blown, and 'the' Scots to be summoned; 'and' they 'came [crept] out of *the*  
 rocks 'to the ships'; on every side 'approached toward land. They were

<sup>1</sup> Lauerd?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

fiȝen touwar<sup>1</sup> londe.

Heo weoren swiðe iharmede ⁊

mid scærpen þan hungre.

aðes heo sworn ⁊

swiken þ<sup>2</sup> nalden.

and heo þa iȝefuen ⁊

ȝifles þan kingen.

and alle ful sone ⁊

þaſ kinges men bicomē.

& seoððen heo gunnen fufen ⁊ <sup>10</sup> And þo hii gonne wende ⁊

þat folc þer to-delden.

ælc mon to þan ende ⁊

þer<sup>3</sup> he wes wuniende.

and Arður þer grið sette ⁊

god mid þan bezste.

Whær ært þu Howel mi mæi ⁊

monne me leofest.

ifiht þu þifne muchelne mære ⁊ i-fihte þifne mere ⁊

þer Scottes beoð amærrēd. þat her his bi-halues.

ifiht þu þaſ hæhȝe treon ⁊ <sup>20</sup>

and siht þu þas ærneſteon. [f. 127. c. 1.]

inne þiffe uenne ⁊

if fiſc unimete.

and oþes þar sworn ⁊

fwike þat hii nolden. [f. 101<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]

and alle ſol sone ⁊

þis kinges men bi-come.

And þo hii gonne wende ⁊

ech man to his ende.

and Arthur grið sette ⁊

god mid þan beſte.

þo ſayde Arthur ⁊

to Howel his mæye.

i-fihte þifne mere ⁊

þat her his bi-halues.

greatly harmed by the sharp hunger; [and] oaths 'they [there] swore, that they would not deceive; 'and they then gave hostages to the king,' and all full soon became 'the [this] king's men. And then they gan depart; 'the folk there separated,' each man to 'the [his] end, 'where he was dwelling; and Arthur 'there' set peace, good with the best. [Then said Arthur:] "'Where art thou, [to] Howel, 'my [his] relation, 'dearest of men to me?' 'Seest thou [Behold] this great lake, 'where *the* Scots are harmed [that is here beside]; 'seest thou these high trees, and seest thou these eagles fly? In this fen is fish innumerable. Seest thou these islands, that stand over

<sup>1</sup> toward?<sup>2</sup> ȝ heo?<sup>3</sup> þær þer, pr. m.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ifihst þu þas æit-londes ?  
 þe ȝeond þas watere stondeð.  
 Seollic þuhte Howel ?  
 of fwulchere ifihðe.  
 and wondredre wide<sup>1</sup> ?  
 bi þan watere fode.  
 and þus þer cleopede Howel ?  
 hæhef cunnes.  
 Seoððen ich wes mon iboren ?  
 of mire moder bosme. 10  
 no ifah ich a none londe ?  
 þuf feolcude<sup>2</sup> þinges.  
 swa ich here biuoren me ?  
 mid æȝenen bihalde.  
 Wundreden Bruttes ?  
 wunder ane fwiðe.  
 þa cleope Arður ?  
 aðelest kingen.  
 Howel min aȝe mæi ?  
 monnen me leofest. 20  
 luſt mire worden ?  
 of mucle mære wunder.  
 þat ic þe wulle tellen ?  
 of foðe mine spellē.  
 Bi þisse mære<sup>3</sup> enden ?

In to þan mere ?

this water ?" Marvellous it seemed to Howel, of such a sight, and he wondered greatly by the water-flood ; and thus there spake Howel, of noble race : " Since I was born man of my mothers bosom, saw I in no land things thus (so) wonderful, as I here before me behold with eyes !" The Britons wondered wondrously much. Then spake Arthur, noblest of kings : " Howel, mine own relative, dearest to me of men, listen to my words, of a much greater wonder that I will tell to thee in my sooth speech." 'By this

<sup>1</sup> fwiðe ?<sup>2</sup> feolcude ?<sup>3</sup> This word is exp. ras.



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þer þis water wendeð.  
 if an lutel wiht mære ⁊  
 monnen to wundre.  
 he if end-longe ⁊  
 feouwer & fixti munden.  
 he is imeten a bræde ⁊  
 fif & twenti foten.  
 fif fotē he is deop ⁊  
 alfene hine dulfen.  
 Feower noked he is ⁊  
 and þer inē is feower kunnes fisc.  
 and ælc fisc an his ende ⁊  
 þer he his cun findeð.  
 ne mai þer nan to oðere ⁊ [c.2.]  
 buten al fwa tacheð hif icunde.  
 Nes næuer nan mon iboren ⁊  
 ne of fwa wise crafte icoren.  
 no libbe he fwa longe ⁊  
 þe maȝen hit vnder-ftonde.  
 what letteð þene fisc ⁊  
 to uleoten to þan oðere.  
 for nif þer noht bitwenen ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

on lutel water wendeþ.  
 hit his on lengþe ⁊  
 four and twēti mundes.  
 hit his imete in brede ⁊  
 fif and twenti fote.  
 fif fote hit hit<sup>1</sup> his deop ⁊  
 aluene hine dolue.  
 Four nokede hit his ⁊  
 and þar in his four cunne fisc.  
 and ech fisc in his ende ⁊  
 ware was his cunde.  
 þat non þoh hii wolde ⁊  
 \*  
 þar nif no man ibore ⁊  
 no so witty icore.  
 þat wite wat lette þane fisc ⁊  
 for fleote to oþer.  
 for noht nif bi-twine ⁊

lakes end, where this [Into the lake a little] water floweth, is a certain little lake, to *the* wonder of men! It is in length four and 'sixty [twenty] palms; it is in measure in breadth five and twenty feet; five feet it is deep; elves it dug! Four-cornered it is, and therein is fish of four kinds, and each fish in his end where 'he findeth [was] his kind; 'may there none go to other, except all as belongeth to his kind [*so* that none, though they would, *can pass to another*]. 'Was never any [There is no] man born, nor 'of so wise craft [*so* witty] chosen, 'live he *ever* so long,' that may 'understand it [know]; what letteth (hindereth) the fish [for] to swim to 'the' others; for 'there' is nought between but water clean!'' 'The yet spake

<sup>1</sup> Sic MS.<sup>2</sup> A line is here wanting.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

buten water clæne.

bote water cleane.

þa ȝet cleopede Arður :  
aðcleft kingen.

Howel i þissen lōdes ænde :

neh þere sæ stronde.

if a mære swiðe muchel :

þat water if un-fæle.

and whænne þa sæ vledeð :

swulc heo wulle aweden.

and falleð ine þene mære : 10

vnimete swiðe.

no bið næuere þæ mere :

on watere þa mare.

Ah þenne þa sæ falleð in :

and ſcen warð þa uolden.

and heo bið al inne :

in alden hire dēne.

þenne swelleð þe mære :

and ſwærkeð þa vðen.

vðē þer leppeoð ut : 20

vnimete g<sup>e</sup>te.

fleoð ut a þat lond :

þat leoden agrifeð an hond.

ȝif þer cumeð æi mon :

þat noht ne cunne þer on.

þat feollic to ifeonne :

Arthur, noblest of kings: "Howel, in this lands end, nigh the sea-strand, is a lake exceeding great,—the water is evil,—and when the sea floweth, as if it would rage, and falleth in the lake exceeding quickly, the lake is never the more *increased* in water. But when the sea falleth in (ebbs), and the ground becomes fair (?), and in it is all in its old seat, then swelleth the lake, and the waves darken; out *the* waves there leap, exceeding great, flow out on the land, *and* the people soon terrify. If any man cometh there, that knoweth nought thereof, to behold the marvel by the

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

bi þere sæ stroude.  
 ȝif he hiſ neb wendeð ⁊  
 touwærd þan mære.  
 ne beo he noht ſwa loh iboren ⁊  
 ful wel he beoð iborȝen. [f.127<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 þat wat<sup>9</sup> him glit biſiden ⁊  
 and þe mon þer wuneð ſofte.  
 after hiſ iwillen ⁊  
 he wuneð þer uul ſtille.  
 þat no bið he for þan watere ⁊ 10  
 naððing idracched.  
 þa ſæide Howel ⁊  
 hæh mon of Brutten.  
 Nu ic ihere tellen ⁊  
 feolcuðe ſpellen.  
 & feollic iſ þe lauere ⁊  
 þat al hit iſette.  
 þa cleopede Arður ⁊  
 aðeleſt kingen.  
 Blaweð mine hornes ⁊ 20  
 mid hæhȝere ſtæfne.  
 and fuggeð mine cnihtes ⁊  
 þ ic fare forð rihte.  
 Bemen þer blewen ⁊  
 hornes þer ſtureden.

þo ſaide Arthur ⁊  
 baldeſt alre kinge.  
 20 Leteþ blowe bumes ⁊  
 warnie cnihtes.  
 þat ich faren wolle ⁊  
 vt of piſſe londe.

sea-strand; if he turneth his face toward the lake, be he nought (never)  
 so low born, full well he shall be saved; the water glideth him beside, and  
 the man there remaineth easy; after his will he dwelleth there full still,  
 so that he is not for (on account of) the water anything injured!" Then  
 said Howel, noble man of Brittany: "Now I hear tell a wonderful story,  
 and marvellous is the Lord that it all made!" Then said Arthur, 'noblest  
 of [boldest of all] kings: "'Blow ye my horns [Cause trumpets to be blown]  
 'with loud noise, and' 'say ye to my [to warn] knights, that I [will] march  
 'forth-right [out of this land]." 'Trumpets there were blown, horns there

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

blisse wes an hiredere<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 mid bifie þan kinge.  
 for ælc wæs ifreoured ⁊  
 & ferde toward his ærd.  
 And þe king for-bæd heom ⁊  
 bi heore bare liuen.  
 þat na mon on worlde ⁊  
 swa wod no iwurðe.  
 no swa ær witte gume ⁊  
 þat his grið bræke. 10  
 and ȝif hit dude æi mon ⁊  
 he sculden dō ðolien.

Æfne þan worde ⁊  
 fufde þa uærde.  
 þer fuggen beornes ⁊  
 feolcuðe leoðes.  
 of Ardure<sup>2</sup> þā kinge ⁊  
 & of his here-þringē.  
 and fæiden on songe ⁊  
 to þisse worlde longe. 20  
 neo<sup>3</sup> neuere mære swulc king ⁊  
 afe Arður þurh alle þing.  
 kīg no kæifere ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 in næuere nare kuððe.

Efne þan worde ⁊  
 wende þe ferde.  
 þar songen cnihtes ⁊  
 of felcoupe londas.  
 of Arthur þan kinge ⁊  
 and of his here-dringes.  
 and seiden on songe ⁊  
 to þisse worle longe.  
 ne worþ neuere soch king ⁊  
 afe Arthur þorh alle þing.  
 king ne cayser icore ⁊  
 in neuere none cuppe.

resounded; bliss was in *the* host with the busy king; for each was so  
 and proceeded toward his land. And the king forbade them, by their  
 life, that no man in *the* world should be so mad, nor person so un-  
 that *he* should break his peace; and if any man did it, he should  
 doom.' Even with the words the army marched; there sung 'warriors  
 vellow songs [knights of strange lands] of Arthur the king, and  
 chieftains, and said in song, to this world's end never 'more' would be  
 a king as Arthur, through all things, king nor [chosen] caiser, in eve

<sup>1</sup> hirede?<sup>2</sup> *R.* Arðure.<sup>3</sup> ne

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

Arður forð to Eouuerwic :  
 mid folke swiðe feollic.  
 and wunede þer wiken fixe :  
 mid muchelere wunne.  
 Þa burh walles weoren :  
 to-broken & to-fallen.  
 þat Childric al for-barnden :  
 & þa hallen alle clæne.  
 Þa cleopede þe king :  
 Piram ænne preost mæren. 10  
 he wes swiðe wis mon :  
 and witful on bocken.  
 Piram þu ært min aȝe preost :  
 þe æð þe scal iwurden<sup>1</sup>.  
 Þe king nō ane rode :  
 hali and swiðe gode.  
 and<sup>2</sup> Piram an hond :  
 and þer mid swiðe muchel lond.  
 and þene ærchebiscopes staf :  
 þer he Pirā aȝaf. 20  
 ær wes Piram preost god :  
 nu he iȝ ærchebiscop.  
 Þa hæhte hine Arður :

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xlii.

**A**rthur forþ to Euerwich :  
 mid folke swiþe fellich. [c.2]  
 and wonede þare fix wikes :  
 mid mochelere winne.  
 Þe borh wallef weren :  
 to-broken and to-fallen.  
 þe chirchen for-barnd :  
 þe hallef to-fallen.  
 Þo cleopede þe king :  
 one prest Pýram.  
 he was swiþe wif man :  
 and witful on boke.  
 Þe king an halidom nam :  
 and bi-toc Pýram.  
 and þan archebiffop staf :  
 þare he Pýram ȝaf.  
 her was Pýram preost god :  
 nou he his archebiffop.  
 Þo him bad Arthur :

realm ! Arthur proceeded to York, with folk very surprising (numerous), and dwelt there six weeks with much joy. The burgh walls were broken and fallen down, 'that Childric all [the churches] consumed, 'and' the halls 'all clean [fallen down]. Then called the king a 'distinguished' priest, Piram ;—he was *an* exceeding wise man, and learned in book :—“ Piram, thou art mine own priest, the easier *it* shall be for thee.” The king took a 'rood [relique], 'holy and most good,' and gave to Piram in hand, 'and therewith very much land'; and the archbishops staff he there gave to Piram ;—ere was Piram a good priest, now is he archbishop ! Then bade

<sup>1</sup> iwurðen?<sup>2</sup> and bi-tok ?

Piram.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. x111.

aðeleſt kigen.

þat he rærde churechen ⁊

&amp; þa fonges rihten.

and goddes folc biwuſten ⁊

&amp; fæire heō dihtten.

And he hæhte alle cnihtes ⁊

demen rihte domes.

and þa eorðe-tilien ⁊

teon to heore cræften.

&amp; æuerælcne gume ⁊

oðerne igræten.

&amp; wulc mon swa wurf dude ⁊

þene þe king hafde ibodē.

he wolde hine ifuſen ⁊

to ane bare walme.

&amp; ȝif hit weore læð mon ⁊

he ſculde hongie for þon.

þa ȝet cleope Arður ⁊ [f. 128. c. 1.]

aðeleſt kigen.

hæhte þat alc mon ⁊

þe hiſ lond hafde for-gan.

mid wulchef cunnes wite ⁊

swa he bi-wæiued weore.

cherches a-rere ⁊

and godeſ worc rihte ⁊

and þe folk dihte.

And he bad alle hiſ cnihtes ⁊

deme rihte domeſ.

and þe erpe-tilieſ ⁊

hire lond teorne.

10 and euer<sup>1</sup>ec<sup>1</sup> gome ⁊

oþerne hi-grete.

And woch man oþer dude ⁊

þane þe king hadde ibode.

he ſolde dom þolie ⁊

at þe king hiſ wille.

ȝet clepede Arthur ⁊

boldeſt alre kinge.

20

hehte þat hiſ lond hadde ilore ⁊

him Arthur, 'nobleſt of kings,' 'that he ſhould arear [to arear] churches, and reſtore 'the hymns (?), and take charge of' Gods 'folk [work], and rule 'them fair [the folk]. And he bade all [hiſ] knights to deem right (juſt) dooms; and the earth-tillers to 'take to their craft [turn their land]; and every man to greet other. And what man 'ſoeuer,' did 'worſe [otherwiſe] than the king had ordered, he 'would drive him to a bare burning, and if it were a baſe man, he ſhould for that hang [ſhould ſuffer doom, at the king hiſ will]. 'The' yet ſpake Arthur, 'nobleſt of [boldeſt of all] kings; ordered 'that each man' who had loſt hiſ land 'by whatſoeuer kind of puniſhment he were bereaved,' that he ſhould come 'again [to him], 'full' quickly and

<sup>1</sup> euer<sup>1</sup>ech?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat he aȝain come ⁊  
 ful raðe & ful sone.  
 þe riche & þe laȝe ⁊  
 and hefde æft hiȝ aȝen.  
 bute he weore swa fule<sup>1</sup> biwite ⁊  
 þ he weore lauerd-fwike.  
 oðer touward hiȝ lauer<sup>2</sup> man-  
 swore ⁊

þat he to him come.  
 raþe and ful sone.  
 þe riche and þe lowe ⁊  
 to habbe ȝein hiȝ owe.  
 bote he were so vuel bi-ȝete ⁊  
 þat he were louerd-fwike.  
 oþer to hiȝ louerd man-swore ⁊

þene þe king demde for-lore.  
 þer come þreo ibroðeren ⁊  
 þe weore kiniborne. 10  
 Lot & Angel & Vrien ⁊  
 welle hwulche þreo men.  
 þeos here-þrīȝes þreo ⁊  
 comen to þan kige<sup>3</sup>.  
 & fetten an heore cneowen ⁊  
 biforen þan kaisere.  
 Hal feo þu Arður ⁊  
 aðeleft kīgē.  
 and þi duȝeðe mid þe ⁊  
 a mote heo wel beo. 20  
 We sundeð þreo broðeren ⁊  
 iboren of kigen.

þane þe king demde ilore.  
 þar comen þe þreo broþers ⁊  
 þat weren kinebore. 10  
 Loth Augel and Vrien ⁊  
 wele woche þreo men. [f. 102. c. 1.]  
 þeos þre heredringes ⁊  
 come to þan kinge.  
 and fete on hire cnowes ⁊  
 bi-fore þā kaisere.  
 Hayl beo þou Arthur ⁊  
 an alle þine cnihtes.  
 We beoþ þreo broþeres ⁊  
 ibore al of kinges.

Lot.  
 Angel.  
 Vrien.

full soon,—the rich and the low,—and should have eft [to have again] his own, unless he were so 'foully [evilly] conditioned, that he were traitor to his lord, or 'toward [to] his lord forsworn, whom the king should deem lost (out of the limits of pardon). There came [the] three 'brethren [brothers], that were royally born, Loth, 'and' Angel, and Urien;—well are such three men! These three chieftains came to the king, and set on their knees before the caiser:—"Hail be thou, Arthur, 'noblest of kings,' and 'thy people with thee [all thy knights]; 'ever may they well be!' We are three 'brethren [brothers], born [all] of kings. All our 'rightful land

<sup>1</sup> The first two letters of this word are sup. ras. by a second hand.

<sup>2</sup> lauerd?

<sup>3</sup> R. kinge.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. x111.

if al ure icūde lond ⁊  
 i-gan ut of ure hond.  
 for habbeoð hæðene men ⁊  
 uf hene imakede.  
 and iwæst<sup>1</sup> uf al Leonæis ⁊  
 Scotlond & Muræf.  
 & we biddeð þe for godes luue ⁊  
 þat þu uf beo fultume.  
 and for þire mucle wurðscipe ⁊  
 þat þu us wurðe milde. [c. 2.] 10  
 aȝif uf ure icunde lond ⁊  
 and we þe sculleð luuien.  
 hælden þe for lauer<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 an ælche leod wifen.  
 þis iherde Arður ⁊  
 aðelest king.  
 hu þeos þreo cnihtes ⁊  
 fæire hine biſohten.  
 reoufede on heorte ⁊  
 & he reordien gan. 20  
 and þas word sæide ⁊  
 feleſt alre kinge.  
 Vrien bi-cum mi mon ⁊  
 þu ſcalt to Muræiue aȝæn.

his al oure kine-lond ⁊  
 igo vt of vre hond.  
 for þe heaþene men ⁊  
 pore vs habbeþ imaked.  
 and iweſt vs Leoneys ⁊  
 Scotlond and Moraynes.  
 And we biddeþ þe for godes loue ⁊  
 þot þou vs be a ſoltome.  
 for þine mochele worſipe ⁊  
 þat þou vs milde worþe.  
 and ȝef vs oure icunde lond ⁊  
 and we þe wollep louie.  
 holde þe for louerd ⁊  
 on euerече wise.  
 þis ihorde Arthur ⁊  
 boldeſt alre kinge.  
 ou þes þreo cnihtes ⁊  
 faire hine bi-ſohte.  
 he reoufede on heorte ⁊  
 and þes word ſaide.  
 Vrian bi-com mi man ⁊  
 þou ſalt Morayne habbe.

[kingdom] is gone out of our hand; for [the] heathen men have made us poor, and wasted us all Leoneis, Scotland, and Moray. And we pray thee, for Gods love, that thou be to us [in] aid, 'and' for thy great honor, that thou be mild to us, [and] give us our rightful land; and we 'shall [will] love thee, *and* hold thee for lord, in 'each land- [every] wise.' Arthur heard this, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings, how these three knights fair besought him; [he] had compassion in heart, 'and he gan speak,' and said these words,—'best of all kings':—"Urien, become my man; thou shalt 'to Moray again [have Moray]; thereof thou

<sup>1</sup> iwæst, *pr. m.*<sup>2</sup> lauerd ?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þer of þu scalt beon icleoped ⁊  
king of þan londe.

þar of þou salt beon icleoped ⁊  
king of þan londe.

& hæh an mine hirede ⁊  
mid þine<sup>1</sup> mon-weorede.

And Angele ich sette an hond ⁊  
al to-gædere Scotlond.

And Augel ich take þe an hond ⁊  
al to-gadere Scotlond.

habbe hit an honde ⁊

habben hit an hond ⁊

and beon king of þan londe.

and beon king of þan londe.

fram þan fader to þan sune ⁊

fram þan fader to þan sone ⁊

þer of þu scalt mi mon bi-cumen. þar of þou salt mi man bicomē.

And þu Lot mi leofe freond ⁊ 11 And þou Loth min leoue man ⁊  
godd þe wurðe liðe.

god þe worþe milde.

þu hauest mine suster to wiue ⁊

þou hauest mine softer ⁊

þæ bet þe scal iwurde<sup>2</sup>.

þe bet þe sal iworþe. [c. 2.]

Ich þe ȝifue Loenæis ⁊

Ich þe ȝeue Leoneys ⁊

þat if is<sup>3</sup> a lond faier.

þat his a lond riche.

and ich wulle lengen<sup>4</sup> þer to ⁊

and ich wolle legge þar to ⁊

londes swiðe gode.

londef swiþe gode.

bifide þere Hūbre ⁊

bi-fides Norþhumbre ⁊

wurð an hundred punden. 20

worþ an hundred pund.

For mi fader Vðer ⁊

For mi fader Vther ⁊

þe while þe he wes king here. wile þat he was king her.

lufede wel his dohter ⁊ [f. 128<sup>v</sup>. c. 1.] louede swiþe his dohter ⁊

shalt be called king of the land, 'and high in my court (*or* host), with thy forces.' And 'to' Angel I 'set [give thee] in hand Scotland altogether; to have it in hand, and be king of the land, from the father to the son; thereof thou shalt my man become. And thou, Loth, my dear 'friend [man].—God be to thee mild!—thou hast my sister 'to wife'; the better *it* shall be for thee. I give thee Leoneis, that is a land 'fair [rich]; and I will lay (add) thereto lands most good, beside 'the Humber [North-humber], worth an hundred pounds. For my father Uther, 'the' while that he was king here, loved

<sup>1</sup> þinne, *pr. m.*

<sup>2</sup> *Sic MS.*

<sup>3</sup> iwurðe?

<sup>4</sup> leggen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þe wes hif bæd iþohte.  
 & heo if mi fuster ⁊  
 & haueð sunen tweien.  
 þeo me beoð ð londe ⁊  
 children alre leofest.  
 þus spæc Ardur<sup>1</sup> þe king ⁊  
 þa wes Walwain lute child.  
 swa wef<sup>2</sup> þe oðer ⁊  
 Modræd hif broðrer<sup>3</sup>.  
 wale þat Moddræd wef ibore ⁊<sup>10</sup>  
 muchel hærm com þer fore.  
 Ardur<sup>1</sup> for to Lundene ⁊  
 & mid him his leoden.  
 he heold inne londe ⁊  
 ane muchele hustinge.  
 and fette alle þa laȝen ⁊  
 þat stoden bi his ælderne dāȝen.  
 alle þa laȝen gode ⁊  
 þe her ær stoden.  
 he fette grið he fette frið ⁊<sup>20</sup>  
 and alle freodomes.  
 þenene he for to Cořwale ⁊

þorh alle cunnes þinge.

And fonef ȝeo haueþ tweie ⁊  
 leof hii beoþ me beie.

þat was Woweȝn and Modred ⁊ [Wal]wein.  
 for ȝam þou salt iworþe bet.

Ac walawo þat Modred was ibore ⁊ [M]odrid.  
 moche harm com þar vore.  
 Arthur com to Londene ⁊  
 and mid him his leode.  
 and he þare makede ⁊  
 fwiþe mochele speche.  
 and fette alle þe lawes ⁊  
 þat stode bi his eldre dāȝef.

Fram þanene he wende ⁊

'well [greatly] his daughter, 'who was his desire (?) esteemed [through all kind of thing]; 'and she is my sister,' and sons [she] hath twain; they are to me 'in land dearest of all children [both dear].'' 'Thus spake Arthur the king.' 'Then was Walwain a little child; so was the other, Modred his brother. [that was Woweȝn and Modred; "for them thou shalt be *the* better." But] alas! that Modred was born; much harm therefore came! Arthur 'proceeded [came] to London, and with him his people; 'he held in *the* land a mickle husting [and he made there *an* exceeding great conference], and established all the laws that stood in his elders days; 'all the good laws that ere here stood; he set peace, he set protection, and all freedoms.' [From] thence he

<sup>1</sup> R. Arður.<sup>2</sup> This word is interlined sec. m.<sup>3</sup> brother.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to Cadores riche.  
 he funde þer a mæide:<sup>1</sup>  
 vnimete fæier.  
 Wes þas mæidenes moder:<sup>2</sup>  
 of Romanifce mannen.  
 Cadores mæge:  
 & þat maide<sup>1</sup> hī bi-tahte.  
 & he heo fæire a-feng<sup>2</sup>:  
 and softe heo fedde.  
 Heo wes of heȝe cūne:<sup>10</sup>  
 of Romanifce monnen.  
 næs in nane londe:  
 maide nan swa hende. [c.2.]  
 of specche & of dede:  
 and of tuhtle swiðe gode.  
 heo wes ihatē Wenhauer:<sup>11</sup>  
 wifmonne hēdeft.  
 Arður heo nom to wife:  
 & luuede heo wunder fwiðe.  
 þif maiden he gon wedde:<sup>20</sup>  
 and nom heo to hif bedde.  
 Arður wes i Cornwale:  
 al þene winter þere.

in to Cornwale.  
 he funde þar a mǣȝde:  
 Cador his mowe.  
 Was þeos mǣȝdes moder:  
 of Romanifce cunne.

nas in none londe:  
 mǣȝde so hende.  
 of speche ne of deade:  
 ne of alle þeues.  
 ȝeo waf i-hote Gwenaȝfer:  
 mǣȝdene hendeft.  
 Arthur hire nam to wifue:  
 and louede hire fwiþe.  
 þif maide he gā wedde:<sup>20</sup>  
 and nam hire to bedde.

**A** Rthur was in Cornwale:  
 al þane wynter.

marched 'to [into] Cornwall, 'to Cadors territory'; he found there a maid 'extremely fair [Cador his relation]. This maidens mother was of Romanish 'men [kindred], 'Cadors relative; and the maid *Cador* on him bestowed, and he received her fair, and softly her fed. She was of noble race, of Romanish men'; was in no land 'any' maid so fair, of speech 'and [nor] of deeds, 'and of manners most good [nor of all virtues]; she was named 'Wenhaver [Gwenayfer], fairest of 'women [maidens]. Arthur took her to wife, and loved her 'wondrously' much; this 'maiden [maid] he gan wed, and took her to 'his' bed. Arthur was in Cornwall all the winter 'there;

<sup>1</sup> maide he?<sup>2</sup> Written at first *afenge*, but the last letter expuncted by the same hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

and al for Wenhæuere lufe ⁊  
 wimmonē him leofueft.  
 Þa þe winter wes agan ⁊  
 and fumer com þer anan.  
 Arður hine biþohte ⁊  
 whæt he don mahte.  
 þat his folc gode ⁊  
 aſwunden ne læie þere.  
 He ferde to Æxchæſtræn ⁊  
 to þan mid-feſten. 10  
 & heold þer hiſ huſtinge ⁊  
 of hehȝen hiſ folke.  
 & feide ꝥ he wolde ⁊  
 in to Irlonde.  
 wenden<sup>3</sup> al þat kine-lond ⁊  
 to hiſ æhȝere hond.  
 buten þe kīg Gillomar ⁊  
 to him raþer come ær.  
 and mid liſten hī ſpeken wið ⁊  
 & ȝirnde Arðures grið. 20  
 he wolde weſtē hiſ lond ⁊  
 and luðere him gon an hond.  
 mid fure mid ſtele ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C, xiii.

for Gwenayfer hiſ<sup>1</sup> loue ⁊ [f. 102.<sup>b</sup>c.1.]  
 womman heom<sup>2</sup> leofueft.  
 Þo þat wýnter was agon ⁊  
 and fomer com þar anon.  
 Arthur him bi-þohte ⁊  
 wat he don mihte.  
 þat hiſ folc gode ⁊  
 a-ſwonde ne leȝe.  
 To Excetre he wende ⁊  
 and heold þare ſpeche.  
 and ſaide þat he wolde ⁊  
 in to Irlonde.  
 and winnen al þat kinelond ⁊  
 to hiſ owene hond.  
 bote þe king Gillomar ⁊  
 þe raþer to him come her.  
 and faire him ſpeke wiþ ⁊  
 and ȝornde Arthur hiſ griþ.  
 Ich wolde waſti hiſ lond ⁊  
 and luþer go him an hond.

*Gillomar.*

and' all for Wenhavers love, dearest of women to him. When the winter was gone, and summer came there anon, Arthur bethought him what he might do, that his good folk should not lie 'there' inert. He marched to Exeter, 'at the mid-feast (of St. John Baptist?),' and held there 'his husting [a conference] 'of his noble folk,' and said that he would go into Ireland, [and] win all the kingdom to his own hand; unless the king Gillomar [the] sooner came ere to him, and spake with him 'with good will [fair], and yearned 'Arthurs [Arthur his] peace, 'he would ['I will] waste his land, and go (act) to him evilly in hand, 'with fire and with

<sup>1</sup> *Sic MS.*<sup>2</sup> *R. him ?*<sup>3</sup> *winnen ?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

streit gomen wurchen.

&amp; þat lond-folc aflæn ⁊

þe wolde stonden him aȝein.

Æfne þan worde ⁊ [f. 129. c. 1.]

þa þe kig sæide.

þa andfwarede þat folc ⁊

sæire þan kinge.

Lauuerd king hald þi word ⁊

we beoð alle ȝarewe.

to ganne &amp; to ride ⁊

oueral to þire neode.

þer wes moni bald Brut ⁊

þe hafde beres leches.

heouen up heore bruwen ⁊

i-burft an heore þonke.

Wendē touwarde innen ⁊

cnihtes mid heore monnen.

heo ruokedē burnen ⁊

bonnedē helmef.

heo wipeden horf leoue ⁊

mid linnene claðe.

heo sçeren<sup>1</sup> heo scoiden ⁊

scalkes balde weorē.

Efne þan worde ⁊

þat þe king sȝyde.

þo answerede alle ⁊

in boure and in halle.

Louerd king hold þin word ⁊

for we beoþ alle ȝarue.

to gon and to ride ⁊

oueral in þine neode.

þar was mani bold Brut ⁊

kene to neode.

Hii wende to hire hinne ⁊

cnihtes mid hire manne.

hii rollede wepne ⁊

and foide hire stedef.

steel work hostile game, and the land-folk slay, who would stand against him.' Even with the words that the king said, then answered 'the folk, fair to the king [all, in bower and in hall]: "Lord king, hold thy word, [for] we are all ready, to go and to ride over all 'at [in] thy need." There was many a bold Briton 'that had boars glances [keen at need]; 'heaved up their brows, enraged in their thought.' [They] went toward [their] inns, knights with their men: they 'got ready burnies, prepared helms [rubbed *their* weapons], 'they wiped *their* dear horses with linen cloths; 'they sheared, they [and their steeds] shod,—' *the* men were bold!' Some

<sup>1</sup> heore steden?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

fū scæft horn sum scaft ban ⁊  
 sum ȝarked stelene flan.  
 sum makede<sup>1</sup> þwonges<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 gode & fwiðe strong.  
 summe beouweden<sup>3</sup> speren ⁊  
 & beonneden sceldes.  
 Arður letten beoden ⁊  
 ȝeond al his kine-þeoden.  
 þat æuerælc god cniht ⁊  
 to him come forð riht. 10  
 and euerælc oht mon ⁊  
 comen forð riht anan.  
 & wa swa bilæfden ⁊  
 his leomen he sculde leofen.  
 & wha swa come gladliche ⁊  
 he sculden wurðe riche.  
 Seouen niht uppen Æstre ⁊  
 þa men hafden iuaft.  
 þa comen alle þa cnihtes ⁊ [c.2.]  
 to scipē ford<sup>5</sup> rihtes. 20  
 wind heom stod an honde ⁊  
 þe scaf heom to Irlonde.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

somme safde sceftes ⁊  
 somme beoude longe speres.  
 somme makede þwanges ⁊  
 gode & fwiþe stronge.  
 Arthur lette beode ⁊  
 oueral his kineþeode.  
 þat euer ech oht cniht ⁊  
 to him come forþriht. [c.2.]  
 and euerich oht man ⁊  
 to him come annon.  
 and wofe leafde ⁊  
 his leome he folde leofe.  
 and wofe come gladliche ⁊  
 h<sup>4</sup> folde i-worþe riche.  
 Soue niht vppe Eafter ⁊  
 þo men hadde ifaft.  
 þo comen alle þeof cnihtes ⁊  
 to siþe forþ rihtes. 20  
 wind ȝam stod an honde ⁊  
 þat saf ȝam to Irlonde.

shaped (*or* shaved) 'horn; some shaped bone; some prepared steel darts [shafts; some bent (?) long spears]; some made thongs, good and very strong; 'some bent (?) spears, and made ready shields.' Arthur caused to be bidden over all his kingdom, that every 'good [brave] knight should come to him forth-right, and every brave man should come 'forth-right [to him] anon; and whoso should remain *behind*, his limbs he should lose, and whoso should come gladly, he should become rich. Seven nights after Easter, when men had fasted, then came all 'the [these] knights to ship forth-right; *the* wind stood to them in hand (favorably), that drove them to Ireland; [they embarked upon *the* strand, into

<sup>1</sup> make *pr. m.*<sup>2</sup> Altered by the second hand to beoueden.<sup>4</sup> he?<sup>2</sup> wonges, *pr. m.*<sup>5</sup> forð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Arður a þet lond ferde ⁊  
 and þa leoden a-merden.  
 muchel uolc he afloȝ ⁊  
 orf he nom vniuoh.  
 & æuef he hæhte ælcne mon ⁊  
 chireche-grið halden.  
 þet tidende com to þan kinge ⁊  
 þe lauerd wes of þan londe. 10  
 þat þer wes icunen<sup>1</sup> Arður ⁊  
 and ærmðen iwrohte þer.  
 He sumnede al his leoden ⁊  
 ȝeond hif kinelonde.  
 and hif Irifce uolc ⁊  
 fufden to fehte.  
 to-ȝæines Arðure ⁊  
 þan aðele kinge.  
 Arður and hif cnihtes ⁊  
 heō wepnede forð rihtes. 20  
 & forē heom to-ȝæines ⁊  
 folc vnimete.  
 Arðures men weoren ⁊

hii wenden vppe strōde ⁊  
 in to þan ilke londe.

**A**rthur in þan londe ferde ⁊  
 and þat folk a-morde.  
 mochel folk he þare floh ⁊  
 and he nam horf inoh.  
 and euere he hehte ech man ⁊  
 chersch-griþ holde.  
 þe tȝding com to þan kinge ⁊  
 þat louerd waf of þan londe.  
 þat Arthur king was þider icome ⁊  
 and moche harm wrohte.  
 He somne<sup>2</sup> alle his cnihtes ⁊

to-ȝeines Arthur fihte.  
 forþ hii wende sone ⁊  
 þat hii to Arthur come.

that land.] Arthur marched in the land, and the people destroyed; much  
 folk he [there] slew, [and] he took cattle enow; and ever he ordered each  
 man church-peace to hold. The tiding came to the king, who was lord of  
 the land, that Arthur [*the* king] was come 'there' [thither], and [much]  
 harm 'there' wrought. He assembled all his 'people, over his kingdom;  
 and his Irish folk marched to *the* fight, against [knights, against Arthur  
 to fight; forth they soon marched, so that they came to] Arthur 'the  
 noble king. Arthur and his knights they weaponed *them* forth-right, and  
 advanced against them, a numerous folk.' 'Arthurs men were with arms

<sup>1</sup> R. icumen.<sup>2</sup> somnede?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

mid wepnen al bi-þehte.  
 þa Irifce men weoren ⁊  
 nakede neh þan.  
 mid ſperen & mid axen ⁊  
 & mid ſwiðe ſcærpe ſæxen.  
 Arðures men letten fleon ⁊  
 vnimete flā.  
 and merden Irifc folc<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 & hit ſwiðe ualden.  
 ne mæhten heo iþolien ⁊  
 þurh nanef cūnes þingen.  
 ah fluȝen awai fiðe<sup>3</sup> ⁊  
 ſwiðe uæle þuſend.  
 & Gillomar þeking flaþ ⁊ [f. 129<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 & awæwardes teh.  
 and Arður him after ⁊  
 and þene king ikahte.  
 he nom bi þan honde ⁊  
 þene king of þan londe.  
 Arður þe hæȝe ⁊  
 herbeorwe iſohte.  
 an his mode him wes þa æðe ⁊

ac hii weren nakede ⁊  
 and þe oþe hi-heled mid hire

And Arthur his men ⁊  
 lette flon to ȝam fleon.  
 and morde Ireſſe folk ⁊  
 þat hit ful ſwiþe.  
 10 ne mihten hii þis þolie ⁊  
 þorþ none cunnef þinge.  
 ac floȝe away ſwiþe ⁊  
 in euereche fide.  
 And Gillomar þe king ⁊  
 fleh ſwiþe an hiȝeng.  
 and Arthur him after ⁊  
 and þane king cahte. [f. 103. c.]  
 he nam bi þan honde ⁊  
 þan kīg of þan londe.  
 20 Arthur þe bolde ⁊  
 to his hinne wende.  
 in his mode him was heþ ⁊

all covered, the Irish men were nearly naked [but they were naked, the others covered with their *weapons*], 'with spears and with axes, with *sæxes* exceeding sharp.' 'Arthurs [And Arthur his] men let fl̃ them] 'numerous' darts, and killed *the* Irish folk; 'and [so that] gr̃ it 'felled [fell]; they might not [this] sustain, through any kind of tl̃ but fled away quickly, 'very many thousands [on every side]. And Gill̃ the king fled, 'and awayward drew [greatly in haste], and Arthur *sued* after him, and caught the king; he took by the hand the king of land. Arthur the 'noble sought lodging [bold went to his inn]; in his n

<sup>1</sup> hire wepne? *Perhaps* mid hire is *superfluous*.

<sup>2</sup> *Added by a second hand in the margin.*

<sup>3</sup> ſwiðe:



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat Gillomar him wes swa neh.  
 Nu dude Arður :  
 aðeleſt kingen.  
 ſwiðe muche freondſcipe :  
 at-foren al hiſ folke.  
 he lette þene king ſcrude :  
 mid ælchere prude.  
 and æc bi Arðure ſat :  
 and æc mid him ſeolue æt.  
 mid Arðure he win dronc : 10  
 þat him wes mucheles unðonc.  
 Naðeles þa he iſah :  
 þat Arður wes ſwiðe glad.  
 þa cleopede Gillomar :  
 an hiſ horte him wes ſær.  
 Louerd Arður þi grið :  
 ȝef me leomē & ȝif me lif.  
 ich wulle þi mō bicumē :  
 & biteche þe mine þreo ſunen.  
 mine ſunē deore : 20  
 to don al þine iwille.  
 & ȝet ich wulle mare :

þat Gillomar him was ſo neh.  
 Ne<sup>1</sup> dude Arthur þe bolde king :  
 on ſwiþe freo þing.  
 he lette þane king ſcrude :  
 mid allere prude.  
 and bi Arthur he ſat :  
 and eke mid him ſeolf hate.  
 mid Arthur me<sup>2</sup> wȝn drong : 10  
 þat was mid mochel onþong.  
 Noþeles þo he iſeh :  
 þat Arthur was ſo neh.  
 Gillomar him ſaide :  
 mid forþ-folle heorte.  
 Louerd Arthur þin griþ :  
 ȝef me leome and ȝef me lif.  
 and ich wolle þin man bi-come :  
 to hoſtage take þe mine ſone.  
 And ȝet ich wolle more :

*it* was the easier to him, that Gillomar was so nigh him. Now did Arthur 'noblest of kings, very great friendship before all his folk [the bold king, a thing most liberal]; he caused the king to be clothed with 'each [all] pride (richly); and 'eke' by Arthur [he] sate, and eke with himself ate; with Arthur he drank wine,—that 'to him' was [with] mickle unthank. Nevertheless when he saw that Arthur was 'most glad [so nigh], then said Gillomar [to him],—in his heart he was sore [with sorrowful heart]: "Lord Arthur, thy peace! Give me limb and give me life, [and] I will become thy man, 'and' deliver thee my 'three sons [son for hostage], 'my dear sons, to do all thy will.' And yet I will *do* more, if thou wilt give me

<sup>1</sup> Nou?<sup>2</sup> he?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ȝif þu me wult ȝefen ære.  
 ich wulle þe bi-tache ⁊  
 ȝifles fwiðe rich.  
 children fume fixti ⁊  
 hæȝe & fwiðe mæhti.  
 ȝet ich<sup>1</sup> wulle mære ⁊  
 ȝif þu me ȝifueſt ære.  
 ælche ȝere of mine londe ⁊  
 feouen þuſend punde. [c. 2.]  
 & ſenden heom to þine londe ⁊ 10  
 & fixti mark of golde.  
 & ȝet ich wulle mare ⁊  
 ȝif þu wult me ȝifuen are.  
 alle þa ſteden ⁊  
 mid alle heore iweden.  
 þa hæuekes & þa hundes ⁊  
 & hehȝe mine maħmes.  
 ich bitache þe to hōde ⁊  
 of alle mine londe.  
 And þēne þu haueſt þiſ idon ⁊ 20  
 ich wulle nimē halidom.  
 of ſeit Colūkille ⁊  
 þe dude godes iwille.  
 & ſeint Brændeneſ hæfed ⁊

ȝef þou me wolt ȝefue ore.  
 ich wolle þe bi-take ⁊  
 hoſtageſ riche.  
 children folle fixti ⁊  
 riche and wel milhti.  
 And ȝet ich wolle more ⁊  
 ȝef þou me ȝeueſt ore.  
 eche ȝer of mine londe ⁊  
 foue þouſend pound þe ſende.  
  
 and alle mine ſtedes ⁊  
 mid alle hire wedeſ.  
 min hauekeſ and mine houndeſ ⁊  
 and oþer riche ȝeſteſ.  
 ich take þe an honde ⁊  
 of al mine londe.  
 And wane þou haueſt þuſ idon ⁊  
 ich wolle nime halidomes.  
 of ſeint Columkille ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 þat dude godes wille.  
 and ſeint Brendan hiſ heued ⁊

grace; I will deliver thee hostages 'exceeding' rich, children 'some [full] sixty, 'noble [rich] and 'most [well] mighty. [And] yet I will more, if thou givest me grace; each year of my land seven thousand pounds [thee send]; 'and send them to thy land, and sixty marks of gold. And yet I will more, if thou wilt give me grace'; [and] all 'the [my] steeds, with all their trappings, 'the [my] hawks, and 'the [my] hounds, and 'my rich treasures [other rich gifts] I give thee in hand, of all my land. And when thou hast this done, I will take *the* reliques of Saint Columkille, who did

<sup>1</sup> This word is interlined.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

þe godd feolf haleȝede.  
 & feinte Bride riht fot :  
 þe hali iſ & ſwiðe god.  
 & halidomes inoȝe :  
 þe comen ut of Rome.  
 & ſwerien þe to ſoðe :  
 ſwiken þe þat ich nulle.  
 ah ich þe wulle luuien :  
 and halden þe for lauerd<sup>1</sup>.  
 halden þe for hahne king : 10  
 & mi feolf beon þin vnderling.  
 þiſ iherde Arður :  
 aðeleſt king.  
 & he gan lihȝe :  
 luddere ſteftne<sup>2</sup>.  
 & he gon andſwerie :  
 mid ædmode worden.  
 Beo nu glad Gillomar :  
 ne beo þin heorte noht fær.  
 for þv ært a wiſ mon : 20  
 þa bet þe ſcal iwurðen.  
 for æuere me æhte wiſne mon :  
 wurðliche igreten.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat god feolf halwede.  
 and feinte Bride riht fot :  
 þat his holy and god.  
 and halidomes inowe :  
 þat come vt of Rome.  
 and ſwerien þe to ſoþe :  
 ſwike þat ich þe nelle.  
 ac ich þe wolle louie :  
 and holde þe for louerd.

**þ** Is ihorde Arthur :  
 boldeſt alre kinge.

and him andſwerede :  
 mid mildeliche wordes.  
 Beo nou glad Gillomar :  
 ne beo þou noht in heorte for.  
 for þou hart a wiſman : 20  
 þe ſal þe bet for þan.

Gods will, and Saint 'Brandans [Brandan his] head, that God *himself* hallowed, and Saint Brides right foot, that is holy and 'most' good, and reliques enow, that came out of Rome, and swear to thee in sooth, that I will thee not deceive; but I will love thee, and hold thee for lord, 'hold thee for high king, and myself be thy underling.' " Arthur heard this, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings, 'and he gan laugh with loud voice,' and he 'gan answer [answered] with gracious words: "Be now glad, Gillomar; be 'not thy heart sore [thou not sore in heart]; for thou art a wise man,—the better [therefore] shall *it* 'be' to thee, 'for ever one ought worthily

<sup>1</sup> lauer, *pr. m.*<sup>2</sup> ſteftne ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiiii.

for þine wiſdome ⁊	for þine wiſdome ⁊
no ſcal þe noht þa wurfe. [f.*129.c.1.]	ne ſal þe noh þe worfe.
muchel þu me beodeſt ⁊	moche þou me bedeſt ⁊
þe ſcal beon þa betere.	þe ſal beon þe betere.
Her forð rihtef ⁊	Her forþrihtes ⁊
bi-foren al mine cnihtes.	bi-vore alle mine cnihtes.
forȝiuen þe amare <sup>1</sup> ⁊	ich for-ȝeue of þine bode ⁊
al þæ haluen dæle.	al þan haluendeale.
of golde & of gærſūe ⁊	of golde and of garifome ⁊
ah þu ſcalt mi mon bicumen. 10	ac þou ſalt min man bi-come.
and half þat gauel fende ⁊	and half þat gauel fende ⁊
ælche ȝere to mine londe.	in to mine londe.
Halfe þa ſteden ⁊	Halue þe ſtedes ⁊
& halfe þa iweden.	and halue þe wedes.
halue þa haukeſ ⁊	halue þe hundes ⁊
& halue þa hundes.	and halue þe haukes.
þæ þu me beodeſt ⁊	þat þou me bedeſt ⁊
ich wulle þe bi-lefen.	ich wolle þe bi-leſue.
ah ich wulle habben ⁊	ac ich wolle habbe þine ſone ⁊
þire hæhre monne childrē. 20	
þeo heom beoð alre leofueſt ⁊	
ich heom mai þe bet ileouē.	ich may þe þe bet i-leue.
& ſwa þu ſcalt wunien ⁊	And þou ſalt wonie ⁊

wise man to greet';—for thy wisdom shall *it* not *be* the worse for thee; much thou me offerest, the better *it* shall be to thee. Here forth-right, before all my knights, I forgive thee 'the more, [of thy offer] all the half-part, of gold and of treasure; but thou shalt become my man, and half the tribute send 'each year' [in] to my land. Half the steeds, and half the weeds (garments), half the 'hawks [hounds], and half the 'hounds [hawks], that thou me offerest, I will relinquish to thee; but I will have 'the children of thy noble men [thy son], 'who are to them dearest of all'; I may the better believe 'thee [them]. And 'so' thou shalt dwell in thy honor (honorably) in thy

<sup>1</sup> þa mare?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

in wurðſcipe þire.  
 a þine kine-dome ⁊  
 i þine rihte icunden.  
 & ic þe wulle ȝeuen to ⁊  
 þat ne ſcal þe king woh don.  
 butē he hit abugge ⁊  
 mid hiſ brare<sup>1</sup> rugge.  
 þeo<sup>2</sup> hit ſæide Arður ⁊  
 aðeleſt kingen.  
 þa hafden he an hond ⁊ 10  
 al to-ſomne Irlond.  
 & þe kīg hiſ mon bicumen ⁊  
 and bitæht hī hiſ þreo ſeonen.  
 þa ſpac Arður ⁊  
 to ſele hiſ cnihten.  
 Faren<sup>3</sup> to Hiſ-lond ⁊  
 & nimē we hit to ure honde.  
 Ferde þer fuſde ⁊  
 & com to Iſlonde. [c.2.]  
 Ælcu[ſ.] Ælcuſ þe kīg wes ihatē ⁊ 20  
 hæh mon of þan ærd.  
 he iherde þa tidende ⁊  
 of Arðure þan kinge.  
 he dude al ſo wiſ mon ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

in worſipe þine.  
 in þine kinelonde ⁊  
 and þin rihte icunde. [f. 103<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 and ich þe wolle loke to ⁊  
 þat no king ne ſal þe miſ-do.  
 bote he hit a-bugge ⁊  
 mid hiſ bare rugge.  
 þus him ſaide Arthur ⁊  
 holdeſt alre kinge.  
 þo he hadde al Irlond ⁊  
 to hiſ owene hond.  
 and þe king hiſ man bi-com ⁊  
 and bi-tok Arthur hiſ ſone.  
 þo ſpac Arthur ⁊  
 to ſele hiſ cnihtes.  
 Wende we to Iſlond ⁊  
 and nime hit to oure hond.  
 Forþ hii wende ⁊  
 þat hii þider come.  
 Alcuſ hehte þe king ⁊ 20  
 he hadde mani onderlȝng.  
 he ihorde þan tȝdingge ⁊  
 of Arthur þan kinge.  
 he dude aſe a wiſman ⁊

kingdom, 'in [and] thy right territory; and I will 'give [look] to thee, that  
 'the king shall not do wrong [no king shall misdo] to thee, unless he pay for it  
 with his bare back!' Thus 'it said [said him] Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of  
 all] kings. Then had he [all] Ireland 'all together' in [his own] hand; and  
 the king became his man, and delivered 'him [Arthur] his 'three sons [son].  
 Then spake Arthur to his good knights: "Go we to Iceland, and take 'we'  
 it in our hand." 'The host there marched, and to Iceland [Forth they went,  
 until they thither] came. The king 'was named [hight] Ælcus, 'high man of  
 the land [he had many *as* underling]; he heard the tidings of Arthur the

<sup>1</sup> R. bare.<sup>2</sup> þus?<sup>3</sup> Faren we?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& wende toȝeines him anan.  
 anan forð rihtes :  
 mid sixtene cnihtes.  
 he bar on his honde :  
 ænne mucle ȝeord of golde.  
 Sone swa he Arður isæh :  
 swa he on his cneowen bæh.  
 & þas worð<sup>1</sup> him iquað :  
 þe king wes afæred.  
 Wulcume fire Arður :  
 wilcume lauerd.  
 Her ich biteche þe an hond :  
 al to-gadere Iflond.  
 þu scal beð min hæhȝe king :  
 and ich<sup>2</sup> wul beon þen underling.  
 Ich þe wullen heren :  
 swa mon scal don his hærren.  
 & ich wulle þi mon bicumen :  
 & bitæche þe minne leofue fune.  
 Eſſcol if ihaten :  
 and þu hine scalt iæðelien.  
 to cnihte hine dubben :  
 alse þi æzene mon.  
 His moder ich habbe to wife :

and wende aȝenest him anon.  
 swiþe forþ rihtes :  
 mid sixtene cnihtes.  
 he bar on his honde :  
 ane mochele ȝeord of golde.  
 Sone so he Arthur iseh :  
 on his cnowes he him beh.  
 and þeos word faide :  
 þe king was a-fered.  
 Wolcome fire Arthur :  
 wolcome louerd.  
 Her ich bi-take þe an hond :  
 al to-gadere Iflond.  
 þou salt beo min hehȝe king :  
 and ich wolle beo þin onderling.  
 Ich þe wullen heren :  
 swa mon scal don his hærren.  
 & ich wolle here þi man bi-come :  
 and take þe mine fone.  
 Eſcol his ihote :  
 and þou hine most teche.  
 to cnihte hine dobben :  
 afe þin owene man.  
 His moder his wel ibore : [c. 2.]

Eſſcol[4]

king ; he did 'all' as [a] wiseman, and marched against him anon ; 'anon [quickly] forth-right, with sixteen knights ; he bare in his hand a mickle wand (sceptre) of gold. 'So' soon as he saw Arthur, he bent [him] on his knees, and 'quothe [said] these words 'to him,'—the king was afraid :—  
 "Welcome, sir Arthur ! welcome, lord ! Here I deliver thee in hand all together Iceland ; thou shalt be my high king, and I will be thy underling. 'I will obey thee, as man shall do his master, and' I will become [here] thy man, and deliver thee my 'dear' son, *who* is named Escol ; and thou shalt him honor (*or* reward) [must him teach], and dub him to knight, as thine own

<sup>1</sup> word ?<sup>2</sup> Inserted in the margin by second hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þaf kinges dohter of Rufie.  
 And æc ælche ȝere ⁊  
 ȝiuē<sup>1</sup> þe wulle æhte.  
 seoue þusend punde ⁊  
 of feoluere and of golde.  
 & to æuer ælche ræde ⁊  
 beon ȝæru to þire neode. [f. \*129<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 þif ich wullen þe swerien ⁊  
 uppen mine sweorden.  
 þe halidom if a þere hilde ⁊ 10  
 þe hexfte of þisse londe.  
 likien swa me liken ⁊  
 nulle ich þe nauere swiken.  
 þif iherde Ardur<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 aðleſt kīgē.  
 Arður wes wunfum ⁊  
 þer he hafde hiſ iwillen.  
 & he wes wod<sup>4</sup> ſturne ⁊  
 wið hiſ wiðer-iwinnen.  
 Arður þa liðe word iherde ⁊ 20  
 of þan leod-kinge.  
 al þat he ȝirnde ⁊  
 al he hī ȝette<sup>5</sup>.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þe kinges dohter of Rufie icore.  
 And eke eche ȝere ⁊  
 ȝefen ich þe wolle.  
 foue þouſend pound ⁊  
 of feoluer and of golde.  
 and to euereche reade ⁊  
 beo ȝaru to þine neode.  
 þis ich wolle ſwerie ⁊  
 vppen mine ſweorde.  
 þar hiſ an halidom wel icore ⁊  
 in þan helte bi-vore.  
 likie ou me likie ⁊  
 nolle ich þe neuere ſwike.  
 þif ihorde Arthur ⁊  
 boldeſt alre kinke<sup>3</sup>.  
 Arthur was wiſman ⁊  
 ware he hadde hiſ wille.  
 he was wonder ſteorne ⁊  
 wiþ hiſ wiþer-iwinne.  
 Arthur grantete þan king ⁊  
 al þat he ȝornde.

man. His mother 'I have to wife [is well born], the kings [choice] daughter of Russia. And eke each year [I] will give thee 'money,' seven thousand pounds of silver and of gold; and in every counsel be ready at thy need. This I will swear 'to thee,' upon my sword; 'the relique is in the hilt, the noblest of this land [there is a relique well choice in the hilt before]; like as me shall like, will I never be false to thee!' Arthur heard this 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings. Arthur was 'winsome [wise man] where he had his will, and he was exceeding stern with his enemies. Arthur 'heard the mild words of the monarch; he' granted 'him [the king] all that he

<sup>1</sup> ȝiuē ich?<sup>2</sup> R. Arður.<sup>3</sup> kinge?<sup>4</sup> wonder?<sup>5</sup> Sup. ras.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

ȝilles<sup>1</sup> and aðes ⁊  
 and alle hiȝ ibodes.  
 ¶ Þa iherde suggen ⁊  
 foðere worden.  
 þe king of Orcaneie ⁊  
 vnimete kene.  
 Gonwais wes ihate ⁊  
 hæðene kenpe<sup>2</sup>.  
 þat Arður king wolde ⁊  
 cume to hiȝ londe.  
 mid muchele ſcip-ferde ⁊  
 fuſen to leoden.  
 Gonwaif hi uerde to-ȝæines ⁊  
 mid wiȝe hiȝ þeines.  
 and fette Arðure an hond ⁊  
 al Orcaneies lōd.  
 and twa and þritti æit-lond ⁊  
 þe þider in liggeð.  
 and his mou-radene ⁊  
 mid muchelere menſce.  
 And he him hæfde a uoreward ⁊  
 biſoren al hiȝ duȝeðe.  
 ælche ȝere to iwitē ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

oþes he þare nā ⁊  
 and hoſtages al ſon.  
**Þ**O ihorde ſegge ⁊  
 ſoþere wordes.  
 þe king of Organeie ⁊  
 onimete kene.  
 Gongwas was ihote ⁊  
 heaþene kempe.  
 þat Arthur þe ſtronge gome ⁊  
 to his londe wolde come.  
 Gongwas ȝeode to-ȝeȝnes ⁊  
 mid wiȝe hiȝ cnihtes.  
 and fette Arthur an hond ⁊  
 al Organeies lond.  
 and two and þritti ȝllondes ⁊  
 þat þar to liggeþ.  
 and his manradene ⁊  
 mid mochelere menſce.  
 And he him hadde a foreward ⁊  
 bi-vore alle hiȝ cnihtes.  
 eche ȝer to iwite ⁊

[Go]nwais.

yearned; 'hostages and oaths, and all his proffers [oaths he there took, and hostages also]. Then heard say sooth words the king of Orkney, exceeding keen, *who* was named Gonwais, a heathen warrior, that Arthur 'the king [the strong man] would come to his land; 'with a mickle fleet sail to *his* country.' Gonwais proceeded towards 'him,' with his wise 'thanes [knights], and set to Arthur in hand all Orkneys land, and two and thirty islands, that 'thither in [thereto] lieth, and his homage, with much reverence. And he had (made) to him in covenant, before all his 'people [knights], each year to wit, full sixty ships at his own cost to bring

<sup>1</sup> R. ȝifles.<sup>2</sup> kempe?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

fulle fixti ſcipen.

fulle fixti fipes.

mid his aȝere coſtninge? [c. 2.]

mid his owene coſtninge? [£104.c.1.]

bringē heom to Londenne.

bringen ȝam to Londene.

ifulled to iwiffe?

i-fulled mid iwiffe?

mid gode ſæ fiſce.

of gode ſée viſce.

ȝif forward he iuaſte?

and ȝifles he funde.

and aȝes he ſwor gode?

Opes he ſwor gode?

ſwiken ȝan<sup>1</sup> he nolde.

ſwike ȝat he nolde.

&amp; ſeoððen he lefe nom?

10 and ſuppe he leſue nam?

&amp; forð he gon liðen.

and forþ he gan wende.

Lauerd haue wel godne dæi?

Louerd haue godne day?

ich wulle cumen wenne ich mai. ich wolle come wan ich may.

for nu þu art mi lauerd<sup>2</sup>?

leoueft alre kingen.

ȝa Ardur<sup>3</sup> hafde ȝif idon?

ȝo Arthur hadde ȝif idon?

ȝa ȝet he wolde mare aſon.

ȝet he wolde more vnder-ſon.

he nom hiſ writen gode?

he nam hiſ ſonde?

and ſenden to Gutlonde.

and ſende to Gutlonde.

*Doldamin.*

and grætte þe king Doldanim? 20 and grette þane king Deldanym?

and hehte hine ſone comen to him. and hehte hine an hiȝene come to him.

&amp; him ſeolf hiſ mon bicume?

and him ſeolf hiſ man bi-come?

and bringen him hiſ tweien ſunen. and bringe mid him hiſ tweie ſones.

And ȝif þu þ nulle?

And ȝef þou ȝat nolle?

them to London, filled truly with good sea-fish. 'This covenant he confirmed, and hostages he found; and' oaths he swore good, that he would not deceive. And afterwards he took leave, and forth he gan wend:—"Lord, have 'well' good day! I will come when I may; 'for now thou art my lord, dearest of all kings.'" When Arthur had done this, 'the' yet he would more undertake; he took his 'good writs [messengers], and sent to Gutlond; and greeted the king Doldanim, and bade him 'soon [in haste] come to him, and himself become his man, and bring [with] him his two sons.—"And if thou

<sup>1</sup> ȝat?<sup>2</sup> lauer *pr. m.*<sup>3</sup> *R. Arður.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

do þat þu wulle.  
 ich þe wulle fende ⁊  
 fixtene þusend.  
 heȝe here-kempen ⁊  
 to mucle þine harmen.  
 scullē þi lond waſten ⁊  
 and þire leoden aſlan.  
 and þ̃ lōd ſetten ⁊  
 ſwa heom beẏft þincheð.  
 and þe ſeoluen binden ⁊  
 & to me bringen.  
 þiſ iherde þe king ⁊  
 þræt þaſ kaiſeres.  
 & he on uaſte iuēg ⁊  
 fæiere his iweden.  
 hundes & haſekes ⁊  
 & hiſ gode horffes. [f. 130. c. 1.]  
 muchel ſeoluer muchel gold ⁊  
 hiſ tweien ſunen an hiſ hond.  
 And forð he gon wenden ⁊  
 to Arðure þan kingen.  
 and þaſ word ſæide ⁊  
 Doldanim þe ſele.

do wat þou wolle.  
 and ich þe wolle fende ⁊  
 fixtene þouſend kempes.  
 þat þe ſolle þe<sup>1</sup> binde ⁊  
 and to me bringe.  
 10 and þin lond waſti ⁊  
 and falle þine cuihtes.  
 þiſ ihorde þe king ⁊  
 of þiſſe herde þreting.  
 and caſte on hiſ rugge ⁊  
 ſwiþe riſe webbes.  
 and him nam bi-fides ⁊  
 hundes and hauekef.  
 moche ſeoluer and gold ⁊  
 and hiſ ſones beine.  
 20 And forþ he he<sup>2</sup> gan wende ⁊  
 to Arthur þan kinge.  
 and þeſ word ſaide ⁊  
 Doldaným þe ſele.

wilt not that, do what thou wilt, [and] I will send thee sixteen thousand 'noble' warriors, 'to thy mickle harm,' [who] shall 'waste thy land, and slay thy people [bind thee, and bring to me], 'and set the land as to them best seemeth,' and 'thyself bind, and to me bring [waste thy land, and fell thy knights].'" The king heard this, *the* threat of the kaiser, and he speedily took his fair weeds [of this hard threatening, and cast on his back exceeding rich clothes, and took to him besides] hounds and hawks, 'and his good horses'; much silver, 'much [and] gold; 'his two [and both his] sons 'in his hand.' And forth he gan wend to Arthur the king; and said these words Doldanim the good: "Hail be thou, Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest

<sup>1</sup> Sic MS.<sup>2</sup> Sic MS.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Hail seo þu Ardur<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
aðelest kingen.

Her ich bringe tweiene ⁊  
mine funen beiene.

heore moder if kinges istreon ⁊  
quene heo if min aȝene.

ich tache þe mine leofen funen ⁊  
mi feolf ich wulle þi mō bicumen.  
ich heo biȝat mið ræflac ⁊  
ut of Rufie.

And ic wulle fende ⁊  
gael of mine londe.

æuer ælche ȝere ⁊

to ȝiuelef<sup>2</sup> þingen.

ich wulle fēden þe in to Lundene ⁊

feouen þufend punden.

þat ic wulle fwerien ⁊

þat nulle ich næuere fwiken.

ah here ich wulle þi mon bicomen ⁊

þi monſcipe if þa mare.

fwiken nulle ich nauere ⁊

swa long fwa beoð auere.

Arður nom his sonde ⁊

& fende to Winent-londe.

Hayl beo þou Arthur ⁊  
boldeſt alre kinge.

Her ich bringe tweie ⁊

mine fones hii beoþ beȝe. [c. 2.]

hire moder his kinges ſtreon ⁊  
cwene ȝeo his min owe.

here ich take hire fones ⁊ [come.  
and mi feolf ich wolle þin man bi-

And ich þe wolle fende ⁊

gael of mine londe.

euereche ȝere ⁊

foue þouſend poundes.

[come ⁊

And her ich wolle þin man bi-

and oþes þe fwerie.

þat ſo lang ſo beoþ euere ⁊

ne fwike ich þe neuere.

**A** Rthur nam his sonde ⁊

and fende to Winet-londe.

of all] kings! Here I bring twain, my sons [they are] both; their mother is of kings race, she is mine own queen; 'I won her with spoil, out of Russia.' [Here] I deliver 'thee' 'my dear [her] sons, [and] myself I will become thy man. And I will send [thee] tribute of my land; every year 'as thing bestowed (?), I will send thee into London' seven thousand pounds. 'That I will swear, that I will never be false,' 'but [And] here I will become thy man,—thy honor is the greater—[and oaths to thee swear, that] so long as is ever, I will deceive [thee] never!' Arthur took his

<sup>1</sup> R. Arður.

<sup>2</sup> A plummet-mark in the margin would seem to indicate some mistake here.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

to Rumareð þan kinge ⁊	to Rumerat þan kinge ⁊
and hehte him cuðen ā hiȝenge.	to cupi him an hiȝenge.
þat he hæfde in his hond ⁊	þat he hadde in his hond ⁊
Brutlond & Scotlond.	Brutlōd and Scotlond.
Gutlond & Irlond ⁊	Gutlond and Irlond ⁊
Orcanie & Iflond. [c.2.]	Orcaneȝe and Iflōd.
He hæhte Rumareð cumen ⁊	He hehte Rumerat come ⁊
and bringen him hiȝ ældeſte ſune.	and bringe his huldeſt ſone.
& ȝif he ꝥ nolde ⁊	and ȝef he þat nolde ⁊
he wolde hine driuē of londe.	10 he wolde him driue of londe.
and ȝif he mihte afon ⁊	and ȝef he him mihte onder-ſon
he wolde hine flæn oðer an-hon.	he wolde him hehȝe an-hon.
and hiȝ lond al for-don ⁊	
hiȝ leoden for-demen.	
þiȝ iherde Rumareð ⁊	þiȝ ihorde Rumerat ⁊
þe rich king of Winete.	þe riche king of Winet.
ſwiðe he wes afered ⁊	ſwiȝe he was afered ⁊
al ſwa þa oðere weoren arer.	al ſo þe oȝer were.
laðe him weoren þa tidende ⁊	loþ him were þe tȝdings ⁊
from Arðure þan kige.	20 fram Arthur þan kinge.
Noðeles þe king Rumareð ⁊	Noþeles þe king Rumerat ⁊
hercneðe rædes.	hercneðe tidings.
he nom hiȝ ældeſte ſune ⁊	he nam his eldeſte ſone ⁊
and ſele twælf eorles.	and oȝer twealf cnihteȝ.

messengers, and sent to Winetland, to Rumareth the king, 'and ba  
him know [to make known to him] in haste, that he had in his har  
Britain and Scotland, Gutland and Ireland, Orcany and Iceland. He o  
dered Rumareth to come, and bring 'him' his eldest son; and if he wou  
not *do* that, he would drive him from land; and if he might [him] ca  
ture, he would 'slay him or hang [hang him high], 'and destroy all h  
land; his people exterminate.' Rumareth heard this, the rich king  
Winet; greatly he was afraid, all as the others were 'ere'; loath to hi  
were the tidings from Arthur the king. Nevertheless the king Rumare  
hearkened 'counsels [tidings]; he took his eldest son, and twelve 'good ear

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& ferde to Arðure ⁊  
 þan kīge aðele.  
 and fet æt his fotē ⁊  
 and feire hine gon greten.  
 Hail seo þu Arður ⁊  
 aðeleſt Brutten.  
 Ich hatten Rumareð ⁊  
 þe kīg of Winet-londe.  
 inoh ich habbe iherd kenne ⁊  
 of kē-ſcipe þine. 10  
 þat þu ært widē icuð ⁊  
 kingen alre kenneſt.  
 Þu haueſt moni kine-lōd ⁊  
 biȝiten al to þire hond.  
 nis na king an londe ⁊  
 þe þe maȝen ſtonde<sup>1</sup>.  
 kīg ne na kaiſere ⁊ [l. 130<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 in nauere nane cōpe.  
 of al þat þu biȝinneſt ⁊  
 þu deſt þine iwille. 20  
 Her ich æm to þe icume ⁊  
 and broht þe mine aldeſte fune.  
 her ich fette þe an hond ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and wende to Arthur ⁊  
 þane bolde kinge.  
 and ſat hat his fote ⁊ · [l. 104<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 and faire hine gan grete.  
 Haȝl beo þou Arthur þe king ⁊  
 Bruttene deorling.  
 Ich hatte Rumeret ⁊  
 of þe londe of Winet.  
 inoh ich hure kenne ⁊  
 of kenſipe þinne.  
 þat þou hart wide icud ⁊  
 kenneſt alre kinge.  
 þou haueſt manȝ kine-lond ⁊  
 a-wonne to þin owe hond.  
 nis non king in londe ⁊  
 þat maȝe þe wiȝ-ſtonde.  
 of al þat þou bi-ginneſt ⁊  
 þou doſt þine wille. 20  
 Her ich ham to þe icome ⁊  
 and hi-broht min eldeſte fone.  
 ich fette þe her an hond ⁊

[other knights], and proceeded to Arthur the 'noble [bold] king, and sate at his feet, and gan him fair greet: "Hail be thou, Arthur [the king], 'noblest of Britons [Britons darling]! I hight Rumareth, 'the king of Winetland [of the land of Winet]; enow I 'have heard [hear] declared of thy valor; that thou art wide known, keenest of all kings. Thou hast won many kingdom 'all' to thine [own] hand; *there* is no king in land that may thee withstand, 'king nor kaiser, in ever any combat'; of all that thou beginnest, thou dost thy will. Here am I to thee come, and brought 'thee' my eldest son; here I set thee in hand myself and my kingdom,

<sup>1</sup> wið-ſtonde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

me feoluen and mi kine-lond.  
and mīne fune-leofe ⁊  
and mine leoden alle.  
wif & mine weden ⁊  
and alle mine wunnen.

wið þat þu me griðie ⁊  
wið þine grim ræfen.

And beo þu min hæhþe kīg ⁊  
and ich wulle beon þin underling.  
and fenden þe to honde ⁊ 10  
fif hundred pund of golde.

þaſ ȝeuen ich finde þe wulle ⁊  
æue¹ alche ȝere.

Al Arður him ȝette ⁊

þat þe king ȝirde².

and feoððen he heolde runen ⁊  
wið fele his þeinen.

& feide þat he wolde ⁊

aȝæin to þiſſe londe.

and iſeon Wenhauer ⁊ 20

þe wuneliche quene.

Bemen he lette blawē ⁊

& bonnien hiſ ferden.

and to ſcipen wenden ⁊

mȳ feolfen and mi kinelond.  
and mine ſone leue ⁊  
and mine men alle.

wiþ þan þat þou me griþie ⁊  
wiþ þine grȳm reafes.

And beo þou min hehþe king ⁊  
and ich wolle beo þin onderling.

and fende þe to honde ⁊  
fif hundred pound of golde.

fram ȝere to ȝere ⁊

to Londene þe fende.

Arthur him grantede ⁊

al þat he ȝornde.

and ſupþe helde rouning ⁊

wiþ leoue his cnihtes.

þat he wolde aȝen wende ⁊

into þiſſe londe.

and iſen Gwēnaifer ⁊

þe leodiffe cwene.

Bumef he lette bloue ⁊

and banni his ferde.

and to ſipe wende ⁊

and my dear son, and all my 'people [men], 'my wife and my weeds, and all my possessions,' on condition that thou give me protection against thy fierce attacks. And be thou my high king, and I will be thy underling, and send thee to hand five hundred pounds of gold; 'these gifts I will thee find, every year [from year to year to London thee send].' Arthur granted him all that 'the king [he] yearned, and afterwards 'he' held communing with his 'good thanes [dear knights], 'and said' that he would [return] again [in]to this land, and see Wenhaver, the 'comely' queen [of the country]. Trumpets he caused to be blown, and his army to assemble;

¹ æuere?

² ȝirnde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

wunder bliðe þeines.		manȝ blipe chnihtef.	[c. 2.]
Wind heom stod on willen ⁊		Winde ȝam stod at wille ⁊	
weder alfe heo wolden.		weder afe hii wolde.	
bliðe heo weoren alle for þi ⁊		glad hii were for þi ⁊	
[Gri]meſbi. up heo comen at Grimeſbi.		vp hii come at Grimeſbi.	
þ̅ iherden fone ⁊		þat i-horde fone ⁊	
þa hæhſte of þiſſen londe.	[c. 2.]	þe heheſte of þiſſe londe.	
and to þære quene com tidende ⁊		and to þar cwene com tȝding ⁊	
of Arðure þan kinge.		of Arthur þan king.	
þat he wes ifund icumen ⁊	10	þat he was ifonde icome ⁊	
& hiſ folc ð felen.		and hiſ folk on fele.	
þa weoren inne Bruttene ⁊		þo weren in Bruttayne ⁊	
bliffin inoȝe.		bliffef inowe.	
her wes fiðelinge and ſong ⁊		was her fiþeling and ſong ⁊	
her weſ harpinge imong.		her was harping a-mang.	
pipen & bemen ⁊		of alle cunneſ dremes ⁊	
murie þer ſungen.		murie her ſonge.	
Scopes þer ſungen ⁊		of Arthur þā kinge ⁊	
of Arðure þan kingen.		and of hiſ winninge.	
& of þan muchele wurð-ſcipe ⁊	20	of hiſ mochele worſipe ⁊	
þe he iwunnen hæfeden.		þat he a-wonne hadde.	
folc cō to hirede ⁊		folk þar was i-gadered ⁊	
of feole cunne þeode.		of mani cunne londe.	
widen and fiden ⁊			

and to ship marched *the* thanes wondrous [many knights] blithe. *The* wind stood them at will; weather as they would; 'blithe [glad] they were' 'all' therefore; up they came at Grimesby. That heard soon the highest of this land, and to the queen came tiding of Arthur the king, that he was come in safety, and his folk in prosperity. Then were in Britain joys enow! Here was fiddleing and song, here was harping among; 'pipes and trumps [of all kind of music.] sang 'there [here] merrily. 'Poets there sung' of Arthur the king, [and of his winning,] 'and' of 'the [his] great honor, that he had won. Folk 'came in concourse [was there gathered] of many kind of land; 'wide and far *the* folk was in prosperity.' All that Arthur saw, all

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

folc wes on felen.

Al þat Arður isæh ⁊

al hit him to bæh.

riche men and pouere ⁊

swa þe hazel ualleð.

nef þer nan swa wræcche Brut ⁊

þ he nes awæljed.

Her mon mai arede ⁊

of Arðure þan king.

hu he twelf jere ⁊

seoðen wuneden here.

inne griðe &amp; inne friðe ⁊

in alle uæjerneffe.

Na man him ne faht wið ⁊

no he ne makede nan un-frið.

ne mihte nauere nan man ⁊

bi-þenchen of bliffen.

þat weoren in ai þeode ⁊

mare þan i þiffe.

ne mihte nauere mon cūne ⁊ 20

nan swa muchel wunne. [f. 131. c. 1.]

swa wes mid Arðure ⁊

&amp; mid his folke here.

Ich mai fugge hu hit iwarð ⁊

Al þat Arthur i-feh ⁊

al hit him to beh.

riche and pore ⁊

afe þe hawel þat falleþ.

nas þar non so wrecche Brut ⁊

þat he nas wel iwellig.

**H**Er man may reade ⁊

of Arthur þa kene.

10 hou he twalf jere ⁊

suppe wonede here.

in gripe and bliffe ⁊

and in alle fairnisse.

No man him ne fast<sup>1</sup> wiþ ⁊

ne he non oper wiþ.

ne mihte no mam<sup>2</sup> bi-þenche ⁊

of bliffe þat were more.

in eni cunnef londe ⁊

þane was wiþ alle. [f. 105. c. 1.]

Ich may fegge ou hit iworþ ⁊

it submitted to him, rich 'men' and poor, as the hail [that] falleth; was there no Briton so wretched, that he was not enriched! Here man may tell of Arthur the 'king [keen], how he afterwards dwelt here twelve years, in peace and 'in amity, [bliss, and] in all fairness. No man fought with him, nor 'made he any strife [he with any other]; might 'never any [no] man bethink of bliss that were greater in any 'country [kind of land] than 'in this [was with all]; 'might never man know any so mickle joy, as was with Arthur, and with his folk here!' I may say how it happened, won-

<sup>1</sup> faht?<sup>2</sup> R. man.



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

wunder þæh hit þunche.  
 Hit wes in ane ȝeol-dæie ⁊  
 þat Arður in Lundene lai.  
 þa weoren him to i-cumen ⁊  
 of alle hiȝ kinerichē.  
 of Brutlonde ⁊ of Scotlonde ⁊  
 of Irlonde ⁊ of Iflonde.  
 and of al þan londe ⁊  
 þe Arður hæfede an honde.  
 alle þa hæxte þeines ⁊ 10  
 mid horfen & mid sweiēs.  
 þer weoren seouen kingene sunes ⁊  
 mid seouē hundred cnihten icumen.  
 wið uten þan hired ⁊  
 þe herede Arðure.  
 Ælc hæfede an heorte ⁊  
 leches heȝe.  
 and lette þat he weore ⁊  
 betere þan his iuere.  
 þat folc wes of feole londe ⁊ 20  
 þer wes muchel onde.  
 for þe an hine talde hæh ⁊  
 þe oðer mucche herre.  
 þa bleou mon þa bemen ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þeh hit wonder þinche.  
 Hit was in on holȝ dāȝ ⁊  
 þat Arthur ine Londene laȝ.  
 þar weren to him icome ⁊  
 of al his kineriche.  
 of Brutlond of Scotlonde ⁊  
 of Irlond of Iflond.  
 and of alle þan londes ⁊  
 þat Arthur hadde an honde.  
 and alle þe hexste cnihtes ⁊  
 þat were mid hire sweines.  
 þar were foue kingene fones ⁊  
 mid foue hundred cnihtes.  
 wiþ oute þan folke ⁊  
 þat Arthur hadde on hepe.  
 þat folk was . . many londe ⁊  
 þar was mochel onde.  
 for euerech wende ⁊  
 be betere þan oþer.  
 Bumes .ar blewe ⁊

drous though it seem. It was on a 'yule-day [holy day], that Arthur lay in London; 'then [there] were come to him *men* of all his kingdoms, of Britain, of Scotland, of Ireland, of Iceland, and of all the lands that Arthur had in hand; [and] all the highest 'thanes [knights], 'with horses and with [that were with their] swains. There were 'come' seven kings sons, with seven hundred knights; without the folk that 'obeyed Arthur [Arthur had in heap]. 'Each had in heart proud thoughts, and esteemed that he were better than his companion.' The folk was of many a land; there was mickle envy; for 'the one accounted himself high, the other much higher [every *one* weened *him* to be better than other]. 'Then [There]

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& þa bordes bradden.  
 water me brohte an uloren ⁊  
 mid guldene læffen.  
 seoððen claðef soften ⁊  
 al of white feolke.  
 þa sat Arður adun ⁊  
 & bi him Wēhauer þa quene.  
 seoððen fete þa eorles ⁊  
 and þer after þa beornes.  
 seoððen þa cnihtes ⁊ 10  
 al swa mon heom dihte. [c. 2.]  
 þa heȝe iborne ⁊  
 þene mete beoren.  
 æfne forð rihten ⁊  
 þa to þan cnihten.  
 þa touward þan þæinen ⁊  
 þa touward þan sweinen.  
 þa touward þan bermounnen ⁊  
 forð at þan borden.  
 þa duȝeðe wærð iwraððed ⁊ 20  
 dundes þer weoren riue.  
 ærest þa laues heo weorpen ⁊

bordes me wȝde.  
 water me brohte an flore ⁊  
 mid goldene bole.  
 suppe cloþef sohte<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 al of wite folke.  
 þo sat Arthur a-dun ⁊  
 and Gwennayfer his cwene.  
 suppe feten corles ⁊  
 beornes and cnihtes.

And þe heȝe ibore men ⁊  
 þane mete beare.  
 euere forþrihtes ⁊  
 toward þe cnihtes.  
 ech man þare ⁊  
 fareuede hiȝ freonde.  
 So lang hit wende þuȝ ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 and sone þar after wors.  
 þat somme weren wel wroȝ ⁊  
 and dundes hii ȝefue.  
 hereȝt hii louef worpen ⁊

blew 'men the' trumpets, 'and' spread [men] 'the' tables; water men brought on floor, with golden bowls; next soft clothes, all of white silk. Then sate Arthur down, and 'by him' Wenhaver 'the [his] queen; next sate 'the' earls, 'and thereafter the barons; next the knights, all as men them disposed. [barons and knights. And] the high-born [men] bare the meat 'even [ever] forth-right 'then to [toward] the knights; 'then toward the thanes, then toward the swains, then toward the porters, forth at the board. The people became angered, and blows there were rife [each man there served his friend. So long it went thus, and soon thereafter worse, that some were well wrath, and blows they gave]; at first they

<sup>1</sup> softe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þa while þa heo ilæsten.  
 and þa bollen feoluerne ⁊  
 mid wine iuulled.  
 & feodden<sup>1</sup> þa uufte ⁊  
 uufden to sweoren.  
 þa leop þer forð a ȝung mon ⁊  
 þe ut of Winet-londe com.  
 he wes iȝefen Arðuf ⁊  
 to halden to ȝifle.  
 he wes Rumarettes fune ⁊ 10  
 þaf kiges of Winette.  
 þuf feide þe cniht þere ⁊  
 to Arðure kinge.  
 Lauerd Arður buh raðe ⁊  
 into þine bure.  
 and þi quene mid þe ⁊  
 & þene mæies<sup>2</sup> cuðe.  
 & we þis comp scullen to-delen ⁊  
 wið þas uncuðe kempen.  
 Æfne þan worde ⁊  
 he leop to þan borde.  
 þer leien þa cniuef ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

wile þat hii laften.  
 þo nemen hii þe bollef ⁊  
 i-fulled mid wine.  
 and suppe mid þā fufte ⁊  
 starcliche fohte.  
 þo leop þar forþ a ȝong man ⁊  
 þat vt of Wýnet-londe com.  
 he was Rumaret his sone ⁊  
 þe riche king of Wýnet.  
 he was bi-take Arthur ⁊ 10  
 in stede of hostage.  
 þus saide þe cniht þare ⁊  
 to Arthur þan kinge.  
 Louerd Arthur wende a-non ⁊  
 into þine boure.  
 and þi cwene mid þe ⁊  
 and þine cnihtes leue.  
 and we þis fiht solle to-deale ⁊  
 wiþ þis on-coupe leode.  
 20 Efne þan worde ⁊  
 he leop to þan borde.  
 þare leyen þe cniues ⁊

threw 'the' loaves, 'the' while that they lasted, 'and the silver [then took they the] bowls, filled with wine, and afterwards [with] the fists approached to necks [fought strongly]. Then leapt there forth a young man, who came out of Winetland; he was given to Arthur 'to hold as [instead of] hostage; he was 'Rumareths [Rumaret his] son, the [rich] king of Winet. Thus said the knight there to Arthur [the] king: "Lord Arthur, go 'quickly [anon] into thy chamber, and thy queen with thee, and thy 'known relatives [dear knights], and we shall decide this 'combat [fight] against 'these [this] foreign 'warriors [people]." Even with the words he leapt to the board, where lay the knives before the sovereign; three

<sup>1</sup> feoððen?<sup>2</sup> At first written mæidenes, but den expuncted.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

bi-foren þan leod-kinge.  
 þreo cnifes he igrap ⁊  
 and mid þan anæ he fmat.  
 i þere fwere þe cniht ⁊

þe ærest bigon þat ilke fihht.  
 þat his hefued i þene flor ⁊ [f. 131<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 hælte to grunde.

Sone he sloh ænne oðer ⁊

þes ilke þeines broðer.

ær þa sweordes comen ⁊

seouene he afelde.

þer wes fæht swiðe græt ⁊

ælc mon oðer smat.

þer wes muchel blod gute ⁊

balu wes an hirede.

þa com þe king buȝen ⁊

ut of his buren.

mid him ā hūðred beornen ⁊

mid helmen & mid burnen.

ælc bar ā his riht hond ⁊

whit stelene broð<sup>1</sup>.

þa cleopede Arður ⁊

aðeleft kingen.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

bi-vore þan leod-kinge.

þreo cnifes he igrop ⁊

and mid þan one hefmat þan cniht

þat ereft bi-gan þat fihht.

þat his hefued in þan flor ⁊

fol to þan grunde.

Sone he sloh an oþer ⁊

þis ilke cniht his broþer.

here þe fweorðes come ⁊

fouene he afulde.

þar waf fihht swiþe gret ⁊

ech oþerne smot.

þar waf mochel blod iȝote ⁊ [f. 105<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]

wowe þar was riue.

þo com þe king bouwe ⁊

vt of his boure.

mid him an hundred cnihtes ⁊

mid helmes and mid brunief.

ech bar on his riht hond ⁊

one stlene<sup>2</sup> brond.

þo cleope Arthur ⁊

boldest alre king.

knives he grasped, and with the one he smote the knight 'in the neck that first began the 'same' fight, so that his head on the floor fell to [the] ground. Soon he slew another, this same 'thanes [knight his] brother: ere the swords came, seven he felled. There was fight exceeding great each 'man' smote other; there was much blood shed, mischief was 'among the folk [there rife]! Then approached the king out of his chamber; with him an hundred 'nobles [knights], with helms and with burnies; each bare in his right hand [a] 'white' steel brand. Then called Arthur, 'noblest [boldest of all] kings: "Sit ye, 'sit ye [down] quickly, each man on his

<sup>1</sup> brond?<sup>2</sup> R. stlene.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Sitteð fitteð swiðe :  
 elc mon bi his liue.  
 and wa swa þat nulle don :  
 he scal for-demed beon.  
 Nimeð me þene ilke mon :  
 þa þif feht ærst bigon.  
 & doð wiððe an his sweore :  
 & draȝeð hine to ane more.  
 & doð hine in an ley<sup>1</sup> uen :  
 þer he scal ligen. 10  
 And nimeð al his nexte cun :  
 þa ȝe maȝen iuiden.  
 and swēȝeð of þa hafden :  
 mid breoden eouwer sweorden.  
 þa wifmeu þa ȝe maȝen ifinden :  
 of his nexten cunden.  
 kerueð of hire neose :  
 & heore wlite ga to lose.  
 and swa ich wulle al fordon : [c.2.]  
 þat cū þat he of com. 20  
 And ȝif ich auere mare :  
 seoððen ihere.  
 þat æi of mine hirede :

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xlii.

Sitteþ a-dun swiþe :  
 ech man bi his liue.  
 and wo se nele þat don :  
 he fal beo for-demed.  
 Nimeþ me þan ilke man :  
 þat þis fiht ereft bi-gan.  
 and doþ a-boute his fwere :  
 one raketeȝe.  
 and draȝeþ hine to on laȝe fen :  
 þar he fal luggen.  
 And nimeþ al his nexfte cun :  
 þat ȝe maȝe finde.  
 and fwengeþ of þe hefdes :  
 mid brode ȝoure sweordeſ.  
 þe winnimen þat ȝe findeþ :  
 of his nexfte cunne.  
 kerueþ of hure noſe :  
 and ſo hi folle go to loſe.  
 and þus ich wolle fordon :  
 þat he of com. 20  
 An ȝeſ ich ſupþe i-here :  
 eni man fire.  
 more of þiſſe fihte :

life! And whoso will not that do, he shall be put to death. Take ye me the same man, that this fight first began, and put 'withy on [a chain about] his neck, and draw him to 'a moor, and put him in' a low fen; there he shall lie. And take ye all his nearest kin, that ye may find, and strike off the heads of *them* with your broad swords; the women that ye 'may' find of his nearest kindred, carve ye off their noses, and 'let their beauty [so they shall] go to destruction; and 'so [thus] I will 'all' destroy 'the race' that he of came. And if I 'evermore' subsequently hear, 'that any of my folk, of high or of low, eft arear strife on account of

<sup>1</sup> At first written waje, but corrected by a second hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

of heȝe na of loȝe.  
 of piſſen ilke flehte ⁊  
 æft fake are<sup>2</sup>.

ne ſculde him neoðer gon fore ⁊  
 gold ne na gærſume.

hæh horf no hære ſcrud ⁊

þat he ne ſculde beon ded.  
 orðer<sup>3</sup> mid horſen to-draȝen ⁊

þat iſ elches ſwiken laȝen.

Brigeð þene halidom ⁊ 10

and ich wulle ſwerien þer on.

ſwa ȝe ſcullen cnihtes ⁊

þe weorē at piſſen fihte.

eorles & beornes ⁊

þat ȝe hit breken nulleð.

Ærft ſweor Arður ⁊

aðeleſt kingen.

seoððen ſworen eorles ⁊

seoððen ſweoren beornes.

seoððen ſweoren þeines ⁊ 20

seoððen ſweoren ſweines.

þat heo nauere mare ⁊

þe ſake nulde arere.

eorl oþer cnihtef<sup>1</sup>.

ne ſal him noþer go vore ⁊  
 gold noþer garifome.

þat he ne ſal be to-draȝe ⁊

þat hiſ ſwiken laȝe.

Bringeþ þane halidom ⁊

and wolle ich ſwerie þar on.

and ſo ȝe ſolle cnihtes ⁊

þat weren at þan fihte.

eorles an cnihtef ⁊

þat ȝe hit ibreke nolleþ. [c.2.]

**A** Reft ſwor Arthur ⁊  
 boldeſt alre kinge.

ſupþe ſworen eorles ⁊

ſupþe ſworen cnihtes.

þat hii neuere more ⁊

þe fake nolde arere.

this same slaughter [any man meddle more of this fight, *be he* earl or knight], shall go for (ransom) him neither, gold 'nor any [neither] treasure, 'fine horse nor war-garment,' that he 'should [shall] not be 'dead, or with horses' drawn in pieces,—that is of 'each' traitor *the* law! Bring *ye* the reliques, and I will swear thereon; [and] so, knights, shall ye, that were at 'this [the] fight, earls and 'barons [knights], that ye will not it break.'" First swore Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings; then swore earls, then swore 'barons [knights]; 'then swore thanes, then swore swains,' that they nevermore the strife would arear. Men took all the dead, and 'carried

<sup>1</sup> cnihte?<sup>2</sup> arere?<sup>3</sup> R. oðer.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Me nom alle þa dede :  
 & to leirstowe heom ladden.  
 Seoððen me bleou bemen :  
 mid swiðe murie dremē.  
 weoren him leof weoren him læd<sup>1</sup> :  
 elc þer feng water & clæd<sup>2</sup>.  
 & seoððen adun setē :  
 sæhte to borden.  
 al for Arðure sæȝe : [f. 132. c. 1.]  
 aðeleft kingen.  
 Birles þer þūrgen<sup>3</sup> :  
 gleomē þer fungen.  
 harpen gūnē dremen :  
 duȝeðe wes on felē.  
 þus fulle feouenihȝ :  
 wes þā hirede idiht.  
 Seoððen hit seið in þere tale :  
 þe king ferde to Cornwale.  
 þer him com to anā :  
 þat wæs a crafti weorc-man.  
 and þene king imette :  
 and feiere hine grætte.  
 Hail seo þu Arður :

Me nam alle þe deade :  
 and leide ȝam on erþe.  
 Suppe me bleu þe bumef :  
 mid swiþe murie dremes.  
 were ȝam leof were ȝam loþ :  
 alle hii fenge water and cloþ.  
 and suppe adun sete :  
 alle to þan borde.  
 for Arthures heȝe :  
 boldest alre kinge.  
 Borlef þar þronge :  
 glemen þar souge.

þus folle foue nih. :  
 waf al þat folk idiht.  
 S..þe hit saiþ in þare ta... :  
 þe king wende to Corn...le.  
 þar him com to an... :  
 þat was a crafti man.  
 and þane king mette :  
 and faire hine grette.  
 Hayl beo þou Arthur :

[laid] them 'to burial-place [in earth]. Afterwards men blew [the] trumpets, with noise exceeding merry; were 'he [they] lief, were 'he [they] loath, 'each there [all they] took water and cloth, and then sate down 're-couiled [all] to [the] board, 'all' for Arthurs dread, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings. Cupbearers there thronged, gleemen there sung; 'harps gan resound, *the* people was in joy.' Thus full seven nights was [all] the folk treated. Afterwards it saith in the tale, *that* the king went to Cornwall; there came to him anon *one* that was a crafty 'work'-man, and met the king, and fair him greeted:—"Hail be thou, Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest

<sup>1</sup> læd?<sup>2</sup> clæð?<sup>3</sup> þrūgen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

aðeleſt kinge.  
 Ich æm þin aȝe mon ⁊  
 moni lond ich habbe þurh-gan.  
 ich cō of treo-wrekes<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 wunder feole craftes.  
 Ich iherde fuggen ⁊  
 bi-ȝeonde fæ neowe tidende.  
 þ̃ þine cnihtef ⁊  
 at þine borde gunnen fihte.  
 a midewinteres dæi ⁊ 10  
 moni þer feollen.  
 for heore mūchele mode ⁊  
 morð-gomēn wrohten.  
 and for heore hehȝe cunne ⁊  
 ælc wolde beon wið inne.  
 Ah ich þe wulle wurche ⁊  
 a bord ſwiðe hende.  
 þat þer maȝen fetten to ⁊  
 fixtene hundred & ma.  
 al turn abutē ⁊ 20  
 þat nan ne beon wið utē.  
 wið uten and wið inne ⁊  
 mō to-ȝæines monne.

boldeſt alre kinge.  
 Ich ham þin owene man ⁊  
 many lond ich habbe þorþ gon.  
 ich con of treo-workes ⁊  
 mani wonder craftes.  
 Ich ihorde tidȝnges ⁊  
 of þine bolde cnihtef.  
 þat hii þat<sup>2</sup> þine borde ⁊  
 folde ſake arere.  
 in on midewȝnteres dȝy ⁊  
 manye þar follen.  
  
 for hire heȝe cunne ⁊  
 ech wolde beo wiþ ine.  
 Ac ich þe wolle wirche ⁊ [f. 106.c.1.]  
 a bord ſwiþe hende.  
 þat þar maȝe fitte to ⁊  
 fixtene hondred and mo.  
 al teurne aboute ⁊  
 þat non ne beo wiþ oute.

of all] kings! I am thine own man; through many land I have gone; I know of tree-works (carpentry) 'wondrous many [many wondrous] crafts. I heard say 'beyond *the* sea new' tidings, 'that thy knights gan to fight [of thy bold knights, that they should strife arear] at thy board; on [a] mid-winters day many there fell; 'for their mickle mood (pride) wrought murderous play, and' for their high lineage each would be within. But I will thee work (make) a board exceeding fair, that thereat may sit sixteen hundred and more, all turn about, *so* that none be without; 'without and within, man against man.' [And] when thou wilt ride, with thee thou mightest it carry,

<sup>1</sup> treo-workes?<sup>2</sup> at?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Whenne þu wult riden ⁊	And wane þou wolt ride ⁊
wið þe þu miht hit leden.	mid þe þou miht hit leade.
and settē hit whar þu wulle ⁊ [c. 2.]	and setten it ware þou wolle ⁊
after þine iwille.	after þine wille.
and ne dert þu nauere adrede ⁊	þanne ne þert þou neuere adrede ⁊
to þere worlde longen.	to þare worle longe.
þ æuere æine modi cniht ⁊	þat euere eni modi cniht ⁊
at þine borde makie fiht.	at þine borde makie fiht.
for þer scal þe hehþe ⁊	for þar fal þe heþe ⁊
beon æfne þan loþe.	10 be efne to þan lowe.
Timber me lete biwinnen ⁊	Tymme <sup>1</sup> me lette bringe ⁊
and þat beord bi-ginnen.	and þat bord bi-gynne.
to feouwer wikene uirfte ⁊	in four wekene firfte ⁊
þat wrec <sup>2</sup> wes iuorðed.	þat worc was ihended.
To ane heþe dæie ⁊	He lette in one daiþe ⁊
þat hired wes isomned.	al þat folk gaderi.
and Arður him feolf beh ⁊	and Arthur him wende ⁊
fone to þan borde.	a-non to þan borde.
and hehte alle his cnihtes ⁊	and hehte alle his cnihtes ⁊
to þan borde forð rihtes.	20 to borde forþ rihtes.
þo alle weoren ifeten ⁊	þo alle weren ifete ⁊
cnihtes to heore mete.	cnihtes to þare mete.
þa spæc ælc wið oðer ⁊	þo spæc ech wiþ oþer ⁊
alfe hit weore hif broðer.	afe hit were broþers.

and set it where thou wilt, after thy will; 'and [then] thou needest never fear, to the worlds end, that ever any moody knight at thy board may make fight, for there shall the high be even with the low.'" Timber was caused to be brought, and the board to be begun; in four weeks time the work was completed. 'At a high day the folk was assembled [He caused on a day all the folk to be gathered], and Arthur him 'self' approached 'soon [anon] to the board, and ordered all his knights to 'the' board forth-right. When all were seated, knights to their meat, then spake each with other, as if it

<sup>1</sup> tymber?<sup>2</sup> were?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

alle heo feten abutē ⁊  
 nef<sup>2</sup> þer nan wið uten.  
 Æuereælches cunnes cniht ⁊  
 þere wes swiðe wel idiht.  
 alle heo weoren bi ane ⁊  
 þe hehþe & þa laþe.  
 ne mihten þer nan ȝelpē ⁊  
 for oðere kunnes ſcencen.  
 oðer hiſ iueren ⁊

þe at þan beorde weoren. 10

þis wes þat ilke bord ⁊  
 þat Bruttes of ȝelpēð.  
 and fugeð feole cunne leſinge ⁊  
 bi Arðure þan kinge.  
 Swa deð auer alc mon ⁊  
 þe oðer luuien ne<sup>3</sup> con.  
 ȝif he iſ him to leof ⁊ [c. 132<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 þenne wule he liȝen.  
 and ſuggen on him wurð-ſcipe ⁊  
 mare þenne he beon wurðe. 20  
 ne beo he no swa luðer mon ⁊  
 þat hiſ freond him wel ne on.  
 Æft ȝif ð uolke ⁊

alle hii fete wiþboute<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 nas þar non wiþ vte.  
 Euereche cunnes cniht ⁊  
 þar was wel i-diht.  
 alle bi one ⁊  
 þe hehe an þe lowe.

þis was þat ilke bord ⁊  
 þat Bruttes of cleopieþ.  
 and ſeggeþ mani leſinge ⁊  
 bi Arthur þan kinge.  
 So wole ech man ⁊  
 þat oþer louie can.  
 ȝef he hiſ him to leof ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 þanne wole he leȝe.

and ſegge on him worſipe ⁊  
 more þan he hiſ worþe.

were 'his brother [brothers]; all they sate about; was there none without. Every sort of knight was there exceeding well disposed; all 'they were' by one (seated separately), the high and the low; 'might none there boast of other kind of drink other *than* his comrades, that were at the board.' This was the same board that Britons 'boast [speak] of, and say many 'sorts of' leasing, respecting Arthur the king. So 'doth every [will each] man, that *another* can love; if he is to him too dear, then will he lie, and say of him more honor than he is worth; 'no man is he so wicked that his friend will not act well to him. Eft if among folk enmity areareth

<sup>1</sup> aboute?<sup>2</sup> ne, *pr. m.*<sup>3</sup> Redundant?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

feond-scipe arereð.

an æuer æi time ⁊

bitweone twō monnen.

me con bi þan læðe ⁊

lafinge fuggen.

þeh he weore þe bezste mon ⁊

þe æuere æt at borde.

þe mon þe him weore lað ⁊

him cuðe laft findē.

Ne al soh ne al lef ⁊

þat leod-scopes fingeð.

ah þif if þat soððe ⁊

bi Arðure þan kinge.

Nes næuer ar swulc king ⁊

swa duhti þurh alle þing.

for þat soðe stod<sup>1</sup> a þan writen ⁊

hu hit if iwurðen.

ord frō þan ænden ⁊

of Ardure<sup>2</sup> þan kinge.

no mare no laffe ⁊

buten alse his laȝen weoren.

Ah Bruttes hine luuedē swiðe ⁊

&amp; ofte him on liȝeð.

Ac euere bi þan loþe ⁊

harm me can finde.

þoh he were þe beste man ⁊

þat euere heat at borde.

to wam þat he his loþ ⁊

he can him laft finde.

10 Nis noht al soþ ne al les ⁊

þat many men seggeþ.

ac þis his þat soþe ⁊

bi Arthur þan kinge.

Nas neuere non foch king ⁊

so mihti þorh alle þing.

for þat soþe his iwrete ⁊

ou hit his i-worþe.

orde fram þan ende ⁊

of Arthur þan kinge.

Ac Bruttes hine louede ⁊

and lome of him leȝede.

in ever any time between two men,' [But ever] men can 'say leasing [find harm] of the hateful *one*, though he were the best man that ever ate at board; 'the man that to him were [to whom that he is] loath, [he] can him last find! [It is] not all sooth nor all falsehood that 'minstrels sing [many men say]; but this is the sooth respecting Arthur the king. Was never 'ere' such king, so 'doughty [mighty] through-all things! For the sooth 'stands in the writings [is written] how it is befallen, from beginning to the end, of Arthur the king, 'no more nor less but as his laws (*or* acts) were.' But Britons loved him 'greatly,' and oft of him 'lie [lied], and say many things re-

<sup>1</sup> stond?<sup>2</sup> R. Arðure.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

and fuggeð feole þinges ⁊  
 bi Arðure þan kinge.  
 þat næuere nes iwurðen ⁊  
 a þiffere weorlde-richen.  
 inoh he mai fuggen ⁊  
 þe soð wule uremmen.  
 feolcuðe þinges ⁊  
 bi Arðure kinge.  
 þa wes Arður swiðe heh ⁊  
 hif hired swiðe hende. [c.2.] 10  
 þ̃ nas na cniht wel itald ⁊  
 no of hif tuhlen<sup>1</sup> swiðe bald.  
 inne Wales no in Ænglelond ⁊  
 inne Scot<sup>2</sup> no in Irland.  
 in Normandie no ine France ⁊  
 inne Flandres no inne Denemarc.  
 no in nauere none londe ⁊  
 þe a þeos halfe Mungiu stondeð.  
 þet weoren ihalde god cniht ⁊  
 no his deden itald oht. 20  
 bute of<sup>4</sup> he cuðe of Ardure<sup>5</sup> ⁊  
 & of aðelen hif hirede.  
 hif wepnē and hif weden ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and seggeþ fale þingef ⁊  
 bi Arthur þan kinge.  
 þat neuer nas i-worþe ⁊  
 in þisse worle-riche.  
 inoh he may finde ⁊  
 þat soþ wole segge.  
 of maný cunnes þing ⁊  
 bi Arthur þan kinge.  
**Þ**O was Arthur swiþe heh ⁊  
 his folk swiþe hende.  
 þar nas non cniht wel itold ⁊  
 in Wales ne in Englelond ⁊  
 inc Normandie nen<sup>3</sup> Franche ⁊  
 in Flandref ne in Denemarche.  
 ne in neuere none londe ⁊  
 þat a þis half Muntioye stondeþ.  
 þat were iholde god cniht ⁊  
 ne his dedes itold oht.  
 bote he couþe of Arthur ⁊

specting Arthur the king, that never was transacted in this worlds realm !  
 Enow may he 'say [find], who *the* sooth will 'frame [say], 'marvellous things  
 [of many kind of thing] respecting Arthur [the] king. Then was Arthur  
 most high, his folk most fair ; 'so that' [there] was no knight well esteemed,  
 'nor of his manners (*or* deeds) much assured,' in Wales nor in England, 'in  
 Scotland nor in Ireland,' in Normandy nor in France, in Flanders nor in  
 Denmark, nor in ever any land, that on this side of Muntgiu standeth, that  
 were esteemed good knight, nor his deeds accounted (*brave or* aught), unless  
 he could 'discourse [say any speech] of Arthur, 'and of his noble court, his

<sup>1</sup> tuhtlen ?<sup>4</sup> *Redundant* ?<sup>2</sup> Scotland ?<sup>5</sup> R. Arðure.<sup>3</sup> ne in ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

&amp; hiȝ hof-ledē.

suggen and fingen ⁊  
of Arðure þan ginge.

and of hiȝ hired-cnihten ⁊

and of heȝe heore mihten.

and of heore riche-dome ⁊

and hu wel hit heom bicomē.

þeñe weore he wilcume ⁊

a þiffere weorlde-richen.

come þer he come ⁊

10

and þeh he weore i Rome.

al þat iherde ⁊

of Ardure<sup>1</sup> telle.

heom þuhte muchel feollic ⁊

of felen þan kinge.

And swa hit wes iuuren iboded ⁊

ær he iboren weoren.

*Merlin.*

swa him sæide Merlin ⁊

þe witeȝe wes mære.

þat a king ſculde cuime ⁊

20

of Vðere Pendragone.

þat gleomen ſculden wurchē burd ⁊

of þaȝ kiges<sup>2</sup> breoften.

and þer to fitten ⁊

eni ſpelle fegge. [L 106<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]

and of hiȝ ſtronge cnihtes ⁊

and of here mihtef.

and of hire richedome ⁊

and ou wel hit ȝam bi-come.

þanne were he welcome ⁊

in euereche riche.

come ware he come ⁊

þeh he were at Rome.

alle þat ihorde ⁊

of Arthur telle.

heom þohte mochel wonder ⁊

of ſele þan kinge.

Ac al þiȝ was iboded ⁊

here he i-bore were.

so him ſayde Merlȝn ⁊

þat witti was an erþe.

þat þar ſolde come ſoch a ſone ⁊

of Vther Pendragone.

þat gleomen ſolde wirche bord ⁊

of þiȝ kingef breofte.

weapons, and his garments, and his horsemen; say and sing of Arthur the young, and of his [strong] knights, and of their 'great' might, and of their wealth, and how well it them became. Then were he welcome in this world [in every] realm, come whereso he came, and though he were at Rome; all that heard of Arthur tell, it seemed to them great 'marvel' [wonder] of the good king! And so it [But all this] was 'fore'boded, ere he were born; so said him Merlin, that was 'a prophet great [witty on earth], that 'a king [such a son there] should come of Uther Pendragon; that gleemen should make a board of this king's breast, and thereto should sit poets most good,

<sup>1</sup> R. Arðure.<sup>2</sup> R. kinges.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

scopef swiðe fele. [f. 133. c. 1.]

and eten heore wullen ⁊

and eaten hire<sup>1</sup> ⁊

ær heo þenne fufden.

hi þanne wende.

and winfcenches ut teon ⁊

of þeos kinges tungen.

and drinken &amp; dreomen ⁊

daies &amp; nihtes.

þif gomen heom sculde i-laften ⁊ þif folde i-laſte ⁊

to þere weorlde longe.

to þare worle lange.

And ȝet him ſeide Marlin ⁊ 10

And ȝet he ſaide more ⁊

mare þat wes to comene<sup>2</sup>.

Merlȝn þe wiſe.

þat al þat he lokede on ⁊

þat al þat he lokede on ⁊

to foten him ſculde buȝen.

to him folde aboue.

þa ȝet him ſeide Mærlin ⁊

And ȝet ſaide Merlȝn ⁊

a fellic þe wes mare.

þat waſ more.

þat ſculde beon unimete care ⁊

þat folde beo onimete care ⁊

of þas kinges forð-fare.

after þes kingef forþ-fare.

And of þas kinges ende ⁊

And of hiſ eande ⁊

nulle hit na Brut ileue.

nele no Brut ileue.

buten hit beon þe leſte dæð ⁊ 20

bote hit beo þan laſte dæg ⁊

at þā muchele dome.

at þare mochele dome.

þenne ure drihte ⁊

wane oure drihte ⁊

demeð alle uolke.

alle wole deame.

and eat their will, ere they thence departed, 'and wine-draughts out draw from this kings tongue, and drink and revel day and night'; this 'game' should last 'them' to the worlds end. And yet said him Merlin more that was to come [he said more, Merlin the wise], that all that he looked on 'to his feet' to him should bow. 'The [And] yet said 'him' Merlin, 'a marvel' 'that [what] was greater, that *there* should be immoderate care (sorrow) 'at [after] this kings departure. And of 'this kings [his] end (death) will no Briton believe 'it,' except it be the last death [day], at the great doom, when our Lord judgeth [will judge] all 'folk'. 'Else [Otherwise] we

<sup>1</sup> Two words belonging to this and the succeeding line are wanting.

<sup>2</sup> numene, *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Ælles ne cunne we demē ⁊  
 of Arðures deðen.  
 for he feolf sæide ⁊  
 to sele hif Brutten.  
 suð inne Cornwale ⁊  
 þer Walwain wes for-faren.  
 and him feolf wes for-wūded ⁊  
 wunder ane swiðe.  
 þat he uaren wolde ⁊  
 into Aualune.  
 in to þan æit-londe ⁊  
 to Argante þere hende.  
 for heo sculde mid haleweie ⁊  
 helen hif wunden.  
 and þeñe he weore al hal ⁊  
 he wolde sone com̄ heom<sup>1</sup>.  
 þis ilefde Bruttes ⁊  
 þet he wule cumen þus. [c. 2.]  
 & lokieð a whenne ⁊  
 he cume to his londe.  
 swa he heom bihahte ⁊  
 ar he heonne wende.  
 Arður wes an weorlde ⁊  
 wif kīg and riche.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Oþer weief ne con we telle ⁊  
 of þes kinges deaþe.  
 for he him feolf faide ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 to gode his Bruttus.  
 þar he stod in Cornwale ⁊  
 þar Wawein waf for-fare.  
 and him seolf was for-wounded ⁊  
 wonderliche swiþe.  
 þat he vare wolde ⁊  
 10 in to Auelun.  
 in to þan yllonde ⁊  
 to Argane þare hende.  
 for ȝeo folde mid halewei ⁊  
 heale his wondes.  
 and wane he hol were ⁊  
 and<sup>2</sup> he wolde aȝen come here.  
 þis ileueþ Bruttus ⁊  
 þat he wole come þus.  
 and lokeþ and waiteþ ⁊  
 20 wane he come to londe.  
 afe he ȝam bi-hehte ⁊  
 are he fram ȝam wende.

**A** Rthur was on worle ⁊  
 wis king and riche.

cannot 'deem [tell] of 'Arthurs [this kings] death; for he [him]self said  
 to his good Britons, 'south [where he stood] in Cornwall, where Walwain  
 was slain, and himself was wounded wondrously much, that he would fare  
 into Avalon, into the island, to 'Argante [Argane] the fair; for she should  
 with balm heal his wounds; and when he were 'all' whole, he would 'soon  
 [again] come 'to them [here]. This 'believed [believe] *the* Britons, that he  
 will thus come, and look 'ever [and expect] when he shall come to 'his'  
 land, as he promised them, ere he 'hence [from them] went. Arthur was in

<sup>1</sup> ham? hom? i.e. home. Cf. v. 23124.<sup>2</sup> Redundant?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 12.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

god mon and grið-ful ⁊  
 hiȝ gumen hine luueden.  
 Cnihtes he hafede prute ⁊  
 and græte on heore mode.  
 & ſpeken to þan kinge ⁊  
 of feollichen þinge.  
 and þuȝ þat hired cleopede ⁊  
 to heȝe þan kige.  
 Lauerd Arður faren we ⁊  
 to Francene riche.  
 and iwinne al þat lond ⁊  
 to þire aȝere hond.  
 ſlemen alle þa Freĩſcen ⁊  
 heore king feollen.  
 alle þa caſtles bonien ⁊  
 and ſetten heom to mid Brutten.  
 & rixlien a þere riche ⁊  
 mid rehȝere ſtrengðe.  
 þa andſwarede Arður ⁊  
 aȝeleſt kinge.  
 Eouwer wille ich wulle dō ⁊  
 ah ær ich wulle to Norweiē.  
 and ich wulle mid me ledē ⁊  
 Lot mine oðem.

god man and griþ-fol ⁊  
 his men hine louede.  
 Cnihtes he hadde proute ⁊  
 and of grete mode.  
 and ſpeken to þan kinge ⁊  
 of felliche þinge.  
 Louerd Arthur wende we ⁊  
 to Francene riche.  
 and iwinne al þat lond ⁊  
 to þin owene hond.  
 fleome þe France ⁊  
 and hire king falle.  
 alle hire caſtles ⁊  
 ſette mid Bruttus.  
 and rixli in þan lond ⁊  
 mid boldere ſtrengþe.  
 þo anſwerede Arthur ⁊  
 wiſeſt alre kinge.  
 Euere we ſolle wel don ⁊ [f.107.c.1.]  
 ac her ich wolle to Norewei teon.  
 and ich wolle mid me leade ⁊  
 min oþom Loth þe kene.

*the* world wiſe king and powerful; good man and peaceful; his men him loved. Knights he had proud, and 'great in their [of great] mood; and *they* ſpake to the king of marvellous thing; 'and thus the aſſemblage ſaid to the high king': "Lord Arthur, go we to *the* realm of France, and win all the land to thine own hand; drive away 'all' the French, [and] their king ſlay; all 'the [their] caſtles 'occupy, and' ſet (garrison) 'them' with Britons; and rule in the 'realm [land] with 'ſierce [bold] ſtrength. Then answered Arthur, 'nobleſt of [wiſeſt of all] kings: "'Your will I will [Ever we ſhall well] do, but ere (previously) I will [go] to Norway; and I will lead with me Loth [the keen] my brother-in-law; 'he [who] is Walwains



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

he if Wælwayne<sup>1</sup> fader ⁊  
 þa ich wel luuie.

For beoð icumen of Norweiȝe ⁊  
 niwe tidende.

*Sich[elin.]* þat Sichelin king þer if ded ⁊  
 his duȝeðen bileued.  
 & hæ<sup>2</sup> hafeð al his kineriche ⁊  
 bi-queðe her Loððe. [f.133<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]

For þe kīg if al biðæled ⁊  
 sune & eke dohteren. 10

and Lot if his fuster sune ⁊  
 þe bet him scal iwurðe.  
 for ich hine wulle in Norwæȝe ⁊  
 neowe king makien.  
 and hine wæl lere ⁊  
 to witeȝen wel þa leoden.

And þenne ich þuf habbe idon ⁊  
 ich wullen seoððen cumen ham.  
 and ȝarkien mine ferde ⁊  
 & faren into France. 20  
 and ȝif þe king me stont wið ⁊  
 and nulle ȝeornen mi grið.

þat his Waweȝnes fader ⁊  
 wan ich moche louie.

For me beoþ tȝdinge icome ⁊  
 vt of þan londe.

þat þe king of Cifille<sup>3</sup> his dead ⁊

and eȝr naueþ he nanne.

Ac Loth his is softer sone ⁊  
 þat lond wole<sup>4</sup> to him . . . e.  
 and ich wolle in .orweȝe ⁊  
 newe king makie.

And wane ich þus habbe idon ⁊  
 ich wole come aȝein hom.  
 an ȝarki mine ferde ⁊  
 and wenden in to France.  
 and ȝef þe king me stōd wiþ ⁊  
 and nele ȝeorne nan griþ.

father, whom I 'well [much] love. For 'new' tidings are come 'from Norway [to me out of the land], that Sichelin [the] king is 'there' dead, 'his people *has* left; and he hath ere bequeathed all his kingdom to Loth'. 'For the king is of all bereaved, son and eke daughter [and heir hath he none]; 'and [But] Loth is his sisters son,—'the better to him shall *it* befall,—for [the land *I* will to him give, and] I will make 'him' new king in Norway, 'and well instruct him to govern well the people.' And when I have done thus, I will 'afterwards [again] come home, and get ready my army, and pass into France; and if the king withstandeth me, and will not yearn 'my

<sup>1</sup> Wælnes, *pr. m.*

<sup>2</sup> he?

<sup>3</sup> Evidently a blunder.

<sup>4</sup> ich wole? giue?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

ich hine wulle mid fehte :  
 fallen to þan grunde.  
 Arður lette blawen :  
 hornes and bemen.  
 and lette beoden to sæ :  
 Bruttes swiðe balde.  
 Scipen he hæfde gode :  
 bi þere sæ flode.  
 fiftene hundred :  
 fufden from londe.  
 and fluȝen after þere sæ :  
 swulc heo fluht hafden.  
 & buhȝen in to Norwæȝe :  
 mid baldere strēȝden.  
 Sone swa heo comē :  
 hafne heo nomen.  
 mid muchelere strengðe :  
 ftepen a þa riche.  
 Arður fenden hiȝ fonde :  
 wide ȝeond þan londe.  
 & hæhte heom cumen sone :  
 and Lot habben to kinge.  
 & ȝif heo þat nolden :  
 alle heō he wolde a-flan.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ich wolle hine mid fihte :  
 falle to þā grunde.  
 Arthur lette blowe :  
 hornes and bumes.  
 and lette beden to féé :  
 cnihtes fwiȝe bolde.  
 Sipes he hadde gode :  
 bi þan féé flode.  
 fiftene hundred :  
 10 wende fram londe.  
 and wende in milde féé :  
 in to Noreweie.  
 Sone fo hii comen :  
 hauene hii nemen.  
 mid mochelere strengþe :  
 wenden in þan londe.  
 Arthur fende hiȝ fonde :  
 20 oueral þan londe. [c. 2.]  
 hehte ȝam come sone :  
 to Loth hire kinge.  
 and ȝef hii þat nolde :  
 he ȝam wolde a-cwelle.

[any] peace, I will fell him with fight to the ground." Arthur caused to be blown horns and trumpets, and caused to be summoned to *the sea* the Britons [knights] most bold. Ships he had good by the sea-flood; fifteen hundred pushed from *the* land, and flew along the [proceeded on *the* calm] sea, 'as if they had flight (wings), and bent *their course*' into Norway, 'with bold strength'. So soon as they came, they took haven; with mickle strength *they* stept (disembarked) on the 'realm [land]. Arthur sent his messengers 'wide over [over all] the land, 'and' ordered them to come soon, 'and have Loth for [to Loth, their] king; and if they would not that, he would 'slay [kill] them 'all'. Then [they] took their messengers, *the* Norwegian earls

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

þa nomen heore fonden ⁊  
 eorles Noreniffce.  
 and fenden to þan kingen ⁊  
 and hahten hine aȝain wenden.  
 & ȝif þu nult aȝæin faren ⁊  
 forhȝen þu ſcalt habben & kare.  
 for lōge bið auere ⁊  
 þat ne iwurð næuere.  
 þat we uncuðne mon ⁊  
 to kinge ſcullen hæbben. 10  
 For ȝif Sikelin if forð-faren ⁊  
 her beoð oðere icoren.  
 þe we maȝen bi vre iwille ⁊  
 hæbben to kinge.  
 & þif if þat foðe ⁊  
 niſ þer nā oðer.  
 oðer far þe awæiward ⁊  
 and wēd þe riht hamward.  
 oðer to dæi a ſeoueniht ⁊  
 þu ſcalt habben græt fiht. 20  
 þa eorlef Noreniffce<sup>3</sup> ⁊  
 nomen heom to ræde.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þo nem<sup>1</sup> hii hire ſonde ⁊  
 þe eorles of þan londe.  
 and ſende to þan kinge ⁊  
 and hehten him aȝen wende.  
 And bote þou aȝen fare ⁊  
 her þou ſalt habbe care.  
 for lang beoþ euere ⁊  
 þat ne worþ neuere.  
 þat we vncouþe man ⁊  
 to kinge wollep habbe.  
  
 þis his þat ſoþe ⁊  
 of vs naueſt þou non oþer.  
 oþer far þe a-weiward ⁊  
 oþer<sup>2</sup> wend þe riht hamward.  
 oþer to dai a ſoueniht ⁊  
 20 þou ſalt habbe ſwiþe ſtrang fiht.  
**Þ**E eorlef Noreiniſſe ⁊  
 nemen heom to-reade.

[the earls of the land], and sent to the king, and bade him back go,—  
 “And ‘if thou wilt not [unless thou] depart, thou shalt have [here] ‘sorrow  
 and’ care; for *so long as* is ever, that shall never come to pass, that we  
 ‘shall raise [will have] a foreign man for king. ‘For if Sichelin is departed  
 (dead), here are others choice, whom we may by our will raise to *be* king.  
 And’ this is the sooth; ‘there is [of us thou hast (wilt have)] no other;  
 either move thee awayward, and turn thee right homeward, either to-day  
 a se’nnight, thou shalt have ‘great [most strong] fight.” The Norwegian

<sup>1</sup> nemen ?<sup>2</sup> and ?<sup>3</sup> The last two words of this line are on an erasure, by second hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat king heo wolden habben ⁊  
 of feoluen heore cunden.  
 for al Sikelines quiden ⁊  
 sotſcipe heo heolden.  
 And ſwa longe ſwa beoð æuere ⁊  
 ne ſcal hit ſtonde næuere.

aþ we ſcullen nimen Riculf ⁊  
 þe if ſwiðe riche eorl.  
 and hebben hine to kinge ⁊  
 þiſ if uſ iqueme. 10  
 and fūmēn ure ferde ⁊  
 ȝeond al þiſſen ærde.  
 and faren to Arðure ⁊  
 & flemmen hine mid fehte.  
 & Lot we ſcullen fuſen ⁊  
 and flemē of london.  
 oðer we mid fehtē ⁊  
 ſculleð hine fallen. [f. 134. c. 1.]  
 Heo nom Riculfe ⁊  
 þene eorl of Norene. 20  
 and hefuen hine to kinge ⁊  
 þeh hit neore him noht icūde.  
 and ſumneden uerde ⁊  
 ȝeod Nornifce ærde.

wat king hii wolde habbe ⁊  
 of feoluere cunde.  
 ac al hire ſpeche ⁊  
 to ſot-ſipe ȝeode.

We ſolle nime Riculf ⁊  
 and hebben hine to kinge.  
 þat hiſ an eorl kene ⁊  
 to euerече neode.  
 and ſomni vre ferde ⁊  
 oueral þeſ erþe.  
 and wende to Arthur ⁊  
 and fleme hine mid fihte.  
 and Loth we ſollen fuſe ⁊  
 and fleme of londe.  
 oþer we mid fihte ⁊  
 hiſ cnihtef ſolle a-cwelle.  
 Al þiſ waſ i-don ⁊  
 aſe hii þare demde. [f. 107<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]

*Riculf.*

and ſomnede hire ferde ⁊  
 oueral þan erþe.

earls betook them to counsel, 'that a [what] king they would have of 'their' own race; 'for all Sichelins words they held *to be* [but all their speech went to] folly.—'And so long as is ever, it shall not ever stand! But' we shall take Riculf, who is [an] earl 'exceeding powerful [keen, at every need], and raise him to *be* king,—this is to us pleasing,'—and assemble our forces over all this country, and march *towards* Arthur, and defeat him with fight; and Loth we shall chase, and drive from land, or *else* we shall 'fell him [kill his knights] with fight.'" They took Riculf, the earl of Norway, and raised him to *be* king, though it were not to him by right [All this was done, as they there deemed]; and *they* assembled [their] host over

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

And Arður an his ende :  
 ȝuōd þat lond gō wende.  
 þat lond he þurh arnde :  
 burhȝes he uor-barnde.  
 æhte he nom inoh :  
 muche moncun he þer of-floh.  
 And Riculf him gon riðe :  
 to-ȝæines Arðure anan.  
 to-gædere heo fufden :  
 and veht heo bigunnen. 10  
 Bruttes buȝen heom to :  
 balu þer wes riue.  
 luken vt of ſcaþe :  
 ſweordes longe.  
 hefden fluȝen a þene uelde :  
 faluwede nebbes.  
 beorn aȝein beorne :  
 ſcaft ſette an breoſte.  
 burnen þer breken :  
 Bruttes biſie weoren. 20  
 bruſtleden ſceldes :  
 ſcalkes þer ueolen.  
 & ſwa al þene dæi-liht :  
 ilaſte þiſ muchele fiht.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

And Arthur þe wile :  
 in þan lond wende.  
 and hit þorh earnde :  
 and tounes for-barnde.  
 orf he nam inoh :  
 and moche folk he þare floh.  
 And Riculf cō ride :  
 to-ȝeines Arthure a-non.  
 to-gadere hii wende :  
 and fiht þar bi-gonne. 10  
 Bruttus ȝam wende to :  
 þar was wo riue.  
 drowen vt of ſeaþe :  
 ſweordes ſwiþe longe.  
 heuedes þar floȝe in felde :  
 falewede nebbes.  
 brunies þer breke :  
 20 Bruttus buſie were.  
 þus alle dai-liht :  
 ilaſte þat ſtronge fiht.

'Norways [all the] land. And Arthur 'on his part, over [the while in] the land 'gan march [marched]; 'the land he [and it] through passed, [and] *the* 'burghs [towns] 'he' consumed; 'goods [cattle] he took enow, [and] much folk he there slew. And Riculf gan 'him' ride against Arthur anon; together they came, and fight 'they [there] began. *The* Britons advanced to them,—woe there was rife! Swords [exceeding] long *they* 'plucked [drew] out of sheath; heads flew 'on the [there in] field; faces paled; 'man against man set shaft to breast'; burnies there brake; *the* Britons were busy; 'shivered shields, warriors there fell!' 'And so [Thus] all 'the' daylight lasted 'this great [the strong] fight; 'moved they east, moved they

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ferden heo æft ferden heo west ⁊ ferde ou hit verde ⁊	
þer Noreine wes þa wurfe.	
ferden heo suð ferden heo norð ⁊	
þe Norrene þer feollen.	þe Norreif euere folle.
Bruttus weoren balde ⁊	Bruttuf weren bolde ⁊
þa Noreine heo aqualden.	þe Norrene hii a-cwelde.
Noreinisc men þer feollen ⁊ [c.2.] fif and twenti þusend ⁊	fif and twenti þusend ⁊
fif and twenti þusend.	hii leide to þan grunde.
and Riculf king þer wes of-flaȝen ⁊	and Riculf king þar was of flaȝe ⁊
and idon of lif-dæȝen.	10 and idon of lif-dæȝe.
lutel þer eode to læue ⁊	lute he þare lefde ⁊
of þan leod-folke.	of þan ilke folke.
wulc swa hafuede þat wracche lif ⁊	and woche wrecchef hadde þat lif ⁊
ȝirde <sup>1</sup> Arðures grið.	hii ȝornde Arthur his grið.
Ardur <sup>2</sup> biſæh a Lot ⁊	þo cleopede Arthur ⁊
þe leof him wes swiðe.	Loth þat he louede.
and þuſ him cleopien agon ⁊	and þuſ him þare ſaide ⁊
Arður þe riçe mō.	to his oþom deore.
Lot wend hider to me ⁊	
þu art mi wine deore.	20
Her ich þe biteche ⁊	Here ich þe biteche ⁊

west, there was *it* the worse to *the* Norwegians; moved they south, moved they north [fare how*so* it fared] the Norwegians 'there [ever] fell. *The* Britons were bold, the Norwegians they killed; *the* Norwegian men there fell, [they laid to the ground] five and twenty thousand; and Riculf *the* king was there slain, and deprived of life-day; little there 'remained [he left] of 'the [that] folk; 'whoso had the wretched [and *those* wretches which had the] life, [they] yearned 'Arthurs [Arthur his] peace. Arthur 'looked on [then called] Loth, 'who was to him well dear [whom he loved], and thus 'gan to him to call, Arthur the rich man [said him there to his dear son-in-law]: "' Loth, wend hither to me, thou art my dear relative.' Here

<sup>1</sup> ȝirnde ?<sup>2</sup> R. Arður.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

al þas kineriche.  
 of me þu scalt halden<sup>1</sup>;  
 and habbē me to munde.  
 þa wes Walwāi þider icumen:  
 Lottes ældeste sune.  
 of Rome fram þan Pape:  
 þe Supplice wes ihate.  
 þa longe him wes dihte:  
 and makede hine to cnihte.  
 Wælle wel wes hit bitoȝen:<sup>10</sup>  
 þat Walwāi wes to monne iboren.  
 for Walwæin wes ful aȝelmod:  
 an ælche þeouwe he wes god.  
 he wes mete-cuſti:  
 and cniht mid þan bezfte.  
 Al Arðures hired:  
 wes swiðe ifurðed<sup>2</sup>.  
 for Walwaine þan kene:  
 þe icumen wes to hirede.  
 and for hiſ fader Lote:  
 þe iloten wes to kinge.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

al þis kineriche.  
 of me þou hit ſalt holde:  
 and habbe me in munde.  
 þo was Wowein þider icome:  
 Loth his eldeste sone.  
 fram Rome þan Pope:<sup>[c. 2]</sup>  
 þat Supplis was ihote.  
 he hadde þat child itaht:  
 and idobbid to cniht.  
 Wel wel was hit bi-toȝe:  
 þat Waweyn was to maune ibore.  
 for Woweyn was ædmod:  
 of eche þeue he was god.  
 he was mete-couſti:  
 and cniht mid þan beſte.  
 Alle þe cnihtes þorh him:  
 were ſwiþe ibalded.  
 20 and for his fader þinge:  
 þat hi-houe was to kinge.

I give to thee all this kingdom; of me thou shalt [it] hold, and have me for protector." Then was Walwain thither come, 'Loths [Loth his] eldest son; from the pope of Rome, who was named Supplice, 'who long had him brought up [he had the child instructed], and 'made him [dubbed] knight. Full well was it bestowed, that Walwain was born to be man, for Walwain was 'full noble-minded, in [gracious, of] each virtue (or quality) he was good; he was liberal, and knight with the best. All 'Arthurs folk was [the knights through him were] greatly emboldened, 'for Walwain the keen, that was come to the host'; and for his 'father Loth [fathers sake], who was 'chosen [raised] to be king. Then spake Arthur

<sup>1</sup> Apparently written habben at first.

<sup>2</sup> Originally written iforðen, but corrected by the same hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa spac Arður him wið ⁊ <sup>[[f. 134<sup>b</sup>.  
c. 1.]]</sup> þo spac Arthur Loth w..  
and hehte hine halden god grið. and bad hine holde god ....  
and hehte hine luuien ⁊

hif griðfulle leoden.

& þa grið nolden halden ⁊  
fallen heom to grunde.

þa ȝet cleopede Arður ⁊  
aðelest kingen.

Whær beo ȝe mine Bruttes ⁊

fareð nu forð rihtes. 10

ȝarkeð bi þan flode ⁊  
mine scipen gode.

Al duden þa cnihtes ⁊  
swa Arður heom hæhte.

þa þa scipen-weoren ȝaru ⁊  
Arður gon to sæ faren.

mid him he mon<sup>1</sup> his cnihtes ⁊  
his Noreniffce þeines.

and balden his Bruttes ⁊

and bah forð mid vðes. 20

and þe duhtie kīg ⁊

com to Denenarke<sup>2</sup>.

and þaie þat grið nolde holde ⁊  
legge heom to grunde.

þo faide Arthur ⁊  
to his cnihtes bolde.

ȝarkeþ bi þan flode ⁊  
mine fipes gode.

All. dude þe cnihtes ⁊  
afe Arthur ȝam hehte.

þo þe fipes were ȝare ⁊  
Arthur gan forþ fare.

mid him he nam forþrihtes ⁊  
his Noreine cnihtes.

and wende forþ in wilde féé.

in to Denemarche.

with 'him [Loth], and bade him hold good peace, 'and bade him love his peaceful people,' and [those] that would not hold peace, to 'fell [lay] them to ground. 'The yet called [Then said] Arthur, 'noblest of kings [to his knights bold]: "'Where be ye, my Britons? March ye now forth-right'; prepare ye by the flood my good ships." All did the knights as Arthur them ordered. When the ships were ready, Arthur gan 'to the sea [forth] fare; with him he took his 'knights [forth-right] his Norwegian 'thanes [knights], 'and his bold Britons'; and proceeded forth 'with the waves [in the wild sea]; 'and the doughty king came' [in]to

<sup>1</sup> nom?<sup>2</sup> R. Denemarke.



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

he lette flæn teldes ⁊  
 wide ȝeond þa feldes.  
 bemen he lette blawen ⁊  
 and his cume bodien.  
 þa wes inne Denemarke ⁊  
 a king of mucle mæhte.  
 [Æf]cil wes ihate ⁊  
 hext ouer Denene.  
 he isah þat Ardur<sup>1</sup> bi-won ⁊  
 al þat him wes on willen. 10  
 Æscil king hine biþohte ⁊  
 whæt he don mahte.  
 lað him wes to leofen ⁊  
 leouen his leoden.  
 He isah þat<sup>3</sup> strengðe ⁊  
 stonden he ne mahte.  
 aȝain Arðure ⁊  
 mid nauere nane compe. [c. 2.]  
 He sende gretinge ⁊  
 to Arðure kinge. 20  
 hundes & haukes ⁊  
 & swiðe gode horffes.  
 seoluer and ræd gold ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

he lette flean his teldes ⁊  
 oueral þan feldes.  
 þo was in Denemarche ⁊  
 a king of mochele mihte.  
 Ascil was ihote ⁊  
 þe hexste of þan londe.  
 he isah þat Arthur bi-wan ⁊  
 al þat he lokede an. 10  
 Ascil king bi-þohte ⁊  
 wat he don mhte<sup>2</sup>.  
 loþ him was leofse ⁊  
 leoue his cnihtes.  
 He isah þat mid strengþe ⁊  
 stonde he ne mihte. [£108.c.1.]

Denmark; he caused [his] tents to be pitched, 'wide over [over all] the fields; 'trumpets he caused to be blown, and his coming to be announced.' Then was in Denmark a king of much might; *he* was named Æscil, [the] highest 'over *the* Danes [of the land]; he saw that Arthur won all that 'was to him in will [he looked on]. Æscil *the* king bethought him what he might do; loath *it* was to him to lose his dear 'people [knights]. He saw that with strength he might not stand 'against Arthur, with ever any combat.' He sent greeting to Arthur [the] king; hounds and hawks, and horses exceeding 'good [fine]; silver and red gold, with prudent words. And yet

<sup>1</sup> R. Arður.<sup>2</sup> R. mihte.<sup>3</sup> þat mid ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

mid ræh-fulle<sup>1</sup> worden.  
 & ȝet dude mare ⁊  
 Æscil þe mære.  
 he fende to þan hæxten<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 of Arðures hireden.  
 and bad heom afdien him ⁊  
 to hæhȝen þan kingen.  
 þat he moſte hiſ mō bicumen ⁊  
 & to ȝiſle bitæchen hiſ ſune.  
 and ælche ȝere him ſēden ⁊ 10  
 gauel of hiſ londe.  
 ænne bæſt mid ifunde ⁊  
 from breorde to grunde.  
 of golde & of gæfume<sup>3</sup> ⁊  
 & of godliche pallen.  
 and ſeoððen he wolde ſweriē ⁊  
 ſwiken þat he nalden.  
 Þiſ iherden Arður ⁊  
 aðeleſt kingen.  
 þat Æſcil Denene king ⁊ 20  
 wolde beon hiſ vnderling.  
 buten ælche nihte<sup>4</sup> ⁊  
 he and alle hiſ cnihtes.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

mid red-folle wordes.  
 And ȝet he dude more ⁊  
 þe king of Denemarche.  
 he fende to þan hexſte ⁊  
 þat weren mid þā kinge.  
 and bad ȝam him helpe ⁊  
 to þan bolde kinge.  
 þat he moſte hiſ man bi-come ⁊  
 and take to hoſtage hiſ ſone.  
 and eche ȝer him fende ⁊  
 gauel of hiſ londe.  
 ane bot mid ifunde ⁊  
 fram toppe to þan grunde.  
 of gold and of garifome ⁊  
 and of riſhe palles.  
 and ſuppe ſwerie ich wolle ⁊  
 ſwike þat ich nolle.  
 Þiſ ihorde Arthur ⁊  
 boldeſt alre kinge.  
 þat Aſcil Denene king ⁊ 20  
 wolde beon hiſ onderling.  
 wiþ oute eni cnihte ⁊  
 for-lede to þan fihte.

[he] did more, Æscil the great [the king of Denmark]; he sent to the highest 'of Arthurs folk [that were with the king], and prayed them to 'intercede for [help] him with the 'noble [bold] king; that he might his man become, and deliver his son for hostage, and each year send him tribute of his land, a boat of gold and of treasure, and of rich garments, *filled from the top to the bottom*, in safety. And afterwards 'he would [I will] swear, that 'he would [I will] not prove false. Arthur heard this, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings, that Æscil, king of *the* Danes, would be his underling, without 'each (any) fight, he and all his knights [any knight leading forth to the

<sup>1</sup> ræd-fulle?<sup>3</sup> gærfume?<sup>2</sup> hæxtent *pr. m.*, but *t* expuncted.<sup>4</sup> fihte?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þa iwræð<sup>1</sup> iaðeled ⁊  
 Arður þe riche.  
 and þus andfwærede ⁊  
 mid aðmode worden.  
 Wel wurðe þan monne ⁊  
 þe mid wiðdome.  
 biwineð him g<sup>ið</sup> & frið ⁊  
 & freond-scipe to halden.  
 þene he ifiht þet he bið ⁊  
 mid strengðe ibunden. 10  
 izarked al to leofen ⁊  
 leofue his richen.  
 mid lifte he mot leoðien ⁊  
 luðe his bendes. [f.135.c.1.]  
 Arður hehte þene king cume ⁊  
 and bringen his aldeste sune.  
 and he swa dude sone ⁊  
 þe king of Denemarke.  
 Arðures iwille ⁊  
 sone he gon fulle.  
 to-somne heo comen ⁊  
 and sæhten iwurðen.  
 þa ȝet cleopede Arður ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þo was igladed ⁊  
 Arthur þe riche.  
 þus þo answerede ⁊  
 mid milde his wordes.  
 Wel worþe þane man ⁊  
 þat folweþ wiðdome.  
 and bi-winneþ loue and griþ ⁊  
 and freosipe holdeþ.  
 wane he siç þat he his ⁊  
 10 mid strengþe ibunde.  
 and wendeþ al to lose ⁊  
 leoue his freondes.  
 mid sleþþe he mot flakie ⁊  
 loþe his bendes. [[c.2.]  
**A**rthur hehte þane king come ⁊  
 and bringe his eldeste sone.  
 and he so dude sone ⁊  
 þe king of Denemarche.  
 Arthures wille ⁊  
 20 al he gan fulle.  
 to-gadere hii comen ⁊  
 and fahnede sone.  
 þo faide Arthur ⁊

fight]. Then was gladdened Arthur the rich, 'and' thus [then] answered with [his] mild words: "Well worth the man, that 'with wisdom [followeth wisdom, and] obtaineth to him 'peace and amity [love and peace], and friendship 'to hold [holdeth]! When he seeth that he is bound with strength, [and] his dear 'realm ready [friends go] all to destruction, with art he must slacken his odious bonds." Arthur ordered the king to come, and bring his eldest son; and he so did soon, the king of Denmark. Arthurs will 'soon [all] he gan to fulfill; together they came, and were reconciled [soon]. 'The yet [Then] said Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings: "Fare I

<sup>1</sup> iwræð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiiii.

aȝeleſt kingen.

boldeſt alre kinge.

Faren ich wulle to France ⁊

Faren ich wolte to France ⁊

mid muhele mire ferde.

mid bolde mine ferde.

ich wulle hebben of Noreweie ⁊

ich wolte hadde of Noreweie :

niȝe þuſend cnihtes.

niȝe þouſend cnihtes.

&amp; of Denemarke ich wulle leden ⁊ and of Denemarche ich wolte leade ⁊

niȝe þuſend of þan leodē.

niȝe þouſend of þan leode.

and of Orkaneie ⁊

and of Orcaneȝe ⁊

enleuen hūdred.

eolleue hundred.

and of Mureinen ⁊

10 and of Moraine ⁊

þreo þuſeond monnen.

þreo þouſend manne.

and of Galeweien ⁊

and of Galeweȝe ⁊

fiſ þuſend of þā leoden.

fiſ þouſend of þan leode.

and of Irlonde ⁊

and of Irlonde ⁊

elleuen þuſend.

eolloue þouſend.

and of Brutaine ⁊

and of Brutayne ⁊

mine cnihtes balde.

mine cnihtes bolde.

ſcullen þræſten bi-foren me ⁊

solle þræſte me bi-vore ⁊

þritti þuſunde.

þrittie þouſend.

and of Gutlonde ich wulle leden ⁊ and of Gutlond ich wolte leade ⁊

ten þuſeond of þan leoden.

21 ten þouſend of þan leode.

and of Friſlonde ⁊

and of Iſlonde ⁊

fiſ þuſend monnen.

fiſ þouſend manne.

and of Brutaine ⁊

and of Lute Brutaine ⁊

Howel þene balde.

Howel þan heande.

and mid ſwulche uolke ⁊

and mid ſoche folke ⁊

Frāce ich wulle iſechen.

France ich wolte ſeche.

will to France, with my 'mickle [bold] host. I will have of Norway nine thousand knights; and of Denmark I will lead nine thousand of the people; and of Orkney eleven hundred; and of Moray three thousand men; and of Galloway five thousand of the folk; and of Ireland eleven thousand; and of Britain my knights bold shall march before me, thirty thousand; and of Gutland I will lead ten thousand of the people; and of 'Frisland [Iceland] five thousand men; and of [Little] Britain Howel the 'bold [fair]; and with

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

And swa ich ibiden godes ære ⁊	And so ich abide godes ore ⁊
ȝet ich wulle haten mare.	ȝet ich wolle hote more.
þat of alle þan londē ⁊	þat of al þan londe ⁊
þat stondeþ a mire honden. [c. 2.]	þat stondeþ in mine honde.
ich haten ælcne ohtne <sup>1</sup> mon ⁊	ich wolle hote echne man ⁊
þe his wepnen beren con.	þat his wepne bere can.
alse he wule liuien ⁊	ase he wole libbe ⁊
and his lumen habben.	and his leomes habbe.
þat he faren wið me ⁊	þat he wende wiþ me ⁊
to fehten wið Frolle.	10 to fihte wiþ Frolle.
þat is Francene king ⁊	þat his Francene king ⁊
fæie he scal iwurðe.	fæy he sal iworþe.
he wes iboren i Rome ⁊	he was ibore in Rome ⁊ [l 108 <sup>b</sup> . c. 1.]
of Romanisce cunne.	of Romanisse cunne.
Forð ferde Arður ⁊	Forþ wende Arthur ⁊
þat he com to Flandref.	þat he to Flandres cō.
þat lond he gon biwinnen ⁊	þat lond he gan bi-winne ⁊
and fette hit mid his monnen.	and fette hit mid his manne.
and feodðe <sup>2</sup> he beh þanene ⁊	and suppe he wende þanene ⁊
in to <sup>3</sup>	20 in to Boloýne.
Buluinef lond ⁊	and al Boloýnes lond ⁊
nō hit to his aȝere hond.	nam to his owene hond.
and seoððen he nom þene wæi ⁊	and suppe he forþ þane way ⁊

such folk France I will seek. And as I expect Gods mercy, yet I will promise more; that of all the lands, that stand in my hand, I [will] order each 'brave' man, that can bear his weapons, as he would *wish to* live, and have his limbs, that he go with me, to fight with Frolle, who is king of the French,—slain he shall be!—he was born in Rome, of Romanish kin." Forth proceeded Arthur, until he came to Flanders; the land he gan conquer, and set it with his men. And next he marched thence, into Boulogne, and all Boulognes land took 'it' in his own hand. And afterwards he took

<sup>1</sup> Written at first ohtene, but e expuncted.<sup>2</sup> feodðe?<sup>3</sup> A portion of two lines is here deficient, supplied by the other text.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe in touward France læi.  
 þa bed he his bod ⁊  
 allen hif beornen.  
 for þær heo uoren ⁊  
 þat na wiht heo ne ne<sup>1</sup> nomē.  
 buten he<sup>2</sup> mid rihte ⁊  
 hit biȝitē mihte.  
 mid rihte chepinge ⁊  
 i þas kinges hirede.  
 þat iher<sup>3</sup> Frolle ⁊  
 þer he wes inne France.  
 of Arðures ifpede ⁊  
 and of alle hif deden.  
 and hu<sup>4</sup> al bi-wonne ⁊  
 þat he lokede on.  
 and al hit him to beh ⁊  
 þat he mid eȝene ifah.  
 þa wes þe king Frolle ⁊  
 laðliche of-fered.  
 A þere ilke worlde ⁊  
 þa þis wes iworðen.  
 wes Francene lond ⁊  
 Gualle ihatē.

þat toward France lay.  
 þo bad Arthur ⁊  
 alle his cnihtes.  
 wende woder hii wende ⁊  
 þat noht hii ne neme.  
 bote hii mid rihte ⁊  
 hit bi-ȝete mihte.  
 10 Al þis ihorde Frolle ⁊  
 þar he was in France.  
 of Arthur his spede ⁊  
 and of alle his deade.  
 and ou he al bi-won ⁊  
 þat he lokede an.  
 and al hit him to beh ⁊  
 þat he mid heȝene ifeh.  
 þo was þe king Frolle ⁊  
 lopliche afered.  
 20 A þare ilke worle ⁊  
 þo þis was iworþe.  
 was Francene lond ⁊  
 Galle ihote.

[Fra]nce.

[proceeded] the way that 'in' toward France lay. Then bade 'he [Arthur]  
 'his command' to all his 'men [knights], that fare wheresoever they should  
 fare, they should take 'no whit [nought], unless they might it obtain with  
 right; 'with just purchase, in the kings host.' Frolle heard 'that [all this],  
 where he was in France, of 'Arthurs [Arthur his] speed (success), and of  
 all his deeds; and how [he] all won that he looked on, and *how* it all to  
 him submitted that he saw with eyes; then was the king Frolle horribly  
 afraid! At the same time 'that [when] this was transacted, *the* land of *the*  
 French was named Gaul; and Frolle was from Rome come into France,

<sup>1</sup> *Redundant?*<sup>2</sup> heo?<sup>3</sup> iherde?<sup>4</sup> hu he?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

and Frolle wes from Rome ⁊  
 ifaren into France.  
 and ælche ȝere sende ⁊  
 gael of þan lōde.  
 ten hundred punde ⁊  
 of seoluer and of golde.  
 Nu iherd Frolle ⁊  
 þe ældeſ wes of France.  
 of þere lond<sup>1</sup>-forȝe ⁊  
 þe Arður dude an londe. 10  
 Soude he sende sone ⁊  
 au uest touward Rome.  
 and hehte Romanifce folc ⁊  
 redē heom bi-tweonen.  
 hu feole þusend cnihten ⁊  
 heo þider wolden sendē<sup>2</sup>.  
 þat he þa æð mihte ⁊  
 wið Arðure uihte.  
 and ulemen of londe ⁊  
 Arður þene stronge. 20  
 Cnihtes gunnen riden ⁊  
 vt of Rom-leoden.  
 fif and twenti þusēd ⁊  
 ferdan touward France.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and Frolle waf fram Rome ⁊  
 ifaren into Frāce.  
 and eche ȝer sende ⁊  
 gael of þan londe.  
 ten hundred pund ⁊  
 of seoluer and of golde.  
 Nou ihorde Frolle ⁊  
 þat king was in France.  
 of þare mochele forewe ⁊  
 þat Arthur dude in londe. 10  
 Sonde he sende sone ⁊  
 towardes Rome.  
 and bad Romaniffe folk ⁊  
 readen heom bi-twine.  
 ou fale þousend cnihtes ⁊  
 hii þider wolde sende. [c. 2.]  
 þat he þe bet mihte ⁊  
 wiþ Arthure fihte.  
 and fleomen of londe ⁊  
 20 Arthur þan stronge.  
 Cnihtes gonne ride ⁊  
 vt of Rom-leode.  
 fif and twenti þousend ⁊  
 wende toward France.

and each year sent tribute of the land, ten hundred pounds of silver and of gold. Now heard Frolle, who was 'chief of [king in] France, of the [great] sorrow that Arthur did in *the* land. He sent messengers soon '*the* nearest way' toward Rome, and bade *the* Romanish folk advise them between, how many thousand knights they thither would send, that he might the 'easier [better] fight with Arthur, and drive from *the* land Arthur the strong. Knights gan to ride out of Rome-land; five and twenty thousand proceeded toward France. Frolle heard this, with his mickle host, that the Romanish

<sup>1</sup> Written originally *londe*, but *e* erased.<sup>2</sup> *sen*, *pr.* m.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

Þis iherde Frolle ⁊  
 mid muchele his ferde.  
 þat þe Romanisce uolc ⁊  
 riden touward londe.  
 Frolle & hif ferde ⁊  
 heom to-ȝeines ferde.  
 þa heo comē to-somne ⁊  
 kene men and wihte.  
 of alle þan ærde ⁊  
 vnimete uerde.  
 Þæt iherde Arður ⁊  
 aȝeleft kingen.  
 & sumnede hif ferde ⁊  
 and heð to-ȝaines wende.  
 Ah næs næuere king nan ⁊ [c.2.]  
 þa quic wes an eorðen.  
 þe eouere ær an uolde<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 swulc folc a-walde.  
 for of alle þan kine-londe ⁊  
 þe Arður hafuede an hōde.  
 forð he ladde mid him ⁊  
 alle þa kennefte men.  
 þat nuſte he neuere<sup>2</sup> on weorlde ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xi11.

Þis ihorde Frolle ⁊  
 mid mochele his ferde.  
 þat þe Romaniffe ⁊  
 come toward londe.  
 Frolle and his ferde ⁊  
 ȝam to-ȝenef wende.  
 þat hii come to-gadere ⁊  
 kene men and wiȝte.  
 of alle þan erþe ⁊  
 10 onimete moche ferde.  
**Þ**At i-horde Arthur ⁊  
 boldeſt alre king.  
 and ſomnede his ferde ⁊  
 and ȝam to-ȝeines wende.  
 Ac naſ neuere king nō ⁊  
 þat cwik was on erþe.  
 þa euere her on folde ⁊  
 ſoch folk a-welde.  
 for of alle þan kine-londe ⁊  
 20 þat Arthur hadde an honde.  
 forþ he ladde mid him ⁊  
 þe alre kennefte men.  
 þat nuſte no man þere ⁊

[Fr]olk

'folk' rode [came] toward *the* land. Frolle and his host marched against them, *so* that they came together, keen men and brave, of all the earth *an* 'immense [immensely great] force. Arthur heard that, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings, and assembled his army, and advanced against them. But never was *there* any king, that was alive on earth, that ever ere on land such folk (multitude) commanded; for from all the kingdoms that Arthur had in hand, forth he led with him 'all the keenest men [the keenest men of all], *so* that 'he' knew 'never in *the* world [no man there] how many thousands

<sup>1</sup> The last two words of this line are *sup. ras.*, as are also the last three words of the next line but two, but in both cases by the original hand.

<sup>2</sup> At first written *neouere*, but *o* expuncted.



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

hu feole þuſēd þer weoren.  
 Sone swa heo comen to-fomne ⁊  
 Arður & Frolle.  
 harliche<sup>1</sup> heo igrættē ⁊  
 al þat heo imette.  
 Cnihtes swiðe ſtronge ⁊  
 igripen ſperen longe.  
 and ræſden heō to-gædere ⁊  
 mid ræhære ſtrēgðe.  
 Alle dæi þer weore ⁊  
 duntas swiðe riue.  
 folc feol to uolden ⁊  
 and fæie-fið worhtē.  
 græmende ſegges ⁊  
 gras-bæd iſohten.  
 gullen þa helmes ⁊  
 ȝeoumereden eorles.  
 ſceldeſ þær ſcenden ⁊  
 ſcalkeſ gūnē reoſen.  
 þa cleopede Ardur<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 aðeleſt kingen.  
 Whar beo ȝe mine Bruttes ⁊  
 balde mine þainef.  
 þe dæi him forð ȝeōgeð ⁊

ou fale þouſend þar were.  
 Sone ſo hii to-gadere come ⁊  
 Arthur and Frolle.  
 heardliche hii gretten ⁊  
 al þat hii metten.  
 Cnihtes ſwiþe ſtronge ⁊  
 igrepe ſperes lange.  
 and reafeden ȝam to-gadere ⁊  
 mid reȝere ſtrengþe.  
 10 Alle dai þar weren ⁊  
 dunteſ ſwiþe riue.  
 folk ful to folde ⁊  
  
 and þane grunde ſohte. [l. 109.c.1.]  
 ȝolle þe helmeſ ⁊  
 ȝeomerede eorles.  
  
 20 þo cleopede Arthur ⁊  
 boldeſt of kinges.  
 Ware beo ȝe mine Bruttus ⁊  
 bolde mine cnihtes.  
 þe dai him forþ goþ ⁊

there were. So soon as they came together, Arthur and Frolle; hardily (hostilely) they greeted all that they met. Knights most strong grasped long spears, and rushed them together, with fierce strength. All day there were blows most rife; the folk fell to ground, and 'wrought destruction; the angry warriors' sought the grass-bed [the ground]; the helms resounded, murmured earls; 'shields there shivered, warriors gan fall.' Then called Arthur, 'noblest [boldest] of kings: "Where be ye, my Britons, my bold thanes [knights]? The day it forth goeth; this folk against us standeth.

<sup>1</sup> hardliche?<sup>2</sup> R. Arður.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þif folc uf aȝein ſtondeð.  
 lette we heom to gliden ⁊  
 ſcærpe gares inoȝe.  
 & techen heð to riden ⁊  
 þene wæi touward Romen.  
 Æfne þan worde ⁊  
 þe Ardur<sup>1</sup> iſeide.  
 he ſprong forð an ſtede ⁊ [f. 136. c. 1.]  
 ſwa ſparc ded<sup>2</sup> of fure.  
 Him weore fuliende ⁊  
 10 fiſti þuſende.  
 hærdre here-kempē ⁊  
 hælden to fihte.  
 smiten uppen Frolle ⁊  
 þær he wes on ulocke.  
 and brohten hine of fleme ⁊  
 mid muclen hiſ folke.  
 þer Ardur<sup>1</sup> of-ſloh ⁊  
 muchel uolc and vniuh.  
 þa fleh in to Pariſe ⁊  
 20 Frolle þe riche.  
 and þa ȝeten tunden ⁊  
 mid teonen inoȝe.  
 and þa<sup>3</sup> word ſeide ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þif folk vs a-ȝen ſtondeþ.  
 lete we to ham glide ⁊  
 ſarpe gares inowe.  
 and teche ȝam to ride ⁊  
 þane wei toward Rome.  
 Efne þan worde ⁊  
 þat Arthur þo ſaide.  
 hii ſpronge forþ vppen ſtedes ⁊  
 afe ſparc doþ of fure.  
 10 Him were folȝende ⁊  
 fiſtie þouſend.  
 and smiten vppe Frolle ⁊  
 þar he was on flocke.  
 and brohte hine on fleome ⁊  
 mid alle hiſ folke.  
 þar Arthur of-sloh ⁊  
 mochel folk and onifoh.  
 20 þo fleh in to Paris ⁊  
 Frolle þe riche.  
 and þe ȝeateſ tunde ⁊  
 mid teone inowe.  
 and þes word ſaide ⁊

Cause we to glide to them sharp darts enow, and teach them to ride the way toward Rome!" Even with the words that Arthur [then] said, 'he [they] sprang forth 'on steed [upon steeds], as spark doth of fire. Fifty thousand were following him; 'the hardy warriors rushed to the fight,' [and] smote upon Frolle, where he was in the flock, and brought him to flight, with 'his mickle [all his] folk; there slew Arthur much folk and innumerable. Then fled into Paris Frolle the powerful, and fastened the gates, with grief enow; and these words said, sorrowful in heart: "Liefer

<sup>1</sup> R. Arður.<sup>2</sup> deð?<sup>3</sup> þas?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 12.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

forhful an heorte.

Leouere me weore ⁊

þ̃ ich iboren neore.

Paris.

þa weoren inne Paris ⁊

plihtliche spelles ful iwif.

sorhfulle iberen ⁊

burhmen gunnen beouien.

walles heo gunnen rihten ⁊

þa ȝæten heo gunnen dihten.

mete heo nomen ⁊

10

al þat heo neh comen.

an ælchere halue ⁊

heo heolden to burȝe.

heo uerden þider alle ⁊

þe heolden mid Frolle.

þat iherde Arður ⁊

aðelest kingen.

þat inne Paris wunede Frolle ⁊

mid unimete uerde.

and feiden þat he wolde ⁊

20

wið Arðure stonden.

To Paris ferde Arður ⁊

ærhðe bi-deled.

and bi-læi þa walles ⁊

and arede<sup>1</sup> his teldes.

forhfolle on heorte.

Leuere me were ⁊

þat ich ibore nere.

þ̃O weren in Paris ⁊

fori tidynge foliwis.

sorhfolle ſpeches ⁊

þe borhmen gonne buuie.

walles hii rihten ⁊

ȝeatef hii dihten.

meate hii nemen ⁊

al þat hii neh comē.

in euereche halue ⁊

hii ladde to borewe.

hii wenden þider alle ⁊

þat helde mid Frolle.

þat ihorde Arthur ⁊

wifest alre kinge.

þat in Paris was Frolle ⁊ [c.2]

mid onimete ferde.

and faide þat he wolde ⁊

wiþ Arthur at-stonde.

To Paris wende Arthur ⁊

arhþe be-dealed.

and bi-lai þe walles ⁊

and arerde his teldef.

were *it* to me, that I were not born!" Then were in Paris 'grievous speeches [sorry tidings], full surely, sorrowful 'cries; [speeches; the] burgh-men gan to tremble; *the* walls they 'gan repair [repaired], 'the' gates they 'gan to form [formed]; meat (provisions) they took, all that they came nigh; on 'each [every] side they carried *it* to *the* burgh; thither came they all, that held with Frolle. Arthur heard that, 'noblest of [wisest of all] kings, that Frolle 'dwelt [was] in Paris, with *an* immense force, and said that he would Arthur withstand. To Paris marched Arthur, of

<sup>1</sup> arerde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

a feower halue he heo bi-lai ⁊	a four halue he hine bi-lai.
fouwer wiken and enne dæi. [c. 2.]	four weke and one dai.
Auared weoren þa leden ⁊	A-fered weren fore ⁊
þa pere weoren wið innen.	þat wiþ ine were.
þa burh wes wið innen ⁊	þe borh was wiþ ine ⁊
afulled mid mōnien. •	i-fulled of manne.
and æten sone þene mete ⁊	and eote sone þane meate ⁊
þe þer wes iforned.	þat þar was igadered.
þa feouwer wiken weoren aȝōged ⁊	þo four wike were agon ⁊
þa Arður wes þær atstōden. 10	þat Arthur hadde þare ibeon.
þæ wes inne burȝe ⁊	þo was ine borwe ⁊
vnimete forȝe.	onimete forewe.
mid wræcche þā falke <sup>1</sup> ⁊	mid þan wrecche folke ⁊
þe leie þer an hungre.	þat lai þar for-hongered.
þer wes wop þe <sup>2</sup> wes rop ⁊	þar was weping strong ⁊
and reouden <sup>3</sup> vniuohȝe.	þar was gredinge a-mong.
Heo cleopeden to Frolle ⁊	Hii cleopede to Frolle ⁊
and beden hine frið wurchen.	and bede him griþ wirche.
Arðures mon bi-cumen ⁊	Arthur his man bi-come ⁊
and hiȝ monȝcipe bruken. 20	and his manȝipe brouke.
and þæe kiedō <sup>4</sup> halden ⁊	and þane kinedom holde ⁊
of Arðure þan kenen.	of Arthur þan stronge.

fear void, and belay the walls, and areared his tents; on four sides he belay it (the city), four weeks and a day. 'The people' that were 'there' within were [sore] afraid; the burgh was within filled with men; and *they* ate soon the meat that was there gathered. When four weeks were gone, that Arthur 'was [had] there 'stationed [been], then was in *the* burgh sorrow extreme, with the wretched folk that lay there 'in hunger [famished]; there was weeping, 'there was lament, and distress great [strong, there was crying among]. They called to Frolle, and bade him make peace; become 'Arthurs [Arthurs his] man, and his *own* honor enjoy, and hold the kingdom of Arthur the 'keen [strong]; and let not the 'wretched' folk [that

<sup>1</sup> folke?<sup>2</sup> reouðen?<sup>3</sup> R. þer.<sup>4</sup> This word is sup. ras.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and no lete noht þat wræcche uolk ⁊ and lete noht for-fare mid hongre ⁊	
uor-faren al mid hungre.	þat folk þat was wiþ ine.
þa andfwarede Frolle ⁊	þo anwerede Frolle ⁊
freo he wes an heorte.	freo man on heorte.
Nai swa me helpe god ⁊	Nai fe <sup>1</sup> me helpe god ⁊
þæ alle domes awalt.	þat alle dōmes weldeþ.
ne scal ich nauere hiſ mon bicume ⁊	ne fal ich neuere hiſ man bicome ⁊
no he mi kine-lauerd.	no he min kine-louerd.
mi feolf ich wulle fihte ⁊	Mi feolf ich wolle fihte ⁊
a gode iſ al þat rihte.	10 in god hiſ alle þe rihte.
þa ȝet cleopede Frolle ⁊	
freo mon an heorte.	
Næi swa me helpe drihten ⁊	
þe ſcop þaſ dæies lihten.	
nulle ic nauere mare ⁊	
ȝirnen Arðures ære.	
ah fehten ich wulle ⁊	
butē ælche cnihte. [L 136 <sup>a</sup> .c.1.]	
licame wið licame ⁊	licame wiþ licame ⁊
biforen mine leoden.	20 bi-vore mine cnihtes.
hond aȝain honde ⁊	hond aȝein [honde ⁊]
wið Arðure kige. [wakere ⁊ wiþ Arthur þan ſtronge. [L 109 <sup>a</sup> .c.1.]	
whaðer unkere ſwa beoð þere	
ſone he bið þe laðere.	

was within] perish 'all' with hunger. Then answered Frolle,—free 'he was [man] in heart:—"Nay, so help me God, that all dooms wieldeth, shall I never his man become, nor he my sovereign! Myself I will fight; in God is all the right!" 'The yet spake Frolle, free man in heart: "Nay, so help me *the* Lord that shaped the day-light, will I nevermore yearn Arthurs grace; but fight I will, without each knight (singly), body against body, before my 'people [knights]; hand against hand, with Arthur 'the king [the strong]! 'Whetherso (whichsoever) of us is the weaker, soon he will be the loather; whetherso of us there may live, to his friends he

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

wahðervinkere<sup>1</sup> swaþermaluuiē:

hiſ freondē he bið þe leouere.

and whader<sup>2</sup> unkere þe mæi of o- waþer so may of oþer:

þat betere biwinne. [ðere:] þat betere bi-winne.

habben al þiſ oðeres lond: habbe al þeos oþeres lond:

and sette hit an hiſ aȝerē hond. to hiſ owene hond.

þiſ ic wulle ȝirne: þiſ ich wolle onderfon:

ȝif Arður hit wule ȝetten. ȝeſ Arthur hit wole don.

and þiſ ich wulle ſwerien: and þiſ ich wolle ſwerie:

uppen mine ſweorden. 10 vppe mine ſweorde.

and ȝiſles ich wulle finden: and ȝiſles ich wolle finde:

þreo kingene ſunen. þreo kingene ſones.

þ̃ ich þiſ forward wulle: þat ich þiſ foreward:

faſtliche halden. wolle faſtliche holde.

þat nulle ich hit liȝen: þat ich hit nelle leȝe:

bi mine quike liuen. bi mine cwike liue.

For leouere me iſ to liggen: For leuere me hiſ ligge:

bi-fore mine leoden. bi-vore mine cnihtef.

þan ich iſeo an uolde: þane ich ȝam here iſe:

for-faren heð mid hungre. 20 for-fare mid hunger.

For we habbeoð mid fehte: For we habbeþ ine fihte:

ure cnihtes uor-farene<sup>3</sup>. for-lore oure cnihtef.

ſcalkeſ auælleð: in þan wiþer-happes:

fifti þuſende. fiftie þouſend.

will be the liefer; and whether of us 'that' may of *the* other obtain the better (superiority), have *he* all this others land, 'and set it' in his own hand. This I will 'yearn [undertake], if Arthur will it 'grant [do]; and this I will swear upon my sword. And hostages I will find, three kings sons, that I will hold firmly this covenant; that I will it not violate, by my quick life! For liefer *it* is to me to lie *dead*, before my 'people [knights], than *that* I should see them 'on *the* ground [here] perish with hunger. For we have 'with [in] fight 'destroyed [lost] our knights—'men felled [in the conflicts] fifty thou-

<sup>1</sup> R. unkere.<sup>2</sup> whader?<sup>3</sup> forene, *pr. m.*, but corrected, and uor interlined.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and mōi ænne gode wifmon ⁊  
 iwhorht to bleðere<sup>1</sup> widewe.  
 moni child faderlæs ⁊  
 and frouer<sup>2</sup> bidaled.  
 and nu þif folc mid hungre ⁊  
 wunderliche ihærmede. [c. 2.]  
 For þi hit if betere ⁊  
 bi-twixen unke feoluen.  
 to-dælen and to-dihten ⁊  
 þif kine-lond mid fihte. 10  
 and habbe hit þa betere ⁊  
 and bruken hit on wunne.  
 Frolle nom twalf cnihtes ⁊  
 mid þiffen worden forð rihtes.  
 and fende heom an fonde ⁊  
 to Arðure kinge.  
 &<sup>3</sup> iwufte ȝif he wolde ⁊  
 þif forewarde halde.  
 and mid hif aȝere hond ⁊  
 bi-telen þat kinelond. 20  
 oðer uore-liggē ⁊  
 hif leoden to harmen.  
 and ȝif he hit bi-talden ⁊  
 hafde hit on<sup>3</sup> an onwalde.

and mani child faderles ⁊  
 frouere bi-deled.  
 For þi hit his betere ⁊  
 bi-twixte ous feolue.  
 to-dealen and to-dihte ⁊  
 þis kinelond mid fihte.  
 and habbe hit þe betere ⁊  
 and brouc hit mid winne.  
 Frolle nam twealf cnihtes ⁊  
 mid þes worde forþrihtes.  
 and fende ȝam on fonde ⁊  
 to Arthur þan kinge.  
 hi-wite ȝef he wolde ⁊  
 þif forewarde holde.  
 and mid his owene hond ⁊  
 bi-telle þat kinelonde.

sand; and 'many a good woman *have* made miserable widow,' many a child fatherless, 'and' bereaved of comfort; 'and now this folk with hunger *have* wondrously harmed.' It is better therefore betwixt ourselves to deal and to dispose of this kingdom with fight; and have it the better *man*, and possess it 'in [with] joy!' Frolle took twelve knights, with these words forth-right, and sent them in message to Arthur [the] king, to know if he would hold this covenant, and with his own hand win the kingdom, 'or lie *dead* before, to *the* harm of his people; and if he it won, should have it in *his* power.'

<sup>1</sup> bletere, *pr. m.*<sup>2</sup> *Superfluous?*<sup>3</sup> *Redundant?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þat iherde Arður ⁊  
 aðeleft kingen.  
 næs he neuere swa bliðe ⁊  
 ær an hiſ liue.  
 for him likede tidende ⁊  
 from Frolle þan kinge.  
 and þaſ word feide ⁊  
 Arður þe fele.  
 Wel ſaið Frolle ⁊  
 þe kiḡ if of France.  
 betere if þat wit tweie ⁊  
 bitelen þaſ riche.  
 þene þer beon of-flaḡene ⁊  
 ure þeines ſnelle.  
 þiſ foreward ich bi-luue ⁊  
 bi-fore mine leoden.  
 to ane ifette dæie ⁊  
 to don þat he beodeð.  
 þat ſcal beon tomarḡen ⁊  
 biſoren unker monnen.  
 þ̃ fehtē wet ſcullen unc ſeoluen ⁊  
 & falle þe forcuðere. [ſ. 137. c. 1.]  
 And whaðer unker þe geð abake ⁊  
 & þiſ feoht wulle for-ſake.  
 beð he in ælche londe ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þiſ ihorde Arthur ⁊  
 baldeſt alre kinge.  
 naſ he neuere ſo bliþe ⁊  
 er on hiſ liue. [c. 2.]  
 for him likede þe tȳdinge ⁊  
 fram Frolle þe kinge.  
 and þeoſ wordes ſaide ⁊  
 Arthur þe fele.  
 Wel ſaiþ Frolle ⁊  
 10 þat king hiſ of France.  
 betere þat we tweie ⁊  
 bi-telle þeſ riche.  
 þane beon of-ſlaḡe ⁊  
 oure cnihteſ ſnelle.  
 þiſ foreward ich wolle holde ⁊  
 bi mine cwike liue.  
 to on i-feat daie ⁊  
 to don þat he me biðdeþ.  
 þat ſal beon to-morwe ⁊  
 20 to-vore oure mannen.  
 þat fihte we ſolle ouſ ſeolue ⁊  
 & falle þe forcouþere.  
 And waþer þat goþ a-back ⁊  
 and þeſ foreward wolle for-ſake.  
 beo he in eche londe ⁊

Arthur heard 'that, noblest of [this, boldest of all] kings; was he never so blithe ere in his life, for [the] tiding liked to him from Frolle the king; and these words said Arthur the good: "Well saith Frolle, who is king of France; better 'it is' that we two contest this realm, than 'there' should be slain our brave 'thanes [knights]. This covenant I 'approve, before my people [will hold, by my quick life], at an appointed day to do what he [me] biddeth; that shall be to-morrow, before our men, that fight we shall by our selves, and fall the worst of us! And whether (which) 'of us' that goeth aback, and this 'fight [covenant] will forsake, be he in each land



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

iqueðe for ane sconde.  
 þenne mæie me finge ⁊  
 of ane swulche kige.  
 þe his beot haueð imaked ⁊  
 and hif cniht-scipe for-sakē.  
 þæt iherde Frolle ⁊  
 þe king wes of France.  
 þat Arður fehten wolden ⁊  
 him seolf buten cnihte.  
 Strong mon wes Frolle ⁊ 10  
 and sterc mon on mode.  
 and his beot imaked hafde ⁊  
 bi-foren al hif duzeðe. [chelen ⁊  
 and ne<sup>1</sup> ne mihte for scome mu-  
 scenden hine feoluē.  
 bi-læuen hif balde ibeot ⁊  
 þ he i burh hafde ifeid.  
 Sæide þ he sæide ⁊  
 to soðe he hit wende.  
 þat Arður hit wolde for-faken ⁊  
 and nawiht to þan fehte taken. 21  
 for ȝif hit wuste Frolle ⁊  
 þe king wes ane<sup>4</sup> France.

icwepe for on sconde.  
 þanne mai me finge ⁊  
 of one swindene kinge.  
 þat his beot haueþ imaked ⁊  
 and hif cniht-sipe for-fake.  
 þat i-horde Frolle ⁊  
 þat king was of France.  
 þat Arthur wolde fihte ⁊  
 bouten eni cniht.  
 10 Strang man was Frolle ⁊  
 and sterc cniht of mode.  
 and his beot hadde imaked ⁊  
 bi-vore al his cnihtes.  
 he ne miht for scome ⁊  
 fynde him feolue.

Ac faide wat he faide ⁊  
 to sope he hit wen<sup>2</sup>.  
 þat Arthur hit wolde<sup>3</sup> ⁊  
 for ȝef he hit hadde hi-wift ⁊<sup>[L 110. c. 1.]</sup>  
 to soþere þinge.

proclaimed for a recreant! Then may men sing of one 'such [worthless] king, that his brag (or threat) hath made, and his knighthood forsaken!' Frolle heard that, who was king of France, that Arthur would fight 'himself', without [any] knight. Strong man was Frolle, and stark 'man in [knight of] mood; and his boast *he* had made, before all his 'people [knights], and he might not for 'much' shame disgrace himself; 'quit his bold bragging that he had said in *the* burgh.' [But] said *he* whatever he said, in sooth he it weened, that Arthur would it forsake, and no whit take to (accept) the fight. For if 'Frolle [he], 'who was king in France,' had it

<sup>1</sup> he?<sup>2</sup> Part of this and the whole of the next line are wanting.<sup>3</sup> wende?<sup>4</sup> an? of?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat Arður him ȝettē wolde :  
 þat he ȝirnd hafde.  
 don he hit nolde :  
 for a ſcip ful of golde.  
 Neoðeles wes Frolle :  
 to fihte ſwide<sup>1</sup> kene.  
 muche cniht & ſtrōg mon :  
 and modi on heortē.  
 and ſæide þat he wolde :  
 þene dæi halde. 10  
 in þan æit-londe : [c. 2.]  
 þe mid watere if bi-ȝeðge.  
 þat æit-lond ſtondeð ful iwis :  
 inne þere burh of Paris.  
 þer ich wulle mid fehte :  
 bi-tele mine irihte.  
 mid ſcelden<sup>2</sup> :  
 and mid cnihtes iwede.  
 nu to-marȝen bið þe dæi :  
 habben þe hit hit<sup>3</sup> biȝiten mæi. 20  
 Comen þa tiðende :  
 to Arðure þan kinge.  
 þat Frolle wolde mid fæhte :

þat Arthur him grantȝ wolde :  
 þat þe he ȝornde.  
 don he hit nolde :  
 for on ſipfol of golde.  
 Nopeles was Frolle :  
 to fihte ſwiþe kene.  
 mochel cniht and ſtrong man :  
 and modi on heorte.  
 and ſaide þat he wolde :  
 þane dai holde.  
 in þan ȝllonde :  
 þat mid wateref his bi-ȝonge.  
 þat ȝllond ſteond foliwiſ :  
 a-midde þan borh of Paris.  
 þar ich wolle mid fihte :  
 bi-telle mine rihte.  
 nou. to morwe his þe dai :  
 habbe þat hit bi-ȝete mai.  
 Come þe tȝdinge :  
 to Arthur þan kinge.  
 þat Frolle wol.. mid fihte :

known [in sooth thing], that Arthur would grant him that [that] he 'had' yearned, he would not do (have done) it for a ship-ful of gold ! Nevertheless was Frolle to *the* fight exceeding keen ; tall knight and strong man, and moody in heart ; and said that he would hold the day, in the island that with water is surrounded,—the island standeth full truly 'in [amid] the burgh of Paris.—"There I will with fight obtain my rights, 'with shield, and with steed, and with knights weed ;' now to-morrow is the day ; have *it he* that may it win !" The tiding came to Arthur the king, that Frolle

<sup>1</sup> ſwiðe?<sup>2</sup> mid ſcelden mid ſtede?<sup>3</sup> Sic MS.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

France bitellē.  
 næs he næuere fwa bliðe ⁊  
 ær an hif liue.  
 and he lehȝen agon ⁊  
 ludere stæfnen.  
 and þas word seide ⁊  
 Arður þe kene.  
 Nu ich wat þat Frolle ⁊  
 wið me wulle fihte.  
 to-marȝe in þan dæie ⁊  
 alse he seolf demide.  
 i þan ait-londe ⁊  
 þat mid watere if biſtonde.  
 for hit bicumeð kinge ⁊  
 þat his word ſtonde.  
 Leteð blawen bemen ⁊  
 and bodien mine monnen.  
 þat æuer ælc god mon ⁊  
 to-niht wakien for þon.  
 and bidden ure drihtē ⁊  
 þe alle domes awalt.  
 þat he me iſcilde ⁊  
 wið Frolle þene wilde.  
 and mid hif riht hōde ⁊  
 witeȝe me wið ſconde.

bi-telle hif .....  
  
 Arthur gan to lahȝe ⁊  
 loudere ſtemne.  
 and þeos word ſaide ⁊  
 Arthur þe kene.  
 Nou ich wot þat Frolle ⁊  
 wole mid me fihte.  
 10 to-morewe in þan daie ⁊  
 aſe he him ſeolf demep.

Letep blowe bumef ⁊  
 and bodie mine mannef.  
 þat euerech god man ⁊  
 to-niht wakie for þan.  
 20 and bidde oure drihte ⁊  
 þat alle domes weldep.  
 þat he me ſcilde ⁊  
 fram Frolle þan wilde.  
 and mid his riht honde ⁊  
 witie me fram ſconde.

would with fight win 'France [his *rights*]; 'was he never so blithe ere in his life!' 'And he [Arthur] gan to laugh, with loud voice; and said these words Arthur the keen: "Now I know that Frolle will with me fight, to-morrow in the day, as he [him]self 'determined [determineth], 'in the island that with water is surrounded; for it becometh a king, that his word should stand.' Let *the* trumpets blow, and bid my men, that every good man watch to-night for that, and pray our Lord, that all dooms wieldeth, that he preserve me from Frolle the fierce, and with his right hand protect me from disgrace. And if I may obtain this kingdom to mine own

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

And ȝif ich mæi þif kinelōd ⁊  
biȝiten to mire aȝere hon<sup>1</sup>.

And ȝef ich mai þis kinelond ⁊ [c. 2.]  
bi-ȝete to min owene hond.

auereælche ærmen mon ⁊ [f. 137<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.] ȝeuerch neod-fol man ⁊  
þe æð scal iwurðen.

þe bet fal iworþe.

and wurchen ic wulle ⁊  
muchel godes wille.

Nu me uulften þer to ⁊  
þe alle þing mai wel don.  
þe heȝe heueneliche king ⁊  
stōde me an helping.

Nou me fulste þar to ⁊  
þe king þat al may do.  
þe heȝe heueneliche [king] ⁊  
10 stonde me an helping.

for ich hine luuien wulle ⁊  
þa while þe ich liuie.

þer wes al longe niht ⁊  
songes and<sup>2</sup> candel-liht<sup>3</sup>.  
hæhliche fungen clarcles ⁊  
hali godes falmes.

þar was alle lange niht ⁊  
songes and candel-liht.  
hehliche songe clarkes ⁊  
heȝe godes phalmes<sup>4</sup>.

þa hit dæi we<sup>5</sup> amarȝen ⁊  
duȝeðe gunne sturien.

þo hit dai was a morewe ⁊  
þat folk gā to storie.

his wæpnen he nom an honden ⁊

his wepne he nam an honde ⁊

Arður þe stronge.

20 Arthur þan strōge.

warp he an his rugge ⁊

warp he on his rugge ⁊

a ræf fwiðe deore.

a reaf fwiþe deore.

æenne cheifil scurte ⁊

ane cheifelne feorte ⁊

hand, every 'poor [needy] man the 'easier [better] shall be, 'and work I will *the* great Gods will!' Now aid me thereto [the king] that all 'things' may 'well' do; the high heavenly king stand me in help; 'for him I will love (*or* praise), the while that I live!' " There was all *the* long night songs and candle-light; loudly sung clerks holy psalms of God. When it was day on *the* morrow, 'people [the folk] gan to stir. His weapons (armour) he took in hand, Arthur the strong; he threw on his back a garment most precious, a cheisil shirt, and a cloth kirtle; a burny exceeding

<sup>1</sup> hond?<sup>2</sup> *At first written an, but d interlined by the same hand.*<sup>3</sup> candel-liht?<sup>4</sup> psalmes?<sup>5</sup> wes?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& ænne pallene curtel.  
 ænne burne swiðe deore ⁊  
 ibroiden of stele.  
 Sette he an hefde ⁊  
 ænne helm godne.  
 to his fide he swende ⁊  
 his sweorde Caliburne.  
 his sconken he helede ⁊  
 mid hosen of stele.  
 and duden on his uoten ⁊ 10  
 fpuren swiðe gode.  
 þe kīg mid his weden ⁊  
 leap on his stede.  
 me him to rehte ⁊  
 aȝe scealde gode.  
 he wes al clane ⁊  
 of olifantes bane.  
 Me falde him an honde ⁊  
 enne scaft stronge. [c. 2.]  
 þer wes a þan ænde ⁊ 20  
 a spærere<sup>1</sup> swiðe hende.  
 hit wes imaked i Kairmeðin ⁊  
 a smið þe hehte Griffin.  
 hit ahte Vðer ⁊  
 þe wes ær king her.

Griffin.

and one pallene curtel.  
 ane brunie swiþe deore ⁊  
 hii-brode al of stele.  
 He fette on his heued ⁊  
 one helm godne.  
 to his fyde he fweinde ⁊  
 his sweord Caliburne.  
 his legges he helede ⁊  
 mid hosen of stele.  
 and dude on his fote ⁊ 10  
 spores swiþe gode.  
 þe king mid his wede ⁊  
 leap on his stede.  
 me him to reahte ⁊  
 one sceald riche.  
 he was al cleane ⁊  
 of holifantes bone.  
 Me tok him an honde ⁊  
 ane fast stronge.  
 þar was in þan eande ⁊ 20  
 an hefd swiþe hende.  
 hit was i-maked in Ker-merþin ⁊  
 a smiþ þat hehte Griffin.

precious, embroidered [all] of steel. He set on [his] head a good helm;  
 to his side he suspended his sword Caliburn; his legs he covered with hose  
 of steel, and placed on his feet spurs most good. The king with his weeds  
 leapt on his steed; men reached to him a 'good [rich] shield; it was all  
 clean of elephants bone (ivory). Men gave him in hand a strong shaft;  
 there was at the end a 'spear [head] most fair; it was made in Caermarthen  
 by a smith that hight Griffin; 'Uther it possessed, who was ere king here.'

<sup>1</sup> spære?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa þe iwepned wes þe rahȝe :  
 þa gon he to uarene.  
 he mihte þa bi-halde :  
 þe þer bihalfuef weore.  
 þene king richne :  
 rehliche riden.

feodðen<sup>1</sup> þif weorlde wes a-stald : suppe þes worle was a-stald :  
 nes hit no whar itald.  
 þat æuere ai mon swa hende : þat euere eny man so hende :  
 wunden uppen horfe. 10 wonde vppe horfe.  
 swa him wes Arður :  
 fune Vðeres.

Riden after þan kige :  
 balde here-ðringes.  
 a þen feoremeste flocke :  
 feouwert hundred.  
 heȝe here-kempē :  
 bihonged mid stelen.  
 baldere Brutten :  
 bifie mid wepnē.  
 Aft<sup>9</sup> þan fufden :  
 fifti hundred.  
 þeo Wælwain ladde :  
 þe wæs a wæl-kempe.

þo þe iwepnid was þe king :  
 þo gan he to wende. [£ 110<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 he mihte þo bi-holde :  
 þat þar bi-halues were.  
 þane richne king :  
 boldeliche ride.

nas hit noþware itald.  
 þat euere eny man so hende :  
 wonde vppe horfe.

Riden after þan kinge :  
 bolde heredringes.  
 in þan forste flocke :  
 fourti hondred.  
 baldere Bruttus :  
 bi-honge mid stele.

After þan wende :  
 fifti honder.  
 þa Waweȝn ladde :  
 þat was a bald kempe.

When that the 'stern *man* [king] was weaponed, then gan he to advance ; then might he behold, who were there beside, the mighty king ride boldly ; since this world was made, was it nowhere told, that ever any man so fair rode upon horse, 'as Arthur he was, son of Uther !' Bold chieftains rode after the king ; in the 'foremost [first] flock forty hundred, 'noble warriors [bold Britons], clad in steel, 'bold Britons, busy with weapon.' After that marched fifty hundred, that Walwain led, who was a [bold] champion. Afterwards there 'gan out follow [out thronged] sixty thousand

<sup>1</sup> feodðen ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Seoððen þer gunnen ut fiȝen ⁊  
fixti þuſede.

Bruttus swiðe balde ⁊

þat wes þa bac-warde.

þer wes þe king Angel ⁊

þer wes Lot and Urien.

þer wes Vrienes fune ⁊

Țwæin ihaten.

þer wes Kæi and Beduer ⁊

and biwuften þa uerde þer. 10

þer wes þe king Howel ⁊

hah mon of Brutlond. [f. 138. c. 1.]

Cador þer wes æc ⁊

þe kene wef on flocke.

þer wes of Irlonde ⁊

Gillomar þe ſtron<sup>1</sup>.

þer wes Gonwaif þe king ⁊

Orka ef<sup>2</sup> deorling.

þer wes Doldamin þe kene ⁊

ut of Gutlond.

þer wes Eſcil þe king ⁊

Denemarkes deorling.

Suppe þar vt þronge ⁊

sixti þuſend.

Bruttus ſwiþe bolde ⁊

þat was þe bac-ward.

þar was þe king Angel ⁊

þar was Loth and Vrien.

þar was Vrieneſ ſone ⁊

Eþayn ihote.

þar waſ Kay and Bedewer ⁊

and bi-wiſte þe ferde þar.

þar was þe king Howel ⁊

heh man of Brutlond.

Cador þar was eke ⁊

þat kene was on flocke.

þar was of Țrlonde ⁊

Gillomar þe ſtrangge.

þar was Gonways þe king ⁊

Orcaneieſ deorling.

þar was Doldanim þe kene ⁊

20 vt of Gutlond.

and Rumaret þe ſtronge ⁊

vt of Winet-lond.

þar was Aſcil þe king ⁊

Denemarches deorling.

Britons most bold; that was the rearward. There was the king Angel; there was Loth and Urien; there was Uriens son, named Ywain; there was Kay and Beduer, and commanded the host there; there was the king Howel, noble man of Britanny; Cador there was eke, who was keen in flock; there was from Ireland Gillomar the strong; there was Gonwais the king, Orkneys darling; there was Doldanim the keen, out of Gothland, 'and Rumaret the strong, out of Winet-land'; there was Æscil the king, Denmark's darling. Folk there was on foot, so many thousand

<sup>1</sup> strong?

<sup>2</sup> Sic MS. : read Orkaneies.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Folc þer wes a fotē ⁊  
 swa feole þufend monnen.  
 þat naf nauere na swa wit-ful mon ⁊ þat naf neuere so wit-fol man ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 a þiffere weorlde-richen.  
 a nauere nane spelle ⁊  
 þat mihte þa þufend telle.  
 bute he hauede mid rihte ⁊  
 wisdom of drihtene.  
 oðer he hafde mid him ⁊  
 þat him hafde Mærli.  
 Arður forð gon liðe ⁊  
 mid vnimete folke.  
 þat he com fuliwif ⁊  
 into þere burh of Paris.  
 a west halwe þā watere ⁊  
 mid mucle his genge.  
 An æst hælf wes Frolle ⁊  
 mid mucchelere ferde.  
 ȝaru to þan fehte ⁊  
 biforen his cnihtes alle.  
 Arður nom ænne bat godne ⁊  
 & bæh þer an inne.  
 mid scelde mid stede ⁊  
 and mid alle his iwede.  
 and he þat scip stronge ⁊

folk þar waf a fote ⁊  
 so fale þoufend manne.  
 þat naf neuere so wit-fol man ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 in þisse worle-riche.  
 in neuere none spelle ⁊  
 þat mihte þe þoufendes telle.  
 bote he hadde mid him þe wit ⁊  
 10 þat hadde Merlȝn.  
 Arthur forþ gan wende ⁊  
 mid onimete folke.  
 þat he com foliwis ⁊  
 into þare borh of Parif.  
 a west half þan watere ⁊  
 mid alle his folke.  
 An eft half was Frolle ⁊  
 mid mochele his ferde.  
 ȝaru to þan fihte ⁊  
 20 bi-vore alle his cnihtes.  
 Arthur nam ane bot ⁊  
 and dude him þar ine.  
 [mid] fhelde and mid stede ⁊  
 and mid al his wede.  
 and þane bot stronge ⁊

men, that was never a man in this worlds-realm so wise, that might tell the thousands, in ever any speech, unless 'he had with right wisdom of *the* Lord, or *unless*' he had with him 'what [the wit that] Merlin 'he' had. Arthur forth gan march, with innumerable folk; until he came full surely unto the burgh of Paris; on *the* west side of the water, with 'his mickle [all his] folk. On *the* east side was Frolle, with [his] great force, ready to the fight, before all his knights. Arthur took a 'good' boat, and 'went [placed himself] therein, with shield [and] with steed, and with all his weeds (armor); and 'he' shoved the strong 'ship [boat] from the land, and stept upon the



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ſcaf from þan londe<sup>1</sup>.  
 and ſtop uppen þat æit-lond ⁊  
 and ladde hiſ ſtede an hiſ hond.  
 his men þe hine þer brohte ⁊ [c.2.] ... men þe hine þar brohte ⁊  
 aſe þe king hehte.  
 leten þene bat buȝen ⁊  
 forð mid þan vðen.  
 Frolle into ſcipe ferde ⁊  
 þe kīg wes unuele.  
 þat he auere þohte ⁊  
 wið Arðure to to<sup>3</sup> fehte.  
 Ferde to þan æite ⁊  
 mid aðele hiſ wēpnen<sup>4</sup>.  
 uppen þan æit he ſtop ⁊  
 & hiſ ſtede him after droh.  
 þeo men þe hine þer brohten ⁊  
 aſe þe king hehte.  
 lette þene bat fuſen ⁊  
 forð mid þan vðen.  
 and þa kinges tweien ⁊  
 ane þer wuneden.  
 þa me mihte bihalden ⁊  
 þe þer bihalues weoren.

ſcaf fram þan londe.  
 and f... .. þat ŷllond ⁊  
 and la... his ſtede an his h...  
 ... men þe hine þar brohte ⁊  
 aſe þe king hehte.  
 lette wende þane bot ⁊  
 forþ mid þan watere.  
 Frolle to bote wende ⁊  
 þe king was onfeale<sup>2</sup>.  
 10 þat he euere þoht ⁊  
 wiþ Arthur to fihte.  
 He wende to þan ŷllond ⁊  
 mid gode hiſ wepne.  
 he ſtop vppe þat ŷllod ⁊  
 and nam hiſ ſtede on hiſ hond.  
 þe men þat hine þar brohte ⁊  
 aſe þe king þam hehte.  
 lette þane bot wende ⁊  
 forþ mid þan watere.  
 20 and þe kinges tweie ⁊ [c.111.c.1.]  
 þare ine weren beiene.

island, and led his steed in his hand; his men that brought him there, as the king commanded, let the boat drive forth with the 'waves [water]. Frolle went 'into ship [to boat]; the king was uneasy that he ever thought with Arthur to fight. [He] proceeded to the island, with his good weapons; he stept upon the island, and 'drew [took] his steed 'after him [in his hand]; the men that brought him there, as the king commanded [them], let the boat drive forth with the 'waves [water]; and the two kings 'alone there remained [therein were both]. Then 'men might behold, that were there beside, 'the folk on 'the land, exceedingly [both sides were] afraid;

<sup>1</sup> lon, *pr. m.*<sup>2</sup> onfeale?<sup>3</sup> *Sic MS.*<sup>4</sup> *R. wepnen.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

folc a þan uolde ⁊  
 feondliche adredde.  
 heo clumben uppen hallen ⁊  
 heo clumben uppen wallen.  
 heo clūben uppen bures ⁊  
 heo clumben uppe tures.  
 þat comp to bihalden ⁊  
 of þan tweom kingen.  
 Arðures men beden ⁊  
 mid muchele æðmoden.  
 godd þene gode ⁊  
 and þa hali hif moder.  
 þat heore lauerd þere ⁊  
 fiȝe moſte habben.  
 and þa oðere eke ⁊  
 bede for heore kinge.  
 Arður ſtop<sup>1</sup> a ſtel boȝe ⁊  
 and leop an his blancke.  
 and Frolle mid hif iwede ⁊  
 leop on hif ſteden.  
 þe an an hif ænde ⁊  
 a þan æit-londe.  
 and þæ oðer an hif ænde ⁊  
 i þan æit-londe.

[f. 138<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þo weren a-drad ⁊  
 folk in boȝe fyde.  
 hii clemde vppe halles ⁊  
 hii clemde vppe walles.  
 hii clemde vppe toures ⁊  
 hii clemden vppe boures.  
 þat fiht to bi-holde ⁊  
 of þeos tweie kinges.  
 Arthur his men ⁊  
 10 bede mid mochele edmode.  
 god þane gode ⁊  
 and his holy moder.  
 þat hire louerd þare ⁊  
 þe ouere hadde.  
 and þe oþ<sup>9</sup> eke ⁊  
 bede for hire kinge.  
**A**rthur leop þare ⁊  
 vppe on his ſtede.  
 and Frolle mid his wede ⁊  
 20 leop on his ſtede.

they climbed upon halls, they climbed upon walls; they climbed upon  
 'bowers [towers], they climbed upon 'towers [bowers], to behold the 'combat  
 [fight] of 'the [these] two kings. 'Arthurs [Arthur his] men prayed with  
 much humility to God the good, and 'the holy his [his holy] mother, that their  
 lord might have there 'victory [the over *hand*]; and the others eke prayed  
 for their king. Arthur 'stept in steel *saddle*-bow, and 'leapt [there up-]  
 on his steed; and Frolle with his weeds leapt *also* on his steed; 'the  
 one at his end, in the island, and the other at his end, in the island';

<sup>1</sup> Originally written stod.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

heo quehten heore scaftes ⁊  
 kinewurðe cnihtes.  
 heo græneden heore stedē ⁊  
 gode cnihtes heo weoren.  
 Næs he næuere ifunde ⁊  
 a næuere nane londe.  
 nan swa wihtful<sup>1</sup> mon ⁊  
 þat hit wuſte ær þan.  
 whæðer of þau kingen ⁊  
 ouer-cumen ſculde liggen. 10  
 for beiē heo weoren cnihtes kene ⁊  
 ohte men and wihte.  
 muchele men on mihte ⁊  
 and a maine ſwiðe ſtronge.  
 Heo muneȝeden heore ſteden ⁊  
 and toſomne gunnen riden.  
 fuſden feondliche ⁊  
 þat fur him<sup>2</sup> ſprōȝ after.  
 Arður ſmat Frolle ⁊  
 mid feond ſtronge maine. 20  
 uppen þene ſceld hehȝe ⁊  
<sup>5</sup>  
 and þe ſtede þe wes god ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

hii cwehten hire ſaftes ⁊  
 kineworþe knihtes.  
 hii greinede hire ſtedes ⁊  
 godeli cnihtes hii weren.  
 Nes he neuere ifunde ⁊  
 in neuere none londe.  
 nan ſo witfol man ⁊  
 þat hit wuſte er þan.  
 waþer of þan kinges ⁊  
 ouer-come ſolde ligge.  
 for hit were kene cnihtes ⁊  
 ohte men and wiþte.  
 Hii munepede hire ſtedes ⁊  
 to-gadere hii gonne ride.  
 fuſden feondliche ⁊  
 þat fur him<sup>3</sup> ſparng<sup>4</sup> after.  
 Arthur ſmot Frolle ⁊  
 mid ſwiþe ſtronge mayne. 20  
 vp þan ſeald heȝe ⁊  
 þat he to grunde fulle.  
 and þe ſtede þat was god ⁊ [c.2.]

they couched their shafts, *the* royal knights; they urged their steeds,—  
 'good [goodly] knights they were. Never was he found in ever any land,  
 any man so wise, that should know it ere that *time*, whether (which) of  
 the kings should lie overcome; for 'both they [it] were keen knights,  
 brave men and active, 'mickle men in might, and in force exceeding  
 strong.' They made ready their steeds; 'and' together [they] gan  
 ride; rushed fiercely, *so* that fire sprang after them! Arthur smote  
 Frolle with might excessive strong, upon the high shield, [*so* that it  
 fell to *the* ground]; and the steed that was good leapt out in the flood.

<sup>1</sup> wit-ful?<sup>2</sup> heom?<sup>3</sup> ham?<sup>4</sup> sprang?<sup>5</sup> A line is here deficient.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

leop ut i þe ulod.  
 Arður ut mid his sweorde :  
 balu wes a þan orde.  
 and puinden uppen Frolle :  
 þer he wes an ulode.  
 ær heore cōp weore :  
 icumen to þan ænde.  
 Ah Frolle mid honde :  
 igræp hif spere longe.  
 and kept Arður anan :  
 10 alfe he aneouft com.  
 and þene stede balde :  
 smat i þere breofte.  
 þat þat spere þurh raf :  
 and Arður adun draf.  
 þa araf þe mon-drem :  
 þat þe uolde dunede a-ʒen.  
 aqueðen þa weolcne :  
 for reme of þan uolke.  
 þær Br<sup>u</sup>ttes wolden :  
 20 ouer water buʒen.  
 ʒif Arður up ne sturte :  
 stercliche sone.  
 and igræp hif sceld godne :  
 ileired mid golde.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

leop vt in þane flod.  
 Arthur vp mid his spere :  
 balu was on þan orde.  
 and pungde vppen Frolle :  
 þar he was on grunde.  
  
 Ac Frolle mid his honde :  
 igrop his spere longe.  
 10 and kepte Arthur anon :  
 afe he a-neoufte com.  
 and þare stede balde :  
 smot in þare breofte.  
 þat þe spere þorh rof :  
 and Arthur a-dun drof.  
 þo a-rof þe mannef drem :  
 þat þe wolkne dunede aʒen.  
  
 20 þar Bruttus wolde :  
 ouer water bouwe.  
 ʒef Arthur vp ne storte :  
 starcliche swiþe.  
 and igrop his seald godne :  
 ileyred mid golde.

Arthur 'out [up] with his 'sword [spear],—mischief was on the point,—and struck upon Frolle, where he was 'in *the* flood [on *the* ground], 'ere their combat were come to the end.' But Frolle with [his] hand grasped his long spear, and observed Arthur anon, as he came nigh, and smote the bold steed in the breast, *so* that the spear pierced through, and Arthur down drove. Then arose the multitudes clamor, that the 'earth [welkin] dinned again, 'the welkin resounded for shout of the folk.' There would *the* Britons over *the* water pass, if Arthur had not started up very quickly, and grasped his good shield, adorned with gold, and against Frolle, with 'hostile glances

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

and to-ȝaines Frolle ⁊  
 mid feondliche lechen.  
 breid biforen breosten ⁊  
 godne sceld brade.  
 And Frolle him to fufden ⁊  
 mid his feond ræfe.  
 and his fweord up ahof ⁊  
 and a-dun riht floh.  
 and smat an Arðures sceld ⁊  
 þat he wond a þene feld. 10  
 þe helm an his hæuede ⁊  
 and his hereburne.  
 gō to falsie ⁊  
 foren an his hafde.  
 & he wunde afeng ⁊  
 feouwer unchene long.  
 heo ne þuhte him noht sær ⁊  
 for heo næs na mare.  
 þat blod orn a-dū ⁊  
 ouer al his breoste. 20  
 Arður wes abolȝe ⁊  
 fwiðe an his heorte.  
 and his fweord Caliburne ⁊  
 swipte mid maine. [hælm ⁊ swipte mid maȝne.  
 and smat Frolle uppen þæne  
 þat he atwa helden.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and to-ȝenes Frolle ⁊  
 mid starcliche maine.  
 breid bi-vore breoste ⁊  
 his gode seald brode.  
 And Frolle to him reafde ⁊  
 mid his feond reafes.  
 and vt droh his gode fweord ⁊  
 and a-dun swipte.  
 and smot vp Arthur his sealde ⁊  
 þat he fleh in þane felde. 10  
 þe healm on his hefd ⁊  
 and his hereburne.  
 þat he gan to faufie ⁊  
 a-forn neȝein his hefd.  
 and he wunde onderfeng ⁊  
 four vnchene lang.  
 hit ne þohte him noht for:  
 for þe wonde naf na mor.  
 þat blod orn a-dun ⁊  
 oueral his breoste. 20  
 Arthur was a-bolwe ⁊  
 swiȝe on his heorte.  
 and his fweord Caliburne ⁊ [c. 111.  
 c. 1.]  
 and smot Frolle vppe þan helm ⁊  
 þat he atwo to-ȝeode.

[strong force] cast before *his* breast [his] good broad shield. And Frolle to him rushed with his fierce assault, and 'up heaved [out drew] his [good] sword, and struck down 'right,' and smote [vp] on 'Arthurs [Arthur his] shield, *so* that it 'fell [flew] on the field; the helm on his head, and his mail [that it] gan to give way, in front of his head; and he received *a* wound four inches long;—it seemed not to him sore, for 'it [the wound] was no more;—the blood ran down over all his breast. Arthur was enraged greatly in his heart, and his sword Caliburne swung with main, and smote

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þurh ut þere burne-hod ⁊  
 þat hit at his breofste at-ftod.  
 þa feol Frolle ⁊  
 folde to grunde.  
 uppen þan graf-bedde ⁊  
 his goft he bi-læfde.  
 þa Bruttas lohzen ⁊  
 ludere stefuene. [f. 139. c. 1.]  
 and leoden to fleonen ⁊  
 feōdliche swiðe. 10  
 Ardur<sup>1</sup> þe riche ⁊  
 wende to londe.  
 and þus cleopien agon ⁊  
 aðeleft kingen.  
 Whær ært þu Walwain ⁊  
 monne me leofest.  
 Heot þas Rom-wæren alle ⁊  
 mid griðen liðen heonne.  
 ælc mō bruke his ham ⁊  
 fwulc godd hit him on. 20  
 hat ælcne mon halde grið ⁊  
 uppen leome & uppen lif.  
 and ich hit wulle dihten ⁊

þorh vt þane brunie-hod ⁊  
 þat at þe breofste hit a-ftod.  
 þo ful Frolle ⁊  
 dun to þan grunde.  
 vp on þan grafe ⁊  
 his goft he bi-leuede.  
 þo Bruttas lowen ⁊  
 loudere stemne.  
 and þat oþer folk to fleonde ⁊  
 feondeliche swiþe.  
 Arthur þe riche ⁊  
 wende to londe.  
 and cleopie agan ⁊  
 to his maȝ Waweȝn.  
 Hot þis mē alle ⁊  
 mid griþe wende hinne.  
 ech man brouke his hom ⁊  
 þat god him aleneþ.  
 20  
 and ich ȝam wole dihte ⁊

Frolle upon the helm, so that it parted in two; throughout the burnys-  
 hood, so that at 'his [the] breast it (the sword) stopt. Then fell Frolle  
 [down] to [the] ground; upon the grass-'bed' his ghost he left. Then  
 laughed *the* Britons, with loud voice; and 'people [the other folk] *gan* to  
 fly exceeding quickly. Arthur the powerful went to land, and 'thus' gan  
 to call, 'noblest of kings: "Where art thou, [to his relative] Walwain,  
 'dearest of men to me?' Command these 'Rome'-men all with peace to  
 depart hence; each man enjoy his home, 'as [that] God granteth 'it'  
 him; 'order each man to hold peace, upon *pain* of limb and upon life';  
 and I will 'it [them] order to day a se'nnight; command 'this folk then

<sup>1</sup> R. Arður.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

to-dæi a feouennihte.

to-dai a foueniht.

hat þif folc þenne ⁊

hot ȝam wēde hinne ⁊

liðen al to-somne ⁊

alle to-gaderef.

and cumen to me feoluen ⁊

and comen to mi feolue ⁊

þæ bet heom scal iwurden<sup>1</sup>.

þe bet ȝam fal iworþe.

Heo scullen me mō-radene ⁊

Hii folle hire manradene ⁊

mid mofcipe<sup>2</sup> frēmē.

mid manfipe bi-take.

and ich heom wulle holden ⁊

and ich ȝam wolle holde ⁊

a mine onwolden.

in mine onwolde.

and fetten i leode ⁊

10

and fetten þan folke ⁊

laȝen swiðe gode.

lawes fwiþe gode.

For nu scullen Romanifce laȝe ⁊

For nou folle Romaniffe lawes ⁊

to þan grude<sup>3</sup> reofen.

to þan grunde falle.

þa iuurn here ⁊

þat ivorn here ⁊

stoden mid Frolle.

stode mid Frolle.

þe lið on æite of-flaȝen ⁊

þat liþ in þan ȝllond of-slawe ⁊

and idon of lif-daȝen.

and idon of lifdaȝe.

Her after ful fœ ⁊

Her after ful sone ⁊

scal hif cun of Rome.

fal his cun of Rome.

heren tidinge ⁊

20

ihere tȝdinge ⁊

of Arðure þan kige.

of Arthur þan kinge.

for ich heom wulle wið speken ⁊

for ich þenche wiþ ȝam speke ⁊

and Rome walles to-breken.

and Rome walles to-breke.

&amp; munegie heom hu king Belin ⁊

and munéȝi of king Belȝn ⁊

Bruttes ladde þider in.

[c.2.]

þat Bruttus ladde þider in.

to march [them to go hence] all together, and come to myself,—the better *it* shall be for them. They shall 'perform [give their] homage 'to me' with honor, and I will hold them in my sovereignty, and set laws most good 'among *the* people [to the folk]. For now shall *the* Romanish laws fall to the ground, that before stood here with Frolle, who lieth alain in [the] island, and deprived of life-day. Hereafter full soon shall his kindred of Rome hear tidings of Arthur the king, for I 'will [think to] speak with them, and break down Rome walls, and remind 'them how [of] king Belin,

<sup>1</sup> iwurðen ?<sup>2</sup> monfcipe ?<sup>3</sup> grunde ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and iwon him þa londes alle ⁊  
 þat ſtondeð into Rome.  
 Arður beh to þan ȝæte ⁊  
 forn at þere burȝe.  
 comen wit-fulle men ⁊  
 þe þa burh biwuften.  
 and Arður letten binnen ⁊  
 mid alle his monnen.  
 bitahten him halles ⁊  
 bitahten him caſtles.  
 bitahten him ful iwif ⁊  
 al þa burh of Paris.  
 þer wes muchel bliſſe ⁊  
 mid Brutifce uolke.  
 þe dæi fæh to burhȝe ⁊  
 þe Arður ifet hafde.  
 com al þa mō-weorede ⁊  
 and his men bicomē.  
 Arður nom his duȝeðe ⁊  
 and atwa heom to-dalde.  
 and þa haluendæle ⁊  
 Howeſe bitætte.  
 and hehte hine uaren fone ⁊

10

and alle þe londes awan ⁊  
 þat liggeþ to Rome.  
 Arthur wende to borewe ⁊  
 þar þe ȝateſ were.  
 and<sup>1</sup> alle þe wit-fulle men ⁊  
 þat þane borh wiſte.  
 and lette Arthur binne.  
 mid alle his manne.

20

hii toke him foliwiſ ⁊  
 al þe borh of Paris.  
 þar was mochel bliſſe ⁊  
 mid Bruttiſſe folke.  
 þe dai nehlehte ⁊  
 þat Arthur ifet hadde.  
 comen alle þe men ⁊  
 and his men bi-come.  
 Arthur nam his cnihtes ⁊  
 and atwo to-dealde.  
 and þat haluendeale ⁊  
 Howel he bi-tahte.  
 and bad him wende fone ⁊

[who] led *the* Britons in thither, and won 'to him' all the lands that 'stand unto [lie to] Rome. Arthur proceeded to 'the gate, before the burgh [*the* burgh, where the gates were; and all the] wise men (magistrates) that took charge of the burgh, came, and let Arthur within, with all his men; 'delivered to him *the* halls, delivered to him *the* castles'; [they] delivered to him, full surely, all the burgh of Paris,—there was mickle bliss with *the* British folk! The day 'came to burgh [nighed], that Arthur had set; came all the 'populace [men], and his men became. Arthur took his 'folk [knights], and divided them in two; and the half part [he] gave to Howel, and bade him march soon, with the mickle host, with *the* British men

<sup>1</sup> camen?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

mid muchele þere uerde.  
 mid Brutisce mōnen ⁊  
 londes iwīnen.  
 Howel dude al fwa ⁊  
 alfe Arður hine hehte.  
 he biwon Barri ⁊  
 and alle þa londes þer bi.  
 Angou and Turuine ⁊  
 Aluerne and Gascunne.  
 and þa hafuenes alle ⁊  
 þe herden to þan londes.  
 Guitard þe duc hæhte ⁊  
 þe Peýtouwe ahte.  
 he nolde buȝen Howele ⁊  
 ah heold to-ȝæines him æuere.  
 nolde he ȝirnen na grið ⁊ [f. 139<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 ah Howel him faht wið.  
 ofte he uolc ualde ⁊  
 and ofte he ulem makede.  
 Howel al þat lond weste ⁊  
 & of-floh þa leode.  
 þa ifæh Guitard ⁊  
 þe i Peitou wes lauerd.

*Guitar.*

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid mochele þare ferde.  
 mid Bruttusse manne ⁊  
 londes a-winne.  
 Al dude Howel ⁊  
 afe Arthur hine heahte.  
 he b wan<sup>1</sup> Berri ⁊  
 and alle þe londes þar bi.  
 Angoȝe and Turuine ⁊  
 Aluerne and Gascoȝne.  
 10 and þe homes alle ⁊  
 þat leieþ to þan ilke londes.  
 Witard þe duc hehte ⁊  
 þat Peýto hahte.  
 he nolde to Howel bouwe ⁊  
 ac heold hine mid fihte.  
 he ne ȝornde no griþ ⁊  
 ac euere he faht Howel wiþ.  
 ofte he folk fulde ⁊  
 and ofte he fleom makede.  
 20 Howel þat lon<sup>2</sup> weahte ⁊  
 and of-floh þe leode. [f. 112. c. 1.]  
 þo ifah Gwitard ⁊  
 þat in Peýto was louerd.

to conquer lands. Howel did all 'thus' as Arthur him bade; he conquered Berry, and all the lands thereby; Anjou and Touraine, Alverne and Gascony, and all the 'havens [habitations], that 'belonged [lay] to the [same] lands. Guitard hight the duke, who possessed Poitou; he would not submit to Howel, but held 'ever against him [him with fight]; he would ask no peace, but 'Howel fought with him [ever he fought with Howel]; oft he felled *the* folk, and oft he made flight. Howel wasted 'all' the land, and slew the people. When Guitard saw, who was lord in Poitou, that all 'his

<sup>1</sup> R. bi-wan.<sup>2</sup> lond ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þat alle his leoden ⁊  
 him to lose eodē.  
 wið Howele he grið made ⁊  
 mid al his monweorede.  
 and bicom Arðures mon ⁊  
 þas aðele kingen.  
 Arður him warð liðe ⁊  
 and luuede hine swiðe.  
 & hehte hine his lond bruken ⁊  
 for he him bæh to foten. 10  
 þa hafde Howel ⁊  
 hæhliche agūnen.  
 Arður hafde France ⁊  
 and freoliche heo sette.  
 he nū þa hif ferde ⁊  
 and wende ȝeōð þan ærde.  
 to Burguine he wēde ⁊  
 and sette hit an his honde.  
 and seodðen<sup>1</sup> he gon liðen ⁊  
 in to Loherne. 20  
 and alle þa londas ⁊  
 sette him feolue an honde.  
 al þat Arður ifæh ⁊  
 al hit him to bæh.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat alle þe leode ⁊  
 him to lose eode.  
 wiþ Howel he griþ made ⁊  
 mid al his manferde.  
 and bi-com Arthur his man ⁊  
 baldest alre kinge.  
 Arthur him warþ liþe ⁊  
 and louede hine swiþe.  
 and hehte him hif lond brouki ⁊  
 for he him beh to fote.  
 þo hadde Howel ⁊  
 hehliche a-gonne.

**A**rthur hadde France ⁊  
 and freoliche hit sette.  
 he nam þo hif ferde ⁊  
 and wende oueral þan erþe.  
 to Borgoïne he wende ⁊  
 and sette hit mid hif manne.  
 and suppe he gan wende ⁊  
 into Loherenne. 20  
 and alle þe londas ⁊  
 he nam to his hondes.  
 al þat Arthur ifeh ⁊  
 al hit him to beh.

[F]rance.

[B]ur-  
guine.

[the] people went him to loss, with Howel he made peace, with all his host, and became 'Arthurs [Arthur his] man, 'the noble king [boldest of all kings]. Arthur became gracious to him, and loved him greatly, and bade him enjoy his land, for (because) he bowed to his feet;—then had Howel nobly succeeded! Arthur had France, and freely it settled; he took then his host, and marched over [all] the territory; to Burgundy he proceeded, and set it 'in his hand [with his men]; and afterwards he gan fare into Lorraine, and all the lands 'set to himself in hand [he took in his hands]; all that Arthur saw, all it submitted to him; and afterwards he went, full truly,

<sup>1</sup> seodðen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and feoððen he wende ful iwif ⁊	and fuppe he wende foliwis ⁊
aȝain hā to Paris.	aȝen in to Paris.
þa hafde Arður Frāce ⁊	þo Arthur hadde France ⁊
mid gode griðe aſtalde.	after his wille.
iſet and iſemed ⁊	
þat ſel was an þeoden.	
þa hehte he þa cnihtes alden ⁊	þo hehte he þe cnihtes ⁊
þa he hafde ȝare at-halden.	þat þar mid him were.
þat heo to þan kinge comen ⁊ [c. 2.]	þat lang hadde ileued ⁊
and heore læn a-fængē. 10	and in fihte moche ilofed.
for heo ſeole ȝeren ⁊	þat hii to him come ⁊
hafden ibon <sup>1</sup> hiſ iueren.	and ȝeſtes a-fenge.
Summen he ȝæf lond ⁊	Somme he ȝaf lond ⁊
ſummen ſeoluer and gold.	ſomme ſeoluer and gold.
ſummen he ȝæf caſtleſ ⁊	ſomme he ȝaf caſtles ⁊
ſūmen he ȝaf claðes.	ſomme he ȝaf cloþes.
hehte heom uaren an wūne ⁊	
and beten heore ſunnen.	
for-bed heom to berne wapmen <sup>2</sup> ⁊	
for ælde heom eode ouenan. 20	
and hehte heom luuien ſwiðe ⁊	and bad ȝam loueie ſwiþe ⁊
godd in þiſſen liue.	godd in þiſſe liſue. [c. 2.]
þat he an ende ful iwis ⁊	

again 'home [in] to Paris. When Arthur had France 'established with good peace [after his will], 'settled and composed, so that prosperity was among *the* folk,' then ordered he the 'old' knights, that 'he had long retained [were there with him, that long had remained, and in fight much *had* lost], that they should come to 'the king [him], and receive 'their reward [gifts]; 'for they many years had been his companions.' To some he gave land, some silver and gold; to some he gave castles, some he gave clothes; 'bade them go in joy, and amend their sins; forbade them to bear weapon, because age upon them went,' and bade them love God greatly in this life, 'that he at *the* end, full surely, might give them his paradise,' that they

<sup>1</sup> ibeon ?<sup>2</sup> wapnen ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ȝefen heom his paradis.  
 þæt heo mosten bruken ⁊  
 blisse mid ænglen.  
 Alle þa cnihtes alde ⁊  
 foren to heore londe.  
 and þa ȝunge bilæfden ⁊  
 mid leouen heore kigen.  
 Alle þa niȝe ȝere ⁊  
 Arður wuneden þere.  
 niȝen ȝere he heold France ⁊ 10  
 freoliche on hōde.  
 and feoððen na lengere ⁊  
 þat lond he ne walde.  
 Ah þa while þe þat kinelond ⁊  
 stod an Arðures hond.  
 þinges feolcuðe ⁊  
 fizen to þere þeode.  
 monienne modfulne mon ⁊  
 Arður makede<sup>1</sup> milde.  
 and mōiēne hehne mon ⁊ 20  
 he helde to his foten.  
 Hit wes an ane æstere ⁊  
 þat men hafden iuafe.  
 þat Arður an æstere dæi hafde ⁊

þat hii mihten brouke ⁊  
 blisse mid englene.  
 Alle þe cnihtes holde ⁊  
 wende to hire londe.  
 and þe ȝonge bi-lefde ⁊  
 mid leue hire kinge.  
 Alle þe niȝe ȝere ⁊  
 Arthur wonede þere.  
 niȝe ȝer he heold France ⁊  
 freoliche an honde.  
 and suppe no lengere ⁊  
 þat lond he ne wolde.  
 Ac þe wile þat þe kinelond ⁊  
 stod in Arthures hond.  
 þinges felcoupe ⁊  
 come to þan folke.  
 many one godne man ⁊  
 he makede milde.  
 and many ane hehne man ⁊  
 he heold to his fote.  
 Hit was in on easter ⁊  
 þat men hadde ifafe.  
 þat al Arthur his folk ⁊

might enjoy bliss with *the* angels. All the old knights proceeded to their land, and the young remained with their dear king. All the nine years Arthur dwelt there; nine years he held France freely in hand, and afterwards no longer the land he governed. But the while that the kingdom stood in Arthurs hand, marvellous things came to the folk; many 'proud [a good] man 'Arthur [he] made mild, and many a high man he held at his feet! It was on an Easter, that men had fasted, that 'Arthur on Easter-day had his noble men together [all Arthur his folk was gathered to him];

<sup>1</sup> *At first written make, but de interlined by the original hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

his aȝele men at-somne. [f. 140. c. 1.] to him was igadered.

al þat hæhste mon-cun ⁊

þat herden ī to Francen.

&amp; of alle þan londen ⁊

þe þider in læien.

þer he ȝette his cnihten ⁊

alle heore irihten.

elc<sup>2</sup> ane he ȝif æhte ⁊

alfe he iærned hafde.

þuſ hī iquað Arður ⁊

aȝeleſt kingē.

Kæy. Kæi biſih þe hiderward ⁊

þu ært min haxte ſtiward.

her ich Angou ȝiue þe ⁊

for þire wel-dede.

and alle þa irihte ⁊

þe þiden<sup>3</sup> in beoð idihte.

Beduer. Cneole me to Beduer ⁊

þu art min hexte birle her.

þa while þa ich beo an liue ⁊ 20

luuien ich þe wulle.

her ich ȝiue þe Neuftrie ⁊

aneuſte mire riche.

and he þare eche cnihtes ⁊

he<sup>1</sup> ȝef alle hire rihtes.

ech one he ȝaf heahste ⁊

aſe hii i-fareued hadde.

10 þo him ſaide Arthur ⁊

baldeſt alre kinge.

Bi-ſih þe Kæy hiderward ⁊

þou hart min oweſtiward.

her ich Angoye þe ȝefue ⁊

for þine wel deade.

Cneole to me Beduer ⁊

þou hart min hexste borle her.

þe wile ich ham a-liue ⁊

louie ich þe wolle.

her ich þe ȝeue Neuftrie ⁊

nexste mine riche.

'all the highest persons that belonged to France, and of all the lands that lay thither in'; [and] there he gave 'his knights [each knight] all their rights; to each one he gave possessions, as 'he had earned [they had deserved]. Thus 'quoſ [ſaid] him Arthur, 'nobleſt of [boldeſt of all] kings: "Kay, look thee hitherward; thou art mine 'highest [own] ſteward; here I give thee Anjou, for thy good deeds, 'and all the rights that thither in are ſet.' Kneel to me, Beduer; thou art my highest cup-bearer here; the while 'that' I am alive, love thee I will. Here I give thee Neuftrie, neareſt to my realm." Then hight Neuftrie *the land* that now hight Normandy.

<sup>1</sup> *Superfluous?*<sup>2</sup> *aelc, pr. m., but a erased.*<sup>3</sup> *R. þider.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þa hehte Neufst'e ⁊  
 þat nu hatte Normandie.  
 þe ilke tweien eorles weoren ⁊  
 Ardures<sup>1</sup> deore men.  
 at rede and at rune ⁊  
 an æuer ælche tune.  
 þa ȝet him feide Arður ⁊  
 aðelest kingen.  
 Wend þe hider Howeldin ⁊  
 þu ært mi mon and mi cun. 10  
 haue þu Bulune ⁊  
 and bruc his on wunne.  
 Cumme ner Borel ⁊  
 þu art cniht wif and war.  
 her ich þene Mans þe ⁊  
 mid monſcipe bitæche.  
 and bruc þu hiſ on wunne ⁊  
 for þire wel-dede.  
 þuſ Arður þe king delde ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 hiſ drihtliche londes. 20  
 after heore iwurhte ⁊  
 for he heom þuhte wurðe.  
 þa weoren bliðe ſpelles ⁊

þo hehte Neuftrie ⁊  
 þat nou hatte Normandie.  
 þe ilke tweie eorles weren ⁊  
 Arthur hiſ deore men.  
 at reade and at rounne ⁊  
 in euereche tounne.  
 þe ȝet him feide Arthur ⁊  
 wiſeſt alre kinge. [f. 112<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  
 Wend þe hider Holdeyn ⁊  
 þou hart min man and min cun.  
 haue þou Boloynne ⁊  
 and brouk hit on winne.  
 Com me near Borel ⁊  
 þou hart cniht wiſ and war.  
 here ich þe þane Mans ⁊  
 mid manſipe bi-take.  
 and brouc hit on winne ⁊  
 for þine wel-deade.  
 þuſ Arthur þe king ⁊  
 dealde hiſ londes.  
 after hire deades ⁊  
 for he ham wiſte worþe.  
 þo weren bliþe ſpelles ⁊

*Neuftrie.**Howeldin.**Borel.*

The same two earls were 'Arthurs [Arthur his] dear men, at counsel and at communing, in every place. The yet said him Arthur, 'noblest of [wisest of all] kings: "Wend thee hither, 'Howeldin [Holdeyn]; thou art my man and my kin; have thou Boulogne, and possess it in prosperity. Come near, Borel; thou art knight wise and wary; here I deliver thee the Mans, with honor, and possess 'thou' it in prosperity, for thy good deeds." Thus Arthur the king dealt his 'lordly' lands, after their 'actions [deeds]; for he 'thought [knew] them *to be* worthy. Then were blithe speeches in 'Arthurs

<sup>1</sup> R. Arðures.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

in Arðuref hallen.  
 þer wes harepinge and song :  
 þe<sup>1</sup> weoren bliffen imong.  
 þa æstre wes aʒonge :  
 and Aueril eode of tune.  
 and þ̃ graf was riue :  
 and þat water wes liðe.  
 and men gunnen spilien :  
 þat wes Mæi at tune.  
 Arður nom hif folc feire : 10  
 and to þere sæ uerde.  
 and lette bonien hif ſcipen :  
 wel mid þan bezften.  
 & ferde to þiffen londe :  
 and up cō at Londen.  
 up he com at Lūdene :  
 leoden to bliffen.  
 Al hit wef bliðe :  
 þat hine iſæh mid eʒen.  
 fone heo gunnen ſige : 20  
 of Arðure þan kinge.  
 and of þere wurðſcipe muchele :  
 þe he iwunne hafde.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

in Arthur his halles.  
 þar was harping an ſong :  
 þare weren bliffes among.  
 þo eafter was a-gon :  
 and Auerel eode of toune.  
 and þat gras was riue :  
 and þat water lipe.  
 and men faide<sup>2</sup> :  
 þat Maȝ was in toune.  
 Arthur nam his ferde : 10  
 and to ſéé wende.  
 and lette banni his ſipes :  
 wel mid þan beſte.  
 and wende to þiſſe londe :  
 and vp com at Londene.  
 Al hit was blipe :  
 þat hine iſeh mid ehʒene.  
 ſone hii gonne ſige : 20  
 of Arthur þan kinge.  
 and of þe worſipe :  
 þat he awonne hadde.

[Arthur his] halls ; there was harping and song, there were blisses among !  
 When Easter was gone, and April went from town, and the grass was riſe,  
 and the water 'was' calm, and men 'gan to ſay [ſaid in ſpeech] that Maȝ  
 was in town, Arthur took his 'fair folk [hoſt], and proceeded to 'the' ſea,  
 and cauſed his ſhips to be aſſembled, well with the beſt ; and ſailed to  
 this land, and came up at London ; 'up he came at London, to *the* bliſs of  
*the* people.' All it was bliſthe that ſaw him with eyes ; ſoon they gan to  
 ſing of Arthur the king, and of the 'great' worſhip that he had won.

<sup>1</sup> R. þer.<sup>2</sup> faide in rounne ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þer custe uader þene fune ⁊  
 and feide to him welcume.  
 dohter þa moder ⁊  
 broðer þene oðer.  
 sufter custe sufter ⁊  
 þa softere heom wes an heorten.  
 A monie hundred stūden<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 stoden bi þan weie.  
 folc frainige<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 of feole cūne þīgē.  
 and cnihtes heom talden ⁊ [f.140<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 of heore onwalden.  
 and heore ȝeolp makeden ⁊  
 of muchele biȝeten.  
 Ne mihte na mon fuggē ⁊  
 nære he na swa hende mon.  
 of halue þan bliffen ⁊  
 þa weoren mid þan Brutten.  
 Ælc ferde an his neode ⁊  
 ȝeond þas kine-þeode.  
 from burhȝe to burhȝe ⁊  
 mid bliffen uniuoȝe.  
 and þus hit ane stude<sup>3</sup> ⁊

þar custe fader þane fone ⁊  
 and faide to him wolcome.  
 broþer þan oþer ⁊  
 softer þane broþer.  
 In many hundred stude ⁊  
 stode bi þan weye.  
 þat folk axinge ⁊  
 of many cunnes þing.  
 and cnihtes ȝam tolde ⁊ [c.2.]  
 of hire anwolde.  
 and hire ȝelp makede ⁊  
 of mochele bi-ȝeate.  
 Ne mihte no man segge ⁊  
 in þisse worle-riche.  
 of haluendel þe blisse ⁊  
 þat were þo mid Bruttus.  
 and þus one stund ⁊

There kissed father the son, and said to him welcome; 'daughter the mother,' brother the other; sister 'kissed sister [the brother]; 'the softer it was to them in heart.' In many hundred places [the] folk stood by the way, asking of things of many kind; and *the* knights told them of their conquests, and made their boast of mickle booty. Might no man say, 'were he man ever so skilled [in this worlds-realm], of half the blisses that were [then] with 'the' Britons! 'Each fared at his need over this kingdom, from burgh to burgh, with great bliss'; and thus 'it' a time stood in the same *wise*,—bliss was in 'Britain [this land] with the bold king.

<sup>1</sup> studen?<sup>2</sup> frainige?<sup>3</sup> stunde?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

stod a þan ilke.  
 blisse wes on Brutene ⁊  
 mid balde þan kinge.  
 þa æstre wes aȝeonge ⁊  
 and fumer com to londe.  
 þa nom Arður his red ⁊  
 wið reche hiſ mōnē.  
 þat he wolde inne Karliū ⁊  
 bere his crune him ou.  
 and a White-funedæi ⁊  
 hiſ folc þer ifomnie.  
 A þen ilke dāȝen ⁊  
 mē gunnē demen.  
 þat nes i nane londe ⁊  
 burh nan ſwa hende.  
 na ſwa wide cuð ⁊  
 ſwa Karliun bi Uſke.  
 buten hit weoren þa burh riche ⁊  
 þe Rome iſ ihaten.  
 þa ȝet wes mid þan kinge ⁊  
 moni mon an londe.  
 þat quidde þa burh of Karlion ⁊  
 ricchere þene Rome.  
 and þat Uſke weore ⁊  
 ſeleſt alre wateren.  
 Medewes þer weoren brade ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

hit stod a þan ilke.  
 blisse was in þiſſe londe ⁊  
 mid balde þan kȳnge.  
 þo easter was agon ⁊  
 and ſomer com to tounne.  
 þo nam Arthur his read ⁊  
 wiþ riche his manne.  
 þat he wolde in Cairlion ⁊  
 beare his croune him on.  
 to þan Witeſonneday ⁊  
 hiſ folk ſolde be hi-gadered.  
 In þan ilke tȳme ⁊  
 men gonne deame.  
 þat nas in none londe ⁊  
 borh al ſo hende.  
 ne ſo couþ wide ⁊  
 ſo Cayrlion bi Vſke.  
 bote hit were þe borh riche ⁊  
 þat Rome hiſ ihote.  
 And ȝet was mid þan kȳnge ⁊  
 many man in londe.  
 þat held þe borh of Cayrlion ⁊  
 richere þane Rome.  
 and þat Vſke were ⁊  
 ſeleſt alre watere.  
 Medewes þar were brode ⁊

When Easter was gone, and summer come to 'land[town], then took Arthur his counsel, with his noble men, that he would in Kaerleon bear on him his crown, 'and on [at the] Whitsunday his folk 'there assemble [should be gathered]. In 'those days [that time] men gan deem, that 'no' burgh [all] so fair was [not] in any land, nor so widely known as Kaerleon by Uſk, unless it were the rich burgh that is named Rome. 'The [And] yet many a man was with the king in land, that 'pronounced [held] the burgh of Kaerleon richer than Rome, and that Uſk were *the* best of all waters.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

bihalues þere burhȝe.	[c. 2.]	bi-halues þare borewe.	
þer wes fiſc ⁊ þer wes fuȝel ⁊		þar was fiſc þar was fowel ⁊	
and fæierneſſe inoȝe.		and biſſef <sup>1</sup> inowe.	
þer wes wude and wilde deor ⁊		þar was wode and wilde deor ⁊	
wunder ane monie.		wonderliche manie.	
þer wes al þa murhðe ⁊		þar was al þe murthe ⁊	
þe æi mon mihte of þenche.		þat enȝ man mihte an þinche.	
Ah nauer ſeoððen Arður þider		Ac neuere ſuppe þat Arthur þider	
þa burh ſeoððe no ipæh.	[bæh ⁊ þe borh ſupþene þeh. [f. 113. c. 1.]]	[beh:	
no nauere ne <sup>2</sup> mæi ⁊	10	ne neuere more ne may ⁊	
bi-twene þiſ and domeſ-dæi.		bi-twix þiſ and domes-day.	
Sūme bokes fuggeð to iwiffe ⁊		Somme bokes ſeggeþ to iwiffe ⁊	
þat þa burh wes biwucched.		þat þe borh was i-wicched.	
and þæt iſ wel ifene ⁊		þat hiſ wel of fene ⁊	
ſoð þat hit funde.		ſoþ þat hit þinche.	
I þære burh weoren ⁊		In þare borh were ⁊	
twa munſtres ſwiðe mære.		tweie riche muneftres.	
þat an mūſtre wes of ſeint Aaron ⁊		þe on was of ſeint Aaron ⁊	Aaron.
þer inne wes muchel halidō.		þar in was many halidom.	
þat oðer of þan martir ſeint Juliæn ⁊		þe oþer of ſeint Julian ⁊	Julian.
þe heh iſ mid drihten.	21	þat heh hiſ mid drihte.	
þer weoren nunnan wel idon ⁊		þar in were nonnes wel idon ⁊	

Meadows there were broad, beside the burgh; there was fish, there was fowl, and 'fairness [blisses] enow; there was wood and wild deer, wondrous many; there was all the mirth that any man might think of. But never since [that] Arthur thither came, the burgh afterwards thrived, nor ever-[more] may, 'between [betwixt] this and dooms-day. Some books say certainly that the burgh was bewitched, and that is well seen (probable), sooth that it 'be [seem]. In the burgh were two minsters 'exceeding noble [rich]; one 'minster' was of Saint Aaron; therein was 'mickle [many] relique; the other of 'the martyr' Saint Julian, who is high with *the* Lord; there[in] were nuns good, many *a* high born woman. The bishops stool was at Saint

<sup>1</sup> *R.* bliffes.<sup>2</sup> *Interlined by a second hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

moni heh iboren wifmon.	many heh bore womman.
þe biscop stole wes at sein <sup>1</sup> Aarō ⁊	þe bissopes stol was at feint Aaron ⁊
þer wes moni fel mon.	þar in was many canoun.
canunes þer weoren ⁊	
þe cuð weoren widen.	
þer wes moni god clarc ⁊	þar was mani god cleark ⁊
þe wel cuðe a leore.	þat moche couþe of lore.
muchel heo ferden mid þancrafte ⁊	moche hii vfeðe þat craft ⁊
to lokien in þan leofte.	to lokie in þan luste.
to lokien i þan steorren ⁊	10
nehȝe and feorren.	
þe craft if ihate ⁊	þe craft his ihote astronomie ⁊
Astronomie.	in oþer kunnes speche.
wel ofte heo þan kige ⁊	wel ofte hii þan kinge tolde ⁊
seide of feole þinge.	of mani þinges.
heo cuddē him on leoden ⁊	
what him fculde ilimpē. [f. 141. c. 1.]	
Swulc wes þe burh of Karliun ⁊	Soch was þe borh of Caȝrlion ⁊
þer wef muchel ricchedom.	þar was moche richedom.
þer wes muchel blisse ⁊	20
mid bifie þan kinge.	
þe king nom hif fonde ⁊	þe king nam his fonde ⁊
and fende ȝeōð hif londe.	and fende to many londes.

Aaron; there[in] was many *a* 'good man [canon]; 'canons there were, who known were wide'; there was many *a* good clerk, who 'well [much] could (were well skilled) in learning. Much they used the craft to look in the sky; 'to look in the stars, nigh and far';—the craft is named Astronomy [in speech of other kind]. Well often they 'said [told] of many things to the king; 'they made known to him what should happen to him in *the* land.' Such was the burgh of Kaerleon; there was much wealth; 'there was much bliss with the busy king.' The king took his messengers, and sent 'over his land; [to many lands, and] bade come 'earls; [kings, and]

<sup>1</sup> feint?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

hæhte cumen eorlef ⁊  
 hehte cumen beornef.  
 hehte cumen kinges ⁊  
 and æc here-ðringes.  
 hehte cumen biscoppes ⁊  
 hehte cumen cnihtes.  
 hæhte alle þa freo-men ⁊  
 þauere<sup>1</sup> weoren an londe.

bi heore life hehte heom beon ⁊  
 a White-funedæi at Kærleon. 10  
 Cnihtes gūnen riden ⁊  
 vnimete whiden.  
 riden touward Kairliun ⁊  
 of feole cunne londen.  
 To þan White-funedæie ⁊  
 þer com þe king Angel.  
 king of Scotlonde ⁊  
 mid sceone hif folke.  
 moni wes þe faire mon ⁊  
 þe folgede þan kingen. 20  
 Of Murieue kīg Vrien ⁊  
 and hif fæire sunne Ywæin.  
 Stater king of Suðwales ⁊

and hehte come kinges ⁊  
 and hehte come eorles.  
 bissopes and clearkes ⁊  
 cnihtes and fweines.

bi hire lifue he hehte ȝam beon ⁊  
 a Witfondaȝ at Cayrlȝon.  
 Cnihtes gonne ride ⁊  
 onimete wide.  
 and come to Cairlȝon ⁊  
 of many cunne londen. [c. 2.]  
 To þan Witfoneday ⁊  
 com þe king Angel.  
 king of Scotlonde ⁊  
 mid kene hif folke.

*Kairliun.**Angel.*

Of Morayne þe kin<sup>2</sup> Vrien ⁊  
 and his faire sone ȝeuan.  
 Stater king of Supwales ⁊

*Vrien.*

bade come 'barons [earls]; 'bade come kings, and eke chieftains; bade come bishops, bade come knights [bishops and clerks, knights and swains]; 'bade all the free men that ever were in *the* land'; by their life [he] bade them be at Kaerleon on Whitsunday. Knights gan to ride exceeding wide, [and] 'rode toward [came to] Kaerleon from lands of many kind. At the Whitsunday 'there' came the king Angel, king of Scotland, with his 'fair [keen] folk; 'many was the fair man that followed the king'. Of Moray [the] king Urien, and his fair son Ywain; Stater, king of South-Wales,

<sup>1</sup> þa euere?<sup>2</sup> king?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

	and Cadwaðlan <sup>1</sup> king of Norð-	and Cadwal þan king of Norþwales.
<i>Cador.</i>	Cador eorl of Cořwale ⁊ [wales.	Cador eorle of Cornwale ⁊
	þa þe king luuede.	þat Arthur moche louede.
	Moruið of Glouchæstre ⁊	Morewiþ of Gloucestre ⁊
	Maurin of Winchæstre.	Maurin of Wichestre <sup>2</sup> .
<i>Gurguint.</i>	Gurguint eorl of Herford ⁊	Gorgwint eorl of Hereforde ⁊
	and Beof eorl of Oxeuord.	and Beofs eorl of Oxeneford.
	Gurfal þe balde ⁊	Curfal þe bolde ⁊
	from Baðe þer com ride.	fram Baþe þar com ride.
<i>Vrgent.</i>	Vrgent of Chæstre ⁊ [c. 2.] 10	Vrgent of Caſtre ⁊
	Jonataf of Dorcheſtre.	Jonathas of Dorcheſtre.
<i>Ar[nald.]</i>	Ærnald of Salefburi ⁊	Arnold of Salufburi ⁊
<i>Kinm[arc.]</i>	and Kinmarc of Cantuare-buri.	and Kinemark of Canterburi.
	Balien of Silechæstre ⁊	Balien of Cireceſtre ⁊
	Wigein of Leirchæstre.	Wigen of Leȝceſtre.
	Argal eorl of Warwic ⁊	Argal eorl of Warewike ⁊
	mid folk fwiðe fellic.	mid folke fwiþe fellich.
<i>Dunw[ale.]</i>	Dunwale Apries fune ⁊	Dunwale Apries fone ⁊
	and Kegein Elauðes fune.	and Kekeyn Elaupes fone.
	Kineuf þer <sup>3</sup> wes Coittes fune ⁊	Kȳneuf þat was Coȳtef fone ⁊
	& Cradoc Catelles fune. 21	and Cradoc Catellus fone.
<i>Ædla[n.]</i>	Ædlein Cledaukes fune ⁊	Aleȳn Cledaukes fone ⁊
	Grimarc Kinmarkes fune.	Trimarc Kinmarkes fone.

and Cadwal, the king of North-Wales; Cador, earl of Cornwall, whom 'the king [Arthur much] loved; Morvith of Gloucester; Maurin of Winchester; Gurguint, earl of Hereford, and Beof, earl of Oxford; Cursal the bold, from Bath there came riding; Urgent of Chester; Jonathas of Dorchester; Arnald of Salisbury, and Kinmare of Canterbury; Balien of 'Silchester [Cirencester]; Wigen of Leicester; Argal, earl of Warwick, with folk exceeding strange (*or* numerous); Dunwale, son of Apries, and Kegein, son of Elauth; Kineus, that was Coits son, and Cradoc, Catels son; 'Ædlein [Aleyn], Cledauks son; 'Grimarc [Trimarc], Kinmarks son;

<sup>1</sup> Cadwal þan ?<sup>2</sup> R. Winchestre.<sup>3</sup> þat ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Run Margoitt & Netan ⁊	Run Margoýt Nethan ⁊	<i>Run.</i>
Clofard Kicar and Aikan.	Gloffarc Kýngar and Aýcan.	
Kerin Neton and Peredur ⁊	Kerýn Neton and Peridur ⁊	<i>Kerin.</i>
Madoc Traher and Elidur.	Madoc Traharn and Elidur.	<i>Madoc.</i>
Þif weoren Arðures ⁊	Þis weren bolde ⁊	
aðele eorles.	Arthu <sup>1</sup> his eorlesf.	
and þa haxte þeines ohte ⁊	and þe hexfte men ⁊	
of alle þiffere þeode.	of al þiffe londe.	
wið uten þan beorēn ⁊	wiþ vte þe bolde ⁊	
of Arðuref borden.	at Arthuref borde.	
þa na man ne mihte ikennē ⁊	þat no man ne miht kenne ⁊	
ne al þat folc inemnen.	ne al þat folk nemni.	
þa weorē ærchebifcopes þreo ⁊	þoweren archebiffopes þreo ⁊	<sup>[f. 113<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]</sup>
inne þiffere þeode.	in þiffe kinelonde.	
inne Lundē and in Eouuerwic ⁊	ine Londene and in Euerwich ⁊	
and inne Karliun fein <sup>2</sup> Dubric.	and ine Cayrlion feint Dubrch <sup>3</sup> .	
he wes swiðe hali mon ⁊	he was swiþe holý man ⁊	
þurh alle þinge wel idon. [ftol ⁊	þorh alle þinge wel idon. [ftol ⁊	
To Lundene læi þe ærchebifcop	To Londene lay þe archebiffopes	
þe to Cantware-buri wes feoððe	þat to Cantelburi was fuþþe idon.	
feoððe Engliscmen ⁊ [idon.	þo þat Engleffe men ⁊	
þif lond heom iwunnen.	þis lond hadde awonne.	
To tellen þat folc of Kairliun ⁊	To telle þat folk of Cayrlion ⁊	

Run, Margoit, 'and' Netan; Clofard, Kincar, and Aican; Kerin, Neton, and Peredur; Madoc, Trahern, and Elidur. These were 'Arthurs noble [Arthur his bold] earls, and the highest 'thanes brave [men] of all this land, without (besides) the 'nobles of [bold men at] Arthurs board, that no man might ken, nor all the folk name. Then were archbishops three in this 'country [kingdom]; in London, and in York; and in Kaerleon, Saint Dubrich,—he was a man exceeding holy, through all things excellent! At London lay the archbishops stool, that to Canterbury was subsequently removed, 'after [when] that Englishmen had won 'to them' this land. To

<sup>1</sup> R. Arthur.<sup>2</sup> feint?<sup>3</sup> R. Dubrich.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

	ne mihte hit na mon idon.	ne mihte no man hit don.
<i>Gillomar.</i>	þer wes Gillomar þe king? [141 <sup>b</sup> .c.1.]	þar was Gillomar king?
	Irifce mōnen deorling.	Iriffe menne deorlȳng.
	Malueruf king of Iflonde?	Maluerus king of Islond?
<i>Doldanet.</i>	Doldanet king of Gutlonde.	Doldanet of Gutlond.
	Kinkailin of Friflonde?	king Calin of Friffelond?
	Æscil king of Denelōde.	Afcil king of Denenelond.
	þer wes Loð þe kene?	þar was Loth þe kene?
	þe kig wes bi Norðe.	þat king was bi Norþe.
<i>Gonwais.</i>	and Gonwæis Orcaneie king? 10	and Gonwas Orcaneyes king?
	utlaȝen deorling.	and many cnihtes mid him.
	þider com þe wilde?	þider com þe wilde?
	þe eorl of Builune.	þe eorl of Boloȳne.
	Læȝer wes ihatē?	
	and his leoden mid him.	
	of Flandres þe eorl Howeldin?	of Flandres þe eorl Holdein?
	of Chæstres <sup>1</sup> þe eorl Cherin.	of Chartres þe eorl Geryn.
	þeof ferede mid him?	
	al þat Frenſce moncun.	
	twalf eorles swiðe ræihe? 20	twelf eorles heȝe?
	þe rixleden ouer France.	þat rixlede in France.
	Guitart eorl of Peiters?	Gwitard eorl of Peȳters?
	Kæi þe orl of Angerf.	Keay þe eorl of Angers.

tell (number) the folk of Kaerleon, no man might it do! There was Gillomar 'the' king, of Irish men *the* darling; Malverus, king of Iceland; Doldanet 'king' of Gutlond; 'Kinkalin [king Calin] of Frisland; and Æscil, king of Denmark. There was Loth the keen, who was king by *the* North; and Gonwais, king of Orkney, 'of outlaws *the* darling [and many knights with him]. Thither came the fierce *man*, the earl of Boulogne, 'who was named Læȝer, and his people with him'; of Flanders the earl Howeldin; [of Chartres the earl Geryn]. 'This *man* brought with him all the French men'; twelve earls 'most' noble, who ruled 'over [in]

<sup>1</sup> Chæstres?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Beduwer<sup>1</sup> eorl of Normandie ⁊  
 þat lond hehte þa Neuftrie.  
 of þe Māf com þe eorl Borel ⁊  
 of Britaine þe eorl Howel.  
 Howel eorl wes freo mon ⁊  
 and faire weoren his iwede.  
 and al þat folc Frenſce ⁊  
 bihongen weoren feire.  
 iwepned wel alle ⁊  
 and horf ho<sup>2</sup> hafden uatte. 10  
 þer weoren biſides ⁊  
 fiſtene biſcopes.  
 Neſ na cniht ne na ſwein ⁊  
 ne oht mon þat weore þein.  
 from þa porz of Spaine ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 to þan tune of Alemaine.  
 þat þider icomen nere ⁊  
 ȝif he iboden weore.  
 al for Arðures æie ⁊  
 aðeleſ cunneſ. 20  
 þa al þiſ hired wes icunnen<sup>5</sup> ⁊  
 ælc king mid hiſ folke.

Beduer eorl of Normandie ⁊  
 þo hehte Neuftrie.  
 of þe Mans com þe eorl Borel ⁊  
 of Britaine þe eorl Howel. *Howel.*  
 Howel þe eorl was freoman ⁊  
 and of gode þewes.  
 and al þat folk Frence ⁊  
 faire weren icloþed.  
 and iwepned were alle ⁊  
 and mid horſen heȝe.  
 þar weren bi-ſides ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 fiſtene biſſopes.  
 Naſ no chniht ne no ſeweȝne<sup>3</sup> ⁊  
 ne oht man þat were þein.  
 fram þe Poche<sup>4</sup> of Spayne ⁊  
 to þan tounne of Alemaine.  
 þat þider icome neore ⁊  
 ȝeſ he ibode were.  
 al for Arthur hiſ heȝe ⁊  
 baldeſt alre kinge.  
 þo al þiſ folk was icome ⁊  
 aſe hii ihote were.

France. Guitard, earl of Poitiers; Kay, earl of Angers; Bedver, earl of Normandy,—‘the land’ then hight Neustrie;—of the Mans came the earl Borel; of Brittany the earl Howel. Howel [the] earl was free man, and ‘fair were his weeds [of good qualities]. And all the French folk were clothed fair, [and were] all well weaponed, and ‘horses they had fat [with fine horses]. There were besides fifteen bishops. Was *there* no knight nor any swain, nor good man that were thane, from the ports of Spain to the towns of Alemaine, that thither would not have come, if he were (had been) invited; all for ‘Arthurs [Arthur his] dread, ‘of noble race [boldest of all kings]. When all this folk was come; ‘each king with his people

<sup>1</sup> Bedware, *pr. m.*<sup>2</sup> heo?<sup>3</sup> ſweȝne?<sup>4</sup> *Sic MS.*<sup>5</sup> icumen?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þer me mihte bihalde ⁊  
 þe þer bi-halues weore.  
 moni feolcudne<sup>1</sup> mon ⁊  
 þe ifiȝen wes to burhȝen.  
 and feole cunne tiðende ⁊  
 mid Arðure þan kinge.  
 þer wes moni fellic clað ⁊  
 þer wes moni cniht wrað.  
 þer weoren herberȝe ⁊  
 hæhliche awurðe.

10

þer þa innes weoren ⁊  
 mid strengðe biwunnen.  
 þer weorē on uelden ⁊  
 moni þusend telden.  
 þer com spic and water<sup>2</sup> ⁊  
 and aten vnimete.

[tale ⁊ and ote onimete.

ne mai hit na mon suggen on hiȝ ne may noman telle in tale ⁊  
 of þan win and of þan ale.  
 þer com heȝ þer com g's ⁊  
 þer com al þat god waf.  
 þa al þiȝ folc iȝomned was ⁊  
 at fele þan kīȝge.

20

þar me mihte iȝeon ⁊  
 many felcuþ man.  
 and many tidȝnge ⁊  
 mid Arthur þan kinge.  
 þar was many wonder cloþ ⁊  
 þar was many chniht wroþ.

þar weren innes ⁊  
 mid strengþe bi-wonne.  
 þare werē in feldes ⁊  
 many þusend teldes.  
 þar com fleaf and wete ⁊

[as they were bidden], there men might 'behold [see], 'who were there beside,' many *a* strange man, 'who was come to *the* burgh,' and many 'kind of' tidings (novelties) with Arthur the king. There was many *a* marvellous cloth (garment); there was many *a* wrath knight; 'there were lodgings nobly prepared; 'there were 'the' inns, built with strength; there were on *the* fields many thousand tents; there came 'lard [flesh] and wheat, and oats without measure; may no man 'say it [tell] in 'his' tale, of the wine and of the ale; there came hay, there came grass; there came all that was 'good [needful]! When all this 'folk was assembled [was done] 'by the good king,' when the Whitsunday came, 'as *the* Lord it sent', 'then [there]

<sup>1</sup> felcuðne?<sup>2</sup> wete? whæte?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þa com þe White-funedæi ⁊  
 alfe drihten hine sende.

þa comen þa biſcopes alle ⁊  
 biuoren heore kinge.

and þa ærchebiſcopes þreo ⁊  
 biuoren Arðure.

and þene kine-helme nome ⁊  
 þa him wef icunde.

and fetten uppen his hafde ⁊<sup>[f. 142.  
c. 1.]</sup>  
 mid hegere bliſſe.

swa heo hine gūnen lede ⁊  
 al mid godes rede.

Seint Dubrif eoden biuorē ⁊  
 he wes criſte icoren.

þe ærchebiſcop of Lundene ⁊  
 eode an hiſ riht honden.

and bi hiſ luſt ſide ⁊

þe<sup>1</sup> of Eouerwike.

fiſtene biſcopes biuoren ⁊

of feole londen icoren.

heo weoren bi-hangen alle ⁊

mid palle ſwiðe balde.

þe weoren alle ibruſted ⁊

mid barninge golde.

þo þe Witſonedai com.

þar come þe biſſopes alle ⁊  
 to-vore þan bolde kinge.

and þane croune neme ⁊

þat him was icunde.

and fete vppe his hefd ⁊

mid mochelere bliſſe.

and fo hii gonne him leade ⁊

al mid godes reade.

Seint Dubriþ ȝeode bi-vore ⁊  
 to criſt he was icore.

þe archebiſſop of Londene ⁊

wende him bi-ſide.

and in þan oþer halue ⁊

þe ilke of Euerwike. [f. 114. c. 1.]

fiſtene bi-vore ⁊

of fale londe icore.

hii hadde aboute ȝam alle ⁊

ſwiþe riche palles.

came all the biſhops before 'their [the bold] king, 'and the archbiſhops three, before Arthur'; and took the crown, that was to him *by* right, and set upon his head with great bliſs; [and] so they gan him lead, all with Gods counſel. Saint Dubrich went before,—he was to Chriſt choſen;—the archbiſhop of London walked 'on his right hand [beſide him], and 'by his left [on the other] ſide the ſame of York. Fifteen 'biſhops' *went* before, of many lands choſen; they 'were all clothed with [had about them all] garments moſt rich, 'that were all embroiſered with burning gold.' There

<sup>1</sup> þe ilke?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

*Cador.*

þer feouwer kinges eoden :  
 biuoren þan kaiferen.  
 heo weȝe on heore honde :  
 feouwer fweord of golde.  
 þuſ hehte þa an :  
 þe wes a fwiðe duhti mon.  
 þat wes Cador þe king :  
 Ardures<sup>1</sup> deorling.  
 þe oðer of Scotlonde :  
 sweord he weide an honde. 10  
 & þe king of Norð Walles :  
 & þe king of Suð Wales.  
 & þ<sup>9</sup> heo gunnen leden :  
 þe king to chirechen.  
 þeo biſcopes gunnen finge :  
 biuoren þā leod-kinge.  
 bemen þer bleowen :  
 bellen þer ringedē.  
 cnihtes gunnen riden :  
 wifm forð gliden. 20  
 To iwiffen hit if ifaid :  
 and foð hit if ifūden.  
 þat no ifæh no mon nauer ær :

þar four kinges ȝeode :  
 bi-vore þan kayſere.  
 hii beore on hire honde :  
 four fweordes longe.  
 þuſ hehte þe on :  
 þat was a wel dohti man.  
 þat was Cador þe king :  
 Arthur his deorling.  
 þe oþ<sup>9</sup> of Scotlond :  
 fweord bar an hond.  
 and þe king of Norþwales :  
 and þe king of Suþwales.  
 þeos gonne leade :  
 þane king toward chirche.  
 and þe biſſopes mid ſonge :  
 bi-vore hire kinge.  
 bumes þar blewen :  
 belles þar rongen.  
 cnihtes gonne ride :  
 wifmen forþ glide. 20  
 To iwiffe hit his ifaid :  
 and ſoþ hit his ifunde.  
 þat ne feh noman ear :

walked four kings before the kaiser; they bare in their hands four swords  
 'of gold [long]. Thus hight the one, who was a 'most [well] doughty man,  
 that was Cador the king, 'Arthurs [Arthur his] darling; the second of  
 Scotland, 'he' bare sword in hand; and the king of North-Wales and the  
 king of South-Wales. 'And thus they [These] gan lead the king 'to [to-  
 ward] church; [and] the bishops 'gan sing [with song] before 'the monarch  
 [their king]; trumpets there blew; bells there rung; knights gan ride,  
 women forth glide. In certainty it is said, and sooth it is found, that no  
 man 'ever' ere saw here with earthly men half 'so great [the] pomp, in

<sup>1</sup> R. Arðures.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

mid eorðliche monne her.	[c. 2.] mid erþliche manne her.
half ſwa hahne ricchedom ⁊	half þane richedom ⁊
a nauer nane hepen.	in neuere none heape.
swa mid Arðure waf ⁊	so was mid þan kinge ⁊
aðelef cunnef.	in alle ſcines <sup>1</sup> þinge.
Into chirchen bicom ⁊	Into chirche bi-com ⁊
Arður þe riche mon.	Arthur þe heȝe man.
Dubriz þe arche-biſcop ⁊	Dubrich þe archebiſſop ⁊
drihten him wes ful god.	
of Rome he weſ legat ⁊	10 þat was of Rome legat.
and of þan hirede prelat.	
he ſong þa hali maſſe ⁊	hee fang þe holý maſſe ⁊
biuoren þan leod-kinge.	bi-vore þan riche kinge.
Comen mid þere quene ⁊	Comen mid þare cwene ⁊
wifmē wel idone.	wifmen ſwiȝe ſcene.
þere richchere mōne wif alle ⁊	þe richeſte wifmen alle ⁊
þe wunede on lōde.	þat were in londe.
and þere hehere monnen dohtere ⁊	
þa quene hafden iſohte.	
al ſwa þe quene hafde ihate ⁊	20
bi hire fulle wite.	
I þere chireche i þere ſoð halue ⁊	In þe chirches ſuþ half ⁊
fat Arður þe king him ſeolf.	fat Arthur þe king him ſeolf.

ever any assembly, as was with 'Arthur, of noble race [the king, of things of all kind]. Into church came Arthur the 'rich [high] man; Dubrich the archbishop,—'the Lord was to him full good'; of Rome 'he [that] was legate, 'and prelate of the people,'—he sang the holy mass before the 'monarch [rich king]. Came with the queen women [most] fair; all 'wives of the rich men that dwelt [the richest women that were] in the land, 'and daughters of the noble men the queen had sought (*or* selected), all as the queen had ordered, on *pain* of their *paying* full penalty.' In the 'church, in the [churches] south half sate Arthur the king himself; by the north side

<sup>1</sup> alleſcines?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

bi þere norð fide ⁊  
 Wenhæiuer þa quene.  
 þer comen hire bi-foren ⁊  
 feouwer quenen icoren.  
 ælc bar on luft honde ⁊  
 enne beh of rede gold.  
 & þreo snau-white<sup>1</sup> culueren ⁊  
 fentē<sup>2</sup> an heore sculderen.  
 þæt weoren þa feouwer quenē ⁊  
 þere cnihte<sup>3</sup> wifen. 10  
 þa beren an heore heonden ⁊  
 þe feouwer sweordes of golde.  
 biuorē Arðure ⁊  
 aðeleft kingen.  
 Moni mæidechild wes þere ⁊<sup>[f. 142<sup>b</sup>.  
c. 1.]</sup>  
 mid mære þere quene.  
 þær wes moni pal hende ⁊  
 on faire þā uolke.  
 of monies cunnef lōde ⁊  
 þer wes muchel onde. 20  
 for ælc wende to beon ⁊  
 betere þene oðer.  
 Feole cnihtes anan ⁊  
 comen to þere chirechen.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

bi þare norþ fide ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 Gwenayfer þe cwene.  
 þare comen hire bi-vore ⁊  
 four cweanen icore.  
 ech bar an honde ⁊  
 ane ȝeord of reade golde.  
 and þreo wite coluere ⁊  
 feate on hire foldre.  
 þat were þe kingene wifues ⁊  
 þat beare þe four sweordes ⁊  
 bi-vore Arthur þe king ⁊  
 Bruttene deorling.  
 þar was mani mayde ⁊  
 mid þare faire cweane.  
 þar was mochel honde ⁊  
 of manicunnes londe. 20  
 for ech wende to beon ⁊  
 betere þau oþer.  
 Manȝ cnihtes come ⁊  
 þreafte to chirche.

Wenhaver the queen. There came before her four chosen queens; each bare in 'the left' hand a 'jewel [wand, i. e. sceptre] of red gold, and three 'snow'-white doves sate on their shoulders; who were the 'four queens, wives of the kings [kings wives] who bare 'in their hands' the four swords 'of gold' before Arthur, 'noblest of kings [the king, Britons darling]. There was many a maid-'child' with the 'noble [fair] queen; there was many a rich garment on the fair folk; there was mickle envy from land of many kind; for each weened to be better than other. Many knights 'anon'

<sup>1</sup> R. snau-white.<sup>2</sup> fetten ?<sup>3</sup> kingen ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

sūme for guðinge ⁊  
 summe for þan kinge.  
 summe to bihalden ⁊  
 þa wifmen þat weoren balde.  
 Songes þer weoren murie ⁊  
 þa ilaste fwiðe longe.  
 ich weone ȝif hit weore ⁊  
 ilast seoue ȝere.  
 þa ȝet heo weolden mare ⁊  
 þe þer at weoren.  
 þa þe maffe wes ifugē ⁊  
 of chircchen heo ðrunge.  
 þe king mid hif folke ⁊  
 to his mete uerde.  
 mid mucle hif duȝeðe ⁊  
 drem wes on hirede.  
 þa quene on oðer halue ⁊  
 hire hereberwe ifohte.  
 heo hafde of wifmonne ⁊  
 wunder ane monien.  
 þa þe king wes ifete<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 mid hif monnen to hif mete.  
 to þan kinge com þæ biscop ⁊  
 feið<sup>2</sup> Dubriz þe wes swa god.

somme to bi-holde ⁊  
 wifmen þat weren bolde.  
 þar was fo moche murthe ⁊  
 of alle cunnes þinge.  
 þat þeh hit hadde i-laste ⁊  
 folle soue ȝere.  
 þat ȝet hii wolde more ⁊  
 þat þar ine were.  
 þo þe maffe waf ifonge ⁊  
 of chirche hii þronge.  
 þe king mid his folk ⁊  
 to his mete wende.  
 þe cweane on oþer halue ⁊  
 hire hom ....te.  
 ȝeo hadde of wifm..  
 ...derliche manȝe.  
 þo þ. .... was ifete ⁊  
 mid his man... þe mete.  
 to þan kinge ... ..  
 feint Dubrich þe holȝ man.

came [crowding] 'to the' church; some 'for gain (?)'; some for the king; some 'to behold 'the' women that were noble. 'Songs there were merry, that lasted very long; I ween if [There was so much mirth of all kind of thing, that though] it had lasted [full] seven years, the yet they would more, that were thereat [therein]. When the mass was sung, from church they thronged; the king with his folk went to his meat, 'with his mickle folk,—joy was among *the* people.' The queen on *the* other side sought her lodging; she had of women wondrous many. When the king was set, with his men to his meat, to the king came the 'bishop [holy man] Saint

<sup>1</sup> *Written at first ifeten, but n expuncted.*<sup>2</sup> *feint?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

and nom of his hafde ⁊  
 his kine-hælm hæhne.  
 for þan mucle golde ⁊  
 þe king hine beren nalde.  
 & dude enne laffe crune ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 on þas kinges hafde.  
 and feoððen he gō do ⁊  
 a þere quene al fwo.  
 Inne Troie þis wes laȝe<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 bi heore ælderne dāȝe<sup>1</sup>. 10  
 þa Bruttes of come ⁊  
 þe weoren wel idone.  
 alle þa wepmen ⁊  
 at heore mete fetē.  
 sundi bi heom feoluen ⁊  
 þat heom þuhte wel idon.  
 and al swa þa wifmen ⁊  
 heore iwune hafden.  
 þa þe kīg wes ifete ⁊  
 mid alle his duȝeðe to his mete.  
 eorles and beornes ⁊ 21  
 at borde<sup>2</sup> þas kinges.  
 þe stiward com steppen ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and nam of his hefd ⁊  
 his kinehelm heȝe.  
 for þane mochele golde ⁊  
 þe king hine beare nolde.  
 and dude one laffe croune ⁊  
 on þan kinges hefd.  
 and suppe he gan do ⁊  
 on þan cweane al fo. [L 114<sup>b</sup>.c.1.]  
 In Troȝe þis was lawe ⁊  
 bi hire hilderne dāie.  
 þat Bruttus of come ⁊  
 þat were wel idone.  
 þo þe king was ifete ⁊  
 mid his cnihtes to þe mete.  
 þo com þe stiward stappe ⁊

Dubrich, 'who was so good,' and took from his head his rich crown; on account of the mickle gold the king would not it bear; and placed a less crown on the kings head; and afterwards he gan do to the queen also (like-wise). In Troy this was *the* custom in their elders days, of whom Brutus came, who were excellent *men*; 'all the men at their meat sate asunder by themselves; that to them seemed well done; and also the women their station had.' When the king was set with all his 'people [knights] to 'his [the] meat, 'earls and barons, at the kings board,' [then] came stepping the steward, who was named Kay, highest knight in land under the king,

<sup>1</sup> Originally written *laȝen* and *dāȝen*, but the final letters erased by the same hand.

<sup>2</sup> The last four letters of this word are by second hand, *sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þe Kæy wes ihaten.  
 hæxt cniht on londe ⁊  
 vnder þan kinge.  
 of alle þan hæpe ⁊  
 of Arðuref hirede.

Kay hehte<sup>1</sup> him biuoren ⁊  
 moni hæh mō icoren.  
 þer weoren a þusen<sup>3</sup> cnihtes<sup>4</sup> bald ⁊ þar weren cnihtes bolde ⁊  
 wunder wel italde.  
 þat þeineden þan kīgē ⁊ 10  
 & his here-ðringes.

ælc cniht hæfde þa on ⁊  
 and mid golde bigon.  
 and alle heore uingeres ⁊  
 iriuen mid gold ringes.  
 þaþ beorn þa funde ⁊  
 from kuchene to þan kinge.  
 An oðer half wes Beduer ⁊  
 þaþ kingef hæþe birle. 19  
 mid him weoren eorlene sunen ⁊  
 of aðele cunne iboren. [[L.143.c.1.]  
 and þere hehþe cnihtene sunen ⁊  
 þa þider weoren icunen<sup>5</sup>.

þat Kay was ihote.  
 heheft cniht on londe ⁊  
 onder þan kinge.

Kay hadde him bi-vore ⁊  
 many<sup>2</sup> heh man ibore.  
 þar weren cnihtes bolde ⁊  
 a þousend itolde.

ech cniht hadde þa on ⁊  
 and mid golde bi-gon.  
 and alle hire fingres ⁊  
 fol of gold ringes.  
 þes beare þe fonde ⁊  
 fram kuchene to þan kinge.

An oþer half was Beduer ⁊  
 þe kinges eþe borle.

mid him were eorlene fones ⁊  
 of swiþe heþe cun icome.

Kay

Beduer

'of all the assemblage of Arthurs folk.' Kay had before him many a noble man 'chosen [born]; there were a thousand bold knights 'wondrous well' told, 'that served the king and his chiefs'; each knight had a cloth on, and adorned with gold, and all their fingers 'covered with [full of] gold rings. These bare the *things* sent from *the* kitchen to the king. On *the* other side was Beduer, the king's high cup-bearer; with him were earls sons of 'noble [most high] race born, 'and the noble knights sons, who were thither come'; [and] seven kings sons, that 'with him moved [bare in *the*

<sup>1</sup> hafde?<sup>2</sup> R. many.<sup>3</sup> þusend?<sup>4</sup> cnihte, *pr. m.*<sup>5</sup> R. icumen.



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

feouen kingene funen ⁊  
 þat mid him quehtē.  
 Bedeuer a uormest eode ⁊  
 mid guldene bolle.  
 after him a þufend ⁊  
 þraften to hirede.  
 mid alle þaf cunnes drenche ⁊  
 þe me cuðe on biðenche.  
 And þa quene an hire ende ⁊  
 wifmen fwide<sup>1</sup> hende. 10  
 a þufend hire eode biuorē ⁊  
 riche men<sup>2</sup> and wel icoren.  
 to þæinen þere quene ⁊  
 and þan þat mid hire weoren.  
 Nes he næuere iboren ⁊  
 of nane cnihte icoren.  
 ilæred no læwed ⁊  
 a nauere nare leode.  
 þe cuðe him<sup>3</sup> itelle ⁊  
 an æief cunnes spelle. 20  
 of halue þan richedome ⁊  
 þe wef inne Kairliune.  
 of feoluere and of golde ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and foue kingene fones ⁊  
 þat wýn in beare.  
 Beduer forst ȝeode ⁊  
 mid gildene coupe.  
 and after him a þoufend ⁊  
 come to borde.  
 mid alle cunnes drenche ⁊  
 þat man couþe an bi-þenche.  
 ... .e cweane on hire ean..  
 ...men fwiþe hende. 10  
 . .ufend hire ȝeode bi-vore ⁊  
 .. hehȝe cunne hi-bore.  
 to faruȝ þe cweane ⁊  
 and þaie þat mid hire were.  
 Nas he neuere icore ⁊  
 ne of none wifue ibore.  
 leared ne lewed ⁊  
 in neuere none londe.  
 þat hit couþe telle ⁊  
 in enȝ cunnes spelle. 20  
 of half þan richedom ⁊  
 þat waf in Cayrlyon. [c. 2.]  
 of seoluer and of golde ⁊

wine]. Beduer went 'foremost [first], with golden 'bowl; [cup, and] after him a thousand 'pressed towards the folk [came to the board], with drink of all 'the' kinds that men could think of. And the queen at her end, women most fair *attended*; a thousand walked before her, 'rich and well choice [of high kin born], to serve the queen, and them that were with her. Was he never 'born [chosen, nor] of any 'man chosen [woman born], clerk nor layman, in ever any land, that could tell it in speech of any kind, of half the wealth that was in Kaerleon, of silver and of gold, and 'good [of rich]

<sup>1</sup> fwiþe?<sup>2</sup> Sic MS.<sup>3</sup> hit?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and gode iwedē.  
 of hehȝe iborene monnen ⁊  
 þa inne hirede wuneden.  
 of horfen and of hafueken ⁊  
 of hunden to deoren.  
 and of riche iweden ⁊  
 þa a þan hirede weoren.  
 & of alle þan folke<sup>1</sup> ⁊  
 þe wuneden þer on folde.  
 wef þiffes londes folk ⁊  
 leodene hendest itald.  
 & al fwa þa winmen ⁊  
 wunliche on heowen.  
 and hahlukeft ifcrudde ⁊  
 & alre bezft itoȝene.      [(c. 2.)  
 For heo hafden on iqueðen alle ⁊  
 bi heore quike liue.  
 þat heo wolden of ane heowē ⁊  
 heore claðes habben.  
 Sum hafde whit fum hafdē ræd ⁊  
 fum hafde god grene æc.      21  
 and alchef cunnef fah clað ⁊  
 heom wes wunder ane lað.

and of riche wede.  
 of heȝe ibore men ⁊  
 þat were þare to-gadere.  
  
 10 Of alle þes londes folk ⁊  
 weren Bruttus best itold.  
 and al fo þe wifmen ⁊  
 fayrest hii were.  
 and hehlokeft ifcrud ⁊  
 in euereche wife.  
 For hii were hi-hote alle ⁊  
 bi hire cwike lifue.  
 þat hii folde of one hewe ⁊  
 hire cloþes habbe.

weeds; of high born men that 'dwelt among *the* folk [were there together]; 'of horses, and of hawks, of hounds for deer, and of rich weeds, that were among the people. And of all the folk that dwelt there in land,' *the* folk of this land was accounted *the* fairest of people [Of all this lands folk were *the* Britons best accounted], and also the women, 'comely in hue [fairest they were], and most nobly clothed, 'and best of all educated [in every wise]. For they all had 'in declaration [ordered *or* promised], by their quick lives, that they 'would [should] have their clothes of one hue. 'Some had white, some had red; some had eke good green; and variegated cloth of each kind

<sup>1</sup> *At first written folken, but n erased.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

&amp; elche untuhtle ⁊

heo taldē vnwurðe.

þa hafde Ænglene ard ⁊

þat alre bezste hereword.

and þif leodisce uolc æc ⁊

leofueft þan kinge.

þa wifmen hehþe iborene ⁊

þa wuneden a þiffen londe.

hafden iqueðen alle ⁊

ð heore quidef soðe.

þat nan lauerd taken nolde ⁊

inne þiffere leode.

næuer nænne cniht ⁊

neore he noht fwa wel idiht.

bute he icostned weoren ⁊

þrie inne compe.

&amp; his oht-scipen icudde ⁊

&amp; ifonded hine feolue.

baldeliche he mitte þenne ⁊

þirnen him brude.

For þere ilke tuhtle ⁊

cnihtes weoren ohte.

þo hadde þis lond ⁊

þat heheft hereword.

of alle cune londes ⁊

war men wonieþ.

þe wifmen were ihote ⁊

mid grettere hefte.

þat non take ne folde ⁊

louerd in londe.

bote he were þries ⁊

ifonded in fihte.

and his manede icud ⁊

and him æolf icnowe.

þanne<sup>1</sup> mihte brude ⁊

boldeliche habbe.

For þan ilke þinge ⁊

cnihtes weren stronge.

was to them wondrous odious; and each ill-usage they accounted unworthy.' Then had 'English [this] land the 'best [highest] fame of all [kind of lands where men dwell]; 'and this country-folk eke *was* dearest to the king.' The 'high born' women 'that dwelt in this land' had 'all' 'declared in their sooth words [ordered with strict command], that none 'would [should] take lord (husband) in 'this' land, 'never any knight, were he nought (never) so well formed,' unless he were (had been) thrice tried in 'combat [fight], and his 'courage [manhood] made known, and himself approved; then might he boldly 'ask him [have] a bride. For that 'usage [thing] *the* knights were 'brave [strong], 'the women excellent, and the better

<sup>1</sup> þanne he?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þa wifmen wel idone :  
and þa betere biwitene.  
þa weoren i Brutene :  
bliffen inoȝe.

þa þe king iȝetē hafde :  
and al hiȝ mon-weorede.

þa buȝen ut of burhȝe :  
þeines fwiȝe balde.

alle þa kinges :

and heore hereþringes. [f. 143<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.] and hire heredringes.

alle þa biſcopes :

11

and alle þa clærckes.

alle þa eorles :

and alle þa beornes.

alle þa þeines :

alle þa ſweines.

feire iſcrudde :

helde ȝeond felde.

Summe heo gunnen ærnen :

summe heo gunnen urnen. 20

summe heo gunnen lepen :

summe heo gunnen ſceotē.

summe heo wræſtledē :

and wiȝer-gome makeden.

ſumme heo on uelde :

pleouweden vnder ſelde.

þo þe kīg iȝeate hadde :

and alle hiȝ cnihteȝ.

þo wenden vt of borwe :

cnihteȝ ſwiȝe bolde.

alle þe kinges :

wandri in þan feldeȝ :

and pleoȝen bi þan teldes.

Somme gon hors earne :

somme aȝote eorne.

somme hii gonne leape :

and ſomme hii gommen ſceate.

somme þar wraxlede :

and wiȝer-game makede.

somme in þan felde :

pleoȝde onder ſelde.

behaved ; then were in Britain bliſſes enow.' When the king had eaten, and all hiȝ 'people [knights], then proceeded out of *the* burgh *the* 'thanes [knights] moſt bold ; all the kings, and their chieftains ; 'all the biſhops, and all the clerks ; all the earls, and all the barons ; all the thanes, *and* all the ſwains, fairly clad, 'spread over *the* fields [to diſperſe in the fields, and play by the tents]. Some 'they' gan to ride [horseȝ] ; ſome 'they gan' to race [on foot] ; ſome they gan to leap, [and] ſome they gan to ſhoot ; ſome 'they [there] wræſtled, and conteſt made ; ſome 'they' in [the] field

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

sūme heo driuē balles :  
 wide ȝeond þa feldes.  
 Monianes kunnef gomen :  
 þer heo gunnen driuen.  
 & wha swa mihte iwinne :  
 wurðscipe of hif gomene.  
 hine me ladde mid songe :  
 at-forē þan leod-kinge.  
 and þe kīg for hif gomene :  
 ȝæf him ȝeuen gode.  
 Alle þa quene :  
 þe icumen weoren þere.  
 and alle þa lafdief :  
 leoneden ȝeond walles.  
 to bihalden þa duȝeden :  
 and þat folc plæie.  
 þif ilæste þreo dæȝes :  
 swulc gomes & fwulc plæȝes.  
 þa a þā ueorðe dæie :  
 þe king gon to spekene.  
 and aȝæf hif gode cnihten :  
 al heorere<sup>1</sup> rihten.  
 he ȝef feoluer he ȝæf gold :

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

somme driuen balles : [f. 113. c. 1.]  
 oueral þan feldes.  
 Manione cunnef game :  
 þar hii gonne pleoȝe.  
 and wo se worfipe mihte a-winne :  
 þorh eni cunnes ginne.

þe king him solde ȝeue :  
 ȝeftes swiȝe riche.  
 Alle þe cweanes :  
 þat .comen were.  
 and alle þe leafdief :  
 leonede ouer walles.  
 to bi-holde þe cnihtes :  
 and þat folk pleoȝe.  
 þis ilaste þreo dæȝes :  
 soch game and soch playes.  
 þo in þan feorþe daiwe :  
 þe king ȝaf his cnihtes.  
 seoluer and read gold :

played under shield; some 'they' drove balls 'wide over [over all] the fields. Games of many a kind there they gan to play; and whoso might win honor 'of his game [through art of any kind], 'men lead him with song before the sovereign, and 'the king 'for his game' 'gave [should give] him gifts 'good [most rich]. All the queens, that 'there' were come, and all the ladies, leaned over *the* walls, to behold the 'people [knights], and the folk play. This lasted three days, such games and such plays. Then on the fourth day, the king 'gan to speak, and 'gave his 'good' knights 'all their rights; he gave 'silver, 'he gave [and red] gold; 'he gave [to some]

<sup>1</sup> heore?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

he ȝef horf he ȝef lond.  
 castles & clathes eke  
 his monnen he iquende<sup>1</sup>.

þer wes moni bald Brut  
 biuoren Arðure.

Nu comen to þan kinge  
 neuowe tidinde.

Arður þe bade<sup>2</sup> king  
 sat at ane borde.

biuoren him seten kinges  
 and feole here-ðringes.

bisopes and clerekes  
 and swiðe ohte cnihtes.

þer comen in to halle  
 spelles seolcuðe.

þer comen twalf þeines ohte  
 mid palle bi-þehte.

hæȝe<sup>3</sup> here-kempen  
 heȝe men on wepne.

ælċ hafde on heonde  
 grætne riȝ of golde.

and mid æne bende of golde  
 ælc hafde his hæfd biuonge.

Æuer tweie and tweie

[c. 2.] fomme horf fomme lond.

þar was many bold Brut  
 bi-vore Arthure.

Ac nou þar come to þan kinge  
 neuowe tidyinge.

**A**rthur þe bolde king  
 sat at one borde.

bi-vore him seate kinges  
 and fale heredringes.

bissopes and clearekes  
 and swiþe heȝe cnihtes.

þar comen into halles  
 selcouþe spelles.

þar comen twealf cnihtes  
 ohte men and wihte.

Euere tweine and tweyne

horses, 'he gave [to some] land; 'castles eke and clothes; his men he pleased, {—there was many a bold Briton before Arthur. [But] now came to the king new tidings! Arthur the bold king sate at a board; before him sate kings, and many chieftains; bishops and clerks, and knights most 'brave [noble]. There came into *the* hall marvellous tales!—there came twelve 'thanes [knights] bold [men and active], 'clad with pall; noble warriors, noble men with weapon; each had on hand a great ring of gold, and with a band of gold each had his head incircled.' Ever two and

<sup>1</sup> R. iquemde.<sup>2</sup> R. balde.<sup>3</sup> The first two letters of this word are sup. ras.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

tuhte to-somne.

wenden i-vere.

ælc mid his honde ⁊

heold his iuere.

and gliden ouer ulore ⁊

and gliden ouer flore ⁊

biuoren Arðure.

bi-foren Arthure.

sƿa longe þat heo comen ⁊

so lang þat hii come ⁊

bi-uoren Arðure þan leod-kinge.

bi-voren þan kinge.

Heo grættæn Arður anan ⁊

Hii grette Arthur anon ⁊

mid aðelen heore worden.

mid bolde hire wordes.

Hal seo þu Arður king ⁊

10 Hayl beo þou Arthur þe king ⁊

Bruttene deorling.

Bruttene deorling.

and hal seo þi dūȝeðe ⁊

and al þi drihtlice uolc.

We funden twælf cnihtes ⁊

We beoþ twælf cnihtes ⁊ [c.2.]

icumen her forð rihtes.

icome her forþrihtes.

riche and wel idone ⁊

riche and wel idon ⁊

we fūdeð of Rome.

we beoþ ut of Rome.

Hider we funden icumene ⁊ [f. 144. c. 1.]

frō ure kaifere.

Houre kȝfer ous fende ⁊

Luces if ihaten ⁊

20 þat Luces his ihote.

þe waldoð Rome-leoden.

he hehte ous hider wende ⁊

he hahte uf hider wende ⁊

to Arthur þan kinge.

to Arðure þan kinge.

and þe hat græten ⁊

and þe he greteþ ⁊

mid his grim worden.

mid his grame wordes.

two walked 'together [in company]; 'each with his hand held his companion'; and glided over *the* floor, before Arthur, so long that they came before 'Arthur,' the 'sovereign [king]. They greeted Arthur anon with their 'noble [bold] words: "Hail be thou, Arthur [the] king, darling of Britons; 'and hail be thy people, and all thy lordly folk!' We are twelve knights come here forthright, rich and noble; we are 'from [out of] Rome. 'Hither we are come from [Sent us] our emperor, [who] is named Luces, 'who ruleth Rome-people.' He commanded us to proceed hither, to Arthur the king, and 'bade thee to be greeted [thee he greeteth] with his

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& fæið<sup>1</sup> þat he awundred is ⁊  
wūder ane fwiðe.  
whar þu þat mod nime ⁊  
a þisse middenerde.  
þat þu derst of Rome ⁊  
wið-fuggen æi dome.  
oðer hebbē up þin eȝen ⁊  
aȝein ure ældrē.  
and wha hit þe durre ræden ⁊  
þat þu fwa reh ært iwurðen. 10  
þat þu þrattien darst ⁊  
domes walden<sup>2</sup>.  
Lucas þene kaifere ⁊  
hexst of quicke monnen.  
þu haldest al þi kinelond ⁊  
a þire aȝere hond.  
and nult noht þene kaifere ⁊  
of londe ihere.  
of þan ilke londe ⁊  
þe Julius hafde an honde. 20  
þa inne iuuf dazzen ⁊  
biwon hit mid fehtē.  
and þu hit hauest at-holde ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiii.

and seiþ þat he awondred his ⁊  
wonderliche fwiþe.  
war þou þat mod nime ⁊  
in þisse worle-riche.  
þat þou darst of Rome ⁊  
wiþ-segge eni domes.  
oþer þin eȝene vp hebbe ⁊  
to-ȝenes vre heldre.  
  
þou holdest al þine kinelond ⁊  
in þin owene hond.  
and nelt noht þine herre ⁊  
of londe i-here.  
of þan ilke londe ⁊  
þat Julius hadde an honde. 20  
þat in vorne daze ⁊  
bi-wan hit mid fihþe.  
and þou hit hauest at-holde ⁊

grim words, and saith that he is astonished, wondrously much, where thou tookest the mood in this 'middle-earth [worlds-realm], that thou darest of Rome oppose any doom (will), or heave up thine eyes against our ancestors; 'and who dared it thee to counsel, that thou art so doughty become, that thou darest threaten *the* lord of dooms, Lucas, the emperor, highest of men alive!' Thou holdest all thy kingdom in thine own hand, and wilt not serve 'the emperor [thy lord] of *the* land; of the same land that Julius had in hand, who in former days won it with fight; and

<sup>1</sup> fæiðe, *pr. m.*<sup>2</sup> waldend?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

a þire anwolde.  
 mid balden þine cnihten ⁊  
 binimeſt uf ure irihten.  
 Ah ſæi uf Arður ſone ⁊  
 and word ſend to Rōe.  
 we ſculleð bere þin ærde¹ ⁊  
 to Luces ure kaiſere.  
 ȝif þu wult icnawen ⁊  
 þat he iſ king ouer þe.  
 and þu hiſ mon bicumen wulle ⁊  
 and hine for lauerd icnawen. [c. 2.]  
 and don riht þan kaiſere ⁊ 12  
 of Frolle þan kinge.  
 þat þu mid woȝe ⁊  
 at Pariſ aſloȝe.  
 & nu haldeſt al hiſ lond ⁊  
 mid unrihte a þire hond.  
 ȝif þu i þiſſen twælſ wiken ⁊  
 temeſt to þan rihten.  
 and þu wult of Rome ⁊ 20  
 þolie æi dome.  
 þenne miht þu libben ⁊  
 imong þine leoden.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

in þin anwolde.  
 mid bolde þine cnihtes ⁊  
 bi-nimeſt vre rihtes.  
 Ac ſay ous Arthur ſone ⁊  
 and word ſend to Rome.  
 we ſolle þin herende bere ⁊  
 to Luces þan kaiſere.  
 ȝef þou wolt icnowe ⁊  
 þat he hiſ þin louerd.  
 and don riht þan kaiſere ⁊  
 of Frolle þan kinge.  
 þat thou mid woȝe ⁊  
 at Pariſ of-floȝe.  
 and nou holdeſt al þin lond ⁊  
 mid onriht in þine hond.  
 ȝef þou in þiſſe twealf wyke ⁊  
 temeſt to þan rihte.  
 and þou wolle of Rome ⁊ 20  
 þolie eni domes. [c. 115. c. 1.]  
 þanne miht þou libbe ⁊  
 and þine leomeſ habbe.

thou it haſt retained in thy power; *and* with thy bold knights depriveſt 'us' of our rights. But ſay us, Arthur, ſoon, and ſend word to Rome; we ſhall thine errand bear to Luces 'our [the] emperor, if thou wilt acknowledge that he iſ 'king over thee [thy lord], 'and *if* thou wilt hiſ man become, and acknowledge him for lord,' and do right to the emperor *on account* of Frolle the king, whom thou ſlew'eſt with wrong at Pariſ, and now holdeſt all 'hiſ [thy] land with un-right in thy hand. If thou *within* theſe twelve weeks turn to the right, and *if* thou wilt of Rome any doom ſuffer, then might'eſt thou live, 'among thy people [and have thy limbs].

¹ ærnde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

and ȝif þu fwa nult don :  
 þu ſcalt wurfen vnder-fon.  
 þe kaiſere wule her cumē :  
 fwa king ſcal to hiſ aȝen.  
 king ſwiðe kene :  
 and nimen þe mid ſtrengðe.  
 ibunden þe lede :  
 biuoren Rō-leoden.  
 þenne moſt þu þolie :  
 þat þu ærſt for-hoȝedeſt. 10  
 Æfne piſſe wordē :  
 Bruttes buȝen from borden.  
 þer wes Arduref<sup>1</sup> hird :  
 hehliche awraððed.  
 and muchene að ſworē :  
 uppen mære ure drihten.  
 þat alle heo dede weoren :  
 þa þeos arunde beden<sup>3</sup>.  
 mid horſen al to-draȝene :  
 dæð heo ſculden þolie. 20  
 þer heo<sup>4</sup> buȝen to :  
 Bruttes ſwiðe wraðe.  
 luken heom bi uaxe :

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and ȝef þou ſo nolt don :  
 þou ſalt worſe onder-fon.  
 þe caiſere wole here come :  
 aſe king ſal to hiſ howene.  
 king ſwiþe kene :  
 and nime þe mid ſtrengþe.  
 and ibunde þe leade :  
 mid him to Romleode.  
 þanne moſt þou þolie :  
 þat þou her for-hoȝedeſt. 10  
 Eafne piſſe worde :  
 Bruttes leop fram borde.  
 þar were Arthur hiſ men :  
 ſtranliche<sup>2</sup> iwrapþed.  
 and mochelne oþ ſwore :  
 vppen oure drihte.  
 þat alle hii dead weren :  
 þat þeos earende bearen.  
 þar hii leope ȝam to :  
 Bruttus ſwiþe wroþe.  
 and tiere ȝam bi þan hēere :

And if thou wilt not so do, thou shalt receive worse, *for* the emperor will come here, as king shall to his own, king most keen; and take thee with strength, [and] lead thee bound 'before [with him to] Rome-folk;—then must thou suffer what thou erst despisedest!" At these words *the* Britons leapt from *the* board; there 'was Arthurs court exceedingly [were Arthur his men strongly] enraged; and swore mickle oath, upon our 'mighty' Lord, that they all were (should be) dead, who this errand bare; 'with horses drawn in pieces, death they should suffer.' There [they] leapt towards them *the* Britons exceeding wrath; [and] tore them by [the] hair,

<sup>1</sup> R. Arðuref.<sup>2</sup> strangliche ?<sup>3</sup> beren ?<sup>4</sup> heom ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and laiden heom to grūde.	and droȝe ȝam to grunde.
ȝer weoren men Romanisce ⁊	ȝar weren Rom-cnihtes ⁊
reouliche atoȝene.	vuele idihte.
ȝif Arður ne leope to ⁊ [f. 144 <sup>b</sup> . c. 1.]	ȝef Arthur nadde ileoȝe to ⁊
fwulc hit a liun weore.	soch hit a lýon were.
and ȝaf word feide ⁊	and ȝeos word faide ⁊
wifest alre Brutten.	wifest alre Bruttes.
Bilæueð bilaueð fwiðe ⁊	Bi-leueȝ bi-leueȝ ⁊
ȝaf cnihtes on liue.	ȝes cnihtes on lifue.
ne sceollen heo on mine hirede ⁊	ne folle hii in londe ⁊
nēne harm ȝolien.	11 soffri none sconde.
heo beoð hider iriden ⁊	hii beoȝ icome of Rome ⁊
ut of Rom-leoden.	
fwa heore lauereð heom hehte ⁊	aſe hire louereð ȝam hehte.
Luces if ihaten.	
Ælc mon mot liðen ⁊	Ech man mot wende ⁊
ȝer hiſ lauereð hine hateð gan.	woder hiſ louereð hoteȝ.
nah <sup>1</sup> na man demen ⁊	ne ſold no man deame ⁊
erendef-mon to dæðen.	herendrake to deaȝe.
bute he weoren fwa ufele biwiten ⁊	bote he were ſo for-ȝete ⁊
ȝet he weore lauereð-fwiſe.	11 ȝat he were louereð-fwiſe.
Ah fitteð adun ſtille ⁊	Ac fitteȝ adun ſtille ⁊ [c. 2.]
cnihtes inne halle.	cnihtes in halle.

and 'laid [drew] them to *the* ground. There were (would have been) *the* 'Romanish men pitifully [Rome-knights evilly] treated, if Arthur had not leapt to *them*, as *if* it were a lion; and said these words,—wisest of all Britons!—"Leave ye, leave 'quickly' these knights alive! They shall not in 'my court [land] suffer any 'harm [disgrace]; they are 'hither ridden out of [come from] Rome, as their lord commanded them, 'who is named Lucas.' Each man must go 'where [whither] his lord biddeth 'him go'; no man 'ought to [should] sentence a messenger to death, unless he were so 'evilly behaved [so forgetful], that he were traitor of *his* lord. But

<sup>1</sup> ne ah? naht?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and ich me biræde wulle ⁊  
of ſwulchere neode.

wulc word heo ſcullen aȝen beren ⁊ wat word hii ſolle a-ȝein bere ⁊  
to Luces þan kaiferen.

þa ſeten adun alle ⁊

þa duȝeðe on heore benche.

and þa luding alæid ⁊

biuoren þan leod-kīge.

þa ſtod Arður him up ⁊

adeleft<sup>1</sup> kingen.

and he cleopede him to ⁊

ſeouen ſune kinges.

eorlef and beornef ⁊

& þa þe weoreu baldeft.

and alle þa wiſeſte men ⁊

þa wuneden a þen folke.

wenden in to ane huſe ⁊

þe wef bicluſed faſte.

an ald ſtanene weorc ⁊

ſtiðe men hit wurhten.

þer men<sup>2</sup> gunnen rune ⁊

hiſ red-ȝeuen wife.

and ich me wolle bi-reade ⁊  
of ſochere neode.

to Luces þan caifere.

þo ſeten hii alle ⁊

a-dun on hire benches.

ād þe loudinge alay ⁊

for drede of þan kinge.

þo ſtod vp Arthur ⁊

10 baldeft alre kinge.

and cleopede to neode ⁊

al þat coupe of reade.

kingef and eorles ⁊

biſſopes and clearkes.

and alle þe wiſeſte men ⁊

þat wonede in londe.

and wende into one boure ⁊

þat was bi-tunde faſte.

of hold ſtonene worc ⁊

20 witti men hit makede.

[c. 2.] þar ine hii gonne rouny ⁊

hiſ readȝeuef wife.

ſit ye down ſtill, knights in hall; and I will me counſel of ſuch need, what word they ſhall bear back to Luces the emperor. Then ſate [they] all down, 'the folk' on their benches, and the clamor ceaſed 'before [for dread of] the 'monarch [king]. Then ſtood 'him' up Arthur, 'nobleſt of [boldeſt of all] kings, and he called to 'him ſeven ſons of kings, earls and barons, and thoſe that were boldeſt [need all that knew of counſel, kings and earls, biſhops and clerks], and all the wiſeſt men that dwelt in 'the folk [land; and] went into a 'houſe [chamber] that was faſt incloſed, of old ſtone work,—'ſtrong [witty] men it 'wrought [made],—there[in] they gan to

<sup>1</sup> aȝeleft?<sup>2</sup> heo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

wulc andſwere he ȝiuen wolde ⁊	wat anſwere hii wolde ȝeue ⁊
Luceſ þan kaiſere.	Luces þan caiſere.
þa iboȝen weoren alle ⁊	
beorneſ to benche.	
þa wes hit al ſtille ⁊	
þat wuneden inne halle.	
þer wes vnimete æie ⁊	
mid mære þan kinge.	
ne durſte þer na mā ſpeken ⁊	
leſte þe king hit wolde awreken.	
þa ſtod þer up Cador ⁊	11 þo ſtod þar vp Cador ⁊
þe eorl ſwiðe riche ær.	þat eorl was ſwiþe riche her.
and þaſ word ſæide ⁊	and þeos word ſaide ⁊
bifore þan riche kinge.	bi-vore þan kinge.
Ich þonkie mīe drihte ⁊	Ich þonki mine drihte ⁊
þat ſcop þeſ dæieſ lihte.	þat ſop þeſ daiȝeſ lihte.
þiſſeſ dæieſ ibiden ⁊	þiſ daieſ a-bide ⁊
þa to hirede iſ iboȝen.	
and þiſſere tidinge ⁊	
þe icumen iſ to ure kige.	20 þat icome hiſ to londe.
þat we ne þuruen na mare ⁊	þat we ne þorhfe na mare ⁊
aſwunden liggen here.	aſwonde ligge here.
For idelneſſe iſ luðer ⁊	For ȝdilniſſe doþ harm ⁊
on ælchere þeode.	in euereche londe.
for idelneſſe makeð mon ⁊	ȝdilniſſe makeþ man ⁊

commune, his wise councillors, what answer 'he [they] would give to Luces the emperor. 'When all *the* nobles were come to bench (seated), then was it all still that dwelt in *the* hall; there was great awe with the mighty king; durst there no man speak, least the king would it punish.' Then stood there up Cador, 'the [who was] earl most rich here, and said these words before the 'rich' king: "I thank my Lord, who formed the daylight, to abide (have abode) this day, that is 'arrived to *the* folk, and this tiding that is' come to 'our king [land]; so that we need no more lie here inert! For idleness is 'evil [doth harm] in 'each [every] land; 'for'

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

his monſcipe leofe.  
 ydelneſſe makeð cnihte ⁊  
 for-leofen his irihte.  
 idelneſſe græiðeð ⁊  
 feole uuele craften.  
 idelneſſe makeð leofen ⁊  
 feole þuſend monnen.  
 þurh eðeliche<sup>1</sup> dede ⁊  
 lute men wel ſpedeð.  
 For ȝare we habbeoð ſtille ileien ⁊  
 ure wurðſcipe if þa laſſe.  
 ah nu ic þokie<sup>2</sup> drihtne ⁊  
 þæ ſcop þaſ daiȝef lihte.  
 þat Romaniſce leodē ⁊ [f.145.c.1.]  
 funden ſwa ræie.  
 & heore beot makieð ⁊  
 to cumen to ure burhȝef.  
 ure king binden ⁊  
 and to Rome hine bringen.  
 Ah ȝif hit if ſoð þat men faið ⁊  
 aſe ſegges hit telleð.  
 þat Romaniſce leoden ⁊  
 funden ſwa ræȝe.

his manſipe leaſe.  
 ydelniſſe makeþ cniht ⁊  
 for-leaſe al his riht.  
 ydilniſſe greiþeþ ⁊ [f.116.c.1.]  
 fale luþer craftes.  
 þorh ydele deade ⁊  
 lute man mai ſpede.  
 For ȝare we habbeþ ſtille ileȝe ⁊  
 vre manſipe his þe laſſe.  
 ac nou ich þonkie drihte ⁊  
 þat ſop þaſ daiȝef-lihte.  
 þat Romaniſſe folk ⁊  
 ſo bolde beoþ i-worþe.  
 and hire þret makieþ ⁊  
 to come to vre borewes.  
 oure king binde ⁊  
 and to Rome hine bringe.  
 Ac ȝef hit his ſop þat me ſeiþ ⁊  
 aſe þis wiſe telleþ.  
 þat Romaniſſe men ⁊  
 ſo bald beoþ iworþe.

idleness maketh man lose his manhood; idleness maketh knight lose  
 [all] his rights; idleness causeth many wicked crafts; 'idleness de-  
 stroyeth many thousand men'; through idle deeds little 'men well-speed  
 [man may speed]. For long we have lain still; our honor is the less!  
 But now I thank *the* Lord, who formed the day-light, that *the* Romanish  
 folk are [become] so 'fierce [bold], and make their threat to come to our  
 burghs, our king to bind, and to Rome him bring. But if it is sooth that  
 men say, as 'people it [the wise] tell, that *the* Romanish people [men]

<sup>1</sup> ideliche?<sup>2</sup> þonkie?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and funden swa balde ⁊  
and swa balufulle.

þat heo wulleð nu liðen ⁊  
into ure londen.  
we heom scullen ȝarekien ⁊  
ȝeomere spellef.

heore ræhscipe scal heom feoluen ⁊ hire baldfipe fal ȝam feolue ⁊  
to reoupe iwurðen. to moche roupe teorne.

For nauere ne lufede ich longe ⁊ For neuere ne louede ich lange ⁊  
grið inne mine londe. 10 grið in mine londe.

for þurh griðe we beoð ibundē ⁊ for þorh gripe we beoþ i-bunde ⁊  
and wel neh al a-fwūden. and wel neh afwonde.

þat iherde Walwain ⁊ þis i-horde Waweýn ⁊  
þe wes Ardures<sup>1</sup> mæi. [fwide<sup>2</sup> ⁊ þat was Arthures mæi.

and wraððede hine wið Cador and wreþpede hine wiþ Cador ⁊  
þa þaƿ word kende. þat þes wordes faide.

and þuƿ andƿærede ⁊ and þus him anƿwerede ⁊  
Walwain þe fele. Waweýn þe feale.

Cador þu ært a riche mon ⁊ 19 Cador þou hart riche mā ⁊  
þine ræddes ne beoð<sup>3</sup> noht idon. þeine reades ne buþ noht agon.

for god<sup>4</sup> if grið and god<sup>4</sup> if frið ⁊ for godd<sup>5</sup> his griþ and godd<sup>5</sup> his  
þe freoliche þer haldeð wið. þat freoliche hit holdeþ wiþ. [friþ ⁊

are [become] so 'fierce [bold], 'and are so bold, and so mischievous,' that they will 'now' come into our land, we shall 'prepare for [teach] them 'rueful [British] tales; their 'fierceness [boldness] shall turn to themselves to [much] sorrow. For never loved I long peace in my land; for through peace we are bound, and well nigh 'all' in swoon." 'That [This] heard Walwain, who was Arthurs relative, and angered him 'much' with Cador, who said these words; and thus answered [him] Walwain the good: "Cador, thou art a powerful man; thy counsels are not good; for good is peace and good is amity, whoso freely 'therewith [with it] holdeth, and God him-

<sup>1</sup> R. Arthures.<sup>2</sup> fwiðe?<sup>3</sup> beoð?<sup>4</sup> godd, *pr. m.*, but d erased.<sup>5</sup> There appears a mark of expunction under one of the dd in each instance.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

and godd fult hit makede ⁊  
 þurh hif godd-cunde.  
 for grið makeð godne mon ⁊  
 gode workes wurchen.  
 for alle monnen bið þa bet ⁊  
 þat lond bið þa murgre.  
 þa iherde Arður ⁊  
 þat flit of þiffen eorlen.  
 and þus spac þe riche ⁊  
 wið raȝe hif folke. [c. 2.] 10  
 Sitte<sup>1</sup> adun fwiðe ⁊  
 mine cnihte<sup>2</sup> alle.  
 and ælc bi hif lifen ⁊  
 luste mine worden.  
 Al hit wes stille ⁊  
 þat wunede inne halle.  
 þa spak þe king balde ⁊  
 to riche hif folke.  
 Mine eorles mine beornes ⁊  
 balde mine þeines. 20  
 mine duhti men ⁊  
 mine freond deoren.  
 þurh eou ich habbe biwunnen ⁊  
 vnder þere sunnen.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiiii.

and godd seolf hit makede ⁊  
 þorh his god cunde.  
 þis ihorde Arthur ⁊ [c. 2.]  
 þat strif of þis cnihtes.  
 and þus spac þe riche ⁊  
 to bolde his folk.  
 Sitteþ adun alle ⁊  
 mine cnihtes swiþe.  
 and ech bi his lifue ⁊  
 luste mine wordes.  
 Alle hit was stille ⁊  
 þat wonede in þe halle.  
 þo spac þe king bolde ⁊  
 to leoue his folke.  
 Mine eorles mine beornes ⁊  
 bolde mine cnihtes. 20  
 þorh þou ich habbe a wonne ⁊  
 onder þare sonne.

self it made, through his divinity; 'for peace maketh a good man work good works, for all men are the better, *and* the land is the merrier.' " Then [This] heard Arthur, the dispute [strife] of these knights; and thus spake the mighty *man* 'with [to] his 'fierce [bold] folk: " Sit *ye* down quickly, my knights all, and each by his life listen my words!" All it was still that dwelt in [the] hall. Then spake the bold king to his 'noble [dear] folk: " My earls, my barons, my bold 'thanes [knights], ' my doughty men, my dear friends'; through you I have conquered under the sun, *so* that I

<sup>1</sup> Sitteþ?<sup>2</sup> cnihtes?



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat ich æm swiðe riche mon :  
reh wið mine feonden.

þat ich ham richeſt king :  
þat wonieþ in londes.

gold ich habbe and gærfume :  
gumenen ich æm ælder.

no biwan ich hit noht ane :  
ah dude we alle clæne.

ne wan ich hit noht one :  
ac dude ȝe alle cleane.

To moni feohte ich habbe eou ilad :  
and æuere ȝet weoren wel irad.

To many fiht ich habbe ȝou ladde :  
and euere ȝe were wel i-rad.

swa þat feole kinelondeſ :  
ſtōdeð a mine honde.

so þat fale cune lond :  
10 ſtōnd in mine owe hond.

ȝe beoð gode cnihtes :  
ohte men and wihte.

þat ich habbe iuonded :  
i wel feole londen.

þa ȝet hi ſpac Arður :  
aðeleſt kingen.

Nu ȝe habbeoð iherd :  
hæȝe mine þeines.

Ac nou ȝeo habbeþ ihord :  
heȝe mine kenipes.

what Romaifce men :  
redeð heom bi-twenē.

wat Romanifſe men :  
20 readeþ ȝam bi-twine.

and wulc word heo fendeð uſ here :  
into ure londe.

and wat word hii hider fendeþ :  
into vre londe.

mid write & mid worde :  
wið grætere wræððe.

mid writ and mid worde :  
and mid grettere wreþþe.

am 'man most powerful, and fierce against my enemies [*the* most powerful king that dwelleth in land]; 'gold I have and treasure; of men I am ruler.' I won it not alone, but 'we [ye] did, all clean. To many a fight I have led you, and ever ye were well skilled, so that 'many kingdoms [lands of many kind] stand in my [own] hand. 'Ye are good knights, brave men and active; that I have proved in well many lands.'" The yet spake him Arthur, noblest of kings': "[But] now ye have heard, my noble 'thanes [champions], what *the* Romanish men counsel them between, and what words they send 'us' here [hither], into our land, with writ and with words, [and] with great wrath. Now we must bethink how we may with right defend

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

<p> Nu we mote bi-ðenchen :  hu we ure þeoden.  and ure muchele wurðscipe :<sup>[f. 145<sup>b</sup> c. 1.]</sup>  mid rihte maȝen biwiteȝen.  wið þis riche moncun :  wið þas Rom-leoden.  and andſware heom ſenden :  mid aðelen ure worden.  mid mucle wiſdome :  vre writ ſenden to Rome.      10  &amp; iwiten at þan kæifere :  for whan he uf ofcunnen<sup>2</sup>.  for whan he uf mid þrætte :  &amp; mid hokere igræteð.  Swiðe fære me gromeð :  &amp; vninete<sup>3</sup> me ſcomeð.  þat he atwit uf ure luren :  þat we iſeoð habbeoð forloren.  Heo fuggeð þ̅ Juliuſ Cefar hit bi-  mid compe i fehten.      [won : hit awan mid fihte.  Mid ſtrengðe and mid fehte :  me deð feole vnrihte.      22  for Cefar iſohte Bruttene : </p>	<p> Nou we mote bi-þenche :  ou we oure þeode.  and oure mochele worſipe :  mid rihte mawe biȝete<sup>1</sup>.  wiþ þis riche moncun :  wiþ þis riche leode.  and anſwere heom fende :  mid our wiſe wordes.  mid mochele wiſdome :  oure writ fende to Rome.  and iwite of þan caiſere : [c. 116<sup>b</sup>. c. 1.]  and of þan Romaniſſe heare.  wi hii ous mid þrete :  and mid hokere greteþ.  Swiþe fore me ſameþ :  and onimete me grameþ.  þat hii atwiteþ ous oure lure :  þat we ilore habbeþ.  Hii ſeggeþ þat Julius Cefar :  Mid ſtrengþe and mid fihte :  me deaþ fale onrihtef.  so Cefar ſohte Bruttus : </p>
--	--

our country and our great honor, against this powerful folk, against this 'Rome-people [powerful people], and send them answer with our 'good [wise] words; with much wisdom send our writ to Rome, and learn 'at [of] the emperor, 'for what *thing* he us hateth; for what *thing* he greets [and of the Romanish army, why they greet] us with threat and with scorn. Exceeding sorely *it* 'incenseth [shameth] me, and immoderately *it* 'shameth [incenseth], that 'he reproaches [they reproach] us our loss that we 'before' have lost (sustained). They say that Julius Cæsar won it (Britain) with 'combat in' fight. With strength and with fight men do

<sup>1</sup> bi-wite?<sup>2</sup> ofcunnen?<sup>3</sup> R. vnimete.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

mid baldere strēgðe.

mid bolde his strengþe.

no mihte Bruttel wið him ⁊

ne mihte Bruttus wiþ him ⁊

heore lond werien.

hire lond werie.

ah mid streðe<sup>1</sup> heo eoden an hond ⁊ ac mid strengþe he ȝeode an hond ⁊

and bitahten him al heore lond. and bi-nam ȝam hire lond.

and þer after fone ⁊

and hii þar after fone ⁊

alle hif men bicomel.

al his men bi-come.

Sum ure cun heo hadden iflaȝen ⁊ Somme oure cun he hadde iflaȝe ⁊

and sum mid horsen to-draȝen. and mani mid him awei idraȝe.

summe heo ladde ibunden ⁊ 10

ut of þissen londen.

and þus<sup>2</sup> lond biwunne ⁊

and þus þis lond he awon ⁊

mid unrihte and mid funnen.

mid onriht and mid funne.

&amp; nu axeð mid icunde ⁊ [c. 2.]

and nou axeþ þorh cunde ⁊

gael of þissen londe.

truage<sup>3</sup> of þis londe.

Al fwa we maȝen don ⁊

Al fo we mawe don ⁊

ȝef we hit don wulleð.

ȝef we hit wollep.

þurh rihte icunde ⁊

þorh rihte cūde ⁊

of Beline kīge.

of Belȝn þan kinge.

and of Brennen hif broðer ⁊ 20

and of Brenne his broþer ⁊

þan duc of Burgunne.

duk of Borgoyne.

þeos weoren ure ældre ⁊

þeos weren oure eoldre ⁊

many wrongs; 'for [so] Cæsar sought 'Britain [*the Britons*] with [his] bold strength. *The Britons* might not against him defend their land, but with strength 'they [he] went in hand, and 'delivered him all [took from them] their land; and [they] thereafter soon all became his men. Some of our kin 'they [he] had slain, and 'some with horses drawn in pieces [many with him away *had* drawn]; 'some they led bound out of this land'; and thus this land [he] won with wrong and with sin, and now asketh 'by [through] right tribute of this land! All so we may do, if we it do 'will'; through right of Belin [the] king, and of Brenne, his brother, 'the' duke of Burgundy. These were our ancestors, of whom we are come; these belay

<sup>1</sup> strengðe?<sup>2</sup> þus þis?<sup>3</sup> *A later hand has written gael in the margin.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þa we beoð of icumene.	þat we beoþ of icome.
þeof bilæie Rome ⁊	þes bi-leýe Rome ⁊
and þa riche al biwunnen.	and þe riche a-wonne.
& biuoren Rome þere stronge ⁊	
heore ȝifles an-henge. [lond ⁊	
and feoððen heo nomen al þat	and suppe hii neme al þat lond ⁊
and fetten hit an heore aȝere hond.	and fette hit in hire owe hond.
and þuf we mid rihte ahten ⁊	and þus hahte Rome ⁊
Rome uf biriden.	beon oure cunde.
Nu ich wulle leten Belin ⁊ 10	Nou ich wolle bi-leue ⁊ [c. 2.]
and Brenne bilæuen.	Belyn and Brenne.
and speke of þan kaifere ⁊	and speke of þan caysere ⁊
Coſtantin þan stronge.	Constantyn þan stronge.
he wes Helene ſune ⁊	he was Eleynes ſone ⁊
al of Brutten icume.	al of Bruttes icome.
he biwon Rome ⁊	he bi-wan Rome ⁊
and þa riche awelde.	and eke al þe riche.
Lete we nu of Coſtantin ⁊	Leate we nou of Constantin ⁊
þe Rome iwō al to him.	þat Rome wan al to him.
and ſpeken of Maximæn ⁊ 20	and ſpeke we of Maximien ⁊
þat waſ a ſwiðe ſtrog <sup>1</sup> mon.	þat waſ a ſwiþe ſtrong man.
he wes king of Brutene ⁊	he was king here ⁊
he biwon France.	and he a-wan France.

Rome, and the realm 'all' conquered, 'and before Rome the strong their hostages up-hung'; and afterwards they took all the land, and set it in their own hand; and thus ought we with right to besiege Rome [Rome to be our right]. Now will I 'let remain [leave] Belin and Brenne, and speak of the caiser, Constantine the strong; he was Helens son, all of Britons come (descended); he won Rome, and 'possessed [eke all] the realm. Let (leave) we now of Constantine, who won Rome all to him, and speak [we] of Maximian, who was a man most strong; he was king 'of Britain [here, and] he conquered France. Maximian the strong he

<sup>1</sup> strong?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Maximien þe stronge ⁊  
 Rome he nom an honde.  
 and Alemaine he biwon eke ⁊  
 mid wūder muchele strengðe.  
 and al from Romayne ⁊  
 into Normandie. [f. 146. c. 1.]

And þeos weoren mine ælderen ⁊  
 mine aððele uore-genglen.  
 and ahten alle þa leoden ⁊  
 þa into Rome leien. 10  
 and þurh swuche dome ⁊  
 ich ahte to biȝeten Rome.  
 Heo ȝirneð me an honde ⁊  
 gael of mine londe.  
 al swa ic wille of Rome ⁊  
 ȝif ich ræd habbe.  
 Ich wilnie a mine þōke ⁊  
 to walden al Rome.  
 and he wilneð me in Brutene ⁊  
 to binde swiðe uafte. 20  
 and flæn mine Bruttes ⁊  
 mid hif balu refes.  
 Ah ȝif hit on mi drihtē ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Maximien þe stronge ⁊  
 Rome nam an honde.  
 and Alemaine he bi-won ⁊  
 mid mochelere strengþe.  
 and al fram Romayne ⁊  
 into Normandie.  
 And alle þeos weren min eldre ⁊  
 of wan we beoþ i-spronge.  
 and adde alle þe londas ⁊  
 10 þat into Rome leie.  
 and þorh foche domes ⁊  
 ich hahte ohui Rome.  
 He ȝornt of mine lond ⁊  
 truage to habbe.  
 and so ich wolde of Rome ⁊  
 ȝef ȝe me readeþ.  
 Ich<sup>1</sup> ȝeorne in mine þonke ⁊  
 to habbe al Rome.  
 and he wilneþ in þis lond ⁊  
 20 binde me faste.  
 slean mine Bruttes ⁊  
 mid his wiþer reafes.  
 Ac ȝef hit wole drihte ⁊

took Rome in hand, and Alemaine (Germany) he won 'eke,' with 'wondrous' great strength, and all from Rome into Normandy. And [all] these were my ancestors, 'my noble progenitors [of whom we are descended]; and 'possessed [had] all the lands that unto Rome lay; and through such authority I ought to 'obtain [possess] Rome. 'They yearn of me in hand tribute of my land; all [He yearneth of my land tribute to have; and] so will I of Rome, if 'I have [ye me] counsel. I desire in my thoughts to 'possess [have] all Rome; and he desireth in 'Britain [this land] to bind me 'most' fast, 'and' slay my Britons, with his 'evil [hostile] attacks. But if 'my' Lord 'grant [will] it, who formed 'day and night [the day-

<sup>1</sup> R. Ich.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þe scop dæizes and nihtten.  
 he scal hif balde ibeot ⁊  
 fære abuggen.  
 & hif Rō-leoden ⁊  
 þer fore scullen reofen.  
 and ic wulle ræh beon ⁊  
 þer he nu rixleð on.  
 Wunieð nu stille alle ⁊  
 ic wulle fuggen mine iwille.  
 ne scal hit na man oðer idon ⁊ 10  
 ah hit scal stonden þer on.  
 He wilneð al ⁊ and ich wilni al ⁊  
 þæt wit beiene aʒæð.  
 habben hit nu and aʒe ⁊  
 þe hit æð mæʒen iwīne.  
 for nu we scullen cūne ⁊  
 wham hit godd unne.

þuƿ spac þe balde ⁊  
 þe Brutene hafde an onwalde.  
 þat was Arður þat waf Arður<sup>1</sup> þe  
 Bruttene deorling. [c.2.] [king ⁊  
 Setten hif kēpen ⁊ 22  
 and hif quides lusten.  
 sūme heo fæten stille ⁊  
 mucle ane stunde.

þat fop þis daies lihte.  
 he fal for his balneffe ⁊  
 mochel harm habbe.  
 and his Romleode ⁊  
 þar vore folle reofe.

Sitteþ alle nou stille ⁊ [c.117.c.1.  
 ich wolle fegge mine wille.  
 ne fal no man oþer don ⁊  
 alle hii folle stonde þar on.  
 He wilneþ al and ich wilnȳ al ⁊  
 þat we beie oweþ.  
 habbe hit nou and euere ⁊  
 wo se hit maȳ a-winne.

þus spac þe bolde ⁊  
 þat Bruttes hadde in anwolde.  
 þat was Arthur þe king ⁊  
 Bruttene deorling.  
 Sete his kempes ⁊  
 and hif speche luste.  
 sonne hii feten stille ⁊  
 ..... one stūde.

light], he shall 'sorely pay for his bold threat [have mickle harm for his boldness], and his Rome-people shall therefore perish; 'and I will be bold, wherein he now ruleth!' 'Dwell [Sit] *ye* now all still, I will say my will; no man shall do 'it' otherwise, 'but it [all they] shall stand thereon. He desireth all, and I desire all that we both possess; have it now and ever who[so] may it 'easier' win, 'for now we shall prove to whom God will grant it!' " Thus spake the bold *king*, that had 'Britain [*the* Britons] under *his* rule, that was Arthur the king, Britains darling! His warriors sate, and to his 'words [speech] listened; some they sate still, a great

<sup>1</sup> *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

fumme heo muche runen ⁊	so... ..uning ⁊
ræhten heom bitweonē.	. . . . . ne.
summe hit þuhte heom god ⁊	somme h... .. ȝam god ⁊
fumme hit mengden heore mod.	somm. ... meinde hire mod.
þa heo hafden longe ⁊	þo hii hadde lāge ⁊
i-lustned þan kinge.	i-lustned þan kinge.
þa spac Howel þe hende ⁊	þo spac Howel ⁊
hah mon of Brutene.	heh man of Britaine.
and hif quidef ræhte ⁊	and þeos wordes faide ⁊
bi-uoren raiē þan kinge.	10 bi-vore þan kinge.
Lauerd king hercne me ⁊	.ouard king hercne me ⁊
alfe ich ær dude þe.	... .. ear dude þe.
þu hafeft ifæid word soðe ⁊	þou ha...ft ifaid wordes ⁊
felehðe þe beoð ȝifðe.	þat beoþ swiþe soþe.
Hit wes ȝare iqueðen ⁊	for hit was ȝare ifaid ⁊
þat we nu sculleð cuðen.	þat nou we folle finde.
i þan iurn ȝere ⁊	
þat nu if ifunden here.	
Sibeli hit sæide ⁊	Sibily hit faide ⁊
hire quidef weoren soðe.	20 hire wordes weren soþe.
and sette hit on bocke ⁊	and sette hit in boke ⁊
uolke to bifne.	folke to byfne.
þat þreo kes <sup>1</sup> sculden buȝen ⁊	þat þreo kinges folde wende ⁊
ut of Brutlonde.	vt of Brutlonde.
þa biwinnen sculden Rome ⁊	þat biwinne folde Rome ⁊

while; some they made much communing between them; some it seemed to them good; some it disturbed their mood. When they had long listened to the king, then spake Howel 'the fair,' noble man of Brittany, and said these words before the 'fierce' king: "Lord king, hearken to me, as I ere did to thee. Thou hast said 'sooth words [words that are most sooth],—' may fortune be given to thee!'—[For] it was of old said, what we now shall 'learn [find], 'in the years before what is now here found.' Sibeli it said; her words were sooth; and set it in book, for example to folk, that three kings should go out of Britain, who should conquer

<sup>1</sup> kinges?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and al þa riche.	and alle þe riche.
and alle þa londes ⁊	and alle þe londes ⁊
þe rer <sup>1</sup> to liggeð.	þat þar to liggeþ.
þe uorne wes Belin ⁊	þe vorme was Belȳn ⁊
þat wef a Bruttisc king.	þat was Bruttene king. [c.2.]
þe oðer wes Coſtantin ⁊	þe oþer was Conſtantin ⁊
þe king wef on Brutene.	þat Rome wan al to him.
þu ſcalt beon þe þridde ⁊	þou ſalt beon þe þridde ⁊
þe Rome ſcal habben.	þat Rome ſalt habbe.
And ȝif þu hit wult bi-ginnen ⁊	ȝef þu þiſ wold bi-ginne ⁊
þu hit ſcalt biwinnen.	þou hit ſalt awinne.
and ich wulle þer to helpe ⁊ <sup>ii</sup> [f. 146 <sup>b</sup> . c. l.]	and ich wole þar to helpe ⁊
mid haȝere ſtrenðe.	mid hehȝere ſtrengþe.
ich wulle ouer fæ ſende ⁊	and ich wole ouer ſée ſende ⁊
to ſelen mine þeinē.	to ſele mine cnihtes.
to balden mine Brutten ⁊	
þa bet we ſcullen fuſen .	
Ich wulle haten alle ⁊	and hote ȝam alle ⁊
þa aðele of Bruttainne.	
bi leomen and bi heore liue ⁊ 20	bi hire cwike liſue.
ȝeond alle mine londe.	
þat heo beon ȝarewe ſone ⁊	þat hii beo redi ſone ⁊
mid þe uaren to Rome.	mid þe fare to Rome.
Mi lond ich wulle ſette ⁊	Min lond ich wolle ſette ⁊

Rome, and all the realm, and all the lands that thereto lie. The first was Belin, who was 'a British [Britains] king; the other was Constantine, who 'was king in Britain [won Rome all to him]; thou shalt be the third, that Rome shalt have. 'And' if thou 'wilt it [wouldst this] begin, thou shalt it win, and I will thereto help, with great strength; [and] I will send over sea, to my good 'thanes [knights], 'to my bold Britons,—the better we shall proceed;—'I will [and] command [them] all, 'the noble of Britain,' 'by *their* limbs and' by their [quick] lives, 'over all my lands,' that they be ready soon with thee to march to Rome. My land I will set 'in pledge

<sup>1</sup> R. þer.



MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to wedde for feoluere.

and alle þe æhten of mine londe ⁊

for feoluere and for golde.

for seoluer and for golde.

and swawe scullen uaren to Rome ⁊ and so we folle to Rome fare ⁊

&amp; flan Lucef þene kaifere.

and flean þane kaifere.

&amp; bi-tellen þine irihten ⁊

and for to bi-ȝeten þin rihtes ⁊

i<sup>1</sup> þe lede ten þufend cnihtes.

ich leane þe ten þoufend cnihtes.

þus Howel spilede ⁊

þuf spac Howel ⁊

hext of Brutaine.

heh man in londe.

þa þe Howel ifeid hafde ⁊ 10

þo Howel hadde i-faid ⁊

þat him sel þuhte.

wat him god þohte.

þa spæc Angel þe king ⁊

þo spac Angel þe king ⁊

Scotlondes deorling.

Scotlondes deorling.

and stod uppen ane boncke ⁊

and stop vp on benche ⁊

&amp; beien his broðeren.

and his broþers beine.

þat was Lot and Vrien ⁊

þat was Loth and Vrien ⁊

tweie fwiðe aðele men.

tweie fwiþe bolde men.

þuf Angel þe kig<sup>2</sup> feide ⁊

to Arðure þan kene.

Læuerd<sup>3</sup> Arður ich fugge þe ⁊ 20 Arthur þou ha<sup>4</sup> wel ifaid ⁊

þurh soðe quides mine.

ercne mine wordes.

þat ilke þ Howel haf<sup>5</sup> ispeken ⁊

þat ilke þat Howel haueþ ispeke ⁊

ne scal hit na man awreken.

ne fal hit no man a-wreke.

for silver, and all the possessions (or goods) of my land' for silver and for gold; and so we shall proceed to Rome, and slay 'Luces' the emperor; and [for to] win thy rights, I will 'lead [lend] to thee ten thousand knights." Thus spake Howel, 'noblest of Britanny [noble man in *the* land]. When 'that' Howel had said what seemed good to him, then spake Angel the king, Scotlands darling, and 'stood [stept] upon 'a' bench, and both his brothers, that was, Loth and Urien, two most 'noble [bold] men. 'Thus said Angel the king to Arthur the keen: "Lord' Arthur, 'I say to thee through my sooth [thou hast well said; hearken my] words; the same that Howel hath spoken, no man shall it avoid, but we shall perform

<sup>1</sup> ich?<sup>2</sup> king?<sup>3</sup> læuer, *pr. m.*<sup>4</sup> haueft?<sup>5</sup> hafes?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ah we hit scullen ilæften ⁊ [c. 2.]	ac we hit folle ileafte ⁊
bi ure quicke liuen.	bi oure cwiike lifue.
And lauerd Arður þe hæhþe ⁊	And louerd Arthur þe heþe ⁊
luſt me ane ſtunde.	luſt me one wile.
cleope þe to ræde ⁊	cleope þe to reade ⁊
þine eorles riche.	þine eorles riche.
and alle þa hæxte ⁊	and alle þe hexſte ⁊
þa beoð in þine hirede.	þat beoþ in þine londe. [f. 117 <sup>b</sup> . c. 1.]
& bide heom þe ſuggen ⁊	and bide ȝam þe ſegge ⁊
mid foðen heore worden. 10	mid ſoþe hire wordes.
whæt heo þe wulleð fulſte ⁊	wat hii þe wollep helpe ⁊
þine iuan to for-donne.	to winne þine rihte.
Ich þe leden wulle ⁊	Ich þe leane wolle ⁊
cnihtef of mire leode.	cnihtef of mine londe.
þreo þuſend kempen ⁊	þreo þouſend kempes ⁊
ohte alle icorene.	to fihte ſwiþe kene.
ten þuſend men a uote ⁊	ten þouſend men a fote ⁊
to uehte ſwiðe gode.	to fihte ſwiþe gode.
and fare we to Rome ⁊	and wente <sup>1</sup> to Rome ⁊
and iwinne þa riche. 20	and i-win þe riche.
ful ſwiðe uf mæi ſcomien ⁊	fol fore ous maȝ ſamie ⁊
and ful ſwiðe uf mæi gromien.	and wel fore gramie.
þat heo ſculle ſenden ſonden ⁊	þat hii ſolle ſende ſonde ⁊

it by our quick lives! And, lord Arthur the noble, listen to me a while; call to thee to counsel thy earls rich, and all the highest that are in thy 'folk [land], and bid them say to thee with their sooth words, *is* what they will help thee thy 'foes to destroy [rights to win]. I will 'lead [lend] to thee knights of my land, three thousand champions 'brave, all chosen [to fight most keen]; ten thousand men on foot, to fight most good; and go we to Rome, and conquer the realm. Full 'greatly [sorely] *it* may shame us, and 'full greatly [well sorely] '*it* may us' anger, that they should send messengers after tribute 'to [of] our land. But so help us *the* Lord

<sup>1</sup> wend we?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

after gaulē to ure londe.  
 Ah swa uf helpe drihte?  
 þæ scop þaf dazef lihte.  
 heo hit scullen abugge?  
 mid heore bare liue.  
 for þenne we habbeoð Rome?  
 and alle þa riche.  
 we scullen nimen þa londes?  
 þa þer to liggeð.  
 Peoile<sup>2</sup> and Alemaine?  
 Lumbardie & Brutaine.  
 France & Normandie?  
 þa hit hæhte Neustrie.  
 and swa we sculleð meðegie?  
 heore mod vnimete<sup>3</sup>.  
 þa þe kīg ifaid hafde?  
 þa andswarede alle.  
 Iniðered wurðe þe ilke mon:<sup>[f.147. c.1.]</sup>  
 þe þer to nule helpen.  
 mid ahtē and mid wepnen?  
 and mid alle his imihten.  
 þa wes Arðures bired?  
 sturneliche awraððed.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

after gaul<sup>1</sup> of oure londe.  
 Ac so ouf helpe drihte?  
 þat sop þis daiȝes lihte.  
 hii hit solle a-bugge?  
 mid hire bare rugge.  
 for wane we habbeþ Rome?  
 and alle þe riche.  
 we folle nime þe londes?  
 þat þar to liggeþ.  
 Pullȝe and Alemaine?  
 Lombardie and Brutayne.  
 France and Normandie?  
 þo hit hehte Neustrie.  
 and so we folle temie?  
 hire mod onimete.  
 þo he ifaid hadda?  
 þo answere<sup>4</sup> alle.  
 Aneþered worþe þe ilke man?  
 þat nele þar to helpe.  
 mid wepne and mid hahte?  
 and mid al his mihte.  
 þo were Arthur his men?  
 stranliche<sup>5</sup> iwrepped.

that formed the day-light, they shall pay for it with their bare 'life [back]! For when we have Rome, and all the realm, we shall seize the lands that thereto lie; Poille (Apulia?) and Alemaine, Lumbardy and Britanny, France and Normandy,—then it hight Neustrie,—and so we shall tame their immoderate mood (pride).” When the king had said (spoken), then answered all: “Disgraced be that man that will not help thcreto, with goods and with weapons, and with all his might!” Then was ‘Arthurs folk sternly [Arthur his men strongly] incensed; knights were so enraged,

<sup>1</sup> A second hand has written truage in the margin.<sup>2</sup> At first written Peouile, but u erased.<sup>4</sup> answered?<sup>3</sup> vnnimete pr. m.<sup>5</sup> strangliche?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

cnihtes an burfte weorē ⁊  
 þat alle heo gunnen biuiē.  
 þa Arður iherd hafde ⁊  
 his hired iberen.  
 þa cleopien agō ⁊  
 þe king wes abolȝen.  
 Sitteð adun stille ⁊  
 cnihtes inne halle.  
 and ich eou wulle telle ⁊  
 what ich don wulle. 10  
 Mine writen ich wulle maken ⁊  
 þa wel beon idihte.  
 and fende þan kæisere ⁊  
 mondes forȝe and muchel kare.  
 and ich wulle ful sone ⁊  
 faren into Rome.  
 Nulle ich þider na gauel bringe ⁊  
 ah þane kaifer ich wulle binden. ac þane cayfer ich wulle binde.  
 and feoððen ich wullen hine an-  
 hon ⁊  
 and al þat lond ich wulle uor-don. and al þat lond ich wulle fordon.  
 and foruaren þa cnihtes alle ⁊ 21  
 þe aȝein me stondeð i fehte.  
 Arður his writ nom an honden ⁊  
 mid wiðer-fulle worden.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

cnihtes a-borft weren ⁊  
 þat al hi gonne buuie.  
**Þ**O Arthur ihorde hadde ⁊  
 his cnihtes bi-hefte.  
 þo cleopede he anon ⁊  
 þe king was a-bolwe. [c. 2.]  
 Sitteþ adun alle ⁊  
 cnihtes in halle.  
 and ich ȝou wolle telle ⁊  
 wat ich don wolle.  
 Mine writes hich wolle makie ⁊  
 and to Lucas fende.  
 þat ich wolle after sone ⁊  
 come toward Rome.  
 Nolle ich non gauel bringe ⁊  
 ac þane cayfer ich wolle binde.  
 and suppe ich wolle hine an-hon ⁊  
 and al þat lond ich wolle fordon.  
 and for-faren alle þe cnihtes ⁊  
 þat ..... aȝeȝn me in .....  
 ..... his writ in ..... ⁊  
 ... wiȝer-foll. ....

that all they gan to be agitated. When Arthur had heard *the* 'clamor [promises] of his 'folk [knights], then 'gan he call [called he anon],—the king was angry,—“Sit *ye* down still, knights in hall, and I will you tell what I will do. My writs I will make, 'that shall be well indited,' and send to 'the emperor [Lucas] 'minds sorrow and mickle care'; 'and [that] I will 'full [after] soon 'fare into [come toward] Rome. I will not 'thither' any tribute bring, but the emperor I will bind, and afterwards I will him hang; and all the land I will destroy, and all the knights put to death, that stand against me in fight!” Arthur took his writ in hand, with hostile

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and þan beofen <sup>1</sup> hit bitahte ⁊	... hit þan cnihtes .....
þæ þa ærnde hafde ibrohte.	þat þe earende brohte.
and feoððe he lette heo scruden ⁊	and suppe he lette ȝam scrude ⁊
mid ælchere pruden.	mid allere prude.
mid þan hæxte scrude ⁊	
þa he hafde on bure.	
and hehte heð faren sone ⁊ [c.2.]	and bad ȝam wende sone ⁊
to Lucas of Rome.	to Lucas of Rome.
and he cumen after wolde ⁊	and .e comen after wolde ⁊
fwa raðe fwa he mihte.	10 .. .... so he mihte.

words, and delivered it to the 'men [knights], that 'had' brought the errand; and afterwards he caused them to be clothed with 'each [all] pomp, 'with the noblest garments that he had in bower,' and bade them fare soon to Lucas of Rome, and he would come after *them* as quickly as he might.

<sup>1</sup> beonēn, *pr. m.*

END OF THE SECOND VOLUME.

LONDON:

PRINTED BY RICHARD AND JOHN E. TAYLOR,  
RED LION COURT, FLEET STREET.



## ERRATA IN VOL. II.

- p.* 18. *l.* 5. *for* truth *read* troth.
- 20. *l.* ult. *for* *pe?* *read* *pa?*
- 22. *l.* 8. *for* Lucius *read* Livius.
- 25. *l.* 7. *for* Gallus *read* 'Gallus [Livius].
- 27. *v.* 10849. *for* luuuede *read* luuede.
- *ib.* *l.* 5. *for* books *read* book.
- 28. *v.* 10862. *for* *if* *read* *of*.
- *ib.* *l.* 6. *for* his *read* 'Gloies [Gloi his].
- 49. *l.* 10. *for* came *read* came to.
- 69. *l.* 8. *for* sore *read* sorry.
- 72. *vv.* 11915. 11922. (*sec. t.*). *These lines should be transposed, as shown by the translation.*
- 101. *l.* 9. *them should be marked by superior commas.*
- 109. *l.* 4. *for* Britain *read* Bretagne or Britanny.
- 111. *v.* 12835. *for* wæpmōnef *read* wæpmōnef.
- 114. *v.* 12898. (*sec. t.*) *for* the *read* þe.
- 115. *l.* 9. *for* Then became he *read* When he became.
- 142. *l.* 7. *the before fire should be in brackets, and not in italics.*
- 155. *v.* 13854. (*sec. t.*) *for* gonde *read* goude.
- 158. *v.* 13926. (*sec. t.*) *for* þane þonre *read* þane þonre.
- 159. *v.* 13952. (*sec. t.*) *for* wiþe *read* fwiþe.
- 161. *l.* 8. *for* inn *read* inns.
- 164. *l.* 1. *for* no rrobbers *read* nor robbers.
- 165. *v.* 14099. (*sec. t.*) *for* deathe *read* deaþe.
- 167. *v.* 14137. *for* legge *read* ligge.
- *ib.* *l.* 8. *for* 'I [we thus] are *read* 'I am [we thus are].
- 171. *l.* 9. *for* events *read* event.
- 172. *l.* 8. *for* Hengist *it* would *read* Hengist 'it' would.
- 187. *l.* 5. *the superior comma should be before hate, instead of before but.*
- 189. *l.* 1. *insert word to after sent.*
- 193. *l.* 7. *for* this *read* his.
- 194. *l.* 6. *for* Vortiger *read* Hengest.
- 195. *l.* 8. *for* Louis *read* Lupus.

- p. 229. v. 15599. (*sec. t.*) for [f. 72<sup>b</sup>.] read [f. 73<sup>b</sup>.]
- 231. v. 15642. (*sec. t.*) for nonneric read nonnerie.
- 232. l. 1. insert ' before with.
- 235. v. 15751. for feolc read feole.
- 236. v. 15755. for luste read lufte.
- 239. l. 6. for the read thy.
- 240. v. 15853. (*sec. t.*) for surfte read fufte.
- 251. v. 16111. for herede read hirede, and in the foot-note, for hirede read herede.
- 266. v. 16481. for the read þe.
- 283-4. vv. 16885-7. 16903-4. (*sec. t.*) *The punctuation is faulty, and requires correction, as occasionally in some other passages.*
- 296. v. 17196. for strēgðe read strēgðe.
- 308. l. 9. dele merry, and insert good before folk, in the next line.
- 315. l. 2. dele to before the king.
- 317. v. 17672. (*sec. t.*) for þare read þane.
- 320. v. 17750. (*sec. t.*) dele the hyphen in a-cnowe.
- 330. l. 4. dele that before gan, and insert that before there.
- 332. v. 18023. for Whar read whar.
- 338. l. ult. for oer read oðer.
- 343. v. 18283. (*sec. t.*) for gonnewende read gonne wende.
- *ib.* l. 4. insert land after Humber.
- 348. v. 18401. for talleð read tælleð.
- 349. v. 18440. for aueremeste read auoremeste.
- 351. v. 18477. for Lunde read Lundē.
- 359. l. 5. insert and before over.
- 368. v. 18886. for I scal read i scal.
- 371. v. 18956. (*sec. t.*) for evereideal read euereideal.
- *ib.* l. 1. for thy before people read the.
- 385. v. 19267. for quikemonnen read quike monnen.
- 393. v. 19468. for strengðe read strengðe.
- 394. l. 2. for own read our.
- 396. v. 19543. for hæfeuene read hæfenene.
- 400. l. 2. for craft read crafts.
- 403. l. 9. for fweneninge read fweueninge.
- 406. v. 19763. for bi-nihte read bi nihte.
- 409. l. 1. for the before worlds, read this.
- 411. v. 19888. (*sec. t.*) for while read wile.
- 413. l. 7. for gold read good.
- 424. l. 4. for When read Then, and in the next line substitute a full-stop after York.
- 427. v. 20282. (*sec. t.*) for the read þe.

- p.* 451. *v.* 20837. *for* for-uaren *read* for-uaren.
- 456. *v.* 20965. (*sec. t.*) *for* learedemen *read* learede men.
- 470. *v.* 21296. (*sec. t.*) *for* londe *read* loude.
- 498. *l.* 7. great *ought to be marked by superior commas.*
- 521. *v.* 22490. *for* þen *read* þin.
- 523. *l.* 7. *for* lieth *read* lie.
- 525. *v.* 22576. *for* þire *read* þine.
- 530. *l.* 6. *for* fiddleing *read* fiddling.
- 534. *v.* 22798. *for* þene *read* þine.
- 535. *v.* 22806. (*sec. t.*) *for* finat *read* finot.
- 543. *l.* 8. the round bracket *should be after* brave.
- 553. *v.* 23231. (*sec. t.*) *insert a hyphen in* of flaze.
- 560. *v.* 23385. *for* of *read* of.
- 578. *l.* 7. *instead of superior commas, square brackets should have been used.*
- 580. *v.* 23873. (*sec. t.*) *for* jllod *read* jllöd.
- 585. *l.* 10. *for* then *read* thence.
- 587. *l.* 24033. (*sec. t.*) *for* wit-fulle *read* wit-folle.
- 592. *v.* 24158. (*sec. t.*) *for* oweftiward *read* owe ftiward.
- 603. *l.* 1. *insert the after* Kay.
- 614. *v.* 24666. (*sec. t.*) *for* londc *read* londe.
- 625. *v.* 24926. (*sec. t.*) *dele the hyphen in* daijef-lihte.
- 627. *vv.* 24960. 24981. (*sec. t.*) *read* god-cunde *and* a-wonne.
- 631. *l.* 9. he *should be marked by superior commas.*
- 635. *l.* 7. *for* noble *read* nobles.
- 640. *v.* 25267. *for* heo *read* heō.











**THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY  
REFERENCE DEPARTMENT**

---

**This book is under no circumstances to be  
taken from the Building**

[illegible]

Form 410

